

**THE ELEMENTS  
OF  
COORDINATE  
GEOMETRY**

*With Solutions of Examples*

**S. L. LONEY**

Compiled by  
S. Pal

**MATH  
VALLEY**

**THE ELEMENTS  
OF  
COORDINATE  
GEOMETRY**

*With Solutions of Examples*

BY

S. L. LONEY, M.A.

LATE FELLOW OF SIDNEY SUSSEX COLLEGE,  
PROFESSOR AT THE ROYAL HOLLOWAY COLLEGE

**MATH  
VALLEY**

Amazon  
Kindle Edition 2019

Published by  
Math Valley Publishing

Copyright © 2019 by MathValley

Compiled by  
S. Pal

**MATH  
VALLEY**

Math Valley Publishing

# Brief Contents

	Preface	iv
	<b>Publisher's Note</b>	<b>v</b>
	About the Book	vi
	<b>Detailed Contents</b>	<b>vii</b>
Chapter 1	Introduction: Some Algebraic Results	1-7
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>Coordinates: Lengths of Straight Lines and Areas of Triangles</b>	<b>8-30</b>
Chapter 3	Locus: Equation to a Locus	31-39
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>The Straight Line: Rectangular Coordinates</b>	<b>40-96</b>
Chapter 5	The Straight Line. Polar Equations and Oblique Coordinates. Miscellaneous Problems. Loci	97-139
<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>On Equations Representing Two or More Straight Lines</b>	<b>140-180</b>
Chapter 7	Transformation of Coordinates	181-193
<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>The Circle</b>	<b>194-265</b>
Chapter 9	Systems of Circles	266-286
	<b>CONIC SECTIONS</b>	
<b>Chapter 10</b>	<b>The Parabola</b>	<b>287-344</b>
Chapter 11	The Parabola ( <i>Continued</i> )	345-383
<b>Chapter 12</b>	<b>The Ellipse</b>	<b>384-459</b>
Chapter 13	The Hyperbola	460-518
<b>Chapter 14</b>	<b>Polar Equation to a Conic</b>	<b>519-543</b>
Chapter 15	General Equation Tracing of Curves	544-590
<b>Chapter 16</b>	<b>The General Conic</b>	<b>591-652</b>
Chapter 17	Miscellaneous Propositions	653-716
	<b>About the Author</b>	<b>717</b>

# Preface

---

In following work I have tried to present the elements of Coordinate Geometry in a manner suitable for Beginners and Junior Students. The present book deals only with Cartesian and Polar Coordinates. Within these limits I venture to hope that the book is fairly complete, and that no propositions of very great importance have been omitted.

The Straight Line and Circle have been treated more fully than the other portions of the subject, since it is generally in the elementary conceptions that beginners find great difficulties.

There are a large number of Examples, over 1100 in all, and they are, in general, of an elementary character. The examples are especially numerous in the earlier parts of the book.

I am much indebted to several friends for reading portions of the proof sheets, but especially to Mr . W. J. Dobbs, M.A. who has kindly read the whole of the book and made many valuable suggestions.

For any criticisms, suggestions, or corrections, I shall be grateful.

S. L. LONEY

ROYAL HOLLOWAY COLLEGE FOR WOMEN,  
EGHAM, SURREY  
July 12, 1895.

## Publisher's Note

---

The latest edition of the book 'Elements of Coordinate Geometry' by S. L. Loney has passed more than a century. Still now, this is a world wide accepted book in Mathematics and Mathematical Sciences. Digital copy of the book is available in the internet or in digital library. This is also a digital version of the book but arranged in different order for the reader who is directly reading the book using modern electronic devices like computer, digital reader, i-pad, i-phone, mobile, etc. In this context, a little modification is made in the organization of the book – **answers and solution/hints of the practice examples at the end of an article is given immediately after those examples.** This reduces the movement of digital pages of a thick book while also helping in the verification of the answer obtained by the reader. Also the reader does not have to remember page number for this purpose. It saves both time and effort.

A brief and detailed contents of the book are also given at the beginning of the book. This helps reader to search a topic as per requirement.

PUBLISHER  
February, 2019

## About the Book

---

The book ‘Elements of Coordinate Geometry’ by S. L. Loney is a fundamental book on analytical geometry in Mathematics for school and college students. Even after a century, it is still now an unparalleled book on two-dimensional coordinate geometry and it creates the backbone of a student who loves mathematics. This book consists of 17 chapters. Some fundamental algebraic results are stated in Chapter 1. Chapter 2 and Chapter 3 deal with the fundamentals of coordinate geometry. Chapters 4-6 deal with straight line and pair of straight lines. Chapter 7 states the concepts of transformation of coordinates. Circle and system of circles are discussed in chapters 8 and 9. Conic sections that include parabola, ellipse and hyperbola are discussed in chapters 10 through 13. Discussions in chapters 1-13 are based on rectangular and oblique Cartesian Coordinate system. Conics in polar coordinate system is discussed in Chapter 14. General equations are discussed in chapters 15-16. Last chapter, Chapter 17 deals with miscellaneous propositions.

The book ‘Elements of Coordinate Geometry’ by S. L. Loney is the father of all coordinate geometry books available in the present academic market. One should read this book carefully – it will create a mind with clear concepts and in depth knowledge on coordinate geometry. This helps the reader to solve any kind of problems on coordinate geometry of 2D.

# Detailed Contents

	<b>Preface</b>	iv
	<b>Publisher's Note</b>	v
	<b>About the Book</b>	vi
	<b>Detailed Contents</b>	vii-xv
<b>Chapter 1.</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION: SOME ALGEBRAIC RESULTS</b>	<b>1-7</b>
	Quadratic equations	1
	Determinant notation	2
	Elimination	5
<b>Chapter 2.</b>	<b>COORDINATES: LENGTHS OF STRAIGHT LINES AND AREAS OF TRIANGLES</b>	<b>8-30</b>
	Coordinates	8
	<b>EXAMPLES I</b>	14
	<b>ANSWERS</b>	16
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	16
	<b>EXAMPLES II</b>	22
	<b>ANSWERS</b>	23
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	23
	Polar coordinates	25
	<b>EXAMPLES III</b>	28
	<b>ANSWERS</b>	29
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	30
<b>Chapter 3.</b>	<b>LOCUS: EQUATION TO A LOCUS</b>	<b>31-39</b>
	Equation to a curve	35
	<b>EXAMPLES IV</b>	37
	<b>ANSWERS</b>	38
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	38



<b>Chapter 4.</b>	<b>THE STRAIGHT LINE: RECTANGULAR COORDINATES</b>	<b>40-96</b>
	Equation of straight line:	40
	Parallel to coordinate axis	40
	$y = mx + c$	41
	$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$	42
	$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = p$	44
	$Ax + By + C = 0$	45
	Straight line at infinity	47
	Straight line through two points	48
	EXAMPLES V	50
	ANSWERS	51
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	52
	Angle between straight lines	56
	Conditions that they may be parallel and perpendicular	57
	EXAMPLES VI	62
	ANSWERS	63
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	64
	Lengths of perpendiculars	70
	EXAMPLES VII	72
	ANSWERS	73
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	73
	Point of intersection	75
	Condition that three lines may meet in a point	76
	Straight line which passes through the intersection of the two straight lines	77
	Bisectors of angles between straight lines	79
	Length of the straight line drawn through a given point in a given direction to meet a given straight line	81
	EXAMPLES VIII	82
	ANSWERS	86
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	87
<b>Chapter 5.</b>	<b>THE STRAIGHT LINE: POLAR EQUATIONS AND OBLIQUE COORDINATES. MISCELLANEOUS PROBLEMS. LOCI</b>	<b>97-139</b>
	Straight line in polar coordinates	97
	Oblique coordinates	98

	EXAMPLES IX	103
	ANSWERS	104
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	104
	Straight lines passing through fixed points	109
	EXAMPLES X	114
	ANSWERS	117
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	117
	EXAMPLES XI	129
	ANSWERS	131
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	132
<b>Chapter 6.</b>	<b>ON EQUATIONS REPRESENTING TWO OR MORE STRAIGHT LINES</b>	<b>140-180</b>
	Angle between two lines given by one equation	142
	EXAMPLES XII	146
	ANSWERS	146
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	146
	General equation of the second degree	150
	EXAMPLES XIII	154
	ANSWERS	155
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	155
	Homogeneous equation of the $n$ th degree	159
	EXAMPLES XIV	165
	ANSWERS	169
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	169
<b>Chapter 7.</b>	<b>TRANSFORMATION OF COORDINATES</b>	<b>181-193</b>
	Alter the origin	181
	Change the direction of axes of coordinates	182
	EXAMPLES XV	184
	ANSWERS	184
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	185
	Degree of an equation	188
	EXAMPLES XVI	191
	ANSWERS	192
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	192
<b>Chapter 8.</b>	<b>THE CIRCLE</b>	<b>194-265</b>
	Definition	194
	Equation of circle	194

General equation of circle	196
EXAMPLES XVII	199
ANSWERS	201
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	202
Tangent	208
Equation to a tangent	209
Point of intersection	212
Normal	215
Equation to a normal	215
EXAMPLES XVIII	217
ANSWERS	218
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	219
Tangent from any point	223
Chord of contact	224
Pole and polar	225
Equation to the polar of a point	225
Geometrical construction for the polar of a point	227
Pole of a given line	228
Length of a tangent	230
Pair of tangents	230
EXAMPLES XIX	232
ANSWERS	233
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	234
Equation to a circle in polar coordinates	237
EXAMPLES XX	239
ANSWERS	239
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	240
Equation referred to oblique axes	241
EXAMPLES XXI	242
ANSWERS	242
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	243
Equations in terms of one variable	245
Common tangents	246
EXAMPLES XXII	251
ANSWERS	255
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	255
<b>Chapter 9. SYSTEMS OF CIRCLES</b>	<b>266-286</b>
Orthogonal circles	266
Radical axis	267
Geometrical construction	268

Radical centre	269
EXAMPLES XXIII	270
ANSWERS	272
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	272
Coaxial circles	275
Limiting points of a coaxial system	275
Orthogonal circles of a coaxial system	276
EXAMPLES XXIV	281
ANSWERS	283
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	283

### **Conic Sections**

<b>Chapter 10.</b>	<b>THE PARABOLA</b>	<b>287-344</b>
	Conic section	287
	Definitions	287
	EXAMPLES XXV	291
	ANSWERS	292
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	293
	Point of intersection	297
	Equation to a tangent	298
	Equation to a normal	300
	Subtangent and subnormal	301
	EXAMPLES XXVI	303
	ANSWERS	306
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	306
	Some properties of the parabola	315
	Chord of contact	317
	Pole and polar	317
	Geometrical construction	318
	Pair of tangents	320
	Diameters	322
	EXAMPLES XXVII	324
	ANSWERS	325
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	325
	Equations in terms of one variable	327
	EXAMPLES XXVIII	332
	ANSWERS	335
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	335
<b>Chapter 11.</b>	<b>THE PARABOLA (continued)</b>	<b>345-383</b>
	Loci connected with the parabola	345

EXAMPLES XXIX	348
ANSWERS	350
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	350
Three normals passing through a given point	357
EXAMPLES XXX	360
ANSWERS	362
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	362
Parabola referred to two tangents as axes	372
EXAMPLES XXXI	378
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	379
<b>Chapter 12. THE ELLIPSE</b>	<b>384-459</b>
Equation of ellipse	384
Mechanical construction for an ellipse	388
Latus-rectum	388
Auxiliary circle	390
Eccentric angle	391
EXAMPLES XXXII	393
ANSWERS	395
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	395
Equation to a tangent	402
Equation to the normal	404
Subtangent and subnormal	405
Some properties of the ellipse	406
Director circle	409
EXAMPLES XXXIII	409
ANSWERS	412
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	412
Pole and polar	422
Diameter	426
Conjugate diameters	427
Equiconjugate diameters	432
Supplemental chords	432
EXAMPLES XXXIV	435
ANSWERS	438
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	438
Examples of loci	446
EXAMPLES XXXV	448
ANSWERS	451
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	451

<b>Chapter 13.</b>	<b>THE HYPERBOLA</b>	<b>460-518</b>
	Equations and definitions	460
	Central conics	466
	Director circle	469
	Equilateral, or rectangular hyperbola	470
	EXAMPLES XXXVI	471
	ANSWERS	473
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	473
	Asymptotes	482
	Geometrical construction	484
	Conjugate hyperbola	486
	EXAMPLES XXXVII	493
	ANSWERS	494
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	494
	Equation referred to the asymptotes as axes	497
	One variable examples	500
	EXAMPLES XXXVIII	503
	ANSWERS	506
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	506
<b>Chapter 14.</b>	<b>POLAR EQUATION TO A CONIC</b>	<b>519-543</b>
	Polar equation of conic	520
	Equation to the directrices	523
	Equation to the asymptotes	524
	Polar equation to a tangent	526
	Polar equation to a polar	527
	Polar equation to a normal	528
	EXAMPLES XXXIX	532
	ANSWERS	534
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	535
<b>Chapter 15.</b>	<b>GENERAL EQUATION TRACING OF CURVES</b>	<b>544-590</b>
	Particular cases of conic sections	544
	General equation of second degree	545
	Centre of a conic section	547
	Transformation of equation to centre as origin	548
	Equation to asymptotes	551
	EXAMPLES XL	553
	ANSWERS	554
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	554
	Tracing a parabola	559
	Tracing a central conic	561
	Eccentricity and foci of general conic	571

	EXAMPLES XLI	573
	ANSWERS	575
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	575
<b>Chapter 16.</b>	<b>THE GENERAL CONIC</b>	<b>591-652</b>
	General equation	591
	Tangent	591
	Conjugate diameters	594
	EXAMPLES XLII	596
	ANSWERS	597
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	598
	Conics through the intersections of two conics	602
	The equation $S = \lambda u v$	606
	Double contact	607
	Line at infinity	608
	Geometrical meaning of $S = \lambda u$	608
	Geometrical meaning of $S = \lambda$	609
	EXAMPLES XLIII	610
	ANSWERS	611
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	611
	General equation to the pair of tangents drawn from any point	618
	The director circle	619
	The foci	621
	The axes	623
	Lengths of straight lines drawn in given directions to meet the conic	626
	EXAMPLES XLIV	629
	ANSWERS	631
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	631
	Equation of conic	640
	Conics passing through four points	640
	Conics passing through five points	642
	Conics touching four lines	642
	The conic $LM = R^2$	643
	EXAMPLES XLV	645
	ANSWERS	647
	<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	647
<b>Chapter 17.</b>	<b>MISCELLANEOUS PROPOSITIONS</b>	<b>653-716</b>
	Conic $Ax^2 + By^2 = 1$	653
	On the four normals from any point to a central	654

conic	
EXAMPLES XLVI	658
ANSWERS	660
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	661
Confocal conics	670
EXAMPLES XLVII	675
ANSWERS	676
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	676
Circles of curvature and contact of the third order	682
Evolute of a curve	687
Contact of different orders	688
EXAMPLES XLVIII	689
ANSWERS	691
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	692
Envelopes	699
EXAMPLES XLIX	706
ANSWERS	708
<b>SOLUTIONS/HINTS</b>	709
<b>ABOUT THE AUTHOR</b>	<b>717</b>



## Chapter 1

# INTRODUCTION

## : SOME ALGEBRAIC RESULTS

### Quadratic Equations

1. The roots of the quadratic equation

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

may easily be shewn to be

$$\frac{-b + \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a} \text{ and } \frac{-b - \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}.$$

They are therefore real and unequal, equal, or imaginary, according as the quantity  $b^2 - 4ac$  is positive, zero, or negative,

*i.e.* according as  $b^2 \begin{matrix} \geq \\ = \\ < \end{matrix} 4ac$ .

**2.** *Relations between the roots of any algebraic equation and the coefficients of the terms of the equation.*

If any equation be written so that the coefficient of the highest term is unity, it is shewn in any treatise on Algebra that

(1) the sum of the roots is equal to the coefficient of the second term with its sign changed,

(2) the sum of the products of the roots, taken two at a time, is equal to the coefficient of the third term,

(3) the sum of their products, taken three at a time, is equal to the coefficient of the fourth term with its sign changed,

and so on.

**Ex. 1.** If  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  be the roots of the equation

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0, \text{ i.e. } x^2 + \frac{b}{a}x + \frac{c}{a} = 0,$$

we have 
$$\alpha + \beta = -\frac{b}{a} \text{ and } \alpha\beta = \frac{c}{a}.$$

**Ex. 2.** If  $\alpha, \beta,$  and  $\gamma$  be the roots of the cubic equation

$$ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0,$$

i.e. of 
$$x^3 + \frac{b}{a}x^2 + \frac{c}{a}x + \frac{d}{a} = 0,$$

we have 
$$\alpha + \beta + \gamma = -\frac{b}{a},$$

$$\beta\gamma + \gamma\alpha + \alpha\beta = \frac{c}{a},$$

and 
$$\alpha\beta\gamma = -\frac{d}{a}.$$

**3.** It can easily be shewn that the solution of the equations

$$a_1x + b_1y + c_1z = 0,$$

and 
$$a_2x + b_2y + c_2z = 0,$$

is 
$$\frac{x}{b_1c_2 - b_2c_1} = \frac{y}{c_1a_2 - c_2a_1} = \frac{z}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1}.$$

### Determinant Notation

**4.** The quantity  $\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}$  is called a determinant of the second order and stands for the quantity  $a_1b_2 - a_2b_1$ , so that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} = a_1b_2 - a_2b_1.$$

**Exs.** (i)  $\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 \end{vmatrix} = 2 \times 5 - 4 \times 3 = 10 - 12 = -2;$

(ii)  $\begin{vmatrix} -3 & -4 \\ -7 & -6 \end{vmatrix} = -3 \times (-6) - (-7) \times (-4) = 18 - 28 = -10.$

5. The quantity 
$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1, & a_2, & a_3 \\ b_1, & b_2, & b_3 \\ c_1, & c_2, & c_3 \end{vmatrix} \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

is called a determinant of the third order and stands for the quantity

$$a_1 \times \begin{vmatrix} b_2, & b_3 \\ c_2, & c_3 \end{vmatrix} - a_2 \begin{vmatrix} b_1, & b_3 \\ c_1, & c_3 \end{vmatrix} + a_3 \begin{vmatrix} b_1, & b_2 \\ c_1, & c_2 \end{vmatrix} \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

*i.e.* by Art. 4, for the quantity

$$a_1 (b_2c_3 - b_3c_2) - a_2 (b_1c_3 - b_3c_1) + a_3 (b_1c_2 - b_2c_1),$$

*i.e.*  $a_1 (b_2c_3 - b_3c_2) + a_2 (b_3c_1 - b_1c_3) + a_3 (b_1c_2 - b_2c_1).$

6. A determinant of the third order is therefore reduced to three determinants of the second order by the following rule :

Take in order the quantities which occur in the first row of the determinant ; multiply each of these in turn by the determinant which is obtained by erasing the row and column to which it belongs ; prefix the sign + and - alternately to the products thus obtained and add the results.

Thus, if in (1) we omit the row and column to which  $a_1$  belongs, we have left the determinant  $\begin{vmatrix} b_2, & b_3 \\ c_2, & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$  and this is the coefficient of  $a_1$  in (2).

Similarly, if in (1) we omit the row and column to which  $a_2$  belongs, we have left the determinant  $\begin{vmatrix} b_1, & b_3 \\ c_1, & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$  and this with the - sign prefixed is the coefficient of  $a_2$  in (2).

7. **Ex.** The determinant 
$$\begin{vmatrix} 1, & -2, & -3 \\ -4, & 5, & -6 \\ -7, & 8, & -9 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 1 \times \begin{vmatrix} 5, & -6 \\ 8, & -9 \end{vmatrix} - (-2) \times \begin{vmatrix} -4, & -6 \\ -7, & -9 \end{vmatrix} + (-3) \times \begin{vmatrix} -4, & 5 \\ -7, & 8 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \{5 \times (-9) - 8 \times (-6)\} + 2 \times \{(-4) (-9) - (-7) (-6)\}$$

$$\qquad \qquad \qquad - 3 \times \{(-4) \times 8 - (-7) \times 5\}$$

$$= \{-45 + 48\} + 2\{36 - 42\} - 3\{-32 + 35\}$$

$$= 3 - 12 - 9 = -18.$$

8. The quantity 
$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4 \\ b_1, b_2, b_3, b_4 \\ c_1, c_2, c_3, c_4 \\ d_1, d_2, d_3, d_4 \end{vmatrix}$$

is called a determinant of the fourth order and stands for the quantity

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 \times \begin{vmatrix} b_2, b_3, b_4 \\ c_2, c_3, c_4 \\ d_2, d_3, d_4 \end{vmatrix} - a_2 \times \begin{vmatrix} b_1, b_3, b_4 \\ c_1, c_3, c_4 \\ d_1, d_3, d_4 \end{vmatrix} \\ + a_3 \times \begin{vmatrix} b_1, b_2, b_4 \\ c_1, c_2, c_4 \\ d_1, d_2, d_4 \end{vmatrix} - a_4 \times \begin{vmatrix} b_1, b_2, b_3 \\ c_1, c_2, c_3 \\ d_1, d_2, d_3 \end{vmatrix}, \end{aligned}$$

and its value may be obtained by finding the value of each of these four determinants by the rule of Art. 6.

The rule for finding the value of a determinant of the fourth order in terms of determinants of the third order is clearly the same as that for one of the third order given in Art. 6.

Similarly for determinants of higher orders.

9. A determinant of the second order has two terms. One of the third order has  $3 \times 2$ , *i.e.* 6, terms. One of the fourth order has  $4 \times 3 \times 2$ , *i.e.* 24, terms, and so on.

10. Exs. Prove that

$$(1) \begin{vmatrix} 2, & -3 \\ 4, & 8 \end{vmatrix} = 28. \quad (2) \begin{vmatrix} -6, & 7 \\ -4, & -9 \end{vmatrix} = 82. \quad (3) \begin{vmatrix} 5, & -3, & 7 \\ -2, & 4, & -8 \\ 9, & 3, & -10 \end{vmatrix} = -98.$$

$$(4) \begin{vmatrix} 9, & 8, & 7 \\ 6, & 5, & 4 \\ 3, & 2, & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (5) \begin{vmatrix} -a, & b, & c \\ a, & -b, & c \\ a, & b, & -c \end{vmatrix} = 4abc.$$

$$(6) \begin{vmatrix} a, & h, & g \\ h, & b, & f \\ g, & f, & c \end{vmatrix} = abc + 2fgh - af^2 - bg^2 - ch^2.$$

### Elimination

**11.** Suppose we have the two equations

$$a_1x + a_2y = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

$$b_1x + b_2y = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

between the two unknown quantities  $x$  and  $y$ . There must be some relation holding between the four coefficients  $a_1, a_2, b_1,$  and  $b_2$ . For, from (1), we have

$$\frac{x}{y} = -\frac{a_2}{a_1},$$

and, from (2), we have  $\frac{x}{y} = -\frac{b_2}{b_1}$ .

Equating these two values of  $\frac{x}{y}$  we have

$$\frac{b_2}{b_1} = \frac{a_2}{a_1},$$

*i.e.*  $a_1b_2 - a_2b_1 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (3).$

The result (3) is the condition that both the equations (1) and (2) should be true for the same values of  $x$  and  $y$ . The process of finding this condition is called the eliminating of  $x$  and  $y$  from the equations (1) and (2), and the result (3) is often called the eliminant of (1) and (2).

Using the notation of Art. 4, the result (3) may be written in the form  $\begin{vmatrix} a_1, & a_2 \\ b_1, & b_2 \end{vmatrix} = 0$ .

This result is obtained from (1) and (2) by taking the coefficients of  $x$  and  $y$  in the order in which they occur in the equations, placing them in this order to form a determinant, and equating it to zero.

**12.** Suppose, again, that we have the three equations

$$a_1x + a_2y + a_3z = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

$$b_1x + b_2y + b_3z = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

and  $c_1x + c_2y + c_3z = 0 \dots\dots\dots (3),$

between the three unknown quantities  $x, y,$  and  $z$ .

By dividing each equation by  $z$  we have three equations between the two unknown quantities  $\frac{x}{z}$  and  $\frac{y}{z}$ . Two of these will be sufficient to determine these quantities. By substituting their values in the third equation we shall obtain a relation between the nine coefficients.

Or we may proceed thus. From the equations (2) and (3) we have

$$\frac{x}{b_2c_3 - b_3c_2} = \frac{y}{b_3c_1 - b_1c_3} = \frac{z}{b_1c_2 - b_2c_1}.$$

Substituting these values in (1), we have

$$a_1(b_2c_3 - b_3c_2) + a_2(b_3c_1 - b_1c_3) + a_3(b_1c_2 - b_2c_1) = 0 \dots (4).$$

This is the result of eliminating  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  from the equations (1), (2), and (3).

But, by Art. 5, equation (4) may be written in the form

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1, & a_2, & a_3 \\ b_1, & b_2, & b_3 \\ c_1, & c_2, & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = 0.$$

This eliminant may be written down as in the last article, *viz.* by taking the coefficients of  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  in the order in which they occur in the equations (1), (2), and (3), placing them to form a determinant, and equating it to zero.

**13. Ex.** *What is the value of  $a$  so that the equations*

$$ax + 2y + 3z = 0, \quad 2x - 3y + 4z = 0,$$

*and*

$$5x + 7y - 8z = 0$$

*may be simultaneously true?*

Eliminating  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$ , we have

$$\begin{vmatrix} a, & 2, & 3 \\ 2, & -3, & 4 \\ 5, & 7, & -8 \end{vmatrix} = 0,$$

$$i.e. \quad a[(-3)(-8) - 4 \times 7] - 2[2 \times (-8) - 4 \times 5] + 3[2 \times 7 - 5 \times (-3)] = 0,$$

$$i.e. \quad a[-4] - 2[-36] + 3[29] = 0,$$

so that

$$a = \frac{72 + 87}{4} = \frac{159}{4}.$$

**14.** If again we have the four equations

$$a_1x + a_2y + a_3z + a_4u = 0,$$

$$b_1x + b_2y + b_3z + b_4u = 0,$$

$$c_1x + c_2y + c_3z + c_4u = 0,$$

and

$$d_1x + d_2y + d_3z + d_4u = 0,$$

it could be shewn that the result of eliminating the four quantities  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $z$ , and  $u$  is the determinant

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 & a_4 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 & b_4 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 & c_4 \\ d_1 & d_2 & d_3 & d_4 \end{vmatrix} = 0.$$

A similar theorem could be shewn to be true for  $n$  equations of the first degree, such as the above, between  $n$  unknown quantities.

It will be noted that the right-hand member of each of the above equations is zero.

## Chapter 2

# COORDINATES

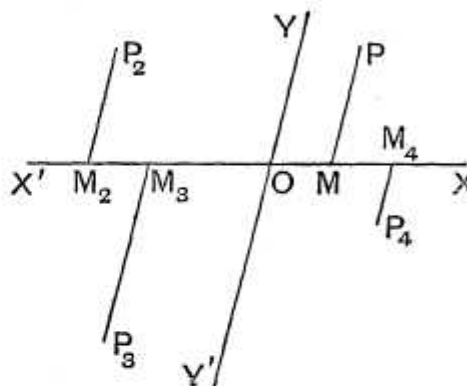
## : LENGTHS OF STRAIGHT LINES AND AREAS OF TRIANGLES

**15. Coordinates.** Let  $OX$  and  $OY$  be two fixed straight lines in the plane of the paper. The line  $OX$  is called the axis of  $x$ , the line  $OY$  the axis of  $y$ , whilst the two together are called the axes of coordinates.

The point  $O$  is called the origin of coordinates or, more shortly, the origin.

From any point  $P$  in the plane draw a straight line parallel to  $OY$  to meet  $OX$  in  $M$ .

The distance  $OM$  is called the Abscissa, and the distance  $MP$  the Ordinate of the point  $P$ , whilst the abscissa and the ordinate together are called its Coordinates.



Distances measured parallel to  $OX$  are called  $x$ , with or without a suffix, (e.g.  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x', x'', \dots$ ), and distances measured parallel to  $OY$  are called  $y$ , with or without a suffix, (e.g.  $y_1, y_2, \dots, y', y'', \dots$ ).

If the distances  $OM$  and  $MP$  be respectively  $x$  and  $y$ , the coordinates of  $P$  are, for brevity, denoted by the symbol  $(x, y)$ .

Conversely, when we are given that the coordinates of a point  $P$  are  $(x, y)$  we know its position. For from  $O$  we have only to measure a distance  $OM (=x)$  along  $OX$  and



then from  $M$  measure a distance  $MP (= y)$  parallel to  $OY$  and we arrive at the position of the point  $P$ . For example in the figure, if  $OM$  be equal to the unit of length and  $MP = 2OM$ , then  $P$  is the point  $(1, 2)$ .

**16.** Produce  $XO$  backwards to form the line  $OX'$  and  $YO$  backwards to become  $OY'$ . In Analytical Geometry we have the same rule as to signs that the student has already met with in Trigonometry.

Lines measured parallel to  $OX$  are positive whilst those measured parallel to  $OX'$  are negative; lines measured parallel to  $OY$  are positive and those parallel to  $OY'$  are negative.

If  $P_2$  be in the quadrant  $YOX'$  and  $P_2M_2$ , drawn parallel to the axis of  $y$ , meet  $OX'$  in  $M_2$ , and if the numerical values of the quantities  $OM_2$  and  $M_2P_2$  be  $a$  and  $b$ , the coordinates of  $P$  are  $(-a$  and  $b)$  and the position of  $P_2$  is given by the symbol  $(-a, b)$ .

Similarly, if  $P_3$  be in the third quadrant  $X'OY'$ , both of its coordinates are negative, and, if the numerical lengths of  $OM_3$  and  $M_3P_3$  be  $c$  and  $d$ , then  $P_3$  is denoted by the symbol  $(-c, -d)$ .

Finally, if  $P_4$  lie in the fourth quadrant its abscissa is positive and its ordinate is negative.

**17. Ex.** Lay down on paper the position of the points

(i)  $(2, -1)$ , (ii)  $(-3, 2)$ , and (iii)  $(-2, -3)$ .

To get the first point we measure a distance 2 along  $OX$  and then a distance 1 parallel to  $OY'$ ; we thus arrive at the required point.

To get the second point, we measure a distance 3 along  $OX'$ , and then 2 parallel to  $OY$ .

To get the third point, we measure 2 along  $OX'$  and then 3 parallel to  $OY'$ .

These three points are respectively the points  $P_4, P_2$ , and  $P_3$  in the figure of Art. 15.

**18.** When the axes of coordinates are as in the figure of Art. 15, not at right angles, they are said to be Oblique Axes, and the angle between their two positive directions  $OX$  and  $OY$ , *i.e.* the angle  $XOY$ , is generally denoted by the Greek letter  $\omega$ .

In general, it is however found to be more convenient to take the axes  $OX$  and  $OY$  at right angles. They are then said to be Rectangular Axes.

It may always be assumed throughout this book that the axes are rectangular unless it is otherwise stated.

**19.** The system of coordinates spoken of in the last few articles is known as the Cartesian System of Coordinates. It is so called because this system was first introduced by the philosopher Des Cartes. There are other systems of coordinates in use, but the Cartesian system is by far the most important.

**20.** *To find the distance between two points whose coordinates are given.*

Let  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  be the two given points, and let their coordinates be respectively  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$ .

Draw  $P_1M_1$  and  $P_2M_2$  parallel to  $OY$ , to meet  $OX$  in  $M_1$  and  $M_2$ . Draw  $P_2R$  parallel to  $OX$  to meet  $M_1P_1$  in  $R$ .

Then

$$P_2R = M_2M_1 = OM_1 - OM_2 = x_1 - x_2,$$

$$RP_1 = M_1P_1 - M_2P_2 = y_1 - y_2,$$

and  $\angle P_2RP_1 = \angle OM_1P_1 = 180^\circ - \angle P_1M_1X = 180^\circ - \omega$ .

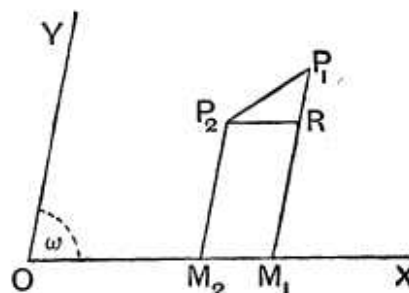
We therefore have [*Trigonometry*, Art. 164]

$$\begin{aligned} P_1P_2^2 &= P_2R^2 + RP_1^2 - 2P_2R \cdot RP_1 \cos P_2RP_1 \\ &= (x_1 - x_2)^2 + (y_1 - y_2)^2 - 2(x_1 - x_2)(y_1 - y_2) \cos(180^\circ - \omega) \\ &= (x_1 - x_2)^2 + (y_1 - y_2)^2 + 2(x_1 - x_2)(y_1 - y_2) \cos \omega \dots (1). \end{aligned}$$

If the axes be, as is generally the case, at right angles, we have  $\omega = 90^\circ$  and hence  $\cos \omega = 0$ .

The formula (1) then becomes

$$P_1P_2^2 = (x_1 - x_2)^2 + (y_1 - y_2)^2,$$



so that in rectangular coordinates the distance between the two points  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  is

$$\sqrt{(x_1 - x_2)^2 + (y_1 - y_2)^2} \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

**Cor.** The distance of the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  from the origin is  $\sqrt{x_1^2 + y_1^2}$ , the axes being rectangular. This follows from (2) by making both  $x_2$  and  $y_2$  equal to zero.

**21.** The formula of the previous article has been proved for the case when the coordinates of both the points are all positive.

Due regard being had to the signs of the coordinates, the formula will be found to be true for all points.

As a numerical example, let  $P_1$  be the point  $(5, 6)$  and  $P_2$  be the point  $(-7, -4)$ , so that we have

$$x_1 = 5, y_1 = 6, x_2 = -7,$$

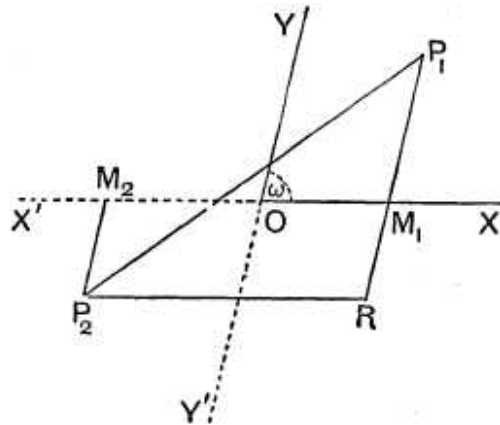
and  $y_2 = -4.$

Then

$$P_2R = M_2O + OM_1 = 7 + 5 \\ = -x_2 + x_1,$$

and

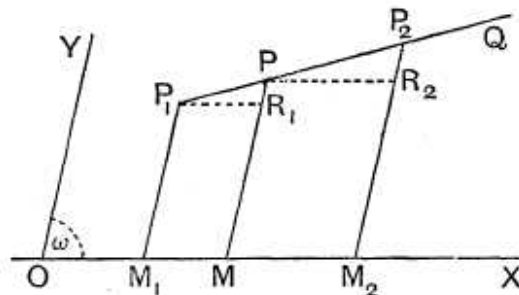
$$RP_1 = RM_1 + M_1P_1 = 4 + 6 \\ = -y_2 + y_1.$$



The rest of the proof is as in the last article.

Similarly any other case could be considered.

**22.** To find the coordinates of the point which divides in a given ratio  $(m_1 : m_2)$  the line joining two given points  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$ .



Let  $P_1$  be the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ ,  $P_2$  the point  $(x_2, y_2)$ , and  $P$  the required point, so that we have

$$P_1P : PP_2 :: m_1 : m_2.$$

Let  $P$  be the point  $(x, y)$  so that if  $P_1M_1$ ,  $PM$ , and  $P_2M_2$  be drawn parallel to the axis of  $y$  to meet the axis of  $x$  in  $M_1$ ,  $M$ , and  $M_2$ , we have

$$OM_1 = x_1, \quad M_1P_1 = y_1, \quad OM = x, \quad MP = y, \quad OM_2 = x_2,$$

and 
$$M_2P_2 = y_2.$$

Draw  $P_1R_1$  and  $PR_2$ , parallel to  $OX$ , to meet  $MP$  and  $M_2P_2$  in  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  respectively.

Then 
$$P_1R_1 = M_1M = OM - OM_1 = x - x_1,$$

$$PR_2 = MM_2 = OM_2 - OM = x_2 - x,$$

$$R_1P = MP - M_1P_1 = y - y_1,$$

and 
$$R_2P_2 = M_2P_2 - MP = y_2 - y.$$

From the similar triangles  $P_1R_1P$  and  $PR_2P_2$  we have

$$\frac{m_1}{m_2} = \frac{P_1P}{PP_2} = \frac{P_1R_1}{PR_2} = \frac{x - x_1}{x_2 - x}.$$

$$\therefore m_1(x_2 - x) = m_2(x - x_1),$$

*i. e.* 
$$x = \frac{m_1x_2 + m_2x_1}{m_1 + m_2}.$$

Again 
$$\frac{m_1}{m_2} = \frac{P_1P}{PP_2} = \frac{R_1P}{R_2P_2} = \frac{y - y_1}{y_2 - y},$$

so that 
$$m_1(y_2 - y) = m_2(y - y_1),$$

and hence 
$$y = \frac{m_1y_2 + m_2y_1}{m_1 + m_2}.$$

The coordinates of the point which divides  $P_1P_2$  internally in the given ratio  $m_1 : m_2$  are therefore

$$\frac{m_1x_2 + m_2x_1}{m_1 + m_2} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{m_1y_2 + m_2y_1}{m_1 + m_2}.$$

If the point  $Q$  divide the line  $P_1P_2$  externally in the same ratio, *i. e.* so that  $P_1Q : QP_2 :: m_1 : m_2$ , its coordinates would be found to be

$$\frac{m_1x_2 - m_2x_1}{m_1 - m_2} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{m_1y_2 - m_2y_1}{m_1 - m_2}.$$

The proof of this statement is similar to that of the preceding article and is left as an exercise for the student.

**Cor.** The coordinates of the middle point of the line joining  $(x_1, y_1)$  to  $(x_2, y_2)$  are

$$\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2} \text{ and } \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}.$$

**23. Ex. 1.** In any triangle  $ABC$  prove that

$$AB^2 + AC^2 = 2(AD^2 + DC^2),$$

where  $D$  is the middle point of  $BC$ .

Take  $B$  as origin,  $BC$  as the axis of  $x$ , and a line through  $B$  perpendicular to  $BC$  as the axis of  $y$ .

Let  $BC = a$ , so that  $C$  is the point  $(a, 0)$ , and let  $A$  be the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

Then  $D$  is the point  $\left(\frac{a}{2}, 0\right)$ .

$$\text{Hence } AD^2 = \left(x_1 - \frac{a}{2}\right)^2 + y_1^2, \text{ and } DC^2 = \left(\frac{a}{2}\right)^2.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence } 2(AD^2 + DC^2) &= 2\left[x_1^2 + y_1^2 - ax_1 + \frac{a^2}{2}\right] \\ &= 2x_1^2 + 2y_1^2 - 2ax_1 + a^2. \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Also } AC^2 = (x_1 - a)^2 + y_1^2,$$

$$\text{and } AB^2 = x_1^2 + y_1^2.$$

$$\text{Therefore } AB^2 + AC^2 = 2x_1^2 + 2y_1^2 - 2ax_1 + a^2.$$

$$\text{Hence } AB^2 + AC^2 = 2(AD^2 + DC^2).$$

This is the well-known theorem of Ptolemy.

**Ex. 2.**  $ABC$  is a triangle and  $D, E,$  and  $F$  are the middle points of the sides  $BC, CA,$  and  $AB$ ; prove that the point which divides  $AD$  internally in the ratio  $2 : 1$  also divides the lines  $BE$  and  $CF$  in the same ratio.

Hence prove that the medians of a triangle meet in a point.

Let the coordinates of the vertices  $A, B,$  and  $C$  be  $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2),$  and  $(x_3, y_3)$  respectively.

The coordinates of  $D$  are therefore  $\frac{x_2 + x_3}{2}$  and  $\frac{y_2 + y_3}{2}$ .

Let  $G$  be the point that divides internally  $AD$  in the ratio  $2 : 1$ , and let its coordinates be  $\bar{x}$  and  $\bar{y}$ .

By the last article

$$\bar{x} = \frac{2 \times \frac{x_2 + x_3}{2} + 1 \times x_1}{2 + 1} = \frac{x_1 + x_2 + x_3}{3}.$$

$$\text{So } \bar{y} = \frac{y_1 + y_2 + y_3}{3}.$$

In the same manner we could shew that these are the coordinates of the points that divide  $BE$  and  $CF$  in the ratio  $2 : 1$ .

Since the point whose coordinates are

$$\frac{x_1 + x_2 + x_3}{3} \text{ and } \frac{y_1 + y_2 + y_3}{3}$$

lies on each of the lines  $AD$ ,  $BE$ , and  $CF$ , it follows that these three lines meet in a point.

This point is called the Centroid of the triangle.

## EXAMPLES I

Find the distances between the following pairs of points.

1.  $(2, 3)$  and  $(5, 7)$ .
2.  $(4, -7)$  and  $(-1, 5)$ .
3.  $(-3, -2)$  and  $(-6, 7)$ , the axes being inclined at  $60^\circ$ .
4.  $(a, o)$  and  $(o, b)$ .
5.  $(b+c, c+a)$  and  $(c+a, a+b)$ .
6.  $(a \cos \alpha, a \sin \alpha)$  and  $(a \cos \beta, a \sin \beta)$ .
7.  $(am_1^2, 2am_1)$  and  $(am_2^2, 2am_2)$ .
8. Lay down in a figure the positions of the points  $(1, -3)$  and  $(-2, 1)$ , and prove that the distance between them is  $5$ .
9. Find the value of  $x_1$  if the distance between the points  $(x_1, 2)$  and  $(3, 4)$  be  $8$ .
10. A line is of length  $10$  and one end is at the point  $(2, -3)$ ; if the abscissa of the other end be  $10$ , prove that its ordinate must be  $3$  or  $-9$ .
11. Prove that the points  $(2a, 4a)$ ,  $(2a, 6a)$ , and  $(2a + \sqrt{3}a, 5a)$  are the vertices of an equilateral triangle whose side is  $2a$ .
12. Prove that the points  $(-2, -1)$ ,  $(1, 0)$ ,  $(4, 3)$ , and  $(1, 2)$  are at the vertices of a parallelogram.
13. Prove that the points  $(2, -2)$ ,  $(8, 4)$ ,  $(5, 7)$ , and  $(-1, 1)$  are at the angular points of a rectangle.
14. Prove that the point  $(-\frac{1}{14}, \frac{3}{14})$  is the centre of the circle circumscribing the triangle whose angular points are  $(1, 1)$ ,  $(2, 3)$ , and  $(-2, 2)$ .

Find the coordinates of the point which

15. divides the line joining the points  $(1, 3)$  and  $(2, 7)$  in the ratio  $3 : 4$ .
16. divides the same line in the ratio  $3 : -4$ .
17. divides, internally and externally, the line joining  $(-1, 2)$  to  $(4, -5)$  in the ratio  $2 : 3$ .

18. divides, internally and externally, the line joining  $(-3, -4)$  to  $(-8, 7)$  in the ratio  $7 : 5$ .

19. The line joining the points  $(1, -2)$  and  $(-3, 4)$  is trisected; find the coordinates of the points of trisection.

20. The line joining the points  $(-6, 8)$  and  $(8, -6)$  is divided into four equal parts; find the coordinates of the points of section.

21. Find the coordinates of the points which divide, internally and externally, the line joining the point  $(a+b, a-b)$  to the point  $(a-b, a+b)$  in the ratio  $a : b$ .

22. The coordinates of the vertices of a triangle are  $(x_1, y_1)$ ,  $(x_2, y_2)$  and  $(x_3, y_3)$ . The line joining the first two is divided in the ratio  $l : k$ , and the line joining this point of division to the opposite angular point is then divided in the ratio  $m : k+l$ . Find the coordinates of the latter point of section.

23. Prove that the coordinates,  $x$  and  $y$ , of the middle point of the line joining the point  $(2, 3)$  to the point  $(3, 4)$  satisfy the equation

$$x - y + 1 = 0.$$

24. If  $G$  be the centroid of a triangle  $ABC$  and  $O$  be any other point, prove that

$$3(GA^2 + GB^2 + GC^2) = BC^2 + CA^2 + AB^2,$$

and

$$OA^2 + OB^2 + OC^2 = GA^2 + GB^2 + GC^2 + 3GO^2.$$

25. Prove that the lines joining the middle points of opposite sides of a quadrilateral and the line joining the middle points of its diagonals meet in a point and bisect one another.

26.  $A, B, C, D, \dots$  are  $n$  points in a plane whose coordinates are  $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2), (x_3, y_3), \dots$ .  $AB$  is bisected in the point  $G_1$ ;  $G_1C$  is divided at  $G_2$  in the ratio  $1 : 2$ ;  $G_2D$  is divided at  $G_3$  in the ratio  $1 : 3$ ;  $G_3E$  at  $G_4$  in the ratio  $1 : 4$ , and so on until all the points are exhausted. Shew that the coordinates of the final point so obtained are

$$\frac{x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots + x_n}{n} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{y_1 + y_2 + y_3 + \dots + y_n}{n}.$$

[This point is called the **Centre of Mean Position** of the  $n$  given points.]

27. Prove that a point can be found which is at the same distance from each of the four points

$$\left(am_1, \frac{a}{m_1}\right), \left(am_2, \frac{a}{m_2}\right), \left(am_3, \frac{a}{m_3}\right), \quad \text{and} \quad \left(\frac{a}{m_1m_2m_3}, am_1m_2m_3\right).$$

## ANSWERS

1. 5.      2. 13.      3.  $3\sqrt{7}$ .      4.  $\sqrt{a^2+b^2}$ .  
 5.  $\sqrt{a^2+2b^2+c^2-2ab-2bc}$ .      6.  $2a \sin \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}$ .  
 7.  $a(m_1-m_2) \sqrt{(m_1+m_2)^2+4}$ .      9.  $3 \pm 2\sqrt{15}$ .  
 15.  $(\frac{1}{7}, \frac{3}{7})$ .      16.  $(-2, -9)$ .      17.  $(1, -\frac{1}{3}); (-11, 16)$ .  
 18.  $(-5\frac{1}{2}, 2\frac{5}{2}); (-20\frac{1}{2}, 34\frac{1}{2})$ .      19.  $(-\frac{1}{3}, 0); (-\frac{5}{3}, 2)$ .  
 20.  $(-\frac{5}{2}, \frac{9}{2}); (1, 1); (\frac{9}{2}, -\frac{5}{2})$ .  
 21.  $(\frac{a^2+b^2}{a+b}, \frac{a^2+2ab-b^2}{a+b}); (\frac{a^2-2ab-b^2}{a-b}, \frac{a^2+b^2}{a-b})$ .  
 22.  $(\frac{kx_1+lx_2+mx_3}{k+l+m}, \frac{ky_1+ly_2+my_3}{k+l+m})$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

$$\begin{aligned} 6. \text{ Distance} &= a \sqrt{(\cos \alpha - \cos \beta)^2 + (\sin \alpha - \sin \beta)^2} \\ &= 2a \sqrt{\sin^2 \frac{\alpha+\beta}{2} \sin^2 \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2} + \cos^2 \frac{\alpha+\beta}{2} \sin^2 \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}} \\ &= 2a \sin \frac{\alpha-\beta}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 7. \text{ Distance} &= a \sqrt{(m_1^2 - m_2^2)^2 + 4(m_1 - m_2)^2} \\ &= a(m_1 - m_2) \sqrt{(m_1 + m_2)^2 + 4}. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 10. \text{ Let } y \text{ be the ordinate; then } 100 &= (10-2)^2 + (y+3)^2. \\ \therefore y^2 + 6y - 27; \therefore y &= 3 \text{ or } -9. \end{aligned}$$

11. Let the points be  $A, B, C$ .

$$\begin{aligned} BC^2 &= (\sqrt{3}a)^2 + (-a)^2 = 4a^2; \quad CA^2 = (\sqrt{3}a)^2 + a^2 = 4a^2; \\ AB^2 &= 0 + (2a)^2 = 4a^2. \end{aligned}$$

12. The middle point of one diagonal is

$$\left(\frac{4-2}{2}, \frac{3-1}{2}\right), \text{ i.e. } (1, 1).$$

The middle point of the other diagonal is

$$\left(\frac{1+1}{2}, \frac{2+0}{2}\right), \text{ i.e. } (1, 1).$$



13. Let the points be  $A, B, C, D$ .

$$AB^2 = (8-2)^2 + (4+2)^2 = 72, \quad BC^2 = (8-5)^2 + (4-7)^2 = 18,$$

$$CD^2 = (5+1)^2 + (7-1)^2 = 72, \quad AD^2 = (2+1)^2 + (-2-1)^2 = 18,$$

$$AC^2 = (5-2)^2 + (7+2)^2 = 90, \quad BD^2 = (8+1)^2 + (4-1)^2 = 90.$$

$$\therefore AB = CD, \quad BC = AD \quad \text{and} \quad AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2.$$

Hence the quadrilateral is a rectangle.

$$18. \left( \frac{-7 \cdot 8 - 5 \cdot 3}{7+5}, \frac{7 \cdot 7 - 5 \cdot 4}{7+5} \right), \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \left( -5\frac{11}{12}, 2\frac{5}{12} \right).$$

$$\left( \frac{-7 \cdot 8 + 5 \cdot 3}{7-5}, \frac{7 \cdot 7 + 5 \cdot 4}{7-5} \right), \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \left( -20\frac{1}{2}, 34\frac{1}{2} \right).$$

$$19. \left( \frac{-1 \cdot 3 + 2 \cdot 1}{1+2}, \frac{1 \cdot 4 - 2 \cdot 2}{1+2} \right), \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \left( -\frac{1}{3}, 0 \right).$$

$$\left( \frac{-2 \cdot 3 + 1 \cdot 1}{2+1}, \frac{2 \cdot 4 - 1 \cdot 2}{2+1} \right), \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \left( -\frac{5}{3}, 2 \right).$$

$$20. \quad \text{The middle point is} \quad \left( \frac{8-6}{2}, \frac{8-6}{2} \right), \quad \text{i.e.} \quad (1, 1).$$

$$\text{The other points are} \quad \left( \frac{1-6}{2}, \frac{1+8}{2} \right), \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \left( -\frac{5}{2}, \frac{9}{2} \right),$$

and  $\left( \frac{1+8}{2}, \frac{1-6}{2} \right), \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \left( \frac{9}{2}, -\frac{5}{2} \right).$

$$21. \left[ \frac{a(a-b) + b(a+b)}{a+b}, \frac{a(a+b) + b(a-b)}{a+b} \right],$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \left( \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a+b}, \frac{a^2 + 2ab - b^2}{a+b} \right).$$

$$\left[ \frac{a(a-b) - b(a+b)}{a-b}, \frac{a(a+b) - b(a-b)}{a-b} \right],$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \left( \frac{a^2 - 2ab - b^2}{a-b}, \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a-b} \right).$$

22. The coordinates of the first point are

$$\left( \frac{lx_2 + kx_1}{l+k}, \frac{ly_2 + ky_1}{l+k} \right);$$

the coordinates of the second point are

$$\left\{ \frac{mx_3 + (k+l) \frac{lx_2 + kx_1}{k+l}}{m+k+l}, \frac{my_3 + (k+l) \left( \frac{ly_2 + ky_1}{l+k} \right)}{m+l+k} \right\}.$$

23. The middle point is  $\left( \frac{2+3}{2}, \frac{3+4}{2} \right)$ , i.e.  $\left( \frac{5}{2}, \frac{7}{2} \right)$ ,

and  $\frac{5}{2} - \frac{7}{2} + 1 = 0$ .

24. (1) See page 13, Ex. 2.

3 ( $GA^2 + GB^2 + GC^2$ )

$$\begin{aligned} &= 3 \Sigma \left[ \left( \frac{x_1 + x_2 + x_3}{3} - x_1 \right)^2 + \left( \frac{y_1 + y_2 + y_3}{3} - y_1 \right)^2 \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{3} \Sigma [(x_2 + x_3 - 2x_1)^2 + (y_2 + y_3 - 2y_1)^2] \\ &= \frac{1}{3} [6 \Sigma x_1^2 - 6 \Sigma x_1 x_2 + 6 \Sigma y_1^2 - 6 \Sigma y_1 y_2] \\ &= 2 \Sigma x_1^2 - 2 \Sigma x_1 x_2 + 2 \Sigma y_1^2 - 2 \Sigma y_1 y_2 \\ &= \Sigma \{(x_1 - x_2)^2 + (y_1 - y_2)^2\} = BC^2 + CA^2 + AB^2. \end{aligned}$$

24. (2) Let  $(a, b)$  be the coordinates of  $O$ .

$GA^2 + GB^2 + GC^2 + 3GO^2$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{3} \left[ \Sigma (x_1 - x_2)^2 + \dots \right] + 3 \left( \frac{x_1 + x_2 + x_3}{3} - a \right)^2 + \dots \\ &= \frac{1}{3} [2 \Sigma x_1^2 - 2 \Sigma x_1 x_2 + \dots + (x_1 + x_2 + x_3 - 3a)^2 + \dots] \\ &= \frac{1}{3} [3 \Sigma x_1^2 - 6a \Sigma x_1 + 9a^2 + \dots] = \Sigma x_1^2 - 2a \Sigma x_1 + 3a^2 + \dots \\ &= \Sigma [(a - x_1)^2 + (b - y_1)^2] = OA^2 + OB^2 + OC^2. \end{aligned}$$

25. Let the angular points  $A, B, C, D$  of the quadrilateral be  $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2)$ , etc.

The middle point of  $AB$  is  $\left( \frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2} \right)$ .

„ „  $CD$  is  $\left( \frac{x_3 + x_4}{2}, \frac{y_3 + y_4}{2} \right)$ .

$\therefore$  the middle point of the line joining these is

$$\left( \frac{x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4}{4}, \frac{y_1 + y_2 + y_3 + y_4}{4} \right).$$

The symmetry shows that this is also the middle point of the lines joining the middle points of  $AD$  and  $BC$ , and of  $AC$  and  $BD$ .

**26.** Assume that the abscissa of  $G_{n-2}$  is  $\frac{x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_{n-1}}{n-1}$ .

Then abscissa of  $G_{n-1}$  will be

$$\frac{(n-1) \frac{x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_{n-1}}{n-1} + x_n}{(n-1) + 1}, \text{ i.e. } \frac{x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots + x_n}{n}.$$

But in Ex. 2, page 13, the abscissae of  $G_1$  and  $G_2$  were shewn to be  $\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}$  and  $\frac{x_1 + x_2 + x_3}{3}$ .

Hence etc. by mathematical induction.

**27.** Let  $A, B, C, D$  be the four points.

If  $(x, y)$  be equidistant from  $A$  and  $D$ ,

$$(x_1 - am_1)^2 + \left( y - \frac{a}{m_1} \right)^2 = \left( x - \frac{a}{m_1 m_2 m_3} \right)^2 + (y - am_1 m_2 m_3)^2,$$

which reduces to

$$2x - 2ym_2 m_3 = a \left\{ \frac{1 + m_1^2 m_2 m_3 - m_2^2 m_3^2 - m_1^2 m_2^3 m_3^3}{m_1 m_2 m_3} \right\}.$$

If  $(x, y)$  be equidistant from  $B$  and  $D$ , we have similarly

$$2x - 2ym_3 m_1 = a \left\{ \frac{1 + m_1 m_2^2 m_3 - m_3^2 m_1^2 - m_1^3 m_2^2 m_3^3}{m_1 m_2 m_3} \right\}.$$

Solving, we have

$$2x = a \left\{ m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \frac{1}{m_1 m_2 m_3} \right\},$$

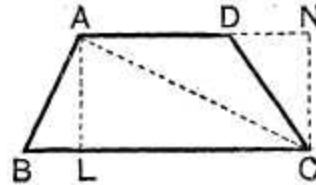
$$2y = a \left\{ \frac{1}{m_1} + \frac{1}{m_2} + \frac{1}{m_3} + m_1 m_2 m_3 \right\}.$$

This point is equidistant from  $A, B$  and  $D$ , and by symmetry is equidistant from  $B, C$  and  $D$ . Hence it is equidistant from the four points.

**24.** To prove that the area of a trapezium, i.e. a quadrilateral having two sides parallel, is one half the sum of the two parallel sides multiplied by the perpendicular distance between them.

Let  $ABCD$  be the trapezium having the sides  $AD$  and  $BC$  parallel.

Join  $AC$  and draw  $AL$  perpendicular to  $BC$  and  $CN$  perpendicular to  $AD$ , produced if necessary.



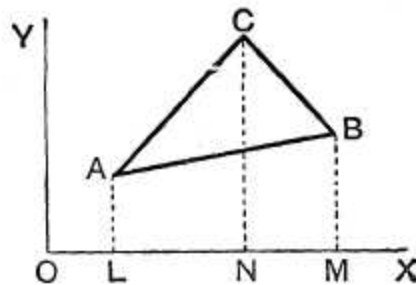
Since the area of a triangle is one half the product of any side and the perpendicular drawn from the opposite angle, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{area } ABCD &= \Delta ABC + \Delta ACD \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot BC \cdot AL + \frac{1}{2} \cdot AD \cdot CN \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (BC + AD) \times AL. \end{aligned}$$

**25.** To find the area of the triangle, the coordinates of whose angular points are given, the axes being rectangular.

Let  $ABC$  be the triangle and let the coordinates of its angular points  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$  be  $(x_1, y_1)$ ,  $(x_2, y_2)$ , and  $(x_3, y_3)$ .

Draw  $AL$ ,  $BM$ , and  $CN$  perpendicular to the axis of  $x$ , and let  $\Delta$  denote the required area.



Then

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta &= \text{trapezium } ALNC + \text{trapezium } CNMB - \text{trapezium } ALMB \\ &= \frac{1}{2}LN(LA + NC) + \frac{1}{2}NM(NC + MB) - \frac{1}{2}LM(LA + MB), \end{aligned}$$

by the last article,

$$= \frac{1}{2} [(x_3 - x_1)(y_1 + y_3) + (x_2 - x_3)(y_2 + y_3) - (x_2 - x_1)(y_1 + y_2)].$$

On simplifying we easily have

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{2} (x_1y_2 - x_2y_1 + x_2y_3 - x_3y_2 + x_3y_1 - x_1y_3),$$

or the equivalent form

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{2} [x_1(y_2 - y_3) + x_2(y_3 - y_1) + x_3(y_1 - y_2)].$$

If we use the determinant notation this may be written (as in Art. 5)

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{2} \begin{vmatrix} x_1, y_1, 1 \\ x_2, y_2, 1 \\ x_3, y_3, 1 \end{vmatrix}.$$

**Cor.** The area of the triangle whose vertices are the origin  $(0, 0)$  and the points  $(x_1, y_1)$ ,  $(x_2, y_2)$  is  $\frac{1}{2} (x_1 y_2 - x_2 y_1)$ .

**26.** In the preceding article, if the axes be oblique, the perpendiculars  $AL$ ,  $BM$ , and  $CN$ , are not equal to the ordinates  $y_1$ ,  $y_2$ , and  $y_3$ , but are equal respectively to  $y_1 \sin \omega$ ,  $y_2 \sin \omega$ , and  $y_3 \sin \omega$ .

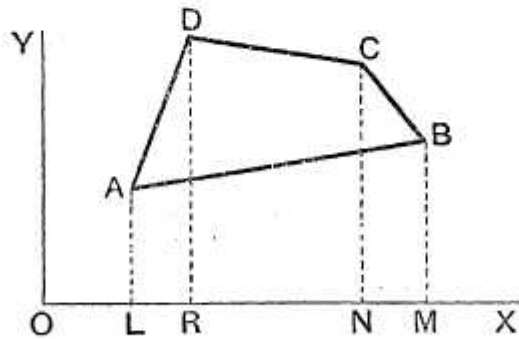
The area of the triangle in this case becomes

$$\frac{1}{2} \sin \omega \{x_1 y_2 - x_2 y_1 + x_2 y_3 - x_3 y_2 + x_3 y_1 - x_1 y_3\},$$

i.e. 
$$\frac{1}{2} \sin \omega \times \begin{vmatrix} x_1, y_1, 1 \\ x_2, y_2, 1 \\ x_3, y_3, 1 \end{vmatrix}.$$

**27.** In order that the expression for the area in Art. 25 may be a positive quantity (as all areas necessarily are) the points  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  must be taken in the order in which they would be met by a person starting from  $A$  and walking round the triangle in such a manner that *the area of the triangle is always on his left hand*. Otherwise the expressions of Art. 25 would be found to be negative.

**28.** *To find the area of a quadrilateral the coordinates of whose angular points are given.*



Let the angular points of the quadrilateral, taken in order, be  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ , and  $D$ , and let their coordinates be respectively  $(x_1, y_1)$ ,  $(x_2, y_2)$ ,  $(x_3, y_3)$ , and  $(x_4, y_4)$ .

Draw  $AL$ ,  $BM$ ,  $CN$ , and  $DR$  perpendicular to the axis of  $x$ .

Then the area of the quadrilateral

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \text{trapezium } ALRD + \text{trapezium } DRNC + \text{trapezium } CNMB \\
 &\quad - \text{trapezium } ALMB \\
 &= \frac{1}{2}LR(LA + RD) + \frac{1}{2}RN(RD + NC) + \frac{1}{2}NM(NC + MB) \\
 &\quad - \frac{1}{2}LM(LA + MB) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2}\{(x_4 - x_1)(y_1 + y_4) + (x_3 - x_4)(y_3 + y_4) + (x_2 - x_3)(y_3 + y_2) \\
 &\quad - (x_2 - x_1)(y_1 + y_2)\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2}\{(x_1y_2 - x_2y_1) + (x_2y_3 - x_3y_2) + (x_3y_4 - x_4y_3) + (x_4y_1 - x_1y_4)\}.
 \end{aligned}$$

**29.** The above formula may also be obtained by drawing the lines  $OA$ ,  $OB$ ,  $OC$  and  $OD$ . For the quadrilateral  $ABCD$

$$= \triangle OBC + \triangle OCD - \triangle OBA - \triangle OAD.$$

But the coordinates of the vertices of the triangle  $OBC$  are  $(0, 0)$ ,  $(x_2, y_2)$  and  $(x_3, y_3)$ ; hence, by Art. 25, its area is  $\frac{1}{2}(x_2y_3 - x_3y_2)$ .

So for the other triangles.

The required area therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2}[(x_2y_3 - x_3y_2) + (x_3y_4 - x_4y_3) - (x_2y_1 - x_1y_2) - (x_1y_4 - x_4y_1)] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2}[(x_1y_2 - x_2y_1) + (x_2y_3 - x_3y_2) + (x_3y_4 - x_4y_3) + (x_4y_1 - x_1y_4)].
 \end{aligned}$$

In a similar manner it may be shewn that the area of a polygon of  $n$  sides the coordinates of whose angular points, taken in order, are

$$\begin{aligned}
 &(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2), (x_3, y_3), \dots, (x_n, y_n) \\
 \text{is } &\frac{1}{2}[(x_1y_2 - x_2y_1) + (x_2y_3 - x_3y_2) + \dots + (x_ny_1 - x_1y_n)].
 \end{aligned}$$

## EXAMPLES II

Find the areas of the triangles the coordinates of whose angular points are respectively

1.  $(1, 3)$ ,  $(-7, 6)$  and  $(5, -1)$ .
2.  $(0, 4)$ ,  $(3, 6)$  and  $(-8, -2)$ .
3.  $(5, 2)$ ,  $(-9, -3)$  and  $(-3, -5)$ .

4.  $(a, b+c), (a, b-c)$  and  $(-a, c)$ .
5.  $(a, c+a), (a, c)$  and  $(-a, c-a)$ .
6.  $(a \cos \phi_1, b \sin \phi_1), (a \cos \phi_2, b \sin \phi_2)$  and  $(a \cos \phi_3, b \sin \phi_3)$ .
7.  $(am_1^2, 2am_1), (am_2^2, 2am_2)$  and  $(am_3^2, 2am_3)$ .
8.  $\{am_1m_2, a(m_1+m_2)\}, \{am_2m_3, a(m_2+m_3)\}$  and  $\{am_3m_1, a(m_3+m_1)\}$ .
9.  $\left\{am_1, \frac{a}{m_1}\right\}, \left\{am_2, \frac{a}{m_2}\right\}$  and  $\left\{am_3, \frac{a}{m_3}\right\}$ .

Prove (by shewing that the area of the triangle formed by them is zero) that the following sets of three points are in a straight line :

10.  $(1, 4), (3, -2),$  and  $(-3, 16)$ .
11.  $(-\frac{1}{2}, 3), (-5, 6),$  and  $(-8, 8)$ .
12.  $(a, b+c), (b, c+a),$  and  $(c, a+b)$ .

Find the areas of the quadrilaterals the coordinates of whose angular points, taken in order, are

13.  $(1, 1), (3, 4), (5, -2),$  and  $(4, -7)$ .
14.  $(-1, 6), (-3, -9), (5, -8),$  and  $(3, 9)$ .
15. If  $O$  be the origin, and if the coordinates of any two points  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  be respectively  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$ , prove that

$$OP_1 \cdot OP_2 \cdot \cos P_1OP_2 = x_1x_2 + y_1y_2.$$

## ANSWERS

1. 10.                      2. 1.                      3. 29.                      4.  $2ac$ .
5.  $a^2$ .                      6.  $2ab \sin \frac{\phi_2 - \phi_3}{2} \sin \frac{\phi_3 - \phi_1}{2} \sin \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2}$ .
7.  $a^2(m_2 - m_3)(m_3 - m_1)(m_1 - m_2)$ .
8.  $\frac{1}{2}a^2(m_2 - m_3)(m_3 - m_1)(m_1 - m_2)$ .
9.  $\frac{1}{2}a^2(m_2 - m_3)(m_3 - m_1)(m_1 - m_2) \div m_1m_2m_3$ .
13.  $20\frac{1}{2}$ .                      14. 96.

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1—3. Use the formula of Art. 25.

4. By Art. 25

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{2} \{a(b-c-c) + a(c-b-c) - a(b+c-b+c)\} = -2ac.$$

$$5. \quad \Delta = \frac{1}{2} \{a(c-c+a) + a(c-a-c-a) - a(c+a-c)\} \\ = -a^2.$$

$$6. \quad \Delta = \frac{ab}{2} \{\Sigma \cos \phi_1 (\sin \phi_2 - \sin \phi_3)\}, \\ = \frac{ab}{2} \{\sin(\phi_2 - \phi_1) + \sin(\phi_3 - \phi_2) + \sin(\phi_1 - \phi_3)\} \\ = \frac{ab}{2} \left[ 2 \sin \frac{\phi_3 - \phi_1}{2} \cos \frac{2\phi_2 - \phi_1 - \phi_3}{2} \right. \\ \left. + 2 \sin \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_3}{2} \cos \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_3}{2} \right] \\ = ab \sin \frac{\phi_3 - \phi_1}{2} \left[ \cos \frac{2\phi_2 - \phi_1 - \phi_3}{2} - \cos \frac{\phi_3 - \phi_1}{2} \right] \\ = 2ab \sin \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2} \sin \frac{\phi_2 - \phi_3}{2} \sin \frac{\phi_3 - \phi_1}{2}.$$

$$7. \quad \Delta = \frac{1}{2} a^2 \{\Sigma m_1^2 (2m_2 - 2m_3)\} = a^2 [m_1^2 (m_2 - m_3) \\ + m_2^2 (m_3 - m_1) + m_3^2 (m_1 - m_2)] \\ = -a^2 (m_2 - m_3) (m_3 - m_1) (m_1 - m_2).$$

$$8. \quad \Delta = \frac{1}{2} a^2 \{\Sigma m_1 m_2 (\overline{m_2 + m_3 - m_3 + m_1})\} \\ = -\frac{1}{2} a^2 (m_2 - m_3) (m_3 - m_1) (m_1 - m_2).$$

$$9. \quad \Delta = \frac{1}{2} a^2 \Sigma \left\{ m_1 \left( \frac{1}{m_2} - \frac{1}{m_3} \right) \right\} = \frac{1}{2} a^2 \Sigma \frac{m_1^2 (m_3 - m_2)}{m_1 m_2 m_3} \\ = \frac{1}{2} a^2 (m_2 - m_3) (m_3 - m_1) (m_1 - m_2) \div m_1 m_2 m_3.$$

10, 11. Use the formula of Art. 25.

$$12. \quad \Delta = \frac{1}{2} \Sigma \{a(\overline{c+a-a+b})\} = \frac{1}{2} \Sigma a(c-b) = 0.$$

13, 14. Use the formula of Art. 28.

$$15. \quad OP_1 \cdot OP_2 \sin P_1 \hat{O} P_2 = \Delta P_1 O P_2 = x_1 y_2 - x_2 y_1, \\ \text{and} \quad OP_1^2 \cdot OP_2^2 = (x_1^2 + y_1^2)(x_2^2 + y_2^2). \\ \therefore OP_1^2 \cdot OP_2^2 (1 - \sin^2 P_1 \hat{O} P_2) \\ = (x_1^2 + y_1^2)(x_2^2 + y_2^2) - (x_1 y_2 - x_2 y_1)^2 = (x_1 x_2 + y_1 y_2)^2. \\ \therefore OP_1 \cdot OP_2 \cos P_1 \hat{O} P_2 = x_1 x_2 + y_1 y_2.$$



**30. Polar Coordinates.** There is another method, which is often used, for determining the position of a point in a plane.

Suppose  $O$  to be a fixed point, called the **origin** or **pole**, and  $OX$  a fixed line, called the **initial line**.

Take any other point  $P$  in the plane of the paper and join  $OP$ . The position of  $P$  is clearly known when the angle  $XOP$  and the length  $OP$  are given.

[For giving the angle  $XOP$  shows the direction in which  $OP$  is drawn, and giving the distance  $OP$  tells the distance of  $P$  along this direction.]

The angle  $XOP$  which would be traced out by the line  $OP$  in revolving from the initial line  $OX$  is called the **vectorial angle** of  $P$  and the length  $OP$  is called its **radius vector**. The two taken together are called the **polar coordinates** of  $P$ .

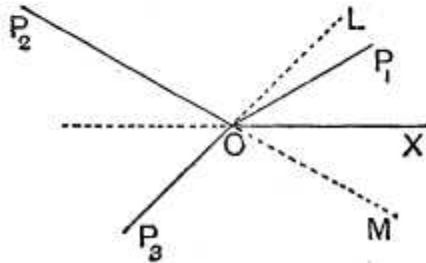
If the vectorial angle be  $\theta$  and the radius vector be  $r$ , the position of  $P$  is denoted by the symbol  $(r, \theta)$ .

The radius vector is positive if it be measured from the origin  $O$  along the line bounding the vectorial angle; if measured in the opposite direction it is negative.

**31. Ex.** Construct the positions of the points (i)  $(2, 30^\circ)$ , (ii)  $(3, 150^\circ)$ , (iii)  $(-2, 45^\circ)$ , (iv)  $(-3, 330^\circ)$ , (v)  $(3, -210^\circ)$  and (vi)  $(-3, -30^\circ)$ .

(i) To construct the first point, let the radius vector revolve from  $OX$  through an angle of  $30^\circ$ , and then mark off along it a distance equal to two units of length. We thus obtain the point  $P_1$ .

(ii) For the second point, the radius vector revolves from  $OX$  through  $150^\circ$  and is then in the position  $OP_2$ ; measuring a distance 3 along it we arrive at  $P_2$ .



(iii) For the third point, let the radius vector revolve from  $OX$  through  $45^\circ$  into the position  $OL$ . We have now to measure along  $OL$  a distance  $-2$ , *i.e.* we have to measure a distance 2 not along  $OL$  but in the *opposite* direction. Producing  $LO$  to  $P_3$ , so that  $OP_3$  is 2 units of length, we have the required point  $P_3$ .

(iv) To get the fourth point, we let the radius vector rotate from  $OX$  through  $330^\circ$  into the position  $OM$  and measure on it a distance  $-3$ , *i.e.* 3 in the direction  $MO$  produced. We thus have the point  $P_2$ , which is the same as the point given by (ii).

(v) If the radius vector rotate through  $-210^\circ$ , it will be in the position  $OP_2$ , and the point required is  $P_2$ .

(vi) For the sixth point, the radius vector, after rotating through  $-30^\circ$ , is in the position  $OM$ . We then measure  $-3$  along it, *i.e.* 3 in the direction  $MO$  produced, and once more arrive at the point  $P_2$ .

**32.** It will be observed that in the previous example the same point  $P_2$  is denoted by each of the four sets of polar coordinates

$$(3, 150^\circ), (-3, 330^\circ), (3, -210^\circ) \text{ and } (-3, -30^\circ).$$

In general it will be found that the same point is given by each of the polar coordinates

$(r, \theta)$ ,  $(-r, 180^\circ + \theta)$ ,  $\{r, -(360^\circ - \theta)\}$  and  $\{-r, -(180^\circ - \theta)\}$ , or, expressing the angles in radians, by each of the coordinates

$$(r, \theta), (-r, \pi + \theta), \{r, -(2\pi - \theta)\} \text{ and } \{-r, -(\pi - \theta)\}.$$

It is also clear that adding  $360^\circ$  (or any multiple of  $360^\circ$ ) to the vectorial angle does not alter the final position of the revolving line, so that  $(r, \theta)$  is always the same point as  $(r, \theta + n \cdot 360^\circ)$ , where  $n$  is an integer.

So, adding  $180^\circ$  or any odd multiple of  $180^\circ$  to the vectorial angle and changing the sign of the radius vector gives the same point as before. Thus the point

$$[-r, \theta + (2n + 1) 180^\circ]$$

is the same point as  $[-r, \theta + 180^\circ]$ , *i.e.* is the point  $[r, \theta]$ .

**33.** *To find the length of the straight line joining two points whose polar coordinates are given.*

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be the two points and let their polar coordinates be  $(r_1, \theta_1)$  and  $(r_2, \theta_2)$  respectively, so that

$$OA = r_1, OB = r_2, \angle XOA = \theta_1, \text{ and } \angle XOB = \theta_2.$$

Then (*Trigonometry*, Art. 164)

$$AB^2 = OA^2 + OB^2 - 2OA \cdot OB \cos AOB$$

$$= r_1^2 + r_2^2 - 2r_1r_2 \cos (\theta_1 - \theta_2).$$

**34.** To find the area of a triangle the coordinates of whose angular points are given.

Let  $ABC$  be the triangle and let  $(r_1, \theta_1)$ ,  $(r_2, \theta_2)$ , and  $(r_3, \theta_3)$  be the polar coordinates of its angular points.

We have

$$\Delta ABC = \Delta OBC + \Delta OCA - \Delta OBA \dots\dots(1).$$

Now

$$\Delta OBC = \frac{1}{2}OB \cdot OC \sin BOC$$

[*Trigonometry*, Art. 198]

$$= \frac{1}{2}r_2r_3 \sin (\theta_3 - \theta_2).$$

So  $\Delta OCA = \frac{1}{2}OC \cdot OA \sin COA = \frac{1}{2}r_3r_1 \sin (\theta_1 - \theta_3)$ ,  
 and  $\Delta OAB = \frac{1}{2}OA \cdot OB \sin AOB = \frac{1}{2}r_1r_2 \sin (\theta_1 - \theta_2)$   
 $= -\frac{1}{2}r_1r_2 \sin (\theta_2 - \theta_1).$

Hence (1) gives

$$\Delta ABC = \frac{1}{2} [r_2r_3 \sin (\theta_3 - \theta_2) + r_3r_1 \sin (\theta_1 - \theta_3) + r_1r_2 \sin (\theta_2 - \theta_1)].$$

**35.** To change from Cartesian Coordinates to Polar Coordinates, and conversely.

Let  $P$  be any point whose Cartesian coordinates, referred to rectangular axes, are  $x$  and  $y$ , and whose polar coordinates, referred to  $O$  as pole and  $OX$  as initial line, are  $(r, \theta)$ .

Draw  $PM$  perpendicular to  $OX$  so that we have

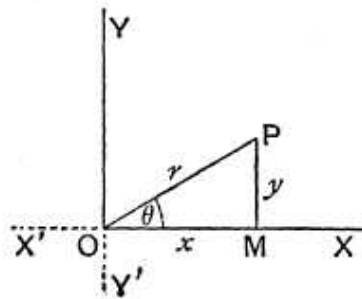
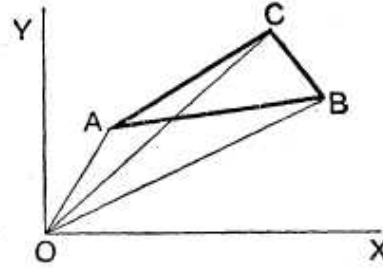
$OM = x$ ,  $MP = y$ ,  $\angle MOP = \theta$ ,  
 and  $OP = r$ .

From the triangle  $MOP$  we have

$$x = OM = OP \cos MOP = r \cos \theta \dots\dots(1),$$

$$y = MP = OP \sin MOP = r \sin \theta \dots\dots(2),$$

$$r = OP = \sqrt{OM^2 + MP^2} = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} \dots\dots(3),$$



and 
$$\tan \theta = \frac{MP}{OM} = \frac{y}{x} \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

Equations (1) and (2) express the Cartesian coordinates in terms of the polar coordinates.

Equations (3) and (4) express the polar in terms of the Cartesian coordinates.

The same relations will be found to hold if  $P$  be in any other of the quadrants into which the plane is divided by  $XOX'$  and  $YOY'$ .

**Ex.** Change to Cartesian coordinates the equations

(1)  $r = a \sin \theta$ , and (2)  $r^{\frac{1}{2}} = a^{\frac{1}{2}} \cos \frac{\theta}{2}$ .

(1) Multiplying the equation by  $r$ , it becomes  $r^2 = ar \sin \theta$ ,  
*i.e.* by equations (2) and (3),  $x^2 + y^2 = ay$ .

(2) Squaring the equation (2), it becomes

$$r = a \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} = \frac{a}{2} (1 + \cos \theta),$$

*i.e.*  $2r^2 = ar + ar \cos \theta,$

*i.e.*  $2(x^2 + y^2) = a\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} + ax,$

*i.e.*  $(2x^2 + 2y^2 - ax)^2 = a^2(x^2 + y^2).$

**EXAMPLES III**

Lay down the positions of the points whose polar coordinates are

1.  $(3, 45^\circ)$ .      2.  $(-2, -60^\circ)$ .      3.  $(4, 135^\circ)$ .      4.  $(2, 330^\circ)$ .  
 5.  $(-1, -180^\circ)$ .      6.  $(1, -210^\circ)$ .      7.  $(5, -675^\circ)$ .      8.  $(a, \frac{\pi}{2})$ .  
 9.  $(2a, -\frac{\pi}{2})$ .      10.  $(-a, \frac{\pi}{6})$ .      11.  $(-2a, -\frac{2\pi}{3})$ .

Find the lengths of the straight lines joining the pairs of points whose polar coordinates are

12.  $(2, 30^\circ)$  and  $(4, 120^\circ)$ .      13.  $(-3, 45^\circ)$  and  $(7, 105^\circ)$ .  
 14.  $(a, \frac{\pi}{2})$  and  $(3a, \frac{\pi}{6})$ .  
 15. Prove that the points  $(0, 0)$ ,  $(3, \frac{\pi}{2})$ , and  $(3, \frac{\pi}{6})$  form an equilateral triangle.

Find the areas of the triangles the coordinates of whose angular points are

16.  $(1, 30^\circ)$ ,  $(2, 60^\circ)$ , and  $(3, 90^\circ)$ .  
 17.  $(-3, -30^\circ)$ ,  $(5, 150^\circ)$ , and  $(7, 210^\circ)$ .  
 18.  $(-a, \frac{\pi}{6})$ ,  $(a, \frac{\pi}{2})$ , and  $(-2a, -\frac{2\pi}{3})$ .

Find the polar coordinates (drawing the figure in each case) of the points

19.  $x = \sqrt{3}$ ,  $y = 1$ .      20.  $x = -\sqrt{3}$ ,  $y = 1$ .      21.  $x = -1$ ,  $y = 1$ .

Find the Cartesian coordinates (drawing a figure in each case) of the points whose polar coordinates are

22.  $(5, \frac{\pi}{4})$ .      23.  $(-5, \frac{\pi}{3})$ .      24.  $(5, -\frac{\pi}{4})$ .

Change to polar coordinates the equations

25.  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ .      26.  $y = x \tan a$ .      27.  $x^2 + y^2 = 2ax$ .  
 28.  $x^2 - y^2 = 2ay$ .      29.  $x^3 = y^2(2a - x)$ .      30.  $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2(x^2 - y^2)$ .

Transform to Cartesian coordinates the equations

31.  $r = a$ .      32.  $\theta = \tan^{-1} m$ .      33.  $r = a \cos \theta$ .  
 34.  $r = a \sin 2\theta$ .      35.  $r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta$ .      36.  $r^2 \sin 2\theta = 2a^2$ .  
 37.  $r^2 \cos 2\theta = a^2$ .      38.  $r^{\frac{1}{2}} \cos \frac{\theta}{2} = a^{\frac{1}{2}}$ .      39.  $r^{\frac{1}{2}} = a^{\frac{1}{2}} \sin \frac{\theta}{2}$ .  
 40.  $r(\cos 3\theta + \sin 3\theta) = 5k \sin \theta \cos \theta$ .

## ANSWERS

12.  $2\sqrt{5}$ .      13.  $\sqrt{79}$ .      14.  $\sqrt{7}a$ .      16.  $\frac{1}{4}(8 - 3\sqrt{3})$ .  
 17.  $\frac{7\sqrt{3}}{2}$ .      18.  $\frac{1}{4}a^2\sqrt{3}$ .      25.  $r^2 = a^2$ .      26.  $\theta = a$ .  
 27.  $r = 2a \cos \theta$ .      28.  $r \cos 2\theta = 2a \sin \theta$ .      29.  $r \cos \theta = 2a \sin^2 \theta$ .  
 30.  $r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta$ .      31.  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ .      32.  $y = mx$ .  
 33.  $x^2 + y^2 = ax$ .      34.  $(x^2 + y^2)^3 = 4a^2x^2y^2$ .  
 35.  $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2(x^2 - y^2)$ .      36.  $xy = a^2$ .      37.  $x^2 - y^2 = a^2$ .  
 38.  $y^2 + 4ax = 4a^2$ .      39.  $4(x^2 + y^2)(x^2 + y^2 + ax) = a^2y^2$ .  
 40.  $x^3 - 3xy^2 + 3x^2y - y^3 = 5kxy$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

- 12—15. Use the formula of Art. 33.
- 16—18. Use the formula of Art. 34.
- 19—21. Use Art. 35.      25.  $r^2 = a^2$ .
26.  $r \sin \theta = r \cos \theta \cdot \tan \alpha$ ;  $\therefore \tan \theta = \tan \alpha$ ;  $\therefore \theta = \alpha$ .
27.  $r^2 = 2ar \cos \theta$ ;  $\therefore r = 2a \cos \theta$ .
28.  $r^2 \cos^2 \theta - r^2 \sin^2 \theta = 2ar \sin \theta$ ;  $\therefore r \cos 2\theta = 2a \sin \theta$ .
29.  $r^3 \cos^3 \theta = r^2 \sin^2 \theta (2a - r \cos \theta)$ .  
 $\therefore r \cos^3 \theta = (1 - \cos^2 \theta) (2a - r \cos \theta)$   
 $= 2a - r \cos \theta - 2a \cos^2 \theta + r \cos^3 \theta$ .  
 $\therefore r \cos \theta = 2a \sin^2 \theta$ .
30.  $r^4 = a^2 r^2 (\cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta)$ ;  $\therefore r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta$ .
31.  $r^2 = a^2$ ;  $\therefore x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ .    32.  $\tan \theta = m$ .  $\therefore y = mx$ .
33.  $r^2 = ar \cos \theta$ ;  $\therefore x^2 + y^2 = ax$ .
34.  $r^3 = 2ar \cos \theta \cdot r \sin \theta$ ;  $\therefore (x^2 + y^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} = 2axy$ .  
 $\therefore (x^2 + y^2)^3 = 4a^2 x^2 y^2$ .
36.  $2ra \cos \theta \cdot r \sin \theta = 2a^2$ ;  $\therefore xy = a^2$ .
37.  $r^2 (\cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta) = a^2$ ;  $\therefore x^2 - y^2 = a^2$ .
38.  $2r \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} = 2a$ ;  $\therefore r(1 + \cos \theta) = 2a$ .  
 $\therefore \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} + x = 2a$ ;  $\therefore x^2 + y^2 = 4a^2 + x^2 - 4ax$ .  
 $\therefore y^2 + 4ax = 4a^2$ .
39.  $2r = 2a \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2}$ ;  $\therefore 2r = a(1 - \cos \theta)$ .  
 $\therefore 2r^2 = a(r - r \cos \theta)$ ;  $\therefore 2(x^2 + y^2) + ax = a\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ .  
 $\therefore 4(x^2 + y^2)^2 + 4ax(x^2 + y^2) = a^2 y^2$ .
40.  $r^3 (\cos^3 \theta - 3 \cos \theta \sin^2 \theta + 3 \sin \theta \cos^2 \theta - \sin^3 \theta)$   
 $= 5kr^2 \sin \theta \cos \theta$ .  
 $\therefore x^3 - 3xy^2 + 3x^2y - y^3 = 5kxy$ .

## Chapter 3

# LOCUS

## : EQUATION TO A LOCUS

**36.** WHEN a point moves so as always to satisfy a given condition, or conditions, the path it traces out is called its Locus under these conditions.

For example, suppose  $O$  to be a given point in the plane of the paper and that a point  $P$  is to move on the paper so that its distance from  $O$  shall be constant and equal to  $a$ . It is clear that all the positions of the moving point must lie on the circumference of a circle whose centre is  $O$  and whose radius is  $a$ . The circumference of this circle is therefore the "Locus" of  $P$  when it moves subject to the condition that its distance from  $O$  shall be equal to the constant distance  $a$ .

**37.** Again, suppose  $A$  and  $B$  to be two fixed points in the plane of the paper and that a point  $P$  is to move in the plane of the paper so that its distances from  $A$  and  $B$  are to be always equal. If we bisect  $AB$  in  $C$  and through it draw a straight line (of infinite length in both directions) perpendicular to  $AB$ , then any point on this straight line is at equal distances from  $A$  and  $B$ . Also there is no point, whose distances from  $A$  and  $B$  are the same, which does not lie on this straight line. This straight line is therefore the "Locus" of  $P$  subject to the assumed condition.

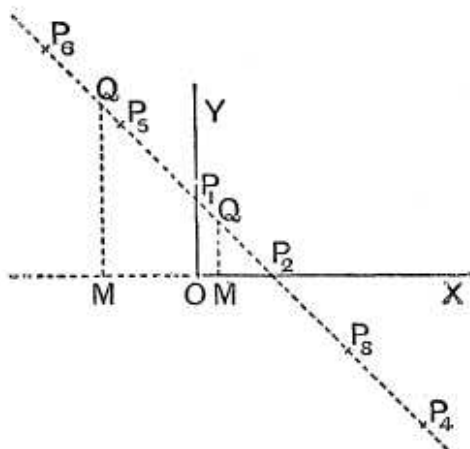
**38.** Again, suppose  $A$  and  $B$  to be two fixed points and that the point  $P$  is to move in the plane of the paper so that the angle  $APB$  is always a right angle. If we describe a circle on  $AB$  as diameter then  $P$  may be any

point on the circumference of this circle, since the angle in a semi-circle is a right angle; also it could easily be shewn that  $APB$  is not a right angle except when  $P$  lies on this circumference. The "Locus" of  $P$  under the assumed condition is therefore a circle on  $AB$  as diameter.

**39.** One single equation between two unknown quantities  $x$  and  $y$ , e.g.

$$x + y = 1 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

cannot completely determine the values of  $x$  and  $y$ .



Such an equation has an infinite number of solutions.

Amongst them are the following :

$$\begin{array}{cccc} x = 0, & x = 1, & x = 2, & x = 3, \\ y = 1 \} & y = 0 \} & y = -1 \} & y = -2 \} & \dots \\ & & & x = -1, & x = -2, \\ & & & y = 2 \} & y = 3 \} & \dots \end{array}$$

Let us mark down on paper a number of points whose coordinates (as defined in the last chapter) satisfy equation (1).

Let  $OX$  and  $OY$  be the axes of coordinates.

If we mark off a distance  $OP_1 (= 1)$  along  $OY$ , we have a point  $P_1$  whose coordinates  $(0, 1)$  clearly satisfy equation (1).

If we mark off a distance  $OP_2 (= 1)$  along  $OX$ , we have a point  $P_2$  whose coordinates  $(1, 0)$  satisfy (1).



Similarly the point  $P_3, (2, -1)$ , and  $P_4, (3, -2)$ , satisfy the equation (1).

Again, the coordinates  $(-1, 2)$  of  $P_5$  and the coordinates  $(-2, 3)$  of  $P_6$  satisfy equation (1).

On making the measurements carefully we should find that all the points we obtain lie on the line  $P_1P_2$  (produced both ways).

Again, if we took *any* point  $Q$ , lying on  $P_1P_2$ , and draw a perpendicular  $QM$  to  $OX$ , we should find on measurement that the sum of its  $x$  and  $y$  (each taken with its proper sign) would be equal to unity, so that the coordinates of  $Q$  would satisfy (1).

Also we should find no point, whose coordinates satisfy (1), which does not lie on  $P_1P_2$ .

All the points, lying on the straight line  $P_1P_2$ , and no others are therefore such that their coordinates satisfy the equation (1).

This result is expressed in the language of Analytical Geometry by saying that (1) is the Equation to the Straight Line  $P_1P_2$ .

**40.** Consider again the equation

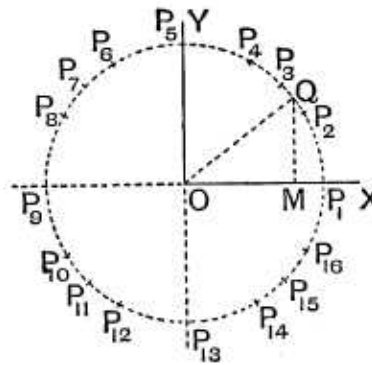
$$x^2 + y^2 = 4 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Amongst an infinite number of solutions of this equation are the following:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} x=2, \} & x=\sqrt{3} \} & x=\sqrt{2} \} & x=1 \} \\ y=0 \} & y=1 \} & y=\sqrt{2} \} & y=\sqrt{3} \} \\ \\ x=0 \} & x=-1, \} & x=-\sqrt{2}, \} & x=-\sqrt{3}, \} \\ y=2 \} & y=\sqrt{3} \} & y=\sqrt{2} \} & y=1 \} \\ \\ x=-2, \} & x=-\sqrt{3}, \} & x=-\sqrt{2}, \} & x=-1, \} \\ y=0 \} & y=-1 \} & y=-\sqrt{2} \} & y=-\sqrt{3} \} \\ \\ x=0, \} & x=1, \} & x=\sqrt{2}, \} & x=\sqrt{3} \} \\ y=-2 \} & y=-\sqrt{3} \} & y=-\sqrt{2} \} & y=-1 \} \end{array} \text{ and}$$

All these points are respectively represented by the points  $P_1, P_2, P_3, \dots P_{16}$ , and they will all be found to lie on the dotted circle whose centre is  $O$  and radius is 2.

Also, if we take any other point  $Q$  on this circle and its ordinate  $QM$ , it follows, since  $OM^2 + MQ^2 = OQ^2 = 4$ , that the  $x$  and  $y$  of the point  $Q$  satisfies (1).



The dotted circle therefore passes through all the points whose coordinates satisfy (1).

In the language of Analytical Geometry the equation (1) is therefore the equation to the above circle.

**41.** As another example let us trace the locus of the point whose coordinates satisfy the equation

$$y^2 = 4x \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

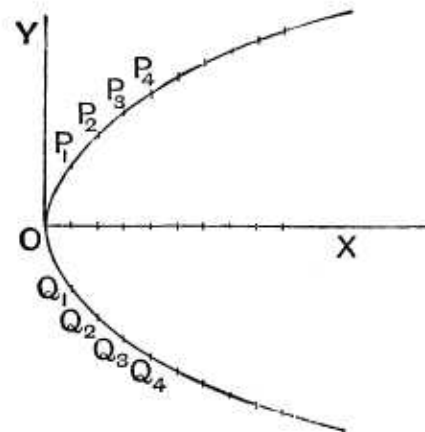
If we give  $x$  a negative value we see that  $y$  is impossible; for the square of a real quantity cannot be negative.

We see therefore that there are no points lying to the left of  $OY$ .

If we give  $x$  any positive value we see that  $y$  has two real corresponding values which are equal and of opposite signs.

The following values, amongst an infinite number of others, satisfy (1), viz.

$$\begin{aligned} & \left. \begin{array}{l} x=0, \\ y=0 \end{array} \right\}, \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} x=1, \\ y=+2 \text{ or } -2 \end{array} \right\}, \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} x=2, \\ y=2\sqrt{2} \text{ or } -2\sqrt{2} \end{array} \right\}, \\ & \left. \begin{array}{l} x=4 \\ y=+4 \text{ or } -4 \end{array} \right\}, \quad \dots \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} x=16, \\ y=8 \text{ or } -8 \end{array} \right\}, \quad \dots \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} x=+\infty, \\ y=+\infty \text{ or } -\infty \end{array} \right\}. \end{aligned}$$



The origin is the first of these points and  $P_1$  and  $Q_1$ ,  $P_2$  and  $Q_2$ ,  $P_3$  and  $Q_3$ , ... represent the next pairs of points.

If we took a large number of values of  $x$  and the corresponding values of  $y$ , the points thus obtained would be found all to lie on the curve in the figure.

Both of its branches would be found to stretch away to infinity towards the right of the figure.

Also, if we took any point on this curve and measured with sufficient accuracy its  $x$  and  $y$  the values thus obtained would be found to satisfy equation (1).

Also we should not be able to find any point, not lying on the curve, whose coordinates would satisfy (1).

In the language of Analytical Geometry the equation (1) is the equation to the above curve. This curve is called a Parabola and will be fully discussed in Chapter 10.

**42.** If a point move so as to satisfy any given condition it will describe some definite curve, or locus, and there can always be found an equation between the  $x$  and  $y$  of *any* point on the path.

This equation is called the equation to the locus or curve. Hence

**Def. Equation to a curve.** *The equation to a curve is the relation which exists between the coordinates of any point on the curve, and which holds for no other points except those lying on the curve.*

**43.** Conversely to every equation between  $x$  and  $y$  it will be found that there is, in general, a definite geometrical locus.

Thus in Art. 39 the equation is  $x + y = 1$ , and the definite path, or locus, is the straight line  $P_1P_2$  (produced indefinitely both ways).

In Art. 40 the equation is  $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ , and the definite path, or locus, is the dotted circle.

Again the equation  $y = 1$  states that the moving point is such that its ordinate is always unity, *i.e.* that it is always at a distance 1 from the axis of  $x$ . The definite path, or locus, is therefore a straight line parallel to  $OX$  and at a distance unity from it.

**44.** In the next chapter it will be found that if the equation be of the first degree (*i.e.* if it contain no products, squares, or higher powers of  $x$  and  $y$ ) the locus corresponding is always a straight line.

If the equation be of the second or higher degree, the corresponding locus is, in general, a curved line.

**45.** We append a few simple examples of the formation of the equation to a locus.

**Ex. 1.** *A point moves so that the algebraic sum of its distances from two given perpendicular axes is equal to a constant quantity  $a$ ; find the equation to its locus.*

Take the two straight lines as the axes of coordinates. Let  $(x, y)$  be any point satisfying the given condition. We then have  $x + y = a$ .

This being the relation connecting the coordinates of any point on the locus is the equation to the locus.

It will be found in the next chapter that this equation represents a straight line.

**Ex. 2.** *The sum of the squares of the distances of a moving point from the two fixed points  $(a, 0)$  and  $(-a, 0)$  is equal to a constant quantity  $2c^2$ . Find the equation to its locus.*

Let  $(x, y)$  be any position of the moving point. Then, by Art. 20, the condition of the question gives

$$\{(x - a)^2 + y^2\} + \{(x + a)^2 + y^2\} = 2c^2,$$

*i.e.* 
$$x^2 + y^2 = c^2 - a^2.$$

This being the relation between the coordinates of any, and every, point that satisfies the given condition is, by Art. 42, the equation to the required locus.

This equation tells us that the square of the distance of the point  $(x, y)$  from the origin is constant and equal to  $c^2 - a^2$ , and therefore the locus of the point is a circle whose centre is the origin.

**Ex. 3.** *A point moves so that its distance from the point  $(-1, 0)$  is always three times its distance from the point  $(0, 2)$ .*

Let  $(x, y)$  be any point which satisfies the given condition. We then have

$$\sqrt{(x + 1)^2 + (y - 0)^2} = 3\sqrt{(x - 0)^2 + (y - 2)^2},$$

so that, on squaring,

$$x^2 + 2x + 1 + y^2 = 9(x^2 + y^2 - 4y + 4),$$

*i.e.* 
$$8(x^2 + y^2) - 2x - 36y + 35 = 0.$$

This being the relation between the coordinates of each, and every, point that satisfies the given relation is, by Art. 42, the required equation.

It will be found, in a later chapter, that this equation represents a circle.

### EXAMPLES IV

By taking a number of solutions, as in Arts. 39—41, sketch the loci of the following equations :

1.  $2x + 3y = 10$ .      2.  $4x - y = 7$ .      3.  $x^2 - 2ax + y^2 = 0$ .
4.  $x^2 - 4ax + y^2 + 3a^2 = 0$ .      5.  $y^2 = x$ .      6.  $3x = y^2 - 9$ .
7.  $\frac{x^2}{4} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$ .

$A$  and  $B$  being the fixed points  $(a, 0)$  and  $(-a, 0)$  respectively, obtain the equations giving the locus of  $P$ , when

8.  $PA^2 - PB^2 = \text{a constant quantity} = 2k^2$ .
9.  $PA = nPB$ ,  $n$  being constant.
10.  $PA + PB = c$ , a constant quantity.
11.  $PB^2 + PC^2 = 2PA^2$ ,  $C$  being the point  $(c, 0)$ .

12. Find the locus of a point whose distance from the point  $(1, 2)$  is equal to its distance from the axis of  $y$ .

Find the equation to the locus of a point which is always equidistant from the points whose coordinates are

13.  $(1, 0)$  and  $(0, -2)$ .      14.  $(2, 3)$  and  $(4, 5)$ .
15.  $(a+b, a-b)$  and  $(a-b, a+b)$ .

Find the equation to the locus of a point which moves so that

16. its distance from the axis of  $x$  is three times its distance from the axis of  $y$ .
17. its distance from the point  $(a, 0)$  is always four times its distance from the axis of  $y$ .
18. the sum of the squares of its distances from the axes is equal to 3.
19. the square of its distance from the point  $(0, 2)$  is equal to 4.
20. its distance from the point  $(3, 0)$  is three times its distance from  $(0, 2)$ .
21. its distance from the axis of  $x$  is always one half its distance from the origin.
22. A fixed point is at a perpendicular distance  $a$  from a fixed straight line and a point moves so that its distance from the fixed point is always equal to its distance from the fixed line. Find the equation to its locus, the axes of coordinates being drawn through the fixed point and being parallel and perpendicular to the given line.

23. In the previous question if the first distance be (1), always half, and (2), always twice, the second distance, find the equations to the respective loci.

### ANSWERS

1. 10.            2. 1.            3. 29.            4.  $2ac$ .  
 5.  $a^2$ .            6.  $2ab \sin \frac{\phi_2 - \phi_3}{2} \sin \frac{\phi_3 - \phi_1}{2} \sin \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2}$ .  
 7.  $a^2 (m_2 - m_3) (m_3 - m_1) (m_1 - m_2)$ .  
 8.  $\frac{1}{2}a^2 (m_2 - m_3) (m_3 - m_1) (m_1 - m_2)$ .  
 9.  $\frac{1}{2}a^2 (m_2 - m_3) (m_3 - m_1) (m_1 - m_2) \div m_1 m_2 m_3$ .  
 13.  $20\frac{1}{2}$ .            14. 96.

### SOLUTIONS/HINTS

8.  $(x - a)^2 + y^2 - (x + a)^2 - y^2 = 2k^2. \quad \therefore 2ax + k^2 = 0.$

9.  $(x - a)^2 + y^2 = n^2 \{(x + a)^2 + y^2\}.$   
 $\therefore (n^2 - 1)(x^2 + y^2 + a^2) + 2ax(n^2 + 1) = 0.$

10.  $\sqrt{(x - a)^2 + y^2} + \sqrt{(x + a)^2 + y^2} = c.$

We also have

$$-[(x - a)^2 + y^2] + [(x + a)^2 + y^2] = 4ax.$$

Hence, by division,

$$-\sqrt{(x - a)^2 + y^2} + \sqrt{(x + a)^2 + y^2} = \frac{4ax}{c}.$$

$$\therefore 2\sqrt{(x + a)^2 + y^2} = \frac{4ax}{c} + c.$$

$$\therefore 4\{x^2 + a^2 + y^2 + 2ax\} = \frac{16a^2x^2}{c^2} + c^2 + 8ax.$$

$$\therefore 4x^2(c^2 - 4a^2) + 4c^2y^2 = c^2(c^2 - 4a^2).$$

11.  $(x + a)^2 + y^2 + (x - c)^2 + y^2 = 2(x - a)^2 + 2y^2.$   
 $\therefore 6ax - a^2 - 2cx + c^2 = 0.$

12.  $(x - 1)^2 + (y - 2)^2 = x^2.$

13.  $(x - 1)^2 + y^2 = x^2 + (y + 2)^2.$

$$14. \quad (x-2)^2 + (y-3)^2 = (x-4)^2 + (y-5)^2.$$

$$15. \quad \{x - \overline{a+b}\}^2 + \{y - \overline{a-b}\}^2 = \{x - \overline{a-b}\}^2 + \{y - \overline{a+b}\}^2.$$

$$\therefore -4bx = -4by. \quad \therefore x = y.$$

$$16. \quad y = 3x. \quad 17. \quad (x-a)^2 + y^2 = 16x^2.$$

$$18. \quad x^2 + y^2 = 3. \quad 19. \quad x^2 + (y-2)^2 = 4.$$

$$20. \quad (x-3)^2 + y^2 = 9 \{x^2 + (y-2)^2\}.$$

$$\therefore 8x^2 + 8y^2 + 6x - 36y + 27 = 0.$$

$$21. \quad y = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}. \quad \therefore 3y^2 = x^2.$$

22. From a figure it is easily seen that the locus is given by  $\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = a - y$ .  $\therefore x^2 + y^2 = a^2 + y^2 - 2ay$ .

$$23. \quad (1) \quad \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = \frac{1}{2}(a - y).$$

$$(2) \quad \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = 2(a - y).$$

## Chapter 4

# THE STRAIGHT LINE

## : RECTANGULAR COORDINATES

**46.** *To find the equation to a straight line which is parallel to one of the coordinate axes.*

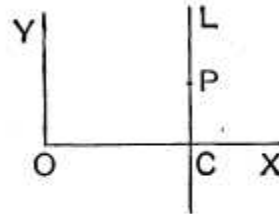
Let  $CL$  be any line parallel to the axis of  $y$  and passing through a point  $C$  on the axis of  $x$  such that  $OC = c$ .

Let  $P$  be any point on this line whose coordinates are  $x$  and  $y$ .

Then the abscissa of the point  $P$  is always  $c$ , so that

$$x = c \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

This being true for every point on the line  $CL$  (produced indefinitely both ways), and for no other point, is, by Art. 42, the equation to the line.



It will be noted that the equation does not contain the coordinate  $y$ .

Similarly the equation to a straight line parallel to the axis of  $x$  is  $y = d$ .

**Cor.** The equation to the axis of  $x$  is  $y = 0$ .

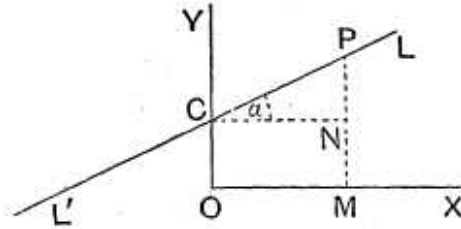
The equation to the axis of  $y$  is  $x = 0$ .

**47.** *To find the equation to a straight line which cuts off a given intercept on the axis of  $y$  and is inclined at a given angle to the axis of  $x$ .*

Let the given intercept be  $c$  and let the given angle be  $\alpha$ .



Let  $C$  be a point on the axis of  $y$  such that  $OC$  is  $c$ . Through  $C$  draw a straight line  $LCL'$  inclined at an angle  $\alpha$  ( $= \tan^{-1} m$ ) to the axis of  $x$ , so that  $\tan \alpha = m$ .



The straight line  $LCL'$  is therefore the straight line required, and we have to find the relation between the coordinates of any point  $P$  lying on it.

Draw  $PM$  perpendicular to  $OX$  to meet in  $N$  a line through  $C$  parallel to  $OX$ .

Let the coordinates of  $P$  be  $x$  and  $y$ , so that  $OM = x$  and  $MP = y$ .

Then  $MP = NP + MN = CN \tan \alpha + OC = m \cdot x + c$ ,

*i.e.* 
$$y = mx + c.$$

This relation being true for *any* point on the given straight line is, by Art. 42, the equation to the straight line.

[In this, and other similar cases, it could be shewn, conversely, that the equation is only true for points lying on the given straight line.]

**Cor.** The equation to any straight line passing through the origin, *i.e.* which cuts off a zero intercept from the axis of  $y$ , is found by putting  $c = 0$  and hence is  $y = mx$ .

**48.** The angle  $\alpha$  which is used in the previous article is the angle through which a straight line, originally parallel to  $OX$ , would have to turn in order to coincide with the given direction, the rotation being always in the positive direction. Also  $m$  is always the tangent of this angle. In the case of such a straight line as  $AB$ , in the figure of Art. 50,  $m$  is equal to the tangent of the angle  $XAP$  (not of the angle  $PAO$ ). In this case therefore  $m$ , being the tangent of an obtuse angle, is a negative quantity.

The student should verify the truth of the equation of the last article for *all* points on the straight line  $LCL'$ , and also for straight lines in other positions, *e.g.* for such a straight line as  $A_2B_2$  in the figure of Art. 59. In this latter case both  $m$  and  $c$  are negative quantities.

A careful consideration of all the possible cases of a few propositions will soon satisfy him that this verification is not always necessary, but that it is sufficient to consider the standard figure.

**49. Ex.** The equation to the straight line cutting off an intercept 3 from the negative direction of the axis of  $y$ , and inclined at  $120^\circ$  to the axis of  $x$ , is

$$y = x \tan 120^\circ + (-3),$$

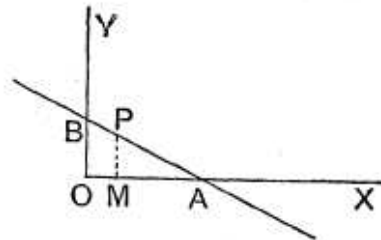
*i.e.*  $y = -x\sqrt{3} - 3,$

*i.e.*  $y + x\sqrt{3} + 3 = 0.$

**50.** To find the equation to the straight line which cuts off given intercepts  $a$  and  $b$  from the axes.

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be on  $OX$  and  $OY$  respectively, and be such that  $OA = a$  and  $OB = b$ .

Join  $AB$  and produce it indefinitely both ways. Let  $P$  be any point  $(x, y)$  on this straight line, and draw  $PM$  perpendicular to  $OX$ .



We require the relation that always holds between  $x$  and  $y$ , so long as  $P$  lies on  $AB$ .

By Euc. VI. 4, we have

$$\frac{OM}{OA} = \frac{PB}{AB}, \text{ and } \frac{MP}{OB} = \frac{AP}{AB}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{OM}{OA} + \frac{MP}{OB} = \frac{PB + AP}{AB} = 1,$$

*i.e.*  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1.$

This is therefore the required equation; for it is the relation that holds between the coordinates of *any* point lying on the given straight line.

**51.** The equation in the preceding article may be also obtained by expressing the fact that the sum of the areas of the triangles  $OPA$  and  $OPB$  is equal to  $OAB$ , so that

$$\frac{1}{2} a \times y + \frac{1}{2} b \times x = \frac{1}{2} a \times b,$$

and hence

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1.$$

**52. Ex. 1.** Find the equation to the straight line passing through the point  $(3, -4)$  and cutting off intercepts, equal but of opposite signs, from the two axes.

Let the intercepts cut off from the two axes be of lengths  $a$  and  $-a$ .

The equation to the straight line is then

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{-a} = 1,$$

*i.e.*  $x - y = a \dots \dots \dots (1).$

Since, in addition, the straight line is to go through the point (3, -4), these coordinates must satisfy (1), so that

$$3 - (-4) = a,$$

and therefore  $a = 7.$

The required equation is therefore

$$x - y = 7.$$

**Ex. 2.** Find the equation to the straight line which passes through the point (-5, 4) and is such that the portion of it between the axes is divided by the point in the ratio of 1 : 2.

Let the required straight line be  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1.$  This meets the axes in the points whose coordinates are (a, 0) and (0, b).

The coordinates of the point dividing the line joining these points in the ratio 1 : 2, are (Art. 22)

$$\frac{2 \cdot a + 1 \cdot 0}{2 + 1} \text{ and } \frac{2 \cdot 0 + 1 \cdot b}{2 + 1}, \text{ i.e. } \frac{2a}{3} \text{ and } \frac{b}{3}.$$

If this be the point (-5, 4) we have

$$-5 = \frac{2a}{3} \text{ and } 4 = \frac{b}{3},$$

so that  $a = -\frac{15}{2}$  and  $b = 12.$

The required straight line is therefore

$$\frac{x}{-\frac{15}{2}} + \frac{y}{12} = 1,$$

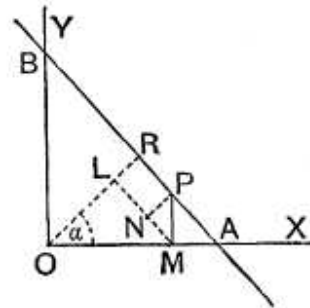
*i.e.*  $5y - 8x = 60.$

**53.** To find the equation to a straight line in terms of the perpendicular let fall upon it from the origin and the angle that this perpendicular makes with the axis of x.

Let OR be the perpendicular from O and let its length be p.

Let a be the angle that OR makes with OX.

Let P be any point, whose coordinates are x and y, lying on AB; draw the ordinate PM, and also ML perpendicular to OR and PN perpendicular to ML.



Then  $OL = OM \cos \alpha \dots\dots\dots(1),$   
 and  $LR = NP = MP \sin NMP.$

But  $\angle NMP = 90^\circ - \angle NMO = \angle MOL = \alpha.$   
 $\therefore LR = MP \sin \alpha \dots\dots\dots(2).$

Hence, adding (1) and (2), we have  
 $OM \cos \alpha + MP \sin \alpha = OL + LR = OR = p,$

*i.e.*  $x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = p.$

This is the required equation.

**54.** In Arts. 47—53 we have found that the corresponding equations are only of the first degree in  $x$  and  $y$ . We shall now prove that

*Any equation of the first degree in  $x$  and  $y$  always represents a straight line.*

For the most general form of such an equation is

$$Ax + By + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

where  $A, B,$  and  $C$  are constants, *i.e.* quantities which do not contain  $x$  and  $y$  and which remain the same for all points on the locus.

Let  $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2),$  and  $(x_3, y_3)$  be *any* three points on the locus of the equation (1).

Since the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  lies on the locus, its coordinates when substituted for  $x$  and  $y$  in (1) must satisfy it.

Hence  $Ax_1 + By_1 + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$

So  $Ax_2 + By_2 + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3),$

and  $Ax_3 + By_3 + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots(4).$

Since these three equations hold between the three quantities  $A, B,$  and  $C,$  we can, as in Art. 12, eliminate them.

The result is

$$\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & 1 \\ x_3 & y_3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0 \dots\dots\dots(5).$$

But, by Art. 25, the relation (5) states that the area of the triangle whose vertices are  $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2),$  and  $(x_3, y_3)$  is zero.

Also these are any three points on the locus.

The locus must therefore be a straight line; for a curved line could not be such that the triangle obtained by joining *any* three points on it should be zero.

**55.** The proposition of the preceding article may also be deduced from Art. 47. For the equation

$$Ax + By + C = 0$$

may be written  $y = -\frac{A}{B}x - \frac{C}{B}$ ,

and this is the same as the straight line

$$y = mx + c,$$

if  $m = -\frac{A}{B}$  and  $c = -\frac{C}{B}$ .

But in Art. 47 it was shewn that  $y = mx + c$  was the equation to a straight line cutting off an intercept  $c$  from the axis of  $y$  and inclined at an angle  $\tan^{-1}m$  to the axis of  $x$ .

The equation  $Ax + By + C = 0$

therefore represents a straight line cutting off an intercept  $-\frac{C}{B}$  from the axis of  $y$  and inclined at an angle  $\tan^{-1}\left(-\frac{A}{B}\right)$  to the axis of  $x$ .

**56.** We can reduce the general equation of the first degree  $Ax + By + C = 0$ .....(1)

to the form of Art. 53.

For, if  $p$  be the perpendicular from the origin on (1) and  $\alpha$  the angle it makes with the axis, the equation to the straight line must be

$$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

This equation must therefore be the same as (1).

Hence 
$$\frac{\cos \alpha}{A} = \frac{\sin \alpha}{B} = \frac{-p}{C},$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{p}{C} = \frac{\cos \alpha}{-A} = \frac{\sin \alpha}{-B} = \frac{\sqrt{\cos^2 \alpha + \sin^2 \alpha}}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}},$$

Hence 
$$\cos \alpha = \frac{-A}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}, \quad \sin \alpha = \frac{-B}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}, \quad \text{and} \quad p = \frac{C}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}.$$

The equation (1) may therefore be reduced to the form (2) by dividing it by  $\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}$  and arranging it so that the constant term is negative.

**57. Ex.** Reduce to the perpendicular form the equation

$$x + y\sqrt{3} + 7 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Here  $\sqrt{A^2 + B^2} = \sqrt{1 + 3} = \sqrt{4} = 2.$

Dividing (1) by 2, we have

$$\frac{1}{2}x + y\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{7}{2} = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $x(-\frac{1}{2}) + y(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}) - \frac{7}{2} = 0,$

*i.e.*  $x \cos 240^\circ + y \sin 240^\circ - \frac{7}{2} = 0.$

**58.** To trace the straight line given by an equation of the first degree.

Let the equation be

$$Ax + By + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

(a) This can be written in the form

$$\frac{x}{-\frac{C}{A}} + \frac{y}{-\frac{C}{B}} = 1.$$

Comparing this with the result of Art. 50, we see that it represents a straight line which cuts off intercepts  $-\frac{C}{A}$  and  $-\frac{C}{B}$  from the axes. Its position is therefore known.

If  $C$  be zero, the equation (1) reduces to the form

$$y = -\frac{A}{B}x,$$

and thus (by Art. 47, Cor.) represents a straight line passing through the origin inclined at an angle  $\tan^{-1}\left(-\frac{A}{B}\right)$  to the axis of  $x$ . Its position is therefore known.

( $\beta$ ) The straight line may also be traced by finding the coordinates of any two points on it.

If we put  $y = 0$  in (1) we have  $x = -\frac{C}{A}$ . The point  $\left(-\frac{C}{A}, 0\right)$  therefore lies on it.

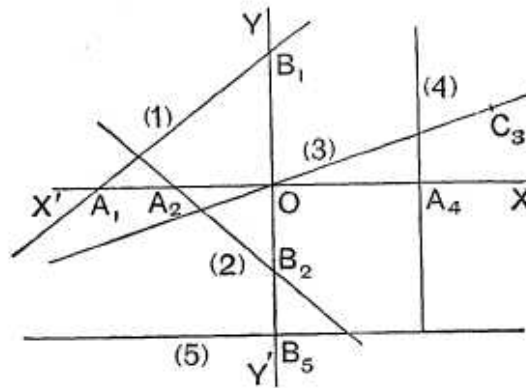
If we put  $x=0$ , we have  $y=-\frac{C}{B}$ , so that the point  $(0, -\frac{C}{B})$  lies on it.

Hence, as before, we have the position of the straight line.

**59. Ex.** Trace the straight lines

(1)  $3x - 4y + 7 = 0$ ; (2)  $7x + 8y + 9 = 0$ ;

(3)  $3y = x$ ; (4)  $x = 2$ ; (5)  $y = -2$ .



(1) Putting  $y=0$ , we have  $x = -\frac{7}{3}$ ,  
and putting  $x=0$ , we have  $y = \frac{7}{4}$ .

Measuring  $OA_1 (= -\frac{7}{3})$  along the axis of  $x$  we have one point on the line.

Measuring  $OB_1 (= \frac{7}{4})$  along the axis of  $y$  we have another point.

Hence  $A_1B_1$ , produced both ways, is the required line.

(2) Putting in succession  $y$  and  $x$  equal to zero, we have the intercepts on the axes equal to  $-\frac{9}{8}$  and  $-\frac{9}{7}$ .

If then  $OA_2 = -\frac{9}{7}$  and  $OB_2 = -\frac{9}{8}$ , we have  $A_2B_2$  the required line.

(3) The point  $(0, 0)$  satisfies the equation so that the origin is on the line.

Also the point  $(3, 1)$ , i.e.  $C_3$ , lies on it. The required line is therefore  $OC_3$ .

(4) The line  $x=2$  is, by Art. 46, parallel to the axis of  $y$  and passes through the point  $A_4$  on the axis of  $x$  such that  $OA_4=2$ .

(5) The line  $y = -2$  is parallel to the axis of  $x$  and passes through the point  $B_5$  on the axis of  $y$ , such that  $OB_5 = -2$ .

**60. Straight Line at Infinity.** We have seen that the equation  $Ax + By + C = 0$  represents a straight line

which cuts off intercepts  $-\frac{C}{A}$  and  $-\frac{C}{B}$  from the axes of coordinates.

If  $A$  vanish, but not  $B$  or  $C$ , the intercept on the axis of  $x$  is infinitely great. The equation of the straight line then reduces to the form  $y = \text{constant}$ , and hence, as in Art. 46, represents a straight line parallel to  $Ox$ .

So if  $B$  vanish, but not  $A$  or  $C$ , the straight line meets the axis of  $y$  at an infinite distance and is therefore parallel to it.

If  $A$  and  $B$  both vanish, but not  $C$ , these two intercepts are both infinite and therefore the straight line  $0 \cdot x + 0 \cdot y + C = 0$  is altogether at infinity.

**61.** The multiplication of an equation by a constant does not alter it. Thus the equations

$$2x - 3y + 5 = 0 \text{ and } 10x - 15y + 25 = 0$$

represent the same straight line.

Conversely, if two equations of the first degree represent the same straight line, one equation must be equal to the other multiplied by a constant quantity, so that the ratios of the corresponding coefficients must be the same.

For example, if the equations

$$a_1x + b_1y + c_1 = 0 \text{ and } A_1x + B_1y + C_1 = 0$$

represent the same straight line, we must have

$$\frac{a_1}{A_1} = \frac{b_1}{B_1} = \frac{c_1}{C_1}.$$

**62.** To find the equation to the straight line which passes through the two given points  $(x', y')$  and  $(x'', y'')$ .

By Art. 47, the equation to **any** straight line is

$$y = mx + c \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

By properly determining the quantities  $m$  and  $c$  we can make (1) represent any straight line we please.

If (1) pass through the point  $(x', y')$ , we have

$$y' = mx' + c \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

Substituting for  $c$  from (2), the equation (1) becomes

$$y - y' = m(x - x') \dots \dots \dots (3).$$



This is the equation to the line going through  $(x', y')$  making an angle  $\tan^{-1} m$  with  $OX$ . If in addition (3) passes through the point  $(x'', y'')$ , then

$$y'' - y' = m(x'' - x'),$$

giving

$$m = \frac{y'' - y'}{x'' - x'}.$$

Substituting this value in (3), we get as the required equation

$$y - y' = \frac{y'' - y'}{x'' - x'} (x - x').$$

**63. Ex.** Find the equation to the straight line which passes through the points  $(-1, 3)$  and  $(4, -2)$ .

Let the required equation be

$$y = mx + c \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

Since (1) goes through the first point, we have

$$3 = -m + c, \text{ so that } c = m + 3.$$

Hence (1) becomes

$$y = mx + m + 3 \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

If in addition the line goes through the second point, we have

$$-2 = 4m + m + 3, \text{ so that } m = -1.$$

Hence (2) becomes

$$y = -x + 2, \text{ i.e. } x + y = 2.$$

Or, again, using the result of the last article the equation is

$$y - 3 = \frac{-2 - 3}{4 - (-1)} (x + 1) = -x - 1,$$

i.e.

$$y + x = 2.$$

**64.** To fix definitely the position of a straight line we must have always two quantities given. Thus one point on the straight line and the direction of the straight line will determine it; or again two points lying on the straight line will determine it.

Analytically, the general equation to a straight line will contain two arbitrary constants, which will have to be determined so that the general equation may represent any particular straight line.

Thus, in Art. 47, the quantities  $m$  and  $c$  which remain the same, so long as we are considering the same straight line, are the two constants for the straight line.

Similarly, in Art. 50, the quantities  $a$  and  $b$  are the constants for the straight line.

**65.** In any equation to a locus the quantities  $x$  and  $y$ , which are the coordinates of any point on the locus, are called Current Coordinates; the curve may be conceived as traced out by a point which “runs” along the locus.

### EXAMPLES V

Find the equation to the straight line

1. cutting off an intercept unity from the positive direction of the axis of  $y$  and inclined at  $45^\circ$  to the axis of  $x$ .
2. cutting off an intercept  $-5$  from the axis of  $y$  and being equally inclined to the axes.
3. cutting off an intercept  $2$  from the negative direction of the axis of  $y$  and inclined at  $30^\circ$  to  $OX$ .
4. cutting off an intercept  $-3$  from the axis of  $y$  and inclined at an angle  $\tan^{-1} \frac{3}{5}$  to the axis of  $x$ .

Find the equation to the straight line

5. cutting off intercepts  $3$  and  $2$  from the axes.
6. cutting off intercepts  $-5$  and  $6$  from the axes.
7. Find the equation to the straight line which passes through the point  $(5, 6)$  and has intercepts on the axes
  - (1) equal in magnitude and both positive,
  - (2) equal in magnitude but opposite in sign.
8. Find the equations to the straight lines which pass through the point  $(1, -2)$  and cut off equal distances from the two axes.
9. Find the equation to the straight line which passes through the given point  $(x', y')$  and is such that the given point bisects the part intercepted between the axes.
10. Find the equation to the straight line which passes through the point  $(-4, 3)$  and is such that the portion of it between the axes is divided by the point in the ratio  $5 : 3$ .

Trace the straight lines whose equations are

- |                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 11. $x + 2y + 3 = 0$ . | 12. $5x - 7y - 9 = 0$ . |
| 13. $3x + 7y = 0$ .    | 14. $2x - 3y + 4 = 0$ . |

Find the equations to the straight lines passing through the following pairs of points.

- |                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 15. $(0, 0)$ and $(2, -2)$ .  | 16. $(3, 4)$ and $(5, 6)$ .  |
| 17. $(-1, 3)$ and $(6, -7)$ . | 18. $(0, -a)$ and $(b, 0)$ . |

19.  $(a, b)$  and  $(a+b, a-b)$ .

20.  $(at_1^2, 2at_1)$  and  $(at_2^2, 2at_2)$ .

21.  $\left(at_1, \frac{a}{t_1}\right)$  and  $\left(at_2, \frac{a}{t_2}\right)$ .

22.  $(a \cos \phi_1, a \sin \phi_1)$  and  $(a \cos \phi_2, a \sin \phi_2)$ .

23.  $(a \cos \phi_1, b \sin \phi_1)$  and  $(a \cos \phi_2, b \sin \phi_2)$ .

24.  $(a \sec \phi_1, b \tan \phi_1)$  and  $(a \sec \phi_2, b \tan \phi_2)$ .

Find the equations to the sides of the triangles the coordinates of whose angular points are respectively

25.  $(1, 4)$ ,  $(2, -3)$ , and  $(-1, -2)$ .

26.  $(0, 1)$ ,  $(2, 0)$ , and  $(-1, -2)$ .

27. Find the equations to the diagonals of the rectangle the equations of whose sides are  $x=a$ ,  $x=a'$ ,  $y=b$ , and  $y=b'$ .

28. Find the equation to the straight line which bisects the distance between the points  $(a, b)$  and  $(a', b')$  and also bisects the distance between the points  $(-a, b)$  and  $(a', -b')$ .

29. Find the equations to the straight lines which go through the origin and trisect the portion of the straight line  $3x+y=12$  which is intercepted between the axes of coordinates.

## ANSWERS

1.  $y=x+1$ .      2.  $x-y-5=0$ .      3.  $x-y\sqrt{3}-2\sqrt{3}=0$ .  
 4.  $5y-3x+15=0$ .      5.  $2x+3y=6$ .      6.  $6x-5y+30=0$ .  
 7. (1)  $x+y=11$ ; (2)  $y-x=1$ .      8.  $x+y+1=0$ ;  $x-y=3$ .  
 9.  $xy'+x'y=2x'y'$ .      10.  $20y-9x=96$ .      15.  $x+y=0$ .  
 16.  $y-x=1$ .      17.  $7y+10x=11$ .  
 18.  $ax-by=ab$ .      19.  $(a-2b)x-by+b^2+2ab-a^2=0$ .  
 20.  $y(t_1+t_2)-2x=2at_1t_2$ .      21.  $t_1t_2y+x=a(t_1+t_2)$ .  
 22.  $x \cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1+\phi_2) + y \sin \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1+\phi_2) = a \cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1-\phi_2)$ .  
 23.  $\frac{x}{a} \cos \frac{\phi_1+\phi_2}{2} + \frac{y}{b} \sin \frac{\phi_1+\phi_2}{2} = \cos \frac{\phi_1-\phi_2}{2}$ .  
 24.  $bx \cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1-\phi_2) - ay \sin \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1+\phi_2) = ab \cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1+\phi_2)$ .  
 25.  $x+3y+7=0$ ;  $y-3x=1$ ;  $y+7x=11$ .  
 26.  $2x-3y=4$ ;  $y-3x=1$ ;  $x+2y=2$ .  
 27.  $y(a'-a)-x(b'-b)=a'b-ab'$ ;  $y(a'-a)+x(b'-b)=a'b'-ab$ .  
 28.  $2ay-2b'x=ab-a'b'$ .      29.  $y=6x$ ;  $2y=3x$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. By Art. 47, we have  $y = x + 1$ .

2. By Art. 47, since the line is inclined to the axis of  $x$  at  $45^\circ$ , the equation is

$$y = +x - 5.$$

3. By Art. 47, we have  $y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}x - 2$ .

4. By Art. 47,  $y = \frac{3}{8}x - 3$ .  $\therefore 3x - 5y = 15$ .

5. By Art. 50,  $\frac{x}{3} + \frac{y}{2} = 1$ ;  $\therefore 2x + 3y = 6$ .

6. By Art. 50,  $\frac{x}{-5} + \frac{y}{6} = 1$ ;  $\therefore 5y - 6x = 30$ .

7. (1) Let the intercepts each =  $a$ .

$\therefore$  equation is  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{a} = 1$ .

Since it passes through  $(5, 6)$ ,  $\therefore \frac{5}{a} + \frac{6}{a} = 1$ ;  $\therefore a = 11$ .

$\therefore$  equation becomes  $x + y = 11$ .

(2) Let the intercepts be  $a$  and  $-a$ .

$\therefore$  equation is  $\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{a} = 1$ .

Since it passes through  $(5, 6)$ ,  $\therefore \frac{5}{a} - \frac{6}{a} = 1$ .  $\therefore a = -1$ .

$\therefore$  equation becomes  $y - x = 1$ .

8. Let the equation of the lines be  $\frac{x}{a} \pm \frac{y}{a} = 1$ .

Since they pass through  $(1, -2)$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{1}{a} \pm \frac{-2}{a} = 1; \therefore a = -1 \text{ or } 3.$$

Equations become  $x + y + 1 = 0$ , and  $x - y = 3$ .

9. It is easily seen from a figure that the intercepts on the axes are  $2x'$ ,  $2y'$ .

$\therefore$  the equation is  $\frac{x}{2x'} + \frac{y}{2y'} = 1$ , or  $xy' + yx' = 2x'y'$ .

10. Let  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$  be the equation of the line. The coordinates of the point dividing the line joining  $(a, 0)$  and  $(0, b)$  in the ratio of 5 : 3 are (Art. 22),

$$\left(\frac{3a}{8}, \frac{5b}{8}\right); \quad \therefore \frac{3a}{8} = -4, \quad \frac{5b}{8} = 3.$$

$$\therefore a = -\frac{32}{3}, \quad b = \frac{24}{5}.$$

Hence the equation becomes  $\frac{5y}{24} - \frac{3x}{32} = 1$ ,

or  $20y - 9x = 96$ .

11—14. See Art. 59. 15—19. See Art. 63.

20. By Art. 62, the equation is

$$y - 2at_1 = \frac{2(t_2 - t_1)}{t_2^2 - t_1^2} (x - at_1^2),$$

$$i.e. \quad (t_1 + t_2)y - 2at_1^2 - 2at_1t_2 = 2x - 2at_1^2,$$

$$i.e. \quad (t_1 + t_2)y = 2x + 2at_1t_2.$$

21. By Art. 62, the equation is  $y - \frac{a}{t_1} = \frac{\frac{1}{t_2} - \frac{1}{t_1}}{t_2 - t_1} (x - at_1)$ ,

$$i.e. \quad t_1t_2\left(y - \frac{a}{t_1}\right) + x - at_1 = 0, \quad i.e. \quad x + t_1t_2y = a(t_1 + t_2).$$

22. See Number 23, and put  $b = a$ .

23. Let  $lx + my = 1$ , be the equation.

Then we have  $la \cos \phi_1 + mb \sin \phi_1 = 1$ ,

and  $la \cos \phi_2 + mb \sin \phi_2 = 1$ .

$$\therefore la \sin(\phi_1 - \phi_2) = \sin \phi_1 - \sin \phi_2.$$

$$\therefore 2la \sin \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2} \cos \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2} = 2 \cos \frac{\phi_1 + \phi_2}{2} \cdot \sin \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2}.$$

$$\therefore l = \frac{1}{a} \cdot \frac{\cos \frac{\phi_1 + \phi_2}{2}}{\cos \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2}}. \quad \text{Similarly, } m = \frac{1}{b} \cdot \frac{\sin \frac{\phi_1 + \phi_2}{2}}{\cos \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2}}.$$

The equation becomes

$$\frac{x}{a} \cdot \cos \frac{\phi_1 + \phi_2}{2} + \frac{y}{b} \sin \frac{\phi_1 + \phi_2}{2} = \cos \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2}.$$

24. By Art. 62, the equation is

$$\frac{y - b \tan \phi_1}{x - a \sec \phi_1} = \frac{b (\tan \phi_2 - \tan \phi_1)}{a (\sec \phi_2 - \sec \phi_1)} = \frac{b \sin (\phi_2 - \phi_1)}{a \cos (\phi_1 - \phi_2)}$$

$$= \frac{b \cos \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2}}{a \sin \frac{\phi_1 + \phi_2}{2}}.$$

$$\therefore bx \cos \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2} - ay \sin \frac{\phi_1 + \phi_2}{2}$$

$$= ab \sec \phi_1 \left\{ \cos \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2} - \sin \phi_1 \sin \frac{\phi_1 + \phi_2}{2} \right\}$$

$$= ab \sec \phi_1 \left\{ \cos \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \cos \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \cos \frac{3\phi_1 + \phi_2}{2} \right\}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} ab \sec \phi_1 \left\{ \cos \frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2} + \cos \frac{3\phi_1 + \phi_2}{2} \right\} = ab \cos \frac{\phi_1 + \phi_2}{2}.$$

25, 26. See Art. 63.

27. The four corners are  $(a, b)$ ;  $(a', b)$ ;  $(a', b')$ ;  $(a, b')$ .  
Let  $lx + my = 1$  be the equation of the line joining  $(a, b)$  and  $(a', b')$ .

Then  $la + mb = 1$ , and  $la' + mb' = 1$ .

Whence  $l = \frac{b - b'}{a'b - ab'}$ , and  $m = \frac{a' - a}{a'b - ab'}$

and the equation becomes  $(b - b')x + (a' - a)y = a'b - ab'$ .

Similarly we may obtain the equation of the line joining  $(a', b)$  and  $(a, b')$ .

**28.** The line passes through the point  $\left(\frac{a+a'}{2}, \frac{b+b'}{2}\right)$ , and also through the point  $\left(\frac{a'-a}{2}, \frac{b-b'}{2}\right)$ .

Let its equation be  $lx + my = 1$ .

Then  $(a + a')l + (b + b')m = 2$ , and  $(a' - a)l + (b - b')m = 2$ .

Whence  $l = \frac{2b'}{a'b' - ab}$ , and  $m = \frac{2a}{ab - a'b'}$ .

$\therefore$  the equation becomes  $2ay - 2b'x = ab - a'b'$ .

**29.** The coordinates of the points which trisect the line joining  $(4, 0)$  and  $(0, 12)$  are (Art. 22),

$\left(\frac{2 \cdot 0 + 1 \cdot 4}{2 + 1}, \frac{2 \cdot 12 + 1 \cdot 0}{2 + 1}\right)$  and  $\left(\frac{1 \cdot 0 + 2 \cdot 4}{1 + 2}, \frac{1 \cdot 12 + 2 \cdot 0}{1 + 2}\right)$ ,

that is  $\left(\frac{4}{3}, 8\right)$  and  $\left(\frac{8}{3}, 4\right)$ .

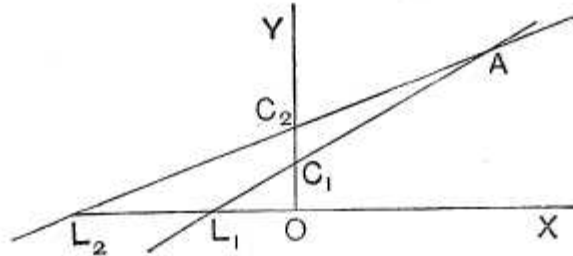
$\therefore$  the required equations are

$\frac{4}{3}y = 8x$  and  $\frac{8}{3}y = 4x$ , that is  $y = 6x$  and  $2y = 3x$ .

**Angles between straight lines.**

**66.** *To find the angle between two given straight lines.*

Let the two straight lines be  $AL_1$  and  $AL_2$ , meeting the axis of  $x$  in  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ .



I. Let their equations be

$$y = m_1x + c_1 \text{ and } y = m_2x + c_2 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

By Art. 47 we therefore have

$$\tan AL_1X = m_1, \text{ and } \tan AL_2X = m_2.$$

Now  $\angle L_1AL_2 = \angle AL_1X - \angle AL_2X.$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \tan L_1AL_2 &= \tan [AL_1X - AL_2X] \\ &= \frac{\tan AL_1X - \tan AL_2X}{1 + \tan AL_1X \cdot \tan AL_2X} = \frac{m_1 - m_2}{1 + m_1m_2}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the required angle =  $\angle L_1AL_2$

$$= \tan^{-1} \frac{m_1 - m_2}{1 + m_1m_2} \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

[In any numerical example, if the quantity (2) be a positive quantity it is the tangent of the acute angle between the lines; if negative, it is the tangent of the obtuse angle.]

II. Let the equations of the straight lines be

$$A_1x + B_1y + C_1 = 0,$$

and

$$A_2x + B_2y + C_2 = 0.$$

By dividing the equations by  $B_1$  and  $B_2$ , they may be written



$$y = -\frac{A_1}{B_1}x - \frac{C_1}{B_1},$$

and

$$y = -\frac{A_2}{B_2}x - \frac{C_2}{B_2}.$$

Comparing these with the equations of (I.), we see that

$$m_1 = -\frac{A_1}{B_1}, \text{ and } m_2 = -\frac{A_2}{B_2}.$$

Hence the required angle

$$\begin{aligned} &= \tan^{-1} \frac{m_1 - m_2}{1 + m_1 m_2} = \tan^{-1} \frac{-\frac{A_1}{B_1} - \left(-\frac{A_2}{B_2}\right)}{1 + \left(-\frac{A_1}{B_1}\right) \left(-\frac{A_2}{B_2}\right)} \\ &= \tan^{-1} \frac{B_1 A_2 - A_1 B_2}{A_1 A_2 + B_1 B_2} \dots \dots \dots (3). \end{aligned}$$

III. If the equations be given in the form

$$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p_1 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad x \cos \beta + y \sin \beta - p_2 = 0,$$

the perpendiculars from the origin make angles  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  with the axis of  $x$ .

Now that angle between two straight lines, in which the origin lies, is the supplement of the angle between the perpendiculars, and the angle between these perpendiculars is  $\beta - \alpha$ .

[For, if  $OR_1$  and  $OR_2$  be the perpendiculars from the origin upon the two lines, then the points  $O, R_1, R_2$ , and  $A$  lie on a circle, and hence the angles  $R_1OR_2$  and  $R_2AR_1$  are either equal or supplementary.]

**67.** *To find the condition that two straight lines may be parallel.*

Two straight lines are parallel when the angle between them is zero and therefore the tangent of this angle is zero.

The equation (2) of the last article then gives

$$\mathbf{m_1 = m_2.}$$

Two straight lines whose equations are given in the “*m*” form are therefore parallel when their “*m*’s” are the same, or, in other words, if their equations differ only in the constant term.

The straight line  $Ax + By + C' = 0$  is any straight line which is parallel to the straight line  $Ax + By + C = 0$ . For the “*m*’s” of the two equations are the same.

Again the equation  $A(x - x') + B(y - y') = 0$  clearly represents the straight line which passes through the point  $(x', y')$  and is parallel to  $Ax + By + C = 0$ .

The result (3) of the last article gives, as the condition for parallel lines,

$$B_1A_2 - A_1B_2 = 0,$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{A_1}{B_1} = \frac{A_2}{B_2}.$$

**68. Ex.** Find the equation to the straight line, which passes through the point  $(4, -5)$ , and which is parallel to the straight line

$$3x + 4y + 5 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Any straight line which is parallel to (1) has its equation of the form

$$3x + 4y + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

[For the “*m*” of both (1) and (2) is the same.]

This straight line will pass through the point  $(4, -5)$  if

$$3 \times 4 + 4 \times (-5) + C = 0,$$

*i.e.* if 
$$C = 20 - 12 = 8.$$

The equation (2) then becomes

$$3x + 4y + 8 = 0.$$

**69.** To find the condition that two straight lines, whose equations are given, may be perpendicular.

Let the straight lines be

$$y = m_1x + c_1,$$

and 
$$y = m_2x + c_2.$$

If  $\theta$  be the angle between them we have, by Art. 66,

$$\tan \theta = \frac{m_1 - m_2}{1 + m_1 m_2} \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

If the lines be perpendicular, then  $\theta = 90^\circ$ , and therefore  $\tan \theta = \infty$ .

The right-hand member of equation (1) must therefore be infinite, and this can only happen when its denominator is zero.

The condition of perpendicularity is therefore that

$$1 + m_1 m_2 = 0, \text{ i.e. } \mathbf{m_1 m_2 = -1}.$$

The straight line  $y = m_2 x + c_2$  is therefore perpendicular to  $y = m_1 x + c_1$ , if  $m_2 = -\frac{1}{m_1}$ .

It follows that the straight lines

$$A_1 x + B_1 y + C_1 = 0 \text{ and } A_2 x + B_2 y + C_2 = 0,$$

for which  $m_1 = -\frac{A_1}{B_1}$  and  $m_2 = -\frac{A_2}{B_2}$ , are at right angles if

$$\left(-\frac{A_1}{B_1}\right) \left(-\frac{A_2}{B_2}\right) = -1,$$

i.e. if  $A_1 A_2 + B_1 B_2 = 0$ .

**70.** From the preceding article it follows that the two straight lines

$$A_1 x + B_1 y + C_1 = 0 \dots \dots \dots (1),$$

and  $B_1 x - A_1 y + C_2 = 0 \dots \dots \dots (2),$

are at right angles ; for the product of their  $m$ 's

$$= -\frac{A_1}{B_1} \times \frac{B_1}{A_1} = -1.$$

Also (2) is derived from (1) by interchanging the coefficients of  $x$  and  $y$ , changing the sign of one of them, and changing the constant into any other constant.

**Ex.** The straight line through  $(x', y')$  perpendicular to (1) is (2) where  $B_1 x' - A_1 y' + C_2 = 0$ , so that  $C_2 = A_1 y' - B_1 x'$ .

This straight line is therefore

$$B_1 (x - x') - A_1 (y - y') = 0.$$

**71. Ex. 1.** Find the equation to the straight line which passes through the point (4, -5) and is perpendicular to the straight line

$$3x + 4y + 5 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

*First Method.* Any straight line perpendicular to (1) is by the last article

$$4x - 3y + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

[We should expect an arbitrary constant in (2) because there are an infinite number of straight lines perpendicular to (1).]

The straight line (2) passes through the point (4, -5) if

$$4 \times 4 - 3 \times (-5) + C = 0,$$

*i.e.* if  $C = -16 - 15 = -31.$

The required equation is therefore

$$4x - 3y = 31.$$

*Second Method.* Any straight line passing through the given point is

$$y - (-5) = m(x - 4).$$

This straight line is perpendicular to (1) if the product of their *m*'s is -1,

*i.e.* if  $m \times (-\frac{3}{4}) = -1,$

*i.e.* if  $m = \frac{4}{3}.$

The required equation is therefore

$$y + 5 = \frac{4}{3}(x - 4),$$

*i.e.*  $4x - 3y = 31.$

*Third Method.* Any straight line is  $y = mx + c.$  It passes through the point (4, -5), if

$$-5 = 4m + c \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

It is perpendicular to (1) if

$$m \times (-\frac{3}{4}) = -1 \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

Hence  $m = \frac{4}{3}$  and then (3) gives  $c = -\frac{31}{3}.$

The required equation is therefore  $y = \frac{4}{3}x - \frac{31}{3},$

*i.e.*  $4x - 3y = 31.$

[In the first method, we start with any straight line which is perpendicular to the given straight line and pick out that particular straight line which goes through the given point.

In the second method, we start with any straight line passing through the given point and pick out that particular one which is perpendicular to the given straight line.

In the third method, we start with any straight line whatever and determine its constants, so that it may satisfy the two given conditions.

The student should illustrate by figures.]

**Ex. 2.** Find the equation to the straight line which passes through the point (*x'*, *y'*) and is perpendicular to the given straight line

$$yy' = 2a(x + x').$$

The given straight line is

$$yy' - 2ax - 2ax' = 0.$$

Any straight line perpendicular to it is (Art. 70)

$$2ay + xy' + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

This will pass through the point  $(x', y')$  and therefore will be the straight line required if the coordinates  $x'$  and  $y'$  satisfy it,

i.e. if  $2ay' + x'y' + C = 0,$

i.e. if  $C = -2ay' - x'y'.$

Substituting in (1) for  $C$  the required equation is therefore

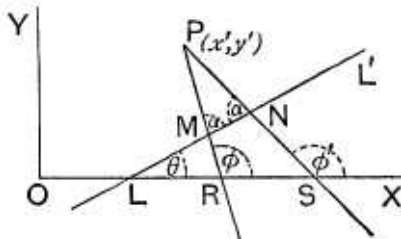
$$2a(y - y') + y'(x - x') = 0.$$

**72.** To find the equations to the straight lines which pass through a given point  $(x', y')$  and make a given angle  $\alpha$  with the given straight line  $y = mx + c.$

Let  $P$  be the given point and let the given straight line be  $LMN$ , making an angle  $\theta$  with the axis of  $x$  such that

$$\tan \theta = m.$$

In general (i.e. except when  $\alpha$  is a right angle or zero) there are two straight lines  $PMR$  and  $PNS$  making an angle  $\alpha$  with the given line.



Let these lines meet the axis of  $x$  in  $R$  and  $S$  and let them make angles  $\phi$  and  $\phi'$  with the positive direction of the axis of  $x$ .

The equations to the two required straight lines are therefore (by Art. 62)

$$y - y' = \tan \phi \times (x - x') \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

and  $y - y' = \tan \phi' \times (x - x') \dots\dots\dots (2).$

Now  $\phi = \angle LMR + \angle RLM = \alpha + \theta,$

and  $\phi' = \angle LNS + \angle SLN = (180^\circ - \alpha) + \theta.$

Hence

$$\tan \phi = \tan (\alpha + \theta) = \frac{\tan \alpha + \tan \theta}{1 - \tan \alpha \tan \theta} = \frac{\tan \alpha + m}{1 - m \tan \alpha},$$

and  $\tan \phi' = \tan (180^\circ + \theta - \alpha)$

$$= \tan (\theta - \alpha) = \frac{\tan \theta - \tan \alpha}{1 + \tan \theta \tan \alpha} = \frac{m - \tan \alpha}{1 + m \tan \alpha}.$$

On substituting these values in (1) and (2), we have as the required equations

$$y - y' = \frac{m + \tan \alpha}{1 - m \tan \alpha} (x - x'),$$

and

$$y - y' = \frac{m - \tan \alpha}{1 + m \tan \alpha} (x - x').$$

### EXAMPLES VI

Find the angles between the pairs of straight lines

1.  $x - y\sqrt{3} = 5$  and  $\sqrt{3}x + y = 7$ .

2.  $x - 4y = 3$  and  $6x - y = 11$ .      3.  $y = 3x + 7$  and  $3y - x = 8$ .

4.  $y = (2 - \sqrt{3})x + 5$  and  $y = (2 + \sqrt{3})x - 7$ .

5.  $(m^2 - mn)y = (mn + n^2)x + n^3$  and  $(mn + m^2)y = (mn - n^2)x + m^3$ .

6. Find the tangent of the angle between the lines whose intercepts on the axes are respectively  $a, -b$  and  $b, -a$ .

7. Prove that the points  $(2, -1)$ ,  $(0, 2)$ ,  $(2, 3)$ , and  $(4, 0)$  are the coordinates of the angular points of a parallelogram and find the angle between its diagonals.

Find the equation to the straight line

8. passing through the point  $(2, 3)$  and perpendicular to the straight line  $4x - 3y = 10$ .

9. passing through the point  $(-6, 10)$  and perpendicular to the straight line  $7x + 8y = 5$ .

10. passing through the point  $(2, -3)$  and perpendicular to the straight line joining the points  $(5, 7)$  and  $(-6, 3)$ .

11. passing through the point  $(-4, -3)$  and perpendicular to the straight line joining  $(1, 3)$  and  $(2, 7)$ .

12. Find the equation to the straight line drawn at right angles to the straight line  $\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} = 1$  through the point where it meets the axis of  $x$ .

13. Find the equation to the straight line which bisects, and is perpendicular to, the straight line joining the points  $(a, b)$  and  $(a', b')$ .

14. Prove that the equation to the straight line which passes through the point  $(a \cos^3 \theta, a \sin^3 \theta)$  and is perpendicular to the straight line  $x \sec \theta + y \operatorname{cosec} \theta = a$  is  $x \cos \theta - y \sin \theta = a \cos 2\theta$ .

15. Find the equations to the straight lines passing through  $(x', y')$  and respectively perpendicular to the straight lines

$$xx' + yy' = a^2,$$

$$\frac{xx'}{a^2} + \frac{yy'}{b^2} = 1,$$

and

$$x'y + xy' = a^2.$$

16. Find the equations to the straight lines which divide, internally and externally, the line joining  $(-3, 7)$  to  $(5, -4)$  in the ratio of  $4 : 7$  and which are perpendicular to this line.

17. Through the point  $(3, 4)$  are drawn two straight lines each inclined at  $45^\circ$  to the straight line  $x - y = 2$ . Find their equations and find also the area included by the three lines.

18. Shew that the equations to the straight lines passing through the point  $(3, -2)$  and inclined at  $60^\circ$  to the line

$$\sqrt{3}x + y = 1 \text{ are } y + 2 = 0 \text{ and } y - \sqrt{3}x + 2 + 3\sqrt{3} = 0.$$

19. Find the equations to the straight lines which pass through the origin and are inclined at  $75^\circ$  to the straight line

$$x + y + \sqrt{3}(y - x) = a.$$

20. Find the equations to the straight lines which pass through the point  $(h, k)$  and are inclined at an angle  $\tan^{-1}m$  to the straight line

$$y = mx + c.$$

21. Find the angle between the two straight lines  $3x = 4y + 7$  and  $5y = 12x + 6$  and also the equations to the two straight lines which pass through the point  $(4, 5)$  and make equal angles with the two given lines.

## ANSWERS

1.  $90^\circ$ .      2.  $\tan^{-1} \frac{2}{3}$ .      3.  $\tan^{-1} \frac{4}{3}$ .      4.  $60^\circ$ .
5.  $\tan^{-1} \frac{4m^2n^2}{m^4 - n^4}$ .      6.  $\tan^{-1} \frac{a^2 - b^2}{2ab}$ .      7.  $\tan^{-1}(2)$ .
8.  $4y + 3x = 18$ .      9.  $7y - 8x = 118$ .      10.  $4y + 11x = 10$ .
11.  $x + 4y + 16 = 0$ .      12.  $ax + by = a^2$ .
13.  $2x(a - a') + 2y(b - b') = a^2 - a'^2 + b^2 - b'^2$ .
15.  $yx' - xy' = 0$ ;  $a^2xy' - b^2x'y = (a^2 - b^2)x'y'$ ;  $xx' - yy' = x'^2 - y'^2$ .
16.  $121y - 88x = 371$ ;  $33y - 24x = 1043$ .
17.  $x = 3$ ;  $y = 4$ ;  $4\frac{1}{2}$ .      19.  $x = 0$ ;  $y + \sqrt{3}x = 0$ .
20.  $y = k$ ;  $(1 - m^2)(y - k) = 2m(x - h)$ .
21.  $\tan^{-1} \frac{2}{3}$ ;  $9x - 7y = 1$ ;  $7x + 9y = 73$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

$$1. \text{ By Art. 66, the angle} = \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} + \sqrt{3}}{1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \cdot \sqrt{3}}$$

$$= \tan^{-1} \infty = 90^\circ.$$

$$2. \text{ The angle} = \tan^{-1} \frac{6 - \frac{1}{4}}{1 + \frac{6}{4}} = \tan^{-1} \frac{23}{10}.$$

$$3. \text{ The angle} = \tan^{-1} \frac{3 - \frac{1}{3}}{1 + 3 \cdot \frac{1}{3}} = \tan^{-1} \frac{4}{3}.$$

$$4. \text{ The angle} = \tan^{-1} \frac{(2 + \sqrt{3}) - (2 - \sqrt{3})}{1 + (4 - 3)}$$

$$= \tan^{-1} \sqrt{3} = 60^\circ.$$

$$5. \text{ The angle} = \tan^{-1} \cdot \frac{\frac{mn + n^2}{m^2 - mn} - \frac{mn - n^2}{mn + m^2}}{1 + \frac{n(m+n)}{m(m-n)} \cdot \frac{n(m-n)}{m(n+m)}}$$

$$= \tan^{-1} \frac{4m^2n^2}{m^4 - n^4}.$$

6. The equations of the lines are (Art. 50)

$$\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} = 1 \text{ and } \frac{x}{b} - \frac{y}{a} = 1.$$

$$\therefore \text{ The angle} = \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{a}{b} - \frac{b}{a}}{1 + \frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{b}{a}} = \tan^{-1} \frac{a^2 - b^2}{2ab}.$$

7. The middle point of each diagonal is (2, 1). The equations of the diagonals are (Art. 62)

$$x - 2 = 0, \text{ and } y = 2 - \frac{1}{2}x.$$

$$\therefore \text{ the angle} = \tan^{-1} \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) - 90^\circ = \tan^{-1} 2.$$



8. The equation of any line perpendicular to  $4x - 3y = 10$  is  $3x + 4y = c$ . Since it passes through  $(2, 3)$ ,  
 $6 + 12 = c$ ;  $\therefore c = 18$ . The equation becomes  $3x + 4y = 18$ .

9. The equation of any line perpendicular to  $7x + 8y = 5$  is  $8x - 7y = c$ . Since it passes through  $(-6, 10)$ ,  
 $-48 - 70 = c$ ;  $\therefore c = -118$ .

$\therefore$  the equation becomes  $7y - 8x = 118$ .

10. The "m" of the line joining  $(5, 7)$  and  $(-6, 3)$

$$= \frac{7-3}{5+6} = \frac{4}{11}. \quad \therefore \text{required equation is}$$

$$y + 3 = -\frac{11}{4}(x - 2), \text{ or } 4y + 11x = 10.$$

11. The "m" of the line joining  $(1, 3)$  and  $(2, 7)$  is

$$\frac{7-3}{2-1} = 4. \quad \therefore \text{required equation is}$$

$$y + 3 = -\frac{1}{4}(x + 4), \text{ or } x + 4y + 16 = 0.$$

12. Any line at right angles to  $\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} = 1$  is  $ax + by = c$ .

If it passes through  $(a, 0)$ , then  $c = a^2$ .

Hence the equation becomes  $ax + by = a^2$ .

13. The "m" of the line joining  $(a, b)$  and  $(a', b')$  is

$$\frac{b-b'}{a-a'}. \quad \therefore \text{required equation is}$$

$$y - \frac{b+b'}{2} = -\frac{a-a'}{b-b'} \left( x - \frac{a+a'}{2} \right),$$

or  $2(a-a')x + 2(b-b')y = a^2 - a'^2 + b^2 - b'^2.$

14. Any line perpendicular to  $x \sec \theta + y \operatorname{cosec} \theta = a$  is

$$x \cos \theta - y \sin \theta = c.$$

Since it passes through  $(a \cos^3 \theta, a \sin^3 \theta)$ ,

$$\therefore a \cos^4 \theta - a \sin^4 \theta = c. \quad \therefore c = a \cos 2\theta.$$

$\therefore$  the equation becomes  $x \cos \theta - y \sin \theta = a \cos 2\theta.$

15. Let the equations be

$$xy' - x'y = c_1, \quad a^2y'x - b^2x'y = c_2, \quad xx' - yy' = c_3.$$

Since each passes through  $(x', y')$

$$c_1 = 0, \quad c_2 = (a^2 - b^2)x'y', \quad c_3 = x'^2 - y'^2.$$

Substituting, we have the required equations.

16. The lines pass through the points

$$\left(\frac{4 \cdot 5 - 3 \cdot 7}{4 + 7}, \frac{-4 \cdot 4 + 7 \cdot 7}{4 + 7}\right); \left(\frac{4 \cdot 5 + 3 \cdot 7}{4 - 7}, \frac{-4 \cdot 4 - 7 \cdot 7}{4 - 7}\right),$$

that is  $(-\frac{1}{11}, 3)$  and  $(-\frac{41}{3}, \frac{65}{3})$  and the "m" of the line joining  $(-3, 7)$  and  $(5, -4)$  is  $\frac{7 + 4}{-3 - 5} = -\frac{11}{8}$ .

Hence the required equations are

$$y - 3 = \frac{8}{11}(x + \frac{1}{11}), \quad \text{and} \quad y - \frac{65}{3} = \frac{8}{11}(x + \frac{41}{3}),$$

or  $121y - 88x = 371$ , and  $33y - 24x = 1043$ .

17. The required equations are (Art. 72)

$$y - 4 = \frac{1 + 1}{1 - 1}(x - 3), \quad \text{and} \quad y - 4 = \frac{1 - 1}{1 + 1}(x - 3),$$

*i.e.*  $x = 3$  and  $y = 4$ .

From a figure it is easily seen that the area is a right-angled isosceles triangle whose equal sides = 3;

$$\therefore \text{area} = \frac{9}{2} = 4\frac{1}{2}.$$

18. The required equations are (Art. 72)

$$y + 2 = \frac{-\sqrt{3} + \sqrt{3}}{1 + 3}(x - 3), \quad \text{and} \quad y + 2 = \frac{-\sqrt{3} - \sqrt{3}}{1 - 3}(x - 3),$$

or  $y + 2 = 0$  and  $y - \sqrt{3}x + 2 + 3\sqrt{3} = 0$ .

19. The required equations are (Art. 72)

$$y = \frac{(2 - \sqrt{3}) + (2 + \sqrt{3})}{1 - (2 - \sqrt{3})(2 + \sqrt{3})} \cdot x,$$

and  $y = \frac{(2 - \sqrt{3}) - (2 + \sqrt{3})}{1 + (2 - \sqrt{3})(2 + \sqrt{3})} \cdot x,$

or  $x = 0$  and  $y + \sqrt{3}x = 0$ .

20. The required equations are (Art. 72)

$$y - k = \frac{m + m}{1 - m^2}(x - h), \text{ and } y - k = \frac{m - m}{1 + m^2}(x - h),$$

or  $y = k$  and  $(1 - m^2)(y - k) = 2m(x - h).$

21. The angle =  $\tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{1^2}{5} - \frac{3}{4}}{1 + \frac{1^2}{5} \cdot \frac{3}{4}} = \tan^{-1} \frac{33}{56}.$

The angle  $\theta$  which either line makes with the axis of  $x$  is given by

$$\tan 2\theta = \tan(\theta_1 + \theta_2) = \frac{\frac{1^2}{5} + \frac{3}{4}}{1 - \frac{1^2}{5} \cdot \frac{3}{4}} = -\frac{63}{16},$$

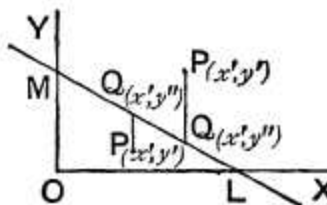
whence  $\tan \theta = \frac{9}{7}$  or  $-\frac{7}{9}.$

Hence the required equations are  $y - 5 = \frac{9}{7}(x - 4),$  and  $y - 5 = -\frac{7}{9}(x - 4),$  or  $9x - 7y = 1,$  and  $7x + 9y = 73.$

**73.** To shew that the point  $(x', y')$  is on one side or the other of the straight line  $Ax + By + C = 0$  according as the quantity  $Ax' + By' + C$  is positive or negative.

Let  $LM$  be the given straight line and  $P$  any point  $(x', y')$ .

Through  $P$  draw  $PQ$ , parallel to the axis of  $y$ , to meet the given straight line in  $Q$ , and let the co-ordinates of  $Q$  be  $(x', y'')$ .



Since  $Q$  lies on the given line, we have

$$Ax' + By'' + C = 0,$$

so that

$$y'' = -\frac{Ax' + C}{B} \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

It is clear from the figure that  $PQ$  is drawn parallel to the positive or negative direction of the axis of  $y$  according as  $P$  is on one side, or the other, of the straight line  $LM$ , *i.e.* according as  $y''$  is  $>$  or  $<$   $y'$ , *i.e.* according as  $y'' - y'$  is positive or negative.

Now, by (1),

$$y'' - y' = -\frac{Ax' + C}{B} - y' = -\frac{1}{B} [Ax' + By' + C].$$

The point  $(x', y')$  is therefore on one side or the other of  $LM$  according as the quantity  $Ax' + By' + C$  is negative or positive.

**Cor.** The point  $(x', y')$  and the origin are on the same side of the given line if  $Ax' + By' + C$  and  $A \times 0 + B \times 0 + C$  have the same signs, *i.e.* if  $Ax' + By' + C$  has the same sign as  $C$ .

If these two quantities have opposite signs, then the origin and the point  $(x', y')$  are on opposite sides of the given line.

**74.** The condition that two points may lie on the same or opposite sides of a given line may also be obtained by considering the ratio in which the line joining the two points is cut by the given line.

For let the equation to the given line be

$$Ax + By + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

and let the coordinates of the two given points be  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$ .

The coordinates of the point which divides in the ratio  $m_1 : m_2$  the line joining these points are, by Art. 22,

$$\frac{m_1x_2 + m_2x_1}{m_1 + m_2} \text{ and } \frac{m_1y_2 + m_2y_1}{m_1 + m_2} \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

If this point lie on the given line we have

$$A \frac{m_1x_2 + m_2x_1}{m_1 + m_2} + B \frac{m_1y_2 + m_2y_1}{m_1 + m_2} + C = 0,$$

so that 
$$\frac{m_1}{m_2} = - \frac{Ax_1 + By_1 + C}{Ax_2 + By_2 + C} \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

If the point (2) be *between* the two given points  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$ , *i.e.* if these two points be on *opposite* sides of the given line, the ratio  $m_1 : m_2$  is positive.

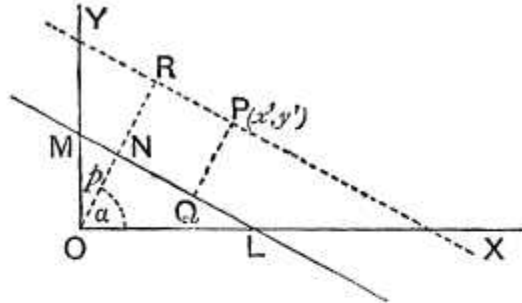
In this case, by (3) the two quantities  $Ax_1 + By_1 + C$  and  $Ax_2 + By_2 + C$  have opposite signs.

The two points  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  therefore lie on the op-

posite (or the same) sides of the straight line  $Ax + By + C = 0$  according as the quantities  $Ax_1 + By_1 + C$  and  $Ax_2 + By_2 + C$  have opposite (or the same) signs.

**Lengths of perpendiculars.**

**75.** *To find the length of the perpendicular let fall from a given point upon a given straight line.*



(i) Let the equation of the straight line be  

$$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

so that, if  $p$  be the perpendicular on it, we have  
 $ON = p$  and  $\angle XON = \alpha$ .

Let the given point  $P$  be  $(x', y')$ .

Through  $P$  draw  $PR$  parallel to the given line to meet  $ON$  produced in  $R$  and draw  $PQ$  the required perpendicular.

If  $OR$  be  $p'$ , the equation to  $PR$  is, by Art. 53,

$$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p' = 0.$$

Since this passes through the point  $(x', y')$ , we have

$$x' \cos \alpha + y' \sin \alpha - p' = 0,$$

so that  $p' = x' \cos \alpha + y' \sin \alpha$ .

But the required perpendicular

$$\begin{aligned} &= PQ = NR = OR - ON = p' - p \\ &= x' \cos \alpha + y' \sin \alpha - p \dots\dots\dots(2). \end{aligned}$$

The length of the required perpendicular is therefore obtained by substituting  $x'$  and  $y'$  for  $x$  and  $y$  in the given equation.

(ii) Let the equation to the straight line be

$$Ax + By + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3),$$

the equation being written so that  $C$  is a negative quantity.

As in Art. 56 this equation is reduced to the form (1) by dividing it by  $\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}$ . It then becomes

$$\frac{Ax}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}} + \frac{By}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}} + \frac{C}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}} = 0.$$

Hence

$$\cos \alpha = \frac{A}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}, \quad \sin \alpha = \frac{B}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}, \quad \text{and} \quad -p = \frac{C}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}.$$

The perpendicular from the point  $(x', y')$  therefore

$$\begin{aligned} &= x' \cos \alpha + y' \sin \alpha - p \\ &= \frac{\mathbf{Ax}' + \mathbf{By}' + \mathbf{C}}{\sqrt{\mathbf{A}^2 + \mathbf{B}^2}}. \end{aligned}$$

The length of the perpendicular from  $(x', y')$  on (3) is therefore obtained by substituting  $x'$  and  $y'$  for  $x$  and  $y$  in the left-hand member of (3), and dividing the result so obtained by the square root of the sum of the squares of the coefficients of  $x$  and  $y$ .

**Cor. 1.** The perpendicular from the origin

$$= C \div \sqrt{A^2 + B^2}.$$

**Cor. 2.** The length of the perpendicular is, by Art. 73, positive or negative according as  $(x', y')$  is on one side or the other of the given line.

**76.** The length of the perpendicular may also be obtained as follows:

As in the figure of the last article let the straight line meet the axes in  $L$  and  $M$ , so that

$$OL = -\frac{C}{A} \quad \text{and} \quad OM = -\frac{C}{B}.$$

Let  $PQ$  be the perpendicular from  $P(x', y')$  on the given line and  $PS$  and  $PT$  the perpendiculars on the axes of coordinates.

We then have

$$\triangle PML + \triangle MOL = \triangle OLP + \triangle OPM,$$

*i.e.*, since the area of a triangle is one half the product of its base and perpendicular height,

$$PQ \cdot LM + OL \cdot OM = OL \cdot PS + OM \cdot PT.$$

But  $LM = \sqrt{\left(-\frac{C}{A}\right)^2 + \left(-\frac{C}{B}\right)^2} = \frac{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}{AB} \times (-C)$ ,  
 since  $C$  is a negative quantity.

Hence

$$PQ \times \frac{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}{AB} \times (-C) + \frac{C}{A} \cdot \frac{C}{B} = -\frac{C}{A} \times y' + \left(-\frac{C}{B}\right) \times x',$$

so that 
$$PQ = \frac{Ax' + By' + C}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}.$$

## EXAMPLES VII

Find the length of the perpendicular drawn from

1. the point  $(4, 5)$  upon the straight line  $3x + 4y = 10$ .
2. the origin upon the straight line  $\frac{x}{3} - \frac{y}{4} = 1$ .
3. the point  $(-3, -4)$  upon the straight line  $12(x + 6) = 5(y - 2)$ .
4. the point  $(b, a)$  upon the straight line  $\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} = 1$ .
5. Find the length of the perpendicular from the origin upon the straight line joining the two points whose coordinates are  $(a \cos \alpha, a \sin \alpha)$  and  $(a \cos \beta, a \sin \beta)$ .
6. Shew that the product of the perpendiculars drawn from the two points  $(\pm \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}, 0)$  upon the straight line  $\frac{x}{a} \cos \theta + \frac{y}{b} \sin \theta = 1$  is  $b^2$ .
7. If  $p$  and  $p'$  be the perpendiculars from the origin upon the straight lines whose equations are  $x \sec \theta + y \operatorname{cosec} \theta = a$  and  $x \cos \theta - y \sin \theta = a \cos 2\theta$ ,  
 prove that  $4p^2 + p'^2 = a^2$ .
8. Find the distance between the two parallel straight lines  $y = mx + c$  and  $y = mx + d$ .
9. What are the points on the axis of  $x$  whose perpendicular distance from the straight line  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$  is  $a$ ?
10. Shew that the perpendiculars let fall from any point of the straight line  $2x + 11y = 5$  upon the two straight lines  $24x + 7y = 20$  and  $4x - 3y = 2$  are equal to each other.



11. Find the perpendicular distance from the origin of the perpendicular from the point (1, 2) upon the straight line

$$x - \sqrt{3}y + 4 = 0.$$

### ANSWERS

1.  $4\frac{2}{5}$ .      2.  $2\frac{2}{5}$ .      3.  $5\frac{1}{13}$ .      4.  $\frac{a^2 + ab - b^2}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}$   
 5.  $a \cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta)$ .      8.  $\frac{c - d}{\sqrt{1 + m^2}}$ .  
 9.  $\left\{ \frac{a}{b}(b \pm \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}), 0 \right\}$ .      11.  $\frac{1}{2}(2 + \sqrt{3})$ .

### SOLUTIONS/HINTS

$$1. \frac{3 \cdot 4 + 5 \cdot 4 - 10}{\sqrt{3^2 + 4^2}} = \frac{22}{5} = 4\frac{2}{5}. \quad 2. \frac{1}{\sqrt{\frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{4^2}}} = \frac{12}{5} = 2\frac{2}{5}$$

3. The line is  $5y - 12x - 82 = 0$ ;

$$\therefore \text{perpendicular} = \frac{-5 \cdot 4 + 12 \cdot 3 - 82}{\sqrt{5^2 + 12^2}} = \frac{66}{13} = 5\frac{1}{13}.$$

$$4. \frac{\frac{b}{a} - \frac{a}{b} - 1}{\sqrt{\frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2}}}, \text{ i.e. } \frac{b^2 - a^2 - ab}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}.$$

5. The equation of the line is (Ex. V, 22)

$$x \cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} + y \sin \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = a \cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2};$$

$$\therefore \text{perpendicular from } (0, 0) = a \cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}.$$

$$6. \text{ Product} = \frac{b\sqrt{a^2-b^2}\cos\theta-ab}{\sqrt{b^2\cos^2\theta+a^2\sin^2\theta}} \times \frac{-b\sqrt{a^2-b^2}\cos\theta-ab}{\sqrt{b^2\cos^2\theta+a^2\sin^2\theta}}$$

$$= \frac{a^2b^2-b^2(a^2-b^2)\cos^2\theta}{b^2\cos^2\theta+a^2\sin^2\theta} = \frac{b^2(a^2\sin^2\theta+b^2\cos^2\theta)}{b^2\cos^2\theta+a^2\sin^2\theta} = b^2.$$

$$7. p = \frac{a}{\sqrt{\sec^2\theta + \operatorname{cosec}^2\theta}} = a \sin\theta \cdot \cos\theta, \text{ i.e. } p = \frac{1}{2}a \sin 2\theta;$$

$$p' = a \cos 2\theta; \therefore 4p^2 + p'^2 = a^2.$$

8. A point on the first line is  $(0, c)$ .

The perpendicular from it upon  $y = mx + d$  is  $\frac{c-d}{\sqrt{1+m^2}}$

9. Let  $(h, 0)$  be one of the points; then

$$\frac{bh-ab}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}} = \pm a; \therefore h = \frac{a}{b} \{b \pm \sqrt{a^2+b^2}\}.$$

10. Let  $(h, k)$  be a point such that the perpendiculars from it upon the two lines are equal.

$$\text{Then } \frac{24h+7k-20}{\sqrt{24^2+7^2}} = \frac{4h-3k-2}{\sqrt{4^2+3^2}}.$$

$$\therefore 24h+7k-20 = 5(4h-3k-2). \therefore 2h+11k=5.$$

Hence if  $(h, k)$  lies on the line  $2x+11y=5$ , the perpendiculars are equal.

11. The equation of the line through  $(1, 2)$  perpendicular to  $x - \sqrt{3}y + 4 = 0$

$$\text{is } \sqrt{3}(x-1) + (y-2) = 0, \text{ or } \sqrt{3}x + y - 2 - \sqrt{3} = 0.$$

$$\therefore \text{perpendicular on it from } (0, 0) = \frac{2+\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{4}} = \frac{2+\sqrt{3}}{2}.$$

**77.** *To find the coordinates of the point of intersection of two given straight lines.*

Let the equations of the two straight lines be

$$a_1x + b_1y + c_1 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

and

$$a_2x + b_2y + c_2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

and let the straight lines be  $AL_1$  and  $AL_2$  as in the figure of Art. 66.

Since (1) is the equation of  $AL_1$ , the coordinates of *any* point on it must satisfy the equation (1). So the coordinates of any point on  $AL_2$  satisfy equation (2).

Now the only point which is common to these two straight lines is their point of intersection  $A$ .

The coordinates of this point must therefore satisfy both (1) and (2).

If therefore  $A$  be the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ , we have

$$a_1x_1 + b_1y_1 + c_1 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (3),$$

and

$$a_2x_1 + b_2y_1 + c_2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (4).$$

Solving (3) and (4) we have (as in Art. 3)

$$\frac{x_1}{b_1c_2 - b_2c_1} = \frac{y_1}{c_1a_2 - c_2a_1} = \frac{1}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1},$$

so that the coordinates of the required common point are

$$\frac{b_1c_2 - b_2c_1}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1} \text{ and } \frac{c_1a_2 - c_2a_1}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1}.$$

**78.** The coordinates of the point of intersection found in the last article are infinite if

$$a_1b_2 - a_2b_1 = 0.$$

But from Art. 67 we know that the two straight lines are parallel if this condition holds.

Hence parallel lines must be looked upon as lines whose point of intersection is at an infinite distance.

**79.** To find the condition that three straight lines may meet in a point.

Let their equations be

$$a_1x + b_1y + c_1 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

$$a_2x + b_2y + c_2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

and

$$a_3x + b_3y + c_3 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

By Art. 77 the coordinates of the point of intersection of (1) and (2) are

$$\frac{b_1c_2 - b_2c_1}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1} \text{ and } \frac{c_1a_2 - c_2a_1}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1} \dots\dots\dots (4).$$

If the three straight lines meet in a point, the point of intersection of (1) and (2) must lie on (3). Hence the values (4) must satisfy (3), so that

$$a_3 \times \frac{b_1c_2 - b_2c_1}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1} + b_3 \times \frac{c_1a_2 - c_2a_1}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1} + c_3 = 0,$$

$$i. e. \quad a_3 (b_1c_2 - b_2c_1) + b_3 (c_1a_2 - c_2a_1) + c_3 (a_1b_2 - a_2b_1) = 0,$$

$$i. e. \quad a_1 (b_2c_3 - b_3c_2) + b_1 (c_2a_3 - c_3a_2) + c_1 (a_2b_3 - a_3b_2) = 0 \dots (5).$$

**Aliter.** If the three straight lines meet in a point let it be  $(x_1, y_1)$ , so that the values  $x_1$  and  $y_1$  satisfy the equations (1), (2), and (3), and hence

$$a_1x_1 + b_1y_1 + c_1 = 0,$$

$$a_2x_1 + b_2y_1 + c_2 = 0,$$

and

$$a_3x_1 + b_3y_1 + c_3 = 0.$$

The condition that these three equations should hold between the two quantities  $x_1$  and  $y_1$  is, as in Art. 12,

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1, & b_1, & c_1 \\ a_2, & b_2, & c_2 \\ a_3, & b_3, & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = 0,$$

which is the same as equation (5).

**80.** Another criterion as to whether the three straight lines of the previous article meet in a point is the following.

If any three quantities  $p$ ,  $q$ , and  $r$  can be found so that

$$p (a_1x + b_1y + c_1) + q (a_2x + b_2y + c_2) + r (a_3x + b_3y + c_3) = 0$$

*identically*, then the three straight lines meet in a point.

For in this case we have

$$a_3x + b_3y + c_3 = -\frac{p}{r}(a_1x + b_1y + c_1) - \frac{q}{r}(a_2x + b_2y + c_2) \dots(1).$$

Now the coordinates of the point of intersection of the first two of the lines make the right-hand side of (1) vanish. Hence the same coordinates make the left-hand side vanish. The point of intersection of the first two therefore satisfies the equation to the third line and all three therefore meet in a point.

**81. Ex. 1.** *Shew that the three straight lines  $2x - 3y + 5 = 0$ ,  $3x + 4y - 7 = 0$ , and  $9x - 5y + 8 = 0$  meet in a point.*

If we multiply these three equations by 6, 2, and -2 we have identically

$$6(2x - 3y + 5) + 2(3x + 4y - 7) - 2(9x - 5y + 8) = 0.$$

The coordinates of the point of intersection of the first two lines make the first two brackets of this equation vanish and hence make the third vanish. The common point of intersection of the first two therefore satisfies the third equation. The three straight lines therefore meet in a point.

**Ex. 2.** *Prove that the three perpendiculars drawn from the vertices of a triangle upon the opposite sides all meet in a point.*

Let the triangle be  $ABC$  and let its angular points be the points

$$(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2), \text{ and } (x_3, y_3).$$

The equation to  $BC$  is  $y - y_2 = \frac{y_3 - y_2}{x_3 - x_2}(x - x_2).$

The equation to the perpendicular from  $A$  on this straight line is

$$y - y_1 = -\frac{x_3 - x_2}{y_3 - y_2}(x - x_1),$$

*i.e.*  $y(y_3 - y_2) + x(x_3 - x_2) = y_1(y_3 - y_2) + x_1(x_3 - x_2) \dots\dots\dots(1).$

So the perpendiculars from  $B$  and  $C$  on  $CA$  and  $AB$  are

$$y(y_1 - y_3) + x(x_1 - x_3) = y_2(y_1 - y_3) + x_2(x_1 - x_3) \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

and  $y(y_2 - y_1) + x(x_2 - x_1) = y_3(y_2 - y_1) + x_3(x_2 - x_1) \dots\dots\dots(3).$

On adding these three equations their sum identically vanishes. The straight lines represented by them therefore meet in a point.

This point is called the **orthocentre** of the triangle.

**82.** *To find the equation to any straight line which passes through the intersection of the two straight lines*

$$a_1x + b_1y + c_1 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

and  $a_2x + b_2y + c_2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$

If  $(x_1, y_1)$  be the common point of the equations (1) and (2) we may, as in Art. 77, find the values of  $x_1$  and  $y_1$ , and then the equation to any straight line through it is

$$y - y_1 = m(x - x_1),$$

where  $m$  is any quantity whatever.

**Aliter.** If  $A$  be the common point of the two straight lines, then both equations (1) and (2) are satisfied by the coordinates of the point  $A$ .

Hence the equation

$$a_1x + b_1y + c_1 + \lambda(a_2x + b_2y + c_2) = 0 \dots \dots \dots (3)$$

is satisfied by the coordinates of the common point  $A$ , where  $\lambda$  is any arbitrary constant.

But (3), being of the first degree in  $x$  and  $y$ , always represents a straight line.

It therefore represents a straight line passing through  $A$ .

Also the arbitrary constant  $\lambda$  may be so chosen that (3) may fulfil any other condition. It therefore represents any straight line passing through  $A$ .

**83. Ex.** Find the equation to the straight line which passes through the intersection of the straight lines

$$2x - 3y + 4 = 0, \quad 3x + 4y - 5 = 0 \dots \dots \dots (1),$$

and is perpendicular to the straight line

$$6x - 7y + 8 = 0 \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

Solving the equations (1), the coordinates  $x_1, y_1$  of their common point are given by

$$\frac{x_1}{(-3)(-5) - 4 \times 4} = \frac{y_1}{4 \times 3 - 2 \times (-5)} = \frac{1}{2 \times 4 - 3 \times (-3)} = \frac{1}{17},$$

so that  $x_1 = -\frac{1}{17}$  and  $y_1 = \frac{2}{17}$ .

The equation of any straight line through this common point is therefore

$$y - \frac{2}{17} = m(x + \frac{1}{17}).$$

This straight line is, by Art. 69, perpendicular to (2) if

$$m \times \frac{6}{7} = -1, \text{ i.e. if } m = -\frac{7}{6}.$$

The required equation is therefore

$$y - \frac{2}{17} = -\frac{7}{6}(x + \frac{1}{17}),$$

i.e.  $119x + 102y = 125$ .

**Aliter.** Any straight line through the intersection of the straight lines (1) is

$$2x - 3y + 4 + \lambda (3x + 4y - 5) = 0,$$

i.e.  $(2 + 3\lambda)x + y(4\lambda - 3) + 4 - 5\lambda = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$

This straight line is perpendicular to (2), if

$$6(2 + 3\lambda) - 7(4\lambda - 3) = 0, \quad (\text{Art. 69})$$

i.e. if  $\lambda = \frac{9}{10}.$

The equation (3) is therefore

$$x(2 + \frac{9}{10}) + y(\frac{13}{10} - 3) + 4 - \frac{165}{10} = 0,$$

i.e.  $119x + 102y - 125 = 0.$

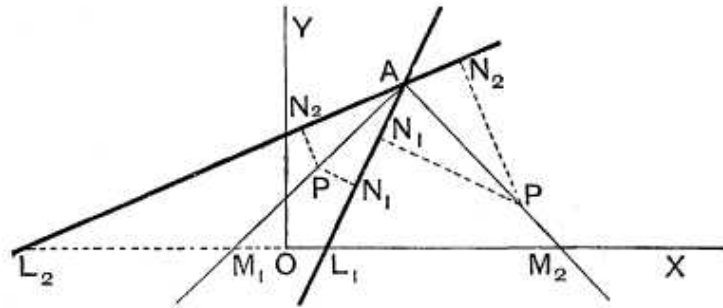
**Bisectors of angles between straight lines.**

**84.** To find the equations of the bisectors of the angles between the straight lines

$$a_1x + b_1y + c_1 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

and

$$a_2x + b_2y + c_2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$



Let the two straight lines be  $AL_1$  and  $AL_2$ , and let the bisectors of the angles between them be  $AM_1$  and  $AM_2$ .

Let  $P$  be any point on either of these bisectors and draw  $PN_1$  and  $PN_2$  perpendicular to the given lines.

The triangles  $PAN_1$  and  $PAN_2$  are equal in all respects, so that the perpendiculars  $PN_1$  and  $PN_2$  are equal in magnitude.

Let the equations to the straight lines be written so that  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  are both negative, and to the quantities  $\sqrt{a_1^2 + b_1^2}$  and  $\sqrt{a_2^2 + b_2^2}$  let the positive sign be prefixed.

If  $P$  be the point  $(h, k)$ , the numerical values of  $PN_1$  and  $PN_2$  are (by Art. 75)

$$\frac{a_1h + b_1k + c_1}{\sqrt{a_1^2 + b_1^2}} \text{ and } \frac{a_2h + b_2k + c_2}{\sqrt{a_2^2 + b_2^2}} \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

If  $P$  lie on  $AM_1$ , *i.e.* on the bisector of the angle between the two straight lines in which the origin lies, the point  $P$  and the origin lie on the same side of each of the two lines. Hence (by Art. 73, Cor.) the two quantities (1) have the same sign as  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  respectively.

In this case, since  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  have the same sign, the quantities (1) have the same sign, and hence

$$\frac{a_1h + b_1k + c_1}{\sqrt{a_1^2 + b_1^2}} = + \frac{a_2h + b_2k + c_2}{\sqrt{a_2^2 + b_2^2}}.$$

But this is the condition that the point  $(h, k)$  may lie on the straight line

$$\frac{a_1x + b_1y + c_1}{\sqrt{a_1^2 + b_1^2}} = \frac{a_2x + b_2y + c_2}{\sqrt{a_2^2 + b_2^2}},$$

which is therefore the equation to  $AM_1$ .

If, however,  $P$  lie on the other bisector  $AM_2$ , the two quantities (1) will have opposite signs, so that the equation to  $AM_2$  will be

$$\frac{a_1x + b_1y + c_1}{\sqrt{a_1^2 + b_1^2}} = - \frac{a_2x + b_2y + c_2}{\sqrt{a_2^2 + b_2^2}}.$$

The equations to the original lines being therefore arranged so that the constant terms are both positive (or both negative) the equation to the bisectors is

$$\frac{a_1x + b_1y + c_1}{\sqrt{a_1^2 + b_1^2}} = \pm \frac{a_2x + b_2y + c_2}{\sqrt{a_2^2 + b_2^2}},$$

the upper sign giving the bisector of the angle in which the origin lies.

**85. Ex.** Find the equations to the bisectors of the angles between the straight lines

$$3x - 4y + 7 = 0 \text{ and } 12x - 5y - 8 = 0.$$

Writing the equations so that their constant terms are both positive they are

$$3x - 4y + 7 = 0 \text{ and } -12x + 5y + 8 = 0.$$



The equation to the bisector of the angle in which the origin lies is therefore

$$\frac{3x - 4y + 7}{\sqrt{3^2 + 4^2}} = \frac{-12x + 5y + 8}{\sqrt{12^2 + 5^2}},$$

*i.e.*  $13(3x - 4y + 7) = 5(-12x + 5y + 8),$

*i.e.*  $99x - 77y + 51 = 0.$

The equation to the other bisector is

$$\frac{3x - 4y + 7}{\sqrt{3^2 + 4^2}} = -\frac{-12x + 5y + 8}{\sqrt{12^2 + 5^2}},$$

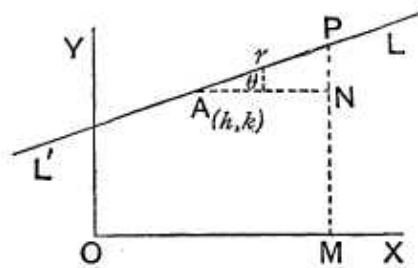
*i.e.*  $13(3x - 4y + 7) + 5(-12x + 5y + 8) = 0,$

*i.e.*  $21x + 27y - 131 = 0.$

**86.** It will be found useful in a later chapter to have the equation to a straight line, which passes through a given point and makes a given angle  $\theta$  with a given line, in a form different from that of Art. 62.

Let  $A$  be the given point  $(h, k)$  and  $L'AL$  a straight line through it inclined at an angle  $\theta$  to the axis of  $x$ .

Take any point  $P$ , whose coordinates are  $(x, y)$ , lying on this line, and let the distance  $AP$  be  $r$ .



Draw  $PM$  perpendicular to the axis of  $x$  and  $AN$  perpendicular to  $PM$ .

Then  $x - h = AN = AP \cos \theta = r \cos \theta,$   
 and  $y - k = NP = AP \sin \theta = r \sin \theta.$

Hence 
$$\frac{x - h}{\cos \theta} = \frac{y - k}{\sin \theta} = r \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

This being the relation holding between the coordinates of any point  $P$  on the line is the equation required.

*Cor.* From (1) we have

$$x = h + r \cos \theta \text{ and } y = k + r \sin \theta.$$

The coordinates of any point on the given line are therefore  $h + r \cos \theta$  and  $k + r \sin \theta.$

**87.** To find the length of the straight line drawn through a given point in a given direction to meet a given straight line.

Let the given straight line be

$$Ax + By + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Let the given point  $A$  be  $(h, k)$  and the given direction one making an angle  $\theta$  with the axis of  $x$ .

Let the line drawn through  $A$  meet the straight line (1) in  $P$  and let  $AP$  be  $r$ .

By the corollary to the last article the coordinates of  $P$  are

$$h + r \cos \theta \text{ and } k + r \sin \theta.$$

Since these coordinates satisfy (1) we have

$$A(h + r \cos \theta) + B(k + r \sin \theta) + C = 0.$$

$$\therefore r = -\frac{Ah + Bk + C}{A \cos \theta + B \sin \theta} \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

giving the length  $AP$  which is required.

**Cor.** From the preceding may be deduced the length of the perpendicular drawn from  $(h, k)$  upon (1).

For the “ $m$ ” of the straight line drawn through  $A$  is  $\tan \theta$  and the “ $m$ ” of (1) is  $-\frac{A}{B}$ .

This straight line is perpendicular to (1) if

$$\tan \theta \times \left(-\frac{A}{B}\right) = -1, \quad \text{i.e. if} \quad \tan \theta = \frac{B}{A},$$

so that 
$$\frac{\cos \theta}{A} = \frac{\sin \theta}{B} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}},$$

and hence

$$A \cos \theta + B \sin \theta = \frac{A^2 + B^2}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}} = \sqrt{A^2 + B^2}.$$

Substituting this value in (2) we have the magnitude of the required perpendicular.

**EXAMPLES VIII**

Find the coordinates of the points of intersection of the straight lines whose equations are

1.  $2x - 3y + 5 = 0$  and  $7x + 4y = 3$ .

2.  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$  and  $\frac{x}{b} + \frac{y}{a} = 1$ .

3.  $y = m_1x + \frac{a}{m_1}$  and  $y = m_2x + \frac{a}{m_2}$ .

4.  $x \cos \phi_1 + y \sin \phi_1 = a$  and  $x \cos \phi_2 + y \sin \phi_2 = a$ .

5. Two straight lines cut the axis of  $x$  at distances  $a$  and  $-a$  and the axis of  $y$  at distances  $b$  and  $b'$  respectively; find the coordinates of their point of intersection.

6. Find the distance of the point of intersection of the two straight lines

$$2x - 3y + 5 = 0 \text{ and } 3x + 4y = 0$$

from the straight line

$$5x - 2y = 0.$$

7. Shew that the perpendicular from the origin upon the straight line joining the points

$$(a \cos \alpha, a \sin \alpha) \text{ and } (a \cos \beta, a \sin \beta)$$

bisects the distance between them.

8. Find the equations of the two straight lines drawn through the point  $(0, a)$  on which the perpendiculars let fall from the point  $(2a, 2a)$  are each of length  $a$ .

Prove also that the equation of the straight line joining the feet of these perpendiculars is  $y + 2x = 5a$ .

9. Find the point of intersection and the inclination of the two lines

$$Ax + By = A + B \text{ and } A(x - y) + B(x + y) = 2B.$$

10. Find the coordinates of the point in which the line

$$2y - 3x + 7 = 0$$

meets the line joining the two points  $(6, -2)$  and  $(-8, 7)$ . Find also the angle between them.

11. Find the coordinates of the feet of the perpendiculars let fall from the point  $(5, 0)$  upon the sides of the triangle formed by joining the three points  $(4, 3)$ ,  $(-4, 3)$ , and  $(0, -5)$ ; prove also that the points so determined lie on a straight line.

12. Find the coordinates of the point of intersection of the straight lines

$$2x - 3y = 1 \text{ and } 5y - x = 3,$$

and determine also the angle at which they cut one another.

13. Find the angle between the two lines

$$3x + y + 12 = 0 \text{ and } x + 2y - 1 = 0.$$

Find also the coordinates of their point of intersection and the equations of lines drawn perpendicular to them from the point  $(3, -2)$ .

14. Prove that the points whose coordinates are respectively (5, 1), (1, -1), and (11, 4) lie on a straight line, and find its intercepts on the axes.

Prove that the following sets of three lines meet in a point.

15.  $2x - 3y = 7$ ,  $3x - 4y = 13$ , and  $8x - 11y = 33$ .

16.  $3x + 4y + 6 = 0$ ,  $6x + 5y + 9 = 0$ , and  $3x + 3y + 5 = 0$ .

17.  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$ ,  $\frac{x}{b} + \frac{y}{a} = 1$ , and  $y = x$ .

18. Prove that the three straight lines whose equations are  $15x - 18y + 1 = 0$ ,  $12x + 10y - 3 = 0$ , and  $6x + 66y - 11 = 0$  all meet in a point.

Shew also that the third line bisects the angle between the other two.

19. Find the conditions that the straight lines

$$y = m_1x + a_1, \quad y = m_2x + a_2, \quad \text{and} \quad y = m_3x + a_3$$

may meet in a point.

Find the coordinates of the orthocentre of the triangles whose angular points are

20. (0, 0), (2, -1), and (-1, 3).

21. (1, 0), (2, -4), and (-5, -2).

22. In any triangle  $ABC$ , prove that

- (1) the bisectors of the angles  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  meet in a point,
  - (2) the medians, *i.e.* the lines joining each vertex to the middle point of the opposite side, meet in a point,
- and (3) the straight lines through the middle points of the sides perpendicular to the sides meet in a point.

Find the equation to the straight line passing through

23. the point (3, 2) and the point of intersection of the lines

$$2x + 3y = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad 3x - 4y = 6.$$

24. the point (2, -9) and the intersection of the lines

$$2x + 5y - 8 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad 3x - 4y = 35.$$

25. the origin and the point of intersection of

$$x - y - 4 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad 7x + y + 20 = 0,$$

proving that it bisects the angle between them.

26. the origin and the point of intersection of the lines

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{x}{b} + \frac{y}{a} = 1.$$

27. the point (a, b) and the intersection of the same two lines.

28. the intersection of the lines

$$x - 2y - a = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad x + 3y - 2a = 0$$

and parallel to the straight line

$$3x + 4y = 0.$$

29. the intersection of the lines

$$x + 2y + 3 = 0 \text{ and } 3x + 4y + 7 = 0$$

and perpendicular to the straight line

$$y - x = 8.$$

30. the intersection of the lines

$$3x - 4y + 1 = 0 \text{ and } 5x + y - 1 = 0$$

and cutting off equal intercepts from the axes.

31. the intersection of the lines

$$2x - 3y = 10 \text{ and } x + 2y = 6$$

and the intersection of the lines

$$16x - 10y = 33 \text{ and } 12x + 14y + 29 = 0.$$

32. If through the angular points of a triangle straight lines be drawn parallel to the sides, and if the intersections of these lines be joined to the opposite angular points of the triangle, shew that the joining lines so obtained will meet in a point.

33. Find the equations to the straight lines passing through the point of intersection of the straight lines

$$Ax + By + C = 0 \text{ and } A'x + B'y + C' = 0 \text{ and}$$

(1) passing through the origin,

(2) parallel to the axis of  $y$ ,

(3) cutting off a given distance  $a$  from the axis of  $y$ ,

and (4) passing through a given point  $(x', y')$ .

34. Prove that the diagonals of the parallelogram formed by the four straight lines

$$\sqrt{3}x + y = 0, \sqrt{3}y + x = 0, \sqrt{3}x + y = 1, \text{ and } \sqrt{3}y + x = 1$$

are at right angles to one another.

35. Prove the same property for the parallelogram whose sides are

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1, \frac{x}{b} + \frac{y}{a} = 1, \frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 2, \text{ and } \frac{x}{b} + \frac{y}{a} = 2.$$

36. One side of a square is inclined to the axis of  $x$  at an angle  $\alpha$  and one of its extremities is at the origin; prove that the equations to its diagonals are

$$y(\cos \alpha - \sin \alpha) = x(\sin \alpha + \cos \alpha)$$

and

$$y(\sin \alpha + \cos \alpha) + x(\cos \alpha - \sin \alpha) = a.$$

Find the equations to the straight lines bisecting the angles between the following pairs of straight lines, placing first the bisector of the angle in which the origin lies.

$$37. \quad x + y\sqrt{3} = 6 + 2\sqrt{3} \text{ and } x - y\sqrt{3} = 6 - 2\sqrt{3}.$$

38.  $12x + 5y - 4 = 0$  and  $3x + 4y + 7 = 0$ .  
 39.  $4x + 3y - 7 = 0$  and  $24x + 7y - 31 = 0$ .  
 40.  $2x + y = 4$  and  $y + 3x = 5$ .  
 41.  $y - b = \frac{2m}{1 - m^2}(x - a)$  and  $y - b = \frac{2m'}{1 - m'^2}(x - a)$ .

Find the equations to the bisectors of the internal angles of the triangles the equations of whose sides are respectively

42.  $3x + 4y = 6$ ,  $12x - 5y = 3$ , and  $4x - 3y + 12 = 0$ .  
 43.  $3x + 5y = 15$ ,  $x + y = 4$ , and  $2x + y = 6$ .  
 44. Find the equations to the straight lines passing through the foot of the perpendicular from the point  $(h, k)$  upon the straight line  $Ax + By + C = 0$  and bisecting the angles between the perpendicular and the given straight line.  
 45. Find the direction in which a straight line must be drawn through the point  $(1, 2)$ , so that its point of intersection with the line  $x + y = 4$  may be at a distance  $\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{6}$  from this point.

## ANSWERS

1.  $\left(\frac{-11}{29}, \frac{41}{29}\right)$ .                      2.  $\left(\frac{ab}{a+b}, \frac{ab}{a+b}\right)$ .  
 3.  $\left\{\frac{a}{m_1 m_2}, a\left(\frac{1}{m_1} + \frac{1}{m_2}\right)\right\}$ .  
 4.  $\{a \cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 + \phi_2) \sec \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2), a \sin \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 + \phi_2) \sec \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2)\}$ .  
 5.  $\left(\frac{a(b-b')}{b+b'}, \frac{2bb'}{b+b'}\right)$ .                      6.  $\frac{130}{17\sqrt{29}}$ .  
 8.  $y = a$ ;  $3y = 4x + 3a$ .                      9.  $(1, 1)$ ;  $45^\circ$ .  
 10.  $\left(\frac{5}{2}, \frac{1}{4}\right)$ ;  $\tan^{-1} 60$ .                      11.  $(-1, -3)$ ;  $(3, 1)$ ;  $(5, 3)$ .  
 12.  $(2, 1)$ ;  $\tan^{-1} \frac{7}{17}$ .                      13.  $45^\circ$ ;  $(-5, 3)$ ;  $x - 3y = 9$ ;  $2x - y = 8$ .  
 14.  $3$  and  $-\frac{3}{2}$ .                      19.  $m_1(a_2 - a_3) + m_2(a_3 - a_1) + m_3(a_1 - a_2) = 0$ .  
 20.  $(-4, -3)$ .                      21.  $\left(\frac{1}{13}, -\frac{7}{13}\right)$ .                      23.  $43x - 29y = 71$ .  
 24.  $x - y = 11$ .                      25.  $y = 3x$ .                      26.  $y = x$ .  
 27.  $a^2y - b^2x = ab(a - b)$ .                      28.  $3x + 4y = 5a$ .                      29.  $x + y + 2 = 0$ .  
 30.  $23x + 23y = 11$ .                      31.  $13x - 23y = 64$ .  
 33.  $Ax + By + C + \lambda(A'x + B'y + C') = 0$  where  $\lambda$  is  
     (1)  $-\frac{C}{C'}$ , (2)  $-\frac{B}{B'}$ , (3)  $-\frac{Ba + C}{B'a + C'}$  and (4)  $-\frac{Ax' + By' + C}{A'x' + B'y' + C'}$ .  
 37.  $y = 2$ ;  $x = 6$ .                      38.  $99x + 77y + 71 = 0$ ;  $7x - 9y - 37 = 0$ .

39.  $x - 2y + 1 = 0$ ;  $2x + y = 3$ .
40.  $x(2\sqrt{2} - 3) + y(\sqrt{2} - 1) = 4\sqrt{2} - 5$ ;  
 $x(2\sqrt{2} + 3) + y(\sqrt{2} + 1) = 4\sqrt{2} + 5$ .
41.  $(y - b)(m + m') + (x - a)(1 - mm') = 0$ ;  
 $(y - b)(1 - mm') - (x - a)(m + m') = 0$ .
42.  $33x + 9y = 31$ ;  $112x - 64y + 141 = 0$ ;  $7y - x = 18$ .
43.  $x(3 + \sqrt{17}) + y(5 + \sqrt{17}) = 15 + 4\sqrt{17}$ ;  
 $x(4 + \sqrt{10}) + y(2 + \sqrt{10}) = 4\sqrt{10} + 12$ ;  
 $x(2\sqrt{34} - 3\sqrt{5}) + y(\sqrt{34} - 5\sqrt{5}) = 6\sqrt{34} - 15\sqrt{5}$ .
44.  $A(y - k) - B(x - h) = \pm(Ax + By + C)$ .
45. At an angle of  $15^\circ$  or  $75^\circ$  to the axis of  $x$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. Solving, we have  $x = -\frac{11}{29}$ ,  $y = \frac{41}{29}$ .

2. Solving, we have  $x = y = \frac{ab}{a + b}$ .

3. Solving, we have  $x = \frac{a}{m_1 m_2}$ ,  $y = a \left\{ \frac{1}{m_1} + \frac{1}{m_2} \right\}$ .

4. Solving, we have

$$\frac{x}{\sin \phi_2 - \sin \phi_1} = \frac{y}{\cos \phi_1 - \cos \phi_2} = \frac{a}{\sin(\phi_2 - \phi_1)}$$

$$\therefore \frac{x}{2 \cos \frac{\phi_2 + \phi_1}{2} \sin \frac{\phi_2 - \phi_1}{2}} = \frac{y}{2 \sin \frac{\phi_1 + \phi_2}{2} \sin \frac{\phi_2 - \phi_1}{2}}$$

$$= \frac{a}{2 \sin \frac{\phi_2 - \phi_1}{2} \cos \frac{\phi_2 - \phi_1}{2}}$$

$$\therefore x = a \frac{\cos \frac{1}{2} \phi_1 + \phi_2}{\cos \frac{1}{2} \phi_1 - \phi_2}, \quad y = a \frac{\sin \frac{1}{2} \phi_1 + \phi_2}{\cos \frac{1}{2} \phi_1 - \phi_2}$$

5. The equations of the lines are (Art. 50)

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1, \text{ and } -\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b'} = 1, \text{ whence } x = \frac{a(b - b')}{b + b'}, \quad y = \frac{2bb'}{b + b'}$$

6. Solving, the point of intersection is  $\left(-\frac{20}{17}, \frac{15}{17}\right)$ ;

$$\text{perpendicular} = \frac{30 + 100}{17\sqrt{29}} = \frac{130}{17\sqrt{29}}.$$

7. The straight line joining the points is (Ex. V. 22)

$$x \cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} + y \sin \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = a \cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2},$$

and the line through  $(0, 0)$  perpendicular to this is

$$x \sin \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} - y \cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = 0 \quad (\text{Art. 70}).$$

Whence, solving,  $x = \frac{a}{2}(\cos \alpha + \cos \beta)$ ,  $y = \frac{a}{2}(\sin \alpha + \sin \beta)$ ,

and this is the middle point of the line joining the given points.

8. Any line through the point  $(0, a)$  is  $y - a = mx$ .

The perpendicular from  $(2a, 2a) = \frac{2am - 2a + a}{\sqrt{1 + m^2}}$ ,

and  $= a$  by the question.

$$\therefore 3m^2 - 4m = 0; \quad \therefore m = 0 \text{ or } \frac{4}{3}.$$

Hence the lines are  $y = a$ , and  $3y = 4x + 3a$ .

The lines through  $(2a, 2a)$  perpendicular respectively to

$$y = a \text{ and } 3y = 4x + 3a$$

are  $x = 2a$  and  $y - 2a = -\frac{3}{4}(x - 2a)$ , or  $4y + 3x = 14a$ .

Solving, the feet of the perpendiculars are

$(2a, a)$  and  $\left(\frac{6a}{5}, \frac{13a}{5}\right)$ , and the line joining these points is

$$\frac{y - a}{\frac{13}{5} - 1} = \frac{x - 2a}{\frac{6}{5} - 2}, \text{ or } y + 2x = 5a.$$



9. Solving,  $x = 1, y = 1$ .

$$\text{The angle} = \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{A}{B} - \frac{A+B}{A-B}}{1 - \frac{A \cdot (A+B)}{B(A-B)}} = \tan^{-1} 1 = 45^\circ.$$

10. The line joining the points  $(6, -2)$  and  $(-8, 7)$  is

$$\frac{y+2}{7+2} = \frac{x-6}{-8-6}, \text{ or } 14y + 9x = 26.$$

Solving,  $x = \frac{5}{2}, y = \frac{1}{4}$ .

$$\text{The angle} = \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{3}{2} + \frac{9}{14}}{1 - \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{9}{14}} = \tan^{-1} 60.$$

11. The equations of the sides are

$$\frac{y-3}{3-3} = \frac{x+4}{4+4}; \quad \frac{y+5}{3+5} = \frac{x}{-4}; \quad \frac{y+5}{3+5} = \frac{x}{4};$$

*i.e.*  $y = 3; 2x + y + 5 = 0; -2x + y + 5 = 0,$

and perpendiculars to these through  $(5, 0)$  are

$$x = 5; x - 2y = 5; x + 2y = 5.$$

Solving, the required points are

$$(5, 3); (-1, -3); (3, 1).$$

Area of  $\triangle$  formed by these points

$$= \frac{1}{2} \{5(-3-1) - 1(1-3) + 3(3+3)\} = 0.$$

Hence the feet of the perpendiculars lie on a straight line.

12. Solving,  $x = 2, y = 1$ .

$$\text{The angle} = \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{2}{3} - \frac{1}{5}}{1 + \frac{2}{3} \cdot \frac{1}{5}} = \tan^{-1} \frac{7}{17}.$$

13. The angle =  $\tan^{-1} \frac{-\frac{1}{2} + 3}{1 + \frac{1}{2} \cdot 3} = \tan^{-1} 1 = 45^\circ.$

Solving,  $x = -5, y = 3$ . The required lines are

$$y + 2 = \frac{1}{3}(x - 3), y + 2 = 2(x - 3); \text{ i.e. } x - 3y = 9, 2x - y = 8.$$

14. The equation of the line joining (5, 1) and (1, -1) is  $\frac{y+1}{1+1} = \frac{x-1}{5-1}$ , or  $x - 2y = 3$ , which passes through (11, 4).

Putting  $x = 0$  and  $y = 0$ , the intercepts are 3 and  $-\frac{3}{2}$ .

15.  $(2x - 3y - 7) + 2(3x - 4y - 13) - (8x - 11y - 33) = 0$ ;  
 $\therefore$  the lines are concurrent. [Art. 80.]

16.  $(3x + 4y + 6) + (6x + 5y + 9) - 3(3x + 3y + 5) = 0$ ;  
 $\therefore$  the lines are concurrent. [Art. 80.]

17.  $ab \left\{ \frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} - 1 \right\} - ab \left\{ \frac{x}{b} + \frac{y}{a} - 1 \right\} + (a-b)\{x-y\} = 0$ ;  
 $\therefore$  the lines are concurrent. [Art. 80.]

18.  $2(15x - 18y + 1) - 3(12x + 10y - 3) + (6x + 66y - 11) = 0$ ;  
 $\therefore$  the lines are concurrent. [Art. 80.]

The bisectors of the angle between the first two lines are

$$\frac{15x - 18y + 1}{\sqrt{15^2 + 18^2}} = \pm \frac{12x + 10y - 3}{\sqrt{12^2 + 10^2}},$$

*i.e.*

$$\frac{15x - 18y + 1}{3\sqrt{61}} = \pm \frac{12x + 10y - 3}{2\sqrt{61}}.$$

Taking the upper sign, we have  $6x + 66y - 11 = 0$ .

19. Equation (5) of Art. 79 in this case becomes  
 $m_1(a_2 - a_3) + m_2(a_3 - a_1) + m_3(a_1 - a_2) = 0$ .

20. The equations to  $BC$  and  $AB$  are respectively  
 $4x + 3y - 5 = 0$  and  $2y + x = 0$ .

Hence the equations of two of the perpendiculars are

$$3x = 4y, \text{ and } 2(x+1) - (y-3) = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $2x - y + 5 = 0$ . Solving,  $x = -4$ ,  $y = -3$ .

21. The equations to  $BC$  and  $CA$  are  
 $2x + 7y + 24 = 0$  and  $3y - x + 1 = 0$ .

The equations of the perpendiculars upon them from  $A$  and  $B$  are

$$7(x-1) - 2y = 0 \text{ and } 3(x-2) + (y+4) = 0,$$

i.e.  $7x - 2y = 7, 3x + y = 2.$  Solving,  $x = \frac{11}{13}, y = -\frac{7}{13}.$

22. (I) Let  $xc_1 + ys_1 = p_1$  etc. be the equations of the sides of the  $\Delta$ , where  $c_1 \equiv \cos \alpha, s_1 \equiv \sin \alpha$ , etc.

The bisectors of the angles are [Art. 84],

$$x(c_1 \pm c_2) + y(s_1 \pm s_2) - p_1 \mp p_2 = 0, \dots\dots\dots (i)$$

$$x(c_2 \pm c_3) + y(s_2 \pm s_3) - p_2 \mp p_3 = 0, \dots\dots\dots (ii)$$

$$x(c_3 \pm c_1) + y(s_3 \pm s_1) - p_3 \mp p_1 = 0. \dots\dots\dots (iii)$$

(1) If the origin lies *within* the triangle we must take the lower sign in each case, and by addition, we see that these three lines are concurrent.

(2) If the origin lies *without* the triangle we must take the upper sign in two cases (say (i) and (ii)) and the lower sign in the third (say (iii)); and by multiplying (ii) by  $-1$  and adding we see that these three lines are concurrent. [Art 80.]

(II) Let  $(2x_1, 2y_1)$  etc. be coordinates of the angular points so that  $(x_1 + x_2, y_1 + y_2)$ , etc. are the coordinates of the middle points of the sides.

The equation of a median will be

$$\frac{y - 2y_3}{y_1 + y_2 - 2y_3} = \frac{x - 2x_3}{x_1 + x_2 - 2x_3},$$

or  $x(y_1 + y_2 - 2y_3) - y(x_1 + x_2 - 2x_3)$   
 $- 2x_3(y_1 + y_2) + 2y_3(x_1 + x_2) = 0.$

Similarly the equations of the other two medians are

$$x(y_2 + y_3 - 2y_1) - y(x_2 + x_3 - 2x_1)$$

$$- 2x_1(y_2 + y_3) + 2y_1(x_2 + x_3) = 0,$$

and  $x(y_3 + y_1 - 2y_2) - y(x_3 + x_1 - 2x_2)$   
 $- 2x_2(y_3 + y_1) + 2y_2(x_3 + x_1) = 0.$

By addition, we see that these three lines are concurrent. [Art. 80.]

(III) With the same notation :

The equation of the perpendicular to the line joining  $(2x_1, 2y_1)$  and  $(2x_2, 2y_2)$  through  $(x_1 + x_2, y_1 + y_2)$ , is

$$x(x_1 - x_2) + y(y_1 - y_2) - y_1^2 + y_2^2 - x_1^2 + x_2^2 = 0.$$

Similarly the other two perpendiculars are

$$x(x_2 - x_3) + y(y_2 - y_3) - y_2^2 + y_3^2 - x_2^2 + x_3^2 = 0,$$

and  $x(x_3 - x_1) + y(y_3 - y_1) - y_3^2 + y_1^2 - x_3^2 + x_1^2 = 0.$

By addition, we see that these three lines are concurrent.  
[Art. 80.]

23. Any line through their intersection is

$$2x + 3y - 1 + \lambda(3x - 4y - 6) = 0. \quad [\text{Art. 82.}]$$

If this passes through  $(3, 2)$ ,

$$6 + 6 - 1 + \lambda(9 - 8 - 6) = 0.$$

$\therefore \lambda = \frac{11}{5}$ , and the equation becomes

$$5(2x + 3y - 1) + 11(3x - 4y - 6) = 0, \text{ or } 43x - 29y = 71.$$

24. Any line through their intersection is

$$2x + 5y - 8 + \lambda(3x - 4y - 35) = 0.$$

If this passes through  $(2, -9)$ , then

$$4 - 45 - 8 + \lambda(6 + 36 - 35) = 0.$$

$\therefore \lambda = 7$ , and the equation becomes

$$2x + 5y - 8 + 7(3x - 4y - 35) = 0, \text{ or } x - y = 11.$$

25. Solving, the point of intersection is  $(-2, -6)$  and the line joining this point to the origin is  $y = 3x$ .

The equation of one of the bisectors is

$$\frac{x - y - 4}{\sqrt{2}} = -\frac{7x + y + 20}{5\sqrt{2}}, \text{ or } y = 3x.$$

26. Solving,  $x = y = \frac{ab}{a + b}$ .  $\therefore$  equation is  $x = y$ .

27. The equation is

$$\frac{x-a}{\frac{ab}{a+b}-a} = \frac{y-b}{\frac{ab}{a+b}-b}, \text{ or } a^2y - b^2x = ab(a-b).$$

28. Any line through their intersection is

$$x - 2y - a + \lambda(x + 3y - 2a) = 0.$$

If this is parallel to  $3x + 4y = 0$ ,

$$\frac{1 + \lambda}{2 - 3\lambda} = -\frac{3}{4}; \quad \therefore \lambda = 2,$$

and the equation becomes  $3x + 4y - 5a = 0$ .

29. Any line through their intersection is

$$x + 2y + 3 + \lambda(3x + 4y + 7) = 0.$$

If this is perpendicular to  $y - x = 8$ ,  $1 + 3\lambda = 2 + 4\lambda$ ;  
 $\therefore \lambda = -1$ , and the equation becomes  $x + y + 2 = 0$ .

30. Any line through their intersection is

$$3x - 4y + 1 + \lambda(5x + y - 1) = 0.$$

If this cuts off equal intercepts from the axes, then  
 $3 + 5\lambda = \lambda - 4$ ;  $\therefore \lambda = -\frac{7}{4}$ , and the equation becomes

$$4(3x - 4y + 1) - 7(5x + y - 1) = 0, \text{ or } 23x + 23y = 11.$$

31. Solving, the points of intersection are

$(\frac{38}{7}, \frac{2}{7})$  and  $(\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{5}{2})$ .  $\therefore$  the required equation is

$$\frac{x - \frac{1}{2}}{\frac{38}{7} - \frac{1}{2}} = \frac{y + \frac{5}{2}}{\frac{2}{7} + \frac{5}{2}}, \text{ or } 13x - 23y = 64.$$

32. Let  $ABC$  be the triangle. Let the parallels through  $B$  and  $C$  meet in  $A'$ , those through  $C$  and  $A$  in  $B'$ , and those through  $A$  and  $B$  in  $C'$ . Then, since  $ABCB'$ , and  $ACBC'$  are parallelograms,  $\therefore AB' = BC = C'A$ .

$\therefore A, B, C$  are the middle points of the sides  $B'C'$ ,  $C'A'$ ,  $A'B'$ . Hence, by Ex. 22 (2),  $AA'$ ,  $BB'$ , and  $CC'$  meet in a point.

**33.** (1) If  $Ax + By + C + \lambda(A'x + B'y + C') = 0$  passes through the origin,  $C + \lambda C' = 0$ .

$\therefore \lambda = -\frac{C}{C'}$ , and on substitution we get the required equation.

(2) If it is parallel to the axis of  $y$ ,

$$B + \lambda B' = 0. \quad \therefore \lambda = -\frac{B}{B'}$$

(3) If it cuts off a distance  $a$  from the axis of  $y$ ,

$$-\frac{C + \lambda C'}{B + \lambda B'} = a. \quad \therefore \lambda = -\frac{Ba + C}{B'a + C'}$$

(4) If it passes through the point  $(x', y')$ ,

$$Ax' + By' + C + \lambda(A'x' + B'y' + C') = 0;$$

$$\therefore \lambda = -\frac{Ax' + By' + C}{A'x' + B'y' + C'}$$

**34.** If we subtract (i) and (ii), and also (iii) and (iv), in each case we obtain  $x = y$ . If we add (i) and (iv), and also (ii) and (iii), in each case we obtain  $x + y = \frac{1}{1 + \sqrt{3}}$ . These are therefore the diagonals and they are at right angles.

**35.** As in Ex. 34, we obtain for the diagonals,  $x = y$  and

$$x + y = \frac{3ab}{a + b}$$

**36.** One diagonal passes through the origin and is inclined at  $45^\circ + a$  to the axis of  $x$ .

$\therefore$  its equation is  $y = x \cdot \tan(45^\circ + a)$ ,

or  $y(\cos a - \sin a) = x(\sin a + \cos a)$ .

The perpendicular from the origin on the other diagonal is  $\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}}$ , and the perpendicular is inclined at  $45^\circ + a$  to the axis of  $x$ ;  $\therefore$  the equation of the diagonal is (Art. 53),

$$x \cos (45^\circ + a) + y \sin (45^\circ + a) = \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}},$$

or  $x (\cos a - \sin a) + y (\sin a + \cos a) = a.$

**37.** The constant terms must be negative in each equation.

$$x + y \sqrt{3} - 6 - 2 \sqrt{3} = \pm (x - y \sqrt{3} - 6 + 2 \sqrt{3}),$$

or  $y = 2 ; x = 6.$

**38.** 
$$\frac{12x + 5y - 4}{13} = \pm \left( \frac{-3x - 4y - 7}{5} \right),$$

or  $99x + 77y + 71 = 0 ; 7x - 9y - 37 = 0.$

**39.** 
$$\frac{4x + 3y - 7}{5} = \pm \frac{24x + 7y - 31}{25},$$

or  $x - 2y + 1 = 0 ; 2x + y = 3.$

**40.** 
$$\frac{2x + y - 4}{\sqrt{5}} = \pm \frac{y + 3x - 5}{\sqrt{10}},$$

or  $x(2\sqrt{2} - 3) + y(\sqrt{2} - 1) = 4\sqrt{2} - 5,$

and  $x(2\sqrt{2} + 3) + y(\sqrt{2} + 1) = 4\sqrt{2} + 5.$

**41.** Let  $\tan \theta_1 = m, \tan \theta_2 = m'.$

If the bisector be inclined at  $\theta$ , then since the two lines are inclined at  $2\theta_1$  and  $2\theta_2$  respectively,

$$2\theta = 2\theta_1 + 2\theta_2 \text{ or } 2\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 2\theta_1 + 2\theta_2,$$

$$\therefore \theta = \theta_1 + \theta_2 \text{ or } \theta = \theta_1 + \theta_2 + \frac{\pi}{2},$$

$$\therefore \tan \theta = \frac{m + m'}{1 - mm'}, \text{ or } -\frac{1 - mm'}{m + m'}.$$

**42.** By reference to a figure and the last sentence of Art. 84, we see that the internal bisectors are

$$\frac{3x + 4y - 6}{5} = -\frac{12x - 5y - 3}{13}, \quad \frac{3y - 4x - 12}{5} = +\frac{12x - 5y - 3}{13},$$

and  $3y - 4x - 12 = -(3x + 4y - 6).$  Hence etc.

43. By reference to a figure and the last sentence of Art. 84, we see that the internal bisectors are

$$\frac{3x + 5y - 15}{\sqrt{34}} = + \frac{2x + y - 6}{\sqrt{5}}, \quad \frac{3x + 5y - 15}{\sqrt{34}} = - \frac{x + y - 4}{\sqrt{2}},$$

$$\frac{2x + y - 6}{\sqrt{5}} = - \frac{x + y - 4}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

44. The line through  $(h, k)$  perpendicular to

$$Ax + By + C = 0$$

is  $A(y - k) - B(x - h) = 0$ . [Art. 70.]

Hence the equation of bisectors is, by Art. 84,

$$\frac{A(y - k) - B(x - h)}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}} = \pm \frac{(Ax + By + C)}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}.$$

45. If the line be inclined at  $\theta$  to the axis of  $x$ , the point  $(1 + \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{6}\cos\theta, 2 + \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{6}\sin\theta)$  [Art. 86] must lie on

$$x + y = 4,$$

$$\therefore 1 + 2 + \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{6}(\cos\theta + \sin\theta) = 4, \text{ i. e. } \cos\theta + \sin\theta = \frac{3}{\sqrt{6}}.$$

$$\therefore \sin(\theta + 45^\circ) = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}. \quad \therefore \theta + 45^\circ = 60^\circ \text{ or } 120^\circ.$$

$$\therefore \theta = 15^\circ \text{ or } 75^\circ.$$



## Chapter 5

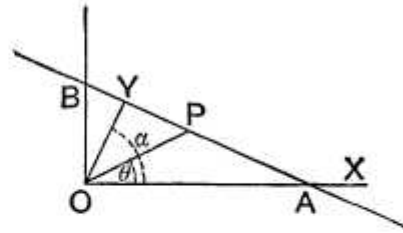
# THE STRAIGHT LINE

**: POLAR EQUATIONS. OBLIQUE COORDINATES. MISCELLANEOUS PROBLEMS. MISCELLANEOUS PROBLEMS. LOCI.**

**88.** *To find the general equation to a straight line in polar coordinates.*

Let  $p$  be the length of the perpendicular  $OY$  from the origin upon the straight line, and let this perpendicular make an angle  $\alpha$  with the initial line.

Let  $P$  be any point on the line and let its coordinates be  $r$  and  $\theta$ .



The equation required will then be the relation between  $r$ ,  $\theta$ ,  $p$ , and  $\alpha$ .

From the triangle  $OYP$  we have

$$p = r \cos YOP = r \cos (\alpha - \theta) = r \cos (\theta - \alpha).$$

The required equation is therefore

$$r \cos (\theta - \alpha) = p.$$

[On transforming to Cartesian coordinates this equation becomes the equation of Art. 53.]

**89.** *To find the polar equation of the straight line joining the points whose coordinates are  $(r_1, \theta_1)$  and  $(r_2, \theta_2)$ .*

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be the two given points and  $P$  any point on the line joining them whose coordinates are  $r$  and  $\theta$ .

Then, since

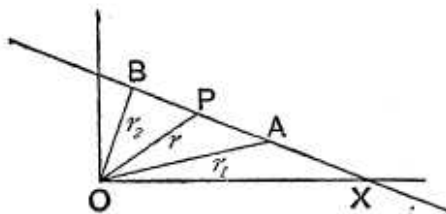
$$\triangle AOB = \triangle AOP + \triangle POB,$$

we have

$$\frac{1}{2} r_1 r_2 \sin AOB = \frac{1}{2} r_1 r \sin AOP + \frac{1}{2} r r_2 \sin POB,$$

$$\text{i.e. } r_1 r_2 \sin (\theta_2 - \theta_1) = r_1 r \sin (\theta - \theta_1) + r r_2 \sin (\theta_2 - \theta),$$

$$\text{i.e. } \frac{\sin (\theta_2 - \theta_1)}{r} = \frac{\sin (\theta - \theta_1)}{r_2} + \frac{\sin (\theta_2 - \theta)}{r_1}.$$



### OBLIQUE COORDINATES.

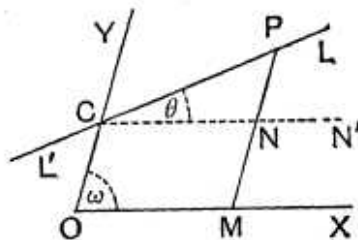
**90.** In the previous chapter we took the axes to be rectangular. In the great majority of cases rectangular axes are employed, but in some cases oblique axes may be used with advantage.

In the following articles we shall consider the propositions in which the results for oblique axes are different from those for rectangular axes. The propositions of Arts. 50 and 62 are true for oblique, as well as rectangular, coordinates.

**91.** To find the equation to a straight line referred to axes inclined at an angle  $\omega$ .

Let  $LPL'$  be a straight line which cuts the axis of  $Y$  at a distance  $c$  from the origin and is inclined at an angle  $\theta$  to the axis of  $x$ .

Let  $P$  be any point on the straight line. Draw  $PNM$  parallel to the axis of  $y$  to meet  $OX$  in  $M$ , and let it meet the straight line through  $C$  parallel to the axis of  $x$  in the point  $N$ .



Let  $P$  be the point  $(x, y)$ , so that

$$CN = OM = x, \text{ and } NP = MP - OC = y - c.$$

Since  $\angle CPN = \angle PNN' - \angle PCN' = \omega - \theta$ , we have

$$\frac{y - c}{x} = \frac{NP}{CN} = \frac{\sin NCP}{\sin CPN} = \frac{\sin \theta}{\sin (\omega - \theta)}.$$

Hence 
$$y = x \frac{\sin \theta}{\sin (\omega - \theta)} + c \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

This equation is of the form

$$y = mx + c,$$

where

$$m = \frac{\sin \theta}{\sin (\omega - \theta)} = \frac{\sin \theta}{\sin \omega \cos \theta - \cos \omega \sin \theta} = \frac{\tan \theta}{\sin \omega - \cos \omega \tan \theta},$$

and therefore 
$$\tan \theta = \frac{m \sin \omega}{1 + m \cos \omega}.$$

In oblique coordinates the equation

$$y = mx + c$$

therefore represents a straight line which is inclined at an angle

$$\tan^{-1} \frac{m \sin \omega}{1 + m \cos \omega}$$

to the axis of  $x$ .

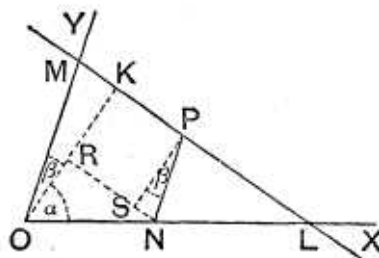
**Cor.** From (1), by putting in succession  $\theta$  equal to  $90^\circ$  and  $90^\circ + \omega$ , we see that the equations to the straight lines, passing through the origin and perpendicular to the axes of  $x$  and  $y$ , are respectively  $y = -\frac{x}{\cos \omega}$  and  $y = -x \cos \omega$ .

**92.** *The axes being oblique, to find the equation to the straight line, such that the perpendicular on it from the origin is of length  $p$  and makes angles  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  with the axes of  $x$  and  $y$ .*

Let  $LM$  be the given straight line and  $OK$  the perpendicular on it from the origin.

Let  $P$  be any point on the straight line; draw the ordinate  $PN$  and draw  $NR$  perpendicular to  $OK$  and  $PS$  perpendicular to  $NR$ .

Let  $P$  be the point  $(x, y)$ , so that  $ON = x$  and  $NP = y$ .



The lines  $NP$  and  $OY$  are parallel.

Also  $OK$  and  $SP$  are parallel, each being perpendicular to  $NR$ .

Thus  $\angle SPN = \angle KOM = \beta$ .

We therefore have

$$p = OK = OR + SP = ON \cos \alpha + NP \cos \beta = x \cos \alpha + y \cos \beta.$$

Hence  $x \cos \alpha + y \cos \beta - p = 0$ ,

being the relation which holds between the coordinates of any point on the straight line, is the required equation.

**93.** To find the angle between the straight lines

$$y = mx + c \text{ and } y = m'x + c',$$

the axes being oblique.

If these straight lines be respectively inclined at angles  $\theta$  and  $\theta'$  to the axis of  $x$ , we have, by the last article,

$$\tan \theta = \frac{m \sin \omega}{1 + m \cos \omega} \text{ and } \tan \theta' = \frac{m' \sin \omega}{1 + m' \cos \omega}.$$

The angle required is  $\theta - \theta'$ .

$$\text{Now } \tan(\theta - \theta') = \frac{\tan \theta - \tan \theta'}{1 + \tan \theta \cdot \tan \theta'}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{\frac{m \sin \omega}{1 + m \cos \omega} - \frac{m' \sin \omega}{1 + m' \cos \omega}}{1 + \frac{m \sin \omega}{1 + m \cos \omega} \cdot \frac{m' \sin \omega}{1 + m' \cos \omega}} \\ &= \frac{m \sin \omega (1 + m' \cos \omega) - m' \sin \omega (1 + m \cos \omega)}{(1 + m \cos \omega)(1 + m' \cos \omega) + mm' \sin^2 \omega} \\ &= \frac{(m - m') \sin \omega}{1 + (m + m') \cos \omega + mm'}. \end{aligned}$$

The required angle is therefore

$$\tan^{-1} \frac{(m - m') \sin \omega}{1 + (m + m') \cos \omega + mm'}.$$

**Cor. 1.** The two given lines are parallel if  $m = m'$ .

**Cor. 2.** The two given lines are perpendicular if

$$1 + (m + m') \cos \omega + mm' = 0.$$

**94.** If the straight lines have their equations in the form

$$Ax + By + C = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad A'x + B'y + C' = 0,$$

then  $m = -\frac{A}{B}$  and  $m' = -\frac{A'}{B'}$ .

Substituting these values in the result of the last article the angle between the two lines is easily found to be

$$\tan^{-1} \frac{A'B - AB'}{AA' + BB' - (AB' + A'B) \cos \omega} \sin \omega.$$

The given lines are therefore parallel if

$$A'B - AB' = 0.$$

They are perpendicular if

$$AA' + BB' = (AB' + A'B) \cos \omega.$$

**95. Ex.** The axes being inclined at an angle of  $30^\circ$ , obtain the equations to the straight lines which pass through the origin and are inclined at  $45^\circ$  to the straight line  $x + y = 1$ .

Let either of the required straight lines be  $y = mx$ .

The given straight line is  $y = -x + 1$ , so that  $m' = -1$ .

We therefore have

$$\frac{(m - m') \sin \omega}{1 + (m + m') \cos \omega + mm'} = \tan (\pm 45^\circ),$$

where  $m' = -1$  and  $\omega = 30^\circ$ .

This equation gives  $\frac{m + 1}{2 + (m - 1)\sqrt{3} - 2m} = \pm 1$ .

Taking the upper sign we obtain  $m = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ .

Taking the lower sign we have  $m = -\sqrt{3}$ .

The required equations are therefore

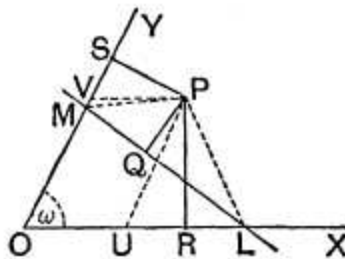
$$y = -\sqrt{3}x \quad \text{and} \quad y = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}x,$$

*i.e.*  $y + \sqrt{3}x = 0$  and  $\sqrt{3}y + x = 0$ .

**96.** To find the length of the perpendicular from the point  $(x', y')$  upon the straight line  $Ax + By + C = 0$ , the axes being inclined at an angle  $\omega$ , and the equation being written so that  $C$  is a negative quantity.

Let the given straight line meet the axes in  $L$  and  $M$ , so that  $OL = -\frac{C}{A}$  and  $OM = -\frac{C}{B}$ .

Let  $P$  be the given point  $(x', y')$ . Draw the perpendiculars  $PQ$ ,  $PR$ , and  $PS$  on the given line and the two axes.



Taking  $O$  and  $P$  on opposite sides of the given line, we then have

$$\triangle LPM + \triangle MOL = \triangle OLP + \triangle OPM,$$

*i.e.*  $PQ \cdot LM + OL \cdot OM \sin \omega = OL \cdot PR + OM \cdot PS \dots (1).$

Draw  $PU$  and  $PV$  parallel to the axes of  $y$  and  $x$ , so that  $PU = y'$  and  $PV = x'$ .

Hence  $PR = PU \sin PUR = y' \sin \omega,$

and  $PS = PV \sin PVS = x' \sin \omega.$

Also

$$\begin{aligned} LM &= \sqrt{OL^2 + OM^2 - 2OL \cdot OM \cos \omega} \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{C^2}{A^2} + \frac{C^2}{B^2} - 2 \frac{C^2}{AB} \cos \omega} = -C \sqrt{\frac{1}{A^2} + \frac{1}{B^2} - \frac{2 \cos \omega}{AB}}, \end{aligned}$$

since  $C$  is a negative quantity.

On substituting these values in (1), we have

$$\begin{aligned} PQ \times (-C) \times \sqrt{\frac{1}{A^2} + \frac{1}{B^2} - \frac{2 \cos \omega}{AB}} + \frac{C^2}{AB} \sin \omega \\ = -\frac{C}{A} \cdot y' \sin \omega - \frac{C}{B} \cdot x' \sin \omega, \end{aligned}$$

so that  $PQ = \frac{Ax' + By' + C}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2 - 2AB \cos \omega}} \cdot \sin \omega.$

**Cor.** If  $\omega = 90^\circ$ , *i.e.* if the axes be rectangular, we have the result of Art. 75.

## EXAMPLES IX

1. The axes being inclined at an angle of  $60^\circ$ , find the inclination to the axis of  $x$  of the straight lines whose equations are

$$(1) \quad y = 2x + 5,$$

and

$$(2) \quad 2y = (\sqrt{3} - 1)x + 7.$$

2. The axes being inclined at an angle of  $120^\circ$ , find the tangent of the angle between the two straight lines

$$8x + 7y = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad 28x - 73y = 101.$$

3. With oblique coordinates find the tangent of the angle between the straight lines

$$y = mx + c \quad \text{and} \quad my + x = d.$$

4. If  $y = x \tan \frac{11\pi}{24}$  and  $y = x \tan \frac{19\pi}{24}$  represent two straight lines

at right angles, prove that the angle between the axes is  $\frac{\pi}{4}$ .

5. Prove that the straight lines  $y + x = c$  and  $y = x + d$  are at right angles, whatever be the angle between the axes.

6. Prove that the equation to the straight line which passes through the point  $(h, k)$  and is perpendicular to the axis of  $x$  is

$$x + y \cos \omega = h + k \cos \omega.$$

7. Find the equations to the sides and diagonals of a regular hexagon, two of its sides, which meet in a corner, being the axes of coordinates.

8. From each corner of a parallelogram a perpendicular is drawn upon the diagonal which does not pass through that corner and these are produced to form another parallelogram; shew that its diagonals are perpendicular to the sides of the first parallelogram and that they both have the same centre.

9. If the straight lines  $y = m_1x + c_1$  and  $y = m_2x + c_2$  make equal angles with the axis of  $x$  and be not parallel to one another, prove that  $m_1 + m_2 + 2m_1m_2 \cos \omega = 0$ .

10. The axes being inclined at an angle of  $30^\circ$ , find the equation to the straight line which passes through the point  $(-2, 3)$  and is perpendicular to the straight line  $y + 3x = 6$ .

11. Find the length of the perpendicular drawn from the point  $(4, -3)$  upon the straight line  $6x + 3y - 10 = 0$ , the angle between the axes being  $60^\circ$ .

12. Find the equation to, and the length of, the perpendicular drawn from the point  $(1, 1)$  upon the straight line  $3x + 4y + 5 = 0$ , the angle between the axes being  $120^\circ$ .

13. The coordinates of a point  $P$  referred to axes meeting at an angle  $\omega$  are  $(h, k)$ ; prove that the length of the straight line joining the feet of the perpendiculars from  $P$  upon the axes is

$$\sin \omega \sqrt{h^2 + k^2 + 2hk \cos \omega}.$$

14. From a given point  $(h, k)$  perpendiculars are drawn to the axes, whose inclination is  $\omega$ , and their feet are joined. Prove that the length of the perpendicular drawn from  $(h, k)$  upon this line is

$$\frac{hk \sin^2 \omega}{\sqrt{h^2 + k^2 + 2hk \cos \omega}},$$

and that its equation is  $hx - ky = h^2 - k^2$ .

## ANSWERS

1. (1)  $\tan^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ ; (2)  $15^\circ$ .

2.  $\tan^{-1} \frac{30\sqrt{3}}{37}$ .

3.  $\tan^{-1} \left( \frac{m^2+1}{m^2-1} \tan \omega \right)$ .

7.  $y=0$ ,  $y=x-a$ ,  $x=2a$ ,  $y=2a$ ,  $y=x+a$ ,  $x=0$ ,  $y=x$ ,  $x=a$ , and  $y=a$ , where  $a$  is the length of a side.

10.  $y(6-\sqrt{3})+x(3\sqrt{3}-2)=22-9\sqrt{3}$ .

11.  $\frac{5}{8}$ .

12.  $10y-11x+1=0$ ;  $\frac{6}{7}\sqrt{111}$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. (1) The angle  $= \tan^{-1} \frac{2 \cdot \sin 60^\circ}{1 + 2 \cos 60^\circ}$ , [Art. 91]  
 $= \tan^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ .

(2) The angle  $= \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{\sqrt{3}-1}{2} \cdot \sin 60^\circ}{1 + \frac{\sqrt{3}-1}{2} \cdot \cos 60^\circ}$   
 $= \tan^{-1} (2 - \sqrt{3}) = 15^\circ$ .



$$\begin{aligned}
 2. \quad \text{The angle} &= \tan^{-1} \frac{\left(\frac{28}{73} + \frac{8}{7}\right) \sin 120^\circ}{1 + \left(\frac{28}{73} - \frac{8}{7}\right) \cos 120^\circ - \frac{28}{73} \cdot \frac{8}{7}} \\
 &= \tan^{-1} \frac{30\sqrt{3}}{37}.
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 3. \quad \text{The angle} &= \tan^{-1} \frac{\left(m + \frac{1}{m}\right) \sin \omega}{1 + \left(m - \frac{1}{m}\right) \cos \omega - 1} \\
 &= \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{m^2 + 1}{m^2 - 1} \cdot \tan \omega \right).
 \end{aligned}$$

$$4. \quad 1 + \left( \tan \frac{11\pi}{24} + \tan \frac{19\pi}{24} \right) \cos \omega + \tan \frac{11\pi}{24} \cdot \tan \frac{19\pi}{24} = 0.$$

[Art. 93, Cor. 2]

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \cos \omega &= - \frac{1 + \tan \frac{11\pi}{24} \cdot \tan \frac{19\pi}{24}}{\tan \frac{11\pi}{24} + \tan \frac{19\pi}{24}} = \frac{\cos \frac{19\pi - 11\pi}{24}}{\sin \frac{19\pi + 11\pi}{24}} = \frac{1}{-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}} \\
 &= -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}. \quad \therefore \omega = 135^\circ.
 \end{aligned}$$

5.  $1 + (1 - 1) \cos \omega - 1 = 0$ , whatever be the value of  $\omega$ .

6. The lines  $y = 0$ , and  $y - k = m(x - h)$  are perpendicular if  $1 + m \cos \omega = 0$ . [Art. 92, Cor. 2.]

$$\therefore m = -\sec \omega.$$

Substituting, the equation becomes

$$x + y \cos \omega = h + k \cos \omega.$$

7. Let  $OABCDE$  be the hexagon,  $OA$  and  $OE$  being the axes of  $x$  and  $y$ .

The equations of  $OA$  and  $OE$  are  $y = 0$ ,  $x = 0$ .

The intercepts cut from the axes by  $AB$  are  $a$ ,  $-a$ .

$$\therefore \text{its equation is } x - y = a.$$

Those cut off by  $ED$  are  $-a, a$ .

$\therefore$  its equation is  $y - x = a$ .

$CD$  and  $BE$  are parallel to the axis of  $x$  and their ordinates are  $2a, a$ .  $\therefore$  their equations are  $y = 2a, y = a$ .

$CB$  and  $AD$  are parallel to the axis of  $y$  and their abscissae are  $2a, a$ .  $\therefore$  their equations are  $x = 2a, x = a$ .

$OC$  bisects the angle between the axes.

$\therefore$  its equation is  $x = y$ .

8. Let  $(a, 0); (0, b); (-a, 0); (0, -b)$  be the coordinates of the angular points, the diagonals being the axes.

The equations of the sides of the 2nd parallelogram will be (as in Ex. 6)

$$x + y \sec \omega = a, \dots\dots\dots (i)$$

$$x \sec \omega + y = b, \dots\dots\dots (ii)$$

$$x + y \sec \omega = -a, \dots\dots\dots (iii)$$

and  $x \sec \omega + y = -b. \dots\dots\dots (iv)$

$(i) \times b - (ii) \times a$  gives  $x(b - a \sec \omega) + y(b \sec \omega - a) = 0$ , (v) which is *some* line through the intersection of (i) and (ii), but  $(iii) \times b - (iv) \times a$  gives the same line.

Hence (v) is the equation of a diagonal.

Similarly,  $x(b + a \sec \omega) + y(b \sec \omega + a) = 0 \dots\dots (vi)$ , is the other diagonal; and these diagonals both pass through the origin.

Also (v) is perpendicular to a side of the first parallelogram, viz.  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$ , since

$$1 + \left( \frac{b - a \sec \omega}{a - b \sec \omega} - \frac{b}{a} \right) \cos \omega - \frac{b^2 - ab \sec \omega}{a^2 - ab \sec \omega} = 0.$$

Similarly (vi) is perpendicular to  $\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} = 1$ .

9. The angles they make with the axis of  $x$  are supplementary.

$$\therefore \tan^{-1} \frac{m_2 \sin \omega}{1 + m_1 \sin \omega} = \pi - \tan^{-1} \frac{m_2 \sin \omega}{1 + m_2 \cos \omega};$$

$$\therefore \frac{m_1}{1 + m_1 \cos \omega} + \frac{m_2}{1 + m_2 \cos \omega} = 0;$$

$$\therefore m_1 + m_2 + 2m_1 m_2 \cos \omega = 0.$$

10. Any line through  $(-2, 3)$  is  $y - 3 = m(x + 2)$ .

If this is perpendicular to  $y + 3x = 6$ ,

$$1 + (m - 3) \cos 30^\circ - 3m = 0; \therefore m = \frac{3\sqrt{3} - 2}{\sqrt{3} - 6}.$$

Substituting, the equation becomes

$$y(6 - \sqrt{3}) + x(3\sqrt{3} - 2) = 22 - 9\sqrt{3}.$$

11. Perpendicular

$$= \frac{6 \cdot 4 - 3 \cdot 3 - 10}{\sqrt{6^2 + 3^2} - 2 \cdot 6 \cdot 3 \cos 60^\circ} \cdot \sin 60^\circ \text{ [Art. 96]} = \frac{5}{8}.$$

12. Length

$$= \frac{3 + 4 + 5}{\sqrt{3^2 + 4^2} - 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4 \cos 120^\circ} \cdot \sin 120^\circ \text{ [Art. 96]} = \frac{6\sqrt{111}}{37}.$$

Any line through  $(1, 1)$  is  $y - 1 = m(x - 1)$ ;

if this is perpendicular to  $3x + 4y + 5 = 0$ ,

$$1 + (m - \frac{3}{4}) \cos 120^\circ - \frac{3}{4} \cdot m = 0; \text{ [Art. 92, Cor. 2]}$$

$$\therefore m = \frac{11}{10}, \text{ and the equation becomes } 10y - 11x + 1 = 0.$$

13. Draw  $PN$ ,  $PM$  perpendicular to the axes of  $x$  and  $y$ . Then  $ON = h + k \cos \omega$ , and  $OM = k + h \cos \omega$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence } MN^2 &= (h + k \cos \omega)^2 + (k + h \cos \omega)^2 \\ &\quad - 2 \cos \omega (h + k \cos \omega) (k + h \cos \omega) \\ &= (h^2 + k^2 + 2hk \cos \omega) \sin^2 \omega. \end{aligned}$$

14. See last Ex. Draw  $PK$  perpendicular to  $MN$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } PK \cdot MN &= 2 \Delta PMN = PM \cdot PN \sin \widehat{MPN} \\ &= h \sin \omega \cdot k \sin \omega \cdot \sin \omega. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore PK = \frac{hk \sin^2 \omega}{\sqrt{h^2 + k^2 + 2hk \cos \omega}}, \text{ by Ex. 13.}$$

The equation of  $MN$  is

$$\frac{x}{h + k \cos \omega} + \frac{y}{k + h \cos \omega} = 1. \dots\dots\dots (i)$$

Any line through  $(h, k)$  is  $y - k = m(x - h)$ . ..... (ii)

If (i) and (ii) are perpendicular, then (by Art. 92, Cor. 2)

$$1 + \left( m - \frac{k + h \cos \omega}{h + k \cos \omega} \right) \cos \omega - \frac{m(k + h \cos \omega)}{h + k \cos \omega} = 0.$$

$\therefore m = \frac{h}{k}$ . On substitution, the required equation is

$$ky - k^2 = hx - h^2.$$

**Straight lines passing through fixed points.**

**97.** *If the equation to a straight line be of the form*

$$ax + by + c + \lambda (a'x + b'y + c') = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

*where  $\lambda$  is any arbitrary constant, it always passes through one fixed point whatever be the value of  $\lambda$ .*

For the equation (1) is satisfied by the coordinates of the point which satisfies *both* of the equations

$$ax + by + c = 0,$$

and

$$a'x + b'y + c' = 0.$$

This point is, by Art. 77,

$$\left( \frac{bc' - b'c}{ab' - a'b}, \frac{ca' - c'a}{ab' - a'b} \right),$$

and these coordinates are independent of  $\lambda$ .

**Ex.** *Given the vertical angle of a triangle in magnitude and position, and also the sum of the reciprocals of the sides which contain it; shew that the base always passes through a fixed point.*

Take the fixed angular point as origin and the directions of the sides containing it as axes; let the lengths of these sides in any such triangle be  $a$  and  $b$ , which are not therefore given.

We have 
$$\frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{b} = \text{const.} = \frac{1}{k} \text{ (say)} \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

The equation to the base is

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1,$$

*i.e.*, by (1), 
$$\frac{x}{a} + y \left( \frac{1}{k} - \frac{1}{a} \right) = 1,$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{1}{a} (x - y) + \frac{y}{k} - 1 = 0.$$

Whatever be the value of  $a$  this straight line always passes through the point given by

$$x - y = 0 \text{ and } \frac{y}{k} - 1 = 0,$$

*i.e.* through the fixed point  $(k, k)$ .

**98.** *Prove that the coordinates of the centre of the circle inscribed in the triangle, whose vertices are the points  $(x_1, y_1)$ ,  $(x_2, y_2)$ , and  $(x_3, y_3)$ , are*

$$\frac{ax_1 + bx_2 + cx_3}{a + b + c} \text{ and } \frac{ay_1 + by_2 + cy_3}{a + b + c},$$

where  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  are the lengths of the sides of the triangle.

Find also the coordinates of the centres of the escribed circles.

Let  $ABC$  be the triangle and let  $AD$  and  $CE$  be the bisectors of the angles  $A$  and  $C$  and let them meet in  $O'$ .

Then  $O'$  is the required point.

Since  $AD$  bisects the angle  $BAC$  we have, by Euc. VI. 3,

$$\frac{BD}{BA} = \frac{DC}{AC} = \frac{BD + DC}{BA + AC} = \frac{a}{b + c},$$

so that

$$DC = \frac{ba}{b + c}.$$

Also, since  $CO'$  bisects the angle  $ACD$ , we have

$$\frac{AO'}{O'D} = \frac{AC}{CD} = \frac{b}{\frac{ba}{b + c}} = \frac{b + c}{a}.$$

The point  $D$  therefore divides  $BC$  in the ratio

$$BA : AC, \text{ i.e. } c : b.$$

Also  $O'$  divides  $AD$  in the ratio  $b + c : a$ .

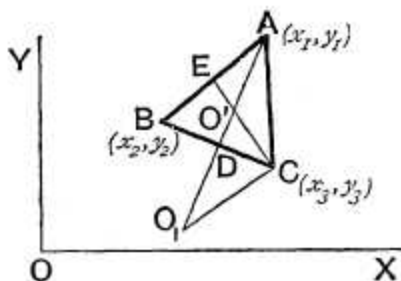
Hence, by Art. 22, the coordinates of  $D$  are

$$\frac{cx_3 + bx_2}{c + b} \text{ and } \frac{cy_3 + by_2}{c + b}.$$

Also, by the same article, the coordinates of  $O'$  are

$$\frac{(b + c) \times \frac{cx_3 + bx_2}{c + b} + ax_1}{(b + c) + a} \text{ and } \frac{(b + c) \times \frac{cy_3 + by_2}{c + b} + ay_1}{(b + c) + a},$$

i.e. 
$$\frac{ax_1 + bx_2 + cx_3}{a + b + c} \text{ and } \frac{ay_1 + by_2 + cy_3}{a + b + c}.$$



Again, if  $O_1$  be the centre of the escribed circle opposite to the angle  $A$ , the line  $CO_1$  bisects the exterior angle of  $ACB$ .

Hence (Euc. VI. A) we have

$$\frac{AO_1}{O_1D} = \frac{AC}{CD} = \frac{b+c}{a}.$$

Therefore  $O_1$  is the point which divides  $AD$  *externally* in the ratio  $b+c : a$ .

Its coordinates (Art. 22) are therefore

$$\frac{(b+c) \frac{cx_3 + bx_2}{c+b} - ax_1}{(b+c) - a} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{(b+c) \frac{cy_3 + by_2}{c+b} - ay_1}{(b+c) - a},$$

*i.e.*  $\frac{-ax_1 + bx_2 + cx_3}{-a + b + c} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{-ay_1 + by_2 + cy_3}{-a + b + c}.$

Similarly, it may be shewn that the coordinates of the centres of the escribed circles opposite to  $B$  and  $C$  are respectively

$$\left( \frac{ax_1 - bx_2 + cx_3}{a - b + c}, \frac{ay_1 - by_2 + cy_3}{a - b + c} \right),$$

and  $\left( \frac{ax_1 + bx_2 - cx_3}{a + b - c}, \frac{ay_1 + by_2 - cy_3}{a + b - c} \right).$

**99.** As a numerical example consider the case of the triangle formed by the straight lines

$$3x + 4y - 7 = 0, \quad 12x + 5y - 17 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad 5x + 12y - 34 = 0.$$

These three straight lines being  $BC$ ,  $CA$ , and  $AB$  respectively we easily obtain, by solving, that the points  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  are

$$\left( \frac{2}{7}, \frac{19}{7} \right), \quad \left( \frac{-52}{16}, \frac{67}{16} \right) \quad \text{and} \quad (1, 1).$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} a &= \sqrt{\left(\frac{-52}{16} - 1\right)^2 + \left(\frac{67}{16} - 1\right)^2} = \sqrt{\frac{68^2}{16^2} + \frac{51^2}{16^2}} \\ &= \frac{17}{16} \sqrt{4^2 + 3^2} = \frac{85}{16}, \end{aligned}$$

$$b = \sqrt{\left(1 - \frac{2}{7}\right)^2 + \left(1 - \frac{19}{7}\right)^2} = \sqrt{\frac{5^2}{7^2} + \frac{12^2}{7^2}} = \frac{13}{7},$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} c &= \sqrt{\left(\frac{2}{7} + \frac{52}{16}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{19}{7} - \frac{67}{16}\right)^2} = \sqrt{\frac{396^2 + 165^2}{112^2}} \\ &= \frac{33}{112} \sqrt{169} = \frac{429}{112}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$ax_1 = \frac{85}{16} \times \frac{2}{7} = \frac{170}{112}; \quad ay_1 = \frac{85}{16} \times \frac{19}{7} = \frac{1615}{112};$$

$$bx_2 = \frac{13}{7} \times \frac{-52}{16} = -\frac{676}{112}; \quad by_2 = \frac{13}{7} \times \frac{67}{16} = \frac{871}{112};$$

$$cx_3 = \frac{429}{112}; \quad \text{and} \quad cy_3 = \frac{429}{112}.$$

The coordinates of the centre of the incircle are therefore

$$\frac{\frac{170}{112} - \frac{676}{112} + \frac{429}{112}}{\frac{85}{16} + \frac{13}{7} + \frac{429}{112}} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\frac{1615}{112} + \frac{871}{112} + \frac{429}{112}}{\frac{85}{16} + \frac{13}{7} + \frac{429}{112}},$$

$$i.e. \quad \frac{-1}{16} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{265}{112}.$$

The length of the radius of the incircle is the perpendicular from  $\left(-\frac{1}{16}, \frac{265}{112}\right)$  upon the straight line

$$3x + 4y - 7 = 0,$$



$$\begin{aligned} \text{and therefore} \quad &= \frac{\left(3 \times -\frac{1}{16}\right) + \left(4 \times \frac{265}{112}\right) - 7}{\sqrt{3^2 + 4^2}} \\ &= \frac{-21 + 1060 - 784}{5 \times 112} = \frac{255}{5 \times 112} = \frac{51}{112}. \end{aligned}$$

The coordinates of the centre of the escribed circle which touches the side  $BC$  externally are

$$\frac{-\frac{170}{112} - \frac{676}{112} + \frac{429}{112}}{-\frac{85}{16} + \frac{13}{7} + \frac{429}{112}} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{-\frac{1615}{112} + \frac{871}{112} + \frac{429}{112}}{-\frac{85}{16} + \frac{13}{7} + \frac{429}{112}},$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \frac{-417}{42} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{-315}{42}.$$

Similarly the coordinates of the centres of the other escribed circles can be written down.

**100. Ex.** Find the radius, and the coordinates of the centre, of the circle circumscribing the triangle formed by the points

$$(0, 1), \quad (2, 3), \quad \text{and} \quad (3, 5).$$

Let  $(x_1, y_1)$  be the required centre and  $R$  the radius.

Since the distance of the centre from each of the three points is the same, we have

$$x_1^2 + (y_1 - 1)^2 = (x_1 - 2)^2 + (y_1 - 3)^2 = (x_1 - 3)^2 + (y_1 - 5)^2 = R^2 \dots (1).$$

From the first two we have, on reduction,

$$x_1 + y_1 = 3.$$

From the first and third equations we obtain

$$6x_1 + 8y_1 = 33.$$

Solving, we have  $x_1 = -\frac{3}{2}$  and  $y_1 = \frac{15}{2}$ .

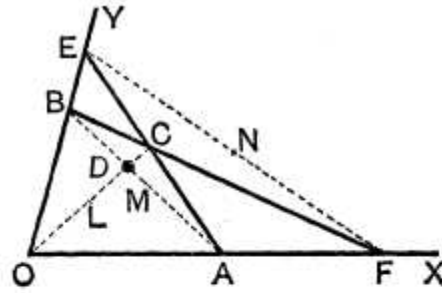
Substituting these values in (1) we get

$$R = \frac{5}{2}\sqrt{10}.$$

**101. Ex.** Prove that the middle points of the diagonals of a complete quadrilateral lie on the same straight line.

[**Complete quadrilateral. Def.** Let  $OACB$  be any quadrilateral. Let  $AC$  and  $OB$  be produced to meet in  $E$ , and  $BC$  and  $OA$  to meet in  $F$ . Join  $AB$ ,  $OC$ , and  $EF$ . The resulting figure is called a complete quadrilateral; the lines  $AB$ ,  $OC$ , and  $EF$  are called its diagonals, and the points  $E$ ,  $F$ , and  $D$  (the intersection of  $AB$  and  $OC$ ) are called its vertices.]

Take the lines  $OAF$  and  $OBE$  as the axes of  $x$  and  $y$ .



Let  $OA=2a$  and  $OB=2b$ , so that  $A$  is the point  $(2a, 0)$  and  $B$  is the point  $(0, 2b)$ ; also let  $C$  be the point  $(2h, 2k)$ .

Then  $L$ , the middle point of  $OC$ , is the point  $(h, k)$ , and  $M$ , the middle point of  $AB$ , is  $(a, b)$ .

The equation to  $LM$  is therefore  $y - b = \frac{k - b}{h - a} (x - a)$ ,

*i.e.*  $(h - a)y - (k - b)x = bh - ak \dots \dots \dots (1)$ .

Again, the equation to  $BC$  is  $y - 2b = \frac{k - b}{h} x$ .

Putting  $y=0$ , we have  $x = \frac{-2bh}{k - b}$ , so that  $F$  is the point

$$\left( \frac{-2bh}{k - b}, 0 \right).$$

Similarly,  $E$  is the point  $\left( 0, -\frac{2ak}{h - a} \right)$ .

Hence  $N$ , the middle point of  $EF$ , is  $\left( \frac{-bh}{k - b}, \frac{-ak}{h - a} \right)$ .

These coordinates clearly satisfy (1), *i.e.*  $N$  lies on the straight line  $LM$ .

**EXAMPLES X**

1. A straight line is such that the algebraic sum of the perpendiculars let fall upon it from any number of fixed points is zero; shew that it always passes through a fixed point.

2. Two fixed straight lines  $OX$  and  $OY$  are cut by a variable line in the points  $A$  and  $B$  respectively and  $P$  and  $Q$  are the feet of the perpendiculars drawn from  $A$  and  $B$  upon the lines  $OBY$  and  $OAX$ . Shew that, if  $AB$  pass through a fixed point, then  $PQ$  will also pass through a fixed point.

3. If the equal sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  of an isosceles triangle be produced to  $E$  and  $F$  so that  $BE \cdot CF = AB^2$ , shew that the line  $EF$  will always pass through a fixed point.

4. If a straight line move so that the sum of the perpendiculars let fall on it from the two fixed points  $(3, 4)$  and  $(7, 2)$  is equal to three times the perpendicular on it from a third fixed point  $(1, 3)$ , prove that there is another fixed point through which this line always passes and find its coordinates.

Find the centre and radius of the circle which is inscribed in the triangle formed by the straight lines whose equations are

5.  $3x + 4y + 2 = 0$ ,  $3x - 4y + 12 = 0$ , and  $4x - 3y = 0$ .

6.  $2x + 4y + 3 = 0$ ,  $4x + 3y + 3 = 0$ , and  $x + 1 = 0$ .

7.  $y = 0$ ,  $12x - 5y = 0$ , and  $3x + 4y - 7 = 0$ .

8. Prove that the coordinates of the centre of the circle inscribed in the triangle whose angular points are  $(1, 2)$ ,  $(2, 3)$ , and  $(3, 1)$  are  $\frac{8 + \sqrt{10}}{6}$  and  $\frac{16 - \sqrt{10}}{6}$ .

Find also the coordinates of the centres of the escribed circles.

9. Find the coordinates of the centres, and the radii, of the four circles which touch the sides of the triangle the coordinates of whose angular points are the points  $(6, 0)$ ,  $(0, 6)$ , and  $(7, 7)$ .

10. Find the position of the centre of the circle circumscribing the triangle whose vertices are the points  $(2, 3)$ ,  $(3, 4)$ , and  $(6, 8)$ .

Find the area of the triangle formed by the straight lines whose equations are

11.  $y = x$ ,  $y = 2x$ , and  $y = 3x + 4$ .

12.  $y + x = 0$ ,  $y = x + 6$ , and  $y = 7x + 5$ .

13.  $2y + x - 5 = 0$ ,  $y + 2x - 7 = 0$ , and  $x - y + 1 = 0$ .

14.  $3x - 4y + 4a = 0$ ,  $2x - 3y + 4a = 0$ , and  $5x - y + a = 0$ , proving also that the feet of the perpendiculars from the origin upon them are collinear.

15.  $y = ax - bc$ ,  $y = bx - ca$ , and  $y = cx - ab$ .

16.  $y = m_1x + \frac{a}{m_1}$ ,  $y = m_2x + \frac{a}{m_2}$ , and  $y = m_3x + \frac{a}{m_3}$ .

17.  $y = m_1x + c_1$ ,  $y = m_2x + c_2$ , and the axis of  $y$ .

18.  $y = m_1x + c_1$ ,  $y = m_2x + c_2$ , and  $y = m_3x + c_3$ .

19. Prove that the area of the triangle formed by the three straight lines  $a_1x + b_1y + c_1 = 0$ ,  $a_2x + b_2y + c_2 = 0$ , and  $a_3x + b_3y + c_3 = 0$  is

$$\frac{1}{2} \left\{ \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} \right\}^2 \div (a_1b_2 - a_2b_1)(a_2b_3 - a_3b_2)(a_3b_1 - a_1b_3).$$

20. Prove that the area of the triangle formed by the three straight lines

$$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p_1 = 0, \quad x \cos \beta + y \sin \beta - p_2 = 0,$$

and

$$x \cos \gamma + y \sin \gamma - p_3 = 0,$$

is

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{\{p_1 \sin(\gamma - \beta) + p_2 \sin(\alpha - \gamma) + p_3 \sin(\beta - \alpha)\}^2}{\sin(\gamma - \beta) \sin(\alpha - \gamma) \sin(\beta - \alpha)}.$$

21. Prove that the area of the parallelogram contained by the lines

$$4y - 3x - a = 0, \quad 3y - 4x + a = 0, \quad 4y - 3x - 3a = 0,$$

and

$$3y - 4x + 2a = 0 \text{ is } \frac{2}{3}a^2.$$

22. Prove that the area of the parallelogram whose sides are the straight lines

$$a_1x + b_1y + c_1 = 0, \quad a_1x + b_1y + d_1 = 0, \quad a_2x + b_2y + c_2 = 0,$$

and

$$a_2x + b_2y + d_2 = 0$$

is

$$\frac{(d_1 - c_1)(d_2 - c_2)}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1}.$$

23. The vertices of a quadrilateral, taken in order, are the points  $(0, 0)$ ,  $(4, 0)$ ,  $(6, 7)$ , and  $(0, 3)$ ; find the coordinates of the point of intersection of the two lines joining the middle points of opposite sides.

24. The lines  $x + y + 1 = 0$ ,  $x - y + 2 = 0$ ,  $4x + 2y + 3 = 0$ , and

$$x + 2y - 4 = 0$$

are the equations to the sides of a quadrilateral taken in order; find the equations to its three diagonals and the equation to the line on which their middle points lie.

25. Shew that the orthocentre of the triangle formed by the three straight lines

$$y = m_1x + \frac{a}{m_1}, \quad y = m_2x + \frac{a}{m_2}, \quad \text{and} \quad y = m_3x + \frac{a}{m_3}$$

is the point

$$\left\{ -a, a \left( \frac{1}{m_1} + \frac{1}{m_2} + \frac{1}{m_3} + \frac{1}{m_1m_2m_3} \right) \right\}.$$

26.  $A$  and  $B$  are two fixed points whose coordinates are  $(3, 2)$  and  $(5, 1)$  respectively;  $ABP$  is an equilateral triangle on the side of  $AB$  remote from the origin. Find the coordinates of  $P$  and the orthocentre of the triangle  $ABP$ .

## ANSWERS

4.  $(-7, 3)$ .      5.  $(-\frac{1}{2}\frac{3}{8}, \frac{5}{4}); \frac{157}{10}$ .
6.  $(\frac{-85-7\sqrt{5}}{120}, \frac{21\sqrt{5}-65}{120})$ ;  $\frac{35-7\sqrt{5}}{120}$ .      7.  $(\frac{7}{5}, \frac{1}{2}\frac{4}{7}); \frac{1}{2}\frac{4}{7}$ .
8.  $\{\frac{6+\sqrt{10}}{2}, \frac{2+\sqrt{10}}{2}\}$ ;  $(\frac{6-\sqrt{10}}{2}, \frac{2-\sqrt{10}}{2})$ ;  $(\frac{8-\sqrt{10}}{6}, \frac{16+\sqrt{10}}{6})$ .
9.  $(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{3}{2})$ ,  $(2, 12)$ ,  $(12, 2)$ , and  $(-3, -3)$ ;  $\frac{3}{2}\sqrt{2}$ ,  $4\sqrt{2}$ ,  $4\sqrt{2}$ , and  $6\sqrt{2}$ .
10.  $(-13\frac{1}{2}, 19\frac{1}{2})$ .      11. 4.      12.  $7\frac{2}{3}$ .      13.  $\frac{3}{2}$ .
14.  $\frac{17a^2}{26}$ .      15.  $\frac{1}{2}(b-c)(c-a)(a-b)$ .
16.  $a^2(m_2-m_3)(m_3-m_1)(m_1-m_2) \div 2m_1^2m_2^2m_3^2$ .
17.  $\frac{1}{2}(c_1-c_2)^2 \div (m_1-m_2)$ .      18.  $\frac{1}{2}\{\frac{(c_2-c_3)^2}{m_2-m_3} + \frac{(c_3-c_1)^2}{m_3-m_1} + \frac{(c_1-c_2)^2}{m_1-m_2}\}$ .
23.  $(\frac{5}{2}, \frac{5}{2})$ .
24.  $10y + 32x + 43 = 0$ ;  $25x + 29y + 5 = 0$ ;  $y = 5x + 2$ ;  $52x + 80y = 47$ .
26.  $(4 + \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}, \frac{3}{2} + \sqrt{3})$ ;  $(4 + \frac{1}{6}\sqrt{3}, \frac{3}{2} + \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3})$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. Let  $x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = p$  ..... (i)  
be the equation to the straight line, and  
 $(a_1, b_1), (a_2, b_2) \dots (a_n, b_n)$   
the coordinates of the fixed points.

Then  $\sum a_1 \cdot \cos \alpha + \sum b_1 \cdot \sin \alpha - np = 0$ ,  
which is the condition that (i) should pass through the  
fixed point

$$\left(\frac{\sum a_1}{n}, \frac{\sum b_1}{n}\right).$$

2. Take  $OX, OY$  for axes and let  $OA = a, OB = b$ .  
If the line  $AB$  goes through the fixed point  $(h, k)$ ,

$$\frac{h}{a} + \frac{k}{b} = 1. \dots\dots\dots (i)$$

The equation of  $PQ$  is  $\frac{x}{b \cos \omega} + \frac{y}{a \cos \omega} = 1$ . ..... (ii)

Now (i) is the condition that (ii) should pass through  
the fixed point  $(k \cos \omega, h \cos \omega)$ .

3. Take  $AB, AC$  for axes, and let  $AB = a = AC$ , and let  $AE = h, AF = k$ .

Then since  $BE \cdot CF = AB^2, \therefore (h - a)(k - a) = a^2, i.e. \frac{a}{h} + \frac{a}{k} = 1$ ; which is the condition that  $\frac{x}{h} + \frac{y}{k} = 1$  (the equation of  $EF$ ) should pass through the fixed point  $(a, a)$ .

4. Let  $x \cos a + y \sin a - p = 0 \dots\dots\dots (i)$

be the equation of the straight line. Then, by Art. 75,

$$3 \cos a + 4 \sin a - p + 7 \cos a + 2 \sin a - p = 3(\cos a + 3 \sin a - p),$$

*i.e.*  $-7 \cos a + 3 \sin a - p = 0$ , which is the condition that (i) should pass through the point  $(-7, 3)$ .

5. By reference to a figure we see that two of the internal bisectors of the angles of the  $\Delta$  are

$$\frac{3x + 4y + 2}{5} = + \frac{3x - 4y + 12}{5},$$

and

$$\frac{3x - 4y + 12}{5} = - \frac{4x - 3y}{5}, \quad [\text{Art. 84}]$$

*i.e.*

and

$$\left. \begin{aligned} 4y &= 5, \\ 7x - 7y + 12 &= 0. \end{aligned} \right\}$$

Whence, solving, the coordinates of the incentre are  $(-\frac{13}{8}, \frac{5}{4})$ , and the radius = the perpendicular from this point upon  $4x - 3y = 0$ ,

$$= \frac{4(-\frac{13}{8}) - 3(\frac{5}{4})}{5} = -\frac{157}{140}.$$

6. As in Ex. 5, two internal bisectors are

$$\frac{2x + 4y + 3}{2\sqrt{5}} = + (x + 1), \text{ and } \frac{4x + 3y + 3}{5} = - (x + 1), [\text{Art. 84}]$$

*i.e.*  $x(2 - 2\sqrt{5}) + 4y + (3 - 2\sqrt{5}) = 0$ , and  $9x + 3y + 8 = 0$ .

Whence, solving, the coordinates of the incentre are

$$\left( \frac{-85 - 7\sqrt{5}}{120}, \frac{21\sqrt{5} - 65}{120} \right),$$

and radius = perpendicular from this point upon  $x + 1 = 0$ ,  

$$= \frac{-85 - 7\sqrt{5}}{120} + 1 = \frac{35 - 7\sqrt{5}}{120}.$$

7. As in Ex. 5, two internal bisectors are

$$\frac{12x - 5y}{13} = +y, \text{ and } \frac{3x + 4y - 7}{5} = -y, \text{ [Art. 84]}$$

*i.e.*  $x + 3y = \frac{7}{3}, \text{ and } 2x = 3y.$

Whence, solving, the coordinates of the incentre are  $(\frac{7}{9}, \frac{14}{27})$ , and  $\therefore$  radius =  $\frac{14}{27}$ .

8. Using the formulae of Art. 98,

$$a = \sqrt{1^2 + 2^2} = \sqrt{5}, \quad b = \sqrt{2^2 + 1^2} = \sqrt{5}, \quad c = \sqrt{1^2 + 1^2} = \sqrt{2};$$

$\therefore$  the coordinates of the incentre are

$$\left( \frac{\sqrt{5} + 2\sqrt{5} + 3\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{5} + \sqrt{2}}, \frac{2\sqrt{5} + 3\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{5} + \sqrt{2}} \right),$$

*i.e.*  $\left( \frac{8 + \sqrt{10}}{6}, \frac{16 - \sqrt{10}}{6} \right),$

and the coordinates of the excentres are

$$\left( \frac{-\sqrt{5} + 2\sqrt{5} + 3\sqrt{2}}{-\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{5} + \sqrt{2}}, \frac{-2\sqrt{5} + 3\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{2}}{-\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{5} + \sqrt{2}} \right),$$

*i.e.*  $\left( \frac{6 + \sqrt{10}}{2}, \frac{2 + \sqrt{10}}{2} \right);$

$$\left( \frac{\sqrt{5} - 2\sqrt{5} + 3\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{5} - \sqrt{5} + \sqrt{2}}, \frac{2\sqrt{5} - 3\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{5} - \sqrt{5} + \sqrt{2}} \right),$$

*i.e.*  $\left( \frac{6 - \sqrt{10}}{2}, \frac{2 - \sqrt{10}}{2} \right);$

$$\left( \frac{\sqrt{5} + 2\sqrt{5} - 3\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{5} - \sqrt{2}}, \frac{2\sqrt{5} + 3\sqrt{5} - \sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{5} - \sqrt{2}} \right),$$

*i.e.*  $\left( \frac{8 - \sqrt{10}}{6}, \frac{16 + \sqrt{10}}{6} \right).$

9. Using the formulae of Art. 98,

$$a = \sqrt{7^2 + 1^2} = 5\sqrt{2}, \quad b = \sqrt{1^2 + 7^2} = 5\sqrt{2}, \quad c = \sqrt{6^2 + 6^2} = 6\sqrt{2}.$$

The coordinates of the incentre are

$$\left( \frac{30\sqrt{2} + 42\sqrt{2}}{5\sqrt{2} + 5\sqrt{2} + 6\sqrt{2}}, \frac{30\sqrt{2} + 42\sqrt{2}}{5\sqrt{2} + 5\sqrt{2} + 6\sqrt{2}} \right), \text{ i.e. } \left( \frac{9}{2}, \frac{9}{2} \right).$$

and the radius (= perpendicular from incentre upon

$$x + y - 6 = 0) = \frac{3}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{3}{2}\sqrt{2},$$

and the coordinates of the excentres are

$$\left( \frac{-30\sqrt{2} + 42\sqrt{2}}{-5\sqrt{2} + 5\sqrt{2} + 6\sqrt{2}}, \frac{+30\sqrt{2} + 42\sqrt{2}}{-5\sqrt{2} + 5\sqrt{2} + 6\sqrt{2}} \right), \text{ i.e. } (2, 12),$$

and radius =  $4\sqrt{2}$ .

$$\left( \frac{30\sqrt{2} + 42\sqrt{2}}{5\sqrt{2} - 5\sqrt{2} + 6\sqrt{2}}, \frac{-30\sqrt{2} + 42\sqrt{2}}{5\sqrt{2} - 5\sqrt{2} + 6\sqrt{2}} \right), \text{ i.e. } (12, 2),$$

and radius =  $4\sqrt{2}$ .

$$\left( \frac{30\sqrt{2} - 42\sqrt{2}}{5\sqrt{2} + 5\sqrt{2} - 6\sqrt{2}}, \frac{30\sqrt{2} - 42\sqrt{2}}{5\sqrt{2} + 5\sqrt{2} - 6\sqrt{2}} \right), \text{ i.e. } (-3, -3),$$

and radius = perpendicular upon the line joining the second pair of given points from  $(-3, -3) = 6\sqrt{2}$ .

10. Let  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of circumcentre.

$$\text{Then } (x-2)^2 + (y-3)^2 = (x-3)^2 + (y-4)^2 = (x-6)^2 + (y-8)^2.$$

$$\text{Whence } x + y = 6, \quad 6x + 8y = 75.$$

$$\text{Solving } x = -13\frac{1}{2}, \quad y = 19\frac{1}{2}.$$

11. Solving, the coordinates of the angular points are

$$(0, 0); (-2, -2); (-4, -8).$$

$\therefore$  By Art. 25,

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{2} \{0(-2+8) - 2(-8-0) - 4(0+2)\} = 4.$$

12. Solving, the coordinates of the angular points are

$$(-3, 3); \left(-\frac{5}{8}, \frac{5}{8}\right); \left(\frac{1}{8}, 6\frac{1}{8}\right).$$

Call them  $B, C, A$  respectively.

$$\text{Length of } BC = \sqrt{\left(2\frac{3}{8}\right)^2 + \left(2\frac{3}{8}\right)^2} = \frac{19}{8}\sqrt{2}.$$



Perpendicular from  $A$  on  $BC = \frac{6\frac{1}{3}}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{19}{3\sqrt{2}}$ .

$$\therefore \Delta = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{19}{8} \cdot \sqrt{2} \cdot \frac{19}{3\sqrt{2}} = \frac{361}{48} = 7\frac{25}{48}.$$

13. Solving, the coordinates of the angular points are  $(1, 2); (2, 3); (3, 1)$ .

$$\therefore \text{by Art. 25, } \Delta = \frac{1}{2} \{1(3-1) + 2(1-2) + 3(2-3)\} \\ = \frac{3}{2}.$$

14. Solving, the coordinates of the angular points are

$$(0, a); \left(\frac{a}{13}, \frac{18a}{13}\right); (4a, 4a).$$

$\therefore$  by Art. 25,

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{2} \left\{ 0 \left( \frac{18a}{13} - 4a \right) + \frac{a}{13} (4a - a) + 4a \left( a - \frac{18a}{13} \right) \right\} \\ = \frac{17a^2}{26}.$$

The foot of the perpendicular from the origin upon  $x \cos a + y \sin a = p$  is  $(p \cos a, p \sin a)$ .

Writing the equations to the sides in this form, viz.

$$\frac{3x}{5} - \frac{4y}{5} = -\frac{4a}{5}; \quad \frac{2x}{\sqrt{13}} - \frac{3y}{\sqrt{13}} = -\frac{4a}{\sqrt{13}}; \quad \frac{5x}{\sqrt{26}} - \frac{y}{\sqrt{26}} = -\frac{a}{\sqrt{26}},$$

the coordinates of the feet of the perpendiculars from the origin upon the sides are seen to be

$$\left(-\frac{12a}{25}, \frac{16a}{25}\right); \left(-\frac{8a}{13}, \frac{12a}{13}\right); \left(-\frac{5a}{26}, \frac{a}{26}\right).$$

And the area of the  $\Delta$  formed by these points

$$= \frac{a^2}{2} \left\{ \frac{144}{325} - \frac{6}{325} + \frac{4}{169} - \frac{128}{325} + \frac{8}{65} - \frac{30}{169} \right\} = 0.$$

Hence the feet of these perpendiculars are collinear.

15. Solving, the coordinates of the angular points are

$$\{-c, -c(a+b)\}, \text{ etc.}$$

$$\therefore \text{By Art. 25, } \Delta = \frac{1}{2} \{c(a+b)(a-b) + \dots + \dots\}, \\ = \frac{1}{2} \sum c(a^2 - b^2) = \frac{1}{2} (b-c)(c-a)(a-b).$$

16. Solving, the coordinates of the angular points are

$$\left\{ \frac{a}{m_1 m_2}, \frac{a}{m_1} + \frac{a}{m_2} \right\}, \text{ etc.}$$

$\therefore$  by Art. 25,

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta &= \frac{1}{2} a^2 \Sigma \left( \frac{1}{m_1} + \frac{1}{m_2} \right) \left( \frac{1}{m_2 m_3} - \frac{1}{m_3 m_1} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} a^2 \Sigma \left\{ \frac{1}{m_3} \left( \frac{1}{m_1^2} - \frac{1}{m_2^2} \right) \right\} = \frac{a^2}{2 m_1^2 m_2^2 m_3^2} \Sigma m_3 (m_1^2 - m_2^2) \\ &= \frac{a^2 (m_1 - m_2) (m_2 - m_3) (m_3 - m_1)}{2 m_1^2 m_2^2 m_3^2}. \end{aligned}$$

17. The coordinates of the angular points are,

$$(0, c_1); (0, c_2); \left( \frac{c_2 - c_1}{m_1 - m_2}, \frac{m_1 c_2 - m_2 c_1}{m_1 - m_2} \right).$$

Hence by Art. 25,  $\Delta = \frac{1}{2} \frac{c_1^2 - c_2^2}{m_1 - m_2}$ .

18. If the three  $\Delta$ s be drawn that are formed by taking every pair of the lines with the axis of  $y$ , it will be seen that the required  $\Delta$  is obtained by subtracting one of these  $\Delta$ s from the sum of the other two.

Hence (regard being had to sign) by Ex. 17,

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \frac{(c_2 - c_3)^2}{m_2 - m_3} + \frac{(c_3 - c_1)^2}{m_3 - m_1} + \frac{(c_1 - c_2)^2}{m_1 - m_2} \right\}.$$

19. See Ex. 20. Put  $a_1, b_1, c_1$  for  $\cos a, \sin a, -p$  respectively, etc., and result follows at once. Or it may be deduced from the previous article, but the work is much longer.

20. Solving, the angular points are

$$\left( \frac{p_2 \sin a - p_1 \sin \beta}{\sin(a - \beta)}, \frac{p_1 \cos \beta - p_2 \cos a}{\sin(a - \beta)} \right), \text{ etc.}$$

Hence by Art. 25

$$2\Delta = \Sigma \left[ \frac{p_3 \sin \beta - p_2 \sin \gamma}{\sin(\beta - \gamma)} \left( \frac{p_3 \cos a - p_1 \cos \gamma}{\sin(\gamma - a)} - \frac{p_1 \cos \beta + p_2 \cos a}{\sin(a - \beta)} \right) \right].$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& \therefore 2\Delta \cdot \sin(a - \beta) \cdot \sin(\beta - \gamma) \cdot \sin(\gamma - a) \\
&= \Sigma(p_3 \sin \beta - p_2 \sin \gamma) [p_3 \cos a \cdot \sin(a - \beta) + p_2 \cos a \sin(\gamma - a) \\
&\quad - p_1 \{\cos \gamma \sin(a - \beta) + \cos \beta \sin(\gamma - a)\}] \\
&= \Sigma(p_3 \sin \beta - p_2 \sin \gamma) \{p_3 \cos a \cdot \sin(a - \beta) \\
&\quad + p_2 \cos a \cdot \sin(\gamma - a) + p_1 \cos a \cdot \sin(\beta - \gamma)\}, \\
&\text{since} \quad \Sigma \cdot \cos a \cdot \sin(\beta - \gamma) = 0, \\
&= \{p_1 \sin(\beta - \gamma) + p_2 \sin(\gamma - a) \\
&\quad + p_3 \sin(a - \beta)\} \cdot \Sigma(p_3 \sin \beta \cdot \cos a - p_2 \sin \gamma \cos a) \\
&= -\{p_1 \sin(\beta - \gamma) + p_2 \sin(\gamma - a) + p_3 \sin(a - \beta)\}^2. \\
\therefore \Delta &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{\{p_1 \sin(\beta - \gamma) + p_2 \sin(\gamma - a) + p_3 \sin(a - \beta)\}^2}{\sin(\gamma - \beta) \cdot \sin(a - \gamma) \cdot \sin(\beta - a)}.
\end{aligned}$$

21. Solving (i) and (ii); (i) and (iv); (ii) and (iii),  
we obtain  $(a, a); \left(\frac{11a}{7}, \frac{10a}{7}\right); \left(\frac{13a}{7}, \frac{15a}{7}\right)$ .

Let  $\Delta$  be the triangle formed by these points;

$$\therefore \text{parallelogram} = 2\Delta = a^2 \left\{-\frac{5}{7} + \frac{11}{7} \cdot \frac{8}{7} - \frac{13}{7} \cdot \frac{5}{7}\right\} = \frac{2}{7} a^2.$$

22. Let  $a_1x + b_1y + c_1 = 0$  and  $a_2x + b_2y + d_1 = 0$  be inclined at  $\alpha$  to and intercept a length  $l_1$  on the axis of  $x$ , and take  $\beta, l_2$  similarly for the other pair of lines.

If  $p, q$  be the sides of the parallelogram, it will be seen from a figure that

$$\frac{p}{l_1} = \frac{\sin \alpha}{\sin(\beta - \alpha)}, \quad \frac{q}{l_2} = \frac{\sin \beta}{\sin(\beta - \alpha)}.$$

Area of parallelogram

$$\begin{aligned}
&= p \cdot q \cdot \sin(\beta - \alpha) = \frac{\sin \alpha \cdot \sin \beta}{\sin(\beta - \alpha)} \cdot l_1 l_2 \\
&= \frac{1}{\cot \alpha - \cot \beta} \cdot \frac{(d_1 - c_1)(d_2 - c_2)}{a_1 a_2} \\
&= \frac{1}{-\frac{b_1}{a_1} + \frac{b_2}{a_2}} \cdot \frac{(d_1 - c_1)(d_2 - c_2)}{a_1 a_2} = \frac{(d_1 - c_1)(d_2 - c_2)}{a_2 b_1 - a_1 b_2}.
\end{aligned}$$

23. The middle point of the line joining  $(0, 0)$  and  $(4, 0)$  is  $(2, 0)$ .

The middle point of the line joining  $(0, 3)$  and  $(6, 7)$  is  $(3, 5)$ , and the middle point of the line joining  $(2, 0)$  and  $(3, 5)$  is  $(\frac{5}{2}, \frac{5}{2})$ .

Similarly it can be shewn that the line joining the middle points of the other pair of sides also goes through this point.

24. By solving, the diagonals are the lines joining  $(-\frac{7}{8}, \frac{19}{8})$  and  $(-\frac{3}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$ ;  $(-\frac{7}{8}, \frac{5}{8})$  and  $(-6, 5)$ ; and  $(-\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2})$  and  $(0, 2)$ .

Hence by Art. 62 the equations of the diagonals can be written down.

Also the line on which the middle points lie is that joining  $(-\frac{43}{12}, \frac{35}{12})$  and  $(-\frac{1}{4}, \frac{3}{4})$ .

25. See page 202.

26. Draw  $AH, PN, BK$  perpendicular to the axis of  $x$  and  $BL$  parallel to the axis of  $x$  meeting  $AH$  in  $L$ .

Let  $\hat{A}BL = \theta$ . Then  $AB^2 = 1^2 + 2^2$ .  $\therefore AB = \sqrt{5}$ .

Hence  $\sin \theta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ ,  $\cos \theta = \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}$ ,

$$ON = OK - NK = OK - PB \cos(\theta + 60^\circ)$$

$$= 5 - \sqrt{5} \left( \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}} \cdot \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \right) = 4 + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}.$$

$$PN = BK + PB \cdot \sin(\theta + 60^\circ)$$

$$= 1 + \sqrt{5} \left\{ \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \cdot \frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \right\} = \frac{3}{2} + \sqrt{3}.$$

If  $\bar{x}$  and  $\bar{y}$  are the coordinates of the orthocentre, by Ex. 2, page 13

$$3\bar{x} = 3 + 5 + 4 + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \quad \text{i.e. } \bar{x} = 4 + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{6},$$

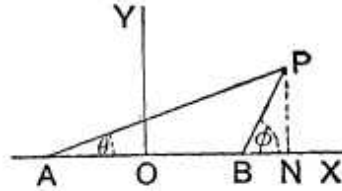
and  $3\bar{y} = 2 + 1 + \frac{3}{2} + \sqrt{3}, \quad \text{i.e. } \bar{y} = \frac{3}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3},$

since the centroid and the orthocentre coincide in an equilateral triangle.

**102. Ex.** *The base of a triangle is fixed; find the locus of the vertex when one base angle is double of the other.*

Let  $AB$  be the fixed base of the triangle; take its middle point  $O$  as origin, the direction of  $OB$  as the axis of  $x$  and a perpendicular line as the axis of  $y$ .

Let  $AO = OB = a$ .



If  $P$  be one position of the vertex, the condition of the problem then gives  $\angle PBA = 2\angle PAB$ , *i.e.*  $\pi - \phi = 2\theta$ , *i.e.*  $-\tan \phi = \tan 2\theta$ ..(1).

Let  $P$  be the point  $(h, k)$ . We then have

$$\frac{k}{h+a} = \tan \theta \text{ and } \frac{k}{h-a} = \tan \phi.$$

Substituting these values in (1), we have

$$-\frac{k}{h-a} = \frac{2 \frac{k}{h+a}}{1 - \left(\frac{k}{h+a}\right)^2} = \frac{2(h+a)k}{(h+a)^2 - k^2},$$

*i.e.*  $-(h+a)^2 + k^2 = 2(h^2 - a^2)$ , *i.e.*  $k^2 - 3h^2 - 2ah + a^2 = 0$ .

But this is the condition that the point  $(h, k)$  should lie on the curve  $y^2 - 3x^2 - 2ax + a^2 = 0$ .

This is therefore the equation to the required locus.

**103. Ex.** *From a point  $P$  perpendiculars  $PM$  and  $PN$  are drawn upon two fixed lines which are inclined at an angle  $\omega$  and meet in a fixed point  $O$ ; if  $P$  move on a fixed straight line, find the locus of the middle point of  $MN$ .*

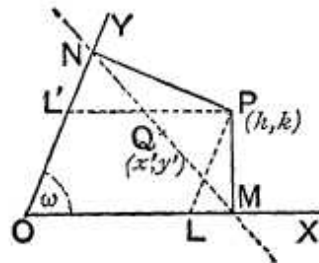
Let the two fixed lines be taken as the axes. Let the coordinates of  $P$ , any position of the moving point, be  $(h, k)$ .

Let the equation of the straight line on which  $P$  lies be

$$Ax + By + C = 0,$$

so that we have

$$Ah + Bk + C = 0 \dots\dots (1).$$



Draw  $PL$  and  $PL'$  parallel to the axes.

We then have

$$OM = OL + LM = OL + LP \cos \omega = h + k \cos \omega,$$

and  $ON = OL' + L'N = LP + L'P \cos \omega = k + h \cos \omega.$

$M$  is therefore the point  $(h + k \cos \omega, 0)$  and  $N$  is the point  $(0, k + h \cos \omega).$

Hence, if  $(x', y')$  be the coordinates of the middle point of  $MN$ , we have

$$2x' = h + k \cos \omega \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

and  $2y' = k + h \cos \omega \dots\dots\dots (3).$

Equations (1), (2), and (3) express analytically all the relations which hold between  $x', y', h,$  and  $k.$

Also  $h$  and  $k$  are the quantities which by their variation cause  $Q$  to take up different positions. If therefore between (1), (2), and (3) we eliminate  $h$  and  $k$  we shall obtain a relation between  $x'$  and  $y'$  which is true for *all* values of  $h$  and  $k,$  *i.e.* a relation which is true whatever be the position that  $P$  takes on the given straight line.

From (2) and (3), by solving, we have

$$h = \frac{2(x' - y' \cos \omega)}{\sin^2 \omega} \text{ and } k = \frac{2(y' - x' \cos \omega)}{\sin^2 \omega}.$$

Substituting these values in (1), we obtain

$$2A(x' - y' \cos \omega) + 2B(y' - x' \cos \omega) + C \sin^2 \omega = 0.$$

But this is the condition that the point  $(x', y')$  shall always lie on the straight line

$$2A(x - y \cos \omega) + 2B(y - x \cos \omega) + C \sin^2 \omega = 0,$$

*i.e.* on the straight line

$$x(A - B \cos \omega) + y(B - A \cos \omega) + \frac{1}{2}C \sin^2 \omega = 0,$$

which is therefore the equation to the locus of  $Q.$

**104. Ex.** *A straight line is drawn parallel to the base of a given triangle and its extremities are joined transversely to those of the base; find the locus of the point of intersection of the joining lines.*

Let the triangle be  $OAB$  and take  $O$  as the origin and the directions of  $OA$  and  $OB$  as the axes of  $x$  and  $y$ .

Let  $OA = a$  and  $OB = b$ , so that  $a$  and  $b$  are given quantities.

Let  $A'B'$  be the straight line which is parallel to the base  $AB$ , so that

$$\frac{OA'}{OA} = \frac{OB'}{OB} = \lambda \text{ (say),}$$

and hence  $OA' = \lambda a$  and  $OB' = \lambda b$ .

For different values of  $\lambda$  we therefore have different positions of  $A'B'$ .

The equation to  $AB'$  is

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{\lambda b} = 1 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

and that to  $A'B$  is

$$\frac{x}{\lambda a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

Since  $P$  is the intersection of  $AB'$  and  $A'B$  its coordinates satisfy both (1) and (2). Whatever equation we derive from them must therefore denote a locus going through  $P$ . Also if we derive from (1) and (2) an equation which does not contain  $\lambda$ , it must represent a locus which passes through  $P$  whatever be the value of  $\lambda$ ; in other words it must go through all the different positions of the point  $P$ .

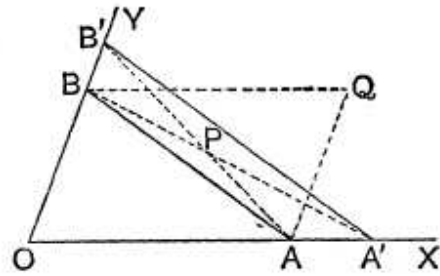
Subtracting (2) from (1), we have

$$\frac{x}{a} \left(1 - \frac{1}{\lambda}\right) + \frac{y}{b} \left(\frac{1}{\lambda} - 1\right) = 0,$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{x}{a} = \frac{y}{b}.$$

This then is the equation to the locus of  $P$ . Hence  $P$  always lies on the straight line

$$y = \frac{b}{a} x,$$



which is the straight line  $OQ$  where  $OAQB$  is a parallelogram.

**Aliter.** By solving the equations (1) and (2) we easily see that they meet at the point

$$\left( \frac{\lambda}{\lambda+1} a, \frac{\lambda}{\lambda+1} b \right).$$

Hence, if  $P$  be the point  $(h, k)$ , we have

$$h = \frac{\lambda}{\lambda+1} a \quad \text{and} \quad k = \frac{\lambda}{\lambda+1} b.$$

Hence for all values of  $\lambda$ , *i.e.* for all positions of the straight line  $A'B'$ , we have

$$\frac{h}{a} = \frac{k}{b}.$$

But this is the condition that the point  $(h, k)$ , *i.e.*  $P$ , should lie on the straight line

$$\frac{x}{a} = \frac{y}{b}.$$

The straight line is therefore the required locus.

**105. Ex.** *A variable straight line is drawn through a given point  $O$  to cut two fixed straight lines in  $R$  and  $S$ ; on it is taken a point  $P$  such that*

$$\frac{2}{OP} = \frac{1}{OR} + \frac{1}{OS};$$

*shew that the locus of  $P$  is a third fixed straight line.*

Take any two fixed straight lines, at right angles and passing through  $O$ , as the axes and let the equation to the two given fixed straight lines be

$$Ax + By + C = 0,$$

and

$$A'x + B'y + C' = 0.$$

Transforming to polar coordinates these equations are

$$\frac{1}{r} = -\frac{A \cos \theta + B \sin \theta}{C} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1}{r} = -\frac{A' \cos \theta + B' \sin \theta}{C'}.$$



If the angle  $XOR$  be  $\theta$  the values of  $\frac{1}{OR}$  and  $\frac{1}{OS}$  are therefore

$$-\frac{A \cos \theta + B \sin \theta}{C} \quad \text{and} \quad -\frac{A' \cos \theta + B' \sin \theta}{C'}.$$

We therefore have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{2}{OP} &= -\frac{A \cos \theta + B \sin \theta}{C} - \frac{A' \cos \theta + B' \sin \theta}{C'} \\ &= -\left(\frac{A}{C} + \frac{A'}{C'}\right) \cos \theta - \left(\frac{B}{C} + \frac{B'}{C'}\right) \sin \theta. \end{aligned}$$

The equation to the locus of  $P$  is therefore, on again transforming to Cartesian coordinates,

$$2 = -x \left(\frac{A}{C} + \frac{A'}{C'}\right) - y \left(\frac{B}{C} + \frac{B'}{C'}\right),$$

and this is a fixed straight line.

## EXAMPLES XI

The base  $BC$  ( $=2a$ ) of a triangle  $ABC$  is fixed; the axes being  $BC$  and a perpendicular to it through its middle point, find the locus of the vertex  $A$ , when

1. the difference of the base angles is given ( $=a$ ).
2. the product of the tangents of the base angles is given ( $=\lambda$ ).
3. the tangent of one base angle is  $m$  times the tangent of the other.
4.  $m$  times the square of one side added to  $n$  times the square of the other side is equal to a constant quantity  $c^2$ .

From a point  $P$  perpendiculars  $PM$  and  $PN$  are drawn upon two fixed lines which are inclined at an angle  $\omega$ , and which are taken as the axes of coordinates and meet in  $O$ ; find the locus of  $P$

5. if  $OM + ON$  be equal to  $2c$ .
6. if  $OM - ON$  be equal to  $2d$ .
7. if  $PM + PN$  be equal to  $2c$ .
8. if  $PM - PN$  be equal to  $2c$ .
9. if  $MN$  be equal to  $2c$ .
10. if  $MN$  pass through the fixed point  $(a, b)$ .
11. if  $MN$  be parallel to the given line  $y = mx$ .

12. Two fixed points  $A$  and  $B$  are taken on the axes such that  $OA=a$  and  $OB=b$ ; two variable points  $A'$  and  $B'$  are taken on the same axes; find the locus of the intersection of  $AB'$  and  $A'B$

(1) when  $OA' + OB' = OA + OB$ ,

and (2) when  $\frac{1}{OA'} - \frac{1}{OB'} = \frac{1}{OA} - \frac{1}{OB}$ .

13. Through a fixed point  $P$  are drawn any two straight lines to cut one fixed straight line  $OX$  in  $A$  and  $B$  and another fixed straight line  $OY$  in  $C$  and  $D$ ; prove that the locus of the intersection of the straight lines  $AC$  and  $BD$  is a straight line passing through  $O$ .

14.  $OX$  and  $OY$  are two straight lines at right angles to one another; on  $OY$  is taken a fixed point  $A$  and on  $OX$  any point  $B$ ; on  $AB$  an equilateral triangle is described, its vertex  $C$  being on the side of  $AB$  away from  $O$ . Shew that the locus of  $C$  is a straight line.

15. If a straight line pass through a fixed point, find the locus of the middle point of the portion of it which is intercepted between two given straight lines.

16.  $A$  and  $B$  are two fixed points; if  $PA$  and  $PB$  intersect a constant distance  $2c$  from a given straight line, find the locus of  $P$ .

17. Through a fixed point  $O$  are drawn two straight lines at right angles to meet two fixed straight lines, which are also at right angles, in the points  $P$  and  $Q$ . Shew that the locus of the foot of the perpendicular from  $O$  on  $PQ$  is a straight line.

18. Find the locus of a point at which two given portions of the same straight line subtend equal angles.

19. Find the locus of a point which moves so that the difference of its distances from two fixed straight lines at right angles is equal to its distance from a fixed straight line.

20. A straight line  $AB$ , whose length is  $c$ , slides between two given oblique axes which meet at  $O$ ; find the locus of the orthocentre of the triangle  $OAB$ .

21. Having given the bases and the sum of the areas of a number of triangles which have a common vertex, shew that the locus of this vertex is a straight line.

22. Through a given point  $O$  a straight line is drawn to cut two given straight lines in  $R$  and  $S$ ; find the locus of a point  $P$  on this variable straight line, which is such that

$$(1) 2OP = OR + OS,$$

and  $(2) OP^2 = OR \cdot OS.$

23. Given  $n$  straight lines and a fixed point  $O$ ; through  $O$  is drawn a straight line meeting these lines in the points  $R_1, R_2, R_3, \dots, R_n$ , and on it is taken a point  $R$  such that

$$\frac{n}{OR} = \frac{1}{OR_1} + \frac{1}{OR_2} + \frac{1}{OR_3} + \dots + \frac{1}{OR_n};$$

shew that the locus of  $R$  is a straight line.

24. A variable straight line cuts off from  $n$  given concurrent straight lines intercepts the sum of the reciprocals of which is constant. Shew that it always passes through a fixed point.

25. If a triangle  $ABC$  remain always similar to a given triangle, and if the point  $A$  be fixed and the point  $B$  always move along a given straight line, find the locus of the point  $C$ .

26. A right-angled triangle  $ABC$ , having  $C$  a right angle, is of given magnitude, and the angular points  $A$  and  $B$  slide along two given perpendicular axes; shew that the locus of  $C$  is the pair of straight lines whose equations are  $y = \pm \frac{b}{c}x$ .

27. Two given straight lines meet in  $O$ , and through a given point  $P$  is drawn a straight line to meet them in  $Q$  and  $R$ ; if the parallelogram  $OQSR$  be completed find the equation to the locus of  $S$ .

28. Through a given point  $O$  is drawn a straight line to meet two given parallel straight lines in  $P$  and  $Q$ ; through  $P$  and  $Q$  are drawn straight lines in given directions to meet in  $R$ ; prove that the locus of  $R$  is a straight line.

## ANSWERS

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. $x^2 + 2xy \cot a - y^2 = a^2$ .   | 2. $y^2 + \lambda x^2 = \lambda a^2$ .                   |
| 3. $(m+1)x = (m-1)a$ .  | 4. $(m+n)(x^2 + y^2 + a^2) - 2ax(m-n) = c^2$ .           |
| 5. $x + y = c \sec^2 \frac{\omega}{2}$ .  | 6. $x - y = d \operatorname{cosec}^2 \frac{\omega}{2}$ . |
| 7. $x + y = 2c \operatorname{cosec} \omega$ .   | 8. $y - x = 2c \operatorname{cosec} \omega$ .            |
| 9. $x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2 = 4c^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2 \omega$ .                               |  |
| 10. $(x^2 + y^2) \cos \omega + xy(1 + \cos^2 \omega) = x(a \cos \omega + b) + y(b \cos \omega + a)$ . |  |
| 11. $x(m + \cos \omega) + y(1 + m \cos \omega) = 0$ .   |  |
| 12. (i) $x + y - a - b = 0$ ;   |  |
| (ii) $y = x$ .  | 19. A straight line.                                     |
| 20. A circle, centre $O$ .  | 25. A straight line.                                     |

27. If  $P$  be the point  $(h, k)$ , the equation to the locus of  $S$  is

$$\frac{h}{x} + \frac{k}{y} = 1.$$

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. We have 
$$\frac{\frac{y}{a-x} - \frac{y}{a+x}}{1 + \frac{y^2}{a^2-x^2}} = \tan \alpha,$$

whence 
$$x^2 + 2xy \cot \alpha - y^2 = a^2.$$

2. 
$$\frac{y}{a-x} \cdot \frac{y}{a+x} = \lambda; \quad \therefore y^2 + \lambda x^2 = \lambda a^2.$$

3. 
$$\frac{y}{a-x} = \frac{my}{a+x}. \quad \therefore (m+1)x = (m-1)a.$$

4. 
$$n \{y^2 + (x+a)^2\} + m \{y^2 + (a-x)^2\} = c^2,$$
  
*i.e.* 
$$(m+n)(x^2 + y^2 + a^2) - 2ax(m-n) = c^2.$$

5. 
$$x + y \cos \omega + y + x \cos \omega = 2c; \quad \therefore x + y = c \sec^2 \frac{\omega}{2}.$$

6. 
$$x + y \cos \omega - y - x \cos \omega = 2d; \quad x - y = d \operatorname{cosec}^2 \frac{\omega}{2}.$$

7. 
$$x \sin \omega + y \sin \omega = 2c; \quad \therefore x + y = 2c \operatorname{cosec} \omega.$$

8. 
$$y \sin \omega - x \sin \omega = 2c; \quad \therefore y - x = 2c \operatorname{cosec} \omega.$$

9. 
$$(x + y \cos \omega)^2 + (y + x \cos \omega)^2$$
  

$$- 2(x + y \cos \omega)(y + x \cos \omega) \cos \omega = 4c^2;$$
  

$$\therefore x^2 + y^2 + 2xy \cos \omega = 4c^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2 \omega.$$

10. If  $(x', y')$  are the coordinates of  $P$ , the equation of  $MN$  is

$$\frac{x}{x' + y' \cos \omega} + \frac{y}{y' + x' \cos \omega} = 1.$$

This goes through  $(a, b)$  if 
$$\frac{a}{x' + y' \cos \omega} + \frac{b}{y' + x' \cos \omega} = 1.$$

Hence the locus of  $P$  is  $\frac{a}{x + y \cos \omega} + \frac{b}{y + x \cos \omega} = 1$ ,  
*i.e.*  $x(a \cos \omega + b) + y(a + b \cos \omega) = (x^2 + y^2) \cos \omega + xy(1 + \cos^2 \omega)$ .

11. Here similarly  $-\frac{y + x \cos \omega}{x + y \cos \omega} = m$ .

$\therefore x(m + \cos \omega) + y(1 + m \cos \omega) = 0$ .

12. (1) Since  $a + b = a' + b'$ ,  
 $\therefore a - a' = b' - b$ . ..... (i)

Equations of  $AB'$  and  $A'B$  are

$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b'} = 1$ , ..... (ii)

and  $\frac{x}{a'} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$ . .....(iii)

Subtract;  $\therefore \frac{x}{aa'} + \frac{y}{bb'} = 0$ , by (i). .....(iv)

Multiplying (ii) by  $\frac{1}{b}$  and (iii) by  $\frac{1}{a}$ , and adding, we have

$\frac{x}{ab} + \frac{y}{ab} + \frac{x}{aa'} + \frac{y}{bb'} = \frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{b}$ ;

$\therefore x + y = a + b$ , by (iv),

(2) Subtract (ii) and (iii),

$x \left\{ \frac{1}{a} - \frac{1}{a'} \right\} - y \left\{ \frac{1}{b} - \frac{1}{b'} \right\} = 0$ .

$\therefore x = y$ .

**Aliter.** If we eliminate  $a'$  and  $b'$  by merely substituting from (ii) and (iii) in (i) we get

$\frac{y}{1 - \frac{x}{a}} + \frac{x}{1 - \frac{y}{b}} = a + b$ ,

*i.e.*, on reduction,

$ay^2 + (a + b)xy + bx^2 - bx(2a + b) - ay(a + 2b) + ab(a + b) = 0$ ,

*i.e.*  $[x + y - a - b][bx + ay - ab] = 0$ .

The second factor gives  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$ , *i.e.* the straight line  $AB$  itself. This part of the locus arises from the case when  $A'$  coincides with  $A$ , and  $B'$  with  $B$ , and then the line  $A'B'$  entirely coincides with the line  $AB$ .

Neglecting this factor, the ordinary locus is given by

$$x + y = a + b.$$

**13.** Let  $P$  be the point  $(h, k)$ ,  $OA = a$  etc.

Since  $AD$  and  $BC$  pass through  $P$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{h}{a} + \frac{k}{d} = 1, \text{ and } \frac{h}{b} + \frac{k}{c} = 1,$$

and hence 
$$h \left( \frac{1}{a} - \frac{1}{b} \right) + k \left( \frac{1}{d} - \frac{1}{c} \right) = 0. \dots\dots\dots (i)$$

The equations of  $AC$  and  $BD$  are

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{c} = 1, \quad \frac{x}{b} + \frac{y}{d} = 1.$$

On subtraction, we have  $x \left( \frac{1}{a} - \frac{1}{b} \right) + y \left( \frac{1}{c} - \frac{1}{d} \right) = 0.$

Hence, from (i)

$$\frac{x}{h} + \frac{y}{k} = 0,$$

which is a straight line through  $O$ .

**14.** Let the coordinates of  $C$  be  $(x, y)$ ,  $\hat{O}BA = \theta$ ,  $OA = a$ .

Then  $a \operatorname{cosec} \theta = AB = BC = CA.$

It is easily seen from a figure that

$$x = a \operatorname{cosec} \theta \cdot \cos (60^\circ - \theta) = \frac{a}{2} (\sqrt{3} + \cot \theta),$$

and 
$$y = a \operatorname{cosec} \theta \cdot \sin (60^\circ + \theta) = \frac{a}{2} (\sqrt{3} \cot \theta + 1).$$

$\therefore \sqrt{3} \cdot x - y = a$ , which is a straight line.

15. Let  $h, k$  be the intercepts on the axes, and  $(a, b)$  the fixed point.

Then 
$$\frac{a}{h} + \frac{b}{k} = 1,$$

is the condition that the straight line passes through  $(a, b)$ .

The mid pt. of the intercept is given by  $2x = h, 2y = k$ .

Hence the required locus is 
$$\frac{a}{2x} + \frac{b}{2y} = 1.$$

16. Take the fixed line as the axis of  $x$ , and  $AB$  as the axis of  $y$ . Let them meet in  $O$ ; let  $OA = a, OB = b$  and let  $P$  be the point  $(h, k)$ . The equation of  $AP$  is

$$y - a = \frac{k - a}{h} x.$$

The intercept of this on  $OX$  is  $\frac{ah}{a - k}$ . So for  $BP$ .

Hence the condition gives 
$$\frac{ah}{a - k} - \frac{bh}{b - k} = 2c.$$

The locus of  $P$  is thus, on reduction,

$$2c(y - a)(y - b) + (a - b)xy = 0.$$

17. Take for axes the lines through  $O$  parallel to the two fixed lines  $O'P, O'Q$ .

Let  $O'$  be  $(h, k)$ , and  $x \cos a + y \sin a = p$  .....(i)

the equation of  $PQ$ .

The equation of  $O'P, O'Q$  is  $(x - h)(y - k) = 0,$

i.e.  $xy - hy - kx + hk = 0.$  .....(ii)

The equation of the lines joining the origin to the common points of (i) and (ii) is

$$p^2xy - p(hy + kx)(x \cos a + y \sin a) + hk(x \cos a + y \sin a)^2 = 0. \quad [\text{Art. 122.}]$$

Since these are at right angles,

$$-p \cos ak - p \sin ah + hk = 0.$$

But  $(p \cos \alpha, p \sin \alpha)$  is the point whose locus is required. Hence the locus is the straight line  $kx + hy = hk$ .

18. Take the straight line for axis of  $x$  and any origin, let  $OA = a$ ,  $OB = b$ , etc., and let  $P(x, y)$  be any point on the locus.

$$\text{Then } \tan \hat{APB} = \frac{\frac{y}{x-a} - \frac{y}{x-b}}{1 + \frac{y^2}{(x-a)(x-b)}} = \frac{(a-b)y}{(x-a)(x-b) + y^2}.$$

Hence the equation of the locus is

$$\frac{a-b}{(x-a)(x-b) + y^2} = \frac{c-d}{(x-c)(x-d) + y^2}.$$

19. Take the fixed lines for axes, and

$$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p = 0$$

as the equation of the other fixed line.

$$\text{Then } x - y = x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p,$$

which is the equation to a straight line.

20. Let  $OA = a$ ,  $OB = b$ .

The equation of the line through  $A$  perpendicular to  $OB$  is

$$x \cos \omega + y = a \cos \omega,$$

and of the line through  $B$  perpendicular to  $OA$  is

$$x + y \cos \omega = b \cos \omega.$$

$$\text{Also } c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos \omega.$$

Eliminating  $a$ ,  $b$ , we have for the required locus

$$c^2 = (x + y \sec \omega)^2 + (y + x \sec \omega)^2 - 2 \cos \omega (x + y \sec \omega) (y + x \sec \omega),$$

or

$$c^2 \cot^2 \omega = x^2 + y^2 + 2xy \cos \omega.$$

21. Let  $x \cos \alpha_1 + y \sin \alpha_1 = p_1$ ,  $x \cos \alpha_2 + y \sin \alpha_2 = p_2$ , etc. be the equations of the bases;  $c_1$ ,  $c_2$  etc. their lengths. Then we have



$\Sigma c_1 (x \cos \alpha_1 + y \sin \alpha_1 - p_1) = a$  constant,  
which is the equation to a straight line.

22. As in Art. 105, we have

$$(1) \quad -2r = \frac{c}{a \cos \theta + b \sin \theta} + \frac{c'}{a' \cos \theta + b' \sin \theta};$$

$$\therefore c(a'x + b'y) + c'(ax + by) + 2(ax + by)(a'x + b'y) = 0.$$

$$(2) \quad r^2 = \frac{c}{a \cos \theta + b \sin \theta} \cdot \frac{c'}{a' \cos \theta + b' \sin \theta};$$

$$\therefore (ax + by)(a'x + b'y) = cc'.$$

23. Let  $a_1x + b_1y + c_1 = 0$ ,  $a_2x + b_2y + c_2 = 0$ , etc. be the equations of the  $n$  fixed lines.

As in Art. 105, we have

$$\frac{n}{r} = -\cos \theta \Sigma \frac{a_1}{c_1} - \sin \theta \Sigma \frac{b_1}{c_1}; \quad \therefore x \cdot \Sigma \frac{a_1}{c_1} + y \Sigma \frac{b_1}{c_1} + n = 0,$$

a straight line.

24. Let  $r \cos \theta \cdot a + r \sin \theta \cdot b = 1$  be the equation of the variable line, and  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$  etc. the inclinations of the  $n$  given concurrent lines, the point of concurrence being the origin.

Then, as in Art. 105,  $a \cdot \Sigma \cos \alpha_1 + b \cdot \Sigma \sin \alpha_1 = \lambda$ , where  $\lambda$  is a constant.

But this is the condition that the given line  $ax + by = 1$  should pass through the fixed point

$$\left( \frac{\Sigma \cos \alpha_1}{\lambda}, \frac{\Sigma \sin \alpha_1}{\lambda} \right).$$

25. Let  $(r, \theta)$  be coordinates of  $C$  referred to  $A$  as origin and perpendicular from  $A$  to locus of  $B$  (length  $c$ ) as initial line.

Since the triangle  $ABC$  is always similar to a given one,  $\therefore \frac{AB}{AC} = \text{constant} = \mu$  (say).

$$\text{Then} \quad c = AB \cdot \cos(\theta - A) = \mu r \cos(\theta - A).$$

Hence locus of  $C$  is a straight line.

26. Let  $(h, 0)$ ,  $(0, k)$ ,  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of  $A, B, C$  respectively.

Then  $(x - h)^2 + y^2 = b^2$ , ..... (i)

and  $(y - k)^2 + x^2 = a^2$ . ..... (ii)

Also, since  $CA, CB$  are at right angles,

$$\therefore \frac{y}{x-h} \cdot \frac{y-k}{x} + 1 = 0, \text{ whence } \frac{y^2}{x^2} = \frac{(x-h)^2}{(y-k)^2}.$$

Also, from (i) and (ii),  $\frac{(x-h)^2}{(y-k)^2} = \frac{b^2 - y^2}{a^2 - x^2}$ .

$$\therefore \frac{b^2 - y^2}{a^2 - x^2} = \frac{y^2}{x^2} = \frac{b^2}{a^2}. \therefore y = \pm \frac{b}{a} \cdot x.$$

**Aliter.** If the axes meet in  $O$ , then  $CBOA$  is a cyclic quadrilateral.  $\therefore \angle COA = \angle CBA$ .

$$\therefore \text{locus of } C \text{ is } \frac{y}{x} = \tan COA = \tan CBA = \frac{b}{a}.$$

• So, if  $B$  lie on the negative axis of  $y$  the equation is

$$\frac{y}{x} = -\frac{b}{a}.$$

27. Let  $OQ, OR = a, b$  respectively.

Then  $(a, b)$  is the point whose locus is required.

Since  $QR$  passes through a fixed point  $(h, k)$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{h}{a} + \frac{k}{b} = 1.$$

Hence the required locus is  $\frac{h}{x} + \frac{k}{y} = 1$ .

28. Let  $O$  be the origin and a perpendicular to the given parallel straight lines the axis of  $x$ , and let their distances from  $O$  be  $a$  and  $b$ . Let  $\angle POX$  be  $\theta$ ; then  $P$  is the point  $(a, a \tan \theta)$  and  $Q$  is  $(b, b \tan \theta)$ . The equations to  $PR, QR$  are thus

$$\text{and } \left. \begin{aligned} y - a \tan \theta &= (x - a) \tan \alpha, \\ y - b \tan \theta &= (x - b) \tan \beta, \end{aligned} \right\}$$

where  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are given.

Eliminating  $\tan \theta$ , we have, as the required locus,

$$(a - b) y = x [a \tan \beta - b \tan \alpha] + ab (\tan \alpha - \tan \beta).$$

## Chapter 6

# ON EQUATIONS REPRESENTING TWO OR MORE STRAIGHT LINES

**106.** SUPPOSE we have to trace the locus represented by the equation

$$y^2 - 3xy + 2x^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

This equation is equivalent to

$$(y - x)(y - 2x) = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

It is satisfied by the coordinates of all points which make the first of these brackets equal to zero, and also by the coordinates of all points which make the second bracket zero, *i.e.* by all the points which satisfy the equation

$$y - x = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3),$$

and also by the points which satisfy

$$y - 2x = 0 \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

But, by Art. 47, the equation (3) represents a straight line passing through the origin, and so also does equation (4).

Hence equation (1) represents the two straight lines which pass through the origin, and are inclined at angles of  $45^\circ$  and  $\tan^{-1} 2$  respectively to the axis of  $x$ .

**107. Ex. 1.** Trace the locus  $xy = 0$ . This equation is satisfied by all the points which satisfy the equation  $x = 0$  and by all the points which satisfy  $y = 0$ , *i.e.* by all the points which lie either on the axis of  $y$  or on the axis of  $x$ .

The required locus is therefore the two axes of coordinates.

**Ex. 2.** Trace the locus  $x^2 - 5x + 6 = 0$ . This equation is equivalent to  $(x - 2)(x - 3) = 0$ . It is therefore satisfied by all points which satisfy the equation  $x - 2 = 0$  and also by all the points which satisfy the equation  $x - 3 = 0$ .

But these equations represent two straight lines which are parallel to the axis of  $y$  and are at distances 2 and 3 respectively from the origin (Art. 46).

**Ex. 3.** Trace the locus  $xy - 4x - 5y + 20 = 0$ . This equation is equivalent to  $(x - 5)(y - 4) = 0$ , and therefore represents a straight line parallel to the axis of  $y$  at a distance 5 and also a straight line parallel to the axis of  $x$  at a distance 4.

**108.** Let us consider the general equation

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

On multiplying it by  $a$  it may be written in the form

$$(a^2x^2 + 2ahxy + h^2y^2) - (h^2 - ab)y^2 = 0,$$

*i. e.*  $\{(ax + hy) + y\sqrt{h^2 - ab}\} \{(ax + hy) - y\sqrt{h^2 - ab}\} = 0.$

As in the last article the equation (1) therefore represents the two straight lines whose equations are

$$ax + hy + y\sqrt{h^2 - ab} = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

and  $ax + hy - y\sqrt{h^2 - ab} = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3),$

each of which passes through the origin.

For (1) is satisfied by *all* the points which satisfy (2), and also by *all* the points which satisfy (3).

These two straight lines are real and different if  $h^2 > ab$ , real and coincident if  $h^2 = ab$ , and imaginary if  $h^2 < ab$ .

[For in the latter case the coefficient of  $y$  in each of the equations (2) and (3) is partly real and partly imaginary.]

In the case when  $h^2 < ab$ , the straight lines, though themselves imaginary, intersect in a real point. For the origin lies on the locus given by (1), since the equation (1) is always satisfied by the values  $x = 0$  and  $y = 0$ .

**109.** An equation such as (1) of the previous article, which is such that in each term the sum of the indices of  $x$  and  $y$  is the same, is called a homogeneous equation. This equation (1) is of the second degree; for in the first term the index of  $x$  is 2; in the second term the index of both  $x$  and  $y$  is 1 and hence their sum is 2; whilst in the third term the index of  $y$  is 2.

Similarly the expression

$$3x^3 + 4x^2y - 5xy^2 + 9y^3$$

is a homogeneous expression of the third degree.

The expression

$$3x^3 + 4x^2y - 5xy^2 + 9y^3 - 7xy$$

is not however homogeneous; for in the first four terms the sum of the indices is 3 in each case, whilst in the last term this sum is 2.

From Art. 108 it follows that a homogeneous equation of the second degree represents two straight lines, real and different, coincident, or imaginary.

**110.** *The axes being rectangular, to find the angle between the straight lines given by the equation*

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Let the separate equations to the two lines be

$$y - m_1x = 0 \text{ and } y - m_2x = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

so that (1) must be equivalent to

$$b(y - m_1x)(y - m_2x) = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

Equating the coefficients of  $xy$  and  $x^2$  in (1) and (3), we have

$$-b(m_1 + m_2) = 2h, \text{ and } bm_1m_2 = a,$$

so that  $m_1 + m_2 = -\frac{2h}{b}$ , and  $m_1m_2 = \frac{a}{b}$ .

If  $\theta$  be the angle between the straight lines (2) we have, by Art. 66,

$$\begin{aligned} \tan \theta &= \frac{m_1 - m_2}{1 + m_1 m_2} = \frac{\sqrt{(m_1 + m_2)^2 - 4m_1 m_2}}{1 + m_1 m_2} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{\frac{4h^2}{b^2} - \frac{4a}{b}}}{1 + \frac{a}{b}} = \frac{2\sqrt{h^2 - ab}}{a + b} \dots\dots\dots(4). \end{aligned}$$

Hence the required angle is found.

**111.** *Condition that the straight lines of the previous article may be (1) perpendicular, and (2) coincident.*

(1) If  $a + b = 0$  the value of  $\tan \theta$  is  $\infty$  and hence  $\theta$  is  $90^\circ$ ; the straight lines are therefore perpendicular.

Hence two straight lines, represented by one equation, are at right angles if the algebraic sum of the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  be zero.

For example, the equations

$$x^2 - y^2 = 0 \text{ and } 6x^2 + 11xy - 6y^2 = 0$$

both represent pairs of straight lines at right angles.

Similarly, whatever be the value of  $h$ , the equation

$$x^2 + 2hxy - y^2 = 0,$$

represents a pair of straight lines at right angles.

(2) If  $h^2 = ab$ , the value of  $\tan \theta$  is zero and hence  $\theta$  is zero. The angle between the straight lines is therefore zero and, since they both pass through the origin, they are therefore coincident.

This may be seen directly from the original equation. For if  $h^2 = ab$ , *i.e.*  $h = \sqrt{ab}$ , it may be written

$$ax^2 + 2\sqrt{ab}xy + by^2 = 0,$$

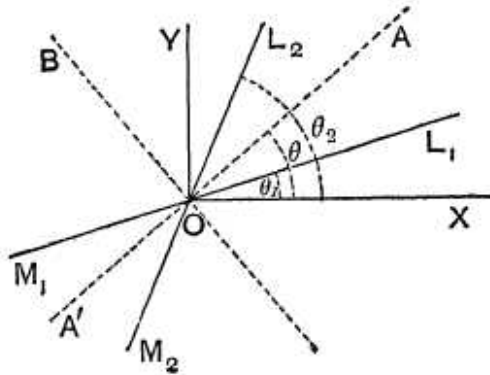
*i.e.*  $(\sqrt{a}x + \sqrt{b}y)^2 = 0,$

which is two coincident straight lines,

**112.** To find the equation to the straight lines bisecting the angle between the straight lines given by

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Let the equation (1) represent the two straight lines



$L_1OM_1$  and  $L_2OM_2$  inclined at angles  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$  to the axis of  $x$ , so that (1) is equivalent to

$$b(y - x \tan \theta_1)(y - x \tan \theta_2) = 0.$$

Hence

$$\tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2 = -\frac{2h}{b}, \text{ and } \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2 = \frac{a}{b} \dots(2).$$

Let  $OA$  and  $OB$  be the required bisectors.

Since  $\angle AOL_1 = \angle L_2OA,$   
 $\therefore \angle AOX - \theta_1 = \theta_2 - \angle AOX.$   
 $\therefore 2 \angle AOX = \theta_1 + \theta_2.$

Also  $\angle BOX = 90^\circ + \angle AOX.$   
 $\therefore 2 \angle BOX = 180^\circ + \theta_1 + \theta_2.$

Hence, if  $\theta$  stand for either of the angles  $AOX$  or  $BOX$ , we have

$$\tan 2\theta = \tan (\theta_1 + \theta_2) = \frac{\tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2}{1 - \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2} = -\frac{2h}{b - a},$$

by equations (2).

But, if  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of any point on either of the lines  $OA$  or  $OB$ , we have

$$\tan \theta = \frac{y}{x}.$$



$$\begin{aligned} \therefore -\frac{2h}{b-a} &= \tan 2\theta = \frac{2 \tan \theta}{1 - \tan^2 \theta} \\ &= \frac{2 \frac{y}{x}}{1 - \frac{y^2}{x^2}} = \frac{2xy}{x^2 - y^2}, \end{aligned}$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{x^2 - y^2}{a - b} = \frac{xy}{h}.$$

This, being a relation holding between the coordinates of *any* point on *either* of the bisectors, is, by Art. 42, the equation to the bisectors.

**113.** The foregoing equation may also be obtained in the following manner :

Let the given equation represent the straight lines

$$y - m_1x = 0 \text{ and } y - m_2x = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

so that 
$$m_1 + m_2 = -\frac{2h}{b} \text{ and } m_1 m_2 = \frac{a}{b} \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

The equations to the bisectors of the angles between the straight lines (1) are, by Art. 84,

$$\frac{y - m_1x}{\sqrt{1 + m_1^2}} = \frac{y - m_2x}{\sqrt{1 + m_2^2}} \text{ and } \frac{y - m_1x}{\sqrt{1 + m_1^2}} = -\frac{y - m_2x}{\sqrt{1 + m_2^2}},$$

or, expressed in one equation,

$$\left\{ \frac{y - m_1x}{\sqrt{1 + m_1^2}} - \frac{y - m_2x}{\sqrt{1 + m_2^2}} \right\} \left\{ \frac{y - m_1x}{\sqrt{1 + m_1^2}} + \frac{y - m_2x}{\sqrt{1 + m_2^2}} \right\} = 0,$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{(y - m_1x)^2}{1 + m_1^2} - \frac{(y - m_2x)^2}{1 + m_2^2} = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $(1 + m_2^2)(y^2 - 2m_1xy + m_1^2x^2) - (1 + m_1^2)(y^2 - 2m_2xy + m_2^2x^2) = 0,$

*i.e.*  $(m_1^2 - m_2^2)(x^2 - y^2) + 2(m_1m_2 - 1)(m_1 - m_2)xy = 0,$

*i.e.*  $(m_1 + m_2)(x^2 - y^2) + 2(m_1m_2 - 1)xy = 0.$

Hence, by (2), the required equation is

$$-\frac{2h}{b}(x^2 - y^2) + 2\left(\frac{a}{b} - 1\right)xy = 0,$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{x^2 - y^2}{a - b} = \frac{xy}{h}.$$

## EXAMPLES XII

Find what straight lines are represented by the following equations and determine the angles between them.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. $x^2 - 7xy + 12y^2 = 0$ .           | 2. $4x^2 - 24xy + 11y^2 = 0$ .         |
| 3. $33x^2 - 71xy - 14y^2 = 0$ .        | 4. $x^3 - 6x^2 + 11x - 6 = 0$ .        |
| 5. $y^2 - 16 = 0$ .                    | 6. $y^3 - xy^2 - 14x^2y + 24x^3 = 0$ . |
| 7. $x^2 + 2xy \sec \theta + y^2 = 0$ . | 8. $x^2 + 2xy \cot \theta + y^2 = 0$ . |

9. Find the equations of the straight lines bisecting the angles between the pairs of straight lines given in examples 2, 3, 7, and 8.

10. Shew that the two straight lines

$$x^2 (\tan^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta) - 2xy \tan \theta + y^2 \sin^2 \theta = 0$$

make with the axis of  $x$  angles such that the difference of their tangents is 2.

11. Prove that the two straight lines

$$(x^2 + y^2) (\cos^2 \theta \sin^2 \alpha + \sin^2 \theta) = (x \tan \alpha - y \sin \theta)^2$$

include an angle  $2\alpha$ .

12. Prove that the two straight lines

$$x^2 \sin^2 \alpha \cos^2 \theta + 4xy \sin \alpha \sin \theta + y^2 [4 \cos \alpha - (1 + \cos \alpha)^2 \cos^2 \theta] = 0$$

meet at an angle  $\alpha$ .

## ANSWERS

1.  $(x - 3y)(x - 4y) = 0$ ;  $\tan^{-1} \frac{1}{3}$ .    2.  $(2x - 11y)(2x - y) = 0$ ;  $\tan^{-1} \frac{1}{2}$ .  
 3.  $(11x + 2y)(3x - 7y) = 0$ ;  $\tan^{-1} \frac{3}{11}$ .    4.  $x = 1$ ;  $x = 2$ ;  $x = 3$ .  
 5.  $y = \pm 4$ .    6.  $(y + 4x)(y - 2x)(y - 3x) = 0$ ;  $\tan^{-1}(-\frac{4}{3})$ ;  $\tan^{-1}(\frac{1}{2})$ .  
 7.  $x(1 - \sin \theta) + y \cos \theta = 0$ ;  $x(1 + \sin \theta) + y \cos \theta = 0$ ;  $\theta$ .  
 8.  $y \sin \theta + x \cos \theta = \pm x \sqrt{\cos 2\theta}$ ;  $\tan^{-1}(\operatorname{cosec} \theta \sqrt{\cos 2\theta})$ .  
 9.  $12x^2 - 7xy - 12y^2 = 0$ ;     $71x^2 + 94xy - 71y^2 = 0$ ;     $x^2 - y^2 = 0$ ;  
 $x^2 - y^2 = 0$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. The equation is  $(x - 3y)(x - 4y) = 0$ .

$\therefore m_1 = \frac{1}{3}$ ,  $m_2 = \frac{1}{4}$ , and the required angle

$$= \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4}}{1 + \frac{1}{3} \cdot \frac{1}{4}} = \text{etc.}$$

2. The equation is  $(2x - y)(2x - 11y) = 0$ .

$\therefore m_1 = 2, m_2 = \frac{2}{11}$ , and the required angle

$$= \tan^{-1} \frac{2 - \frac{2}{11}}{1 + 2 \times \frac{2}{11}} = \text{etc.}$$

3. The equation is  $(3x - 7y)(11x + 2y) = 0$ .

$\therefore m_1 = \frac{3}{7}, m_2 = -\frac{11}{2}$  and the angle

$$= \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{3}{7} - (-\frac{11}{2})}{1 + \frac{3}{7}(-\frac{11}{2})} = \text{etc.}$$

6. The equation is

$$(y + 4x)(y - 3x)(y - 2x) = 0.$$

Here  $m_1 = -4, m_2 = 3, m_3 = 2$ .

The angle between the first and third

$$= \tan^{-1} \frac{-4 - 2}{1 + (-4) \times 2} = \tan^{-1} \frac{6}{7}.$$

The angle between the second and third

$$= \tan^{-1} \frac{3 - 2}{1 + 3 \times 2} = \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{7}.$$

7. Solving as a quadratic in  $\frac{y}{x}$ , we have

$$\frac{y}{x} = -\sec \theta \pm \sqrt{\sec^2 \theta - 1} = \frac{-1 \pm \sin \theta}{\cos \theta}.$$

$\therefore$  the lines are  $x(1 + \sin \theta) + y \cos \theta = 0$ ,

and  $x(1 - \sin \theta) + y \cos \theta = 0$ ,

and the angle between them, by Art. 110,

$$= \tan^{-1} \left\{ \frac{2\sqrt{\sec^2 \theta - 1}}{2} \right\} = \theta.$$

8. Solving as a quadratic in  $\frac{y}{x}$ ,

$$\frac{y}{x} = -\cot \theta \pm \sqrt{\cot^2 \theta - 1} = \frac{-\cos \theta \pm \sqrt{\cos 2\theta}}{\sin \theta}.$$

$\therefore$  the lines are  $x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = \pm x \sqrt{\cos 2\theta}$ , and the angle between them, by Art. 110,

$$= \tan^{-1} \frac{2\sqrt{\cot^2 \theta - 1}}{2} = \tan^{-1} (\operatorname{cosec} \theta \sqrt{\cos 2\theta}).$$

9. Use the result of Art. 112.

For the third pair the equation becomes  $\frac{x^2 - y^2}{0} = \frac{xy}{\sec \theta}$ ;

hence  $x^2 - y^2 = 0$  is the required equation.

10. As in Art. 112,

$$\begin{aligned} \tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2 &= \frac{2 \tan \theta}{\sin^2 \theta} = \frac{2}{\sin \theta \cdot \cos \theta} \\ &= \frac{2(\sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta)}{\sin \theta \cdot \cos \theta} = 2(\tan \theta + \cot \theta), \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and } \tan \theta_1 - \tan \theta_2 &= \frac{\tan^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta}{\sin^2 \theta} = \sec^2 \theta + \cot^2 \theta \\ &= 1 + \tan^2 \theta + \cot^2 \theta; \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore (\tan \theta_1 - \tan \theta_2)^2 &= 4 \{(\tan \theta + \cot \theta)^2 - (1 + \tan^2 \theta + \cot^2 \theta)\} \\ &= 4. \quad \therefore \text{etc.} \end{aligned}$$

11. Since

$$\begin{aligned} \cos^2 \theta \sin^2 \alpha + \sin^2 \theta &= \cos^2 \theta \sin^2 \alpha + \sin^2 \theta (\sin^2 \alpha + \cos^2 \alpha) \\ &= \sin^2 \alpha + \sin^2 \theta \cos^2 \alpha, \end{aligned}$$

the equation may be written

$$\begin{aligned} (x^2 + y^2)(\sin^2 \theta \cos^2 \alpha + \sin^2 \alpha) &= (x \tan \alpha - y \sin \theta)^2; \\ \therefore (x^2 + y^2)(\sin^2 \theta + \tan^2 \alpha) &= (1 + \tan^2 \alpha)(x \tan \alpha - y \sin \theta)^2; \\ \therefore x^2 \sin^2 \theta + y^2 \tan^2 \alpha + 2xy \tan \alpha \sin \theta & \\ &= \tan^2 \alpha (x \tan \alpha - y \sin \theta)^2; \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x \sin \theta + y \tan \alpha = \pm \tan \alpha (x \tan \alpha - y \sin \theta).$$

The  $m$ 's of these lines are

$$\frac{\tan^2 \alpha - \sin \theta}{\tan \alpha (1 + \sin \theta)} \text{ and } \frac{-\tan^2 \alpha - \sin \theta}{\tan \alpha (1 - \sin \theta)}.$$

The angle between them

$$\begin{aligned} &= \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{\tan^2 \alpha - \sin \theta}{\tan \alpha (1 + \sin \theta)} + \frac{\tan^2 \alpha + \sin \theta}{\tan \alpha (1 - \sin \theta)}}{1 - \frac{\tan^4 \alpha - \sin^2 \theta}{\tan^2 \alpha (1 - \sin^2 \theta)}} \end{aligned}$$

$$= \tan^{-1} \frac{2 \tan a (\tan^2 a + \sin^2 \theta)}{(1 - \tan^2 a) (\tan^2 a + \sin^2 \theta)} = 2a.$$

12. Taking the terms in  $x^2$ ,  $y^2$ , and  $xy$  separately,

$$x^2 \sin^2 a \cos^2 \theta = x^2 \sin^2 a - x^2 \sin^2 a \sin^2 \theta,$$

$$\begin{aligned} & y^2 [4 \cos a - (1 + \cos a)^2 \cos^2 \theta] \\ = & y^2 [(1 + \cos a)^2 - (1 - \cos a)^2 - (1 + \cos a)^2 \cos^2 \theta] \\ & = y^2 (1 + \cos a)^2 \sin^2 \theta - y^2 (1 - \cos a)^2, \end{aligned}$$

$$4xy \sin a \sin \theta$$

$$= 2xy \sin a (1 + \cos a) \sin \theta + 2xy \sin a (1 - \cos a) \sin \theta.$$

Hence the given equation is equivalent to

$$[x \sin a + y (1 + \cos a) \sin \theta]^2 = [x \sin a \sin \theta - y (1 - \cos a)]^2,$$

$$\text{i.e. } x \sin a + y (1 + \cos a) \sin \theta = \pm [x \sin a \sin \theta - y (1 - \cos a)],$$

$$\text{i.e. } x \tan \frac{a}{2} + y \sin \theta = \pm \left[ x \tan \frac{a}{2} \sin \theta - y \tan^2 \frac{a}{2} \right].$$

$\therefore$  the two lines are

$$y \left( \tan^2 \frac{a}{2} + \sin \theta \right) = x \tan \frac{a}{2} (\sin \theta - 1),$$

$$\text{and } y \left( \tan^2 \frac{a}{2} - \sin \theta \right) = x \tan \frac{a}{2} (\sin \theta + 1).$$

The angle between them

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\tan \frac{a}{2} (\sin \theta - 1)}{\tan^2 \frac{a}{2} + \sin \theta} \sim \frac{\tan \frac{a}{2} (\sin \theta + 1)}{\tan^2 \frac{a}{2} - \sin \theta} \\ = & \tan^{-1} \frac{\tan^2 \frac{a}{2} (\sin^2 \theta - 1)}{1 + \frac{\tan^2 \frac{a}{2} (\sin^2 \theta - 1)}{\tan^2 \frac{a}{2} - \sin \theta}} \\ = & \tan^{-1} \frac{2 \tan \frac{a}{2} \left( \tan^2 \frac{a}{2} + \sin^2 \theta \right)}{\left( 1 - \tan^2 \frac{a}{2} \right) \left( \tan^2 \frac{a}{2} + \sin^2 \theta \right)} = a. \end{aligned}$$

## GENERAL EQUATION OF THE SECOND DEGREE

**114.** The most general expression, which contains terms involving  $x$  and  $y$  in a degree not higher than the second, must contain terms involving  $x^2$ ,  $xy$ ,  $y^2$ ,  $x$ ,  $y$ , and a constant.

The notation which is in general use for this expression is

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c \dots\dots (1).$$

The quantity (1) is known as the general expression of the second degree, and when equated to zero is called the **general equation of the second degree**.

The student may better remember the seemingly arbitrary coefficients of the terms in the expression (1) if the reason for their use be given.

The most general expression involving terms only of the second degree in  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  is

$$ax^2 + by^2 + cz^2 + 2fyz + 2gzx + 2hxy \dots\dots (2),$$

where the coefficients occur in the order of the alphabet.

If in this expression we put  $z$  equal to unity we get

$$ax^2 + by^2 + c + 2fy + 2gx + 2hxy,$$

which, after rearrangement, is the same as (1).

Now in Solid Geometry we use three coordinates  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$ . Also many formulæ in Plane Geometry are derived from those of Solid Geometry by putting  $z$  equal to unity.

We therefore, in Plane Geometry, use that notation corresponding to which we have the standard notation in Solid Geometry.

**115.** In general, as will be shown in Chapter 15,

the general equation represents a Curve-Locus.

If a certain condition holds between the coefficients of its terms it will, however, represent a pair of straight lines.

This condition we shall determine in the following article.

**116.** *To find the condition that the general equation of the second degree*

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

*may represent two straight lines.*

If we can break the left-hand members of (1) into two factors, each of the first degree, then, as in Art. 108, it will represent two straight lines.

If  $a$  be not zero, multiply equation (1) by  $a$  and arrange in powers of  $x$ ; it then becomes

$$a^2x^2 + 2ax(hy + g) = -aby^2 - 2afy - ac.$$

On completing the square on the left hand we have

$$a^2x^2 + 2ax(hy + g) + (hy + g)^2 = y^2(h^2 - ab) + 2y(gh - af) + g^2 - ac,$$

*i.e.*

$$(ax + hy + g) = \pm \sqrt{y^2(h^2 - ab) + 2y(gh - af) + g^2 - ac} \dots(2).$$

From (2) we cannot obtain  $x$  in terms of  $y$ , involving only terms of the *first* degree, unless the quantity under the radical sign be a perfect square.

The condition for this is

$$(gh - af)^2 = (h^2 - ab)(g^2 - ac),$$

*i.e.*  $g^2h^2 - 2afgh + a^2f^2 = g^2h^2 - abg^2 - ach^2 + a^2bc.$

Cancelling and dividing by  $a$ , we have the required condition, viz.

$$abc + 2fgh - af^2 - bg^2 - ch^2 = 0 \dots\dots(3).$$

**117.** The foregoing condition may be otherwise obtained thus :  
 The given equation, multiplied by (a), is

$$a^2x^2 + 2ahxy + aby^2 + 2agx + 2afy + ac = 0 \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

The terms of the second degree in this equation break up, as in Art. 108, into the factors

$$ax + hy - y \sqrt{h^2 - ab} \text{ and } ax + hy + y \sqrt{h^2 - ab}.$$

If then (4) break into factors it must be equivalent to

$$\{ax + (h - \sqrt{h^2 - ab})y + A\} \{ax + (h + \sqrt{h^2 - ab})y + B\} = 0,$$

where A and B are given by the relations

$$a(A + B) = 2ga \dots\dots\dots(5),$$

$$A(h + \sqrt{h^2 - ab}) + B(h - \sqrt{h^2 - ab}) = 2fa \dots\dots\dots(6),$$

and

$$AB = ac \dots\dots\dots(7).$$

The equations (5) and (6) give

$$A + B = 2g, \text{ and } A - B = \frac{2fa - 2gh}{\sqrt{h^2 - ab}}.$$

The relation (7) then gives

$$\begin{aligned} 4ac &= 4AB = (A + B)^2 - (A - B)^2 \\ &= 4g^2 - 4 \frac{(fa - gh)^2}{h^2 - ab}, \end{aligned}$$

*i.e.*

$$(fa - gh)^2 = (g^2 - ac)(h^2 - ab),$$

which, as before, reduces to

$$abc + 2fgh - af^2 - bg^2 - ch^2 = 0.$$

**Ex.** If a be zero, prove that the general equation will represent two straight lines if

$$2fgh - bg^2 - ch^2 = 0.$$

If both a and b be zero, prove that the condition is  $2fg - ch = 0$ .



**118.** The relation (3) of Art. 116 is equivalent to the expression

$$\begin{vmatrix} a, & h, & g \\ h, & b, & f \\ g, & f, & c \end{vmatrix} = 0.$$

This may be easily verified by writing down the value of the determinant by the rule of Art. 5.

A geometrical meaning to this form of the relation (3) will be given in a later chapter. [Art. 355.]

The quantity on the left-hand side of equation (3) is called the **Discriminant** of the General Equation.

The general equation therefore represents two straight lines if its discriminant be zero.

**119. Ex. 1.** Prove that the equation

$$12x^2 + 7xy - 10y^2 + 13x + 45y - 35 = 0$$

represents two straight lines, and find the angle between them.

Here

$$a = 12, \quad h = \frac{7}{2}, \quad b = -10, \quad g = \frac{13}{2}, \quad f = \frac{45}{2}, \quad \text{and } c = -35.$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} abc + 2fgh - af^2 - bg^2 - ch^2 \\ &= 12 \times (-10) \times (-35) + 2 \times \frac{45}{2} \times \frac{13}{2} \times \frac{7}{2} - 12 \times \left(\frac{45}{2}\right)^2 - (-10) \times \left(\frac{13}{2}\right)^2 \\ &\quad - (-35) \left(\frac{7}{2}\right)^2 \\ &= 4200 + \frac{4095}{4} - 6075 + \frac{1690}{4} + \frac{1715}{4} \\ &= -1875 + \frac{7500}{4} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

The equation therefore represents two straight lines.

Solving it for  $x$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + x \frac{7y+13}{12} + \left(\frac{7y+13}{24}\right)^2 &= \frac{10y^2 - 45y + 35}{12} + \left(\frac{7y+13}{24}\right)^2 \\ &= \left(\frac{23y-43}{24}\right)^2. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x + \frac{7y+13}{24} = \pm \frac{23y-43}{24},$$

$$i. e. \quad x = \frac{2y-7}{3} \text{ or } \frac{-5y+5}{4}.$$

The given equation therefore represents the two straight lines

$$3x = 2y - 7 \text{ and } 4x = -5y + 5.$$

The "m's" of these two lines are therefore  $\frac{3}{2}$  and  $-\frac{4}{5}$ , and the angle between them, by Art. 66,

$$= \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{3}{2} - (-\frac{4}{5})}{1 + \frac{3}{2}(-\frac{4}{5})} = \tan^{-1} (-\frac{23}{2}).$$

**Ex. 2.** Find the value of  $h$  so that the equation

$$6x^2 + 2hxy + 12y^2 + 22x + 31y + 20 = 0$$

may represent two straight lines.

Here

$$a=6, \quad b=12, \quad g=11, \quad f=\frac{11}{2}, \quad \text{and } c=20.$$

The condition (3) of Art. 116 then gives

$$20h^2 - 341h + \frac{2209}{2} = 0,$$

$$i.e. \quad (h - \frac{17}{2})(20h - 171) = 0.$$

Hence

$$h = \frac{17}{2} \text{ or } \frac{171}{20}.$$

Taking the first of these values, the given equation becomes

$$6x^2 + 17xy + 12y^2 + 22x + 31y + 20 = 0,$$

$$i.e. \quad (2x + 3y + 4)(3x + 4y + 5) = 0.$$

Taking the second value, the equation is

$$20x^2 + 57xy + 40y^2 + \frac{220}{3}x + \frac{310}{3}y + \frac{200}{3} = 0,$$

$$i.e. \quad (4x + 5y + \frac{20}{3})(5x + 8y + 10) = 0.$$

### EXAMPLES XIII

Prove that the following equations represent two straight lines; find also their point of intersection and the angle between them.

1.  $6y^2 - xy - x^2 + 30y + 36 = 0.$     2.  $x^2 - 5xy + 4y^2 + x + 2y - 2 = 0.$

3.  $3y^2 - 8xy - 3x^2 - 29x + 3y - 18 = 0.$

4.  $y^2 + xy - 2x^2 - 5x - y - 2 = 0.$

5. Prove that the equation

$$x^2 + 6xy + 9y^2 + 4x + 12y - 5 = 0$$

represents two parallel lines.

Find the value of  $k$  so that the following equations may represent pairs of straight lines :

6.  $6x^2 + 11xy - 10y^2 + x + 31y + k = 0.$

7.  $12x^2 - 10xy + 2y^2 + 11x - 5y + k = 0.$

8.  $12x^2 + kxy + 2y^2 + 11x - 5y + 2 = 0.$

9.  $6x^2 + xy + ky^2 - 11x + 43y - 35 = 0.$

10.  $kxy - 8x + 9y - 12 = 0$ .  
 11.  $x^2 + \frac{10}{3}xy + y^2 - 5x - 7y + k = 0$ .  
 12.  $12x^2 + xy - 6y^2 - 29x + 8y + k = 0$ .  
 13.  $2x^2 + xy - y^2 + kx + 6y - 9 = 0$ .  
 14.  $x^2 + kxy + y^2 - 5x - 7y + 6 = 0$ .

15. Prove that the equations to the straight lines passing through the origin which make an angle  $\alpha$  with the straight line  $y + x = 0$  are given by the equation

$$x^2 + 2xy \sec 2\alpha + y^2 = 0.$$

16. What relations must hold between the coefficients of the equations

$$(i) \quad ax^2 + by^2 + cx + cy = 0,$$

and  $(ii) \quad ay^2 + bxy + dx + ex = 0,$

so that each of them may represent a pair of straight lines?

17. The equations to a pair of opposite sides of a parallelogram are

$$x^2 - 7x + 6 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad y^2 - 14y + 40 = 0;$$

find the equations to its diagonals.

## ANSWERS

1.  $(\frac{6}{5}, -\frac{12}{5})$ ;  $45^\circ$ .      2.  $(2, 1)$ ;  $\tan^{-1} \frac{3}{4}$ .      3.  $(-\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{5}{2})$ ;  $90^\circ$ .  
 4.  $(-1, 1)$ ;  $\tan^{-1} 3$ .      6.  $-15$ .      7.  $2$ .      8.  $-10$  or  $-17\frac{1}{2}$ .  
 9.  $-12$ .      10.  $6$ .      11.  $6$ .      12.  $14$ .      13.  $-3$ .  
 14.  $\frac{5}{2}$  or  $\frac{10}{3}$ .      16. (i)  $c(a+b) = 0$ ; (ii)  $e = 0$ , or  $ae = bd$ .  
 17.  $5y + 6x = 56$ ;  $5y - 6x = 14$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

It is easily seen in Nos. 1—5 that the condition of Art. 116 is satisfied.

1. If  $(3y + x + A)(2y - x + B) \equiv 6y^2 - xy - x^2 + 30y + 36$ , then  $B - A = 0$ ,  $2A + 3B = 30$ ,  $AB = 36$ .

Whence  $A = B = 6$ .

Solving the resulting equations  $3y + x + 6 = 0$  and  $2y - x + 6 = 0$ , we have  $x = \frac{6}{5}$ ;  $y = -\frac{12}{5}$ .

$$\text{The angle} = \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3}}{1 - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{3}} = \tan^{-1} 1 = 45^\circ.$$

2. If  $(x - 4y + A)(x - y + B) \equiv x^2 - 5xy + 4y^2 + x + 2y - 2$ ,  
then  $A + B = 1, A + 4B = -2, AB = -2$ .

Whence  $A = 2, B = -1$ .

Solving the resulting separate equations we have

$$x = 2, y = 1.$$

$$\text{The angle} = \tan^{-1} \frac{1 - \frac{1}{4}}{1 + 1 \cdot \frac{1}{4}} = \tan^{-1} \frac{3}{5}.$$

3. If

$(3y + x + A)(y - 3x + B) \equiv 3y^2 - 8xy - 3x^2 - 29x + 3y - 18$ ,  
then  $3A - B = 29, 3B + A = 3, AB = -18$ .

Whence  $A = 9, B = -2$ .

The two straight lines are therefore

$$3y + x + 9 = 0 \text{ and } y - 3x - 2 = 0.$$

Solving  $x = -\frac{3}{2}, y = -\frac{5}{2}$ .

$$\text{The angle} = \tan^{-1} \frac{3 + \frac{1}{3}}{1 - 3 \cdot \frac{1}{3}} = \tan^{-1}(\infty) = 90^\circ.$$

4. If  $(y + 2x + A)(y - x + B) \equiv y^2 + xy - 2x^2 - 5x - y - 2$ ,  
then  $2B - A = -5, A + B = -1, AB = -2$ .

Whence  $A = 1, B = -2$ .

Solving  $x = -1; y = 1$ . Also the  $m$ 's of the two straight lines are  $-2$  and  $1$ .

$$\text{The angle} = \tan^{-1} \frac{-2 - 1}{1 - 2} = \tan^{-1} 3.$$

5. Since the condition of Art. 116 is satisfied, and the terms of the second degree are  $(x + 3y)^2$ , the two lines must be parallel. In fact the two lines are

$$x + 3y + 5 = 0 \text{ and } x + 3y - 1 = 0.$$

6. The condition of Art. 116 gives

$$6 \times (-10) \times k + 2 \times \frac{31}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{11}{2} - 6 \times \left(\frac{31}{2}\right)^2 - (-10) \times \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 - k \left(\frac{11}{2}\right)^2 = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $-60k + \frac{341}{4} - \frac{5766}{4} + \frac{10}{4} - k \frac{121}{4} = 0,$

*i.e.*  $\frac{361}{4}k = -\frac{5415}{4}, \text{ i.e. } k = -15.$

7. Here

$$12 \times 2 \times k + 2 \left(-\frac{5}{2}\right) \times \frac{11}{2} \times (-5) - 12 \times \left(-\frac{5}{2}\right)^2 - 2 \times \left(\frac{11}{2}\right)^2 - k(-5)^2 = 0,$$

etc. giving  $k$ .

8. Here

$$12 \times 2 \times 2 + 2 \left(-\frac{5}{2}\right) \left(\frac{11}{2}\right) \left(\frac{k}{2}\right) - 12 \left(-\frac{5}{2}\right)^2 - 2 \left(\frac{11}{2}\right)^2 - 2 \left(\frac{k}{2}\right)^2 = 0,$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad 48 - \frac{55k}{4} - 75 - \frac{121}{2} - \frac{k^2}{2} = 0,$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad 2k^2 + 55k + 350 = 0, \text{ i.e. } (k+10)(2k+35) = 0.$$

$$10. \text{ Here } 0 + 2 \left(\frac{9}{2}\right) (-4) \left(\frac{k}{2}\right) - (-12) \frac{k^2}{4} = 0.$$

$$\therefore 3k^2 - 18k = 0, \text{ i.e. } k = 6.$$

The value  $k = 0$  is clearly inadmissible.

14. Here

$$1 \cdot 1 \cdot 6 + 2 \cdot \left(-\frac{7}{2}\right) \left(-\frac{5}{2}\right) \cdot \frac{k}{2} - 1 \cdot \left(-\frac{7}{2}\right)^2 - 1 \cdot \left(-\frac{5}{2}\right)^2 - 6 \times \frac{k^2}{4} = 0,$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad 6k^2 - 35k + 50 = 0, \text{ i.e. } (2k-5)(3k-10) = 0. \quad \therefore \text{etc.}$$

15. The line  $y + x = 0$  is inclined at  $135^\circ$  to the axis.

Hence one of the straight lines is

$$y = x \tan(135^\circ + a) = x \frac{-1 + \tan a}{1 + \tan a},$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad (\cos a + \sin a) y + x (\cos a - \sin a) = 0.$$

So the other is  $y = x \tan(135^\circ - a)$ ,

$$\text{i.e.} \quad (\cos a - \sin a) y + x (\cos a + \sin a) = 0.$$

$\therefore$  by multiplication, the equation to the two lines is

$$y^2 \cos 2a + 2xy + x^2 \cos 2a = 0. \quad \therefore \text{etc.}$$

16. (i) The condition of Art. 116 becomes

$$a \frac{c^2}{4} + b \frac{c^2}{4} = 0, \text{ or } c(a+b) = 0.$$

(ii) The condition becomes  $e(db - ae) = 0$ .

17. The equations to the sides are

$$x - 1 = 0, \quad x - 6 = 0, \quad y - 4 = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad y - 10 = 0.$$

Hence the coordinates of the corners are

$$(1, 4); (6, 4); (6, 10); (1, 10).$$

Hence the diagonals are  $\frac{y-4}{10-4} = \frac{x-1}{6-1}$ ;  $\frac{y-4}{10-4} = \frac{x-6}{1-6}$ ,

or  $5y - 6x = 14$  and  $6x + 5y = 56$ .

**120.** To prove that a homogeneous equation of the  $n$ th degree represents  $n$  straight lines, real or imaginary, which all pass through the origin.

Let the equation be

$$y^n + A_1xy^{n-1} + A_2x^2y^{n-2} + A_3x^3y^{n-3} + \dots + A_nx^n = 0.$$

On division by  $x^n$ , it may be written

$$\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)^n + A_1\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)^{n-1} + A_2\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)^{n-2} + \dots + A_n = 0 \dots (1).$$

This is an equation of the  $n$ th degree in  $\frac{y}{x}$ , and hence must have  $n$  roots.

Let these roots be  $m_1, m_2, m_3, \dots, m_n$ . Then (C. Smith's Algebra, Art. 89) the equation (1) must be equivalent to the equation

$$\left(\frac{y}{x} - m_1\right) \left(\frac{y}{x} - m_2\right) \left(\frac{y}{x} - m_3\right) \dots \left(\frac{y}{x} - m_n\right) = 0 \dots (2).$$

The equation (2) is satisfied by *all* the points which satisfy the separate equations

$$\frac{y}{x} - m_1 = 0, \quad \frac{y}{x} - m_2 = 0, \quad \dots \quad \frac{y}{x} - m_n = 0,$$

*i.e.* by all the points which lie on the  $n$  straight lines

$$y - m_1x = 0, \quad y - m_2x = 0, \quad \dots \quad y - m_nx = 0,$$

all of which pass through the origin. Conversely, the coordinates of all the points which satisfy these  $n$  equations satisfy equation (1). Hence the proposition.

**121. Ex. 1.** The equation

$$y^3 - 6xy^2 + 11x^2y - 6x^3 = 0,$$

which is equivalent to

$$(y - x)(y - 2x)(y - 3x) = 0,$$

represents the three straight lines

$$y - x = 0, \quad y - 2x = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad y - 3x = 0,$$

all of which pass through the origin.

**Ex. 2.** The equation  $y^3 - 5y^2 + 6y = 0$ ,  
*i.e.*  $y(y - 2)(y - 3) = 0$ ,  
 similarly represents the three straight lines  
 $y = 0$ ,  $y = 2$ , and  $y = 3$ ,  
 all of which are parallel to the axis of  $x$ .

**122.** To find the equation to the two straight lines joining the origin to the points in which the straight line

$$lx + my = n \dots \dots \dots (1)$$

meets the locus whose equation is

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

The equation (1) may be written

$$\frac{lx + my}{n} = 1 \dots \dots \dots (3).$$

The coordinates of the points in which the straight line meets the locus satisfy both equation (2) and equation (3), and hence satisfy the equation

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2(gx + fy) \frac{lx + my}{n} + c \left( \frac{lx + my}{n} \right)^2 = 0 \dots \dots (4).$$

[For at the points where (3) and (4) are true it is clear that (2) is true.]

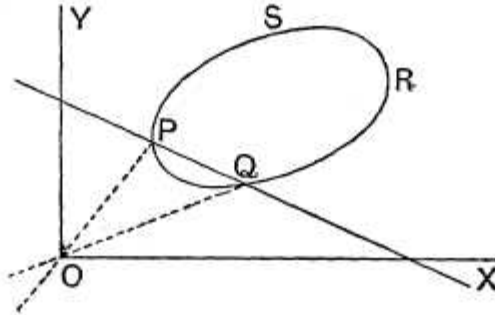
Hence (4) represents *some locus* which passes through the intersections of (2) and (3).

But, since the equation (4) is homogeneous and of the second degree, it represents two straight lines passing through the origin (Art. 108).

It therefore must represent the two straight lines joining the origin to the intersections of (2) and (3).



**123.** The preceding article may be illustrated geometrically if we assume that the equation (2) represents some such curve as  $PQRS$  in the figure.



Let the given straight line cut the curve in the points  $P$  and  $Q$ .

The equation (2) holds for all points on the curve  $PQRS$ .

The equation (3) holds for all points on the line  $PQ$ .

Both equations are therefore true at the points of intersection  $P$  and  $Q$ .

The equation (4), which is derived from (2) and (3), holds therefore at  $P$  and  $Q$ .

But the equation (4) represents two straight lines, each of which passes through the point  $O$ .

It must therefore represent the two straight lines  $OP$  and  $OQ$ .

**124. Ex.** Prove that the straight lines joining the origin to the points of intersection of the straight line  $x - y = 2$  and the curve

$$5x^2 + 12xy - 8y^2 + 8x - 4y + 12 = 0$$

make equal angles with the axes.

As in Art. 122 the equation to the required straight lines is

$$5x^2 + 12xy - 8y^2 + (8x - 4y) \frac{x - y}{2} + 12 \left( \frac{x - y}{2} \right)^2 = 0 \dots (1).$$

For this equation is homogeneous and therefore represents two straight lines through the origin; also it is satisfied at the points where the two given equations are satisfied.

Now (1) is, on reduction,

$$y^2 = 4x^2,$$

so that the equations to the two lines are

$$y = 2x \text{ and } y = -2x.$$

These lines are equally inclined to the axes.

**125.** It was stated in Art. 115 that, *in general*, an equation of the second degree represents a curve-line, including (Art. 116) as a particular case two straight lines.

In some cases however it will be found that such equations only represent isolated points. Some examples are appended.

**Ex. 1.** *What is represented by the locus*

$$(x - y + c)^2 + (x + y - c)^2 = 0? \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

We know that the sum of the squares of two real quantities cannot be zero unless each of the squares is separately zero.

The only real points that satisfy the equation (1) therefore satisfy both of the equations

$$x - y + c = 0 \text{ and } x + y - c = 0.$$

But the only solution of these two equations is

$$x = 0, \text{ and } y = c.$$

The only real point represented by equation (1) is therefore  $(0, c)$ .

The same result may be obtained in a different manner. The equation (1) gives

$$(x - y + c)^2 = -(x + y - c)^2,$$

*i.e.* 
$$x - y + c = \pm \sqrt{-1} (x + y - c).$$

It therefore represents the two imaginary straight lines

$$x(1 - \sqrt{-1}) - y(1 + \sqrt{-1}) + c(1 + \sqrt{-1}) = 0,$$

and 
$$x(1 + \sqrt{-1}) - y(1 - \sqrt{-1}) + c(1 - \sqrt{-1}) = 0.$$

Each of these two straight lines passes through the real point  $(0, c)$ . We may therefore say that (1) represents two imaginary straight lines passing through the point  $(0, c)$ .

**Ex. 2.** *What is represented by the equation*

$$(x^2 - a^2)^2 + (y^2 - b^2)^2 = 0 ?$$

As in the last example, the only real points on the locus are those that satisfy *both* of the equations

$$x^2 - a^2 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad y^2 - b^2 = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $x = \pm a$ , and  $y = \pm b$ .

The points represented are therefore

$$(a, b), (a, -b), (-a, b), \text{ and } (-a, -b).$$

**Ex. 3.** *What is represented by the equation*

$$x^2 + y^2 + a^2 = 0 ?$$

The only real points on the locus are those that satisfy all three of the equations

$$x = 0, \quad y = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad a = 0.$$

Hence, unless  $a$  vanishes, there are no such points, and the given equation represents nothing real.

The equation may be written

$$x^2 + y^2 = -a^2,$$

so that it represents points whose distance from the origin is  $a\sqrt{-1}$ . It therefore represents the *imaginary* circle whose radius is  $a\sqrt{-1}$  and whose centre is the origin.

**126. Ex. 1.** *Obtain the condition that one of the straight lines given by the equation*

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

*may coincide with one of those given by the equation*

$$a'x^2 + 2h'xy + b'y^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

Let the equation to the common straight line be

$$y - m_1x = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

The quantity  $y - m_1x$  must therefore be a factor of the left-hand of both (1) and (2), and therefore the value  $y = m_1x$  must satisfy both (1) and (2).

We therefore have

$$bm_1^2 + 2hm_1 + a = 0 \dots\dots\dots(4),$$

and

$$b'm_1^2 + 2h'm_1 + a' = 0 \dots\dots\dots(5).$$

Solving (4) and (5), we have

$$\frac{m_1^2}{2(ha' - h'a)} = \frac{m_1}{ab' - a'b} = \frac{1}{2(bh' - b'h)}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{ha' - h'a}{bh' - b'h} = m_1^2 = \left\{ \frac{ab' - a'b}{2(bh' - b'h)} \right\}^2,$$

so that we must have

$$(ab' - a'b)^2 = 4(ha' - h'a)(bh' - b'h).$$

**Ex. 2.** Prove that the equation

$$m(x^3 - 3xy^2) + y^3 - 3x^2y = 0$$

represents three straight lines equally inclined to one another.

Transforming to polar coordinates (Art. 35) the equation gives

$$m(\cos^3\theta - 3\cos\theta\sin^2\theta) + \sin^3\theta - 3\cos^2\theta\sin\theta = 0,$$

*i. e.*

$$m(1 - 3\tan^2\theta) + \tan^3\theta - 3\tan\theta = 0,$$

*i. e.*

$$m = \frac{3\tan\theta - \tan^3\theta}{1 - 3\tan^2\theta} = \tan 3\theta.$$

If  $m = \tan \alpha$ , this equation gives

$$\tan 3\theta = \tan \alpha,$$

the solutions of which are

$$3\theta = \alpha, \text{ or } 180^\circ + \alpha, \text{ or } 360^\circ + \alpha,$$

*i. e.*

$$\theta = \frac{\alpha}{3}, \text{ or } 60^\circ + \frac{\alpha}{3}, \text{ or } 120^\circ + \frac{\alpha}{3}.$$

The locus is therefore three straight lines through the origin inclined at angles

$$\frac{\alpha}{3}, \quad 60^\circ + \frac{\alpha}{3}, \quad \text{and} \quad 120^\circ + \frac{\alpha}{3}$$

to the axis of  $x$ .

They are therefore equally inclined to one another.

**Ex. 3.** Prove that two of the straight lines represented by the equation

$$ax^3 + bx^2y + cxy^2 + dy^3 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

will be at right angles if

$$a^2 + ac + bd + d^2 = 0.$$

Let the separate equations to the three lines be

$$y - m_1x = 0, \quad y - m_2x = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad y - m_3x = 0,$$

so that the equation (1) must be equivalent to

$$d(y - m_1x)(y - m_2x)(y - m_3x) = 0,$$

and therefore

$$m_1 + m_2 + m_3 = -\frac{c}{d} \dots \dots \dots (2),$$

$$m_2m_3 + m_3m_1 + m_1m_2 = \frac{b}{d} \dots \dots \dots (3),$$

and

$$m_1m_2m_3 = -\frac{a}{d} \dots \dots \dots (4).$$

If the first two of these straight lines be at right angles we have, in addition,

$$m_1m_2 = -1 \dots \dots \dots (5).$$

From (4) and (5), we have

$$m_3 = \frac{a}{d},$$

and therefore, from (2),

$$m_1 + m_2 = -\frac{c}{d} - \frac{a}{d} = -\frac{c+a}{d}.$$

The equation (3) then becomes

$$\frac{a}{d} \left( -\frac{c+a}{d} \right) - 1 = \frac{b}{d},$$

*i.e.*

$$a^2 + ac + bd + d^2 = 0.$$

**EXAMPLES XIV**

1. Prove that the equation

$$y^3 - x^3 + 3xy(y - x) = 0$$

represents three straight lines equally inclined to one another.

2. Prove that the equation

$$y^2(\cos a + \sqrt{3} \sin a) \cos a - xy(\sin 2a - \sqrt{3} \cos 2a) + x^2(\sin a - \sqrt{3} \cos a) \sin a = 0$$

represents two straight lines inclined at 60° to each other.

Prove also that the area of the triangle formed with them by the straight line

$$(\cos a - \sqrt{3} \sin a)y - (\sin a + \sqrt{3} \cos a)x + a = 0$$

is  $\frac{a^2}{4\sqrt{3}}$ ,

and that this triangle is equilateral.

3. Shew that the straight lines

$$(A^2 - 3B^2)x^2 + 8ABxy + (B^2 - 3A^2)y^2 = 0$$

form with the line  $Ax + By + C = 0$  an equilateral triangle whose area

is  $\frac{C^2}{\sqrt{3}(A^2 + B^2)}$ .

4. Find the equation to the pair of straight lines joining the origin to the intersections of the straight line  $y = mx + c$  and the curve

$$x^2 + y^2 = a^2.$$

Prove that they are at right angles if

$$2c^2 = a^2(1 + m^2).$$

5. Prove that the straight lines joining the origin to the points of intersection of the straight line

$$kx + hy = 2hk$$

with the curve

$$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = c^2$$

are at right angles if

$$h^2 + k^2 = c^2.$$

6. Prove that the angle between the straight lines joining the origin to the intersection of the straight line  $y = 3x + 2$  with the curve

$$x^2 + 2xy + 3y^2 + 4x + 8y - 11 = 0 \text{ is } \tan^{-1} \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}.$$

7. Shew that the straight lines joining the origin to the other two points of intersection of the curves whose equations are

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx = 0$$

and

$$a'x^2 + 2h'xy + b'y^2 + 2g'x = 0$$

will be at right angles if

$$g(a' + b') - g'(a + b) = 0.$$

What loci are represented by the equations

8.  $x^2 - y^2 = 0.$

9.  $x^2 - xy = 0.$

10.  $xy - ay = 0.$

11.  $x^3 - x^2 - x + 1 = 0.$

12.  $x^3 - xy^2 = 0.$

13.  $x^3 + y^3 = 0.$

14.  $x^2 + y^2 = 0.$

15.  $x^2y = 0.$

16.  $(x^2 - 1)(y^2 - 4) = 0.$

17.  $(x^2 - 1)^2 + (y^2 - 4)^2 = 0.$

18.  $(y - mx - c)^2 + (y - m'x - c')^2 = 0.$

19.  $(x^2 - a^2)^2 (x^2 - b^2)^2 + c^4 (y^2 - a^2)^2 = 0.$

20.  $(x - a)^2 - y^2 = 0.$

21.  $(x + y)^2 - c^2 = 0.$

22.  $r = a \sec(\theta - a).$

23. Shew that the equation

$$bx^2 - 2hxy + ay^2 = 0$$

represents a pair of straight lines which are at right angles to the pair given by the equation

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 0.$$

24. If pairs of straight lines

$$x^2 - 2pxy - y^2 = 0 \text{ and } x^2 - 2qxy - y^2 = 0$$

be such that each pair bisects the angles between the other pair, prove that  $pq = -1$ .

25. Prove that the pair of lines

$$a^2x^2 + 2h(a + b)xy + b^2y^2 = 0$$

is equally inclined to the pair

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 0.$$

26. Shew also that the pair

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + \lambda(x^2 + y^2) = 0$$

is equally inclined to the same pair.

27. If one of the straight lines given by the equation

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 0$$

coincide with one of those given by

$$a'x^2 + 2h'xy + b'y^2 = 0,$$

and the other lines represented by them be perpendicular, prove that

$$\frac{ha'b'}{b' - a'} = \frac{h'ab}{b - a} = \sqrt{-aa'bb'}.$$

28. Prove that the equation to the bisectors of the angle between the straight lines  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 0$  is

$$h(x^2 - y^2) + (b - a)xy = (ax^2 - by^2) \cos \omega,$$

the axes being inclined at an angle  $\omega$ .

29. Prove that the straight lines

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 0$$

make equal angles with the axis of  $x$  if  $h = a \cos \omega$ , the axes being inclined at an angle  $\omega$ .

30. If the axes be inclined at an angle  $\omega$ , shew that the equation

$$x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2 \cos 2\omega = 0$$

represents a pair of perpendicular straight lines.

31. Shew that the equation

$$\cos 3\alpha (x^3 - 3xy^2) + \sin 3\alpha (y^3 - 3x^2y) + 3a(x^2 + y^2) - 4a^3 = 0$$

represents three straight lines forming an equilateral triangle.

Prove also that its area is  $3\sqrt{3}a^2$ .

32. Prove that the general equation

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$$

represents two parallel straight lines if

$$h^2 = ab \text{ and } bg^2 = af^2.$$

Prove also that the distance between them is

$$2 \sqrt{\frac{g^2 - ac}{a(a+b)}}.$$

33. If the equation

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$$

represent a pair of straight lines, prove that the equation to the third pair of straight lines passing through the points where these meet the axes is

$$ax^2 - 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c + \frac{4fg}{c}xy = 0.$$

34. If the equation

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$$

represent two straight lines, prove that the square of the distance of their point of intersection from the origin is

$$\frac{c(a+b) - f^2 - g^2}{ab - h^2}.$$

35. Shew that the orthocentre of the triangle formed by the straight lines

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 0 \text{ and } lx + my = 1$$

is a point  $(x', y')$  such that

$$\frac{x'}{l} = \frac{y'}{m} = \frac{a+b}{am^2 - 2hlm + bl^2}.$$

36. Hence find the locus of the orthocentre of a triangle of which two sides are given in position and whose third side goes through a fixed point.

37. Shew that the distance between the points of intersection of the straight line

$$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p = 0$$

with the straight lines  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 0$

is

$$\frac{2p\sqrt{h^2 - ab}}{b \cos^2 \alpha - 2h \cos \alpha \sin \alpha + a \sin^2 \alpha}.$$

Deduce the area of the triangle formed by them.

38. Prove that the product of the perpendiculars let fall from the point  $(x', y')$  upon the pair of straight lines

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 0$$

is

$$\frac{ax'^2 + 2hx'y' + by'^2}{\sqrt{(a-b)^2 + 4h^2}}.$$

39. Shew that two of the straight lines represented by the equation

$$ay^4 + bxy^3 + cx^2y^2 + dx^3y + ex^4 = 0$$

will be at right angles if

$$(b+d)(ad+be) + (e-a)^2(a+c+e) = 0.$$

40. Prove that two of the lines represented by the equation

$$ax^4 + bx^3y + cx^2y^2 + dxy^3 + ay^4 = 0$$

will bisect the angles between the other two if

$$c + 6a = 0 \text{ and } b + d = 0.$$

41. Prove that one of the lines represented by the equation

$$ax^3 + bx^2y + cxy^2 + dy^3 = 0$$

will bisect the angle between the other two if

$$(3a+c)^2(bc+2cd-3ad) = (b+3d)^2(bc+2ab-3ad).$$



**ANSWERS**

- 4.  $c^2 (x^2 + y^2) = a^2 (y - mx)^2$ .
- 8.  $x - y = 0$ , or  $x + y = 0$ .
- 9.  $x = 0$ , or  $x - y = 0$ .
- 10.  $y = 0$ , or  $x = a$ .
- 11.  $x - 1 = 0$ , or  $x - 1 = 0$ , or  $x + 1 = 0$ .
- 12.  $x = 0$ , or  $x - y = 0$ , or  $x + y = 0$ .
- 13.  $x + y = 0$ , or  $x^2 - xy + y^2 = 0$ .
- 14.  $x^2 = 0$ , and  $y^2 = 0$ .
- 15.  $x = 0$ , or  $y = 0$ .
- 16.  $x + 1 = 0$ , or  $x - 1 = 0$ , or  $y - 2 = 0$ , or  $y + 2 = 0$ .
- 17.  $x = \pm 1$ , and  $y = \pm 2$ .
- 18.  $y - mx - c = 0$ , and  $y - m'x - c' = 0$ .
- 19.  $x = \pm a$ ,  $\pm b$ , and  $y = \pm a$ .
- 20.  $x - a = y$ , or  $x - a = -y$ .
- 21.  $x + y = c$ , or  $x + y = -c$ .
- 22.  $r \cos(\theta - \alpha) = a$ .
- 36.  $bx^2 - 2hxy + ay^2 = (a + b)(hx + ky)$ .

**SOLUTIONS/HINTS**

- 1. Put  $m = -1$  in Ex. 2 of Art. 126.
- 2. The equation may be written
 
$$y^2 \cos a \cdot \cos(a - 60^\circ) - xy \sin(2a - 60^\circ) + x^2 \sin a \cdot \sin(a - 60^\circ) = 0.$$
 i.e.  $\{y \cos(a - 60^\circ) - x \sin(a - 60^\circ)\} \{y \cos a - x \sin a\} = 0.$   
 $\therefore$  the two lines are  $y = x \tan a$ , and  $y = x \tan(a - 60^\circ)$ ,  
 or in polar coordinates,  $\theta = a$ ,  $\theta = a - 60^\circ$ . .....(i)  
 These two lines are inclined to one another at an angle of  $60^\circ$ .

The third line is  $x \sin (\alpha + 60^\circ) - y \cos (\alpha + 60^\circ) = \frac{a}{2}$ , or  
 in polars,  $r \sin (\alpha + 60^\circ - \theta) = \frac{a}{2}$ .

Each of the lines (i) cuts this line where  $r = \frac{a}{\sqrt{3}}$ .

The triangle is equilateral since two equal sides are inclined at  $60^\circ$ , and its area

$$= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{a}{\sqrt{3}} \cdot \frac{a}{\sqrt{3}} \cdot \sin 60^\circ = \frac{a^2}{4\sqrt{3}}.$$

3. On factorizing, the equations to the straight lines are  $(A + \sqrt{3}B)x + (B - \sqrt{3}A)y = 0$ ,  
 and  $(A - \sqrt{3}B)x + (B + \sqrt{3}A)y = 0$ .

Put  $\tan \alpha = \frac{B}{A}$ , divide each by  $\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}$ , and we obtain

$$y = x \tan (\alpha + 30^\circ), \text{ and } y = x \tan (\alpha - 30^\circ),$$

or in polars,  $\theta = \alpha + 30^\circ$ ;  $\theta = \alpha - 30^\circ$ . ..... (i)

Also the equation  $Ax + By + C = 0$  becomes

$$r = - \frac{C}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2} \cdot \cos (\theta - \alpha)}.$$

Each of the lines (i) cuts this line where

$$r = - \frac{2C}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2} \cdot \sqrt{3}}.$$

Hence, since the lines (i) are inclined at  $60^\circ$ , the triangle is equilateral, and its area

$$= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{4C^2}{3(A^2 + B^2)} \cdot \sin 60^\circ = \frac{C^2}{\sqrt{3}(A^2 + B^2)}.$$

4. The required equation is, (Art. 122),

$$c^2 (x^2 + y^2) = a^2 (y - mx)^2.$$

The lines are at right angles if

$$2c^2 = a^2 (1 + m^2). \quad (\text{Art. 111}).$$

5. The required lines are, (Art. 122),

$$4h^2k^2(x^2+y^2)-4hk(hx+yk)(kx+hy)+(h^2+k^2-c^2)(kx+hy)^2=0.$$

These lines are at right angles if

$$8h^2k^2-4h^2k^2-4h^2k^2+(h^2+k^2-c^2)(k^2+h^2)=0, \quad (\text{Art. 111})$$

*i.e.* if  $h^2+k^2=c^2$ .

6. The required lines are, (Art. 122),

$$(x^2+2xy+3y^2) \cdot 2^2+2(y-3x)(4x+8y)-11(y-3x)^2=0,$$

$$*i.e.* \quad 7x^2-2xy-y^2=0,$$

and the angle between them (Art. 110)

$$\tan^{-1} \frac{2\sqrt{1^2+7}}{7-1} = \tan^{-1} \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}.$$

7. On multiplying the first equation by  $g'$ , the second by  $g$ , and subtracting, we have an equation which is satisfied when the two equations are satisfied. But the resulting equation is, on reduction,

$$x^2(ag'-a'g)+2xy(hg'-h'g)+y^2(bg'-b'g)=0,$$

*i.e.* it gives two straight lines through the origin.

These are at right angles if

$$g(a'+b')=g'(a+b) \quad (\text{Art. 111}).$$

8.  $x-y=0$ , or  $x+y=0$ . The lines bisecting the angles between the axes.

9.  $x=0$ , or  $x-y=0$ . The axis of  $y$  and the line  $x-y=0$ . (See Ex. 8.)

10.  $y=0$ , or  $x=a$ . The axis of  $x$  and a line parallel to the axis of  $y$  at a distance  $a$  from it.

11.  $x-1=0$ , or  $x-1=0$ , or  $x+1=0$ . Two coincident lines parallel to the axis of  $y$  at a distance 1 from it, and a line also parallel to it, and at a distance -1 from it.

12.  $x=0$ , or  $x-y=0$ , or  $x+y=0$ . The lines of Ex. 8 with the axis of  $y$ .

13.  $x+y=0$ , or  $x^2-xy+y^2=0$ . The line  $x+y=0$  (see Ex. 8) and two imaginary lines through the origin.

14.  $x^2 = 0$ , and  $y^2 = 0$ . The origin.

15.  $x = 0$ , or  $y = 0$ . The axes.

16.  $x + 1 = 0$ , or  $x - 1 = 0$ , or  $y - 2 = 0$ , or  $y + 2 = 0$ .  
Four lines, two parallel to the axis of  $x$ , and two parallel to the axis of  $y$ .

17.  $x = \pm 1$ , and  $y = \pm 2$ . Four points, viz.  
(1, 2); (1, -2); (-1, 2); (-1, -2).

18.  $y - mx - c = 0$ , and  $y - m'x - c' = 0$ . The point of intersection of these two lines.

19.  $x = \pm a$ ,  $\pm b$ , and  $y = \pm a$ . The 8 points,  
(a, a); (a, -a); (-a, a); (-a, -a);  
(b, a); (b, -a); (-b, a); (-b, -a).

20.  $x - a = y$ , or  $x - a = -y$ . These two straight lines.

21.  $x + y = c$ , or  $x + y = -c$ . These two straight lines.

22.  $r \cos(\theta - a) = a$ . A straight line. [See Art. 88.]

23. If  $b(y - m_1x)(y - m_2x) \equiv ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2$ ,

then  $m_1 + m_2 = -\frac{2h}{b}$ , and  $m_1m_2 = \frac{a}{b}$ .

The lines at right angles to  $y - m_1x = 0$  and  $y - m_2x = 0$  are  $(m_1y + x)(m_2y + x) = 0$ ,

or  $m_1 \cdot m_2y^2 + (m_1 + m_2)xy + x^2 = 0$ ,

i.e.  $\frac{a}{b} \cdot y^2 - \frac{2h}{b} \cdot xy + x^2 = 0$ , i.e.  $ay^2 - 2hxy + bx^2 = 0$ .

24. The bisectors of the angles between  $x^2 - 2pxy - y^2 = 0$  are, (Art. 112),

$$\frac{x^2 - y^2}{2} = \frac{xy}{-p}, \text{ or } px^2 + 2xy - py^2 = 0.$$

If these are coincident with  $x^2 - 2qxy - y^2 = 0$ , then

$$\frac{p}{1} = \frac{2}{-2q}; \quad \therefore pq = -1.$$

25. The bisectors of the angles between the first pair are, (Art. 112),

$$\frac{x^2 - y^2}{a^2 - b^2} = \frac{xy}{h(a+b)}, \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \frac{x^2 - y^2}{a - b} = \frac{xy}{h},$$

which are also the bisectors between the second pair. Hence etc.

Let either of these bisectors be  $OQ$  and let the first pair be  $OA, OA'$  and the second pair  $OB, OB'$ . We then have  $\angle A'OQ = \angle QOA$  and  $\angle B'OQ = \angle QOB$ .  $\therefore$  by subtraction,  $\angle B'OA' = \angle AOB$ .

26. The angles between the two pairs of lines have the same bisectors. (Art. 112.)

27. Let  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 \equiv b(y - px)(y - mx)$ ,  
and  $a'x^2 + 2h'xy + b'y^2 \equiv b(y - px)\left(y + \frac{1}{m}x\right)$ .

Then  $p + m = -\frac{2h}{b}, \dots\dots$ (i)  $p - \frac{1}{m} = -\frac{2h'}{b'}, \dots\dots$ (iii)

$$pm = \frac{a}{b}, \dots\dots$$
(ii)  $\frac{p}{m} = -\frac{a'}{b'} \dots\dots$ (iv)

(ii) and (iv) give  $p^2 = -\frac{aa'}{bb'}$ , so that  $p = \frac{\sqrt{-aba'b'}}{bb'}$ ; and (ii) then gives

$$m = \frac{ab'}{\sqrt{-aba'b'}} = -\frac{\sqrt{-aba'b'}}{a'b}$$

(i) then gives  $-\frac{2h}{b} = \sqrt{-aba'b'} \left( \frac{1}{bb'} - \frac{1}{a'b} \right)$ ,

so that  $\frac{2ha'b'}{b' - a'} = \sqrt{-aba'b'}$ .

Finally, from (iii),

$$-\frac{2h'}{b'} = \sqrt{-aba'b'} \left[ \frac{1}{bb'} - \frac{1}{ab'} \right],$$

i.e.  $\frac{2h'ab}{b - a} = \sqrt{-aba'b'}$ .

28. Let  $y - m_1x = 0$ , and  $y - m_2x = 0$  be the two lines, so that  $m_1 + m_2 = -\frac{2h}{b}$ ,  $m_1m_2 = \frac{a}{b}$ . If these be inclined at  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$  to the axis of  $x$  and the bisector at  $\theta$ , then, as in Art. 112,  $2\theta = \theta_1 + \theta_2$  or  $\pi + \theta_1 + \theta_2$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \tan 2\theta = \tan (\theta_1 + \theta_2) &= \frac{\frac{m_1 \sin \omega}{1 + m_1 \cos \omega} + \frac{m_2 \sin \omega}{1 + m_2 \cos \omega}}{1 - \frac{m_1 \sin \omega}{1 + m_2 \cos \omega} \cdot \frac{m_2 \sin \omega}{1 + m_2 \cos \omega}} \\ &= \frac{\sin \omega \{(m_1 + m_2) + 2m_1m_2 \cos \omega\}}{1 + (m_1 + m_2) \cos \omega + m_1m_2 (\cos^2 \omega - \sin^2 \omega)} \\ &= \frac{\sin \omega \{-2h + 2a \cos \omega\}}{b - 2h \cos \omega + a (\cos^2 \omega - \sin^2 \omega)}. \end{aligned}$$

If  $y = mx$  be the equation of a bisector, then

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{m \sin \omega}{1 + m \cos \omega} &= \tan \theta ; \\ \frac{2 \frac{y}{x} \sin \omega}{1 + \frac{y}{x} \cos \omega} &= \frac{2y \sin \omega (x + y \cos \omega)}{(x + y \cos \omega)^2 - y^2 \sin^2 \omega} \\ \therefore \tan 2\theta &= \frac{\frac{y^2}{x^2} \sin^2 \omega}{1 - \frac{y^2}{x^2} \cos^2 \omega} = \frac{2y \sin \omega (x + y \cos \omega)}{(x + y \cos \omega)^2 - y^2 \sin^2 \omega}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the equation becomes

$$\frac{y(x + y \cos \omega)}{(x + y \cos \omega)^2 - y^2 \sin^2 \omega} = \frac{a \cos \omega - h}{b - 2h \cos \omega + a (\cos^2 \omega - \sin^2 \omega)},$$

or  $h(x^2 - y^2) + (b - a)xy = (ax^2 - by^2) \cos \omega.$

29. Let  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 \equiv b(y - m_1x)(y - m_2x)$ , so that

$$m_1 + m_2 = -\frac{2h}{b}, \quad \text{and} \quad m_1m_2 = \frac{a}{b}.$$

Also  $\tan \theta_1 = \frac{m_1 \sin \omega}{1 + m_1 \cos \omega}$  and  $\tan \theta_2 = \frac{m_2 \sin \omega}{1 + m_2 \cos \omega}$ .

If  $\theta_1 + \theta_2 = \pi$ , then  $\tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2 = 0$ .

$$\therefore \frac{m_1}{1 + m_1 \cos \omega} + \frac{m_2}{1 + m_2 \cos \omega} = 0.$$

$$\therefore m_1 + m_2 + 2m_1m_2 \cos \omega = 0. \quad \therefore h = a \cos \omega.$$

**30.** If

$$x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2 \cos 2\omega \equiv \cos 2\omega (y - m_1x)(y - m_2x),$$

then  $m_1 + m_2 = -\frac{2 \cos \omega}{\cos 2\omega}$ , and  $m_1m_2 = \frac{1}{\cos 2\omega}$ .

$$\therefore 1 + (m_1 + m_2) \cos \omega + m_1m_2 = \frac{\cos 2\omega - 2 \cos^2 \omega + 1}{\cos 2\omega} = 0.$$

$\therefore$  the lines are perpendicular. (Art. 93.)

**31.** Transforming to polars, the equation becomes

$$r^3 \cos 3(\theta + a) + 3ar^2 - 4a^2 = 0. \quad \therefore \cos 3(\theta + a) = 4 \frac{a^2}{r^3} - 3 \frac{a}{r}.$$

This is satisfied by  $\frac{a}{r} = \cos(\theta + a)$ ,  $\frac{a}{r} = \cos\left(\theta + a - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$ , and  $\frac{a}{r} = \cos\left(\theta + a - \frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$ . These equations are

$$x \cos(-a) + y \sin(-a) = a, \quad x \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{3} - a\right) + y \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{3} - a\right) = a,$$

$$\text{and} \quad x \cos\left(\frac{4\pi}{3} - a\right) + y \sin\left(\frac{4\pi}{3} - a\right) = a.$$

The equation therefore represents these three straight lines which are inclined at  $60^\circ$  to each other.

By Ex. x. 20,

$$\text{the area of the } \triangle = \frac{a^2}{2} \cdot \frac{(3 \sin 120^\circ)^2}{\sin^2 120^\circ} = 3 \sqrt{3} \cdot a^2.$$

**32.** The terms of the second degree must be a perfect square;  $\therefore h^2 = ab$ . If

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c \equiv (\sqrt{ax} + \sqrt{by} + \lambda_1)(\sqrt{ax} + \sqrt{by} + \lambda_2),$$

then  $\sqrt{a}(\lambda_1 + \lambda_2) = 2g$ ;  $\sqrt{b}(\lambda_1 + \lambda_2) = 2f$ . Whence  $af^2 = bg^2$ .

Also  $\lambda_1\lambda_2 = c$ .  $\therefore (\lambda_1 - \lambda_2)^2 = \frac{4(g^2 - ac)}{a}$ .

The distance between the two lines

= difference of perpendiculars upon them from the origin

$$= \frac{\lambda_1 - \lambda_2}{\sqrt{a+b}} = 2 \sqrt{\frac{g^2 - ac}{a(a+b)}}.$$

**33.** Since the equation represents a pair of straight lines,

$$\therefore abc + 2fgh - af^2 - bg^2 - ch^2 = 0. \dots\dots(i)$$

If we put  $x = 0$  in the equation of the third pair of lines, we must obtain  $by^2 + 2fy + c = 0$ , and if we put  $y = 0$  in the equation of the third pair of lines, we must obtain

$$ax^2 + 2gx + c = 0,$$

since they cut the axes in the same points as the given lines.

Therefore the equation of the third pair of lines must be of the form

$$ax^2 + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c + 2\lambda xy = 0. \dots\dots(ii)$$

Since this is the equation of a pair of lines

$$\therefore abc + 2fg\lambda - af^2 - bg^2 - c\lambda^2 = 0. \dots\dots(iii)$$

Subtracting (iii) from (i) and dividing by  $\lambda - h$ , we have

$$2fg = c(h + \lambda). \therefore \lambda = \frac{2fg}{c} - h.$$

Substituting for  $\lambda$  in (ii), we have the required equation.

**34.** By Art. 117, the two lines are

$$ax + \{h - \sqrt{h^2 - ab}\}y + A = 0, \text{ and } ax + \{h + \sqrt{h^2 - ab}\}y + B = 0,$$

where  $A + B = 2g$ , and  $A - B = \frac{2fa - 2gh}{\sqrt{h^2 - ab}}$ .

By adding,  $ax + hy + g = 0$ ;

By subtracting,  $y = \frac{fa - gh}{h^2 - ab}$ , whence  $x = \frac{bg - fh}{h^2 - ab}$ .



$$\begin{aligned}
 x^2 + y^2 &= \frac{a(af^2 - 2gfh) + b(bg^2 - 2fgh) + h^2(g^2 + f^2)}{(h^2 - ab)^2} \\
 &= \frac{a(abc - bg^2 - ch^2) + b(abc - af^2 - ch^2) + h^2(g^2 + f^2)}{(h^2 - ab)^2}, \\
 &\quad \text{by using the condition of Art. 116,} \\
 &= \frac{(g^2 + f^2)(h^2 - ab) - (ac + bc)(h^2 - ab)}{(h^2 - ab)^2} = \frac{g^2 + f^2 - ac - bc}{h^2 - ab}.
 \end{aligned}$$

35. Let  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 \equiv b(y - m_1x)(y - m_2x)$ , so that

$$m_1 + m_2 = -\frac{2h}{b} \quad \text{and} \quad m_1m_2 = \frac{a}{b}. \quad \dots\dots\dots (i)$$

The line  $lx + my = 1$  cuts  $y - m_1x = 0$ , where

$$x = \frac{1}{l + mm_1}, \quad y = \frac{m_1}{l + mm_1}.$$

The equation of the line through this point perpendicular to  $y - m_2x = 0$ , is

$$(l + mm_1)x - 1 + m_2\{y(l + mm_1) - m_1\} = 0. \quad \dots (ii)$$

The orthocentre lies on this line and also on the line through the origin perpendicular to  $lx + my = 1$ , viz.

$$\frac{x}{l} = \frac{y}{m} = \lambda. \quad \dots\dots\dots (iii)$$

For the orthocentre we have thus to solve (ii) and (iii).

From (iii) put  $x = l\lambda$ ,  $y = m\lambda$  in (ii).

$$\therefore \lambda \{l^2 + lm(m_1 + m_2) + m^2 \cdot m_1m_2\} = 1 + m_1m_2.$$

Hence, by (i), 
$$\lambda = \frac{a + b}{bl^2 - 2hlm + am^2}.$$

36. If the straight line  $lx + my = 1$  of the previous article passes through the fixed point  $(h, k)$ , we have

$$lh + mk = 1. \quad \dots\dots\dots (1)$$

We must eliminate  $l$  and  $m$  between this and

$$\frac{x'}{l} = \frac{y'}{m} = \frac{a + b}{am^2 - 2hlm + bl^2}. \quad \dots\dots\dots (2)$$

The first two of these give

$$\frac{x'}{l} = \frac{y'}{m} = \frac{hx' + ky'}{hl + km} = hx' + ky', \text{ by (1).}$$

Substituting for  $l, m$  in (2), we have

$$hx' + ky' = \frac{(a+b)(hx' + ky')^2}{ay'^2 - 2hx'y' + bx'^2}, \text{ so that the locus required is}$$

$$bx^2 - 2hxy + ay^2 = (a+b)(hx + ky).$$

**37.** Eliminating  $x$  between the two equations, we have

$$y^2(b \cos^2 \alpha - 2h \cos \alpha \sin \alpha + a \sin^2 \alpha)$$

$$- 2yp(a \sin \alpha - h \cos \alpha) + ap^2 = 0;$$

$$\therefore y_1 + y_2 = \frac{2p(a \sin \alpha - h \cos \alpha)}{(b \cos^2 \alpha - 2h \cos \alpha \sin \alpha + a \sin^2 \alpha)},$$

and

$$y_1 y_2 = \frac{ap^2}{b \cos^2 \alpha - 2h \sin \alpha \cos \alpha + a \sin^2 \alpha}.$$

$$\text{Whence } (y_1 - y_2)^2 = \frac{4p^2 \cos^2 \alpha (h^2 - ab)}{\{b \cos^2 \alpha - 2h \cos \alpha \sin \alpha + a \sin^2 \alpha\}^2}.$$

$$\text{Similarly } (x_1 - x_2)^2 = \frac{4p^2 \sin^2 \alpha (h^2 - ab)}{(b \cos^2 \alpha - 2h \cos \alpha \sin \alpha + a \sin^2 \alpha)^2}.$$

$$\therefore \sqrt{(x_1 - x_2)^2 + (y_1 - y_2)^2} = \frac{2p \sqrt{h^2 - ab}}{b \cos^2 \alpha - 2h \cos \alpha \sin \alpha + a \sin^2 \alpha}.$$

For the area of the triangle, multiply this expression by  $\frac{p}{2}$ .

**38.** Let  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 \equiv b(y - m_1 x)(y - m_2 x)$ , so that

$$m_1 + m_2 = -\frac{2h}{b}, \quad m_1 m_2 = \frac{a}{b}, \quad \text{and } m_1^2 + m_2^2 = \frac{4h^2 - 2ab}{b^2}.$$

The product of perpendiculars from  $(x', y')$

$$= \frac{(y' - m_1 x')(y' - m_2 x')}{\sqrt{(1 + m_1^2)(1 + m_2^2)}}$$

$$= \frac{ax'^2 + 2hx'y' + by'^2}{b \sqrt{1 + m_1^2 + m_2^2 + m_1^2 m_2^2}} = \frac{ax'^2 + 2hx'y' + by'^2}{\sqrt{(a-b)^2 + 4h^2}}.$$

39. If  $\frac{y}{x} = m$  is one root of the equation,  $\frac{y}{x} = -\frac{1}{m}$  must be another.

$$\therefore am^4 + bm^3 + cm^2 + dm + e = 0, \dots\dots\dots (i)$$

and  $em^4 - dm^3 + cm^2 - bm + a = 0. \dots\dots\dots (ii)$

Subtracting,  $(a - e)m^4 - (a - e) + (b + d)m(m^2 + 1) = 0$  ;

$$\therefore (a - e)m^2 + (b + d)m - (a - e) = 0. \dots\dots (iii)$$

Multiply (i) by  $e$ , (ii) by  $a$ , and subtract ;

$$\therefore (be + ad)m^3 + c(e - a)m^2 + (de + ab)m + e^2 - a^2 = 0. (iv)$$

Multiply (iii) by  $e + a$  and subtract from (iv).

$$\therefore (be + ad)m^2 + (e - a)(c + a + e)m - (ad + be) = 0. \dots\dots(v)$$

Eliminating  $m$  between (iii) and (v),

$$(b + d)(ad + be) + (e - a)^2(a + c + e) = 0.$$

**Aliter.** Since two of the straight lines are at right angles, their equation must be of the form

$$x^2 + \lambda xy - y^2 = 0. \quad (\text{Art. 111.})$$

The other factor is a quadratic which must be

$$ex^2 + \mu xy - ay^2.$$

Hence the equation given must be equivalent to

$$(x^2 + \lambda xy - y^2)(ex^2 + \mu xy - ay^2) = 0.$$

Comparing coefficients, we have

$$d = \lambda e + \mu, \dots\dots\dots (1)$$

$$c = -e - a + \lambda\mu, \dots\dots\dots (2)$$

and  $b = -\lambda a - \mu. \dots\dots\dots (3)$

(1) and (3) give  $\lambda = -\frac{b + d}{a - e}$  and  $\mu = \frac{ad + be}{a - e}$ , and then

$$(2) \text{ gives } a + c + e = -\frac{(b + d)(ad + be)}{(a - e)^2}.$$

40. The bisectors of the angles between the lines

$$lx^2 + 2mxy + ny^2 = 0 \text{ are } (\text{Art. 112})$$

$$mx^2 - (l - n)xy - my^2 = 0.$$

Hence if  $ax^4 + bx^3y + cx^2y^2 + dxy^3 + ay^4 = 0$ ,  
 and  $(lx^2 + 2mxy + ny^2) [mx^2 - (l-n)xy - my^2] = 0$ ,  
 represent the same four lines, then

$$\frac{ml}{a} = \frac{2m^2 - l^2 + ln}{b} = \frac{3m(n-l)}{c} = \frac{-2m^2 - ln + n^2}{d} = \frac{-mn}{a}.$$

$$\therefore l = -n. \quad \text{Hence } \frac{2m^2 - 2l^2}{b} = \frac{-2m^2 + 2l^2}{d};$$

$$\therefore b + d = 0, \text{ and } \frac{l}{a} = \frac{-6l}{c}; \quad \therefore c + 6a = 0.$$

41. Let the straight lines be

$$(y - m_1x)(y - m_2x)(y - m_3x) = 0,$$

so that  $m_1 + m_2 + m_3 = -\frac{c}{d}, \dots\dots\dots (1)$

$$m_1m_2 + m_2m_3 + m_3m_1 = \frac{b}{d}, \dots\dots\dots (2)$$

and  $m_1m_2m_3 = -\frac{a}{d}. \dots\dots\dots (3)$

By the question,  $2 \tan^{-1} m_2 = \tan^{-1} m_1 + \tan^{-1} m_3$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{2m_2}{1 - m_2^2} = \frac{m_1 + m_3}{1 - m_1m_3} = \frac{-c - dm_2}{d - dm_1m_3}, \text{ from (1).}$$

$$\therefore 2m_2d + 2a = -c + cm_2^2 - dm_2 + dm_2^3,$$

i.e.  $dm_2^3 + cm_2^2 - 3dm_2 - (c + 2a) = 0. \dots\dots\dots (4)$

But, since  $y = m_2x$  satisfies the given equation,

$$\therefore dm_2^3 + cm_2^2 + bm_2 + a = 0. \dots\dots\dots (5)$$

Subtracting (4) from (5), we have  $m_2 = -\frac{3a + c}{b + 3d}.$

Substituting this value in (5), we have the given condition.

## Chapter 7

# TRANSFORMATION OF COORDINATES

**127.** It is sometimes found desirable in the discussion of problems to alter the origin and axes of coordinates, either by altering the origin without alteration of the direction of the axes, or by altering the directions of the axes and keeping the origin unchanged, or by altering the origin and also the directions of the axes. The latter case is merely a combination of the first two. Either of these processes is called a transformation of coordinates.

We proceed to establish the fundamental formulæ for such transformation of coordinates.

**128.** *To alter the origin of coordinates without altering the directions of the axes.*

Let  $OX$  and  $OY$  be the original axes and let the new axes, parallel to the original, be

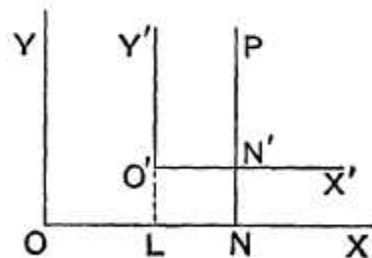
$O'X'$  and  $O'Y'$ .

Let the coordinates of the new origin  $O'$ , referred to the original axes be  $h$  and  $k$ , so that, if  $O'L$  be perpendicular to  $OX$ , we have

$$OL = h \text{ and } LO' = k.$$

Let  $P$  be any point in the plane of the paper, and let its coordinates, referred to the original axes, be  $x$  and  $y$ , and referred to the new axes let them be  $x'$  and  $y'$ .

Draw  $PN$  perpendicular to  $OX$  to meet  $O'X'$  in  $N'$ .



Then

$$ON = x, \quad NP = y, \quad O'N' = x', \quad \text{and} \quad N'P = y'.$$

We therefore have

$$x = ON = OL + O'N' = h + x',$$

and 
$$y = NP = LO' + N'P = k + y'.$$

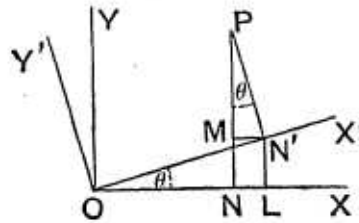
The origin is therefore transferred to the point  $(h, k)$  when we substitute for the coordinates  $x$  and  $y$  the quantities

$$x' + h \quad \text{and} \quad y' + k.$$

The above article is true whether the axes be oblique or rectangular.

**129.** *To change the direction of the axes of coordinates, without changing the origin, both systems of coordinates being rectangular.*

Let  $OX$  and  $OY$  be the original system of axes and  $OX'$  and  $OY'$  the new system, and let the angle,  $XOX'$ , through which the axes are turned be called  $\theta$ .



Take any point  $P$  in the plane of the paper.

Draw  $PN$  and  $PN'$  perpendicular to  $OX$  and  $OX'$ , and also  $N'L$  and  $N'M$  perpendicular to  $OX$  and  $PN$ .

If the coordinates of  $P$ , referred to the original axes, be  $x$  and  $y$ , and, referred to the new axes, be  $x'$  and  $y'$ , we have

$$ON = x, \quad NP = y, \quad ON' = x', \quad \text{and} \quad N'P = y'.$$

The angle

$$\angle MPN' = 90^\circ - \angle MN'P = \angle MN'O = \angle XOX' = \theta.$$

We then have

$$\begin{aligned} x = ON &= OL - MN' = ON' \cos \theta - N'P \sin \theta \\ &= x' \cos \theta - y' \sin \theta \dots\dots\dots (1), \end{aligned}$$

and 
$$\begin{aligned} y = NP &= LN' + MP = ON' \sin \theta + N'P \cos \theta \\ &= x' \sin \theta + y' \cos \theta \dots\dots\dots (2). \end{aligned}$$

If therefore in any equation we wish to turn the axes, being rectangular, through an angle  $\theta$  we must substitute

$$\mathbf{x' \cos \theta - y' \sin \theta} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{x' \sin \theta + y' \cos \theta}$$

for  $x$  and  $y$ .

When we have both to change the origin, and also the direction of the axes, the transformation is clearly obtained by combining the results of the previous articles.

If the origin is to be transformed to the point  $(h, k)$  and the axes to be turned through an angle  $\theta$ , we have to substitute

$$h + x' \cos \theta - y' \sin \theta \quad \text{and} \quad k + x' \sin \theta + y' \cos \theta$$

for  $x$  and  $y$  respectively.

The student, who is acquainted with the theory of projection of straight lines, will see that equations (1) and (2) express the fact that the projections of  $OP$  on  $OX$  and  $OY$  are respectively equal to the sum of the projections of  $ON'$  and  $N'P$  on the same two lines.

**130. Ex. 1.** Transform to parallel axes through the point  $(-2, 3)$  the equation

$$2x^2 + 4xy + 5y^2 - 4x - 22y + 7 = 0.$$

We substitute  $x = x' - 2$  and  $y = y' + 3$ , and the equation becomes

$$2(x' - 2)^2 + 4(x' - 2)(y' + 3) + 5(y' + 3)^2 - 4(x' - 2) - 22(y' + 3) + 7 = 0,$$

*i.e.* 
$$2x'^2 + 4x'y' + 5y'^2 - 22 = 0.$$

**Ex. 2.** Transform to axes inclined at  $30^\circ$  to the original axes the equation

$$x^2 + 2\sqrt{3}xy - y^2 = 2a^2.$$

For  $x$  and  $y$  we have to substitute

$$x' \cos 30^\circ - y' \sin 30^\circ \quad \text{and} \quad x' \sin 30^\circ + y' \cos 30^\circ,$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{x'\sqrt{3} - y'}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{x' + y'\sqrt{3}}{2}.$$

The equation then becomes

$$(x'\sqrt{3} - y')^2 + 2\sqrt{3}(x'\sqrt{3} - y')(x' + y'\sqrt{3}) - (x' + y'\sqrt{3})^2 = 8a^2,$$

*i.e.* 
$$x'^2 - y'^2 = a^2.$$

## EXAMPLES XV

1. Transform to parallel axes through the point  $(1, -2)$  the equations

$$(1) \quad y^2 - 4x + 4y + 8 = 0,$$

and  $(2) \quad 2x^2 + y^2 - 4x + 4y = 0.$

2. What does the equation

$$(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = c^2$$

become when it is transferred to parallel axes through

(1) the point  $(a - c, b),$

(2) the point  $(a, b - c)?$

3. What does the equation

$$(a - b)(x^2 + y^2) - 2abx = 0$$

become if the origin be moved to the point  $\left(\frac{ab}{a - b}, 0\right)?$

4. Transform to axes inclined at  $45^\circ$  to the original axes the equations

$$(1) \quad x^2 - y^2 = a^2,$$

$$(2) \quad 17x^2 - 16xy + 17y^2 = 225,$$

and  $(3) \quad y^4 + x^4 + 6x^2y^2 = 2.$

5. Transform to axes inclined at an angle  $\alpha$  to the original axes the equations

$$(1) \quad x^2 + y^2 = r^2,$$

and  $(2) \quad x^2 + 2xy \tan 2\alpha - y^2 = a^2.$

6. If the axes be turned through an angle  $\tan^{-1} 2$ , what does the equation  $4xy - 3x^2 = a^2$  become?

7. By transforming to parallel axes through a properly chosen point  $(h, k)$ , prove that the equation

$$12x^2 - 10xy + 2y^2 + 11x - 5y + 2 = 0$$

can be reduced to one containing only terms of the second degree.

8. Find the angle through which the axes may be turned so that the equation

$$Ax + By + C = 0$$

may be reduced to the form  $x = \text{constant}$ , and determine the value of this constant.

## ANSWERS

1. (1)  $y'^2 = 4x'$ ; (2)  $2x'^2 + y'^2 = 6.$
2. (1)  $x'^2 + y'^2 = 2cx'$ ; (2)  $x'^2 + y'^2 = 2cy'.$
3.  $(a - b)^2(x'^2 + y'^2) = a^2b^2.$



4. (1)  $2x'y' + a^2 = 0$ ;  $9x'^2 + 25y'^2 = 225$ ;  $x'^4 + y'^4 = 1$ .  
 5.  $x'^2 + y'^2 = r^2$ ;  $x'^2 - y'^2 = a^2 \cos 2a$ .  
 6.  $x'^2 - 4y'^2 = a^2$ .  
 8.  $\tan^{-1} \frac{B}{A}$ ;  $-C \div \sqrt{A^2 + B^2}$ .

### SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. (i)  $(y' - 2)^2 - 4(x' + 1) + 4(y' - 2) + 8 = 0$ , *i.e.*  $y'^2 = 4x'$ .  
 (ii)  $2(x' + 1)^2 + (y' - 2)^2 - 4(x' + 1) + 4(y' - 2) = 0$ ,  
*i.e.*  $2x'^2 + y'^2 = 6$ .
2. (1)  $(x' + a - c - a)^2 + (y' + b - b)^2 = c^2$ ,  
*i.e.*  $x'^2 + y'^2 = 2cx'$ .  
 (2)  $(x' + a - a)^2 + (y' + b - c - b)^2 = c^2$ ,  
*i.e.*  $x'^2 + y'^2 = 2cy'$ .
3.  $(a - b) \left\{ \left( x' + \frac{ab}{a - b} \right)^2 + y'^2 \right\} - 2ab \left( x' + \frac{ab}{a - b} \right) = 0$ ,  
*i.e.*  $(a - b)^2 (x'^2 + y'^2) = a^2 b^2$ .
4. Substitute  $\frac{x' - y'}{\sqrt{2}}$  for  $x$ , and  $\frac{x' + y'}{\sqrt{2}}$  for  $y$ .  
 (i)  $(x' - y')^2 - (x' + y')^2 = 2a^2$ , *i.e.*  $2x'y' + a^2 = 0$ .  
 (ii)  $17 \{ (x' - y')^2 + (x' + y')^2 \} - 16(x'^2 - y'^2) = 450$ ,  
*i.e.*  $9x'^2 + 25y'^2 = 225$ .  
 (iii)  $(x' - y')^4 + (x' + y')^4 + 2(x' - y')^2(x' + y')^2 + 4(x'^2 - y'^2)^2 = 8$ .  
 $\therefore \{ (x' - y')^2 + (x' + y')^2 \}^2 + 4(x'^2 - y'^2)^2 = 8$ ,  
*i.e.*  $4(x'^2 + y'^2)^2 + 4(x'^2 - y'^2)^2 = 8$ , *i.e.*  $x'^4 + y'^4 = 1$ .
5. (i)  $(x' \cos a - y' \sin a)^2 + (x' \sin a + y' \cos a)^2 = r^2$ ;  
 $\therefore x'^2 + y'^2 = r^2$ .  
 (ii)  $(x' \cos a - y' \sin a)^2 - (x' \sin a + y' \cos a)^2$   
 $+ 2(x' \cos a - y' \sin a)(x' \sin a + y' \cos a) \tan 2a = a^2$ ;  
 $\therefore (x'^2 - y'^2) \cos 2a - 2x'y' \sin 2a$   
 $+ \{ (x'^2 - y'^2) \sin 2a + 2x'y' \cos 2a \} \tan 2a = a^2$ ;  
 $\therefore x'^2 - y'^2 = a^2 \cos 2a$ .

$$6. \quad \tan^{-1} 2 = \sin^{-1} \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}} = \cos^{-1} \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}};$$

$\therefore$  for  $x$  substitute  $\frac{x' - 2y'}{\sqrt{5}}$ ; for  $y$  put  $\frac{2x' + y'}{\sqrt{5}}$ ; (Art. 129)

$$\therefore 4(x' - 2y')(2x' + y') - 3(x' - 2y')^2 = 5a^2, \text{ i.e. } x'^2 - 4y'^2 = a^2.$$

7. On substituting  $x' + h$  for  $x$  and  $y' + k$  for  $y$ , the equation becomes

$$12(x' + h)^2 - 10(x' + h)(y' + k) + 2(y' + k)^2 \\ + 11(x' + h) - 5(y' + k) + 2 = 0, \\ \text{or } 12x'^2 - 10x'y' + 2y'^2 + 2x'(12h - 5k + \frac{11}{2}) + 2y'(-5h + 2k - \frac{5}{2}) \\ + 12h^2 - 10hk + 2k^2 + 11h - 5k + 2 = 0. \dots\dots(i)$$

There will be no terms of the first degree in  $x'$  and  $y'$  if  $h$  and  $k$  be so chosen that

$$12h - 5k + \frac{11}{2} = 0, \text{ and } -5h + 2k - \frac{5}{2} = 0, \\ \text{i.e. if } h = -\frac{3}{2}, k = -\frac{5}{2}.$$

On substituting these values in (1), the equation reduces to

$$12x'^2 - 10x'y' + 2y'^2 = 0.$$

8. If the axes be turned through an angle  $\theta$  the equation becomes

$$A(x' \cos \theta - y' \sin \theta) + B(x' \sin \theta + y' \cos \theta) + C = 0, \\ \text{or } (A \cos \theta + B \sin \theta)x' + (B \cos \theta - A \sin \theta)y' + C = 0.$$

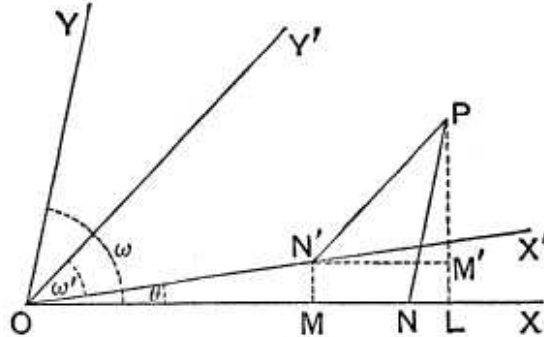
Hence we must have  $B \cos \theta - A \sin \theta = 0$ ;  $\therefore \tan \theta = \frac{B}{A}$ ,

$$\text{and the equation becomes } \frac{A^2 + B^2}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}x' + C = 0;$$

$$\therefore \text{ the constant} = -\frac{C}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}.$$

**131.** The general proposition, which is given in the next article, on the transformation from one set of oblique axes to any other set of oblique axes is of very little importance and is hardly ever required.

**\*132.** *To change from one set of axes, inclined at an angle  $\omega$ , to another set, inclined at an angle  $\omega'$ , the origin remaining unaltered.*



Let  $OX$  and  $OY$  be the original axes,  $OX'$  and  $OY'$  the new axes, and let the angle  $XOX'$  be  $\theta$ .

Take any point  $P$  in the plane of the paper.

Draw  $PN$  and  $PN'$  parallel to  $OY$  and  $OY'$  to meet  $OX$  and  $OX'$  respectively in  $N$  and  $N'$ ,  $PL$  perpendicular to  $OX$ , and  $N'M$  and  $N'M'$  perpendicular to  $OL$  and  $LP$ .

Now

$$\angle PNL = \angle YOX = \omega, \text{ and } \angle PN'M' = \angle Y'OX = \omega' + \theta.$$

Hence if

$$ON = x, \quad NP = y, \quad ON' = x', \quad \text{and } N'P = y',$$

we have 
$$y \sin \omega = NP \sin \omega = LP = MN' + M'P$$

$$= ON' \sin \theta + N'P \sin (\omega' + \theta),$$

so that 
$$y \sin \omega = x' \sin \theta + y' \sin (\omega' + \theta) \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

Also

$$x + y \cos \omega = ON + NL = OL = OM + N'M'$$

$$= x' \cos \theta + y' \cos (\omega' + \theta) \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

Multiplying (2) by  $\sin \omega$ , (1) by  $\cos \omega$ , and subtracting, we have

$$x \sin \omega = x' \sin (\omega - \theta) + y' \sin (\omega - \omega' - \theta) \dots \dots (3).$$

[This equation (3) may also be obtained by drawing a perpendicular from  $P$  upon  $OY$  and proceeding as for equation (1).]

The equations (1) and (3) give the proper substitutions for the change of axes in the general case.

As in Art. 130 the equations (1) and (2) may be obtained by equating the projections of  $OP$  and of  $ON'$  and  $N'P$  on  $OX$  and a straight line perpendicular to  $OX$ .

**\*133.** *Particular cases of the preceding article.*

(1) Suppose we wish to transfer our axes from a rectangular pair to one inclined at an angle  $\omega'$ . In this case  $\omega$  is  $90^\circ$ , and the formulæ of the preceding article become

$$x = x' \cos \theta + y' \cos (\omega' + \theta),$$

and

$$y = x' \sin \theta + y' \sin (\omega' + \theta).$$

(2) Suppose the transference is to be from oblique axes, inclined at  $\omega$ , to rectangular axes. In this case  $\omega'$  is  $90^\circ$ , and our formulæ become

$$x \sin \omega = x' \sin (\omega - \theta) - y' \cos (\omega - \theta),$$

and

$$y \sin \omega = x' \sin \theta + y' \cos \theta.$$

These particular formulæ may easily be proved independently, by drawing the corresponding figures.

**Ex.** Transform the equation  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  from rectangular axes to axes inclined at an angle  $2\alpha$ , the new axis of  $x$  being inclined at an angle  $-a$  to the old axes and  $\sin a$  being equal to  $\frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}$ .

Here  $\theta = -a$  and  $\omega' = 2a$ , so that the formulæ of transformation (1) become

$$x = (x' + y') \cos a \text{ and } y = (y' - x') \sin a.$$

Since  $\sin a = \frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}$ , we have  $\cos a = \frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}$ , and hence the given equation becomes

$$\frac{(x' + y')^2}{a^2 + b^2} - \frac{(y' - x')^2}{a^2 + b^2} = 1,$$

i.e.

$$x'y' = \frac{1}{4} (a^2 + b^2).$$

**\*134.** *The degree of an equation is unchanged by any transformation of coordinates.*

For the most general form of transformation is found by combining together Arts. 128 and 132. Hence the most general formulæ of transformation are

$$x = h + x' \frac{\sin (\omega - \theta)}{\sin \omega} + y' \frac{\sin (\omega - \omega' - \theta)}{\sin \omega},$$

and

$$y = k + x' \frac{\sin \theta}{\sin \omega} + y' \frac{\sin (\omega' + \theta)}{\sin \omega}.$$

For  $x$  and  $y$  we have therefore to substitute expressions in  $x'$  and  $y'$  of the first degree, so that by this substitution the degree of the equation cannot be raised.

Neither can, by this substitution, the degree be lowered. For, if it could, then, by transforming back again, the degree would be raised and this we have just shewn to be impossible.

**\*135.** *If by any change of axes, without change of origin, the quantity  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2$  become*

$$a'x'^2 + 2h'x'y' + b'y'^2,$$

*the axes in each case being rectangular, to prove that*

$$a + b = a' + b', \text{ and } ab - h^2 = a'b' - h'^2.$$

By Art. 129, the new axis of  $x$  being inclined at an angle  $\theta$  to the old axis, we have to substitute

$$x' \cos \theta - y' \sin \theta \text{ and } x' \sin \theta + y' \cos \theta$$

for  $x$  and  $y$  respectively.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence } ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 &= a(x' \cos \theta - y' \sin \theta)^2 + 2h(x' \cos \theta - y' \sin \theta)(x' \sin \theta + y' \cos \theta) \\ &\quad + b(x' \sin \theta + y' \cos \theta)^2 \\ &= x'^2[a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta] \\ &\quad + 2x'y'[-a \cos \theta \sin \theta + h(\cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta) + b \cos \theta \sin \theta] \\ &\quad + y'^2[a \sin^2 \theta - 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \cos^2 \theta]. \end{aligned}$$

We then have

$$\begin{aligned} a' &= a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta \\ &= \frac{1}{2}[(a + b) + (a - b) \cos 2\theta + 2h \sin 2\theta] \dots \dots \dots (1), \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} b' &= a \sin^2 \theta - 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \cos^2 \theta \\ &= \frac{1}{2}[(a + b) - (a - b) \cos 2\theta - 2h \sin 2\theta] \dots \dots \dots (2), \end{aligned}$$

and 
$$\begin{aligned} h' &= -a \cos \theta \sin \theta + h(\cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta) + b \cos \theta \sin \theta \\ &= \frac{1}{2}[2h \cos 2\theta - (a - b) \sin 2\theta] \dots \dots \dots (3). \end{aligned}$$

By adding (1) and (2), we have  $a' + b' = a + b$ .

Also, by multiplying them, we have

$$4a'b' = (a + b)^2 - \{(a - b) \cos 2\theta + 2h \sin 2\theta\}^2.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence } 4a'b' - 4h'^2 &= (a + b)^2 - [\{2h \sin 2\theta + (a - b) \cos 2\theta\}^2 + \{2h \cos 2\theta - (a - b) \sin 2\theta\}^2] \\ &= (a + b)^2 - [(a - b)^2 + 4h^2] = 4ab - 4h^2, \end{aligned}$$

so that 
$$a'b' - h'^2 = ab - h^2.$$

**136.** *To find the angle through which the axes must be turned so that the expression  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2$  may become an expression in which there is no term involving  $x'y'$ .*

Assuming the work of the previous article the coefficient of  $x'y'$  vanishes if  $h'$  be zero, or, from equation (3), if

$$2h \cos 2\theta = (a - b) \sin 2\theta,$$

*i. e.* if 
$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a - b}.$$

The required angle is therefore

$$\frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{2h}{a - b} \right).$$

**\*137.** The proposition of Art. 135 is a particular case, when the axes are rectangular, of the following more general proposition.

*If by any change of axes, without change of origin, the quantity  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2$  becomes  $a'x'^2 + 2h'x'y' + b'y'^2$ , then*

$$\frac{a + b - 2h \cos \omega}{\sin^2 \omega} = \frac{a' + b' - 2h' \cos \omega'}{\sin^2 \omega'},$$

and 
$$\frac{ab - h^2}{\sin^2 \omega} = \frac{a'b' - h'^2}{\sin^2 \omega'},$$

$\omega$  and  $\omega'$  being the angles between the original and final pairs of axes.

Let the coordinates of any point  $P$ , referred to the original axes, be  $x$  and  $y$  and, referred to the final axes, let them be  $x'$  and  $y'$ .

By Art. 20 the square of the distance between  $P$  and the origin is  $x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2$ , referred to the original axes, and  $x'^2 + 2x'y' \cos \omega' + y'^2$ , referred to the final axes.

We therefore always have

$$x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2 = x'^2 + 2x'y' \cos \omega' + y'^2 \dots (1).$$

Also, by supposition, we have

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = a'x'^2 + 2h'x'y' + b'y'^2 \dots (2).$$

Multiplying (1) by  $\lambda$  and adding it to (2), we therefore have

$$\begin{aligned} x^2(a + \lambda) + 2xy(h + \lambda \cos \omega) + y^2(b + \lambda) \\ = x'^2(a' + \lambda) + 2x'y'(h' + \lambda \cos \omega') + y'^2(b' + \lambda) \dots (3). \end{aligned}$$

If then any value of  $\lambda$  makes the left-hand side of (3) a perfect square, the same value must make the right-hand side also a perfect square.

But the values of  $\lambda$  which make the left-hand a perfect square are given by the condition

$$(h + \lambda \cos \omega)^2 = (a + \lambda)(b + \lambda),$$

*i.e.* by

$$\lambda^2 (1 - \cos^2 \omega) + \lambda (a + b - 2h \cos \omega) + ab - h^2 = 0,$$

*i.e.* by 
$$\lambda^2 + \lambda \frac{a + b - 2h \cos \omega}{\sin^2 \omega} + \frac{ab - h^2}{\sin^2 \omega} = 0 \dots\dots\dots (4).$$

In a similar manner the values of  $\lambda$  which make the right-hand side of (3) a perfect square are given by the equation

$$\lambda^2 + \lambda \frac{a' + b' - 2h' \cos \omega'}{\sin^2 \omega'} + \frac{a'b' - h'^2}{\sin^2 \omega'} = 0 \dots\dots\dots (5).$$

Since the values of  $\lambda$  given by equation (4) are the same as the values of  $\lambda$  given by (5), the two equations (4) and (5) must be the same.

Hence we have

$$\frac{a + b - 2h \cos \omega}{\sin^2 \omega} = \frac{a' + b' - 2h' \cos \omega'}{\sin^2 \omega'},$$

and 
$$\frac{ab - h^2}{\sin^2 \omega} = \frac{a'b' - h'^2}{\sin^2 \omega'}.$$

**EXAMPLES XVI**

1. The equation to a straight line referred to axes inclined at 30° to one another is  $y = 2x + 1$ . Find its equation referred to axes inclined at 45°, the origin and axis of  $x$  being unchanged.
2. Transform the equation  $2x^2 + 3\sqrt{3}xy + 3y^2 = 2$  from axes inclined at 30° to rectangular axes, the axis of  $x$  remaining unchanged.
3. Transform the equation  $x^2 + xy + y^2 = 8$  from axes inclined at 60° to axes bisecting the angles between the original axes.
4. Transform the equation  $y^2 + 4y \cot \alpha - 4x = 0$  from rectangular axes to oblique axes meeting at an angle  $\alpha$ , the axis of  $x$  being kept the same.
5. If  $x$  and  $y$  be the coordinates of a point referred to a system of oblique axes, and  $x'$  and  $y'$  be its coordinates referred to another system of oblique axes with the same origin, and if the formulæ of transformation be

$$x = mx' + ny' \text{ and } y = m'x' + n'y',$$

prove that

$$\frac{m^2 + m'^2 - 1}{n^2 + n'^2 - 1} = \frac{mn'}{nn'}.$$

## ANSWERS

1.  $2x' - \sqrt{6}y' + 1 = 0.$       2.  $x'^2 + \sqrt{3}x'y' = 1.$       3.  $x'^2 + y'^2 = 8.$   
 4.  $y'^2 = 4x' \operatorname{cosec}^2 \alpha.$

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. In the formulae of Art. 132, put  $\omega = 30^\circ$ ,  $\omega' = 45^\circ$ ,  $\theta = 0$ .  
 For  $x$  and  $y$  we must substitute

$$\frac{x' \cdot \frac{1}{2} - y' \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3} - 1}{2\sqrt{2}}}{\frac{1}{2}} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{y' \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}}{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

- $\therefore$  the equation becomes  $\sqrt{2}y' = 2x' - y'(\sqrt{6} - \sqrt{2}) + 1$ ,  
 or  $2x' - \sqrt{6}y' + 1 = 0.$

2. In the formulae of Art. 135, put  $\omega = 30^\circ$ ,  $\omega' = 90^\circ$ ,  $\theta = 0$ .

For  $x$  and  $y$  we must substitute  $x' - y'\sqrt{3}$  and  $2y'$ ; and the equation becomes

$$2(x' - y'\sqrt{3})^2 + 6\sqrt{3}y'(x' - y'\sqrt{3}) + 12y'^2 = 2,$$

*i.e.*  $x'^2 + \sqrt{3} \cdot x'y' = 1.$

3. In the formulae of Art. 132, put  
 $\omega = 60^\circ$ ,  $\omega' = 90^\circ$ ,  $\theta = 30^\circ$ .

For  $x$  and  $y$  we must substitute

$$\frac{\frac{1}{2}x' - y' \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}}{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\frac{1}{2}x' + y' \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}}{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}}.$$

The equation then becomes

$$\left(\frac{x'}{\sqrt{3}} - y'\right)^2 + \left(\frac{x'}{\sqrt{3}} + y'\right)^2 + \left(\frac{x'}{\sqrt{3}} + y'\right)\left(\frac{x'}{\sqrt{3}} - y'\right) = 8,$$

*i.e.*  $x'^2 + y'^2 = 8.$



4. In the formulae of Art. 132, put  $\omega = 90^\circ$ ,  $\omega' = \alpha$ ,  $\theta = 0$ .

For  $x$  and  $y$  we must substitute  $x' + y' \cos \alpha$  and  $y' \sin \alpha$ ; and the equation becomes

$$y'^2 \sin^2 \alpha + 4y' \sin \alpha \cdot \cot \alpha - 4(x' + y' \cos \alpha) = 0,$$

or

$$y'^2 = 4x' \operatorname{cosec}^2 \alpha.$$

5. Let  $(x, y)$  and  $(x', y')$  be the coordinates of any point referred to each of the two sets of axes. Then the square of the distance of this point from the origin must be the same in each case.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore x^2 + y^2 + 2x'y' \cos \omega' &= x'^2 + y'^2 + 2x'y' \cos \omega \\ &= (mx' + ny')^2 + (m'x' + n'y')^2 + 2(mx' + ny')(m'x' + n'y') \cos \omega. \end{aligned}$$

Equating coefficients of  $x'^2$  and  $y'^2$ , we have

$$1 = m^2 + m'^2 + 2mm' \cos \omega, \text{ and } 1 = n^2 + n'^2 + 2nn' \cos \omega.$$

Eliminating  $\cos \omega$ , we have  $\frac{m^2 + m'^2 - 1}{mm'} = \frac{n^2 + n'^2 - 1}{nn'}$ .

## Chapter 8

# THE CIRCLE

**138. Def.** A circle is the locus of a point which moves so that its distance from a fixed point, called the centre, is equal to a given distance. The given distance is called the radius of the circle.

**139.** *To find the equation to a circle, the axes of coordinates being two straight lines through its centre at right angles.*

Let  $O$  be the centre of the circle and let  $a$  be its radius.

Let  $OX$  and  $OY$  be the axes of coordinates.

Let  $P$  be any point on the circumference of the circle, and let its coordinates be  $x$  and  $y$ .

Draw  $PM$  perpendicular to  $OX$  and join  $OP$ .

Then (Euc. I. 47)

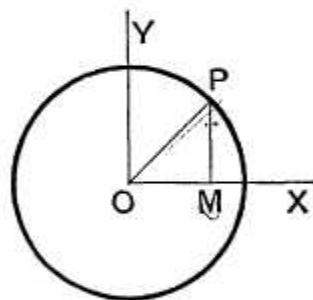
$$OM^2 + MP^2 = a^2,$$

*i.e.*

$$x^2 + y^2 = a^2.$$

This being the relation which holds between the coordinates of any point on the circumference is, by Art. 42, the required equation.

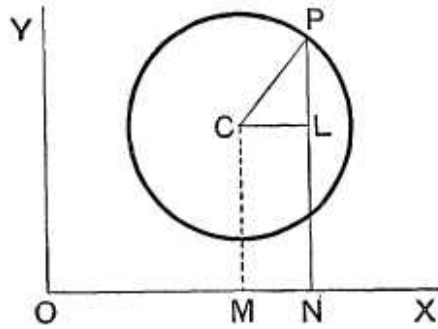
**140.** *To find the equation to a circle referred to any rectangular axes,*



Let  $OX$  and  $OY$  be the two rectangular axes.

Let  $C$  be the centre of the circle and  $a$  its radius.

Take any point  $P$  on the circumference and draw perpendiculars  $CM$  and  $PN$  upon  $OX$ ; let  $P$  be the point  $(x, y)$ .



Draw  $CL$  perpendicular to  $NP$ .

Let the coordinates of  $C$  be  $h$  and  $k$ ; these are supposed to be known.

We have  $CL = MN = ON - OM = x - h,$

and  $LP = NP - NL = NP - MC = y - k.$

Hence, since  $CL^2 + LP^2 = CP^2,$

we have  $(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = a^2 \dots\dots\dots(1).$

This is the required equation.

**Ex.** The equation to the circle, whose centre is the point  $(-3, 4)$  and whose radius is 7, is

$$(x + 3)^2 + (y - 4)^2 = 7^2,$$

*i. e.*  $x^2 + y^2 + 6x - 8y = 24.$

**141.** Some particular cases of the preceding article may be noticed:

(a) Let the origin  $O$  be on the circle so that, in this case,

$$OM^2 + MC^2 = a^2,$$

*i. e.*  $h^2 + k^2 = a^2.$

The equation (1) then becomes

$$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = h^2 + k^2,$$

*i. e.*  $x^2 + y^2 - 2hx - 2ky = 0.$

(β) Let the origin be not on the curve, but let the centre lie on the axis of  $x$ . In this case  $k = 0$ , and the equation becomes

$$(x - h)^2 + y^2 = a^2.$$

(γ) Let the origin be on the curve and let the axis of  $x$  be a diameter. We now have  $k = 0$  and  $a = h$ , so that the equation becomes

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2hx = 0.$$

(δ) By taking  $O$  at  $C$ , and thus making both  $h$  and  $k$  zero, we have the case of Art. 139.

(e) The circle will touch the axis of  $x$  if  $MC$  be equal to the radius, *i.e.* if  $k=a$ .

The equation to a circle touching the axis of  $x$  is therefore

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2hx - 2ky + h^2 = 0.$$

Similarly, one touching the axis of  $y$  is

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2hx - 2ky + k^2 = 0.$$

**142.** To prove that the equation

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

always represents a circle for all values of  $g, f,$  and  $c,$  and to find its centre and radius. [The axes are assumed to be rectangular.]

This equation may be written

$$(x^2 + 2gx + g^2) + (y^2 + 2fy + f^2) = g^2 + f^2 - c,$$

*i.e.*  $(x + g)^2 + (y + f)^2 = \{\sqrt{g^2 + f^2 - c}\}^2.$

Comparing this with the equation (1) of Art. 140, we see that the equations are the same if

$$h = -g, \quad k = -f, \quad \text{and} \quad a = \sqrt{g^2 + f^2 - c}.$$

Hence (1) represents a circle whose centre is the point  $(-g, -f),$  and whose radius is  $\sqrt{g^2 + f^2 - c}.$

If  $g^2 + f^2 > c,$  the radius of this circle is real.

If  $g^2 + f^2 = c,$  the radius vanishes, *i.e.* the circle becomes a point coinciding with the point  $(-g, -f).$  Such a circle is called a point-circle.

If  $g^2 + f^2 < c,$  the radius of the circle is imaginary. In this case the equation does not represent any real geometrical locus. It is better not to say that the circle does not exist, but to say that it is a circle with a real centre and an imaginary radius.

**Ex. 1.** The equation  $x^2 + y^2 + 4x - 6y = 0$  can be written in the form

$$(x + 2)^2 + (y - 3)^2 = 13 = (\sqrt{13})^2,$$

and therefore represents a circle whose centre is the point  $(-2, 3)$  and whose radius is  $\sqrt{13}.$

**Ex. 2.** The equation  $45x^2 + 45y^2 - 60x + 36y + 19 = 0$  is equivalent to

$$x^2 + y^2 - \frac{4}{3}x + \frac{4}{5}y = -\frac{19}{45},$$

*i. e.*  $(x - \frac{2}{3})^2 + (y + \frac{2}{5})^2 = \frac{4}{9} + \frac{4}{25} - \frac{19}{45} = \frac{41}{225},$

and therefore represents a circle whose centre is the point  $(\frac{2}{3}, -\frac{2}{5})$  and whose radius is  $\frac{\sqrt{41}}{15}$ .

**143.** Condition that the general equation of the second degree may represent a circle.

The equation (1) of the preceding article, multiplied by any arbitrary constant, is a particular case of the general equation of the second degree (Art. 114) in which there is no term containing  $xy$  and in which the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  are equal.

The general equation of the second degree in rectangular coordinates therefore represents a circle **if the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  be the same and if the coefficient of  $xy$  be zero.**

**144.** The equation (1) of Art. 142 is called the **general equation of a circle**, since it can, by a proper choice of  $g, f,$  and  $c,$  be made to represent *any* circle.

The three constants  $g, f,$  and  $c$  in the general equation correspond to the geometrical fact that a circle can be found to satisfy three independent geometrical conditions and no more. Thus a circle is determined when three points on it are given, or when it is required to touch three straight lines.

**145.** To find the equation to the circle which is described on the line joining the points  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  as diameter.

Let  $A$  be the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $B$  be the point  $(x_2, y_2)$ , and let the coordinates of any point  $P$  on the circle be  $h$  and  $k$ .

The equation to  $AP$  is (Art. 62)

$$y - y_1 = \frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1}(x - x_1) \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

and the equation to  $BP$  is

$$y - y_2 = \frac{k - y_2}{h - x_2}(x - x_2) \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

But, since  $APB$  is a semicircle, the angle  $APB$  is a right angle, and hence the straight lines (1) and (2) are at right angles.

Hence, by Art. 69, we have

$$\frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1} \cdot \frac{k - y_2}{h - x_2} = -1,$$

*i.e.*  $(h - x_1)(h - x_2) + (k - y_1)(k - y_2) = 0.$

But this is the condition that the point  $(h, k)$  may lie on the curve whose equation is

$$(x - x_1)(x - x_2) + (y - y_1)(y - y_2) = 0.$$

This therefore is the required equation.

**146.** *Intercepts made on the axes by the circle whose equation is*

$$ax^2 + ay^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

The abscissæ of the points where the circle (1) meets the axis of  $x$ , *i.e.*  $y = 0$ , are given by the equation

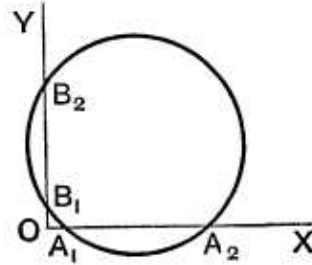
$$ax^2 + 2gx + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

The roots of this equation being  $x_1$  and  $x_2$ , we have

$$x_1 + x_2 = -\frac{2g}{a},$$

and

$$x_1 x_2 = \frac{c}{a}. \quad (\text{Art. 2.})$$



Hence

$$\begin{aligned} A_1 A_2 &= x_2 - x_1 = \sqrt{(x_1 + x_2)^2 - 4x_1 x_2} \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{4g^2}{a^2} - \frac{4c}{a}} = 2 \frac{\sqrt{g^2 - ac}}{a}. \end{aligned}$$

Again, the roots of the equation (2) are both imaginary if  $g^2 < ac$ . In this case the circle does not meet the axis of  $x$  in real points, *i.e.* geometrically it does not meet the axis of  $x$  at all.

The circle will touch the axis of  $x$  if the intercept  $A_1 A_2$  be just zero, *i.e.* if  $g^2 = ac$ .

It will meet the axis of  $x$  in two points lying on opposite sides of the origin  $O$  if the two roots of the equation (2) are of opposite signs, *i.e.* if  $c$  be negative.

**147. Ex. 1.** *Find the equation to the circle which passes through the points  $(1, 0)$ ,  $(0, -6)$ , and  $(3, 4)$ .*

Let the equation to the circle be

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

Since the three points, whose coordinates are given, satisfy this equation, we have

$$1 + 2g + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

$$36 - 12f + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (3),$$

and

$$25 + 6g + 8f + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (4).$$

Subtracting (2) from (3) and (3) from (4), we have

$$2g + 12f = 35,$$

and

$$6g + 20f = 11.$$

Hence

$$f = \frac{47}{8} \text{ and } g = -\frac{71}{4}.$$

Equation (2) then gives  $c = \frac{99}{2}$ .

Substituting these values in (1) the required equation is

$$4x^2 + 4y^2 - 142x + 47x + 138 = 0.$$

**Ex. 2.** Find the equation to the circle which touches the axis of  $y$  at a distance  $+4$  from the origin and cuts off an intercept  $6$  from the axis of  $x$ .

Any circle is  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$ .

This meets the axis of  $y$  in points given by

$$y^2 + 2fy + c = 0.$$

The roots of this equation must be equal and each equal to  $4$ , so that it must be equivalent to  $(y - 4)^2 = 0$ .

Hence  $2f = -8$ , and  $c = 16$ .

The equation to the circle is then

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx - 8y + 16 = 0.$$

This meets the axis of  $x$  in points given by

$$x^2 + 2gx + 16 = 0,$$

*i.e.* at points distant

$$-g + \sqrt{g^2 - 16} \text{ and } -g - \sqrt{g^2 - 16}.$$

Hence

$$6 = 2\sqrt{g^2 - 16}.$$

Therefore  $g = \pm 5$ , and the required equation is

$$x^2 + y^2 \pm 10x - 8y + 16 = 0.$$

There are therefore two circles satisfying the given conditions. This is geometrically obvious.

## EXAMPLES XVII

Find the equation to the circle

1. Whose radius is  $3$  and whose centre is  $(-1, 2)$ .
2. Whose radius is  $10$  and whose centre is  $(-5, -6)$ .
3. Whose radius is  $a + b$  and whose centre is  $(a, -b)$ .
4. Whose radius is  $\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$  and whose centre is  $(-a, -b)$ .

Find the coordinates of the centres and the radii of the circles whose equations are

5.  $x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 8y = 41$ .
6.  $3x^2 + 3y^2 - 5x - 6y + 4 = 0$ .

7.  $x^2 + y^2 = k(x + k)$ .      8.  $x^2 + y^2 = 2gx - 2fy$ .

9.  $\sqrt{1+m^2}(x^2 + y^2) - 2cx - 2mcy = 0$ .

Draw the circles whose equations are

10.  $x^2 + y^2 = 2ay$ .      11.  $3x^2 + 3y^2 = 4x$ .

12.  $5x^2 + 5y^2 = 2x + 3y$ .

13. Find the equation to the circle which passes through the points  $(1, -2)$  and  $(4, -3)$  and which has its centre on the straight line  $3x + 4y = 7$ .

14. Find the equation to the circle passing through the points  $(0, a)$  and  $(b, h)$ , and having its centre on the axis of  $x$ .

Find the equations to the circles which pass through the points

15.  $(0, 0)$ ,  $(a, 0)$ , and  $(0, b)$ .      16.  $(1, 2)$ ,  $(3, -4)$ , and  $(5, -6)$ .

17.  $(1, 1)$ ,  $(2, -1)$ , and  $(3, 2)$ .      18.  $(5, 7)$ ,  $(8, 1)$ , and  $(1, 3)$ .

19.  $(a, b)$ ,  $(a, -b)$ , and  $(a+b, a-b)$ .

20.  $ABCD$  is a square whose side is  $a$ ; taking  $AB$  and  $AD$  as axes, prove that the equation to the circle circumscribing the square is

$$x^2 + y^2 = a(x + y).$$

21. Find the equation to the circle which passes through the origin and cuts off intercepts equal to 3 and 4 from the axes.

22. Find the equation to the circle passing through the origin and the points  $(a, b)$  and  $(b, a)$ . Find the lengths of the chords that it cuts off from the axes.

23. Find the equation to the circle which goes through the origin and cuts off intercepts equal to  $h$  and  $k$  from the positive parts of the axes.

24. Find the equation to the circle, of radius  $a$ , which passes through the two points on the axis of  $x$  which are at a distance  $b$  from the origin.

Find the equation to the circle which

25. touches each axis at a distance 5 from the origin.

26. touches each axis and is of radius  $a$ .

27. touches both axes and passes through the point  $(-2, -3)$ .

28. touches the axis of  $x$  and passes through the two points  $(1, -2)$  and  $(3, -4)$ .

29. touches the axis of  $y$  at the origin and passes through the point  $(b, c)$ .



30. touches the axis of  $x$  at a distance 3 from the origin and intercepts a distance 6 on the axis of  $y$ .

31. Points  $(1, 0)$  and  $(2, 0)$  are taken on the axis of  $x$ , the axes being rectangular. On the line joining these points an equilateral triangle is described, its vertex being in the positive quadrant. Find the equations to the circles described on its sides as diameters.

32. If  $y = mx$  be the equation of a chord of a circle whose radius is  $a$ , the origin of coordinates being one extremity of the chord and the axis of  $x$  being a diameter of the circle, prove that the equation of a circle of which this chord is the diameter is

$$(1 + m^2)(x^2 + y^2) - 2a(x + my) = 0.$$

33. Find the equation to the circle passing through the points  $(12, 43)$ ,  $(18, 39)$ , and  $(42, 3)$  and prove that it also passes through the points  $(-54, -69)$  and  $(-81, -38)$ .

34. Find the equation to the circle circumscribing the quadrilateral formed by the straight lines

$$2x + 3y = 2, \quad 3x - 2y = 4, \quad x + 2y = 3, \quad \text{and} \quad 2x - y = 3.$$

35. Prove that the equation to the circle of which the points  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  are the ends of a chord of a segment containing an angle  $\theta$  is

$$(x - x_1)(x - x_2) + (y - y_1)(y - y_2) \pm \cot \theta [(x - x_1)(y - y_2) - (x - x_2)(y - y_1)] = 0.$$

36. Find the equations to the circles in which the line joining the points  $(a, b)$  and  $(b, -a)$  is a chord subtending an angle of  $45^\circ$  at any point on its circumference.

## ANSWERS

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. $x^2 + y^2 + 2x - 4y = 4.$                               | 2. $x^2 + y^2 + 10x + 12y = 39.$                           |
| 3. $x^2 + y^2 - 2ax + 2by = 2ab.$                           | 4. $x^2 + y^2 + 2ax + 2by + 2b^2 = 0.$                     |
| 5. $(2, 4); \sqrt{61}.$                                     | 6. $(\frac{5}{8}, 1); \frac{1}{4}\sqrt{13}.$               |
|   | 7. $(\frac{k}{2}, 0); \frac{\sqrt{5}}{2}k.$                |
| 8. $(g, -f); \sqrt{f^2 + g^2}.$                             | 9. $(\frac{c}{\sqrt{1+m^2}}, \frac{mc}{\sqrt{1+m^2}}); c.$ |
| 13. $15x^2 + 15y^2 - 94x + 18y + 55 = 0.$                   |  |
| 14. $b(x^2 + y^2 - a^2) = x(b^2 + h^2 - a^2).$              | 15. $x^2 + y^2 - ax - by = 0.$                             |
| 16. $x^2 + y^2 - 22x - 4y + 25 = 0.$                        | 17. $x^2 + y^2 - 5x - y + 4 = 0.$                          |
| 18. $3x^2 + 3y^2 - 29x - 19y + 56 = 0.$                     |  |
| 19. $b(x^2 + y^2) - (a^2 + b^2)x + (a - b)(a^2 + b^2) = 0.$ |  |
| 21. $x^2 + y^2 - 3x - 4y = 0.$                              |  |

22.  $x^2 + y^2 - \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a + b}(x + y) = 0$ ;  $\frac{a^2 + b^2}{a + b}$ .
23.  $x^2 + y^2 - hx - ky = 0$ .      24.  $x^2 + y^2 \pm 2y\sqrt{a^2 - b^2} = b^2$ .
25.  $x^2 + y^2 - 10x - 10y + 25 = 0$ .      26.  $x^2 + y^2 - 2ax - 2ay + a^2 = 0$ .
27.  $x^2 + y^2 + 2(5 \pm \sqrt{12})(x + y) + 37 \pm 10\sqrt{12} = 0$ .
28.  $x^2 + y^2 - 6x + 4y + 9 = 0$ .      29.  $b(x^2 + y^2) = x(b^2 + c^2)$ .
30.  $x^2 + y^2 \pm 6\sqrt{2y - 6x + 9} = 0$ .
31.  $x^2 + y^2 - 3x + 2 = 0$ ;       $2x^2 + 2y^2 - 5x - \sqrt{3}y + 3 = 0$ ;  
     $2x^2 + 2y^2 - 7x - \sqrt{3}y + 6 = 0$ .
33.  $(x + 21)^2 + (y + 13)^2 = 65^2$ .      34.  $8x^2 + 8y^2 - 25x - 3y + 18 = 0$ .
36.  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2 + b^2$ ;  $x^2 + y^2 - 2(a + b)x + 2(a - b)y + a^2 + b^2 = 0$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1—4. Substitute in the equation of Art. 140.

5. The equation may be written

$$x^2 - 4x + 4 + y^2 - 8y + 16 = 4 + 16 + 41,$$

or

$$(x - 2)^2 + (y - 4)^2 = 61.$$

6. The equation may be written

$$x^2 - \frac{5}{3}x + \left(\frac{5}{3}\right)^2 + y^2 - 2y + 1 = 1 + \left(\frac{5}{3}\right)^2 - \frac{4}{3},$$

or

$$\left(x - \frac{5}{3}\right)^2 + (y - 1)^2 = \frac{13}{3}.$$

7. The equation may be written

$$x^2 - kx + \left(\frac{k}{2}\right)^2 + y^2 = k^2 + \frac{k^2}{4}, \text{ or } \left(x - \frac{k}{2}\right)^2 + y^2 = \frac{5k^2}{4}.$$

8. The equation may be written

$$x^2 - 2gx + g^2 + y^2 + 2fy + f^2 = g^2 + f^2,$$

*i.e.*

$$(x - g)^2 + (y + f)^2 = g^2 + f^2.$$

9. The equation may be written

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 - \frac{2c}{\sqrt{1+m^2}} \cdot x + \frac{c^2}{1+m^2} + y^2 - \frac{2cm}{\sqrt{1+m^2}} \cdot y + \frac{c^2 m^2}{1+m^2} \\ = \frac{c^2}{1+m^2} + \frac{c^2 m^2}{1+m^2} = c^2, \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \left\{x - \frac{c}{\sqrt{1+m^2}}\right\}^2 + \left\{y - \frac{cm}{\sqrt{1+m^2}}\right\}^2 = c^2.$$

13. Since the centre  $(h, k)$  is equally distant from the two given points,  $\therefore (h-1)^2 + (k+2)^2 = (h-4)^2 + (k+3)^2$ .

$$\therefore 3h - k = 10; \text{ also } 3h + 4k = 7; \text{ whence } h = \frac{47}{15}, k = -\frac{3}{5}.$$

Hence the equation is of the form  $(x - \frac{47}{15})^2 + (y + \frac{3}{5})^2 = a$  constant, or  $15x^2 + 15y^2 - 94x + 18y + c = 0$ .

$$\text{Put } x = 1, y = -2; \therefore 15 + 60 - 94 - 36 + c = 0,$$

whence  $c = 55$ .

14. Let its equation be  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + c = 0$ .

Since it passes through  $(0, a)$  and  $(b, h)$ ,

$$\therefore a^2 + c = 0, \text{ and } b^2 + h^2 + 2bg + c = 0.$$

$$\therefore c = -a^2 \text{ and } 2g = \frac{a^2 - b^2 - h^2}{b}.$$

$\therefore$  the required equation is  $bx^2 + by^2 + (a^2 - b^2 - h^2)x - a^2b = 0$ .

15. Let  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$  be the equation of the required circle. Since it is satisfied by  $(0, 0)$ ;  $(a, 0)$ ;  $(0, b)$ , we have  $c = 0$ ,  $a^2 + 2ag = 0$ , and  $b^2 + 2bf = 0$ .  $\therefore 2g = -a$  and  $2f = -b$ , and the equation becomes  $x^2 + y^2 - ax - by = 0$ .

16. Taking the same equation, we have

$$1 + 4 + 2g + 4f + c = 0, \quad 9 + 16 + 6g - 8f + c = 0,$$

$$\text{and} \quad 25 + 36 + 10g - 12f + c = 0.$$

Whence, solving,  $2g = -22$ ,  $2f = -4$ ,  $c = 25$ .

17. Taking the same equation, we have

$$2 + 2g + 2f + c = 0, \quad 5 + 4g - 2f + c = 0,$$

$$\text{and} \quad 13 + 6g + 4f + c = 0.$$

Whence, solving,  $2g = -5$ ,  $2f = -1$ ,  $c = 4$ .

18. Taking the same equation, we have

$$74 + 10g + 14f + c = 0, \quad 65 + 16g + 2f + c = 0,$$

$$\text{and} \quad 10 + 2g + 6f + c = 0.$$

Whence, solving,  $2g = -\frac{29}{3}$ ,  $2f = -\frac{19}{3}$ ,  $c = \frac{56}{3}$ .

**19.** Since the circle passes through  $(a, b)$  and  $(a, -b)$ , its centre must lie on the axis of  $x$ . Let  $(h, 0)$  be the centre

$$\therefore (h - a)^2 + b^2 = (h - a - b)^2 + (a - b)^2;$$

$$\therefore b(2h - 2a - b) = a^2 - 2ab, \text{ i.e. } 2h = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{b}.$$

Hence this equation is of the form

$$bx^2 + by^2 - (a^2 + b^2)x + C = 0.$$

Put  $x = a, y = b$ ;  $\therefore C = (a - b)(a^2 + b^2)$ .

**20.** The circle passes through the points  $(0, 0)$ ;  $(a, 0)$ ;  $(0, a)$ . Put  $b = a$  in No. 15. The circle clearly passes through  $(a, a)$ .

**Aliter.** The circle has its centre at the point  $\left(\frac{a}{2}, \frac{a}{2}\right)$

and its radius equal to  $\frac{a}{2}\sqrt{2}$ .

Hence its equation is  $\left(x - \frac{a}{2}\right)^2 + \left(y - \frac{a}{2}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{a}{2}\sqrt{2}\right)^2$ , etc.

**21.** Put  $a = 3, b = 4$  in No. 15.

**22.** Let  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy = 0$  be the equation.

Then  $a^2 + b^2 + 2ag + 2fb = 0$ , and  $b^2 + a^2 + 2bg + 2af = 0$ .

Whence  $2g = 2f = -\frac{a^2 + b^2}{a + b}$ , and the equation becomes

$$x^2 + y^2 - \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a + b}(x + y) = 0.$$

To find the lengths of the chords cut off from the axes, put  $x = 0$  and  $y = 0$ .

**23.** Put  $a = h$ , and  $b = k$  in Ex. 15.

**24.** Let  $(0, h)$  be the centre. Then

$$h^2 + b^2 = a^2. \quad \therefore h = \pm \sqrt{a^2 - b^2},$$

and the equation is

$$x^2 + (y - h)^2 = a^2, \text{ or } x^2 + y^2 \pm 2\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}y = b^2.$$

25. The circle cuts the axis of  $x$  in points given by  $x^2 + 2gx + c = 0$ , which must be equivalent to  $(x - 5)^2 = 0$ .  
 $\therefore 2g = -10$ , and  $c = 25$ . Similarly  $2f = -10$ .

$\therefore$  the required equation is  $x^2 + y^2 - 10x - 10y + 25 = 0$ .

26. As in the last example, both  $x^2 + 2gx + c$  and  $y^2 + 2fy + c$  must be perfect squares.

$\therefore c = f^2 = g^2$ . Also  $a^2 = f^2 + g^2 - c$ . (Art. 142.)

$\therefore a^2 = f^2 = g^2 = c$ .  $\therefore f = g = \pm a$ ,

and the equation becomes  $x^2 + y^2 \pm 2ax \pm 2ay + a^2 = 0$ .

27. As in the last Ex.,  $c = f^2 = g^2$ , and the equation becomes  $x^2 + y^2 + 2\sqrt{c}(x + y) + c = 0$ .

Since it passes through  $(-2, -3)$ ,  $\therefore c - 10\sqrt{c} + 13 = 0$ .

$\therefore \sqrt{c} = 5 \pm \sqrt{12}$ .  $\therefore c = 37 \pm 10\sqrt{12}$ .

28. As in No. 26,  $g = \sqrt{c}$ .

Since it passes through  $(1, -2)$  and  $(3, -4)$ , we have

$5 + 2\sqrt{c} - 4f + c = 0$ , and  $25 + 6\sqrt{c} - 8f + c = 0$ .

$\therefore c - 2\sqrt{c} - 15 = 0$ .  $\therefore \sqrt{c} = 5$  or  $-3$ , whence  $f = 10$  or  $2$ ,  
and the two circles are

$x^2 + y^2 + 10x + 20y + 25 = 0$ , and  $x^2 + y^2 - 6x + 4y + 9 = 0$ .

29. Since it touches the axis of  $y$  at the origin,  
 $\therefore y^2 + 2fy + c = 0$  must be equivalent to  $y^2 = 0$ .  $\therefore f = 0$   
and  $c = 0$ . Also  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx = 0$  passes through  $(b, c)$  if

$$b^2 + c^2 + 2gb = 0; \therefore 2g = -\frac{b^2 + c^2}{b}.$$

$\therefore$  the required equation is  $b(x^2 + y^2) - (b^2 + c^2)x = 0$ .

30. As in No. 25,  $g = -3$  and  $c = 9$ . Also the difference of the roots of the equation  $y^2 + 2fy + 9 = 0$  is 6.

Now  $y_1 + y_2 = -2f$ , and  $y_1 y_2 = 9$ , so that

$$36 = (y_1 - y_2)^2 = 4f^2 - 36.$$

$\therefore f^2 = 18$ , i.e.  $f = \pm 3\sqrt{2}$ , and the equation becomes

$$x^2 + y^2 - 6x \pm 6\sqrt{2}y + 9 = 0.$$

**31.** Let  $(a, b)$  be the vertex of the triangle so that  $b$  is positive.

Then  $(a - 1)^2 + b^2 = (a - 2)^2 + b^2 = 1^2$ , whence  $a = \frac{3}{2}$ , and  $b = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ , and the three circles are (Art. 145)

$$(x - 1)(x - 2) + y^2 = 0, \quad (x - 1)\left(x - \frac{3}{2}\right) + y\left(y - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right) = 0,$$

and  $(x - 2)\left(x - \frac{3}{2}\right) + y\left(y - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right) = 0.$

**32.** The given circle has its centre at  $(a, 0)$  and is of radius  $a$ ; therefore its equation is  $x^2 + y^2 = 2ax$ .

It cuts the line  $y = mx$  again where

$$x = \frac{2a}{1 + m^2}, \quad y = \frac{2am}{1 + m^2},$$

and the circle whose diameter is the line joining this point to the origin is (Art. 145)

$$x\left(x - \frac{2a}{1 + m^2}\right) + y\left(y - \frac{2am}{1 + m^2}\right) = 0.$$

**33.** As in Art. 147, Ex. 1, the equations for  $g, f$  and  $c$  are

$$24g + 86f + c = -1993, \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

$$36g + 78f + c = -1845, \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

and  $84g + 6f + c = -1773. \dots\dots\dots(iii)$

Subtracting (i) from (ii), we have  $3g - 2f = 37$ , and subtracting (ii) from (iii), we have  $2g - 3f = 3$ . Whence  $g = 21, f = 13$ .

$\therefore$  the equation is of the form  $(x + 21)^2 + (y + 13)^2 = r^2$ .

Put  $x = 18, y = 39$ .

$$\therefore r^2 = 39^2 + 52^2 = 13^2 \{3^2 + 4^2\} = 13^2 \cdot 5^2 = 65^2.$$

The other two points satisfy the equation.

**34.** The lines (i) and (ii) are at right angles and also the lines (iii) and (iv).

From a figure it is easily seen that the intersection of (i) and (iv), and also that of (ii) and (iii), are at the ends of a diameter.

Solving, these points are  $(\frac{11}{8}, -\frac{1}{4})$ , and  $(\frac{7}{4}, \frac{5}{8})$ .

Hence the required equation is, (Art. 145),

$$(8x - 11)(4x - 7) + (8y - 5)(4y + 1) = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $8x^2 + 8y^2 - 25x - 3y + 18 = 0.$

**35.** Let  $(h, k)$  be any point on the circle.

If the chord joining  $(h, k)$  and  $(x_1, y_1)$  make an angle  $\alpha$  with the axis of  $x$ , then  $\tan \alpha = \frac{(k - y_1)}{h - x_1}$ .

Similarly, if the chord joining  $(h, k)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  is inclined at  $\beta$ ,  $\tan \beta = \frac{k - y_2}{h - x_2}$ .

But  $\theta = \alpha \sim \beta$ .

$$\therefore \pm \tan \theta = \frac{\frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1} - \frac{k - y_2}{h - x_2}}{1 + \frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1} \cdot \frac{k - y_2}{h - x_2}},$$

which reduces to the required equation on substituting  $x$  for  $h$  and  $y$  for  $k$ .

**36.** In the last example put  $x_1 = a$ ,  $y_1 = b$ ,  $x_2 = b$ ,  $y_2 = -a$ , and  $\theta = 45^\circ$ , and we obtain

$$(x - a)(x - b) + (y - b)(y + a) = \pm \{(x - a)(y + a) - (x - b)(y - b)\},$$

or  $x^2 + y^2 - 2x(a + b) + 2y(a - b) + a^2 + b^2 = 0,$

and  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2 + b^2.$

## TANGENT

**148. Tangent.** The tangent at any point of a circle, and proves that it is always perpendicular to the radius drawn from the centre to the point of contact.

From this property may be deduced the equation to the tangent at any point  $(x', y')$  of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ .

For let the point  $P$  (Fig. Art. 139) be the point  $(x', y')$ .

The equation to any straight line passing through  $P$  is, by Art. 62,

$$y - y' = m(x - x') \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

Also the equation to  $OP$  is

$$y = \frac{y'}{x'}x \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

The straight lines (1) and (2) are at right angles, *i. e.* the line (1) is a tangent, if

$$m \times \frac{y'}{x'} = -1, \qquad \text{(Art. 69)}$$

*i. e.* if 
$$m = -\frac{x'}{y'}.$$



Substituting this value of  $m$  in (1), the equation of the tangent at  $(x', y')$  is

$$y - y' = -\frac{x'}{y'}(x - x'),$$

*i.e.*  $xx' + yy' = x'^2 + y'^2 \dots\dots\dots (3).$

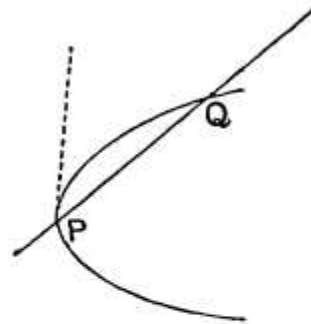
But, since  $(x', y')$  lies on the circle, we have  $x'^2 + y'^2 = a^2$ , and the required equation is then

$$xx' + yy' = a^2.$$

**Tangent. Def.** Let  $P$  and  $Q$  be any two points, near to one another, on any curve.

Join  $PQ$ ; then  $PQ$  is called a secant.

The position of the line  $PQ$  when the point  $Q$  is taken indefinitely close to, and ultimately coincident with, the point  $P$  is called the tangent at  $P$ .



The student may better appreciate this definition, if he conceive the curve to be made up of a succession of very small points (much smaller than could be made by the finest conceivable drawing pen) packed close to one another along the curve. The tangent at  $P$  is then the straight line joining  $P$  and the next of these small points.

**150.** *To find the equation of the tangent at the point  $(x', y')$  of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ .*

Let  $P$  be the given point and  $Q$  a point  $(x'', y'')$  lying on the curve and close to  $P$ .

The equation to  $PQ$  is then

$$y - y' = \frac{y'' - y'}{x'' - x'} (x - x') \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

Since both  $(x', y')$  and  $(x'', y'')$  lie on the circle, we have

$$x'^2 + y'^2 = a^2,$$

and

$$x''^2 + y''^2 = a^2.$$

By subtraction, we have

$$x''^2 - x'^2 + y''^2 - y'^2 = 0,$$

*i. e.*  $(x'' - x')(x'' + x') + (y'' - y')(y'' + y') = 0,$

*i. e.*  $\frac{y'' - y'}{x'' - x'} = -\frac{x'' + x'}{y'' + y'}.$

Substituting this value in (1), the equation to  $PQ$  is

$$y - y' = -\frac{x'' + x'}{y'' + y'} (x - x') \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

Now let  $Q$  be taken very close to  $P$ , so that it ultimately coincides with  $P$ , *i. e.* put  $x'' = x'$  and  $y'' = y'$ .

Then (2) becomes

$$y - y' = -\frac{2x'}{2y'} (x - x'),$$

*i. e.*  $yy' + xx' = x'^2 + y'^2 = a^2.$

The required equation is therefore

$$\mathbf{xx' + yy' = a^2} \dots\dots\dots (3).$$

It will be noted that the equation to the tangent found in this article coincides with the equation found from Euclid's definition in Art. 148.

Our definition of a tangent and Euclid's definition therefore give the same straight line in the case of a circle.

**151.** *To obtain the equation of the tangent at any point  $(x', y')$  lying on the circle*

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0.$$

Let  $P$  be the given point and  $Q$  a point  $(x'', y'')$  lying on the curve close to  $P$ .

The equation to  $PQ$  is therefore

$$y - y' = \frac{y'' - y'}{x'' - x'} (x - x') \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

Since both  $(x', y')$  and  $(x'', y'')$  lie on the circle, we have

$$x'^2 + y'^2 + 2gx' + 2fy' + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

and  $x''^2 + y''^2 + 2gx'' + 2fy'' + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (3).$

By subtraction, we have

$$x''^2 - x'^2 + y''^2 - y'^2 + 2g(x'' - x') + 2f(y'' - y') = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $(x'' - x')(x'' + x' + 2g) + (y'' - y')(y'' + y' + 2f) = 0,$

*i.e.*  $\frac{y'' - y'}{x'' - x'} = -\frac{x'' + x' + 2g}{y'' + y' + 2f}.$

Substituting this value in (1), the equation to  $PQ$  becomes

$$y - y' = -\frac{x'' + x' + 2g}{y'' + y' + 2f} (x - x') \dots\dots\dots (4).$$

Now let  $Q$  be taken very close to  $P$ , so that it ultimately coincides with  $P$ , *i.e.* put  $x'' = x'$  and  $y'' = y'$ .

The equation (4) then becomes

$$y - y' = -\frac{x' + g}{y' + f} (x - x'),$$

*i.e.*  $y(y' + f) + x(x' + g) = y'(y' + f) + x'(x' + g)$   
 $= x'^2 + y'^2 + gx' + fy'$   
 $= -gx' - fy' - c,$

by (2).

This may be written

$$\mathbf{xx' + yy' + g(x + x') + f(y + y') + c = 0}$$

which is the required equation.

**152.** The equation to the tangent at  $(x', y')$  is therefore obtained from that of the circle itself by substituting  $xx'$  for  $x^2$ ,  $yy'$  for  $y^2$ ,  $x + x'$  for  $2x$ , and  $y + y'$  for  $2y$ .

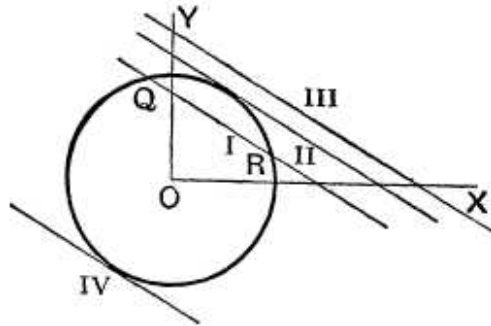
This is a particular case of a general rule which will be found to enable us to write down at sight the equation to the tangent at  $(x', y')$  to any of the curves with which we shall deal in this book.

**153.** *Points of intersection, in general, of the straight line*

$$y = mx + c \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

*with the circle*

$$x^2 + y^2 = a^2 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$



The coordinates of the points in which the straight line (1) meets (2) satisfy both equations (1) and (2).

If therefore we solve them as simultaneous equations we shall obtain the coordinates of the common point or points.

Substituting for  $y$  from (1) in (2), the abscissæ of the required points are given by the equation

$$x^2 + (mx + c)^2 = a^2,$$

*i.e.*  $x^2 (1 + m^2) + 2mcx + c^2 - a^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (3).$

The roots of this equation are, by Art. 1, real, coincident, or imaginary, according as

$(2mc)^2 - 4 (1 + m^2) (c^2 - a^2)$  is positive, zero, or negative,

*i.e.* according as

$a^2 (1 + m^2) - c^2$  is positive, zero, or negative,

*i.e.* according as

$$c^2 \text{ is } \leq \text{ or } > a^2 (1 + m^2).$$

In the figure the lines marked I, II, and III are all parallel, *i.e.* their equations all have the same " $m$ ."

The straight line I corresponds to a value of  $c^2$  which is  $< a^2(1 + m^2)$  and it meets the circle in two real points.

The straight line III which corresponds to a value of  $c^2$ ,  $> a^2(1 + m^2)$ , does not meet the circle at all, or rather, as in Art. 108, this is better expressed by saying that it meets the circle in imaginary points.

The straight line II corresponds to a value of  $c^2$ , which is equal to  $a^2(1 + m^2)$ , and meets the curve in two coincident points, *i.e.* is a tangent.

**154.** We can now obtain the length of the chord intercepted by the circle on the straight line (1). For, if  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  be the roots of the equation (3), we have

$$x_1 + x_2 = -\frac{2mc}{1 + m^2}, \text{ and } x_1x_2 = \frac{c^2 - a^2}{1 + m^2}.$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 &= \sqrt{(x_1 + x_2)^2 - 4x_1x_2} = \frac{2}{1 + m^2} \sqrt{m^2c^2 - (c^2 - a^2)(1 + m^2)} \\ &= \frac{2}{1 + m^2} \sqrt{a^2(1 + m^2) - c^2}. \end{aligned}$$

If  $y_1$  and  $y_2$  be the ordinates of  $Q$  and  $R$  we have, since these points are on (1),

$$y_1 - y_2 = (mx_1 + c) - (mx_2 + c) = m(x_1 - x_2).$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence } QR &= \sqrt{(y_1 - y_2)^2 + (x_1 - x_2)^2} = \sqrt{1 + m^2} (x_1 - x_2) \\ &= 2 \sqrt{\frac{a^2(1 + m^2) - c^2}{1 + m^2}}. \end{aligned}$$

In a similar manner we can consider the points of intersection of the straight line  $y = mx + k$  with the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0.$$

**155.** *The straight line*

$$y = mx + a\sqrt{1 + m^2}$$

*is always a tangent to the circle*

$$x^2 + y^2 = a^2.$$

As in Art. 153 the straight line

$$y = mx + c$$

meets the circle in two points which are coincident if

$$c = a \sqrt{1 + m^2}.$$

But if a straight line meets the circle in two points which are indefinitely close to one another then, by Art. 149, it is a tangent to the circle.

The straight line  $y = mx + c$  is therefore a tangent to the circle if

$$c = a \sqrt{1 + m^2},$$

*i.e.* the equation to any tangent to the circle is

$$y = mx + a \sqrt{1 + m^2} \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

Since the radical on the right hand may have the + or - sign prefixed we see that corresponding to any value of  $m$  there are two tangents. They are marked II and IV in the figure of Art. 153.

**156.** The above result may also be deduced from the equation (3) of Art. 150, which may be written

$$y = -\frac{x'}{y'}x + \frac{a^2}{y'} \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

Put  $-\frac{x'}{y'} = m$ , so that  $x' = -my'$ , and the relation  $x'^2 + y'^2 = a^2$  gives

$$y'^2(m^2 + 1) = a^2, \text{ i.e. } \frac{a}{y'} = \sqrt{1 + m^2}.$$

The equation (1) then becomes

$$y = mx + a \sqrt{1 + m^2}.$$

This is therefore the tangent at the point whose coordinates are

$$\frac{-ma}{\sqrt{1 + m^2}} \text{ and } \frac{a}{\sqrt{1 + m^2}}.$$

**157.** If we assume that a tangent to a circle is always perpendicular to the radius vector to the point of contact, the result of Art. 155 may be obtained in another manner.

For a tangent is a line whose perpendicular distance from the centre is equal to the radius.

The straight line  $y = mx + c$  will therefore touch the circle if the perpendicular on it from the origin be equal to  $a$ , *i.e.* if

$$\frac{c}{\sqrt{1+m^2}} = a,$$

*i.e.* if 
$$c = a\sqrt{1+m^2}.$$

This method is not however applicable to any other curve besides the circle.

**158. Ex.** Find the equations to the tangents to the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 - 6x + 4y = 12$$

which are parallel to the straight line

$$4x + 3y + 5 = 0.$$

Any straight line parallel to the given one is

$$4x + 3y + C = 0 \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

The equation to the circle is

$$(x - 3)^2 + (y + 2)^2 = 5^2.$$

The straight line (1), if it be a tangent, must be therefore such that its distance from the point (3, -2) is equal to  $\pm 5$ .

Hence 
$$\frac{12 - 6 + C}{\sqrt{4^2 + 3^2}} = \pm 5, \quad (\text{Art. 75}),$$

so that 
$$C = -6 \pm 25 = 19 \text{ or } -31.$$

The required tangents are therefore

$$4x + 3y + 19 = 0 \text{ and } 4x + 3y - 31 = 0.$$

**159. Normal. Def.** The normal at any point  $P$  of a curve is the straight line which passes through  $P$  and is perpendicular to the tangent at  $P$ .

To find the equation to the normal at the point  $(x', y')$  of (1) the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 = a^2,$$

and (2) the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0.$$

(1) The tangent at  $(x', y')$  is

$$xx' + yy' = a^2,$$

*i.e.* 
$$y = -\frac{x'}{y'}x + \frac{a^2}{y'}.$$

The equation to the straight line passing through  $(x', y')$  perpendicular to this tangent is

$$y - y' = m(x - x'),$$

where  $m \times \left(-\frac{x'}{y'}\right) = -1$ , (Art. 69),

*i. e.*  $m = \frac{y'}{x'}$ .

The required equation is therefore

$$y - y' = \frac{y'}{x'}(x - x'),$$

*i. e.*  $x'y - xy' = 0$ .

This straight line passes through the centre of the circle which is the point  $(0, 0)$ .

If we assume Euclid's propositions the equation is at once written down, since the normal is the straight line joining  $(0, 0)$  to  $(x', y')$ .

(2) The equation to the tangent at  $(x', y')$  to the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$$

is  $y = -\frac{x' + g}{y' + f}x - \frac{gx' + fy' + c}{y' + f}$ . (Art. 151.)

The equation to the straight line, passing through the point  $(x', y')$  and perpendicular to this tangent, is

$$y - y' = m(x - x'),$$

where  $m \times \left(-\frac{x' + g}{y' + f}\right) = -1$ , (Art. 69),

*i. e.*  $m = \frac{y' + f}{x' + g}$ .

The equation to the normal is therefore

$$y - y' = \frac{y' + f}{x' + g}(x - x'),$$

*i. e.*  $y(x' + g) - x(y' + f) + fx' - gy' = 0$ .



## EXAMPLES XVIII

Write down the equation of the tangent to the circle

1.  $x^2 + y^2 - 3x + 10y = 15$  at the point  $(4, -11)$ .
2.  $4x^2 + 4y^2 - 16x + 24y = 117$  at the point  $(-4, -\frac{11}{2})$ .

Find the equations to the tangents to the circle

3.  $x^2 + y^2 = 4$  which are parallel to the line  $x + 2y + 3 = 0$ .
4.  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$  which are parallel to the line  $x + 2y - 6 = 0$ .
5. Prove that the straight line  $y = x + c\sqrt{2}$  touches the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = c^2$ , and find its point of contact.
6. Find the condition that the straight line  $cx - by + b^2 = 0$  may touch the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = ax + by$  and find the point of contact.
7. Find whether the straight line  $x + y = 2 + \sqrt{2}$  touches the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 2x - 2y + 1 = 0$ .
8. Find the condition that the straight line  $3x + 4y = k$  may touch the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 10x$ .
9. Find the value of  $p$  so that the straight line  $x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p = 0$  may touch the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 2ax \cos \alpha - 2by \sin \alpha - a^2 \sin^2 \alpha = 0$ .
10. Find the condition that the straight line  $Ax + By + C = 0$  may touch the circle  $(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = c^2$ .
11. Find the equation to the tangent to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  which
  - (i) is parallel to the straight line  $y = mx + c$ ,
  - (ii) is perpendicular to the straight line  $y = mx + c$ ,
  - (iii) passes through the point  $(b, 0)$ ,
 and (iv) makes with the axes a triangle whose area is  $a^2$ .
12. Find the length of the chord joining the points in which the straight line

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$$

meets the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 = r^2.$$

13. Find the equation to the circles which pass through the origin and cut off equal chords  $a$  from the straight lines  $y = x$  and  $y = -x$ .

14. Find the equation to the straight lines joining the origin to the points in which the straight line  $y = mx + c$  cuts the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 = 2ax + 2by.$$

Hence find the condition that these points may subtend a right angle at the origin.

Find also the condition that the straight line may touch the circle.

Find the equation to the circle which

15. has its centre at the point  $(3, 4)$  and touches the straight line  $5x + 12y = 1$ .

16. touches the axes of coordinates and also the line

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1,$$

the centre being in the positive quadrant.

17. has its centre at the point  $(1, -3)$  and touches the straight line  $2x - y - 4 = 0$ .

18. Find the general equation of a circle referred to two perpendicular tangents as axes.

19. Find the equation to a circle of radius  $r$  which touches the axis of  $y$  at a point distant  $h$  from the origin, the centre of the circle being in the positive quadrant.

Prove also that the equation to the other tangent which passes through the origin is

$$(r^2 - h^2)x + 2rhy = 0.$$

20. Find the equation to the circle whose centre is at the point  $(\alpha, \beta)$  and which passes through the origin, and prove that the equation of the tangent at the origin is

$$\alpha x + \beta y = 0.$$

21. Two circles are drawn through the points  $(a, 5a)$  and  $(4a, a)$  to touch the axis of  $y$ . Prove that they intersect at an angle  $\tan^{-1} \frac{4}{3}$ .

22. A circle passes through the points  $(-1, 1)$ ,  $(0, 6)$ , and  $(5, 5)$ . Find the points on this circle the tangents at which are parallel to the straight line joining the origin to its centre.

## ANSWERS

1.  $5x - 12y = 152.$

2.  $24x + 10y + 151 = 0.$

3.  $x + 2y = \pm 2\sqrt{5}.$

4.  $x + 2y + g + 2f = \pm \sqrt{5} \sqrt{g^2 + f^2 - c}.$

5.  $\left(-\frac{c}{\sqrt{2}}, \frac{c}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$ .      6.  $c = a$ ;  $(0, b)$ .      7. Yes.
8.  $k = 40$  or  $-10$ .      9.  $a \cos^2 \alpha + b \sin^2 \alpha \pm \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 \sin^2 \alpha}$ .
10.  $Aa + Bb + C = \pm c \sqrt{A^2 + B^2}$ .
11. (1)  $y = mx \pm a \sqrt{1 + m^2}$ ;      (2)  $my + x = \pm a \sqrt{1 + m^2}$ ;  
 (3)  $ax \pm y \sqrt{b^2 - a^2} = ab$ ;      (4)  $x + y = a \sqrt{2}$ .
12.  $2 \sqrt{r^2 - \frac{a^2 b^2}{a^2 + b^2}}$ .      13.  $x^2 + y^2 \pm \sqrt{2ax} = 0$ ;  $x^2 + y^2 \pm \sqrt{2ay} = 0$ .
14.  $c = b - am$ ;  $c = b - am \pm \sqrt{(1 + m^2)(a^2 + b^2)}$ .
15.  $x^2 + y^2 - 6x - 8y + \frac{33}{5} = 0$ .
16.  $x^2 + y^2 - 2cx - 2cy + c^2 = 0$ , where  $2c = a + b \pm \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ .
17.  $5x^2 + 5y^2 - 10x + 30y + 49 = 0$ .      18.  $x^2 + y^2 - 2cx - 2cy + c^2 = 0$ .
19.  $(x - r)^2 + (y - h)^2 = r^2$ .      20.  $x^2 + y^2 - 2ax - 2\beta y = 0$ .

### SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1 and 2. Use the formula of Art. 151.

3. Put  $a = 2$  and  $m = -\frac{1}{2}$  in the formula of Art. 155.

4. Any line parallel to the given one is  $x + 2y + C = 0$ , and the equation to the circle is

$$(x + g)^2 + (y + f)^2 = g^2 + f^2 - c.$$

$$\text{As in Art. 158, } \frac{-g - 2f + C}{\sqrt{5}} = \pm \sqrt{g^2 + f^2 - c};$$

$$\therefore C = g + 2f \pm \sqrt{5} \cdot \sqrt{g^2 + f^2 - c}.$$

5. Eliminating  $y$ , we have  $x^2 + (x + c\sqrt{2})^2 = c^2$ ,

$$\text{i.e. } \{\sqrt{2}x + c\}^2 = 0,$$

which is a perfect square; therefore the given line is a tangent.

$$\text{Also } x = -\frac{c}{\sqrt{2}}, \text{ whence } y = \frac{c}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

6. The equation of the lines joining the origin to the common points of the circle and the given line are (Art. 122)

$$b^2(x^2 + y^2) + (ax + by)(cx - by) = 0,$$

$$\text{or } (b^2 + ac)x^2 + (bc - ab)xy = 0,$$

which must be a perfect square.  $\therefore bc - ab = 0$ .  $\therefore c = a$ , and the point of contact is where  $x = 0$  cuts the circle, viz.  $(0, b)$ .

7. The circle may be written  $(x - 1)^2 + (y - 1)^2 = 1^2$ .

As in Art. 158, since  $\frac{1 + 1 - 2 - \sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}} = -1$ , therefore the

line is a tangent.

8. As in No. 6, the equation  $k(x^2 + y^2) = 10x(3x + 4y)$ , or  $x^2(k - 30) - 40xy + ky^2 = 0$  must be a perfect square;

$$\therefore 400 = (k - 30)k, \text{ i.e. } k^2 - 30k - 400 = 0.$$

$$\therefore k = 40 \text{ or } -10.$$

9. The circle may be written

$$(x - a \cos a)^2 + (y - b \sin a)^2 = a^2 + b^2 \sin^2 a.$$

As in Art. 158, we then have

$$a \cos^2 a + b \sin^2 a - p = \pm \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 \sin^2 a}, \text{ etc.}$$

10. As in Art. 158,  $\frac{Aa + Bb + C}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}} = \pm c$ .

11. (1) See Art. 155.

(2) Change  $m$  into  $-\frac{1}{m}$  in (1).

(3) Any tangent is  $y = mx \pm a\sqrt{1 + m^2}$ ; this passes through the point  $(b, 0)$  if  $mb = \pm a\sqrt{1 + m^2}$ ;

$$\therefore m^2 b^2 = a^2(1 + m^2); \quad \therefore m = \pm \frac{a}{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}}. \text{ Hence etc.}$$

(4) Any tangent is  $x \cos a + y \sin a = a$ .

Its intercepts on the axes are  $a \sec a$ ,  $a \operatorname{cosec} a$ .

$$\therefore \frac{1}{2} a^2 \sec a \cdot \operatorname{cosec} a = a^2. \quad \therefore \sin 2a = 1; \quad \therefore a = 45^\circ,$$

and the equation becomes  $x + y = a\sqrt{2}$ .

12. Put  $a = r$ ,  $m = -\frac{b}{a}$ ,  $c = b$  in the formula of Art. 154.

13. One of the circles passes through the points

$$(0, 0); \quad \left(\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}}, \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}}\right), \quad \left(-\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}}, \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}}\right).$$

Let its equation be  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy = 0$ .

$$\therefore a^2 + a\sqrt{2}(g+f) = 0, \text{ and } a^2 + (a\sqrt{2})(f-g) = 0.$$

$$\therefore g = 0 \text{ and } f = -\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}}. \therefore x^2 + y^2 - \sqrt{2}ay = 0$$

is one of the circles. Similarly for the three other circles.

14. The required equation is (Art. 122)

$$c(x^2 + y^2) = 2(ax + by)(y - mx).$$

These lines are at right angles if, (Art. 111),

$$2c + 2am - 2b = 0, \text{ i.e. if } c = b - am.$$

The circle may be written  $(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = a^2 + b^2$ .

As in Art. 158, the line will touch the circle if

$$\frac{b - am - c}{\sqrt{1 + m^2}} = \pm \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}.$$

15. As in Art. 158, the line  $5x + 12y - 1 = 0$  touches the circle  $(x - 3)^2 + (y - 4)^2 = r^2$  if

$$r = \pm \frac{15 + 48 - 1}{\sqrt{5^2 + 12^2}}, \text{ i.e. if } r^2 = \frac{62^2}{13^2}.$$

Hence substituting, etc.

16. Let its radius be  $c$ , and its equation

$$(x - c)^2 + (y - c)^2 = c^2. \text{ [Ex. XVII, 26.]}$$

As in Art. 158  $\frac{bc + ac - ab}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} = \pm c$ ;

$$\therefore c = \frac{ab}{a + b \pm \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} = \frac{ab \{a + b \mp \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}\}}{2ab};$$

$$\therefore 2c = a + b \pm \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}.$$

17. As in Art. 158, the circles  $(x - 1)^2 + (y + 3)^2 = r^2$  will touch the line  $2x - y - 4 = 0$  if  $\frac{2 + 3 - 4}{\sqrt{5}} = \pm r$ , i.e. if  $r^2 = \frac{1}{5}$ .

Hence substituting, etc.

18. See Ex. XVII, 26.

19. From a figure it is easily seen that the centre is the point  $(r, h)$ .  $\therefore$  the required equation is

$$(x - r)^2 + (y - h)^2 = r^2.$$

The line  $y + mx = 0$  will be a tangent if, (Art. 158),

$$\frac{h + mr}{\sqrt{1 + m^2}} = \pm r. \quad \therefore (h + mr)^2 = r^2(1 + m^2),$$

whence 
$$m = \frac{r^2 - h^2}{2rh}.$$

20. The required equation is (Art. 142)

$$x^2 + y^2 = 2ax + 2\beta y.$$

See Art. 152 and put  $x' = y' = 0$ .

21. Let  $(h, k)$  be the coordinates of the centre of either circle.

$$\text{Then } (h - a)^2 + (k - 5a)^2 = (h - 4a)^2 + (k - a)^2 = h^2.$$

Solving, we have

$$h = \frac{5a}{2} \text{ or } \frac{205a}{18} \text{ and } k = 3a \text{ or } \frac{29a}{3}.$$

If  $c$  be the distance between the centres, then

$$\begin{aligned} c^2 &= (h_1 - h_2)^2 + (k_1 - k_2)^2 \\ &= \left(\frac{205a}{18} - \frac{45a}{18}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{20a}{3}\right)^2 = \frac{10000a^2}{81}. \end{aligned}$$

Also  $h_1$  and  $h_2$  are the radii, and  $\cos a = \frac{h_1^2 + h_2^2 - c^2}{2h_1h_2}$

$$= \frac{\frac{25}{4} + \left(\frac{205}{18}\right)^2 - \frac{10000}{81}}{2 \times \frac{5}{2} \times \frac{205}{18}} = \frac{9}{41}, \text{ on reduction.}$$

Hence 
$$\tan a = \frac{\sqrt{41^2 - 9^2}}{9} = \frac{40}{9}.$$

22. Let the equation of the circle be

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0.$$

Then we have,

$$2 - 2g + 2f + c = 0, \quad 36 + 12f + c = 0,$$

and  $50 + 10g + 10f + c = 0$ . Whence  $g = -2, f = -3, c = 0$ .

∴ the centre is the point (2, 3) and the radius =  $\sqrt{13}$ .

∴ the equation of the radius from the origin to the centre is  $3x = 2y$ . If  $\alpha$  be the angle which the diameter perpendicular to this makes with the axis of  $x$ , then

$$\sin \alpha = \frac{2}{\sqrt{13}}, \quad \cos \alpha = -\frac{3}{\sqrt{13}},$$

and the required points are (Art. 86)

$$\{2 \pm \sqrt{13} \cos \alpha, 3 \pm \sqrt{13} \sin \alpha\}, \text{ or } (-1, 5) \text{ and } (5, 1).$$

**160.** *To shew that from any point there can be drawn two tangents, real or imaginary, to a circle.*

Let the equation to the circle be  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ , and let the given point be  $(x_1, y_1)$ . [Fig. Art. 161.]

The equation to any tangent is, by Art. 155,

$$y = mx + a\sqrt{1 + m^2}.$$

If this pass through the given point  $(x_1, y_1)$  we have

$$y_1 = mx_1 + a\sqrt{1 + m^2} \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

This is the equation which gives the values of  $m$  corresponding to the tangents which pass through  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

Now (1) gives

$$y_1 - mx_1 = a\sqrt{1 + m^2},$$

*i.e.*  $y_1^2 - 2mx_1y_1 + m^2x_1^2 = a^2 + a^2m^2,$

*i.e.*  $m^2(x_1^2 - a^2) - 2mx_1y_1 + y_1^2 - a^2 = 0 \dots \dots (2).$

The equation (2) is a quadratic equation and gives therefore two values of  $m$  (real, coincident, or imaginary) corresponding to any given values of  $x_1$  and  $y_1$ . For each of these values of  $m$  we have a corresponding tangent.

The roots of (2) are, by Art. 1, real, coincident or imaginary according as

$(2x_1y_1)^2 - 4(x_1^2 - a^2)(y_1^2 - a^2)$  is positive, zero, or negative, *i.e.* according as

$a^2(-a^2 + x_1^2 + y_1^2)$  is positive, zero, or negative,

*i.e.* according as  $x_1^2 + y_1^2 \begin{matrix} \geq \\ < \end{matrix} a^2$ .

If  $x_1^2 + y_1^2 > a^2$ , the distance of the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  from the centre is greater than the radius and hence it lies outside the circle.

If  $x_1^2 + y_1^2 = a^2$ , the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  lies on the circle and the two coincident tangents become the tangent at  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

If  $x_1^2 + y_1^2 < a^2$ , the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  lies within the circle, and no tangents can then be geometrically drawn to the circle. It is however better to say that the tangents are imaginary.

**161. Chord of Contact. Def.** If from any point  $T$  without a circle two tangents  $TP$  and  $TQ$  be drawn to the circle, the straight line  $PQ$  joining the points of contact is called the chord of contact of tangents from  $T$ .

*To find the equation of the chord of contact of tangents drawn to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  from the external point  $(x_1, y_1)$ .*

Let  $T$  be the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ , and  $P$  and  $Q$  the points  $(x', y')$  and  $(x'', y'')$  respectively.

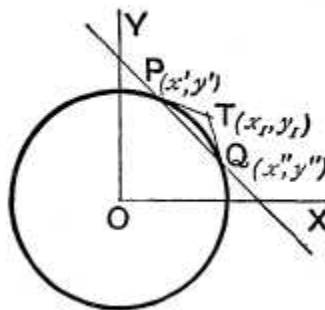
The tangent at  $P$  is

$$xx' + yy' = a^2 \dots\dots(1),$$

and that at  $Q$  is

$$xx'' + yy'' = a^2 \dots\dots(2).$$

Since these tangents pass through  $T$ , its coordinates  $(x_1, y_1)$  must satisfy both (1) and (2).





Hence  $x_1x' + y_1y' = a^2$  .....(3),  
 and  $x_1x'' + y_1y'' = a^2$  .....(4).

The equation to  $PQ$  is then

$$xx_1 + yy_1 = a^2 \text{ .....(5).}$$

For, since (3) is true, it follows that the point  $(x', y')$ , *i.e.*  $P$ , lies on (5).

Also, since (4) is true, it follows that the point  $(x'', y'')$ , *i.e.*  $Q$ , lies on (5).

Hence both  $P$  and  $Q$  lie on the straight line (5), *i.e.* (5) is the equation to the required chord of contact.

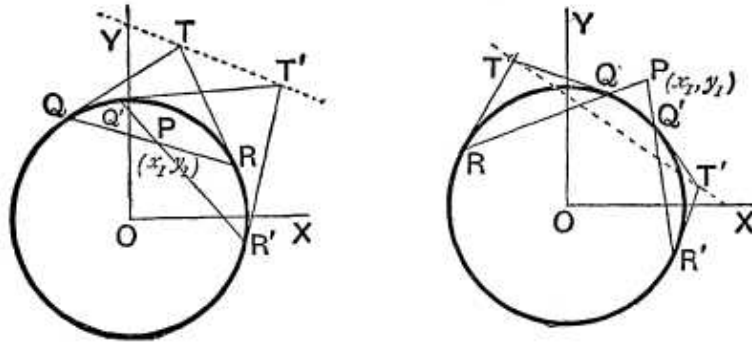
If the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  lie within the circle the argument of the preceding article will shew that the line joining the (imaginary) points of contact of the two (imaginary) tangents drawn from  $(x_1, y_1)$  is  $xx_1 + yy_1 = a^2$ .

We thus see, since this line is always real, that we may have a real straight line joining the imaginary points of contact of two imaginary tangents.

**162. Pole and Polar. Def.** If through a point  $P$  (within or without a circle) there be drawn any straight line to meet the circle in  $Q$  and  $R$ , the locus of the point of intersection of the tangents at  $Q$  and  $R$  is called the polar of  $P$ ; also  $P$  is called the pole of the polar.

In the next article the locus will be proved to be a straight line.

**163.** *To find the equation to the polar of the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  with respect to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ .*



Let  $QR$  be any chord drawn through  $P$  and let the tangents at  $Q$  and  $R$  meet in the point  $T$  whose coordinates are  $(h, k)$ .

Hence  $QR$  is the chord of contact of tangents drawn from the point  $(h, k)$  and therefore, by Art. 161, its equation is  $xh + yk = a^2$ .

Since this line passes through the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  we have

$$x_1h + y_1k = a^2 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Since the relation (1) is true it follows that the variable point  $(h, k)$  always lies on the straight line whose equation is

$$xx_1 + yy_1 = a^2 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

Hence (2) is the polar of the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

In a similar manner it may be proved that the polar of  $(x_1, y_1)$  with respect to the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$$

is  $xx_1 + yy_1 + g(x + x_1) + f(y + y_1) + c = 0$ .

**164.** The equation (2) of the preceding article is the same as equation (5) of Art. 161. If, therefore, the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  be without the circle, as in the right-hand figure, the polar is the same as the chord of contact of the real tangents drawn through  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

If the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  be on the circle, the polar coincides with the tangent at it. (Art. 150.)

If the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  be within the circle, then, as in Art. 161, the equation (2) is the line joining the (imaginary) points of contact of the two (imaginary) tangents that can be drawn from  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

We see therefore that the polar might have been defined as follows:

The polar of a given point is the straight line which passes through the (real or imaginary) points of contact of tangents drawn from the given point; also the pole of any straight line is the point of intersection of tangents at the points (real or imaginary) in which this straight line meets the circle.

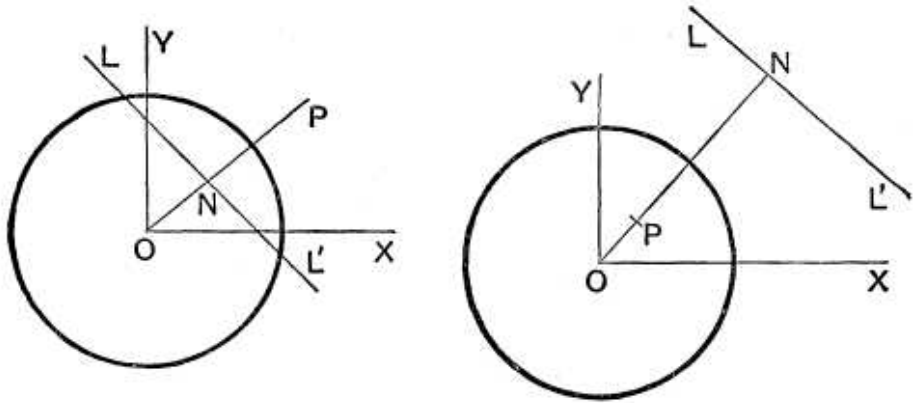
**165.** *Geometrical construction for the polar of a point.*

The equation to  $OP$ , which is the line joining  $(0, 0)$  to  $(x_1, y_1)$ , is

$$y = \frac{y_1}{x_1} x,$$

*i.e.*

$$xy_1 - x_1y = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$



Also the polar of  $P$  is

$$xx_1 + yy_1 = a^2 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

By Art. 69, the lines (1) and (2) are perpendicular to one another. Hence  $OP$  is perpendicular to the polar of  $P$ .

Also the length  $OP = \sqrt{x_1^2 + y_1^2}$ ,

and the perpendicular,  $ON$ , from  $O$  upon (2)

$$= \frac{a^2}{\sqrt{x_1^2 + y_1^2}}.$$

Hence the product  $ON \cdot OP = a^2$ .

The polar of any point  $P$  is therefore constructed thus: Join  $OP$  and on it (produced if necessary) take a point  $N$  such that the rectangle  $ON \cdot OP$  is equal to the square of the radius of the circle.

Through  $N$  draw the straight line  $LL'$  perpendicular to  $OP$ ; this is the polar required.

[It will be noted that the middle point  $N$  of any chord  $LL'$  lies on the line joining the centre to the pole of the chord.]

**166.** *To find the pole of a given line with respect to any circle.*

Let the equation to the given line be

$$Ax + By + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

(1) Let the equation to the circle be

$$x^2 + y^2 = a^2,$$

and let the required pole be  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

Then (1) must be the equation to the polar of  $(x_1, y_1)$ , *i.e.* it is the same as the equation

$$xx_1 + yy_1 - a^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

Comparing equations (1) and (2), we have

$$\frac{x_1}{A} = \frac{y_1}{B} = \frac{-a^2}{C},$$

so that  $x_1 = -\frac{A}{C} a^2$  and  $y_1 = -\frac{B}{C} a^2$ .

The required pole is therefore the point

$$\left( -\frac{A}{C} a^2, -\frac{B}{C} a^2 \right).$$

(2) Let the equation to the circle be

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0.$$

If  $(x_1, y_1)$  be the required pole, then (1) must be equivalent to the equation

$$xx_1 + yy_1 + g(x + x_1) + f(y + y_1) + c = 0, \quad (\text{Art. 163}),$$

i.e.  $x(x_1 + g) + y(y_1 + f) + gx_1 + fy_1 + c = 0 \dots\dots (3).$

Comparing (1) with (3), we therefore have

$$\frac{x_1 + g}{A} = \frac{y_1 + f}{B} = \frac{gx_1 + fy_1 + c}{C}.$$

By solving these equations we have the values of  $x_1$  and  $y_1$ .

**Ex.** Find the pole of the straight line

$$9x + y - 28 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

with respect to the circle

$$2x^2 + 2y^2 - 3x + 5y - 7 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

If  $(x_1, y_1)$  be the required point the line (1) must coincide with the polar of  $(x_1, y_1)$ , whose equation is

$$2xx_1 + 2yy_1 - \frac{3}{2}(x + x_1) + \frac{5}{2}(y + y_1) - 7 = 0,$$

i.e.  $x(4x_1 - 3) + y(4y_1 + 5) - 3x_1 + 5y_1 - 14 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$

Since (1) and (3) are the same, we have

$$\frac{4x_1 - 3}{9} = \frac{4y_1 + 5}{1} = \frac{-3x_1 + 5y_1 - 14}{-28}.$$

Hence  $x_1 = 9y_1 + 12,$

and  $3x_1 - 117y_1 = 126.$

Solving these equations we have  $x_1 = 3$  and  $y_1 = -1$ , so that the required point is  $(3, -1)$ .

**167.** If the polar of a point  $P$  pass through a point  $T$ , then the polar of  $T$  passes through  $P$ .

Let  $P$  and  $T$  be the points  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  respectively. (Fig. Art. 163.)

The polar of  $(x_1, y_1)$  with respect to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  is

$$xx_1 + yy_1 = a^2.$$

This straight line passes through the point  $T$  if

$$x_2x_1 + y_2y_1 = a^2 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Since the relation (1) is true it follows that the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ , i.e.  $P$ , lies on the straight line  $xx_2 + yy_2 = a^2$ , which is the polar of  $(x_2, y_2)$ , i.e.  $T$ , with respect to the circle.

Hence the proposition.

**Cor.** The intersection,  $T$ , of the polars of two points,  $P$  and  $Q$ , is the pole of the line  $PQ$ .

**168.** To find the length of the tangent that can be drawn from the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  to the circles

$$(1) \quad x^2 + y^2 = a^2,$$

and  $(2) \quad x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0.$

If  $T$  be an external point (Fig. Art. 163),  $TQ$  a tangent and  $O$  the centre of the circle, then  $TQO$  is a right angle and hence

$$TQ^2 = OT^2 - OQ^2.$$

(1) If the equation to the circle be  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ ,  $O$  is the origin,  $OT^2 = x_1^2 + y_1^2$ , and  $OQ^2 = a^2$ .

Hence  $TQ^2 = x_1^2 + y_1^2 - a^2.$

(2) Let the equation to the circle be

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0,$$

i.e.  $(x + g)^2 + (y + f)^2 = g^2 + f^2 - c.$

In this case  $O$  is the point  $(-g, -f)$  and

$$OQ^2 = (\text{radius})^2 = g^2 + f^2 - c.$$

Hence  $OT^2 = [x_1 - (-g)]^2 + [y_1 - (-f)]^2$  (Art. 20).  
 $= (x_1 + g)^2 + (y_1 + f)^2.$

Therefore  $TQ^2 = (x_1 + g)^2 + (y_1 + f)^2 - (g^2 + f^2 - c)$   
 $= x_1^2 + y_1^2 + 2gx_1 + 2fy_1 + c.$

In each case we see that (the equation to the circle being written so that the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  are each unity) the square of the length of the tangent drawn to the circle from the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  is obtained by substituting  $x_1$  and  $y_1$  for the current coordinates in the left-hand member of the equation to the circle.

**\*169.** To find the equation to the pair of tangents that can be drawn from the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ .

Let  $(h, k)$  be any point on either of the tangents from  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

Since any straight line touches a circle if the perpendicular on it from the centre is equal to the radius, the perpendicular from the origin upon the line joining  $(x_1, y_1)$  to  $(h, k)$  must be equal to  $a$ .

The equation to the straight line joining these two points is

$$y - y_1 = \frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1} (x - x_1),$$

*i.e.*  $y(h - x_1) - x(k - y_1) + kx_1 - hy_1 = 0.$

Hence 
$$\frac{kx_1 - hy_1}{\sqrt{(h - x_1)^2 + (k - y_1)^2}} = a,$$

so that  $(kx_1 - hy_1)^2 = a^2 [(h - x_1)^2 + (k - y_1)^2].$

Therefore the point  $(h, k)$  always lies on the locus

$$(x_1y - xy_1)^2 = a^2 [(x - x_1)^2 + (y - y_1)^2] \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

This therefore is the required equation.

The equation (1) may be written in the form

$$x^2 (y_1^2 - a^2) + y^2 (x_1^2 - a^2) - a^2 (x_1^2 + y_1^2) = 2xyx_1y_1 - 2a^2xx_1 - 2a^2yy_1,$$

*i.e.*  $(x^2 + y^2 - a^2) (x_1^2 + y_1^2 - a^2) = x^2x_1^2 + y^2y_1^2 + a^4 + 2xyx_1y_1 - 2a^2xx_1 - 2a^2yy_1 = (xx_1 + yy_1 - a^2)^2 \dots\dots\dots (2).$

**\* 170.** In a later chapter we shall obtain the equation to the pair of tangents to any curve of the second degree in a form analogous to that of equation (2) of the previous article.

Similarly the equation to the pair of tangents that can be drawn from  $(x_1, y_1)$  to the circle

$$(x - f)^2 + (y - g)^2 = a^2$$

is 
$$\{(x - f)^2 + (y - g)^2 - a^2\} \{(x_1 - f)^2 + (y_1 - g)^2 - a^2\} = \{(x - f)(x_1 - f) + (y - g)(y_1 - g) - a^2\}^2 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

If the equation to the circle be given in the form

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$$

the equation to the tangents is, similarly,

$$(x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c) (x_1^2 + y_1^2 + 2gx_1 + 2fy_1 + c) = [xx_1 + yy_1 + g(x + x_1) + f(y + y_1) + c]^2 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

### EXAMPLES XIX

Find the polar of the point

1.  $(1, 2)$  with respect to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 7$ .
2.  $(4, -1)$  with respect to the circle  $2x^2 + 2y^2 = 11$ .
3.  $(-2, 3)$  with respect to the circle  

$$x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 6y + 5 = 0.$$
4.  $(5, -\frac{1}{2})$  with respect to the circle  

$$3x^2 + 3y^2 - 7x + 8y - 9 = 0.$$
5.  $(a, -b)$  with respect to the circle  

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2ax - 2by + a^2 - b^2 = 0.$$

Find the pole of the straight line

6.  $x + 2y = 1$  with respect to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 5$ .
7.  $2x - y = 6$  with respect to the circle  $5x^2 + 5y^2 = 9$ .
8.  $2x + y + 12 = 0$  with respect to the circle  

$$x^2 + y^2 - 4x + 3y - 1 = 0.$$
9.  $48x - 54y + 53 = 0$  with respect to the circle  

$$3x^2 + 3y^2 + 5x - 7y + 2 = 0.$$
10.  $ax + by + 3a^2 + 3b^2 = 0$  with respect to the circle  

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2ax + 2by = a^2 + b^2.$$
11. Tangents are drawn to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 12$  at the points where it is met by the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 5x + 3y - 2 = 0$ ; find the point of intersection of these tangents.
12. Find the equation to that chord of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 81$  which is bisected at the point  $(-2, 3)$ , and its pole with respect to the circle.
13. Prove that the polars of the point  $(1, -2)$  with respect to the circles whose equations are  

$$x^2 + y^2 + 6y + 5 = 0 \text{ and } x^2 + y^2 + 2x + 8y + 5 = 0$$
coincide; prove also that there is another point the polars of which with respect to these circles are the same and find its coordinates.
14. Find the condition that the chord of contact of tangents from the point  $(x', y')$  to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  should subtend a right angle at the centre.
15. Prove that the distances of two points,  $P$  and  $Q$ , each from the polar of the other with respect to a circle, are to one another inversely as the distances of the points from the centre of the circle.
16. Prove that the polar of a given point with respect to any one of the circles  $x^2 + y^2 - 2kx + c^2 = 0$ , where  $k$  is variable, always passes through a fixed point, whatever be the value of  $k$ .



17. Tangents are drawn from the point  $(h, k)$  to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ ; prove that the area of the triangle formed by them and the straight line joining their points of contact is

$$\frac{a(h^2 + k^2 - a^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{h^2 + k^2}.$$

Find the lengths of the tangents drawn

18. to the circle  $2x^2 + 2y^2 = 3$  from the point  $(-2, 3)$ .

19. to the circle  $3x^2 + 3y^2 - 7x - 6y = 12$  from the point  $(6, -7)$ .

20. to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 + 2bx - 3b^2 = 0$  from the point  $(a + b, a - b)$ .

21. Given the three circles

$$x^2 + y^2 - 16x + 60 = 0,$$

$$3x^2 + 3y^2 - 36x + 81 = 0,$$

and  $x^2 + y^2 - 16x - 12y + 84 = 0,$

find (1) the point from which the tangents to them are equal in length, and (2) this length.

22. The distances from the origin of the centres of three circles  $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda x = c^2$  (where  $c$  is a constant and  $\lambda$  a variable) are in geometrical progression; prove that the lengths of the tangents drawn to them from any point on the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = c^2$  are also in geometrical progression.

23. Find the equation to the pair of tangents drawn

(1) from the point  $(11, 3)$  to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 65,$

(2) from the point  $(4, 5)$  to the circle

$$2x^2 + 2y^2 - 8x + 12y + 21 = 0.$$

## ANSWERS

- |                                    |                          |                                   |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. $x + 2y = 7.$                   | 2. $8x - 2y = 11.$       | 3. $x = 0.$                       |
| 4. $23x + 5y = 57.$                | 5. $by - ax = a^2.$      | 6. $(5, 10).$                     |
| 7. $(\frac{3}{5}, -\frac{3}{10}).$ | 8. $(1, -2).$            | 9. $(\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{3}).$ |
| 10. $(-2a, -2b).$                  | 11. $(6, -\frac{1}{8}).$ |                                   |

12.  $3y - 2x = 13$ ;  $(-\frac{16}{3}, \frac{24}{3})$ . 13.  $(2, -1)$ . 14.  $x'^2 + y'^2 = 2a^2$ .  
 18.  $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{46}$ . 19. 9. 20.  $\sqrt{2a^2 + 2ab + b^2}$ . 21.  $(\frac{3}{4}, 2)$ ;  $\frac{1}{4}$ .  
 23. (1)  $28x^2 + 33xy - 28y^2 - 715x - 195y + 4225 = 0$ ;  
 (2)  $123x^2 - 64xy + 3y^2 - 664x + 226y + 763 = 0$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1—5. Use the equations of Art. 163.

6—10. See Ex. of Art. 166.

6.  $x + 2y = 1$  and  $xx_1 + yy_1 = 5$  are identical if

$$\frac{x_1}{1} = \frac{y_1}{2} = 5. \quad \therefore x_1 = 5, \quad y_1 = 10.$$

7.  $2x - y = 6$  and  $5xx_1 + 5yy_1 = 9$  are identical if

$$\frac{5x_1}{2} = \frac{5y_1}{-1} = \frac{9}{6}. \quad \therefore x_1 = \frac{3}{5}, \quad y_1 = -\frac{3}{10}.$$

8.  $2x + y + 12 = 0$  and  $xx_1 + yy_1 - 2(x + x_1) + \frac{3}{2}(y + y_1) - 1 = 0$  are identical if  $\frac{x_1 - 2}{2} = \frac{y_1 + \frac{3}{2}}{1} = \frac{-2x_1 + \frac{3}{2}y_1 - 1}{12}$ , whence, solving,  $x_1 = 1$ ,  $y_1 = -2$ .

9.  $48x - 54y + 53 = 0$  and

$$6xx_1 + 6yy_1 + 5(x + x_1) - 7(y + y_1) + 4 = 0$$

are identical if  $\frac{6x_1 + 5}{48} = \frac{6y_1 - 7}{-54} = \frac{5x_1 - 7y_1 + 4}{53}$ , whence, solving,  $x_1 = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $y_1 = -\frac{1}{3}$ .

10.  $ax + by + 3a^2 + 3b^2 = 0$  and

$$xx_1 + yy_1 + a(x + x_1) + b(y + y_1) = a^2 + b^2$$

are identical if  $\frac{x_1 + a}{a} = \frac{y_1 + b}{b} = \frac{ax_1 + by_1 - a^2 - b^2}{3a^2 + 3b^2}$ . Whence, solving,  $x = -2a$ ,  $y = -2b$ .

11. Subtracting the equations, we obtain  $5x - 3y - 10 = 0$ , which must be the equation of the straight line through the common points of the circles.

Now  $5x - 3y - 10$  and  $xx_1 + yy_1 = 12$  are identical if  $\frac{x_1}{5} = \frac{y_1}{-3} = \frac{12}{10}$ , whence  $x_1 = 6$ ,  $y_1 = -\frac{18}{5}$ .

$\therefore (6, -\frac{18}{5})$  is the pole of the common chord with respect to the first circle.

12. We want the line through  $(-2, 3)$  perpendicular to  $2y + 3x = 0$ , viz.  $y - 3 = \frac{2}{3}(x + 2)$ , i.e.  $3y - 2x = 13$ . If  $(x_1, y_1)$  be the pole of this line, the latter must be the same as  $xx_1 + yy_1 = 81$ .  $\therefore \frac{x_1}{-2} = \frac{y_1}{3} = \frac{81}{13}$ .  $\therefore$  etc.

13. The polars of  $(x_1, y_1)$  with respect to the circles, viz.  $xx_1 + y(y_1 + 3) + 3y_1 + 5 = 0$ , and

$$x(x_1 + 1) + y(y_1 + 4) + x_1 + 4y_1 + 5 = 0,$$

are identical if

$$\frac{x_1 + 1}{x_1} = \frac{y_1 + 4}{y_1 + 3} = \frac{x_1 + 4y_1 + 5}{3y_1 + 5}, \text{ i.e. if } \frac{1}{x_1} = \frac{1}{y_1 + 3} = \frac{x_1 + y_1}{3y_1 + 5}.$$

Whence, solving,  $x_1 = 2$  or  $1$ , and  $y_1 = -1$  or  $-2$ .

$\therefore$  the other point is  $(2, -1)$ .

14. The lines joining the origin to the common points of  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  and  $xx' + yy' = a^2$  are, (Art. 122),

$$a^2(x^2 + y^2) = (xx' + yy')^2.$$

These are at right angles if (Art. 111)  $x'^2 + y'^2 = 2a^2$ .

15. Take  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  as the equation of the circle and  $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2)$  the coordinates of  $P$  and  $Q$ .

The perpendicular from  $P$  on polar of  $Q$  ( $xx_2 + yy_2 = a^2$ )

The perpendicular from  $Q$  on polar of  $P$  ( $xx_1 + yy_1 = a^2$ )

$$\frac{x_1x_2 + y_1y_2 - a^2}{\sqrt{x_2^2 + y_2^2}} = \frac{\sqrt{x_1^2 + y_1^2}}{\sqrt{x_2^2 + y_2^2}} = \frac{\text{distance of } P \text{ from the centre}}{\text{distance of } Q \text{ from the centre}}.$$

16. The equation to the polar of  $(x_1, y_1)$  is

$$xx_1 + yy_1 - k(x + x_1) + c^2 = 0,$$

which always passes through the intersection of the fixed lines  $xx_1 + yy_1 - c^2 = 0$  and  $x + x_1 = 0$ .

17. The length of the chord intercepted by the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  on the line  $xh + yk = a^2$  is (Art. 154)

$$2 \sqrt{a^2 - \frac{a^4}{h^2 + k^2}},$$

and the length of the perpendicular from  $(h, k)$  upon its polar is  $\frac{h^2 + k^2 - a^2}{\sqrt{h^2 + k^2}}$ .

$$\therefore \Delta = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{h^2 + k^2 - a^2}{\sqrt{h^2 + k^2}} \cdot 2a \sqrt{\frac{h^2 + k^2 - a^2}{h^2 + k^2}} = \frac{a(h^2 + k^2 - a^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{h^2 + k^2}.$$

18—20. Use Art. 168.

$$18. t^2 = (-2)^2 + 3^2 - \frac{5}{2} = \text{etc.}$$

$$19. t^2 = 6^2 + (-7)^2 - \frac{7}{3} \times 6 - 2 \times (-7) - 4 = \text{etc.}$$

$$20. t^2 = (a+b)^2 + (a-b)^2 + 2b(a+b) - 3b^2 \\ = 2a^2 + 2b^2 + 2ab + 2b^2 - 3b^2 = 2a^2 + 2ab + b^2.$$

21. If  $(h, k)$  be the point, we have

$$h^2 + k^2 - 16h + 60 = h^2 + k^2 - 12h + 27 = h^2 + k^2 - 16h - 12k + 84.$$

$$\therefore 12k = 24 \text{ and } 4h = 33. \quad \therefore h = \frac{33}{4}, \quad k = 2,$$

and the square of the length

$$= \frac{33^2}{16} + 4 - 33 \cdot 4 + 60 = \frac{1}{16}. \quad \therefore \text{the length} = \frac{1}{4}.$$

22. Let  $(\lambda_1, 0)$ ,  $(\lambda_2, 0)$ ,  $(\lambda_3, 0)$  be the centres, so that  $\lambda_1 \lambda_3 = \lambda_2^2$ . Any point on  $x^2 + y^2 = c^2$  is  $(c \cos \theta, c \sin \theta)$ . The squares of the lengths of the three tangents are  $2\lambda_1 c \cos \theta$ ,  $2\lambda_2 c \cos \theta$ ,  $2\lambda_3 c \cos \theta$ . Hence etc.

23. (1) Substitute in equation (1) of Art. 169.

$$\therefore (3x - 11y)^2 = 65 \{(x - 11)^2 + (y - 3)^2\}, \text{ etc.}$$

(2) Substitute in equation (2) of Art. 170.

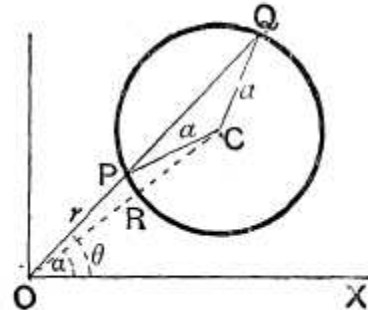
$$(x^2 + y^2 - 4x + 6y + \frac{21}{2})(16 + 25 - 16 + 30 + \frac{21}{2}) = (2x + 8y + \frac{35}{2})^2, \\ \text{i.e. } 131(2x^2 + 2y^2 - 8x + 12y + 21) = (4x + 16y + 35)^2, \text{ etc.}$$

**171.** To find the general equation of a circle referred to polar coordinates.

Let  $O$  be the origin, or pole,  $OX$  the initial line,  $C$  the centre and  $a$  the radius of the circle.

Let the polar coordinates of  $C$  be  $R$  and  $\alpha$ , so that  $OC = R$  and  $\angle XOC = \alpha$ .

Let a radius vector through  $O$  at an angle  $\theta$  with the initial line cut the circle in  $P$  and  $Q$ . Let  $OP$ , or  $OQ$ , be  $r$ .



Then (*Trig. Art.* 164) we have

$$CP^2 = OC^2 + OP^2 - 2OC \cdot OP \cos COP,$$

*i.e.*  $a^2 = R^2 + r^2 - 2Rr \cos (\theta - \alpha),$

*i.e.*  $r^2 - 2Rr \cos (\theta - \alpha) + R^2 - a^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$

This is the required polar equation.

**172.** Particular cases of the general equation in polar coordinates.

(1) Let the initial line be taken to go through the centre  $C$ . Then  $\alpha = 0$ , and the equation becomes

$$r^2 - 2Rr \cos \theta + R^2 - a^2 = 0.$$

(2) Let the pole  $O$  be taken on the circle, so that

$$R = OC = a.$$

The general equation then becomes

$$r^2 - 2ar \cos (\theta - \alpha) = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $r = 2a \cos (\theta - \alpha).$

(3) Let the pole be on the circle and also let the initial line pass through the centre of the circle. In this case

$$\alpha = 0, \text{ and } R = a.$$

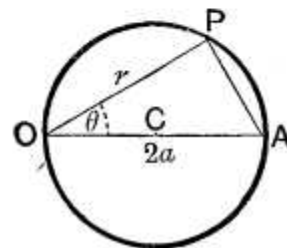
The general equation reduces then to the simple form  $r = 2a \cos \theta$ .

This is at once evident from the figure.

For, if  $OCA$  be a diameter, we have

$$OP = OA \cos \theta,$$

*i.e.*  $r = 2a \cos \theta.$



**173.** The equation (1) of Art. 171 is a quadratic equation which, for any given value of  $\theta$ , gives two values of  $r$ . These two values in the figure are  $OP$  and  $OQ$ .

If these two values be called  $r_1$  and  $r_2$ , we have, from equation (1),

$$r_1 r_2 = \text{product of the roots} = R^2 - a^2,$$

*i.e.*  $OP \cdot OQ = R^2 - a^2.$

The value of the rectangle  $OP \cdot OQ$  is therefore the same for all values of  $\theta$ . It follows that if we drew any other line through  $O$  to cut the circle in  $P_1$  and  $Q_1$  we should have  $OP \cdot OQ = OP_1 \cdot OQ_1$ .

This is Euc. III. 36, Cor.

**174.** Find the equation to the chord joining the points on the circle  $r = 2a \cos \theta$  whose vectorial angles are  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$ , and deduce the equation to the tangent at the point  $\theta_1$ .

The equation to any straight line in polar coordinates is (Art. 88)

$$p = r \cos(\theta - a) \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

If this pass through the points  $(2a \cos \theta_1, \theta_1)$  and  $(2a \cos \theta_2, \theta_2)$ , we have

$$2a \cos \theta_1 \cos(\theta_1 - a) = p = 2a \cos \theta_2 \cos(\theta_2 - a) \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

Hence  $\cos(2\theta_1 - a) + \cos a = \cos(2\theta_2 - a) + \cos a,$

*i.e.*  $2\theta_1 - a = -(2\theta_2 - a),$

since  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$  are not, in general, equal.

Hence  $a = \theta_1 + \theta_2,$

and then, from (2),  $p = 2a \cos \theta_1 \cos \theta_2.$

On substitution in (1), the equation to the required chord is

$$r \cos(\theta - \theta_1 - \theta_2) = 2a \cos \theta_1 \cos \theta_2 \dots\dots\dots (3).$$

The equation to the tangent at the point  $\theta_1$  is found, as in Art. 150, by putting  $\theta_2 = \theta_1$  in equation (3).

We thus obtain as the equation to the tangent

$$r \cos(\theta - 2\theta_1) = 2a \cos^2 \theta_1.$$

As in the foregoing article it could be shewn that the equation to the chord joining the points  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$  on the circle  $r=2a \cos (\theta-\gamma)$  is

$$r \cos [\theta - \theta_1 - \theta_2 + \gamma] = 2a \cos (\theta_1 - \gamma) \cos (\theta_2 - \gamma)$$

and hence that the equation to the tangent at the point  $\theta_1$  is

$$r \cos (\theta - 2\theta_1 + \gamma) = 2a \cos^2 (\theta_1 - \gamma).$$

### EXAMPLES XX

1. Find the coordinates of the centre of the circle

$$r = A \cos \theta + B \sin \theta.$$

2. Find the polar equation of a circle, the initial line being a tangent. What does it become if the origin be on the circumference?

3. Draw the loci

(1)  $r = a$ ; (2)  $r = a \sin \theta$ ; (3)  $r = a \cos \theta$ ; (4)  $r = a \sec \theta$ ;  
 (5)  $r = a \cos (\theta - a)$ ; (6)  $r = a \sec (\theta - a)$ .

4. Prove that the equations  $r = a \cos (\theta - \alpha)$  and  $r = b \sin (\theta - \alpha)$  represent two circles which cut at right angles.

5. Prove that the equation  $r^2 \cos \theta - ar \cos 2\theta - 2a^2 \cos \theta = 0$  represents a straight line and a circle.

6. Find the polar equation to the circle described on the straight line joining the points  $(a, a)$  and  $(b, \beta)$  as diameter.

7. Prove that the equation to the circle described on the straight line joining the points  $(1, 60^\circ)$  and  $(2, 30^\circ)$  as diameter is

$$r^2 - r [\cos (\theta - 60^\circ) + 2 \cos (\theta - 30^\circ)] + \sqrt{3} = 0.$$

8. Find the condition that the straight line

$$\frac{1}{r} = a \cos \theta + b \sin \theta$$

may touch the circle  $r = 2c \cos \theta$ .

### ANSWERS

1.  $\left(\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{A^2 + B^2}, \tan^{-1} \frac{B}{A}\right)$ .  
 2.  $r^2 - 2ra \operatorname{cosec} a \cdot \cos (\theta - a) + a^2 \cot^2 a = 0$ ,  $r = 2a \sin \theta$ .  
 6.  $r^2 - r [a \cos (\theta - \alpha) + b \cos (\theta - \beta)] + ab \cos (a - \beta) = 0$ .  
 8.  $b^2 c^2 + 2ac = 1$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. Put  $B/A = \tan \alpha$  and the equation becomes

$$r = \sqrt{A^2 + B^2} \cos(\theta - \alpha),$$

which is a circle whose centre is  $(\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{A^2 + B^2}, \alpha)$ . (Art. 172.)

2. (1) In the figure of Art. 171, if the circle touches  $OX$ ,  $R = a \operatorname{cosec} \alpha$ . Substitute in equation (1).

(2) Put  $\alpha = 90^\circ$ .

3. (1) is a circle whose centre is the origin. For (2), (3) and (5) see Art. 172. For (4) and (6) see Art. 88.

4. For the circles intersect at the pole, and the vectorial angles of their centres are  $\alpha$  and  $\alpha + 90^\circ$ .

5. Changing to Cartesian Coordinates, we have

$$x(x^2 + y^2) - a(x^2 - y^2) - 2a^2x = 0,$$

or

$$x(x - 2a)(x + a) + y^2(x + a) = 0,$$

*i.e.*

$$(x + a)(x^2 + y^2 - 2ax) = 0.$$

The equation therefore represents the line  $r \cos \theta + a = 0$ , and the circle  $r = 2a \cos \theta$ .

6. Let  $(a, \alpha)$  and  $(b, \beta)$  be the points  $Q$  and  $R$ , and  $(r, \theta)$  the point  $P$ , any point on the circle.

Since  $\widehat{QPR}$  is a right angle,  $PQ^2 + PR^2 = QR^2$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore a^2 + r^2 - 2ar \cos(\theta - \alpha) + b^2 + r^2 - 2br \cos(\theta - \beta) \\ = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos(\alpha - \beta), \quad (\text{Art. 33}), \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e. } r^2 - r \{a \cos(\theta - \alpha) + b \cos(\theta - \beta)\} + ab \cos(\alpha - \beta) = 0.$$

7. Substitute in the result of No. 6.

8. Eliminating  $r$ ,

$$2c \cos \theta (a \cos \theta + b \sin \theta) = 1 = \sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta,$$

or

$$\tan^2 \theta - 2bc \tan \theta + 1 - 2ac = 0,$$

which has equal roots if  $b^2c^2 + 2ac = 1$ .

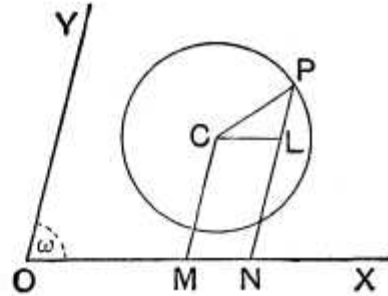


**175.** To find the general equation to a circle referred to oblique axes which meet at an angle  $\omega$ .

Let  $C$  be the centre and  $a$  the radius of the circle. Let the coordinates of  $C$  be  $(h, k)$  so that if  $CM$ , drawn parallel to the axis of  $y$ , meets  $OX$  in  $M$ , then

$$OM = h \text{ and } MC = k.$$

Let  $P$  be any point on the circle whose coordinates are  $x$  and  $y$ . Draw  $PN$ , the ordinate of  $P$ , and  $CL$  parallel to  $OX$  to meet  $PN$  in  $L$ .



Then  $CL = MN = ON - OM = x - h,$

and  $LP = NP - NL = NP - MC = y - k.$

Also  $\angle CLP = \angle ONP = 180^\circ - \angle PNX = 180^\circ - \omega.$

Hence, since  $CL^2 + LP^2 - 2CL \cdot LP \cos CLP = a^2,$   
 we have  $(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 + 2(x - h)(y - k) \cos \omega = a^2,$   
*i.e.*  $x^2 + y^2 + 2xy \cos \omega - 2x(h + k \cos \omega) - 2y(k + h \cos \omega)$   
 $+ h^2 + k^2 + 2hk \cos \omega = a^2.$

The required equation is therefore found.

**176.** As in Art. 142 it may be shewn that the equation

$$x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$$

represents a circle and its radius and centre found.

**Ex.** If the axes be inclined at  $60^\circ$ , prove that the equation

$$x^2 + xy + y^2 - 4x - 5y - 2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1)$$

represents a circle and find its centre and radius.

If  $\omega$  be equal to  $60^\circ$ , so that  $\cos \omega = \frac{1}{2}$ , the equation of Art. 175 becomes

$$x^2 + xy + y^2 - x(2h + k) - y(2k + h) + h^2 + k^2 + hk = a^2.$$

This equation agrees with (1) if

$$2h + k = 4 \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

$$2k + h = 5 \dots\dots\dots(3),$$

and  $h^2 + k^2 + hk - a^2 = -2 \dots\dots\dots(4).$

Solving (2) and (3), we have  $h=1$  and  $k=2$ . Equation (4) then gives

$$a^2 = h^2 + k^2 + hk + 2 = 9,$$

so that  $a = 3.$

The equation (1) therefore represents a circle whose centre is the point  $(1, 2)$  and whose radius is 3, the axes being inclined at  $60^\circ$ .

**EXAMPLES XXI**

Find the inclinations of the axes so that the following equations may represent circles, and in each case find the radius and centre ;

1.  $x^2 - xy + y^2 - 2gx - 2fy = 0.$

2.  $x^2 + \sqrt{3}xy + y^2 - 4x - 6y + 5 = 0.$

3. The axes being inclined at an angle  $\omega$ , find the centre and radius of the circle

$$x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2 - 2gx - 2fy = 0.$$

4. The axes being inclined at  $45^\circ$ , find the equation to the circle whose centre is the point  $(2, 3)$  and whose radius is 4.

5. The axes being inclined at  $60^\circ$ , find the equation to the circle whose centre is the point  $(-3, -5)$  and whose radius is 6.

6. Prove that the equation to a circle whose radius is  $a$  and which touches the axes of coordinates, which are inclined at an angle  $\omega$ , is

$$x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2 - 2a(x + y) \cot \frac{\omega}{2} + a^2 \cot^2 \frac{\omega}{2} = 0.$$

7. Prove that the straight line  $y = mx$  will touch the circle

$$x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$$

if  $(g + fm)^2 = c(1 + 2m \cos \omega + m^2).$

8. The axes being inclined at an angle  $\omega$ , find the equation to the circle whose diameter is the straight line joining the points

$$(x', y') \text{ and } (x'', y'').$$

**ANSWERS**

1.  $120^\circ$ ;  $\left(\frac{4g + 2f}{3}, \frac{4f + 2g}{3}\right)$ ;  $\frac{2\sqrt{3}}{3} \sqrt{f^2 + g^2 + fg}.$

2.  $30^\circ$ ;  $(8 - 6\sqrt{3}, 12 - 4\sqrt{3})$ ;  $\sqrt{47 - 24\sqrt{3}}$ .
3.  $\left(\frac{g - f \cos \omega}{\sin^2 \omega}, \frac{f - g \cos \omega}{\sin^2 \omega}\right)$ ;  $\frac{\sqrt{f^2 + g^2 - 2fg \cos \omega}}{\sin \omega}$ .
4.  $x^2 + \sqrt{2}xy + y^2 - x(4 + 3\sqrt{2}) - 2y(3 + \sqrt{2}) + 3(2\sqrt{2} - 1) = 0$ .
5.  $x^2 + xy + y^2 + 11x + 13y + 13 = 0$ .
8.  $(x - x')(x - x'') + (y - y')(y - y'') + \cos \omega [(x - x')(y - y'') + (x - x'')(y - y')] = 0$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. Comparing with the equation of Art. 175,

$$2 \cos \omega = -1, \text{ so that } \omega = 120^\circ, h + k \cos \omega = g,$$

and  $k + h \cos \omega = f$ .

$$\therefore h - \frac{k}{2} = g \text{ and } k - \frac{h}{2} = f,$$

whence  $h = \frac{4g + 2f}{3}$  and  $k = \frac{4f + 2g}{3}$ .

$$\text{Also } a^2 = h^2 + k^2 + 2hk \cos \omega = gh + fk = \frac{4}{3}(g^2 + f^2 + gf).$$

2. Comparing with the equation of Art. 175,

$$2 \cos \omega = \sqrt{3}, \text{ so that } \omega = 30^\circ, 2 = h + k \cos \omega = h + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \cdot k,$$

and  $3 = k + h \cos \omega = k + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \cdot h,$

whence  $h = 8 - 6\sqrt{3}$  and  $k = 12 - 4\sqrt{3}$ .

$$\text{Also } a^2 = h^2 + k^2 + 2hk \cos \omega - 5 = 2h + 3k - 5 = 47 - 24\sqrt{3}.$$

3. Here  $h + k \cos \omega = g$ , and  $k + h \cos \omega = f$ ,

whence  $h = \frac{g - f \cos \omega}{\sin^2 \omega}$ , and  $k = \frac{f - g \cos \omega}{\sin^2 \omega}$ .

$$\therefore a^2 = h^2 + k^2 + 2hk \cos \omega = gh + fk = \frac{g^2 + f^2 - 2fg \cos \omega}{\sin^2 \omega}.$$

4, 5. Substitute in the equation of Art. 175.

6. In the equation of Art. 175, when we put  $y = 0$ , the resulting equation must be a perfect square.

$$\therefore h^2 + k^2 \cos^2 \omega + 2hk \cos \omega = h^2 + k^2 + 2hk \cos \omega - a^2.$$

$$\therefore k = a \operatorname{cosec} \omega, \text{ and similarly } h = a \operatorname{cosec} \omega.$$

$$\therefore h + k \cos \omega = a \operatorname{cosec} \omega (1 + \cos \omega) = a \cot \frac{\omega}{2}.$$

Similarly  $k + h \cos \omega = a \cot \frac{\omega}{2}.$

$$\therefore h^2 + k^2 + 2hk \cos \omega - a^2 = a^2 \cot^2 \frac{\omega}{2}.$$

Hence, substituting, etc.

7. Putting  $y = mx$  in the equation of the circle, the common points are given by

$$x^2(m^2 + 2m \cos \omega + 1) + 2x(g + fm) + c = 0,$$

which is a perfect square if  $(g + fm)^2 = c(1 + 2m \cos \omega + m^2).$

8. See Art. 145. The condition that the lines (1) and (2) should be at right angles when the axes are oblique

is (Art. 93)  $\frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1} \cdot \frac{k - y_2}{h - x_2} + \left( \frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1} + \frac{k - y_2}{h - x_2} \right) \cos \omega + 1 = 0.$

Hence etc.

**Coordinates of a point on a circle expressed in terms of one single variable.**

**177.** If, in the figure of Art. 139, we put the angle  $MOP$  equal to  $\alpha$ , the coordinates of the point  $P$  are easily seen to be  $a \cos \alpha$  and  $a \sin \alpha$ .

These equations clearly satisfy equation (1) of that article.

The position of the point  $P$  is therefore known when the value of  $\alpha$  is given, and it may be, for brevity, called "the point  $\alpha$ ."

With the ordinary Cartesian coordinates we have to give the values of *two* separate quantities  $x'$  and  $y'$  (which are however connected by the relation  $x' = \sqrt{a^2 - y'^2}$ ) to express the position of a point  $P$  on the circle. The above substitution therefore often simplifies solutions of problems.

**178.** To find the equation to the straight line joining two points,  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , on the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ .

Let the points be  $P$  and  $Q$ , and let  $ON$  be the perpendicular from the origin on the straight line  $PQ$ ; then  $ON$  bisects the angle  $POQ$ , and hence

$$\angle XON = \frac{1}{2} (\angle XOP + \angle XOQ) = \frac{1}{2} (\alpha + \beta).$$

$$\text{Also } ON = OP \cos NOP = a \cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}.$$

The equation to  $PQ$  is therefore (Art. 53),

$$x \cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} + y \sin \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = a \cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}.$$

If we put  $\beta = \alpha$  we have, as the equation to the tangent at the point  $\alpha$ ,

$$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = a.$$

This may also be deduced from the equation of Art. 150 by putting  $x' = a \cos \alpha$  and  $y' = a \sin \alpha$ .

**179.** If the equation to the circle be in the more general form

$$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = a^2, \quad (\text{Art. 140}),$$

we may express the coordinates of  $P$  in the form

$$(h + a \cos \alpha, k + a \sin \alpha).$$

For these values satisfy the above equation.

Here  $\alpha$  is the angle  $LCP$  [Fig. Art. 140].

The equation to the straight line joining the points  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  can be easily shewn to be

$$(x-h) \cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} + (y-k) \sin \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = a \cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2},$$

and so the tangent at the point  $\alpha$  is

$$(x-h) \cos \alpha + (y-k) \sin \alpha = a.$$

**\*180. Common tangents to two circles.** If  $O_1$  and  $O_2$  be the centres of two circles whose radii are  $r_1$  and  $r_2$ , and if one pair of common tangents meet  $O_1O_2$  in  $T_1$  and the other pair meet it in  $T_2$ , then, by similar triangles, we have  $\frac{O_1T_2}{T_2O_1} = \frac{r_1}{r_2} = \frac{O_1T_1}{O_2T_1}$ . The points  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  therefore divide  $O_1O_2$  in the ratio of the radii.

The coordinates of  $T_1$  having been found, the corresponding tangents are straight lines passing through it, such that the perpendiculars on them from  $O_1$  are each equal to  $r_1$ . So for the other pair which pass through  $T_2$ .

**Ex.** Find the four common tangents to the circles

$$x^2 + y^2 - 22x + 4y + 100 = 0, \text{ and } x^2 + y^2 + 22x - 4y - 100 = 0.$$

The equations may be written

$$(x-11)^2 + (y+2)^2 = 5^2, \text{ and } (x+11)^2 + (y-2)^2 = 15^2.$$

The centre of the first is the point  $(11, -2)$  and its radius is 5.

The centre of the second is the point  $(-11, 2)$  and its radius is 15.

Then  $T_2$  is the point dividing internally the line joining the centres in the ratio 5 : 15 and hence (Art. 22) its coordinates are

$$\frac{15 \times 11 + 5 \times (-11)}{15 + 5} \text{ and } \frac{15 \times (-2) + 5 \times 2}{15 + 5},$$

that is,  $T_2$  is the point  $(\frac{11}{2}, -1)$ .

Similarly  $T_1$  is the point dividing this line externally in the ratio 5 : 15, and hence its coordinates are

$$\frac{15 \times 11 - 5 \times (-11)}{15 - 5} \text{ and } \frac{15 \times (-2) - 5 \times 2}{15 - 5},$$

that is,  $T_1$  is the point (22, -4).

Let the equation to either of the tangents passing through  $T_2$  be

$$y + 1 = m(x - \frac{11}{2}) \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

Then the perpendicular from the point (11, -2) on it is equal to  $\pm 5$ , and hence

$$\frac{m(11 - \frac{11}{2}) - (-2 + 1)}{\sqrt{1 + m^2}} = \pm 5.$$

On solving, we have  $m = -\frac{24}{7}$  or  $\frac{4}{3}$ .

The required tangents through  $T_2$  are therefore

$$24x + 7y = 125, \text{ and } 4x - 3y = 25.$$

Similarly the equations to the tangents through  $T_1$  are

$$y + 4 = m(x - 22) \dots \dots \dots (2),$$

where

$$\frac{m(11 - 22) - (-2 + 4)}{\sqrt{1 + m^2}} = \pm 5.$$

On solving, we have  $m = \frac{7}{4}$  or  $-\frac{5}{4}$ .

On substitution in (2), the required equations are therefore

$$7x - 24y = 250 \text{ and } 3x + 4y = 50.$$

The four common tangents are therefore found.

**181.** We shall conclude this chapter with some miscellaneous examples on loci.

**Ex. 1.** Find the locus of a point  $P$  which moves so that its distance from a given point  $O$  is always in a given ratio ( $n : 1$ ) to its distance from another given point  $A$ .

Take  $O$  as origin and the direction of  $OA$  as the axis of  $x$ . Let the distance  $OA$  be  $a$ , so that  $A$  is the point  $(a, 0)$ .

If  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of any position of  $P$  we have

$$OP^2 = n^2 \cdot AP^2,$$

*i.e.* 
$$x^2 + y^2 = n^2 [(x - a)^2 + y^2],$$

*i.e.* 
$$(x^2 + y^2)(n^2 - 1) - 2an^2x + n^2a^2 = 0 \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

Hence, by Art. 143, the locus of  $P$  is a circle.

Let this circle meet the axis of  $x$  in the points  $C$  and  $D$ . Then  $OC$  and  $OD$  are the roots of the equation obtained by putting  $y$  equal to zero in (1).

Hence 
$$OC = \frac{na}{n+1} \text{ and } OD = \frac{na}{n-1}.$$

We therefore have

$$CA = \frac{a}{n+1} \text{ and } AD = \frac{a}{n-1}.$$

Hence 
$$\frac{OC}{CA} = \frac{OD}{AD} = n.$$

The points  $C$  and  $D$  therefore divide the line  $OA$  in the given ratio, and the required circle is on  $CD$  as diameter.

**Ex. 2.** *From any point on one given circle tangents are drawn to another given circle; prove that the locus of the middle point of the chord of contact is a third circle.*

Take the centre of the first circle as origin and let the axis of  $x$  pass through the centre of the second circle. Their equations are then

$$x^2 + y^2 = a^2 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

and 
$$(x - c)^2 + y^2 = b^2 \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

where  $a$  and  $b$  are the radii, and  $c$  the distance between the centres, of the circles.

Any point on (1) is  $(a \cos \theta, a \sin \theta)$  where  $\theta$  is variable. Its chord of contact with respect to (2) is

$$(x - c)(a \cos \theta - c) + ya \sin \theta = b^2 \dots\dots\dots (3).$$

The middle point of this chord of contact is the point where it is met by the perpendicular from the centre, *viz.* the point  $(c, 0)$ .

The equation to this perpendicular is (Art. 70)

$$-(x - c)a \sin \theta + (a \cos \theta - c)y = 0 \dots\dots\dots (4).$$

Any equation deduced from (3) and (4) is satisfied by the coordinates of the point under consideration. If we eliminate  $\theta$  from them, we shall have an equation always satisfied by the coordinates of the point, whatever be the value of  $\theta$ . The result will thus be the equation to the required locus.

Solving (3) and (4), we have

$$a \sin \theta = \frac{b^2 y}{y^2 + (x - c)^2},$$

and 
$$a \cos \theta - c = \frac{b^2 (x - c)}{y^2 + (x - c)^2},$$

so that 
$$a \cos \theta = c + \frac{b^2 (x - c)}{y^2 + (x - c)^2}.$$

Hence

$$a^2 = a^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta = c^2 + 2cb^2 \frac{x - c}{y^2 + (x - c)^2} + \frac{b^4}{y^2 + (x - c)^2}.$$

The required locus is therefore

$$(a^2 - c^2)[y^2 + (x - c)^2] = 2cb^2(x - c) + b^4.$$

This is a circle and its centre and radius are easily found.



**Ex. 3.** Find the locus of a point  $P$  which is such that its polar with respect to one circle touches a second circle.

Taking the notation of the last article, the equations to the two circles are

$$x^2 + y^2 = a^2 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

and

$$(x - c)^2 + y^2 = b^2 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

Let  $(h, k)$  be the coordinates of any position of  $P$ . Its polar with respect to (1) is

$$xh + yk = a^2 \dots\dots\dots (3).$$

Also any tangent to (2) has its equation of the form (Art. 179)

$$(x - c) \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = b \dots\dots\dots (4).$$

If then (3) be a tangent to (2) it must be of the form (4).

Therefore 
$$\frac{\cos \theta}{h} = \frac{\sin \theta}{k} = \frac{c \cos \theta + b}{a^2}.$$

These equations give

$$\cos \theta (a^2 - ch) = bh, \text{ and } \sin \theta (a^2 - ch) = bk.$$

Squaring and adding, we have

$$(a^2 - ch)^2 = b^2 (h^2 + k^2) \dots\dots\dots (5).$$

The locus of the point  $(h, k)$  is therefore the curve

$$b^2 (x^2 + y^2) = (a^2 - cx)^2.$$

**Aliter.** The condition that (3) may touch (2) may be otherwise found.

For, as in Art. 153, the straight line (3) meets the circle (2) in the points whose abscissæ are given by the equation

$$k^2 (x - c)^2 + (a^2 - hx)^2 = b^2 k^2,$$

*i.e.* 
$$x^2 (h^2 + k^2) - 2x (ck^2 + a^2h) + (k^2c^2 + a^4 - b^2k^2) = 0.$$

The line (3) will therefore touch (2) if

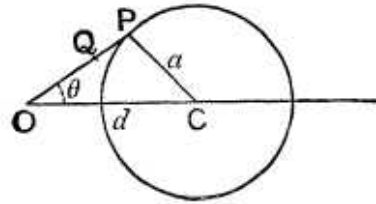
$$(ck^2 + a^2h)^2 = (h^2 + k^2) (k^2c^2 + a^4 - b^2k^2),$$

*i.e.* if 
$$b^2 (h^2 + k^2) = (ch - a^2)^2,$$

which is equation (5).

**Ex. 4.**  $O$  is a fixed point and  $P$  any point on a given circle;  $OP$  is joined and on it a point  $Q$  is taken so that  $OP \cdot OQ = a$  constant quantity  $k^2$ ; prove that the locus of  $Q$  is a circle which becomes a straight line when  $O$  lies on the original circle.

Let  $O$  be taken as pole and the line through the centre  $C$  as the initial line. Let  $OC=d$ , and let the radius of the circle be  $a$ .



The equation to the circle is then

$$a^2 = r^2 + d^2 - 2rd \cos \theta, \text{ (Art. 171),}$$

where  $OP=r$  and  $\angle POC=\theta$ .

Let  $OQ$  be  $\rho$ , so that, by the given condition, we have  $r\rho=k^2$  and hence  $r=\frac{k^2}{\rho}$ .

Substituting this value in the equation to the circle, we have

$$a^2 = \frac{k^4}{\rho^2} + d^2 - 2 \frac{k^2 d}{\rho} \cos \theta \dots \dots \dots (1),$$

so that the equation to the locus of  $Q$  is

$$r^2 - 2 \frac{k^2 d}{d^2 - a^2} r \cos \theta = - \frac{k^4}{d^2 - a^2} \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

But the equation to a circle, whose radius is  $a'$  and whose centre is on the initial line at a distance  $d'$ , is

$$r^2 - 2rd' \cos \theta = a'^2 - d'^2 \dots \dots \dots (3).$$

Comparing (1) and (2), we see that the required locus is a circle, such that

$$d' = \frac{k^2 d}{d^2 - a^2} \text{ and } a'^2 - d'^2 = - \frac{k^4}{d^2 - a^2}.$$

Hence 
$$a'^2 = \frac{k^4}{d^2 - a^2} \left[ \frac{d^2}{d^2 - a^2} - 1 \right] = \frac{k^4 a^2}{(d^2 - a^2)^2}.$$

The required locus is therefore a circle, of radius  $\frac{k^2 a}{d^2 - a^2}$ , whose centre is on the same line as the original centre at a distance  $\frac{k^2 d}{d^2 - a^2}$  from the fixed point.

When  $O$  lies on the original circle the distance  $d$  is equal to  $a$ , and the equation (1) becomes  $k^2 = 2dr \cos \theta$ , *i.e.*, in Cartesian coordinates,

$$x = \frac{k^2}{2d}.$$

In this case the required locus is a straight line perpendicular to  $OC$ .

When a second curve is obtained from a given curve by the above geometrical process, the second curve is said to be the **inverse** of the first curve and the fixed point  $O$  is called the centre of inversion.

The inverse of a circle is therefore a circle or a straight line according as the centre of inversion is not, or is, on the circumference of the original circle.

**Ex. 5.** *PQ is a straight line drawn through O, one of the common points of two circles, and meets them again in P and Q; find the locus of the point S which bisects the line PQ.*

Take O as the origin, let the radii of the two circles be R and R', and let the lines joining their centres to O make angles  $\alpha$  and  $\alpha'$  with the initial line.

The equations to the two circles are therefore, {Art. 172 (2)},

$$r = 2R \cos(\theta - \alpha), \text{ and } r = 2R' \cos(\theta - \alpha').$$

Hence, if S be the middle point of PQ, we have

$$2OS = OP + OQ = 2R \cos(\theta - \alpha) + 2R' \cos(\theta - \alpha').$$

The locus of the point S is therefore

$$\begin{aligned} r &= R \cos(\theta - \alpha) + R' \cos(\theta - \alpha') \\ &= (R \cos \alpha + R' \cos \alpha') \cos \theta + (R \sin \alpha + R' \sin \alpha') \sin \theta \\ &= 2R'' \cos(\theta - \alpha'') \dots\dots\dots (1), \end{aligned}$$

where  $2R'' \cos \alpha'' = R \cos \alpha + R' \cos \alpha',$

and  $2R'' \sin \alpha'' = R \sin \alpha + R' \sin \alpha'.$

Hence  $R'' = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{R^2 + R'^2 + 2RR' \cos(\alpha - \alpha')},$

and  $\tan \alpha'' = \frac{R \sin \alpha + R' \sin \alpha'}{R \cos \alpha + R' \cos \alpha'}.$

From (1) the locus of S is a circle, whose radius is R'', which passes through the origin O and is such that the line joining O to its centre is inclined at an angle  $\alpha''$  to the initial line.

**EXAMPLES XXII**

1. A point moves so that the sum of the squares of its distances from the four sides of a square is constant; prove that it always lies on a circle.
2. A point moves so that the sum of the squares of the perpendiculars let fall from it on the sides of an equilateral triangle is constant; prove that its locus is a circle.
3. A point moves so that the sum of the squares of its distances from the angular points of a triangle is constant; prove that its locus is a circle.
4. Find the locus of a point which moves so that the square of the tangent drawn from it to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  is equal to c times its distance from the straight line  $lx + my + n = 0$ .
5. Find the locus of a point whose distance from a fixed point is in a constant ratio to the tangent drawn from it to a given circle.

6. Find the locus of the vertex of a triangle, given (1) its base and the sum of the squares of its sides, (2) its base and the sum of  $m$  times the square of one side and  $n$  times the square of the other.

7. A point moves so that the sum of the squares of its distances from  $n$  fixed points is given. Prove that its locus is a circle.

8. Whatever be the value of  $a$ , prove that the locus of the intersection of the straight lines

$$x \cos a + y \sin a = a \quad \text{and} \quad x \sin a - y \cos a = b$$

is a circle.

9. From a point  $P$  on a circle perpendiculars  $PM$  and  $PN$  are drawn to two radii of the circle which are not at right angles; find the locus of the middle point of  $MN$ .

10. Tangents are drawn to a circle from a point which always lies on a given line; prove that the locus of the middle point of the chord of contact is another circle.

11. Find the locus of the middle points of chords of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  which pass through the fixed point  $(h, k)$ .

12. Find the locus of the middle points of chords of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  which subtend a right angle at the point  $(c, 0)$ .

13.  $O$  is a fixed point and  $P$  any point on a fixed circle; on  $OP$  is taken a point  $Q$  such that  $OQ$  is in a constant ratio to  $OP$ ; prove that the locus of  $Q$  is a circle.

14.  $O$  is a fixed point and  $P$  any point on a given straight line;  $OP$  is joined and on it is taken a point  $Q$  such that  $OP \cdot OQ = k^2$ ; prove that the locus of  $Q$ , *i.e.* the inverse of the given straight line with respect to  $O$ , is a circle which passes through  $O$ .

15. One vertex of a triangle of given species is fixed, and another moves along the circumference of a fixed circle; prove that the locus of the remaining vertex is a circle and find its radius.

16.  $O$  is any point in the plane of a circle, and  $OP_1P_2$  any chord of the circle which passes through  $O$  and meets the circle in  $P_1$  and  $P_2$ . On this chord is taken a point  $Q$  such that  $OQ$  is equal to (1) the arithmetic, (2) the geometric, and (3) the harmonic mean between  $OP_1$  and  $OP_2$ ; in each case find the equation to the locus of  $Q$ .

17. Find the locus of the point of intersection of the tangent to any circle and the perpendicular let fall on this tangent from a fixed point on the circle.

18. A circle touches the axis of  $x$  and cuts off a constant length  $2l$  from the axis of  $y$ ; prove that the equation of the locus of its centre is  $y^2 - x^2 = l^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2 \omega$ , the axes being inclined at an angle  $\omega$ .

19. A straight line moves so that the product of the perpendiculars on it from two fixed points is constant. Prove that the locus of the feet of the perpendiculars from each of these points upon the straight line is a circle, the same for each.

20.  $O$  is a fixed point and  $AP$  and  $BQ$  are two fixed parallel straight lines;  $BOA$  is perpendicular to both and  $POQ$  is a right angle. Prove that the locus of the foot of the perpendicular drawn from  $O$  upon  $PQ$  is the circle on  $AB$  as diameter.

21. Two rods, of lengths  $a$  and  $b$ , slide along the axes, which are rectangular, in such a manner that their ends are always concyclic; prove that the locus of the centre of the circle passing through these ends is the curve  $4(x^2 - y^2) = a^2 - b^2$ .

22. Shew that the locus of a point, which is such that the tangents from it to two given concentric circles are inversely as the radii, is a concentric circle, the square of whose radius is equal to the sum of the squares of the radii of the given circles.

23. Shew that if the length of the tangent from a point  $P$  to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  be four times the length of the tangent from it to the circle  $(x - a)^2 + y^2 = a^2$ , then  $P$  lies on the circle

$$15x^2 + 15y^2 - 32ax + a^2 = 0.$$

Prove also that these three circles pass through two points and that the distance between the centres of the first and third circles is sixteen times the distance between the centres of the second and third circles.

24. Find the locus of the foot of the perpendicular let fall from the origin upon any chord of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$  which subtends a right angle at the origin.

Find also the locus of the middle points of these chords.

25. Through a fixed point  $O$  are drawn two straight lines  $OPQ$  and  $ORS$  to meet the circle in  $P$  and  $Q$ , and  $R$  and  $S$ , respectively. Prove that the locus of the point of intersection of  $PS$  and  $QR$ , as also that of the point of intersection of  $PR$  and  $QS$ , is the polar of  $O$  with respect to the circle.

26.  $A, B, C$ , and  $D$  are four points in a straight line; prove that the locus of a point  $P$ , such that the angles  $APB$  and  $CPD$  are equal, is a circle.

27. The polar of  $P$  with respect to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  touches the circle  $(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \beta)^2 = b^2$ ; prove that its locus is the curve given by the equation  $(\alpha x + \beta y - a^2)^2 = b^2(x^2 + y^2)$ .

28. A tangent is drawn to the circle  $(x - a)^2 + y^2 = b^2$  and a perpendicular tangent to the circle  $(x + a)^2 + y^2 = c^2$ ; find the locus of their point of intersection, and prove that the bisector of the angle between them always touches one or other of two fixed circles.

29. In any circle prove that the perpendicular from any point of it on the line joining the points of contact of two tangents is a mean proportional between the perpendiculars from the point upon the two tangents.

30. From any point on the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$$

tangents are drawn to the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c \sin^2 \alpha + (g^2 + f^2) \cos^2 \alpha = 0;$$

prove that the angle between them is  $2\alpha$ .

31. The angular points of a triangle are the points

$$(a \cos \alpha, a \sin \alpha), (a \cos \beta, a \sin \beta), \text{ and } (a \cos \gamma, a \sin \gamma);$$

prove that the coordinates of the orthocentre of the triangle are

$$a (\cos \alpha + \cos \beta + \cos \gamma) \text{ and } a (\sin \alpha + \sin \beta + \sin \gamma).$$

Hence prove that if  $A, B, C$ , and  $D$  be four points on a circle the orthocentres of the four triangles  $ABC, BCD, CDA$ , and  $DAB$  lie on a circle.

32. A variable circle passes through the point of intersection  $O$  of any two straight lines and cuts off from them portions  $OP$  and  $OQ$  such that  $m \cdot OP + n \cdot OQ$  is equal to unity; prove that this circle always passes through a fixed point.

33. Find the length of the common chord of the circles, whose equations are  $(x - a)^2 + y^2 = a^2$  and  $x^2 + (y - b)^2 = b^2$ , and prove that the equation to the circle whose diameter is this common chord is

$$(a^2 + b^2)(x^2 + y^2) = 2ab(bx + ay).$$

34. Prove that the length of the common chord of the two circles whose equations are

$$(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = c^2 \text{ and } (x - b)^2 + (y - a)^2 = c^2$$

is  $\sqrt{4c^2 - 2(a - b)^2}$ .

Hence find the condition that the two circles may touch.

35. Find the length of the common chord of the circles

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2ax - 4ay - 4a^2 = 0 \text{ and } x^2 + y^2 - 3ax + 4ay = 0.$$

Find also the equations of the common tangents and shew that the length of each is  $4a$ .

36. Find the equations to the common tangents of the circles

$$(1) \quad x^2 + y^2 - 2x - 6y + 9 = 0 \text{ and } x^2 + y^2 + 6x - 2y + 1 = 0,$$

$$(2) \quad x^2 + y^2 = c^2 \text{ and } (x - a)^2 + y^2 = b^2.$$

**ANSWERS**

4. A circle.                      5. A circle.                      6. A circle.  
 9.  $x^2 + y^2 - 2xy \cos \omega = \frac{a^2 \sin^2 \omega}{4}$ , the given radii being the axes.  
 11. A circle.                      12. A circle.  
 16. (1) A circle; (2) A circle; (3) The polar of  $O$ .  
 17. The curve  $r = a + a \cos \theta$ , the fixed point  $O$  being the origin and the centre of the circle on the initial line.  
 24. The same circle in each case.  
 33.  $2ab \div \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ .            35.  $a \sqrt{\frac{4}{5}}$ ;  $x = 4a$ ;  $63x + 16y + 100a = 0$ .  
 36. (i)  $x = 0$ ,  $3x + 4y = 10$ ,  $y = 4$ , and  $3y = 4x$ .  
 (ii)  $y = mx + c \sqrt{1 + m^2}$ , where  

$$m = \frac{\pm(b+c)}{\sqrt{a^2 - (b+c)^2}}, \text{ or } \frac{\pm(b-c)}{\sqrt{a^2 - (b-c)^2}}.$$

**SOLUTIONS/HINTS**

1. Take parallels to the sides of the square through its centre as axes, and let the side of the square =  $2a$ .  
 Then  $(x - a)^2 + (y - a)^2 + (x + a)^2 + (y + a)^2 = c^2$ .  
 $\therefore 2x^2 + 2y^2 + 4a^2 = c^2$ , which is a circle.  
 2. Let  $x = 0$ ,  $y = 0$ ,  $x + y = a$  be the equations of the sides of the equilateral triangle.  
 Then  $x^2 \sin^2 60^\circ + y^2 \sin^2 60^\circ + \frac{(x + y - a)^2}{2 - 2 \cos 60^\circ} \sin^2 60^\circ = \text{cons.}$   
 (Art. 96).  
 $\therefore 2x^2 + 2y^2 + 2xy - 2a(x + y) + a^2 = \text{cons.}$ , which is a circle by Art. 176.  
 3. Let  $(a, 0)$ ,  $(-a, 0)$ ,  $(h, k)$  be the coordinates of the angular points of the triangle.  
 Then  $(x - a)^2 + y^2 + (x + a)^2 + y^2 + (x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = \text{cons.}$   
 $\therefore 3x^2 + 3y^2 - 2hx - 2ky = \text{cons.}$ , which is the equation of a circle.

4.  $x^2 + y^2 - a^2 = c \cdot \frac{lx + my + n}{\sqrt{l^2 + m^2}}$ , which is the equation of a circle.

5. Take  $(0, 0)$  for fixed point, and the general equation for the circle.

Then, by Art. 168,  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = \lambda (x^2 + y^2)$ ; giving a circle.

6. (1) Let  $(a, 0)$ ,  $(-a, 0)$ ,  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of the angular points.

Then  $(x - a)^2 + y^2 + (x + a)^2 + y^2 = \text{cons.}$

$\therefore 2x^2 + 2y^2 = \text{cons.}$ ; which is a circle.

(2)  $m \{(x - a)^2 + y^2\} + n \{(x + a)^2 + y^2\} = \text{cons.},$

*i.e.*  $(m + n)(x^2 + y^2) - 2ax(m - n) = \text{cons.},$

which is the equation to a circle.

7. Let  $(a_1, b_1)$ ,  $(a_2, b_2)$ ,  $\dots\dots (a_n, b_n)$  be the coordinates of the fixed points.

Then  $\sum_{r=1}^n \{(x - a_r)^2 + (y - b_r)^2\} = \text{cons.}$

$\therefore n(x^2 + y^2) - 2\sum a_r x - 2\sum b_r y = \text{cons.},$  which is a circle.

8. Square and add the given equations;

$\therefore x^2 + y^2 = a^2 + b^2$ ; the equation to a circle.

9. Take the given radii for axes, and  $(h, k)$  as the coordinates of  $P$ ,  $a$  as the radius of the circle, and  $(x, y)$ , the coordinates of the middle point of  $MN$ . Then, since

$$OM = h + k \cos \omega \quad \text{and} \quad ON = k + h \cos \omega,$$

we have  $2x = h + k \cos \omega$  and  $2y = k + h \cos \omega$ ; also

$$h^2 + k^2 + 2hk \cos \omega = a^2.$$

Eliminating  $(h, k)$ , we have

$$4(x - y \cos \omega)^2 + 4(y - x \cos \omega)^2 + 8(x - y \cos \omega)(y - x \cos \omega) \cos \omega = a^2 \sin^4 \omega,$$

*i.e.*  $x^2 + y^2 - 2xy \cos \omega = \frac{1}{4}a^2 \sin^2 \omega$ ; which is a circle.



10. Let  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  be the equation to the circle, and  $(h, k)$  the coordinates of the point which lies on the line  $gx + fy = c$ . The required locus is the intersection of  $xh + yk = a^2$  with  $\frac{x}{h} = \frac{y}{k}$ , with the condition  $gh + fk = c$ . Whence, eliminating  $(h, k)$ , we have  $c(x^2 + y^2) = a^2(gx + fy)$ ; the equation to a circle.

11. Let  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of the middle point of the chord joining the points  $a$  and  $\beta$ . (Art. 178.)

$$\text{Then } x = \frac{1}{2}a(\cos a + \cos \beta) = a \cos \frac{a + \beta}{2} \cos \frac{a - \beta}{2}, \dots(i)$$

$$\text{and } y = \frac{1}{2}a(\sin a + \sin \beta) = a \sin \frac{a + \beta}{2} \cos \frac{a - \beta}{2}. \dots(ii)$$

$$\text{Also } h \cos \frac{a + \beta}{2} + k \sin \frac{a + \beta}{2} = a \cos \frac{a - \beta}{2}. \dots(iii)$$

Multiply (iii) by  $a \cos \frac{a - \beta}{2}$ ; then

$$xh + yk = a^2 \cos^2 \frac{a - \beta}{2} = x^2 + y^2, \text{ from (i) and (ii).}$$

12. Using the same equations, the condition gives

$$\frac{a \sin a}{a \cos a - c} \cdot \frac{a \sin \beta}{a \cos \beta - c} + 1 = 0,$$

$$\text{i.e. } a^2 \cos(a - \beta) - ac(\cos a + \cos \beta) + c^2 = 0,$$

$$\text{i.e. } 2a^2 \cos^2 \frac{a - \beta}{2} - a^2 - 2cx + c^2 = 0,$$

$$\text{i.e. } 2(x^2 + y^2) - a^2 - 2cx + c^2 = 0;$$

which is the equation to a circle.

13. Change  $r$  into  $\mu r$  in the general polar equation to a circle. (Art. 171.)

14. Change  $r$  into  $k^2/r$  in the general polar equation to a straight line.

15. Take  $A$  for origin and the line joining  $A$  to the centre of the locus of  $B$  as initial line; and let the equation of the locus of  $B$  be  $c^2 + r^2 - 2cr \cos \theta = a^2$ .

Let  $(\rho, \phi)$  be the coordinates of  $B$ , and  $(r, \theta)$  those of  $C$ . Then  $r = \rho/\lambda$ , where  $\lambda$  is a constant,

$$\theta = \phi + A; \text{ also } \rho^2 + c^2 - 2c\rho \cos \phi = a^2.$$

$$\therefore \lambda^2 r^2 + c^2 - 2c\lambda r \cos(\theta - A) = a^2,$$

or, in Cartesians,  $(\lambda x - c \cos A) + (\lambda y - c \sin A)^2 = a^2$ .

$$\therefore \text{the radius} = a/\lambda.$$

16. Let  $r^2 - 2r\rho \cos(\theta - a) + \rho^2 - a^2 = 0$  be the equation to the circle.

(i)  $2r = r_1 + r_2 = 2\rho \cos(\theta - a)$ ; which is a circle.

(ii)  $r^2 = r_1 r_2 = \rho^2 - a^2$ ; which is a circle.

(iii)  $\frac{2}{r} = \frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} = \frac{2\rho \cos(\theta - a)}{\rho^2 - a^2}$ ; which is a straight

line.

17. Take the fixed point for origin, and  $r = 2a \cos \theta$ , the equation to the circle. The required locus is the intersection of  $r \cos(\theta - 2a) = 2a \cos^2 a$  (Art. 174) with

$$\theta = 2a. \quad \therefore r = 2a \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2} = a(1 + \cos \theta).$$

18. Taking the general equation of Art. 175, since the circle touches the axis of  $x$ ,

$$\therefore (h + k \cos \omega)^2 - (h^2 + k^2 + 2hk \cos \omega - a^2) = 0.$$

$$\therefore k^2 \sin^2 \omega - a^2 = 0.$$

Also  $(k + h \cos \omega)^2 - (h^2 + k^2 + 2hk \cos \omega - a^2) = l^2$ .

$$\therefore a^2 - h^2 \sin^2 \omega = l^2. \quad \therefore k^2 - h^2 = l^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2 \omega. \quad \text{Hence etc.}$$

19. Let the two fixed points be  $(a, 0)$  and  $(-a, 0)$ , and let the straight line be

$$x \cos \omega + y \sin \omega = p. \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

Since the product of the perpendiculars is constant ( $= c^2$ , say)

$$\therefore (a \cos \omega - p)(-a \cos \omega - p) = c^2,$$

*i.e.*  $p^2 = a^2 \cos^2 \omega + c^2. \dots\dots\dots(2)$

The equation to the perpendicular from  $(a, 0)$  upon (1) is, by Art. 70,

$$(x - a) \sin \omega - y \cos \omega = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $x \sin \omega - y \cos \omega = a \sin \omega$  .....(3)

We have to eliminate  $p, \omega$  from (1), (2), (3). Squaring and adding (1) and (3), we have

$$x^2 + y^2 = p^2 + a^2 \sin^2 \omega = a^2 + c^2, \text{ from (2).}$$

Hence the locus is a circle, which remains unaltered when  $a$  is changed into  $-a$ . Hence, etc.

**20.** Take  $O$  as origin, and let the equation to  $AP$  be  $x = a$ , and that to  $BQ$  be  $x = -b$ .

Let  $x \cos \omega + y \sin \omega = p$ , be the equation to  $PQ$ , so that  $P$  is the point  $\left(a, \frac{p - a \cos \omega}{\sin \omega}\right)$  and  $Q$  is the point

$$\left(-b, \frac{p + b \cos \omega}{\sin \omega}\right).$$

Since  $OP, OQ$  are at right angles,

$$\therefore \frac{p - a \cos \omega}{a \sin \omega} \times \frac{p + b \cos \omega}{-b \sin \omega} = -1. \quad (\text{Art. 69.})$$

$$\therefore p^2 - (b - a) p \cos \omega - ab = 0.$$

Now  $p, \omega$  are the polar coordinates of the foot of the perpendicular from  $O$  on  $PQ$ , so that the polar equation to the locus required is  $r^2 + (b - a) r \cos \theta - ab = 0$ , or, in Cartesians,  $x^2 + y^2 + (b - a)x - ab = 0$ , which is a circle on  $AB$  as diameter.

**21.** Let  $(h, k)$  be the coordinates of the centre of the circle for any position of the rods.

Then the intercepts of the rods on the axis of  $x$ , will be  $h - \frac{a}{2}, h + \frac{a}{2}$ , and on the axis of  $y$  they are  $k - \frac{b}{2}, k + \frac{b}{2}$ .

Hence  $\left(h - \frac{a}{2}\right) \left(h + \frac{a}{2}\right) = \left(k - \frac{b}{2}\right) \left(k + \frac{b}{2}\right).$

Therefore the required locus is  $4(x^2 - y^2) = a^2 - b^2.$

22. Let  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  and  $x^2 + y^2 = b^2$  be the equation to the two given circles.

Then  $a^2(x^2 + y^2 - a^2) = b^2(x^2 + y^2 - b^2)$ , i.e.  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2 + b^2$ .

23. We have  $x^2 + y^2 - a^2 = 16(x - a)^2 + 16y^2 - 16a^2$ ,  
i.e.  $15x^2 + 15y^2 - 32ax + a^2 = 0$ .

The coordinates of the centres are  $(0, 0)$ ;  $(a, 0)$ ;  $(\frac{16a}{15}, 0)$ , which are all on the axis of  $x$ .

24. (i) The lines joining the common points of the circle and the chord  $x \cos a + y \sin a = p$  to the origin are (Art. 122)

$$p^2(x^2 + y^2) + 2(gx + fy)(x \cos a + y \sin a) p + c(x \cos a + y \sin a)^2 = 0$$

which are at right angles if (Art. 111)

$$2p^2 + 2p(g \cos a + f \sin a) + c = 0.$$

Hence, for the required locus, we have

$$2(x^2 + y^2) + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0,$$

since  $p, a$  are the polar coordinates of the foot of the perpendicular from  $(0, 0)$ .

(ii) We have to eliminate  $x_1, x_2, y_1, y_2$  between  
 $x_1^2 + y_1^2 + 2gx_1 + 2fy_1 + c = 0, \quad x_2^2 + y_2^2 + 2gx_2 + 2fy_2 + c = 0,$   
 $x_1x_2 + y_1y_2 = 0, \quad 2x = x_1 + x_2, \text{ and } 2y = y_1 + y_2.$

From the first three of these, we have

$$(x_1 + x_2)^2 + (y_1 + y_2)^2 + 2g(x_1 + x_2) + 2f(y_1 + y_2) + 2c = 0.$$

$$\therefore 2x^2 + 2y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0.$$

25. Take  $OPQ, ORS$  as the axes, and let

$$OP = x_1, \quad OQ = x_2, \quad OR = y_1 \text{ and } OS = y_2.$$

Let the equation to the circle be

$$x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0. \dots\dots (1)$$

Then, as in Art. 146,

$$x_1 + x_2 = -2g, \quad y_1 + y_2 = -2f, \dots\dots\dots (2)$$

and

$$x_1x_2 = y_1y_2 = c. \dots\dots\dots (3)$$

The equations to  $PR$  and  $QS$  are

$$\frac{x}{x_1} + \frac{y}{y_1} = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{x}{x_2} + \frac{y}{y_2} = 1.$$

On addition, their point of intersection lies on

$$x \frac{x_1 + x_2}{x_1 x_2} + y \frac{y_1 + y_2}{y_1 y_2} = 2, \quad \text{i.e. by equations (2) and (3) on}$$

$$-x \frac{2g}{c} - y \frac{2f}{c} = 2, \quad \text{i.e. on } gx + fy + c = 0,$$

which, as in Art. 163, is the polar of (i) with respect to the origin.

The same would be true for any other pair of lines drawn through  $O$ . Hence in all cases the corresponding point of intersection lies on the polar of  $O$ . Hence, etc.

The same proposition may similarly be shewn for the intersection of  $PS$  and  $QR$ .

26. See Ex. XI. 18.

27. Let  $P$  be the point  $(x', y')$ . Its polar with regard to the first circle, viz.  $xx' + yy' = a^2$ , will be identical with  $(x - a) \cos \theta + (y - \beta) \sin \theta = b$ , (any tangent to the second circle), if

$$\frac{\cos \theta}{x'} = \frac{\sin \theta}{y'} = \frac{b + a \cos \theta + \beta \sin \theta}{a^2} = \frac{b}{a^2 - ax' - \beta y'}.$$

Therefore, eliminating  $\theta$ , the locus of  $P$  is given by

$$(ax + \beta y - a^2)^2 = b^2 (x^2 + y^2).$$

28. Any tangent to the first circle is

$$(x - a) \cos a + y \sin a = b;$$

A perpendicular tangent to the second circle is

$$(x + a) \cos \left( a \pm \frac{\pi}{2} \right) + y \sin \left( a \pm \frac{\pi}{2} \right) = c, \quad (\text{Art. 179}),$$

or  $y \cos a - (x + a) \sin a = \pm c;$

$$\therefore \frac{\cos a}{+cy - b(x + a)} = \frac{\sin a}{-by \pm c(x - a)} = \frac{1}{a^2 - x^2 - y^2}.$$

Hence for the required locus, we have

$$\{cy \pm b(x+a)\}^2 + \{by \mp c(x-a)\}^2 = \{x^2 + y^2 - a^2\}^2.$$

The equation to the bisectors is (Art. 84)

$$(x-a) \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - b \pm \{y \cos \alpha - (x+a) \sin \alpha \mp c\} = 0,$$

$$\text{or } x \cos \left( \alpha - \frac{\pi}{4} \right) + (y+a) \sin \left( \alpha - \frac{\pi}{4} \right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (b \mp c),$$

$$\text{and } x \cos \left( \alpha + \frac{\pi}{4} \right) + (y-a) \sin \left( \alpha + \frac{\pi}{4} \right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (b \pm c),$$

which are tangents to the circles whose equations are

$$x^2 + (y+a)^2 = \frac{1}{2} (b \mp c)^2, \text{ and } x^2 + (y-a)^2 = \frac{1}{2} (b \pm c)^2. \text{ (Art. 179.)}$$

**29.** Let  $\alpha, \beta$  be the points of contact of the tangents to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ , and  $\phi$  the point from which the perpendiculars are drawn.

Then, if  $p_1, p_2, p$  are the perpendiculars,

$$p_1 = \text{the perpendicular from } (a \cos \phi, a \sin \phi) \text{ upon} \\ x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = a,$$

$$\text{and } \therefore = a - a \cos(\phi - \alpha) = 2a \sin^2 \frac{\phi - \alpha}{2};$$

$$p_2 = \text{the perpendicular from } (a \cos \phi, a \sin \phi) \text{ upon} \\ x \cos \beta + y \sin \beta = a,$$

$$\text{and } \therefore = a - a \cos(\phi - \beta) = 2a \sin^2 \frac{\phi - \beta}{2};$$

and  $p =$  the perpendicular from  $(a \cos \phi, a \sin \phi)$  upon

$$x \cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} + y \sin \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = a \cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2},$$

$$\text{and } \therefore = a \cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2} - a \cos \left( \phi - \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \right) = 2a \sin \frac{\phi - \alpha}{2} \cdot \sin \frac{\phi - \beta}{2}.$$

$$\therefore p_1 p_2 = p^2.$$

**30.** The circles are concentric. If  $O$  be the centre and  $TP, TQ$  the tangents, then

$$OT = \sqrt{g^2 + f^2 - c} \text{ and } OP = \sqrt{g^2 + f^2 - c} \cdot \sin \alpha,$$

$$\therefore \widehat{OTP} = \alpha, \text{ and } \widehat{PTQ} = 2\alpha.$$

**31.** As in Ex. 2, Page 56, the equations to the perpendiculars from the first two angular points upon the opposite sides are

$$(x - a \cos \alpha)(\cos \beta - \cos \gamma) + (y - a \sin \alpha)(\sin \beta - \sin \gamma) = 0,$$

and

$$(x - a \cos \beta)(\cos \gamma - \cos \alpha) + (y - a \sin \beta)(\sin \gamma - \sin \alpha) = 0.$$

These are clearly satisfied by

$$x = a(\cos \alpha + \cos \beta + \cos \gamma), \quad y = a(\sin \alpha + \sin \beta + \sin \gamma),$$

so that these coordinates give the orthocentre.

If  $A, B, C, D$  be the points  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta$ , then, on writing down the coordinates of the orthocentres of the four triangles, we easily see that they lie on the circle

$$\begin{aligned} [x - a(\cos \alpha + \cos \beta + \cos \gamma + \cos \delta)]^2 \\ + [y - a(\sin \alpha + \sin \beta + \sin \gamma + \sin \delta)]^2 = a^2. \end{aligned}$$

**32.** Taking the two straight lines for axes, let

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2xy \cos \omega = 2ax + 2by$$

be the equation to the circle. Then  $ma + nb = \frac{1}{2}$ .

If  $(h, k)$  be the coordinates of the centre, then

$$m(h + k \cos \omega) + n(k + h \cos \omega) = \frac{1}{2} \quad (\text{Art. 175}),$$

so that the centre lies on the straight line

$$x(m + n \cos \omega) + y(n + m \cos \omega) = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Hence, if  $ON$  be drawn perpendicular to this line and produced to  $O'$  so that  $O'N = ON$ , the circle will pass through the point  $O'$ .

**33.** The circles pass through the origin, and the other

common point is  $\left( \frac{2ab^2}{a^2 + b^2}, \frac{2a^2b}{a^2 + b^2} \right)$ .

$$\therefore (\text{chord})^2 = \frac{4(a^2b^4 + a^4b^2)}{(a^2 + b^2)^2}; \quad \therefore \text{chord} = \frac{2ab}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}.$$

The equation to the circle is (Art. 145)

$$x\{(a^2 + b^2)x - 2ab^2\} + y\{(a^2 + b^2)y - 2a^2b\} = 0,$$

i.e.  $(a^2 + b^2)(x^2 + y^2) = 2ab(bx + ay).$

**34.** Let  $P$  be a common point,  $A$  and  $B$  the centres and  $C$  the middle point of  $AB$ . Then since  $PA = PB = c$ ,

$$\therefore \text{common chord} = 2PC = \sqrt{4PA^2 - 4AC^2} = \sqrt{4c^2 - 2(a-b)^2}.$$

If the circles touch,  $PC = 0$ ;  $\therefore a - b = \pm \sqrt{2} \cdot c$ .

**35.** The equations may be written,

$$(x-a)^2 + (y-2a)^2 = (3a)^2, \text{ and } \left(x - \frac{3a}{2}\right)^2 + (y+2a)^2 = \left(\frac{5a}{2}\right)^2.$$

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be the centres,  $C$  a common point,  $\widehat{ACB} = \alpha$ , and  $d$  the length of common chord.

$$\text{Then } AB^2 = AC^2 + CB^2 - 2AC \cdot CB \cdot \cos \alpha.$$

$$\therefore \frac{65}{4} = 9 + \frac{25}{4} - 15 \cdot \cos \alpha; \quad \therefore \cos \alpha = -\frac{1}{15} \text{ and } \sin \alpha = \frac{\sqrt{224}}{15}.$$

$$\text{Now } d \cdot AB = 4 \triangle ACB = 2AC \cdot CB \sin \alpha$$

$$= 2(3a) \left(\frac{5a}{2}\right) \frac{\sqrt{224}}{15} = \sqrt{224} a^2.$$

$$\therefore d = 2 \sqrt{\frac{224}{65}} \cdot a = 8 \sqrt{\frac{14}{65}} \cdot a.$$

Let  $x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p = 0$  be the equation to a common tangent.

$$\text{Then } a \cos \alpha + 2a \sin \alpha - p = \pm 3a,$$

$$\text{and } \frac{3}{2}a \cos \alpha - 2a \sin \alpha - p = \pm \frac{5a}{2}.$$

Subtracting, the only equation giving real values of  $\alpha$  is

$$-\frac{1}{2} \cos \alpha + 4 \sin \alpha = \frac{1}{2}.$$



Whence, solving,

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \sin \alpha = 0, \\ \cos \alpha = -1, \\ p = -4a \end{array} \right\} \text{ or } \left. \begin{array}{l} \sin \alpha = \frac{16}{65}, \\ \cos \alpha = \frac{63}{65}, \\ p = -\frac{100a}{65} \end{array} \right\},$$

so that the equations of the common tangents are

$$x = 4a, \text{ and } 63x + 16y + 100a = 0.$$

$$\therefore (\text{length})^2 = AB^2 - \{\text{difference of radii}\}^2 = \frac{65}{4}a^2 - \frac{a^2}{4} = 16a^2.$$

$$\therefore \text{length} = 4a.$$

**36.** (1) The equations are

$$(x-1)^2 + (y-3)^2 = 1^2, \text{ and } (x+3)^2 + (y-1)^2 = 3^2.$$

If  $x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = p$  is a common tangent

then  $\cos \alpha + 3 \sin \alpha - p = \pm 1$ , and  $-3 \cos \alpha + \sin \alpha - p = \pm 3$ .

Subtracting,  $2 \cos \alpha + \sin \alpha = \pm 1$  or  $\pm 2$ ;

$$\therefore 3 \cos^2 \alpha + 4 \cos \alpha \sin \alpha = 0, \text{ or } 3 \sin^2 \alpha - 4 \cos \alpha \sin \alpha = 0.$$

Whence  $\cos \alpha = 0, -\frac{4}{5}, 1$ , or  $\frac{3}{5}$ .

$$\sin \alpha = 1, \frac{3}{5}, 0, \text{ or } \frac{4}{5},$$

and  $p = 4, 0, 0$ , or  $\frac{6}{5}$ .

Hence the four common tangents are

$$y = 4, 4x - 3y = 0, x = 0, \text{ and } 3x + 4y = 10.$$

(2) The line  $y = mx + c \sqrt{1 + m^2}$ , which is a tangent to the first circle, will touch the second if

$$\{cm \sqrt{1 + m^2} - a\}^2 = (1 + m^2)[a^2 - b^2 + c^2(1 + m^2)],$$

which becomes

$$m^4 \{a^4 + (c^2 - b^2)^2 - 2a^2(c^2 + b^2)\} + 2m^2 \{(c^2 - b^2)^2 - a^2(c^2 + b^2)\} + (c^2 - b^2)^2 = 0,$$

whence  $m^2 = \frac{(b+c)^2}{a^2 - (b+c)^2}$  or  $\frac{(b-c)^2}{a^2 - (b-c)^2}$ .

Substituting for  $m$ , we have the required equations.

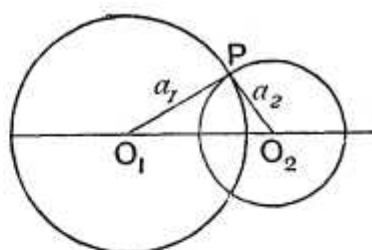
## Chapter 9

# SYSTEMS OF CIRCLES

**182. Orthogonal Circles.** Two circles are said to intersect orthogonally when the tangents at their points of intersection are at right angles.

If the two circles intersect at  $P$ , the radii  $O_1P$  and  $O_2P$ , which are perpendicular to the tangents at  $P$ , must also be at right angles.

**Def.** Two circles are



$$\text{Hence} \quad O_1O_2^2 = O_1P^2 + O_2P^2,$$

*i.e.* the square of the distance between the centres must be equal to the sum of the squares of the radii.

Also the tangent from  $O_2$  to the other circle is equal to the radius  $a_2$ , *i.e.* if two circles be orthogonal the length of the tangent drawn from the centre of one circle to the second circle is equal to the radius of the first.

Either of these two conditions will determine whether the circles are orthogonal.

The centres of the circles

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad x^2 + y^2 + 2g'x + 2f'y + c' = 0,$$

are the points  $(-g, -f)$  and  $(-g', -f')$ ; also the squares of their radii are  $g^2 + f^2 - c$  and  $g'^2 + f'^2 - c'$ .

They therefore cut orthogonally if

$$(-g + g')^2 + (-f + f')^2 = g^2 + f^2 - c + g'^2 + f'^2 - c',$$

*i.e.* if  $2gg' + 2ff' = c + c'.$

**183. Radical Axis. Def.** The radical axis of two circles is the locus of a point which moves so that the lengths of the tangents drawn from it to the two circles are equal.

Let the equations to the circles be

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

and  $x^2 + y^2 + 2g_1x + 2f_1y + c_1 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2),$

and let  $(x_1, y_1)$  be any point such that the tangents from it to these circles are equal.

By Art. 168, we have

$$x_1^2 + y_1^2 + 2gx_1 + 2fy_1 + c = x_1^2 + y_1^2 + 2g_1x_1 + 2f_1y_1 + c_1,$$

*i.e.*  $2x_1(g - g_1) + 2y_1(f - f_1) + c - c_1 = 0.$

But this is the condition that the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  should lie on the locus

$$2x(g - g_1) + 2y(f - f_1) + c - c_1 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

This is therefore the equation to the radical axis, and it is clearly a straight line.

It is easily seen that the radical axis is perpendicular to the line joining the centres of the circles. For these centres are the points  $(-g, -f)$  and  $(-g_1, -f_1)$ . The “*m*” of the line joining them is therefore  $\frac{-f_1 - (-f)}{-g_1 - (-g)},$

*i.e.*  $\frac{f - f_1}{g - g_1}.$

The “*m*” of the line (3) is  $-\frac{g - g_1}{f - f_1}.$

The product of these two “*m*’s” is  $-1.$

Hence, by Art. 69, the radical axis and the line joining the centres are perpendicular.

**184.** A **geometrical construction** can be given for the radical axis of two circles.

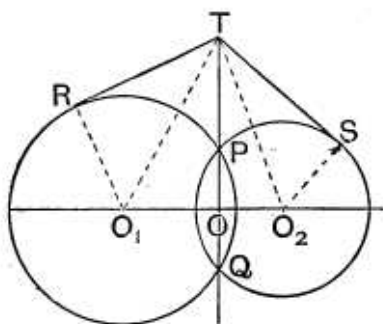


Fig. 1.

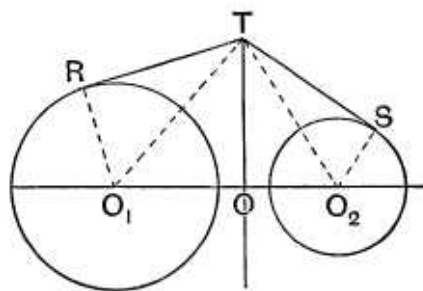


Fig. 2.

If the circles intersect in real points,  $P$  and  $Q$ , as in Fig. 1, the radical axis is clearly the straight line  $PQ$ . For if  $T$  be any point on  $PQ$  and  $TR$  and  $TS$  be the tangents from it to the circles we have, by Euc. III. 36,

$$TR^2 = TP \cdot TQ = TS^2.$$

If they do not intersect in real points, as in the second figure, let their radii be  $a_1$  and  $a_2$ , and let  $T$  be a point such that the tangents  $TR$  and  $TS$  are equal in length.

Draw  $TO$  perpendicular to  $O_1O_2$ .

Since  $TR^2 = TS^2$ ,

we have  $TO_1^2 - O_1R^2 = TO_2^2 - O_2S^2$ ,

$$i.e. \quad TO^2 + O_1O^2 - a_1^2 = TO^2 + OO_2^2 - a_2^2,$$

$$i.e. \quad O_1O^2 - OO_2^2 = a_1^2 - a_2^2,$$

$$i.e. \quad (O_1O - OO_2)(O_1O + OO_2) = a_1^2 - a_2^2,$$

$$i.e. \quad O_1O - OO_2 = \frac{a_1^2 - a_2^2}{O_1O_2} = \text{a constant quantity.}$$

Hence  $O$  is a fixed point, since it divides the fixed straight line  $O_1O_2$  into parts whose difference is constant.

Therefore, since  $O_1OT$  is a right angle, the locus of  $T$ , *i.e.* the radical axis, is a fixed straight line perpendicular to the line joining the centres.

**185.** If the equations to the circles in Art. 183 be written in the form  $S=0$  and  $S'=0$ , the equation (3) to the radical axis may be written  $S-S'=0$ , and therefore the radical axis passes through the common points, real or imaginary, of the circles  $S=0$  and  $S'=0$ .

In the last article we saw that this was true geometrically for the case in which the circles meet in real points.

When the circles do not geometrically intersect, as in Fig. 2, we must then look upon the straight line  $TO$  as passing through the imaginary points of intersection of the two circles.

**186.** *The radical axes of three circles, taken in pairs, meet in a point.*

Let the equations to the three circles be

$$S = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

$$S' = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

and

$$S'' = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

The radical axis of the circles (1) and (2) is the straight line

$$S - S' = 0 \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

The radical axis of (2) and (3) is the straight line

$$S' - S'' = 0 \dots\dots\dots(5).$$

If we add equation (5) to equation (4) we shall have the equation of a straight line through their points of intersection.

Hence  $S - S'' = 0 \dots\dots\dots(6)$  is a straight line through the intersection of (4) and (5).

But (6) is the radical axis of the circles (3) and (1).

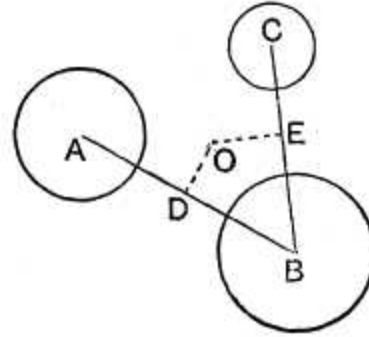
Hence the three radical axes of the three circles, taken in pairs, meet in a point.

This point is called the **Radical Centre** of the three circles.

This may also be easily proved geometrically. For let the three circles be called  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$ , and let the radical axis of  $A$  and  $B$  and that of  $B$  and  $C$  meet in a point  $O$ .

By the definition of the radical axis, the tangent from  $O$  to the circle  $A$  = the tangent from  $O$  to the circle  $B$ , and the tangent from  $O$  to the circle  $B$  = tangent from it to the circle  $C$ .

Hence the tangent from  $O$  to the circle  $A$  = the tangent from it to the circle  $C$ , i.e.  $O$  is also a point on the radical axis of the circles  $A$  and  $C$ .



**187.** If  $S=0$  and  $S'=0$  be the equations of two circles, the equation of any circle through their points of intersection is  $S=\lambda S'$ . Also the equation to any circle, such that the radical axis of it and  $S=0$  is  $u=0$ , is  $S+\lambda u=0$ .

For wherever  $S=0$  and  $S'=0$  are both satisfied the equation  $S=\lambda S'$  is clearly satisfied, so that  $S=\lambda S'$  is some locus through the intersections of  $S=0$  and  $S'=0$ .

Also in both  $S$  and  $S'$  the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  are equal and the coefficient of  $xy$  is zero. The same statement is therefore true for the equation  $S=\lambda S'$ . Hence the proposition.

Again, since  $u$  is only of the first degree, therefore in  $S+\lambda u$  the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  are equal and the coefficient of  $xy$  is zero, so that  $S+\lambda u=0$  is clearly a circle. Also it passes through the intersections of  $S=0$  and  $u=0$ .

### EXAMPLES XXIII

Prove that the following pairs of circles intersect orthogonally :

- $x^2+y^2-2ax+c=0$  and  $x^2+y^2+2by-c=0$ .
- $x^2+y^2-2ax+2by+c=0$  and  $x^2+y^2+2bx+2ay-c=0$ .
- Find the equation to the circle which passes through the origin and cuts orthogonally each of the circles

$$x^2+y^2-6x+8=0 \text{ and } x^2+y^2-2x-2y=7.$$

Find the radical axis of the pairs of circles

- $x^2+y^2=144$  and  $x^2+y^2-15x+11y=0$ .
- $x^2+y^2-3x-4y+5=0$  and  $3x^2+3y^2-7x+8y+11=0$ .

6.  $x^2 + y^2 - xy + 6x - 7y + 8 = 0$  and  $x^2 + y^2 - xy - 4 = 0$ ,  
the axes being inclined at  $120^\circ$ .

Find the radical centre of the sets of circles

7.  $x^2 + y^2 + x + 2y + 3 = 0$ ,  $x^2 + y^2 + 2x + 4y + 5 = 0$ ,  
and  $x^2 + y^2 - 7x - 8y - 9 = 0$ .

8.  $(x - 2)^2 + (y - 3)^2 = 36$ ,  $(x + 3)^2 + (y + 2)^2 = 49$ ,  
and  $(x - 4)^2 + (y + 5)^2 = 64$ .

9. Prove that the square of the tangent that can be drawn from any point on one circle to another circle is equal to twice the product of the perpendicular distance of the point from the radical axis of the two circles, and the distance between their centres.

10. Prove that a common tangent to two circles is bisected by the radical axis.

11. Find the general equation of all circles any pair of which have the same radical axis as the circles

$$x^2 + y^2 = 4 \text{ and } x^2 + y^2 + 2x + 4y = 6.$$

12. Find the equations to the straight lines joining the origin to the points of intersection of

$$x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 2y = 4 \text{ and } x^2 + y^2 - 2x - 4y - 4 = 0.$$

13. The polars of a point  $P$  with respect to two fixed circles meet in the point  $Q$ . Prove that the circle on  $PQ$  as diameter passes through two fixed points, and cuts both the given circles at right angles.

14. Prove that the two circles, which pass through the two points  $(0, a)$  and  $(0, -a)$  and touch the straight line  $y = mx + c$ , will cut orthogonally if  $c^2 = a^2(2 + m^2)$ .

15. Find the locus of the centre of the circle which cuts two given circles orthogonally.

16. If two circles cut orthogonally, prove that the polar of any point  $P$  on the first circle with respect to the second passes through the other end of the diameter of the first circle which goes through  $P$ .

Hence, (by considering the orthogonal circle of three circles as the locus of a point such that its polars with respect to the circles meet in a point) prove that the orthogonal circle of three circles, given by the general equation is

$$\begin{vmatrix} x + g_1 & y + f_1 & g_1x + f_1y + c_1 \\ x + g_2 & y + f_2 & g_2x + f_2y + c_2 \\ x + g_3 & y + f_3 & g_3x + f_3y + c_3 \end{vmatrix} = 0.$$

**ANSWERS**

3.  $3x^2 + 3y^2 - 8x + 29y = 0.$       4.  $15x - 11y = 144.$   
 5.  $x + 10y = 2.$       6.  $6x - 7y + 12 = 0.$       7.  $(-\frac{2}{3}, -\frac{2}{3}).$   
 8.  $(\frac{2}{5}, \frac{1}{5}).$       11.  $(\lambda + 1)(x^2 + y^2) + 2\lambda(x + 2y) = 4 + 6\lambda.$   
 13.  $(y - x)^2 = 0.$

**SOLUTIONS/HINTS**

- Sum of squares of radii =  $\{\sqrt{a^2 - c}\}^2 + \{\sqrt{b^2 - c}\}^2 = a^2 + b^2 = \{\text{join of centres}\}^2.$
- Sum of squares of radii =  $\{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 - c}\}^2 + \{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c}\}^2 = 2(a^2 + b^2) = (a + b)^2 + (a - b)^2 = \{\text{join of centres}\}^2.$
- Let  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy = 0$  be the equation of the circle. Then  $-6g = 8$ , and  $2g + 2f = 7$ . [Art. 182.]  
 $\therefore 2g = -\frac{8}{3}$ , and  $2f = \frac{29}{3}.$   
 Hence the required circle is  $3x^2 + 3y^2 - 8x + 29y = 0.$
- Subtracting,  $15x - 11y = 144.$
- Multiply (1) by 3, subtract, and we have  $x + 10y = 2.$
- Subtracting,  $6x - 7y + 12 = 0.$
- The equations of two of the radical axes are  $x + 2y + 2 = 0$ , and  $4x + 5y + 6 = 0$ . Solving,  $x = -\frac{2}{3}$ ,  $y = -\frac{2}{3}.$
- The equations of two of the radical axes are  $10x + 10y = 13$ , and  $x - 4y = 0$ . Solving,  $x = \frac{2}{5}, y = \frac{1}{5}.$
- Let  $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda_1 x = h^2$  .....(i)  
 and  $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda_2 x = h^2$  .....(ii)  
 be the equations of the two circles, so that the axis of  $y$  is the common radical axis, and  $(g, f)$  any point on (i), so that  $g^2 + f^2 = 2\lambda_1 g + h^2.$   
 The square of the tangent from  $(g, f)$  to (ii) =  $g^2 + f^2 - 2\lambda_2 g - h^2 = 2(\lambda_1 - \lambda_2)g$ .  $\therefore$  etc.



10. Taking a common tangent as axis of  $x$ , let  
 $(x-a)^2 + (y-b)^2 = b^2$ , and  $(x-c)^2 + (y-d)^2 = d^2$   
 be the equations of the two circles.

The equation of the radical axis is

$$2(a-c)x + 2(b-d)y = a^2 - c^2.$$

This cuts  $y=0$  where  $x = \frac{1}{2}(a+c)$ .

11. The equation of any circle passing through their intersection is of the form

$$x^2 + y^2 - 4 + \lambda(x^2 + y^2 + 2x + 4y - 6) = 0.$$

12. The equation of the common chord is  $x-y=0$ , which goes through the origin.

Hence the required lines are  $(x-y)^2 = 0$ .

13. Let  $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda_1 x + h^2 = 0$ ,  
 and  $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda_2 x + h^2 = 0$

be the equations of the two circles.

If the polars of  $P(g, f)$  with regard to each circle pass through  $Q(g', f')$ , then

$$gg' + ff' - \lambda_1(g+g') + h^2 = 0,$$

and  $gg' + ff' - \lambda_2(g+g') + h^2 = 0$ , [Art. 163],

whence  $g' = -g$ , and  $f' = \frac{g^2 - h^2}{f}$ .

Hence the equation of the circle on  $PQ$  as diameter is

$$(x-g)(x+g) + (y-f)\left(y - \frac{g^2 - h^2}{f}\right) = 0, \text{ [Art. 145],}$$

*i.e.*  $x^2 + y^2 - y \cdot \frac{f^2 + g^2 - h^2}{f} - h^2 = 0$ ,

which passes through the fixed points  $(\pm h, 0)$ .

It is easily seen that the condition of Art. 182 for orthogonal intersection is satisfied.

14. Let  $x^2 + y^2 - 2h_1 x = a^2$ , and  $x^2 + y^2 - 2h_2 x = a^2$ , be the equations of the two circles.

Since  $y = mx + c$  is a tangent,  $h_1$  and  $h_2$  are given by

$$(1+m^2)(c^2 - a^2) = (mc - h)^2, \text{ [see Art. 153].}$$

$$\therefore h_1 h_2 = a^2(m^2 + 1) - c^2,$$

The circles cut orthogonally if  $h_1 h_2 + a^2 = 0$ , [Art. 182],  
*i.e.* if  $a^2(m^2 + 2) = c^2$ .

**15.** If the circle  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$  cuts both  
 $x^2 + y^2 + 2g_1x + 2f_1y + c_1 = 0$ , and  $x^2 + y^2 + 2g_2x + 2f_2y + c_2 = 0$   
 orthogonally, we have

$2gg_1 + 2ff_1 = c + c_1$ , and  $2gg_2 + 2ff_2 = c + c_2$ . [Art. 182.]  
 Subtracting, we have  $2g(g_1 - g_2) + 2f(f_1 - f_2) = c_1 - c_2$ . Also  
 the centre of the first circle is  $(-g, -f)$ .  $\therefore$  the required  
 locus is the straight line

$$2(g_1 - g_2)x + 2(f_1 - f_2)y = c_2 - c_1.$$

**16.** Let  $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ , ..... (i)  
 and  $x^2 + y^2 - 2ax - 2by + r^2 = 0$  .....(ii)  
 be the equations of two circles, which cut orthogonally.

The polar of  $(r \cos \theta, r \sin \theta)$ , any point on (i), with  
 regard to (ii) is

$$xr \cos \theta + yr \sin \theta - a(x + r \cos \theta) - b(y + r \sin \theta) + r^2 = 0,$$

which passes through the point  $(-r \cos \theta, -r \sin \theta)$ .

The required equation is the condition that the lines

$$x(x' + g_1) + y(y' + f_1) + g_1x' + f_1y' + c_1 = 0,$$

$$x(x' + g_2) + y(y' + f_2) + g_2x' + f_2y' + c_2 = 0,$$

$$x(x' + g_3) + y(y' + f_3) + g_3x' + f_3y' + c_3 = 0,$$

should be concurrent.

[See Arts. 163 and 79.]

**188. Coaxal Circles. Def.** A system of circles is said to be coaxal when they have a common radical axis, *i.e.* when the radical axis of each pair of circles of the system is the same.

*To find the equation of a system of coaxal circles.*

Since, by Art. 183, the radical axis of any pair of the circles is perpendicular to the line joining their centres, it follows that the centres of all the circles of a coaxal system must lie on a straight line which is perpendicular to the radical axis.

Take the line of centres as the axis of  $x$  and the radical axis as the axis of  $y$  (Figs. I. and II., Art. 190), so that  $O$  is the origin.

The equation to any circle with its centre on the axis of  $x$  is

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2gx + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Any point on the radical axis is  $(0, y_1)$ .

The square on the tangent from it to the circle (1) is, by Art. 168,  $y_1^2 + c$ .

Since this quantity is to be the same for all circles of the system it follows that  $c$  is the same for all such circles; the different circles are therefore obtained by giving different values to  $g$  in the equation (1).

The intersections of (1) with the radical axis are then obtained by putting  $x = 0$  in equation (1), and we have

$$y = \pm\sqrt{-c}.$$

If  $c$  be negative, we have two real points of intersection as in Fig. I. of Art. 190. In such cases the circles are said to be of the Intersecting Species.

If  $c$  be positive, we have two imaginary points of intersection as in Fig. II.

**189. Limiting points of a coaxal system.**

The equation (1) of the previous article which gives any circle of the system may be written in the form

$$(x - g)^2 + y^2 = g^2 - c = [\sqrt{g^2 - c}]^2.$$

It therefore represents a circle whose centre is the point  $(g, 0)$  and whose radius is  $\sqrt{g^2 - c}$ .

This radius vanishes, *i.e.* the circle becomes a point-circle, when  $g^2 = c$ , *i.e.* when  $g = \pm \sqrt{c}$ .

Hence at the particular points  $(\pm \sqrt{c}, 0)$  we have point-circles which belong to the system. These point-circles are called the Limiting Points of the system.

If  $c$  be negative, these points are imaginary.

But it was shown in the last article that when  $c$  is negative the circles intersect in real points as in Fig. I., Art. 190.

If  $c$  be positive, the limiting points  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  (Fig. II.) are real, and in this case the circles intersect in imaginary points.

The limiting points are therefore real or imaginary according as the circles of the system intersect in imaginary or real points.

**190. Orthogonal circles of a coaxal system.**

Let  $T$  be *any* point on the common radical axis of a system of coaxal circles, and let  $TR$  be the tangent from it to any circle of the system.

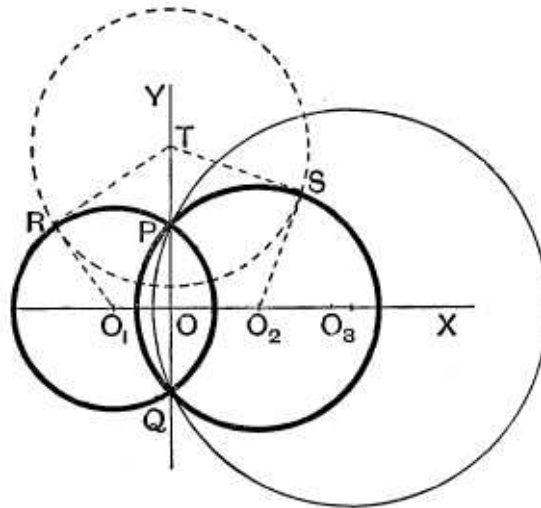


Fig. I.

Then a circle, whose centre is  $T$  and whose radius is  $TR$ , will cut each circle of the coaxal system orthogonally.

[For the radius  $TR$  of this circle is at right angles to the radius  $O_1R$ , and so for its intersection with *any* other circle of the system.]

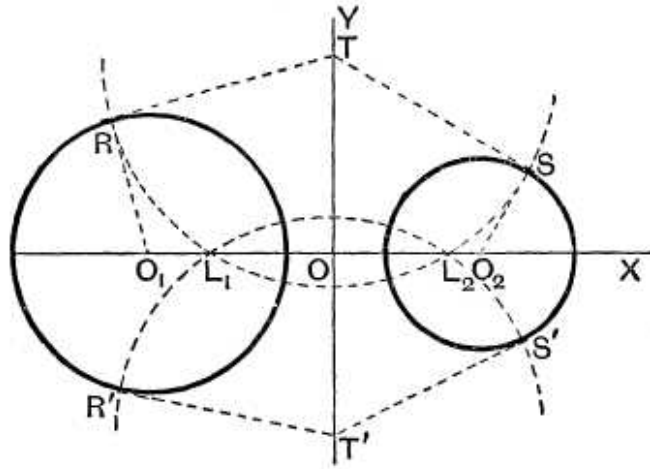


Fig. II.

Hence the limiting points (being point-circles of the system) are on this orthogonal circle.

The limiting points are therefore the intersections with the line of centres of *any* circle whose centre is on the common radical axis and whose radius is the tangent from it to any of the circles of the system.

Since, in Fig. I., the limiting points are imaginary these orthogonal circles do not meet the line of centres in real points.

In Fig. II. they pass through the limiting points  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ .

These orthogonal circles (since they all pass through two points, real or imaginary) are therefore a coaxal system.

Also if the original circles, as in Fig. I., intersect in real points, the orthogonal circles intersect in imaginary points; in Fig. II. the original circles intersect in imaginary points, and the orthogonal circles in real points.

We therefore have the following theorem :

*A set of coaxal circles can be cut orthogonally by another set of coaxal circles, the centres of each set lying on the radical axis of the other set; also one set is of the limiting-point species and the other set of the other species.*

**191.** Without reference to the limiting points of the original system, it may be easily found whether or not the orthogonal circles meet the original line of centres.

For the circle, whose centre is  $T$  and whose radius is  $TR$ , meets or does not meet the line  $O_1O_2$  according as  $TR^2$  is  $>$  or  $<$   $TO^2$ ,

*i.e.* according as  $TO_1^2 - O_1R^2$  is  $\geq TO^2$ ,

*i.e.* according as  $TO^2 + OO_1^2 - O_1R^2$  is  $\geq TO^2$ ,

*i.e.* according as  $OO_1$  is  $\geq O_1R$ ,

*i.e.* according as the radical axis is without, or within, each of the circles of the original system.

**192.** In the next article the above results will be proved analytically.

*To find the equation to any circle which cuts two given circles orthogonally.*

Take the radical axis of the two circles as the axis of  $y$ , so that their equations may be written in the form

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2gx + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

and  $x^2 + y^2 - 2g_1x + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2),$

the quantity  $c$  being the same for each.

Let the equation to any circle which cuts them orthogonally be

$$(x - A)^2 + (y - B)^2 = R^2 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

The equation (1) can be written in the form

$$(x - g)^2 + y^2 = [\sqrt{g^2 - c}]^2 \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

The circles (3) and (4) cut orthogonally if the square of the distance between their centres is equal to the sum of the squares of their radii,

*i.e.* if  $(A - g)^2 + B^2 = R^2 + [\sqrt{g^2 - c}]^2,$

*i.e.* if  $A^2 + B^2 - 2Ag = R^2 - c \dots\dots\dots(5).$

Similarly, (3) will cut (2) orthogonally if

$$A^2 + B^2 - 2Ag_1 = R^2 - c \dots\dots\dots(6).$$

Subtracting (6) from (5), we have  $A(g - g_1) = 0.$

Hence  $A = 0$ , and  $R^2 = B^2 + c.$

Substituting these values in (3), the equation to the required orthogonal circle is

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2By - c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(7),$$

where  $B$  is any quantity whatever.

Whatever be the value of  $B$  the equation (7) represents a circle whose centre is on the axis of  $y$  and which passes through the points  $(\pm\sqrt{c}, 0)$ .

But the latter points are the limiting points of the coaxal system to which the two circles belong. [Art. 189.]

Hence any pair of circles belonging to a coaxal system is cut at right angles by any circle of another coaxal system; also the centres of the circles of the latter system lie on the common radical axis of the original system, and all the circles of the latter system pass through the limiting points (real or imaginary) of the first system.

Also the centre of the circle (7) is the point  $(0, B)$  and its radius is  $\sqrt{B^2 + c}$ .

The square of the tangent drawn from  $(0, B)$  to the circle (1)  $= B^2 + c$  (by Art. 168).

Hence the radius of any circle of the second system is equal to the length of the tangent drawn from its centre to any circle of the first system.

**193.** The equation to the system of circles which cut a given coaxal system orthogonally may also be obtained by using the result of Art. 182.

For any circle of the coaxal system is, by Art. 188, given by

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2gx + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

where  $c$  is the same for all circles.

Any point on the radical axis is  $(0, y')$ .

The square on the tangent drawn from it to (1) is therefore  $y'^2 + c$ .

The equation to *any* circle cutting (1) orthogonally is therefore

$$x^2 + (y - y')^2 = y'^2 + c,$$

*i.e.* 
$$x^2 + y^2 - 2yy' - c = 0.$$

Whatever be the value of  $y'$  this circle passes through the points  $(\pm\sqrt{c}, 0)$ , *i.e.* through the limiting points of the system of circles given by (1).

**194.** We can now deduce an easy construction for the circle that cuts any three circles orthogonally.

Consider the three circles in the figure of Art. 186.

By Art. 192 any circle cutting  $A$  and  $B$  orthogonally has its centre on their common radical axis, *i.e.* on the straight line  $OD$ .

Similarly any circle cutting  $B$  and  $C$  orthogonally has its centre on the radical axis  $OE$ .

Any circle cutting all three circles orthogonally must therefore have its centre at the intersection of  $OD$  and  $OE$ , *i.e.* at the radical centre  $O$ . Also its radius must be the length of the tangent drawn from the radical centre to any one of the three circles.

**Ex.** Find the equation to the circle which cuts orthogonally each of the three circles

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2x + 17y + 4 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

$$x^2 + y^2 + 7x + 6y + 11 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

$$x^2 + y^2 - x + 22y + 3 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (3).$$

The radical axis of (1) and (2) is

$$5x - 11y + 7 = 0.$$

The radical axis of (2) and (3) is

$$8x - 16y + 8 = 0.$$

These two straight lines meet in the point (3, 2) which is therefore the radical centre.

The square of the length of the tangent from the point (3, 2) to each of the given circles = 57.

The required equation is therefore  $(x - 3)^2 + (y - 2)^2 = 57$ ,

*i. e.*  $x^2 + y^2 - 6x - 4y - 44 = 0.$

**195. Ex.** Find the locus of a point which moves so that the length of the tangent drawn from it to one given circle is  $\lambda$  times the length of the tangent from it to another given circle.

As in Art. 188 take as axes of  $x$  and  $y$  the line joining the centres of the two circles and the radical axis. The equations to the two circles are therefore

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2g_1x + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

and  $x^2 + y^2 - 2g_2x + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2).$



Let  $(h, k)$  be a point such that the length of the tangent from it to (1) is always  $\lambda$  times the length of the tangent from it to (2).

Then 
$$h^2 + k^2 - 2g_1h + c = \lambda^2 [h^2 + k^2 - 2g_2h + c].$$

Hence  $(h, k)$  always lies on the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2x \frac{g_2\lambda^2 - g_1}{\lambda^2 - 1} + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (3).$$

This circle is clearly a circle of the coaxal system to which (1) and (2) belong.

Again, the centre of (1) is the point  $(g_1, 0)$ , the centre of (2) is  $(g_2, 0)$ , whilst the centre of (3) is  $\left(\frac{g_2\lambda^2 - g_1}{\lambda^2 - 1}, 0\right)$ .

Hence, if these three centres be called  $O_1, O_2,$  and  $O_3,$  we have

$$O_1O_3 = \frac{g_2\lambda^2 - g_1}{\lambda^2 - 1} - g_1 = \frac{\lambda^2}{\lambda^2 - 1}(g_2 - g_1),$$

and

$$O_2O_3 = \frac{g_2\lambda^2 - g_1}{\lambda^2 - 1} - g_2 = \frac{1}{\lambda^2 - 1}(g_2 - g_1),$$

so that  $O_1O_3 : O_2O_3 :: \lambda^2 : 1$ .

The required locus is therefore a circle coaxal with the two given circles and whose centre divides externally, in the ratio  $\lambda^2 : 1$ , the line joining the centres of the two given circles.

**EXAMPLES XXIV**

1. Prove that a common tangent to two circles of a coaxal system subtends a right angle at either limiting point of the system.
2. Prove that the polar of a limiting point of a coaxal system with respect to any circle of the system is the same for all circles of the system.
3. Prove that the polars of any point with respect to a system of coaxal circles all pass through a fixed point, and that the two points are equidistant from the radical axis and subtend a right angle at a limiting point of the system. If the first point be one limiting point of the system prove that the second point is the other limiting point.
4. A fixed circle is cut by a series of circles all of which pass through two given points; prove that the straight line joining the intersections of the fixed circle with any circle of the system always passes through a fixed point.
5. Prove that tangents drawn from any point of a fixed circle of a coaxal system to two other fixed circles of the system are in a constant ratio.

6. Prove that a system of coaxial circles inverts with respect to either limiting point into a system of concentric circles and find the position of the common centre.

7. A straight line is drawn touching one of a system of coaxial circles in  $P$  and cutting another in  $Q$  and  $R$ . Shew that  $PQ$  and  $PR$  subtend equal or supplementary angles at one of the limiting points of the system.

8. Find the locus of the point of contact of parallel tangents which are drawn to each of a series of coaxial circles.

9. Prove that the circle of similitude of the two circles

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2kx + \delta = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad x^2 + y^2 - 2k'x + \delta = 0$$

(*i.e.* the locus of the points at which the two circles subtend the same angle) is the coaxial circle

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2 \frac{kk' + \delta}{k + k'} x + \delta = 0.$$

10. From the preceding question shew that the centres of similitude (*i.e.* the points in which the common tangents to two circles meet the line of centres) divide the line joining the centres internally and externally in the ratio of the radii.

11. If  $x + y \sqrt{-1} = \tan(u + v \sqrt{-1})$ , where  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $u$ , and  $v$  are all real, prove that the curves  $u = \text{constant}$  give a family of coaxial circles passing through the points  $(0, \pm 1)$ , and that the curves  $v = \text{constant}$  give a system of circles cutting the first system orthogonally.

12. Find the equation to the circle which cuts orthogonally each of the circles

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + c = 0, \quad x^2 + y^2 + 2g'x + c = 0,$$

and

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2hx + 2ky + a = 0.$$

13. Find the equation to the circle cutting orthogonally the three circles

$$x^2 + y^2 = a^2, \quad (x - c)^2 + y^2 = a^2, \quad \text{and} \quad x^2 + (y - b)^2 = a^2.$$

14. Find the equation to the circle cutting orthogonally the three circles

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2x + 3y - 7 = 0, \quad x^2 + y^2 + 5x - 5y + 9 = 0,$$

and

$$x^2 + y^2 + 7x - 9y + 29 = 0.$$

15. Shew that the equation to the circle cutting orthogonally the circles

$$(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = b^2, \quad (x - b)^2 + (y - a)^2 = a^2,$$

and

$$(x - a - b - c)^2 + y^2 = ab + c^2,$$

is

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2x(a + b) - y(a + b) + a^2 + 3ab + b^2 = 0.$$

## ANSWERS

8.  $x^2 - y^2 + 2mxy = c$ .                      12.  $k(x^2 + y^2) + (a - c)y - ck = 0$ .  
 13.  $x^2 + y^2 - cx - by + a^2 = 0$ .            14.  $x^2 + y^2 - 16x - 18y - 4 = 0$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. Let  $(0, k)$  be any point  $O$  on the radical axis of the two circles  $x^2 + y^2 - 2g_1x + c = 0$ , and  $x^2 + y^2 - 2g_2x + c = 0$ . {Tangent from  $O$  to either circle} $^2 = k^2 + c = OL_1^2$ , where  $L_1$  is a limiting point.

Taking  $O$  at the middle point of a common tangent, we have  $OL_1 = \frac{1}{2}$  (either common tangent).  $\therefore$  a common tangent subtends a right angle at  $L_1$ .

2. Let  $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda x + c = 0$ , for different values of  $\lambda$ , represent the coaxial system. (Art. 188.) The polar of  $(\sqrt{c}, 0)$  is  $x\sqrt{c} - \lambda(x + \sqrt{c}) + c = 0$ , or  $x + \sqrt{c} = 0$ .

3. Let  $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda x + c = 0$  represent the system. The polar of  $(h, k)$  is  $xh + yk + c - \lambda(x + h) = 0$ , which always passes through the intersection of the fixed lines  $x + h = 0$ , and  $xh + yk + c = 0$ , i.e. through the point

$$\left\{-h, \frac{h^2 - c}{k}\right\}.$$

Hence the two points are equally distant from the axis of  $y$ , and subtend a right angle at  $(\sqrt{c}, 0)$ , since

$$\frac{k}{h - \sqrt{c}} \cdot \frac{\frac{h^2 - c}{k}}{-h - \sqrt{c}} = -1.$$

If one point is  $(\sqrt{c}, 0)$ , the other is  $(-\sqrt{c}, 0)$ .

4. Let  $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda x + a = 0$  be the equation of the coaxial system, and  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$  that of the fixed circle.

The equation of a common chord is

$$2(g + \lambda)x + 2fy + c - a = 0,$$

which always passes through the intersection of

$$2gx + 2fy + c - a = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad x = 0,$$

*i.e.* through a point whose position does not depend on  $\lambda$ .

5. Let  $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda x + c = 0, \dots\dots\dots(i)$   
 $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda_1 x + c = 0, \dots\dots\dots(ii)$   
 $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda_2 x + c = 0, \dots\dots\dots(iii)$

be the equation of the three circles.

If  $(h, k)$  lies on (i),  $h^2 + k^2 + c = 2\lambda h$ . The ratio of the squares of tangents from  $(h, k)$  to (ii) and (iii)

$$= \frac{h^2 + k^2 + c - 2\lambda_1 h}{h^2 + k^2 + c - 2\lambda_2 h} = \frac{2h(\lambda - \lambda_1)}{2h(\lambda - \lambda_2)} = \frac{\lambda - \lambda_1}{\lambda - \lambda_2}.$$

6. Take  $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda x + c = 0$  for the equation of the system. Remove the origin to  $(\sqrt{c}, 0)$ , and the equation is

$$(x + \sqrt{c})^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda(x + \sqrt{c}) + c = 0.$$

Change to polars;  $\therefore r^2 + 2(\sqrt{c} - \lambda)(r \cos \theta + \sqrt{c}) = 0$ .

Inverting, *i.e.* putting  $\frac{a^2}{r}$  for  $r$ , the inverse is

$$a^4 + 2(\sqrt{c} - \lambda)(a^2 r \cos \theta + \sqrt{c} \cdot r^2) = 0,$$

which for different values of  $\lambda$  represents a concentric system of circles whose common centre is  $(-\frac{a^2}{2\sqrt{c}}, 0)$ .

7. Let  $P$  be on the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda_1 x + c = 0$ , and  $Q$  and  $R$  on the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda_2 x + c = 0$ . Let  $(h, k)$  be the coordinates of  $Q$ , so that  $h^2 + k^2 + c = 2\lambda_2 h$ . If  $L_1$  is a limiting point, then, since  $QP$  is a tangent at  $P$  to the first circle,

$$\therefore \frac{QP^2}{QL_1^2} = \frac{h^2 + k^2 - 2\lambda_1 h + c}{(h - \sqrt{c})^2 + k^2} = \frac{2h(\lambda_2 - \lambda_1)}{2h(\lambda_2 - \sqrt{c})} = \frac{\lambda_2 - \lambda_1}{\lambda_2 - \sqrt{c}} = \frac{RP^2}{RL_1^2},$$

similarly.  $\therefore \frac{RP}{QP} = \pm \frac{RL_1}{QL_1}$ ;  $\therefore PL_1$  bisects one or other of the angles between  $L_1Q$  and  $L_1R$ .

8. Let  $x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda x + c = 0$  be any circle of the system. The tangent at  $(h, k)$  is

$$xh + yk - \lambda(x + h) + c = 0.$$

This will be parallel to  $y = mx + d$  if  $\lambda - h = km$ .

But since  $(h, k)$  lies on the circle,

$$\therefore h^2 + k^2 + c^2 = 2\lambda h. \quad \therefore h^2 + k^2 + c^2 = 2h(h + km).$$

Hence the required locus is  $x^2 - y^2 + 2mxy = c^2$ .

9. If  $(x, y)$  be any point on the circle of similitude, the tangents from  $(x, y)$  to the two circles are in the same ratio as the radii.

$$\therefore \frac{x^2 + y^2 - 2kx + \delta}{x^2 + y^2 - 2k'x + \delta} = \frac{k^2 - \delta}{k'^2 - \delta}. \quad \therefore x^2 + y^2 - 2 \frac{kk' + \delta}{k + k'} x + \delta = 0.$$

10. Putting  $y = 0$ ,

$$x = \frac{kk' + \delta \pm \sqrt{(kk' + \delta)^2 - \delta(k + k')^2}}{k + k'} = \frac{kk' + \delta \pm \sqrt{(k^2 - \delta)(k'^2 - \delta)}}{k + k'}$$

and  $\frac{k \sqrt{k'^2 - \delta} \pm k' \sqrt{k^2 - \delta}}{\sqrt{k'^2 - \delta} \pm \sqrt{k^2 - \delta}}$  = the same expression, as would appear if the denominator were rationalized.

11. Since  $x + yi = \tan(u + vi)$ ,  $\therefore x - yi = \tan(u - vi)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \tan 2u &= \tan[(u + vi) + (u - vi)] = \frac{(x + yi) + (x - yi)}{1 - (x + yi)(x - yi)} \\ &= \frac{2x}{1 - (x^2 + y^2)}, \end{aligned}$$

so that  $x^2 + y^2 + 2x \cot 2u = 1, \dots\dots\dots(i)$

so  $\tan 2vi = \tan[(u + vi) - (u - vi)] = \frac{(x + yi) - (x - yi)}{1 + (x + yi)(x - yi)}$

$$\therefore i \tanh 2v = \frac{2yi}{1 + (x^2 + y^2)}.$$

$$\therefore x^2 + y^2 - 2y \coth 2v = -1. \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

The curve (i) for any constant value of  $u$  gives a circle through the points  $(0, \pm 1)$ . Also (ii) is similarly another set of coaxal circles through the imaginary points  $(\pm \sqrt{-1}, 0)$ . Also clearly (i) and (ii) satisfy the condition of Art. 182.

12. The equation of any circle cutting the first two circles orthogonally is, by Art. 192,

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2\lambda y - c = 0. \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

This cuts the third orthogonally if  $-2\lambda k = a - c$ . [Art. 182.]  
Hence (i) becomes  $k(x^2 + y^2) + (a - c)y - ck = 0$ .

**Aliter.** The radical axis of the first pair of circles is  $x = 0$ , and that of the first and third is

$$(2g - 2h)x - 2ky + c - a = 0,$$

so that the radical centre is  $(0, \frac{c - a}{2k})$ .

The equation to the circle required is therefore

$$(x - 0)^2 + \left(y - \frac{c - a}{2k}\right)^2 = \text{square of the tangent from the radical centre to either circle}$$

$$= 0 + \left(\frac{c - a}{2k}\right)^2 + 0 + c,$$

*i.e.*  $(x^2 + y^2)k + (a - c)y - ck = 0.$

**13.** Let  $(h, k)$  be the centre and  $r$  the radius of the required circle.

Then  $a^2 + r^2 = h^2 + k^2 = (h - c)^2 + k^2 = h^2 + (k - b)^2,$

whence  $2h = c, 2k = b,$  and  $r^2 = \frac{c^2}{4} + \frac{b^2}{4} - a^2.$

The required circle is thus  $x^2 + y^2 - cx - by + a^2 = 0.$

**14.** Two of the radical axes are  $3x - 4y + 12 = 0,$  and  $x - 2y + 10 = 0.$  Whence, solving, the radical centre is  $(8, 9).$

The length of tangent to either circle from this point  $= \sqrt{149}.$   $\therefore$  the required equation is  $(x - 8)^2 + (y - 9)^2 = 149.$

**15.** The radical axis of (i) and (iii) is

$$2(b + c)x - 2by = (b + 2c)(a + b),$$

and that of (ii) and (iii) is

$$2(a + c)x - 2ay = (a + 2c)(a + b).$$

Whence the centre is  $(a + b, \frac{a + b}{2}),$  and radius  $= \frac{a - b}{2}$  easily. Hence the equation required.

# **CONIC SECTIONS**

## Chapter 10

# THE PARABOLA

**196. Conic Section. Def.** The locus of a point  $P$ , which moves so that its distance from a fixed point is always in a constant ratio to its perpendicular distance from a fixed straight line, is called a Conic Section.

The fixed point is called the **Focus** and is usually denoted by  $S$ .

The constant ratio is called the **Eccentricity** and is denoted by  $e$ .

The fixed straight line is called the **Directrix**.

The straight line passing through the Focus and perpendicular to the Directrix is called the **Axis**.

When the eccentricity  $e$  is equal to unity, the Conic Section is called a **Parabola**.

When  $e$  is less than unity, it is called an **Ellipse**.

When  $e$  is greater than unity, it is called a **Hyperbola**.

[The name Conic Section is derived from the fact that these curves were first obtained by cutting a cone in various ways.]

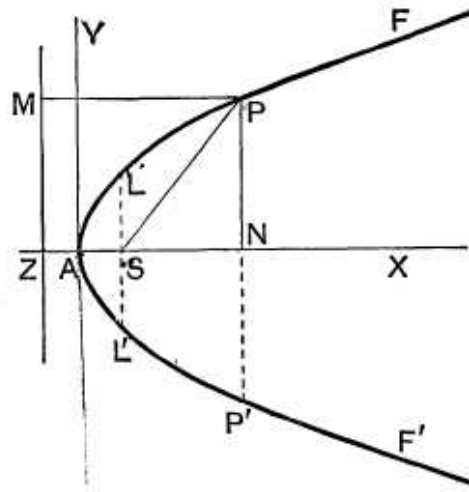


**197.** To find the equation to a Parabola.

Let  $S$  be the fixed point and  $ZM$  the directrix. We require therefore the locus of a point  $P$  which moves so that its distance from  $S$  is always equal to  $PM$ , its perpendicular distance from  $ZM$ .

Draw  $SZ$  perpendicular to the directrix and bisect  $SZ$  in the point  $A$ ; produce  $ZA$  to  $X$ .

The point  $A$  is clearly a point on the curve and is called the **Vertex** of the Parabola.



Take  $A$  as origin,  $AX$  as the axis of  $x$ , and  $AY$ , perpendicular to it, as the axis of  $y$ .

Let the distance  $ZA$ , or  $AS$ , be called  $a$ , and let  $P$  be any point on the curve whose coordinates are  $x$  and  $y$ .

Join  $SP$ , and draw  $PN$  and  $PM$  perpendicular respectively to the axis and directrix.

We have then  $SP^2 = PM^2$ ,

*i.e.*  $(x - a)^2 + y^2 = ZN^2 = (a + x)^2$ ,

$\therefore y^2 = 4ax \dots\dots\dots(1)$ .

This being the relation which exists between the coordinates of any point  $P$  on the parabola is, by Art. 42, the equation to the parabola.

**Cor.** The equation (1) is equivalent to the geometrical proposition

$$PN^2 = 4AS \cdot AN.$$

**198.** The equation of the preceding article is the simplest possible equation to the parabola. Throughout this chapter this standard form of the equation is assumed unless the contrary is stated.

If instead of  $AX$  and  $AY$  we take the axis and the directrix  $ZM$  as the axes of coordinates, the equation would be

$$(x - 2a)^2 + y^2 = x^2,$$

*i.e.*  $y^2 = 4a(x - a) \dots\dots\dots(1).$

Similarly, if the axis  $SX$  and a perpendicular line  $SL$  be taken as the axes of coordinates, the equation is

$$x^2 + y^2 = (x + 2a)^2,$$

*i.e.*  $y^2 = 4a(x + a) \dots\dots\dots(2).$

These two equations may be deduced from the equation of the previous article by transforming the origin, firstly to the point  $(-a, 0)$  and secondly to the point  $(a, 0)$ .

**199.** The equation to the parabola referred to any focus and directrix may be easily obtained. Thus the equation to the parabola, whose focus is the point  $(2, 3)$  and whose directrix is the straight line  $x - 4y + 3 = 0$ , is

$$(x - 2)^2 + (y - 3)^2 = \left\{ \frac{x - 4y + 3}{\sqrt{1^2 + 4^2}} \right\}^2,$$

*i.e.*  $17[x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 6y + 13] = \{x^2 + 16y^2 + 9 - 8xy + 6x - 24y\},$

*i.e.*  $16x^2 + y^2 + 8xy - 74x - 78y + 212 = 0.$

**200.** *To trace the curve*

$$y^2 = 4ax \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

If  $x$  be negative, the corresponding values of  $y$  are imaginary (since the square root of a negative quantity is unreal); hence there is no part of the curve to the left of the point  $A$ .

If  $y$  be zero, so also is  $x$ , so that the axis of  $x$  meets the curve at the point  $A$  only.

If  $x$  be zero, so also is  $y$ , so that the axis of  $y$  meets the curve at the point  $A$  only.

For every positive value of  $x$  we see from (1), by taking the square root, that  $y$  has two equal and opposite values.

Hence corresponding to any point  $P$  on the curve there is another point  $P'$  on the other side of the axis which is obtained by producing  $PN$  to  $P'$  so that  $PN$  and  $NP'$  are

equal in magnitude. The line  $PP'$  is called a double ordinate.

As  $x$  increases in magnitude, so do the corresponding values of  $y$ ; finally, when  $x$  becomes infinitely great,  $y$  becomes infinitely great also.

By taking a large number of values of  $x$  and the corresponding values of  $y$  it will be found that the curve is as in the figure of Art. 197.

The two branches never meet but are of infinite length.

**201.** *The quantity  $y'^2 - 4ax'$  is negative, zero, or positive according as the point  $(x', y')$  is within, upon, or without the parabola.*

Let  $Q$  be the point  $(x', y')$  and let it be within the curve, *i.e.* be between the curve and the axis  $AX$ . Draw the ordinate  $QN$  and let it meet the curve in  $P$ .

Then (by Art. 197),  $PN^2 = 4a \cdot x'$ .

Hence  $y'^2$ , *i.e.*  $QN^2$ , is  $< PN^2$ , and hence is  $< 4ax'$ .

$\therefore y'^2 - 4ax'$  is negative.

Similarly, if  $Q$  be without the curve, then  $y'^2$ , *i.e.*  $QN^2$ , is  $> PN^2$ , and hence is  $> 4ax'$ .

Hence the proposition.

**202. Latus Rectum. Def.** The latus rectum of any conic is the double ordinate  $LSL'$  drawn through the focus  $S$ .

In the case of the parabola we have  $SL =$  distance of  $L$  from the directrix  $= SZ = 2a$ .

Hence the latus rectum  $= 4a$ .

When the latus rectum is given it follows that the equation to the parabola is completely known in its standard form, and the size and shape of the curve determined.

The quantity  $4a$  is also often called the **principal parameter** of the curve.

**Focal Distance of any point.** The focal distance of any point  $P$  is the distance  $SP$ .

This focal distance  $= PM = ZN = ZA + AN = a + x$ .

**Ex.** Find the vertex, axis, focus, and latus rectum of the parabola

$$4y^2 + 12x - 20y + 67 = 0.$$

The equation can be written

$$y^2 - 5y = -3x - \frac{67}{4},$$

*i.e.*  $(y - \frac{5}{2})^2 = -3x - \frac{67}{4} + \frac{25}{4} = -3(x + \frac{7}{2}).$

Transform this equation to the point  $(-\frac{7}{2}, \frac{5}{2})$  and it becomes  $y^2 = -3x$ , which represents a parabola, whose axis is the axis of  $x$  and whose concavity is turned towards the negative end of this axis. Also its latus rectum is 3.

Referred to the original axes the vertex is the point  $(-\frac{7}{2}, \frac{5}{2})$ , the axis is  $y = \frac{5}{2}$ , and the focus is the point  $(-\frac{7}{2} - \frac{3}{4}, \frac{5}{2})$ , *i.e.*  $(-\frac{17}{4}, \frac{5}{2})$ .

### EXAMPLES XXV

Find the equation to the parabola with

1. focus  $(3, -4)$  and directrix  $6x - 7y + 5 = 0$ .
2. focus  $(a, b)$  and directrix  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$ .

Find the vertex, axis, latus rectum, and focus of the parabolas

3.  $y^2 = 4x + 4y$ .
4.  $x^2 + 2y = 8x - 7$ .
5.  $x^2 - 2ax + 2ay = 0$ .
6.  $y^2 = 4y - 4x$ .
7. Draw the curves  
(1)  $y^2 = -4ax$ , (2)  $x^2 = 4ay$ , and (3)  $x^2 = -4ay$ .

8. Find the value of  $p$  when the parabola  $y^2 = 4px$  goes through the point (i)  $(3, -2)$ , and (ii)  $(9, -12)$ .

9. For what point of the parabola  $y^2 = 18x$  is the ordinate equal to three times the abscissa?

10. Prove that the equation to the parabola, whose vertex and focus are on the axis of  $x$  at distances  $a$  and  $a'$  from the origin respectively, is

$$y^2 = 4(a' - a)(x - a).$$

11. In the parabola  $y^2 = 6x$ , find (1) the equation to the chord through the vertex and the negative end of the latus rectum, and (2) the equation to any chord through the point on the curve whose abscissa is 24.

12. Prove that the equation  $y^2 + 2Ax + 2By + C = 0$  represents a parabola, whose axis is parallel to the axis of  $x$ , and find its vertex and the equation to its latus rectum.

13. Prove that the locus of the middle points of all chords of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  which are drawn through the vertex is the parabola  $y^2 = 2ax$ .

14. Prove that the locus of the centre of a circle, which intercepts a chord of given length  $2a$  on the axis of  $x$  and passes through a given point on the axis of  $y$  distant  $b$  from the origin, is the curve

$$x^2 - 2yb + b^2 = a^2.$$

Trace this parabola.

15.  $PQ$  is a double ordinate of a parabola. Find the locus of its points of trisection.

16. Prove that the locus of a point, which moves so that its distance from a fixed line is equal to the length of the tangent drawn from it to a given circle, is a parabola. Find the position of the focus and directrix.

17. If a circle be drawn so as always to touch a given straight line and also a given circle, prove that the locus of its centre is a parabola.

18. The vertex  $A$  of a parabola is joined to any point  $P$  on the curve and  $PQ$  is drawn at right angles to  $AP$  to meet the axis in  $Q$ . Prove that the projection of  $PQ$  on the axis is always equal to the latus rectum.

19. If on a given base triangles be described such that the sum of the tangents of the base angles is constant, prove that the locus of the vertices is a parabola.

20. A double ordinate of the curve  $y^2 = 4px$  is of length  $8p$ ; prove that the lines from the vertex to its two ends are at right angles.

21. Two parabolas have a common axis and concavities in opposite directions; if any line parallel to the common axis meet the parabolas in  $P$  and  $P'$ , prove that the locus of the middle point of  $PP'$  is another parabola, provided that the latera recta of the given parabolas are unequal.

22. A parabola is drawn to pass through  $A$  and  $B$ , the ends of a diameter of a given circle of radius  $a$ , and to have as directrix a tangent to a concentric circle of radius  $b$ ; the axes being  $AB$  and a perpendicular diameter, prove that the locus of the focus of the parabola is  $\frac{x^2}{b^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 - a^2} = 1$ .

## ANSWERS

1.  $(7x + 6y)^2 - 570x + 750y + 2100 = 0$ .
2.  $(ax - by)^2 - 2a^3x - 2b^3y + a^4 + a^2b^2 + b^4 = 0$ .
3.  $(-1, 2)$ ;  $y = 2$ ;  $4$ ;  $(0, 2)$ .
4.  $(4, \frac{3}{2})$ ;  $x = 4$ ;  $2$ ;  $(4, 4)$ .

5.  $\left(a, \frac{a}{2}\right)$ ;  $x=a$ ;  $2a$ ;  $(a, 0)$ .      6.  $(1, 2)$ ;  $y=2$ ;  $4$ ;  $(0, 2)$ .  
 8. (i)  $\frac{1}{3}$ ; (ii)  $4$ .      9.  $(2, 6)$ .      11.  $y = -2x$ ;  $y - 12 = m(x - 24)$ .  
 12.  $\left(\frac{B^2 - C}{2A}, -B\right)$ ;  $x = \frac{B^2 - A^2 - C}{2A}$ .      15.  $9y^2 = 4ax$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1.  $(x-3)^2 + (y+4)^2 = \left\{ \frac{6x-7y+5}{\sqrt{6^2+7^2}} \right\}^2$ , etc.

2.  $(x-a)^2 + (y-b)^2 = \left\{ \frac{bx+ay-ab}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}} \right\}^2$ , etc.

3. The equation may be written  $(y-2)^2 = 4(x+1)$ .

As in Art. 202, the vertex is  $(-1, 2)$ ; the latus rectum is  $4$ ; the focus is  $(0, 2)$ ; and the axis is  $y=2$ .

4. The equation may be written  $(x-4)^2 = -2\left(y-\frac{9}{2}\right)$ .

As in Art. 202, the vertex is  $\left(4, \frac{9}{2}\right)$ ; the latus rectum is  $2$ ; the focus is  $(4, 4)$ ; and the axis is  $x=4$ .

5. The equation may be written in the form

$$(x-a)^2 = -2a\left(y-\frac{a}{2}\right).$$

The vertex is  $\left(a, \frac{a}{2}\right)$ ; the latus rectum is  $2a$ ; the focus is  $(a, 0)$ ; and the axis is  $x=a$ .

6. The equation may be written  $(y-2)^2 = -4(x-1)$ .

The vertex is  $(1, 2)$ ; the latus rectum is  $4$ ; the focus is  $(0, 2)$ ; and the axis is  $y=2$ .

8. (i) We have  $(-2)^2 = 4p \cdot 3$ ;  $\therefore p = \frac{1}{3}$ .

(ii) We have  $(-12)^2 = 4p \cdot 9$ ;  $\therefore p = 4$ .

9. Putting  $y=3x$ , we have  $(3x)^2 = 18x$ .

$$\therefore x=2, \text{ and } y=6.$$

10. See equation (i) of Art. 198; the latus rectum

$$= 4SA = 4(a' - a).$$

11. (i) The coordinates of the negative end of the latus rectum are  $(\frac{6}{4}, -\frac{6}{2})$ , i.e.  $(\frac{3}{2}, -3)$ . Hence the required equation is  $y + 2x = 0$ .

(ii) If  $x = 24$ ,  $y^2 = 6 \times 24$ ;  $\therefore y = \pm 12$ .  $\therefore$  the required equation is  $y - 12 = m(x - 24)$ .

12. The equation may be written

$$(y + B)^2 = -2A \left( x - \frac{B^2 - C}{2A} \right).$$

As in Art. 202, the equation to the axis is  $y + B = 0$ ; the vertex is  $(\frac{B^2 - C}{2A}, -B)$ ; and the abscissa of the focus is  $\frac{B^2 - C}{2A} - \frac{A}{2}$ , i.e.  $\frac{B^2 - A^2 - C}{2A}$ ;  $\therefore$  the latus rectum is  $x = \frac{B^2 - A^2 - C}{2A}$ .

13. If  $(h, k)$  be any point on the locus, we have

$$(2k)^2 = 4a(2h); \quad \therefore k^2 = 2ah, \text{ etc.}$$

14. Let  $(h, k)$  be the centre and  $r$  the radius of the circle. It is easily seen from a figure that

$$h^2 + (k - b)^2 = r^2 = k^2 + a^2;$$

hence the required locus is  $x^2 - 2by + b^2 = a^2$ .

The equation may be written,  $x^2 = 2b \left( y + \frac{a^2 - b^2}{2b} \right)$ ,

which is a parabola whose vertex is  $(0, -\frac{a^2 - b^2}{2a})$ , whose axis is the axis of  $y$ , and whole latus rectum is  $2b$ , the concavity being turned towards the positive end of the axis of  $y$ .

15. If  $y^2 = 4ax$  be the equation of the parabola and  $(h, k)$  a point on the locus; then the point  $(h, 3k)$  lies on the original curve;  $\therefore (3k)^2 = 4ah$ .

Hence the required equation is  $9y^2 = 4ax$ .

16. Take the centre of the given circle as origin, and the lines through it, which are respectively parallel and perpendicular to the given line, as axes.

Let  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  be the equation to the circle and  $y + b = 0$  the equation to the line. Then if  $(h, k)$  be any point on the locus we have  $(k + b)^2 = h^2 + k^2 - a^2$ . [Art. 168.]

Hence the required equation is  $x^2 = 2b \left( y + \frac{a^2 + b^2}{2b} \right)$ .

This is a parabola whose vertex is the point  $\left( 0, -\frac{a^2 + b^2}{2b} \right)$ , and whose latus rectum is  $2b$ . Hence the coordinates of the focus are  $\left( 0, -\frac{a^2 + b^2}{2b} + \frac{b}{2} \right)$ , i.e.  $\left( 0, -\frac{a^2}{2b} \right)$ , and the directrix is the line through  $\left( 0, -\frac{a^2 + b^2}{2b} - \frac{b}{2} \right)$ , and parallel to the axis of  $x$ , viz.  $y + b + \frac{a^2}{2b} = 0$ .

17. Taking the same equations as in No. 16, it is easily seen from a figure that, if  $(h, k)$  be the centre of any such circle, then its radius must be equal to both  $k + b$  and to  $\sqrt{h^2 + k^2} - a$ . Hence  $\{k + b + a\}^2 = h^2 + k^2$ .

Hence the required equation to the locus is

$$x^2 - 2y(a + b) - (a + b)^2 = 0, \text{ which is a parabola.}$$

18. Let  $y^2 = 4ax$  be the equation to the parabola, and  $my = x$  the equation of  $AP$ . Solving, the coordinates of  $P$  are  $(4am^2, 4am)$ . The equation of the line through  $P$  perpendicular to  $AP$  is  $y - 4am + m(x - 4am^2) = 0$ . Putting

$$y = 0, \text{ we have } AQ = 4a + 4am^2. \therefore NQ = 4a.$$

19. Let  $(a, 0), (-a, 0)$  be the coordinates of the extremities of the base, and  $(x, y)$  the coordinates of the vertex. Then  $\frac{y}{a - x} + \frac{y}{a + x} = \text{cons.} = c$  (say).

$$\therefore 2ay = c(a^2 - x^2), \text{ which is a parabola.}$$



20. If  $PNP'$  be the double ordinate, then

$$PN = 4p; \therefore AN = 4p. \therefore \widehat{PAN} = 45^\circ; \therefore \widehat{PAP'} = 90^\circ.$$

21. Take the common axis for the axis of  $x$  and the origin midway between the vertices. Let  $y^2 = 4a(x - c)$  and  $y^2 + 4b(x + c) = 0$ , be the equations to the parabolas. The abscissae of the points where  $y = k$  cuts these curves are  $\frac{k^2}{4a} + c, -\frac{k^2}{4b} - c$ . Hence, if  $(x, y)$  be the middle point,

$$2x = \frac{k^2}{4} \left\{ \frac{1}{a} - \frac{1}{b} \right\}, \text{ and } y = k.$$

Eliminating  $k$ , we have  $8abx = y^2(b - a)$ , which is a parabola, unless  $a = b$ .

22. Let  $(h, k)$  be the coordinates of the focus and  $x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = b$  (Art. 178) the equation of the directrix.

The equation of the parabola will therefore be

$$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = (x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta - b)^2.$$

Since it passes through the point  $(a, 0)$ ,

$$\therefore (a - h)^2 + k^2 = (a \cos \theta - b)^2.$$

$$\therefore a^2 \sin^2 \theta - 2ah + h^2 + k^2 = b^2 - 2ab \cos \theta.$$

So, since it passes through the point  $(-a, 0)$ , we have

$$a^2 \sin^2 \theta + 2ah + h^2 + k^2 = b^2 + 2ab \cos \theta;$$

Adding,  $a^2 \sin^2 \theta + h^2 + k^2 = b^2$ ; subtracting,  $h = b \cos \theta$ .

Eliminating  $\theta$ ;  $a^2 \left( 1 - \frac{h^2}{b^2} \right) + h^2 + k^2 = b^2,$

*i.e.*  $h^2(b^2 - a^2) + b^2 k^2 = b^2(b^2 - a^2).$  Hence, etc.

**203.** To find the points of intersection of any straight line with the parabola

$$y^2 = 4ax \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

The equation to any straight line is

$$y = mx + c \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

The coordinates of the points common to the straight line and the parabola satisfy both equations (1) and (2), and are therefore found by solving them.

Substituting the value of  $y$  from (2) in (1), we have

$$(mx + c)^2 = 4ax,$$

*i.e.*  $m^2x^2 + 2x(mc - 2a) + c^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$

This is a quadratic equation for  $x$  and therefore has two roots, real, coincident, or imaginary.

The straight line therefore meets the parabola in two points, real, coincident, or imaginary.

The roots of (3) are real or imaginary according as

$$\{2(mc - 2a)\}^2 - 4m^2c^2$$

is positive or negative, *i.e.* according as  $-amc + a^2$  is positive or negative, *i.e.* according as  $mc$  is  $\leq 4a$ .

**204.** To find the length of the chord intercepted by the parabola on the straight line

$$y = mx + c \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

If  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  be the common points of intersection, then, as in Art. 154, we have, from equation (3) of the last article,

$$\begin{aligned} (x_1 - x_2)^2 &= (x_1 + x_2)^2 - 4x_1x_2 \\ &= \frac{4(mc - 2a)^2}{m^4} - \frac{4c^2}{m^2} = \frac{16a(a - mc)}{m^4}, \end{aligned}$$

and

$$y_1 - y_2 = m(x_1 - x_2).$$

Hence the required length =  $\sqrt{(y_1 - y_2)^2 + (x_1 - x_2)^2}$

$$= \sqrt{1 + m^2} (x_1 - x_2) = \frac{4}{m^2} \sqrt{1 + m^2} \sqrt{a(a - mc)}.$$

**205.** To find the equation to the tangent at any point  $(x', y')$  of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ .

The definition of the tangent is given in Art. 149.

Let  $P$  be the point  $(x', y')$  and  $Q$  a point  $(x'', y'')$  on the parabola.

The equation to the line  $PQ$  is

$$y - y' = \frac{y'' - y'}{x'' - x'}(x - x') \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Since  $P$  and  $Q$  both lie on the curve, we have

$$y'^2 = 4ax' \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

and

$$y''^2 = 4ax'' \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

Hence, by subtraction, we have

$$y''^2 - y'^2 = 4a(x'' - x'),$$

*i.e.*  $(y'' - y')(y'' + y') = 4a(x'' - x'),$

and hence  $\frac{y'' - y'}{x'' - x'} = \frac{4a}{y'' + y'}.$

Substituting this value in equation (1), we have, as the equation to any secant  $PQ$ ,

$$y - y' = \frac{4a}{y'' + y'}(x - x')$$

*i.e.*  $y(y' + y'') = 4ax + y'y'' + y'^2 - 4ax'$   
 $= 4ax + y'y'' \dots\dots\dots(4).$

To obtain the equation of the tangent at  $(x', y')$  we take  $Q$  indefinitely close to  $P$ , and hence, in the limit, put  $y'' = y'$ .

The equation (4) then becomes

$$2yy' = y'^2 + 4ax = 4ax + 4ax',$$

*i.e.*  $yy' = 2a(x + x').$

**Cor.** It will be noted that the equation to the tangent is obtained from the equation to the curve by the rule of Art. 152.

**Exs.** The equation to the tangent at the point (2, -4) of the parabola  $y^2=8x$  is

$$y(-4) = 4(x+2),$$

*i.e.*

$$x+y+2=0.$$

The equation to the tangent at the point  $(\frac{a}{m^2}, \frac{2a}{m})$  of the parabola  $y^2=4ax$  is

$$y \cdot \frac{2a}{m} = 2a \left( x + \frac{a}{m^2} \right),$$

*i.e.*

$$y = mx + \frac{a}{m}.$$

**206.** To find the condition that the straight line

$$y = mx + c \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

may touch the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax \dots\dots\dots(2).$

The abscissæ of the points in which the straight line (1) meets the curve (2) are as in Art. 203, given by the equation

$$m^2x^2 + 2x(mc - 2a) + c^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

The line (1) will touch (2) if it meet it in two points which are indefinitely close to one another, *i.e.* in two points which ultimately coincide.

The roots of equation (3) must therefore be equal.

The condition for this is

$$4(mc - 2a)^2 = 4m^2c^2,$$

*i.e.*

$$a^2 - amc = 0,$$

so that

$$c = \frac{a}{m}.$$

Substituting this value of  $c$  in (1), we have as the equation to a tangent,

$$\mathbf{y = mx + \frac{a}{m} .}$$

In this equation  $m$  is the tangent of the angle which the tangent makes with the axis of  $x$ .

The foregoing proposition may also be obtained from the equation of Art. 205.

For equation (4) of that article may be written

$$y = \frac{2a}{y'}x + \frac{2ax'}{y'} \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

In this equation put  $\frac{2a}{y'} = m$ , i.e.  $y' = \frac{2a}{m}$ ,

and hence  $x' = \frac{y'^2}{4a} = \frac{a}{m^2}$ , and  $\frac{2ax'}{y'} = \frac{a}{m}$ .

The equation (1) then becomes  $y = mx + \frac{a}{m}$ .

Also it is the tangent at the point  $(x', y')$ , i.e.  $(\frac{a}{m^2}, \frac{2a}{m})$ .

**207.** *Equation to the normal at  $(x', y')$ .* The required normal is the straight line which passes through the point  $(x', y')$  and is perpendicular to the tangent, i.e. to the straight line

$$y = \frac{2a}{y'}(x + x').$$

Its equation is therefore

$$y - y' = m'(x - x'),$$

where  $m' \times \frac{2a}{y'} = -1$ , i.e.  $m' = -\frac{y'}{2a}$ , (Art. 69.)

and the equation to the normal is

$$y - y' = \frac{-y'}{2a}(x - x') \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

**208.** *To express the equation of the normal in the form*

$$y = mx - 2am - am^3.$$

In equation (1) of the last article put

$$\frac{-y'}{2a} = m, \text{ i.e. } y' = -2am.$$

Hence  $x' = \frac{y'^2}{4a} = am^2$ .

The normal is therefore

$$y + 2am = m(x - am^2),$$

*i.e.* 
$$y = mx - 2am - am^3,$$

and it is a normal at the point  $(am^2, -2am)$  of the curve.

In this equation  $m$  is the tangent of the angle which the *normal* makes with the axis. It must be carefully distinguished from the  $m$  of Art. 206 which is the tangent of the angle which the *tangent* makes with the axis. The “ $m$ ” of this article is  $-1$  divided by the “ $m$ ” of Art. 206.

**209. Subtangent and Subnormal. Def.** If the tangent and normal at any point  $P$  of a conic section meet the axis in  $T$  and  $G$  respectively and  $PN$  be the ordinate at  $P$ , then  $NT$  is called the Subtangent and  $NG$  the Subnormal of  $P$ .

*To find the length of the subtangent and subnormal.*

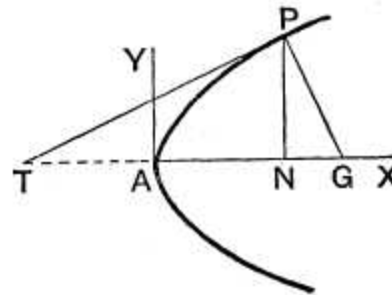
If  $P$  be the point  $(x', y')$  the equation to  $TP$  is, by Art. 205,

$$yy' = 2a(x + x') \dots\dots(1).$$

To obtain the length of  $AT$ , we have to find the point where this straight line meets the axis of  $x$ , *i.e.* we put  $y = 0$  in (1) and we have

$$x = -x' \dots\dots(2).$$

Hence 
$$AT = AN.$$



[The negative sign in equation (2) shews that  $T$  and  $N$  always lie on opposite sides of the vertex  $A$ .]

Hence the subtangent  $NT = 2AN =$  twice the abscissa of the point  $P$ .

Since  $TPG$  is a right-angled triangle, we have (Euc. VI. 8)

$$PN^2 = TN \cdot NG.$$

Hence the subnormal  $NG$

$$= \frac{PN^2}{TN} = \frac{PN^2}{2AN} = 2a.$$

The subnormal is therefore constant for all points on the parabola and is equal to the semi-latus rectum.

**210. Ex. 1.** *If a chord which is normal to the parabola at one end subtend a right angle at the vertex, prove that it is inclined at an angle  $\tan^{-1}\sqrt{2}$  to the axis.*

The equation to any chord which is normal is

$$y = mx - 2am - am^3,$$

*i.e.* 
$$mx - y = 2am + am^3.$$

The parabola is  $y^2 = 4ax$ .

The straight lines joining the origin to the intersections of these two are therefore given by the equation

$$y^2(2am + am^3) - 4ax(mx - y) = 0.$$

If these be at right angles, then

$$2am + am^3 - 4am = 0,$$

*i.e.* 
$$m = \pm\sqrt{2}.$$

**Ex. 2.** *From the point where any normal to the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  meets the axis is drawn a line perpendicular to this normal; prove that this line always touches an equal parabola.*

The equation of any normal to the parabola is

$$y = mx - 2am - am^3.$$

This meets the axis in the point  $(2a + am^2, 0)$ .

The equation to the straight line through this point perpendicular to the normal is

$$y = m_1(x - 2a - am^2),$$

where 
$$m_1m = -1.$$

The equation is therefore

$$y = m_1 \left( x - 2a - \frac{a}{m_1^2} \right),$$

*i.e.* 
$$y = m_1(x - 2a) - \frac{a}{m_1}.$$

This straight line, as in Art. 206, always touches the equal parabola

$$y^2 = -4a(x - 2a),$$

whose vertex is the point  $(2a, 0)$  and whose concavity is towards the negative end of the axis of  $x$ .

## EXAMPLES XXVI

Write down the equations to the tangent and normal

1. at the point (4, 6) of the parabola  $y^2=9x$ ,
2. at the point of the parabola  $y^2=6x$  whose ordinate is 12,
3. at the ends of the latus rectum of the parabola  $y^2=12x$ ,
4. at the ends of the latus rectum of the parabola  $y^2=4a(x-a)$ .
5. Find the equation to that tangent to the parabola  $y^2=7x$  which is parallel to the straight line  $4y-x+3=0$ . Find also its point of contact.
6. A tangent to the parabola  $y^2=4ax$  makes an angle of  $60^\circ$  with the axis; find its point of contact.
7. A tangent to the parabola  $y^2=8x$  makes an angle of  $45^\circ$  with the straight line  $y=3x+5$ . Find its equation and its point of contact.
8. Find the points of the parabola  $y^2=4ax$  at which (i) the tangent, and (ii) the normal is inclined at  $30^\circ$  to the axis.
9. Find the equation to the tangents to the parabola  $y^2=9x$  which goes through the point (4, 10).
10. Prove that the straight line  $x+y=1$  touches the parabola  $y=x-x^2$ .
11. Prove that the straight line  $y=mx+c$  touches the parabola  $y^2=4a(x+a)$  if  $c=ma+\frac{a}{m}$ .
12. Prove that the straight line  $lx+my+n=0$  touches the parabola  $y^2=4ax$  if  $ln=am^2$ .
13. For what point of the parabola  $y^2=4ax$  is (1) the normal equal to twice the subtangent, (2) the normal equal to the difference between the subtangent and the subnormal?

Find the equations to the common tangents of

14. the parabolas  $y^2=4ax$  and  $x^2=4by$ ,
15. the circle  $x^2+y^2=4ax$  and the parabola  $y^2=4ax$ .
16. Two equal parabolas have the same vertex and their axes are at right angles; prove that the common tangent touches each at the end of a latus rectum.



17. Prove that two tangents to the parabolas  $y^2=4a(x+a)$  and  $y^2=4a'(x+a')$ , which are at right angles to one another, meet on the straight line  $x+a+a'=0$ .

Shew also that this straight line is the common chord of the two parabolas.

18.  $PN$  is an ordinate of the parabola; a straight line is drawn parallel to the axis to bisect  $NP$  and meets the curve in  $Q$ ; prove that  $NQ$  meets the tangent at the vertex in a point  $T$  such that  $AT = \frac{2}{3}NP$ .

19. Prove that the chord of the parabola  $y^2=4ax$ , whose equation is  $y-x\sqrt{2}+4a\sqrt{2}=0$ , is a normal to the curve and that its length is  $6\sqrt{3}a$ .

20. If perpendiculars be drawn on any tangent to a parabola from two fixed points on the axis, which are equidistant from the focus, prove that the difference of their squares is constant.

21. If  $P$ ,  $Q$ , and  $R$  be three points on a parabola whose ordinates are in geometrical progression, prove that the tangents at  $P$  and  $R$  meet on the ordinate of  $Q$ .

22. Tangents are drawn to a parabola at points whose abscissæ are in the ratio  $\mu : 1$ ; prove that they intersect on the curve

$$y^2 = (\mu^{\frac{1}{2}} + \mu^{-\frac{1}{2}})^2 ax.$$

23. If the tangents at the points  $(x', y')$  and  $(x'', y'')$  meet at the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  and the normals at the same points in  $(x_2, y_2)$ , prove that

$$(1) \quad x_1 = \frac{y'y''}{4a} \quad \text{and} \quad y_1 = \frac{y'+y''}{2},$$

$$(2) \quad x_2 = 2a + \frac{y'^2 + y'y'' + y''^2}{4a} \quad \text{and} \quad y_2 = -y'y'' \frac{y'+y''}{8a^2},$$

and hence that

$$(3) \quad x_2 = 2a + \frac{y_1^2}{a} - x_1 \quad \text{and} \quad y_2 = -\frac{x_1 y_1}{a}.$$

24. From the preceding question prove that, if tangents be drawn to the parabola  $y^2=4ax$  from any point on the parabola  $y^2=a(x+b)$ , then the normals at the points of contact meet on a fixed straight line.

25. Find the lengths of the normals drawn from the point on the axis of the parabola  $y^2=8ax$  whose distance from the focus is  $8a$ .

26. Prove that the locus of the middle point of the portion of a normal intersected between the curve and the axis is a parabola whose vertex is the focus and whose latus rectum is one quarter of that of the original parabola.

27. Prove that the distance between a tangent to the parabola and the parallel normal is  $a \operatorname{cosec} \theta \sec^2 \theta$ , where  $\theta$  is the angle that either makes with the axis.

28.  $PNP'$  is a double ordinate of the parabola; prove that the locus of the point of intersection of the normal at  $P$  and the diameter through  $P'$  is the equal parabola  $y^2 = 4a(x - 4a)$ .

29. The normal at any point  $P$  meets the axis in  $G$  and the tangent at the vertex in  $G'$ ; if  $A$  be the vertex and the rectangle  $AGQG'$  be completed, prove that the equation to the locus of  $Q$  is

$$x^3 = 2ax^2 + ay^2.$$

30. Two equal parabolas have the same focus and their axes are at right angles; a normal to one is perpendicular to a normal to the other; prove that the locus of the point of intersection of these normals is another parabola.

31. If a normal to a parabola make an angle  $\phi$  with the axis, shew that it will cut the curve again at an angle  $\tan^{-1}(\frac{1}{2} \tan \phi)$ .

32. Prove that the two parabolas  $y^2 = 4ax$  and  $y^2 = 4c(x - b)$  cannot have a common normal, other than the axis, unless  $\frac{b}{a - c} > 2$ .

33. If  $a^2 > 8b^2$ , prove that a point can be found such that the two tangents from it to the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  are normals to the parabola  $x^2 = 4by$ .

34. Prove that three tangents to a parabola, which are such that the tangents of their inclinations to the axis are in a given harmonical progression, form a triangle whose area is constant.

35. Prove that the parabolas  $y^2 = 4ax$  and  $x^2 = 4by$  cut one another at an angle  $\tan^{-1} \frac{3a^{\frac{1}{3}} b^{\frac{1}{3}}}{2(a^{\frac{2}{3}} + b^{\frac{2}{3}})}$ .

36. Prove that two parabolas, having the same focus and their axes in opposite directions, cut at right angles.

37. Shew that the two parabolas

$$x^2 + 4a(y - 2b - a) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad y^2 = 4b(x - 2a + b)$$

intersect at right angles at a common end of the latus rectum of each.

38. A parabola is drawn touching the axis of  $x$  at the origin and having its vertex at a given distance  $k$  from this axis. Prove that the axis of the parabola is a tangent to the parabola  $x^2 = -8k(y - 2k)$ .

## ANSWERS

1.  $4y = 3x + 12$ ;  $4x + 3y = 34$ .      2.  $4y - x = 24$ ;  $4x + y = 108$ .  
 3.  $y - x = 3$ ;  $y + x = 9$ ;  $x + y + 3 = 0$ ;  $x - y = 9$ .  
 4.  $y = x$ ;  $x + y = 4a$ ;  $y + x = 0$ ;  $x - y = 4a$ .  
 5.  $4y = x + 28$ ;  $(28, 14)$ .      6.  $\left(\frac{a}{3}, \frac{2a}{\sqrt{3}}\right)$ .  
 7.  $y + 2x + 1 = 0$ ;  $(\frac{1}{2}, -2)$ ;  $2y = x + 8$ ;  $(8, 8)$ .  
 8.  $(3a, 2\sqrt{3}a)$ ;  $\left(\frac{a}{3}, -\frac{2\sqrt{3}}{3}a\right)$ .      9.  $4y = 9x + 4$ ;  $4y = x + 36$ .  
 13.  $\left(\frac{\sqrt{5}+1}{2}a, a\sqrt{2\sqrt{5}+2}\right)$ ;  $(3a, 2\sqrt{3}a)$ .  
 14.  $b^{\frac{1}{3}}y + a^{\frac{1}{3}}x + a^{\frac{2}{3}}b^{\frac{2}{3}} = 0$ .      15.  $x = 0$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. Put  $x' = 4$ ,  $y' = 6$ ,  $a = \frac{9}{2}$  in the equations of Arts. 205, 207.

2. Put  $x' = 24$ ,  $y' = 12$ ,  $a = \frac{3}{2}$  in the equations of Arts. 205, 207.

3. Put  $x' = 3$ ,  $y' = \pm 6$ ,  $a = 3$  in the equations of Arts. 205, 207.

4. The coordinates of the ends of the latus rectum of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ , are  $(a, \pm 2a)$ .

Hence, by Arts. 205, 207, the equations of the tangents and normals are

$$x + a = \pm y, \text{ and } x \pm y = 3a.$$

Changing  $x$  into  $x - a$ , we have for the required equations  $x = \pm y$ ,  $x \pm y = 4a$ .

5. Put  $m = \frac{1}{4}$ ,  $a = \frac{7}{4}$  in the equations of Art. 206.  $\therefore$  the required tangent is  $4y = x + 28$ , and the point of contact is  $\left(\frac{a}{m^2}, \frac{2a}{m}\right)$ , i.e.  $(28, 14)$ .

6. By Art. 206, it is the point  $\left(\frac{a}{m^2}, \frac{2a}{m}\right)$ , where  $m = \tan 60^\circ = \sqrt{3}$ .

7. The "m's" of the tangents are (Art. 72)

$$\frac{3+1}{1-3} \text{ and } \frac{3-1}{1+3}, \text{ i.e. } -2 \text{ and } \frac{1}{2}.$$

Also  $a = 2$ .

Hence the required tangents are, by Art. 206,

$$y = -2x - 1 \text{ and } y = \frac{1}{2}x + 4,$$

and the points of contact are

$$\left(\frac{2}{4}, \frac{4}{-2}\right) \text{ and } \left(\frac{2}{\frac{1}{4}}, \frac{4}{\frac{1}{2}}\right), \text{ or } \left(\frac{1}{2}, -2\right) \text{ and } (8, 8).$$

8. Any point on the parabola is  $\left(\frac{a}{m^2}, \frac{2a}{m}\right)$ . By Art. 206 in the first case  $m = \tan 30^\circ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ , and in the second case  $m = \tan 60^\circ = \sqrt{3}$ .

9. Any tangent to the parabola  $y^2 = 9x$  is

$$y = mx + \frac{9}{4m}.$$

If this passes through the point (4, 10) we have  $10 = 4m + \frac{9}{4m}$ , whence  $m = \frac{1}{4}$  or  $\frac{9}{4}$ .

Substituting for  $m$ , we have the required equations.

10. The common points are given by  $1 - x = x - x^2$ , or  $x^2 - 2x + 1 = 0$ , which is a perfect square.

11. The common points are given by

$$(mx + c)^2 = 4a(x + a), \text{ or } m^2x^2 + 2x(mc - 2a) + c^2 - 4a^2 = 0.$$

The condition for equal roots is

$$(mc - 2a)^2 = m^2(c^2 - 4a^2), \text{ so that } c = ma + \frac{a}{m}.$$

12. In the condition of Art. 206, for  $m$  put  $-\frac{l}{m}$  and for  $c$  put  $-\frac{n}{m}$ , and it becomes  $\frac{ln}{m^2} = a$ .

13. (1) In the figure of Art. 209, we have

$$PN^2 + NG^2 = PG^2 = 4NT^2.$$

$$\therefore y^2 + 4a^2 = 16x^2, \text{ i.e. } ax + a^2 = 4x^2.$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{\sqrt{17} + 1}{8} a, \text{ and } y^2 = \frac{a^2}{2} (\sqrt{17} + 1).$$

(2)  $PG = NT - NG = 2AN - NG$ .

$$\therefore y^2 + 4a^2 = 4(x - a)^2. \quad \therefore 4ax = 4x^2 - 8ax.$$

$$\therefore x = 3a, \text{ and } y^2 = 4ax = 12a^2.$$

14. The common points of  $y = mx + \frac{a}{m}$  (a tangent to the first parabola), and  $x^2 = 4by$  are given by

$$x^2 = 4b \left( mx + \frac{a}{m} \right),$$

which has equal roots if  $m = -\frac{a^{\frac{1}{3}}}{b^{\frac{1}{3}}}$ . Substitute for  $m$ , etc.

15. Solving, the common points are given by  $x^2 = 0$ ; and the circle is entirely within the parabola. Hence the only common tangent is  $x = 0$ .

16. Let  $y^2 = 4ax$ ,  $x^2 = 4ay$  be the equations to the parabolas.

The common points of  $y = mx + \frac{a}{m}$ , a tangent to the first parabola, and  $x^2 = 4ay$  are given by

$$x^2 = 4a \left( mx + \frac{a}{m} \right),$$

which has equal roots if  $m = -1$ .

$\therefore$  the equation of the common tangent is  $y + x + a = 0$ , which passes through the points  $(a, -2a)$  and  $(-2a, a)$ .

17. Any tangent to the first parabola is

$$y = m(x + a) + \frac{a}{m};$$

A perpendicular tangent to the second parabola is

$$y = -\frac{1}{m}(x + a') - a'm.$$

Subtracting, the point of intersection lies on

$$x\left(m + \frac{1}{m}\right) + a\left(m + \frac{1}{m}\right) + a'\left(m + \frac{1}{m}\right) = 0, \text{ or } x + a + a' = 0.$$

The same equation is obtained by subtracting the equations to the two parabolas. Hence etc.

18. Let  $(am^2, 2am)$  be the coordinates of  $P$ . The line  $y = am$  cuts the curve where  $a^2m^2 = 4ax$ , or  $x = \frac{1}{4}am^2$ .  $\therefore$  the coordinates of  $Q$  are  $(\frac{1}{4}am^2, am)$  and the coordinates of  $N$  are  $(am^2, 0)$ . Hence the equation of  $QN$  is

$$\frac{y}{am} = \frac{x - am^2}{-\frac{3}{4}am^2}.$$

Putting  $x = 0$ , we have  $AT = \frac{4}{3}am = \frac{2}{3}NP$ .

19. Whatever be the value of  $m$ , the line

$$y = mx - 2am - am^3$$

is a normal to the curve. (Art. 208.)

Put  $m = \sqrt{2}$ , and the equation becomes  $y = \sqrt{2}x - 4a\sqrt{2}$ .

In the result of Art. 204, put  $m = \sqrt{2}$  and  $c = -4a\sqrt{2}$ .

Hence the required length

$$= \frac{4}{2} \sqrt{1 + 2} \sqrt{a(a + 8a)} = 6\sqrt{3} \cdot a.$$

20. The difference of the squares on the perpendiculars from  $(a \pm c, 0)$  upon any tangent  $\left(mx - y + \frac{a}{m} = 0\right)$

$$= \frac{\left\{m(a + c) + \frac{a}{m}\right\}^2 - \left\{m(a - c) + \frac{a}{m}\right\}^2}{1 + m^2} = \frac{4acm\left(m + \frac{1}{m}\right)}{1 + m^2} = 4ac.$$

21. Let the coordinates of  $P, Q, R$  be

$$\left(\frac{a}{m_1^2}, \frac{2a}{m_1}\right), \left(\frac{a}{m_2^2}, \frac{2a}{m_2}\right) \text{ and } \left(\frac{a}{m_3^2}, \frac{2a}{m_3}\right),$$

so that  $\frac{1}{m_2^2} = \frac{1}{m_1 m_3}$ , since the ordinates are in geometrical progression. By Art. 206,

$$y = m_1 x + \frac{a}{m_1} \text{ and } y = m_3 x + \frac{a}{m_3}$$

are the equations of the tangents at  $P$  and  $R$ .

Solving, their point of intersection is given by

$$x = \frac{a}{m_1 m_3} = \frac{a}{m_2^2},$$

which is the equation of the ordinate of  $Q$ .

22. Let  $y = m_1 x + \frac{a}{m_1}$  and  $y = m_2 x + \frac{a}{m_2}$  be the equation of the tangents, so that  $m_2^2 = \mu \cdot m_1^2$ , by Art. 206.

Solving 
$$x = \frac{a}{m_1 m_2} = \frac{a}{\mu^{\frac{1}{2}} m_1^2}, \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

and 
$$y = a \left\{ \frac{1}{m_1} + \frac{1}{m_2} \right\} = a \left\{ \frac{1}{m_1} + \frac{1}{\mu^{\frac{1}{2}} m_1} \right\}.$$

$$\therefore m_1 = \frac{a}{y} \cdot \frac{\mu^{\frac{1}{2}} + 1}{\mu^{\frac{1}{2}}}. \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

Eliminating  $m_1$  between (1) and (2), we have, as the required locus,

$$\left\{ \frac{a}{y} \cdot \frac{\mu^{\frac{1}{2}} + 1}{\mu^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right\}^2 = \frac{a}{\mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \cdot x} \therefore y^2 = ax \cdot \left\{ \frac{\mu^{\frac{1}{2}} + 1}{\mu^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right\}^2 = ax (\mu^{\frac{1}{4}} + \mu^{-\frac{1}{4}})^2.$$

23. (1) Solving  $yy' = 2a(x + x')$ , and  $yy'' = 2a(x + x'')$ , we have

$$y_1 = \frac{2a(x' - x'')}{y' - y''} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{y'^2 - y''^2}{y' - y''} = \frac{y' + y''}{2},$$

and  $y'^2 + y'y'' = 4ax_1 + 4ax'$ , so that  $x_1 = \frac{y'y''}{4a}$ .

(2) Solving

$2a(y - y') = x'y' - xy'$ , and  $2a(y - y'') = x''y'' - xy''$ , (Art. 207),

we have  $2a(y'' - y') = \frac{y'^3 - y''^3}{4a} + x(y'' - y')$ .

$$\therefore x_2 = 2a + \frac{y'^2 + y'y'' + y''^2}{4a}.$$

Hence  $2ay_2 - 2ay' = \frac{y'^3}{4a} - 2ay' - \frac{y'(y'^2 + y'y'' + y''^2)}{4a}$ .

$$\therefore y_2 = -y'y'' \frac{y' + y''}{8a^2}.$$

(3) This follows at once from (1) and (2).

24. The condition that  $(x_1, y_1)$  should lie on the parabola  $y^2 = a(x + b)$  is  $\left(\frac{y' + y''}{2}\right)^2 = a\left(\frac{y'y''}{4a} + b\right)$ , or

$$\frac{y'^2 + y''^2 + y'y''}{4a} = b. \quad \text{Hence } x_2 = 2a + b, \text{ etc.}$$

25. The axis is one normal, and, if  $G$  be the given point,  $AG = AS + SG = 2a + 8a = 10a$ . Also

$$AG = AN + NG = AN + 4a;$$

$$\therefore AN = 6a, \text{ so that } PN^2 = 48a^2.$$

$$\therefore PG^2 = PN^2 + NG^2 = 48a^2 + 16a^2 = 64a^2. \quad \therefore PG = 8a.$$

26. Taking  $y^2 = 4ax$  as the parabola, if the coordinates of  $P$  are  $(am^2, 2am)$ , the coordinates of  $G$  (Art. 209) are  $(am^2 + 2a, 0)$ . If  $(x, y)$  be a point on the locus,

$$2x = 2am^2 + 2a, \text{ and } 2y = 2am.$$

Eliminating  $m$ , we have  $y^2 = a(x - a)$ ,

which is a parabola whose vertex is  $(a, 0)$ , and the length of whose latus rectum is  $a$ .



**27.** Let  $y = mx + \frac{a}{m}$  and  $y = mx - 2am - am^3$  be the equation of the tangent and parallel normal. The portion they intercept on the axis of  $x$

$$= (2a + am^2) - \left(-\frac{a}{m}\right) = 2a + a \tan^2 \theta + a \cot^2 \theta$$

(where  $m = \tan \theta$ )

$$= a (\operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta + \sec^2 \theta) = a \operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta \cdot \sec^2 \theta.$$

Hence the required length

$$= a \operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta \cdot \sec^2 \theta \cdot \sin \theta = a \operatorname{cosec} \theta \cdot \sec^2 \theta.$$

**28.** If  $y = mx - 2am - am^3$  be the equation to the normal at  $P$ , the coordinates of  $P$  will be  $(am^2, -2am)$ . [Art. 208.] Hence  $P'$  is the point  $(am^2, 2am)$ , so that the equation of the diameter through  $P'$  is  $y = 2am$ .

Eliminating  $m$ ,  $y^2 = 4a(x - 4a)$ .

**29.** Putting  $y = 0$  and  $x = 0$  successively in the equation  $y = mx - 2am - am^3$ , the coordinates of  $Q$  are seen to be

$$x = 2a + am^2, \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

$$y = -2am - am^3. \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

Multiply (i) by  $m$ , and add (ii);  $\therefore y + mx = 0$ , i.e.  $m = -\frac{y}{x}$ .

Eliminating  $m$ , we have  $x^3 = 2ax^2 + ay^2$ .

**30.** Let  $y^2 = 4a(x + a)$  and  $x^2 = 4a(y + a)$  be the equation of the parabolas, the common focus being the origin. The equations of perpendicular normals will be

$$y = m(x + a) - 2am - am^3, \text{ and } x = -m(y + a) + 2am + am^3.$$

By adding, 
$$m = \frac{x + y}{x - y};$$

Substituting for  $m$ , we have 
$$y = \frac{x + y}{x - y} x - a \frac{x + y}{x - y} \cdot \frac{2(x^2 + y^2)}{(x - y)^2},$$

whence  $(x - y)^2 = 2a(x + y)$ , which is a parabola.

**31.** If the lines

$$y - y_1 = -\frac{y_1}{2a}(x - x_1) \text{ (Art. 207)}$$

and  $y(y_1 + y_2) = 4ax + y_1y_2$  (Art. 205)

are coincident, then  $\frac{4a}{y_1 + y_2} = -\frac{y_1}{2a} = \tan \phi$ .

Eliminating  $y_1$ , we have  $y_2 \tan \phi = 2a \tan^2 \phi + 4a$ .

Also the tangent at the point  $(x_2, y_2)$  makes an angle  $\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{2a}{y_2}\right)$  with the axes.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{the required angle} &= \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{2a}{y_2} \sim \tan \phi}{1 + \frac{2a}{y_2} \tan \phi} \\ &= \tan^{-1} \frac{2a(\tan^2 \phi + 1)}{4a(1 + \tan^2 \phi)} \cdot \tan \phi = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{2} \tan \phi \right). \end{aligned}$$

**32.** The lines

$$y = mx - 2am - am^3 \quad \text{and} \quad y = m(x - b) - 2cm - cm^3$$

are coincident if

$$2a + am^3 = b + 2c + cm^3, \quad \text{i.e. if } m^2(a - c) = b - 2(a - c).$$

$$\therefore \frac{b}{a - c} - 2 > 0, \quad \text{if } m \text{ is real.}$$

**33.** If  $x = \frac{1}{m}y - \frac{a}{m^2}$ , and  $x = \frac{1}{m}y - \frac{2b}{m} - \frac{b}{m^3}$  (viz. a tangent to the first and a normal to the second parabola), are coincident, then

$$\frac{a}{m} = 2b + \frac{b}{m^3}.$$

$\therefore 2bm^2 - am + b = 0$ , which has real roots if  $a^2 > 8b^2$ .

**34.** If  $\frac{1}{m_1} - \frac{1}{m_2} = b$ , and  $\frac{1}{m_2} - \frac{1}{m_3} = b$ , then  $\frac{1}{m_1} - \frac{1}{m_3} = 2b$ .

Hence, by Ex. x. 16,

$$\Delta = \frac{a^2}{2} \Pi \left( \frac{1}{m_2} - \frac{1}{m_3} \right) = a^2 b^3.$$

**35.** By solving, the common point is  $(4a^{\frac{1}{3}}b^{\frac{2}{3}}, 4a^{\frac{2}{3}}b^{\frac{1}{3}})$  and the  $m$ 's of the tangents at this point are

$$\frac{2a}{4a^{\frac{2}{3}}b^{\frac{1}{3}}} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{4a^{\frac{1}{3}}b^{\frac{2}{3}}}{2b}, \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \frac{a^{\frac{1}{3}}}{2b^{\frac{1}{3}}} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{2a^{\frac{1}{3}}}{b^{\frac{1}{3}}}.$$

$$\therefore \text{the required angle} = \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{2a^{\frac{1}{3}}}{b^{\frac{1}{3}}} - \frac{a^{\frac{1}{3}}}{2b^{\frac{1}{3}}}}{1 + \frac{a^{\frac{2}{3}}}{b^{\frac{2}{3}}}} = \tan^{-1} \frac{3a^{\frac{1}{3}} \cdot b^{\frac{1}{3}}}{2(a^{\frac{2}{3}} + b^{\frac{2}{3}})}.$$

**36.** Taking the common focus as origin, let  
 $y^2 = 4a(x + a)$  and  $y^2 = -4b(x - b)$   
 be the equations to the parabolas.

Solving  $x = b - a$ ,  $y = 2\sqrt{ab}$ . Hence the  $m$ 's of the tangents at these points are  $\sqrt{\frac{a}{b}}$  and  $-\sqrt{\frac{b}{a}}$ .

**Aliter.** Let  $P$  be one of the points of intersection of the two parabolas, and let the tangents at  $P$  to them meet the axis in  $T$  and  $T'$ . By Art. 211, both  $ST$  and  $ST'$  are equal to  $SP$ . Hence  $S$  is the centre of the circumcircle of  $TPT'$ .  $\therefore TPT'$  is a right angle, i.e. the tangents at  $P$  are perpendicular.

**37.** By drawing the curves, it is easily seen that the foci are  $(2a, 0)$  and  $(0, 2b)$ . Hence the point  $(2a, 2b)$  is a common end of the latus rectum of each parabola. The  $m$ 's of the tangents at this point are 1 and  $-1$ .

**38.** Let  $A$  be the vertex, and let the axis of the parabola cut the axis of  $x$  in  $T$ . Draw  $ON$  perpendicular to  $AT$ , and  $NR$  and  $AH$  perpendicular to the axis of  $x$ . Let  $\widehat{NOR} = \theta$ .

Since  $AN = AT$  (Art. 209),

$$\therefore NR = 2AH = 2k. \quad \therefore ON = NR \operatorname{cosec} \theta = 2k \operatorname{cosec} \theta.$$

$\therefore$  the equation to the axis is  $x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = 2k \operatorname{cosec} \theta$ , or

$$x = -y \tan \theta + 2k (\tan \theta + \cot \theta) = -\tan \theta (y - 2k) + \frac{2k}{\tan \theta},$$

which always touches the parabola  $x^2 = -8k(y - 2k)$ .

**211. Some properties of the Parabola.**

(a) *If the tangent and normal at any point P of the parabola meet the axis in T and G respectively, then*

$$ST = SG = SP,$$

*and the tangent at P is equally inclined to the axis and the focal distance of P.*

Let P be the point  $(x', y')$ .

Draw PM perpendicular to the directrix.

By Art. 209,

we have  $AT = AN$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore TS &= TA + AS \\ &= AN + ZA \\ &= ZN = MP = SP, \end{aligned}$$

and hence  $\angle STP = \angle SPT$ .

By the same article,  $NG = 2AS = ZS$ .

$$\therefore SG = SN + NG = ZS + SN = MP = SP.$$

(β) *If the tangent at P, meet the directrix in K, then KSP is a right angle.*

$$\text{For } \angle SPT = \angle PTS = \angle KPM.$$

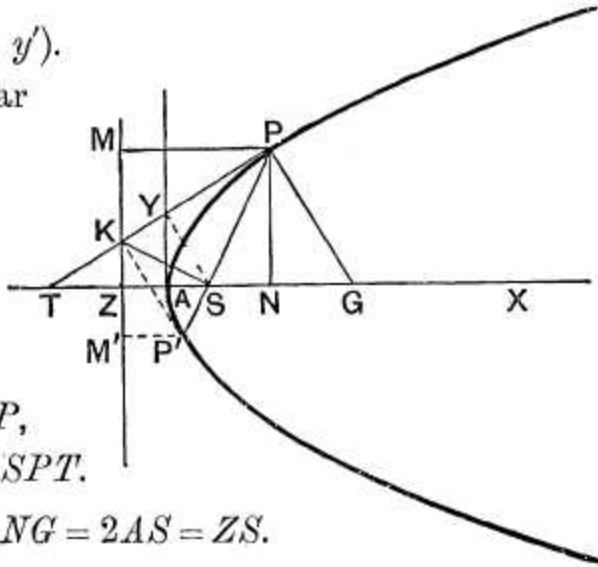
Hence the two triangles  $KPS$  and  $KPM$  have the two sides  $KP, PS$  and the angle  $KPS$  equal respectively to the two sides  $KP, PM$  and the angle  $KPM$ .

Hence  $\angle KSP = \angle KMP = \text{a right angle}$ .

$$\text{Also } \angle SKP = \angle MKP.$$

(γ) *Tangents at the extremities of any focal chord intersect at right angles in the directrix.*

For, if  $PS$  be produced to meet the curve in  $P'$ , then, since  $\angle P'SK$  is a right angle, the tangent at  $P'$  meets the directrix in  $K$ .



Also, by  $(\beta)$ ,  $\angle MKP = \angle SKP$ ,  
 and, similarly,  $\angle M'KP' = \angle SKP'$ .

Hence

$$\angle PKP' = \frac{1}{2} \angle SKM + \frac{1}{2} \angle SKM' = \text{a right angle.}$$

( $\delta$ ) If  $SY$  be perpendicular to the tangent at  $P$ , then  $Y$  lies on the tangent at the vertex and  $SY^2 = AS \cdot SP$ .

For the equation to any tangent is

$$y = mx + \frac{a}{m} \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

The equation to the perpendicular to this line passing through the focus is

$$y = -\frac{1}{m}(x - a) \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

The lines (1) and (2) meet where

$$mx + \frac{a}{m} = -\frac{1}{m}(x - a) = -\frac{1}{m}x + \frac{a}{m},$$

*i. e.* where  $x = 0$ .

Hence  $Y$  lies on the tangent at the vertex.

Also, by Euc. VI. 8, Cor.,

$$SY^2 = SA \cdot ST = AS \cdot SP.$$

**212.** To prove that through any given point  $(x_1, y_1)$  there pass, in general, two tangents to the parabola.

The equation to any tangent is (by Art. 206)

$$y = mx + \frac{a}{m} \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

If this pass through the fixed point  $(x_1, y_1)$ , we have

$$y_1 = mx_1 + \frac{a}{m},$$

*i. e.*  $m^2x_1 - my_1 + a = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$

For any given values of  $x_1$  and  $y_1$  this equation is in general a quadratic equation and gives two values of  $m$  (real or imaginary).

Corresponding to each value of  $m$  we have, by substituting in (1), a different tangent.

The roots of (2) are real and different if  $y_1^2 - 4ax_1$  be positive, *i.e.*, by Art. 201, if the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  lie without the curve.

They are equal, *i.e.* the two tangents coalesce into one tangent, if  $y_1^2 - 4ax_1$  be zero, *i.e.* if the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  lie on the curve.

The two roots are imaginary if  $y_1^2 - 4ax_1$  be negative, *i.e.* if the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  lie within the curve.

**213.** Equation to the **chord of contact** of tangents drawn from a point  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

The equation to the tangent at any point  $Q$ , whose coordinates are  $x'$  and  $y'$ , is

$$yy' = 2a(x + x').$$

Also the tangent at the point  $R$ , whose coordinates are  $x''$  and  $y''$ , is

$$yy'' = 2a(x + x'').$$

If these tangents meet at the point  $T$ , whose coordinates are  $x_1$  and  $y_1$ , we have

$$y_1y' = 2a(x_1 + x') \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

and  $y_1y'' = 2a(x_1 + x'') \dots\dots\dots(2).$

The equation to  $QR$  is then

$$yy_1 = 2a(x + x_1) \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

For, since (1) is true, the point  $(x', y')$  lies on (3).

Also, since (2) is true, the point  $(x'', y'')$  lies on (3).

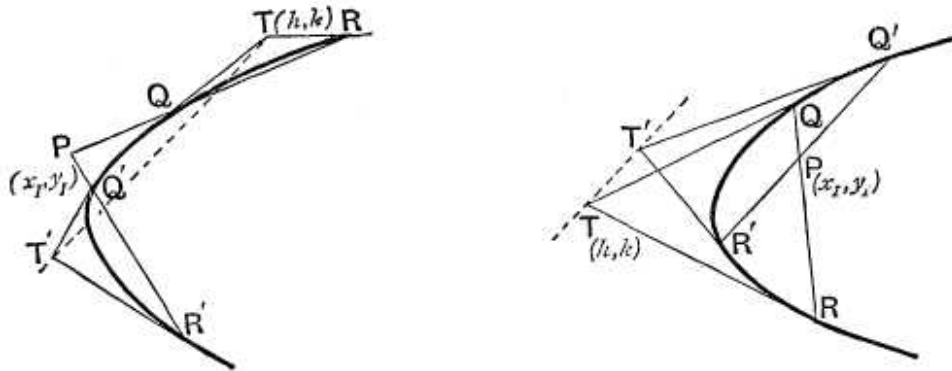
Hence (3) must be the equation to the straight line joining  $(x', y')$  to the point  $(x'', y'')$ , *i.e.* it must be the equation to  $QR$  the chord of contact of tangents from the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

**214.** The polar of any point with respect to a parabola is defined as in Art. 162.

To find the equation of the **polar** of the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  with respect to the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ .

Let  $Q$  and  $R$  be the points in which any chord drawn through the point  $P$ , whose coordinates are  $(x_1, y_1)$ , meets the parabola.

Let the tangents at  $Q$  and  $R$  meet in the point whose coordinates are  $(h, k)$ .



We require the locus of  $(h, k)$ .

Since  $QR$  is the chord of contact of tangents from  $(h, k)$  its equation (Art. 213) is

$$ky = 2a(x + h).$$

Since this straight line passes through the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  we have

$$ky_1 = 2a(x_1 + h) \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

Since the relation (1) is true, it follows that the point  $(h, k)$  always lies on the straight line

$$yy_1 = 2a(x + x_1) \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

Hence (2) is the equation to the polar of  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

**Cor.** The equation to the polar of the focus, viz. the point  $(a, 0)$ , is  $0 = x + a$ , so that the polar of the focus is the directrix.

**215.** When the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  lies without the parabola the equation to its polar is the same as the equation to the chord of contact of tangents drawn from  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

When  $(x_1, y_1)$  is on the parabola the polar is the same as the tangent at the point.

As in Art. 164 the polar of  $(x_1, y_1)$  might have been defined as the chord of contact of the tangents (real or imaginary) that can be drawn from it to the parabola.

**216.** *Geometrical construction for the polar of a point  $(x_1, y_1)$ .*

Let  $T$  be the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ , so that its polar is

$$yy_1 = 2a(x + x_1) \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

Through  $T$  draw a straight line parallel to the axis; its equation is therefore

$$y = y_1 \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

Let this straight line meet the polar in  $V$  and the curve in  $P$ .

The coordinates of  $V$ , which is the intersection of (1) and (2), are therefore

$$\frac{y_1^2}{2a} - x_1 \text{ and } y_1 \dots \dots \dots (3).$$

Also  $P$  is the point on the curve whose ordinate is  $y_1$ , and whose coordinates are therefore

$$\frac{y_1^2}{4a} \text{ and } y_1.$$

Since abscissa of  $P = \frac{\text{abscissa of } T + \text{abscissa of } V}{2}$ , therefore, by Art. 22, Cor.,  $P$  is the middle point of  $T'V$ .

Also the tangent at  $P$  is

$$yy_1 = 2a\left(x + \frac{y_1^2}{4a}\right),$$

which is parallel to (1).

Hence the polar of  $T$  is parallel to the tangent at  $P$ .

To draw the polar of  $T$  we therefore draw a line through  $T$ , parallel to the axis, to meet the curve in  $P$  and produce it to  $V$  so that  $TP = PV$ ; a line through  $V$  parallel to the tangent at  $P$  is then the polar required.

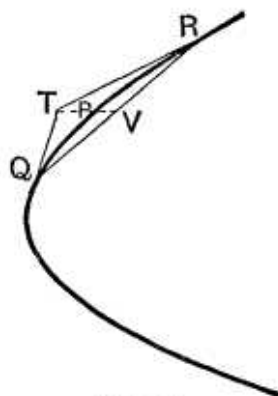


Fig. 1.

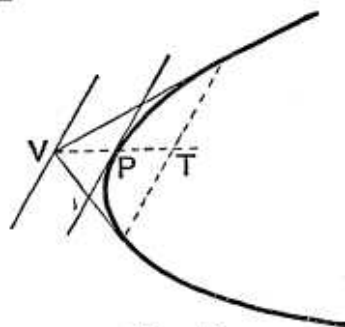


Fig. 2.

**217.** *If the polar of a point  $P$  passes through the point  $T$ , then the polar of  $T$  goes through  $P$ . (Fig. Art. 214).*

Let  $P$  be the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $T$  the point  $(h, k)$ .

The polar of  $P$  is  $yy_1 = 2a(x + x_1)$ .

Since it passes through  $T$ , we have

$$y_1k = 2a(x_1 + h) \dots \dots \dots (1).$$



The polar of  $T$  is  $yk = 2a(x + h)$ .

Since (1) is true, this equation is satisfied by the coordinates  $x_1$  and  $y_1$ .

Hence the proposition.

**Cor.** The point of intersection,  $T$ , of the polars of two points,  $P$  and  $Q$ , is the pole of the line  $PQ$ .

**218.** To find the pole of a given straight line with respect to the parabola.

Let the given straight line be

$$Ax + By + C = 0.$$

If its pole be the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ , it must be the same straight line as

$$\begin{aligned} yy_1 &= 2a(x + x_1), \\ \text{i.e. } 2ax - yy_1 + 2ax_1 &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Since these straight lines are the same, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{2a}{A} &= \frac{-y_1}{B} = \frac{2ax_1}{C}, \\ \text{i.e. } x_1 &= \frac{C}{A} \quad \text{and} \quad y_1 = -\frac{2Ba}{A}. \end{aligned}$$

**219.** To find the equation to the pair of tangents that can be drawn to the parabola from the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

Let  $(h, k)$  be any point on either of the tangents drawn from  $(x_1, y_1)$ . The equation to the line joining  $(x_1, y_1)$  to  $(h, k)$  is

$$\begin{aligned} y - y_1 &= \frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1}(x - x_1), \\ \text{i.e. } y &= \frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1}x + \frac{hy_1 - kx_1}{h - x_1}. \end{aligned}$$

If this be a tangent it must be of the form

$$y = mx + \frac{a}{m},$$

$$\text{so that } \frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1} = m \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{hy_1 - kx_1}{h - x_1} = \frac{a}{m}.$$

Hence, by multiplication,

$$\begin{aligned} a &= \frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1} \frac{hy_1 - kx_1}{h - x_1}, \\ \text{i.e. } a(h - x_1)^2 &= (k - y_1)(hy_1 - kx_1). \end{aligned}$$

The locus of the point  $(h, k)$  (*i.e.* the pair of tangents required) is therefore

$$a(x - x_1)^2 = (y - y_1)(xy_1 - yx_1) \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

It will be seen that this equation is the same as

$$(y^2 - 4ax)(y_1^2 - 4ax_1) = \{yy_1 - 2a(x + x_1)\}^2.$$

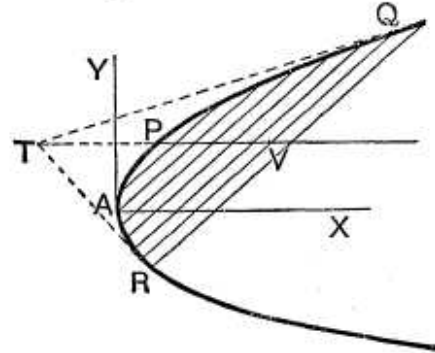
**220.** *To prove that the middle points of a system of parallel chords of a parabola all lie on a straight line which is parallel to the axis.*

Since the chords are all parallel, they all make the same angle with the axis of  $x$ . Let the tangent of this angle be  $m$ .

The equation to  $QR$ , any one of these chords, is therefore

$$y = mx + c \dots\dots (1),$$

where  $c$  is different for the several chords, but  $m$  is the same.



This straight line meets the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  in points whose ordinates are given by

$$my^2 = 4a(y - c),$$

*i.e.* 
$$y^2 - \frac{4a}{m}y + \frac{4ac}{m} = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

Let the roots of this equation, *i.e.* the ordinates of  $Q$  and  $R$ , be  $y'$  and  $y''$ , and let the coordinates of  $V$ , the middle point of  $QR$ , be  $(h, k)$ .

Then, by Art. 22,

$$k = \frac{y' + y''}{2} = \frac{2a}{m},$$

from equation (2).

The coordinates of  $V$  therefore satisfy the equation

$$y = \frac{2a}{m},$$

so that the locus of  $V$  is a straight line parallel to the axis of the curve.

The straight line  $y = \frac{2a}{m}$  meets the curve in a point  $P$ , whose ordinate is  $\frac{2a}{m}$  and whose abscissa is therefore  $\frac{a}{m^2}$ .

The tangent at this point is, by Art. 205,

$$y = mx + \frac{a}{m},$$

and is therefore parallel to each of the given chords.

Hence the locus of the middle points of a system of parallel chords of a parabola is a straight line which is parallel to the axis and meets the curve at a point the tangent at which is parallel to the given system.

**221.** *To find the equation to the chord of the parabola which is bisected at any point  $(h, k)$ .*

By the last article the required chord is parallel to the tangent at the point  $P$  where a line through  $(h, k)$  parallel to the axis meets the curve.

Also, by Art. 216, the polar of  $(h, k)$  is parallel to the tangent at this same point  $P$ .

The required chord is therefore parallel to the polar  $yk = 2a(x + h)$ .

Hence, since it goes through  $(h, k)$ , its equation is

$$k(y - k) = 2a(x - h) \quad (\text{Art. 67}).$$

**222. Diameter. Def.** The locus of the middle points of a system of parallel chords of a parabola is called a diameter and the chords are called its double ordinates.

Thus, in the figure of Art. 220,  $PV$  is a diameter and  $QR$  and all the parallel chords are ordinates to this diameter.

The proposition of that article may therefore be stated as follows.

*Any diameter of a parabola is parallel to the axis and the tangent at the point where it meets the curve is parallel to its ordinates.*

**223.** *The tangents at the ends of any chord meet on the diameter which bisects the chord.*

Let the equation of  $QR$  (Fig., Art. 220) be

$$y = mx + c \dots \dots \dots (1),$$

and let the tangents at  $Q$  and  $R$  meet at the point  $T$  ( $x_1, y_1$ ).

Then  $QR$  is the chord of contact of tangents drawn from  $T$ , and hence its equation is

$$yy_1 = 2a(x + x_1) \text{ (Art. 213).}$$

Comparing this with equation (1), we have

$$\frac{2a}{y_1} = m, \text{ so that } y_1 = \frac{2a}{m},$$

and therefore  $T$  lies on the straight line

$$y = \frac{2a}{m}.$$

But this straight line was proved, in Art. 220, to be the diameter  $PV$  which bisects the chord.

**224.** *To find the equation to a parabola, the axes being any diameter and the tangent to the parabola at the point where this diameter meets the curve.*

Let  $PVX$  be the diameter and  $PY$  the tangent at  $P$  meeting the axis in  $T$ .

Take any point  $Q$  on the curve, and draw  $QM$  perpendicular to the axis meeting the diameter  $PV$  in  $L$ .

Let  $PV$  be  $x$  and  $VQ$  be  $y$ .

Draw  $PN$  perpendicular to the axis of the curve, and let

$$\theta = \angle YPX = \angle PTM.$$

Then

$$4AS \cdot AN = PN^2 = NT^2 \tan^2 \theta = 4AN^2 \cdot \tan^2 \theta.$$

$$\therefore AN = AS \cdot \cot^2 \theta = a \cot^2 \theta,$$

and

$$PN = \sqrt{4AS \cdot AN} = 2a \cot \theta.$$

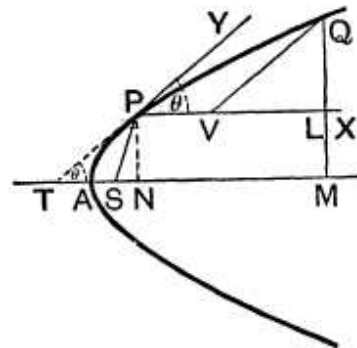
Now

$$QM^2 = 4AS \cdot AM = 4a \cdot AM \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

Also

$$QM = NP + LQ = 2a \cot \theta + VQ \sin \theta = 2a \cot \theta + y \sin \theta,$$

and  $AM = AN + PV + VL = a \cot^2 \theta + x + y \cos \theta.$



Substituting these values in (1), we have

$$(2a \cot \theta + y \sin \theta)^2 = 4a (a \cot^2 \theta + x + y \cos \theta),$$

*i. e.*  $y^2 \sin^2 \theta = 4ax.$

The required equation is therefore

$$y^2 = 4px \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

where

$$p = \frac{a}{\sin^2 \theta} = a (1 + \cot^2 \theta) = a + AN = SP \text{ (by Art. 202).}$$

The equation to the parabola referred to the above axes is therefore of the same form as its equation referred to the rectangular axes of Art. 197.

The equation (2) states that

$$QV^2 = 4SP \cdot PV.$$

**225.** The quantity  $4p$  is called the parameter of the diameter  $PV$ . It is equal in length to the chord which is parallel to  $PY$  and passes through the focus.

For if  $Q'V'R'$  be the chord, parallel to  $PY$  and passing through the focus and meeting  $PV$  in  $V'$ , we have

$$PV' = ST = SP = p,$$

so that  $Q'V'^2 = 4p \cdot PV' = 4p^2,$

and hence  $Q'R' = 2Q'V' = 4p.$

**226.** Just as in Art. 205 it could now be shown that the tangent at any point  $(x', y')$  of the above curve is

$$yy' = 2p (x + x').$$

Similarly for the equation to the polar of any point.

**EXAMPLES XXVII**

1. Prove that the length of the chord joining the points of contact of tangents drawn from the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  is

$$\frac{\sqrt{y_1^2 + 4a^2} \sqrt{y_1^2 - 4ax_1}}{a}.$$

2. Prove that the area of the triangle formed by the tangents from the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  and the chord of contact is  $(y_1^2 - 4ax_1)^{\frac{3}{2}} \div 2a.$

3. If a perpendicular be let fall from any point  $P$  upon its polar prove that the distance of the foot of this perpendicular from the focus is equal to the distance of the point  $P$  from the directrix.

4. What is the equation to the chord of the parabola  $y^2=8x$  which is bisected at the point  $(2, -3)$ ?

5. The general equation to a system of parallel chords in the parabola  $y^2=2ax$  is  $4x-y+k=0$ .

What is the equation to the corresponding diameter?

6.  $P, Q,$  and  $R$  are three points on a parabola and the chord  $PQ$  cuts the diameter through  $R$  in  $V$ . Ordinates  $PM$  and  $QN$  are drawn to this diameter. Prove that  $RM \cdot RN = RV^2$ .

7. Two equal parabolas with axes in opposite directions touch at a point  $O$ . From a point  $P$  on one of them are drawn tangents  $PQ$  and  $PQ'$  to the other. Prove that  $QQ'$  will touch the first parabola in  $P'$  where  $PP'$  is parallel to the common tangent at  $O$ .

## ANSWERS

4.  $4x + 3y + 1 = 0.$

5.  $56y = 25.$

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. The polar of  $(x_1, y_1)$ , viz.  $yy_1 = 2a(x + x_1)$ , meets the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ , where  $2yy_1 = y^2 + 4ax_1$ . Hence if  $(x', y')$  and  $(x'', y'')$  be the points of contact, we have

$$y' + y'' = 2y_1, \text{ and } y'y'' = 4ax_1.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore (\text{chord})^2 &= (y' - y'')^2 + (x' - x'')^2 = (y' - y'')^2 + \left(\frac{y'^2 - y''^2}{4a}\right)^2 \\ &= (y' - y'')^2 \left\{1 + \frac{(y' + y'')^2}{16a^2}\right\} = \{(y' + y'')^2 - 4y'y''\} \left\{1 + \frac{(y' + y'')^2}{16a^2}\right\} \\ &= \{4y_1^2 - 16ax_1\} \left\{1 + \frac{y_1^2}{4a^2}\right\} = \frac{(y_1^2 - 4ax_1)(y_1^2 + 4a^2)}{a^2}. \end{aligned}$$

2. The perpendicular from  $(x_1, y_1)$  upon  $yy_1 = 2a(x + x_1)$  is  $\frac{y_1^2 - 4ax_1}{\sqrt{y_1^2 + 4a^2}}$ .

Hence, by the last example,

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{y_1^2 - 4ax_1}{\sqrt{y_1^2 + 4a^2}} \cdot \frac{(y_1^2 - 4ax_1)^{\frac{1}{2}} (y_1^2 + 4a^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{a} = (y_1^2 - 4ax_1)^{\frac{3}{2}} \div 2a.$$

3. The polar of  $(x_1, y_1)$  may be written

$$yy_1 - 2a(x - a) = 2ax_1 + 2a^2.$$

The perpendicular from  $(x_1, y_1)$  upon this line is

$$(x - a)y_1 + 2ay = x_1y_1 + ay_1.$$

The foot of the perpendicular is the common point of these two lines.

Square and add ;

$$\therefore \{(x - a)^2 + y^2\} \{y^2 + 4a^2\} = (x_1^2 + a)^2 (y^2 + 4a^2),$$

where  $(x, y)$  are now the coordinates of the foot of the perpendicular.

$$\therefore (x - a)^2 + y^2 = (x_1 + a)^2.$$

$\therefore$  distance of  $(x, y)$  from  $(a, 0)$  = distance of  $(x_1, y_1)$  from  $x + a = 0$ .

4. By Art. 221, the required equation is

$$-3(y + 3) = 4(x - 2), \text{ i.e. } 4x + 3y + 1 = 0.$$

5. See Art. 223 ;

$$m = 4, a = \frac{25}{28}. \therefore \text{the required equation is } y = \frac{2a}{m} = \frac{25}{56}.$$

6. The diameter and tangent through  $R$  being the axes, the equation to the parabola is, by Art. 224,

$$y^2 = 4px. \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

Let the equation to  $PQ$  be  $y = mx + c$ , so that  $RV = -\frac{c}{m}$ .

This meets the parabola where  $(mx + c)^2 - 4px = 0$ .

$$\therefore RM \cdot RN = x_1x_2 = \frac{c^2}{m^2} = RV^2.$$

**Aliter.** Take the diameter and tangent through  $R$  as axes, and let  $P$  and  $Q$  be the points  $t_1, t_2$  respectively (Art. 229). Put  $y = 0$  in the equation of  $PQ$ . Then  $x = -at_1t_2$ , [Art. 229].

$$\therefore RV^2 = a^2t_1^2t_2^2 = RM \cdot RN.$$

7. Take  $O$  for origin, and

$$y^2 - 4ax = 0, \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

$$y^2 + 4ax = 0, \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

as the equations of the parabolas, the diameter and common tangent at  $O$  being the axes. Let the coordinates of the point  $P$  be  $(at^2, 2at)$ . Its polar with regard to (ii) is

$$y = -\frac{x}{t} - at,$$

which touches (i) at the point  $(at^2, -2at)$ .  $\therefore PP'$  is parallel to the axis of  $y$ , the common tangent at  $O$ .

**Coordinates of any point on the parabola expressed in terms of one variable.**

**227.** It is often convenient to express the coordinates of any point on the curve in terms of one variable.

It is clear that the values

$$x = \frac{a}{m^2}, \quad y = \frac{2a}{m}$$

always satisfy the equation to the curve.

Hence, for all values of  $m$ , the point

$$\left(\frac{a}{m^2}, \frac{2a}{m}\right)$$

lies on the curve. By Art. 206, this  $m$  is equal to the tangent of the angle which the tangent at the point makes with the axis.

The equation to the tangent at this point is

$$y = mx + \frac{a}{m},$$

and the normal is, by Art. 207, found to be

$$my + x = 2a + \frac{a}{m^2}.$$



**228.** The coordinates of the point could also be expressed in terms of the  $m$  of the normal at the point; in this case its coordinates are  $am^2$  and  $-2am$ .

The equation of the tangent at the point  $(am^2, -2am)$  is, by Art. 205,

$$my + x + am^2 = 0,$$

and the equation to the normal is

$$y = mx - 2am - am^3.$$

**229.** The simplest substitution (avoiding both negative signs and fractions) is

$$\mathbf{x = at^2 \text{ and } y = 2at.}$$

These values satisfy the equation  $y^2 = 4ax$ .

The equations to the tangent and normal at the point  $(at^2, 2at)$  are, by Arts. 205 and 207,

$$ty = x + at^2,$$

and

$$y + tx = 2at + at^3.$$

The equation to the straight line joining

$$(at_1^2, 2at_1) \text{ and } (at_2^2, 2at_2)$$

is easily found to be

$$y(t_1 + t_2) = 2x + 2at_1t_2.$$

The tangents at the points

$$(at_1^2, 2at_1) \text{ and } (at_2^2, 2at_2)$$

are

$$t_1y = x + at_1^2,$$

and

$$t_2y = x + at_2^2.$$

The point of intersection of these two tangents is clearly

$$\{at_1t_2, a(t_1 + t_2)\}.$$

The point whose coordinates are  $(at^2, 2at)$  may, for brevity, be called the point " $t$ ."

In the following articles we shall prove some important properties of the parabola making use of the above substitution.

**230.** If the tangents at  $P$  and  $Q$  meet in  $T$ , prove that

- (1)  $TP$  and  $TQ$  subtend equal angles at the focus  $S$ ,
- (2)  $ST^2 = SP \cdot SQ$ ,

and (3) the triangles  $SPT$  and  $STQ$  are similar.

Let  $P$  be the point  $(at_1^2, 2at_1)$ , and  $Q$  be the point  $(at_2^2, 2at_2)$ , so that (Art. 229)  $T$  is the point  $\{at_1t_2, a(t_1 + t_2)\}$ .

(1) The equation to  $SP$  is  $y = \frac{2at_1}{at_1^2 - a} (x - a)$ ,

i. e.  $(t_1^2 - 1)y - 2t_1x + 2at_1 = 0$ .

The perpendicular,  $TU$ , from  $T$  on this straight line

$$= \frac{a(t_1^2 - 1)(t_1 + t_2) - 2t_1 \cdot at_1t_2 + 2at_1}{\sqrt{(t_1^2 - 1)^2 + 4t_1^2}} = a \frac{(t_1^3 - t_1^2t_2) + (t_1 - t_2)}{t_1^2 + 1}$$

$$= a(t_1 - t_2).$$

Similarly  $TU'$  has the same numerical value.

The angles  $PST$  and  $QST$  are therefore equal.

(2) By Art. 202 we have  $SP = a(1 + t_1^2)$  and  $SQ = a(1 + t_2^2)$ .

Also  $ST^2 = (at_1t_2 - a)^2 + a^2(t_1 + t_2)^2$   
 $= a^2[t_1^2t_2^2 + t_1^2 + t_2^2 + 1] = a^2(1 + t_1^2)(1 + t_2^2)$ .

Hence  $ST^2 = SP \cdot SQ$ .

(3) Since  $\frac{ST}{SP} = \frac{SQ}{ST}$  and the angles  $TSP$  and  $TSQ$  are equal, the triangles  $SPT$  and  $STQ$  are similar, so that

$$\angle SQT = \angle STP \text{ and } \angle STQ = \angle SPT.$$

**231.** The area of the triangle formed by three points on a parabola is twice the area of the triangle formed by the tangents at these points.

Let the three points on the parabola be

$$(at_1^2, 2at_1), (at_2^2, 2at_2), \text{ and } (at_3^2, 2at_3).$$

The area of the triangle formed by these points, by Art. 25,

$$= \frac{1}{2} [at_1^2(2at_3 - 2at_2) + at_2^2(2at_3 - 2at_1) + at_3^2(2at_1 - 2at_2)]$$

$$= -a^2(t_2 - t_3)(t_3 - t_1)(t_1 - t_2).$$

The intersections of the tangents at these points are (Art. 229) the points

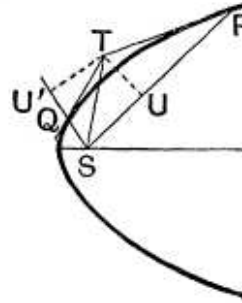
$$\{at_2t_3, a(t_2 + t_3)\}, \{at_3t_1, a(t_3 + t_1)\}, \text{ and } \{at_1t_2, a(t_1 + t_2)\}.$$

The area of the triangle formed by these three points

$$= \frac{1}{2} \{at_2t_3(at_3 - at_2) + at_3t_1(at_1 - at_3) + at_1t_2(at_2 - at_1)\}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} a^2(t_2 - t_3)(t_3 - t_1)(t_1 - t_2).$$

The first of these areas is double the second.



**232.** *The circle circumscribing the triangle formed by any three tangents to a parabola passes through the focus.*

Let  $P, Q,$  and  $R$  be the points at which the tangents are drawn and let their coordinates be

$$(at_1^2, 2at_1), (at_2^2, 2at_2), \text{ and } (at_3^2, 2at_3).$$

As in Art. 229, the tangents at  $Q$  and  $R$  intersect in the point

$$\{at_2t_3, a(t_2 + t_3)\}.$$

Similarly, the other pairs of tangents meet at the points

$$\{at_3t_1, a(t_3 + t_1)\} \text{ and } \{at_1t_2, a(t_1 + t_2)\}.$$

Let the equation to the circle be

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Since it passes through the above three points, we have

$$a^2t_2^2t_3^2 + a^2(t_2 + t_3)^2 + 2gat_2t_3 + 2fa(t_2 + t_3) + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

$$a^2t_3^2t_1^2 + a^2(t_3 + t_1)^2 + 2gat_3t_1 + 2fa(t_3 + t_1) + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3),$$

and  $a^2t_1^2t_2^2 + a^2(t_1 + t_2)^2 + 2gat_1t_2 + 2fa(t_1 + t_2) + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(4).$

Subtracting (3) from (2) and dividing by  $a(t_2 - t_1)$ , we have

$$a\{t_3^2(t_1 + t_2) + t_1 + t_2 + 2t_3\} + 2gt_3 + 2f = 0.$$

Similarly, from (3) and (4), we have

$$a\{t_1^2(t_2 + t_3) + t_2 + t_3 + 2t_1\} + 2gt_1 + 2f = 0.$$

From these two equations we have

$$2g = -a(1 + t_2t_3 + t_3t_1 + t_1t_2) \text{ and } 2f = -a[t_1 + t_2 + t_3 - t_1t_2t_3].$$

Substituting these values in (2), we obtain

$$c = a^2(t_2t_3 + t_3t_1 + t_1t_2).$$

The equation to the circle is therefore

$$x^2 + y^2 - ax(1 + t_2t_3 + t_3t_1 + t_1t_2) - ay(t_1 + t_2 + t_3 - t_1t_2t_3) + a^2(t_2t_3 + t_3t_1 + t_1t_2) = 0,$$

which clearly goes through the focus  $(a, 0)$ .

**233.** *If  $O$  be any point on the axis and  $POP'$  be any chord passing through  $O$ , and if  $PM$  and  $P'M'$  be the ordinates of  $P$  and  $P'$ , prove that  $AM \cdot AM' = AO^2$ , and  $PM \cdot P'M' = -4a \cdot AO$ .*

Let  $O$  be the point  $(h, 0)$ , and let  $P$  and  $P'$  be the points

$$(at_1^2, 2at_1) \text{ and } (at_2^2, 2at_2).$$

The equation to  $PP'$  is, by Art. 229,

$$(t_2 + t_1)y - 2x = 2at_1t_2.$$

If this pass through the point  $(h, 0)$ , we have

$$-2h = 2at_1t_2,$$

*i.e.* 
$$t_1t_2 = -\frac{h}{a}.$$

Hence  $AM \cdot AM' = at_1^2 \cdot at_2^2 = a^2 \cdot \frac{h^2}{a^2} = h^2 = AO^2,$

and  $PM \cdot PM' = 2at_1 \cdot 2at_2 = 4a^2 \left( -\frac{h}{a} \right) = -4a \cdot AO.$

**Cor.** If  $O$  be the focus,  $AO = a$ , and we have

$$t_1 t_2 = -1, \text{ i.e. } t_2 = -\frac{1}{t_1}.$$

The points  $(at_1^2, 2at_1)$  and  $\left( \frac{a}{t_1^2}, -\frac{2a}{t_1} \right)$  are therefore at the ends of a focal chord.

**234.** To prove that the orthocentre of any triangle formed by three tangents to a parabola lies on the directrix.

Let the equations to the three tangents be

$$y = m_1 x + \frac{a}{m_1} \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

$$y = m_2 x + \frac{a}{m_2} \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

and  $y = m_3 x + \frac{a}{m_3} \dots\dots\dots (3).$

The point of intersection of (2) and (3) is found, by solving them, to be

$$\left\{ \frac{a}{m_2 m_3}, a \left( \frac{1}{m_2} + \frac{1}{m_3} \right) \right\}.$$

The equation to the straight line through this point perpendicular to (1) is (Art. 69)

$$y - a \left( \frac{1}{m_2} + \frac{1}{m_3} \right) = -\frac{1}{m_1} \left[ x - \frac{a}{m_2 m_3} \right],$$

i.e.  $y + \frac{x}{m_1} = a \left[ \frac{1}{m_2} + \frac{1}{m_3} + \frac{a}{m_1 m_2 m_3} \right] \dots\dots\dots (4).$

Similarly, the equation to the straight line through the intersection of (3) and (1) perpendicular to (2) is

$$y + \frac{x}{m_2} = a \left( \frac{1}{m_3} + \frac{1}{m_1} + \frac{a}{m_1 m_2 m_3} \right) \dots\dots\dots (5),$$

and the equation to the straight line through the intersection of (1) and (2) perpendicular to (3) is

$$y + \frac{x}{m_3} = a \left( \frac{1}{m_1} + \frac{1}{m_2} + \frac{a}{m_1 m_2 m_3} \right) \dots\dots\dots (6).$$

The point which is common to the straight lines (4), (5), and (6),

*i.e.* the orthocentre of the triangle, is easily seen to be the point whose coordinates are

$$x = -a, \quad y = a \left( \frac{1}{m_1} + \frac{1}{m_2} + \frac{1}{m_3} + \frac{1}{m_1 m_2 m_3} \right),$$

and this point lies on the directrix.

## EXAMPLES XXVIII

1. If  $\omega$  be the angle which a focal chord of a parabola makes with the axis, prove that the length of the chord is  $4a \operatorname{cosec}^2 \omega$  and that the perpendicular on it from the vertex is  $a \sin \omega$ .

2. A point on a parabola, the foot of the perpendicular from it upon the directrix, and the focus are the vertices of an equilateral triangle. Prove that the focal distance of the point is equal to the latus rectum.

3. Prove that the semi-latus-rectum is a harmonic mean between the segments of any focal chord.

4. If  $T$  be any point on the tangent at any point  $P$  of a parabola, and if  $TL$  be perpendicular to the focal radius  $SP$  and  $TN$  be perpendicular to the directrix, prove that  $SL = TN$ .

Hence obtain a geometrical construction for the pair of tangents drawn to the parabola from any point  $T$ .

5. Prove that on the axis of any parabola there is a certain point  $K$  which has the property that, if a chord  $PQ$  of the parabola be drawn through it, then

$$\frac{1}{PK^2} + \frac{1}{QK^2}$$

is the same for all positions of the chord.

6. The normal at the point  $(at_1^2, 2at_1)$  meets the parabola again in the point  $(at_2^2, 2at_2)$ ; prove that

$$t_2 = -t_1 - \frac{2}{t_1}.$$

7. A chord is a normal to a parabola and is inclined at an angle  $\theta$  to the axis; prove that the area of the triangle formed by it and the tangents at its extremities is  $4a^2 \sec^3 \theta \operatorname{cosec}^3 \theta$ .

8. If  $PQ$  be a normal chord of the parabola and if  $S$  be the focus, prove that the locus of the centroid of the triangle  $SPQ$  is the curve

$$36ay^2(3x - 5a) - 81y^4 = 128a^4.$$

9. Prove that the length of the intercept on the normal at the point  $(at^2, 2at)$  made by the circle which is described on the focal distance of the given point as diameter is  $a\sqrt{1+t^2}$ .

10. Prove that the area of the triangle formed by the normals to the parabola at the points  $(at_1^2, 2at_1)$ ,  $(at_2^2, 2at_2)$  and  $(at_3^2, 2at_3)$  is

$$\frac{a^2}{2} (t_2 - t_3) (t_3 - t_1) (t_1 - t_2) (t_1 + t_2 + t_3)^2.$$

11. Prove that the normal chord at the point whose ordinate is equal to its abscissa subtends a right angle at the focus.

12. A chord of a parabola passes through a point on the axis (outside the parabola) whose distance from the vertex is half the latus rectum; prove that the normals at its extremities meet on the curve.

13. The normal at a point  $P$  of a parabola meets the curve again in  $Q$ , and  $T$  is the pole of  $PQ$ ; shew that  $T$  lies on the diameter passing through the other end of the focal chord passing through  $P$ , and that  $PT$  is bisected by the directrix.

14. If from the vertex of a parabola a pair of chords be drawn at right angles to one another and with these chords as adjacent sides a rectangle be made, prove that the locus of the further angle of the rectangle is the parabola

$$y^2 = 4a(x - 8a).$$

15. A series of chords is drawn so that their projections on a straight line which is inclined at an angle  $\alpha$  to the axis are all of constant length  $c$ ; prove that the locus of their middle point is the curve

$$(y^2 - 4ax)(y \cos \alpha + 2a \sin \alpha)^2 + a^2 c^2 = 0.$$

16. Prove that the locus of the poles of chords which subtend a right angle at a fixed point  $(h, k)$  is

$$ax^2 - hy^2 + (4a^2 + 2ah)x - 2aky + a(h^2 + k^2) = 0.$$

17. Prove that the locus of the middle points of all tangents drawn from points on the directrix to the parabola is

$$y^2(2x + a) = a(3x + a)^2.$$

18. Prove that the orthocentres of the triangles formed by three tangents and the corresponding three normals to a parabola are equidistant from the axis.

19.  $T$  is the pole of the chord  $PQ$ ; prove that the perpendiculars from  $P$ ,  $T$ , and  $Q$  upon any tangent to the parabola are in geometrical progression.

20. If  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  be the lengths of radii vectores of the parabola which are drawn at right angles to one another from the vertex, prove that

$$r_1^{\frac{4}{3}} r_2^{\frac{4}{3}} = 16a^2 (r_1^{\frac{2}{3}} + r_2^{\frac{2}{3}}).$$

21. A parabola touches the sides of a triangle  $ABC$  in the points  $D$ ,  $E$ , and  $F$  respectively; if  $DE$  and  $DF$  cut the diameter through the point  $A$  in  $b$  and  $c$  respectively, prove that  $Bb$  and  $Cc$  are parallel.

22. Prove that all circles described on focal radii as diameters touch the directrix of the curve, and that all circles on focal radii as diameters touch the tangent at the vertex.

23. A circle is described on a focal chord as diameter; if  $m$  be the tangent of the inclination of the chord to the axis, prove that the equation to the circle is

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2ax \left(1 + \frac{2}{m^2}\right) - \frac{4ay}{m} - 3a^2 = 0.$$

24.  $LOL'$  and  $MOM'$  are two chords of a parabola passing through a point  $O$  on its axis. Prove that the radical axis of the circles described on  $LL'$  and  $MM'$  as diameters passes through the vertex of the parabola.

25. A circle and a parabola intersect in four points; shew that the algebraic sum of the ordinates of the four points is zero.

Shew also that the line joining one pair of these four points and the line joining the other pair are equally inclined to the axis.

26. Circles are drawn through the vertex of the parabola to cut the parabola orthogonally at the other point of intersection. Prove that the locus of the centres of the circles is the curve

$$2y^2(2y^2 + x^2 - 12ax) = ax(3x - 4a)^2.$$

27. Prove that the equation to the circle passing through the points  $(at_1^2, 2at_1)$  and  $(at_2^2, 2at_2)$  and the intersection of the tangents to the parabola at these points is

$$x^2 + y^2 - ax[(t_1 + t_2)^2 + 2] - ay(t_1 + t_2)(1 - t_1 t_2) + a^2 t_1 t_2(2 - t_1 t_2) = 0.$$

28.  $TP$  and  $TQ$  are tangents to the parabola and the normals at  $P$  and  $Q$  meet at a point  $R$  on the curve; prove that the centre of the circle circumscribing the triangle  $TPQ$  lies on the parabola

$$2y^2 = a(x - a).$$

29. Through the vertex  $A$  of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  two chords  $AP$  and  $AQ$  are drawn, and the circles on  $AP$  and  $AQ$  as diameters intersect in  $R$ . Prove that, if  $\theta_1$ ,  $\theta_2$ , and  $\phi$  be the angles made with the axis by the tangents at  $P$  and  $Q$  and by  $AR$ , then

$$\cot \theta_1 + \cot \theta_2 + 2 \tan \phi = 0.$$

30. A parabola is drawn such that each vertex of a given triangle is the pole of the opposite side; shew that the focus of the parabola lies on the nine-point circle of the triangle, and that the orthocentre of the triangle formed by joining the middle points of the sides lies on the directrix.

## ANSWERS

25. Take the general equation to the circle and introduce the condition that the point  $(at^2, 2at)$  lies on it; the sum of the roots of the resulting equation in  $t$  is then found to be zero.
28. It can be shewn that the normals at the points " $t_1$ " and " $t_2$ " meet on the parabola when  $t_1 t_2 = 2$ ; then use the previous example.

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. See Art. 225. From a figure it is clear that the perpendicular from the vertex on the focal chord  $= a \sin \omega$ .

2. Let  $PM$  be perpendicular to the directrix.

Then  $SM^2 = SP^2$ , i.e.  $(2a)^2 + (2at)^2 = a^2(t^2 + 1)^2$ ,

i.e.  $t^4 - 2t^2 - 3 = 0$ .  $\therefore t^2 = 3$ .  $\therefore SP = a(t^2 + 1) = 4a$ .

3.  $SP = a(1 + t^2)$ ,  $SP' = a\left(1 + \frac{1}{t^2}\right)$ . [Art. 233, Cor.]

$$\therefore \frac{1}{SP} + \frac{1}{SP'} = \frac{1}{a} \left\{ \frac{1}{1+t^2} + \frac{t^2}{1+t^2} \right\} = \frac{2}{2a}.$$

4. Removing the origin to the focus, the tangent

$y = x \tan \theta + a \cot \theta$  becomes  $y \cos \theta - x \sin \theta = a \operatorname{cosec} \theta$ ;

and since  $\widehat{PSX} = 2\theta$  (Fig. p. 188), the equation to  $TL$  is  $x \cos 2\theta + y \sin 2\theta = p$ , where  $SL = p$ . Whence, solving,

$$x = p - 2a. \quad \therefore TN = p = SL.$$

5. If  $P$  and  $Q$  are the points  $t_1, t_2$  then, by Art. 229,  $K$  is  $(-at_1 t_2, 0)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{1}{PK^2} + \frac{1}{QK^2} &= \frac{1}{a^2 t_1^2 (t_1 + t_2)^2 + 4a^2 t_1^2} + \frac{1}{a^2 t_2^2 (t_1 + t_2)^2 + 4a^2 t_2^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{a^2} \cdot \frac{t_1^2 + t_2^2}{t_1^2 t_2^2} \cdot \frac{1}{t_1^2 + t_2^2 + 2t_1 t_2 + 4}, \end{aligned}$$



and this by the question =  $\frac{1}{AK^2}$  (by taking  $P$  at  $A$  and hence  $Q$  at infinity)

$$= \frac{1}{a^2 t_1^2 t_2^2}; \text{ hence } t_1 t_2 = -2.$$

∴ the point  $(2a, 0)$  has the given property.

6. The chord  $y(t_1 + t_2) = 2x + 2at_1 t_2$  and the normal

$$y + t_1 x = 2at_1 + at_1^3$$

are coincident if  $t_1 + t_2 = -\frac{2}{t_1}$ . ∴  $t_2 = -t_1 - \frac{2}{t_1}$ .

7. In the result of Ex. xxvii. 2,

put

$$x_1 = at_1 t_2 \text{ and } y_1 = a(t_1 + t_2).$$

$$\therefore \Delta = \frac{a^2}{2}(t_1 - t_2)^3. \text{ But } t_2 = -t_1 - \frac{2}{t_1} \text{ (Ex. 6).}$$

$$\therefore t_1 - t_2 = 2t_1 + \frac{2}{t_1} = 2(\tan \theta + \cot \theta) = 2 \sec \theta \cdot \operatorname{cosec} \theta.$$

$$\therefore \Delta = 4a^2 \sec^3 \theta \operatorname{cosec}^3 \theta.$$

8. If  $(x, y)$  be the centroid,

$$3x = a(1 + t_1^2 + t_2^2) \dots (i), \quad 3y = 2a(t_1 + t_2) \dots (ii) \text{ [p. 13, Ex. 2];}$$

and  $t_1 + t_2 = -\frac{2}{t_1} \dots \dots \dots (iii) \text{ (Ex. 6).}$

From (ii) and (iii),  $t_1 = -\frac{4a}{3y}$ ; ∴  $t_2 = \frac{4a}{3y} + \frac{3y}{2a}$ .

Substitute in (i); ∴  $3x = a\left(5 + \frac{32a^2}{9y^2} + \frac{9y^2}{4a^2}\right)$ .

$$\therefore 36ay^3(3x - 5a) = 81y^4 + 128a^4.$$

9. In the figure on page 188,  $S\hat{P}G = S\hat{G}P$ .

$$\therefore \tan S\hat{G}P = \frac{2at}{2a} = t. \quad \therefore \cos S\hat{P}G = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+t^2}}.$$

If the circle cut  $PG$  in  $H$ ,

$$PH = SP \cdot \cos S\hat{P}H = a(1+t^2) \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+t^2}} = a\sqrt{1+t^2}.$$

10. Solving  $y + t_1x = 2at_1 + at_1^3$ , and  $y + t_2x = 2at_2 + at_2^3$ , we obtain  $x = a(2 + t_1^2 + t_2^2 + t_1t_2)$ ,  $y = -at_1t_2(t_1 + t_2)$ , and similar expressions for the other points.

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta &= \frac{1}{2}a^2 \Sigma [t_1t_2(t_1 + t_2) \{(2 + t_2^2 + t_3^2 + t_2t_3) - (2 + t_3^2 + t_1^2 + t_3t_1)\}] \\ &= \frac{1}{2}a^2 (t_1 + t_2 + t_3) \Sigma t_1t_2(t_2 + t_1)(t_2 - t_1) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}a^2 (t_1 + t_2 + t_3) \Sigma t_1t_2(t_2 - t_1)(t_1 + t_2 + t_3),\end{aligned}$$

since  $\Sigma t_1t_2t_3(t_2 - t_1) = 0$ ,  $= \frac{a^2}{2} (t_1 - t_2)(t_2 - t_3)(t_3 - t_1)(t_1 + t_2 + t_3)^2$ .

11. Let  $t_1, t_2$  be the extremities of the chord.

Then  $2at_1 = at_1^3$ .  $\therefore t_1 = 2$ .

Also  $t_2 = -t_1 - \frac{2}{t_1} = -2 - 1 = -3$  (Ex. 6).

The  $m$ 's of the lines  $SP, SP'$  are  $\frac{2t_1}{t_1^2 - 1}, \frac{2t_2}{t_2^2 - 1}$ , and

$$1 + \frac{2t_1}{t_1^2 - 1} \cdot \frac{2t_2}{t_2^2 - 1} = 1 - \frac{4 \cdot 6}{3 \cdot 8} = 0.$$

$\therefore \widehat{PSP'}$  is a right angle.

12. The chord joining  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  cuts the axis of  $x$  where  $x = -at_1t_2$ . Hence  $t_1t_2 = 2$ .

If the normal at  $t_1$  cuts the curve again at  $t_3$ ,

then  $t_3 = -t_1 - \frac{2}{t_1}$  (Ex. 6)  $= -\frac{2}{t_2} - t_2$ .

Hence the normal at  $t_2$  passes through  $t_3$ .

13. Let  $PS$  cut the curve in  $P'$ . Draw the ordinates  $PN, P'N'$  and  $TH$  perpendicular to the axis.

By Ex. 6  $t_1t_2 + t_1^3 = -2$ .

$$\therefore AN + AH = at_1^2 + at_1t_2 = -2a = -2AX.$$

$\therefore X$  is the middle point of  $NH$ , i.e.  $PT$  is bisected by the directrix.

Also  $TH = a(t_1 + t_2) = -\frac{2a}{t_1} = P'N'$ . [Art. 233.]

14. The lines joining the origin to the common points of  $y(t_1 + t_2) = 2x + 2at_1t_2$  and  $y^2 = 4ax$  are

$$y^2 \cdot 2at_1t_2 = 4ax \{y \cdot (t_1 + t_2) - 2x\}.$$

They are at right angles if  $t_1t_2 + 4 = 0$ .

The coordinates of the further corner of the rectangle are then  $x = a(t_1^2 + t_2^2)$ , and  $y = 2a(t_1 + t_2)$ .

$$y^2 = 4a^2(t_1^2 + t_2^2 + 2t_1t_2) = 4a^2\left(\frac{x}{a} + 8\right) = 4a(x - 8a).$$

15. Let  $y(t_1 + t_2) = 2x + 2at_1t_2$  be the equation of the chord. Its middle point is given by

$$2x' = a(t_1^2 + t_2^2), \text{ and } y' = a(t_1 + t_2).$$

Whence  $4ax' - y'^2 = a^2(t_1 - t_2)^2$ .

If the chord is inclined at an angle  $\phi$  to the given line,

$$\tan \phi = \frac{\tan a - \frac{2}{t_1 + t_2}}{1 + \tan a \cdot \frac{2}{t_1 + t_2}} = \frac{y' \sin a - 2a \cos a}{y' \cos a + 2a \sin a}$$

$$\therefore \sec^2 \phi = 1 + \tan^2 \phi = \frac{y'^2 + 4a^2}{(y' \cos a + 2a \sin a)^2}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Again, } c^2 \sec^2 \phi &= a^2 \{(t_1^2 - t_2^2)^2 + 4(t_1 - t_2)^2\} \\ &= a^2(t_1 - t_2)^2 \{(t_1 + t_2)^2 + 4\} = (4ax' - y'^2) \left(\frac{y'^2}{a^2} + 4\right). \end{aligned}$$

Eliminating  $\phi$ , the locus of  $(x', y')$  is

$$(y' \cos a + 2a \sin a)^2 (y'^2 - 4ax') + a^2 c^2 = 0.$$

16. The chord joining  $t_1, t_2$  will subtend a right angle at  $(h, k)$  if  $(k - 2at_1)(k - 2at_2) + (h - at_1^2)(h - at_2^2) = 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{i.e. if } k^2 - 2ak(t_1 + t_2) + 4a^2t_1t_2 \\ + h^2 - a(t_1^2 + t_2^2)h + a^2t_1^2t_2^2 = 0. \dots(1) \end{aligned}$$

The coordinates of the pole are given by

$$x = at_1t_2, \text{ and } y = a(t_1 + t_2),$$

whence  $y^2 - 2ax = a^2(t_1^2 + t_2^2)$ .

Substituting in (1), we have

$$k^2 - 2ky + 4ax + h^2 - h \frac{(y^2 - 2ax)}{a} + x^2 = 0,$$

or  $ax^2 - hy^2 + (4a^2 + 2ah)x - 2aky + a(h^2 + k^2) = 0.$

17. The intersection of  $x + a = 0$  with  $ty = x + at^2$  is

$$\left(-a, \frac{at^2 - a}{t}\right).$$

If  $(x, y)$  be the middle point of the tangent

$$2x = at^2 - a, \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

and

$$2y = \frac{at^2 - a}{t} + 2at = 3at - \frac{a}{t}.$$

$$\therefore 2ty = 3at^2 - a; \text{ also } 6x = 3at^2 - 3a.$$

$$\therefore ty = 3x + a. \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

Eliminate  $t$  between (1) and (2);

$$\therefore (2x + a)y^2 = a(3x + a)^2.$$

18. Solving for the normals at  $t_1, t_2$  we obtain

$$x = a(t_1^2 + t_2^2 + t_1t_2 + 2), \quad y = -at_1t_2(t_1 + t_2).$$

The line  $x - t_3y = c$  (which is perpendicular to the normal at  $t_3$ ) will pass through this point if

$$\begin{aligned} c &= a\{t_1^2 + t_2^2 + t_1t_2 + 2 + t_1t_2t_3(t_1 + t_2)\} \\ &= \{(t_1 + t_2)(t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_1t_2t_3) + 2 - \Sigma t_1t_2\}. \end{aligned}$$

One perpendicular of the normal triangle is

$$x - t_3y = a\{(t_1 + t_2)(t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_1t_2t_3) + 2 - \Sigma t_1t_2\}.$$

Similarly, another is

$$x - t_1y = a\{(t_2 + t_3)(t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_1t_2t_3) + 2 - \Sigma t_1t_2\}.$$

Subtracting,  $y = a(t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_1t_2t_3)$

= length of ordinate of orthocentre of tangent triangle. [Art. 234.]

19. Let  $(at_1^2, 2at_1); (at_2^2, 2at_2); \{at_1t_2, a(t_1 + t_2)\}$  be the coordinates of  $P, Q, T$  respectively, and

$$x - ty + at^2 = 0 \text{ the equation of any tangent.}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore (\text{perpendicular from } T)^2 \times (1 + t^2) &= a^2 \{t_1 t_2 - t(t_1 + t_2) + t^2\}^2, \\ &= a^2 (t - t_1)^2 (t - t_2)^2. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also (perp. from } P) (\text{perp. from } Q) \times (1 + t^2) \\ = a^2 (t_1^2 - 2tt_1 + t^2)(t_2^2 - 2tt_2 + t^2) = a^2 (t - t_1)^2 (t - t_2)^2. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the required result.

**20.** Let  $r_1$  be inclined at  $\theta$  to the axis of  $x$ , and let  $(at_1^2, 2at_1)$ ,  $(at_2^2, 2at_2)$  be the coordinates of the ends of the radii vectores.

$$\text{Then } \tan \theta = \frac{2}{t_1}; \therefore t_1 = 2 \cot \theta. \quad \text{Hence } t_2 = -2 \tan \theta.$$

$$\begin{aligned} r_1^2 &= a^2 (t_1^4 + 4t_1^2) = 16a^2 \cot^2 \theta (1 + \cot^2 \theta) \\ &= 16a^2 \left( \frac{1 + \tan^2 \theta}{\tan^4 \theta} \right). \end{aligned}$$

$$r_2^2 = a^2 (t_2^4 + 4t_2^2) = 16a^2 \tan^2 \theta (1 + \tan^2 \theta).$$

$$\therefore r_2^2/r_1^2 = \tan^6 \theta, \quad \tan^2 \theta = r_2^{2/3}/r_1^{2/3}.$$

$$\therefore r_2^2 = 16a^2 \frac{r_2^{2/3}}{r_1^{2/3}} \left( 1 + \frac{r_2^{2/3}}{r_1^{2/3}} \right). \quad \therefore r_1^{4/3} r_2^{4/3} = 16a^2 (r_1^{2/3} + r_2^{2/3}).$$

**21.** Let  $D, E, F$  be the points  $t_1, t_2, t_3$ .

The point  $b$  is the intersection of chord  $DE$  and the diameter through  $A$ , that is

$$y(t_1 + t_2) - 2ax - 2at_1 t_2 = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad y - a(t_2 + t_3) = 0.$$

Let  $y(t_1 + t_2) - 2x - 2at_1 t_2 - \lambda \{y - a(t_2 + t_3)\} = 0$  be the equation of  $Bb$ .

Since it passes through  $B$ , whose coordinates are

$$[at_1 t_3, a(t_1 + t_3)],$$

$$\therefore (t_1 + t_3)(t_1 + t_2) - 2t_1 t_3 - 2t_1 t_2 - \lambda(t_1 + t_3 - t_2 - t_3) = 0.$$

$$\therefore \lambda = t_1 - t_3. \quad \text{Hence the "m" of } Bb = \frac{2}{t_2 + t_3}.$$

$\therefore Bb$  is parallel to  $FE$ . Similarly  $Cc$  is parallel to  $FE$ .

22. (i) The equation of the circle on a focal chord as diameter is  $(x - at^2)\left(x - \frac{a}{t^2}\right) + (y - 2at)\left(y + \frac{2a}{t}\right) = 0$ .  
[Arts. 145 and 233.]

This meets  $x + a = 0$  where  $\left\{y - a\left(t - \frac{1}{t}\right)\right\}^2 = 0$ .

Hence the directrix touches the circle.

(ii) The equation of the circle on a focal radius as diameter is  $(x - a)(x - at^2) + y(y - 2at) = 0$ . [Art. 145.]

Putting  $x = 0$  we have  $(y - at)^2 = 0$ .

Hence the tangent at the vertex touches the circle.

23. By last Ex., the equation of the circle is

$$x^2 + y^2 - ax\left(t^2 + \frac{1}{t^2}\right) - 2ay\left(t - \frac{1}{t}\right) - 3a^2 = 0.$$

Also  $m = \tan 2P\hat{T}S = -\frac{2t}{1-t^2}$ .  $\therefore \frac{2}{m} = t - \frac{1}{t}$ .

$\therefore \frac{4}{m^2} + 2 = t^2 + \frac{1}{t^2}$ . On substituting, we obtain the required result.

24. Let  $L, L', M, M'$  be the points  $t_1, t_2, t_3, t_4$ . In the equations of the circles on  $LL'$  and  $MM'$  as diameters the constant terms will be

$$a^2 t_1^2 t_2^2 + 4a^2 t_1 t_2 \text{ and } a^2 t_3^2 t_4^2 + 4a^2 t_3 t_4. \quad [\text{Art. 145.}]$$

But, since the chords intersect on the axis,

$$\therefore t_1 t_2 = t_3 t_4. \quad [\text{Arts. 229 and 233.}]$$

$\therefore$  the constant terms are equal.

Hence in the equation of the radical axis, there will be no constant term:  $\therefore$  it passes through the origin.

25. On solving  $y^2 = 4ax$ , and  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$ , we obtain a quartic for  $y$  which has no term in  $y^3$ .

$$\therefore y_1 + y_2 + y_3 + y_4 = 0. \quad [\text{Art. 2.}]$$

Hence  $\frac{4a}{y_1 + y_2} = \frac{-4a}{y_3 + y_4}$ , i.e. the line joining one pair of points is equally inclined to the line joining the other pair. [See Art. 205.]

26. The centre is the intersection of the tangent at " $t$ ," viz.

$$ty - x = at^2, \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

and the line bisecting  $AP$  at right angles, viz.

$$t\left(x - \frac{at^2}{2}\right) + 2(y - at) = 0,$$

or  $tx + 2y = \frac{at^3}{2} + 2at. \dots\dots\dots(2)$

From (1),  $\frac{t^2y}{2} - \frac{tx}{2} = \frac{at^3}{2}. \dots\dots\dots(3)$

Hence from (2) and (3),  $t^2y + t(4a - 3x) - 4y = 0$ .

Also (1) is  $t^2a - ty + x = 0$ .

Whence  $\frac{t^2}{4y^2 + x(3x - 4a)} = \frac{t}{y(x + 4a)} = \frac{1}{y^2 - x(3x - 4a)}$ ,

and the required result follows by eliminating  $t$ .

27. Let  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$  be the equation of the circle through the three points.

Then

$$a^2t_1^2t_2^2 + a^2(t_1 + t_2)^2 + 2agt_1t_2 + 2af(t_1 + t_2) + c = 0, \dots(i)$$

$$a^2t_1^4 + 4a^2t_1^2 + 2agt_1^2 + 4aft_1 + c = 0, \dots\dots(ii)$$

and  $a^2t_2^4 + 4a^2t_2^2 + 2agt_2^2 + 4aft_2 + c = 0. \dots\dots(iii)$

From the sum of (ii) and (iii) subtract twice equation (i);

$$\therefore a(t_1 + t_2)^2 + 2a + 2g = 0.$$

Subtracting (iii) from (ii),

$$a(t_1 + t_2)(t_1^2 + t_2^2) + 4a(t_1 + t_2) + 2g(t_1 + t_2) = -4f.$$

Substitute for  $g$ ;  $\therefore a(t_1 + t_2)(1 - t_1 t_2) = -2f$ .

Substitute for  $g$  and  $f$  in (ii), and we have

$$a^2 t_1^4 + 4a^2 t_1^2 - a^2 t_1^2 (t_1^2 + t_2^2 + 2t_1 t_2) - 2a^2 t_1^2 - 2a^2 t_1 (1 - t_1 t_2)(t_1 + t_2) + c = 0,$$

whence  $c = a^2 t_1 t_2 (2 - t_1 t_2)$ . Hence, etc.

**28.** Let  $P$  and  $Q$  be the points  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ .

Since the normals at  $P$  and  $Q$  meet at  $R(t_3)$ ,

$$\therefore t_1 + \frac{2}{t_1} = t_2 + \frac{2}{t_2} = (-t_3), \text{ [Ex. 6]}. \quad \therefore t_1 t_2 = 2.$$

Also, from Ex. 27, if  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of the centre,

$$2x = a \{(t_1 + t_2)^2 + 2\}, \text{ and } 2y = a(t_1 + t_2)(1 - t_1 t_2) = -a(t_1 + t_2).$$

$$\therefore 2x = a \left\{ \frac{4y^2}{a^2} + 2 \right\}. \quad \therefore 2y^2 = a(x - a).$$

**29.** Let  $P$  and  $Q$  be the points  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ . The equations of circles on  $AP$ ,  $AQ$  as diameters are  $x(x - at_1^2) + y(y - 2at_1) = 0$ , and  $x(x - at_2^2) + y(y - 2at_2) = 0$ .

Whence the equation of  $AR$  (their common chord) is

$$x(t_1 + t_2) + 2y = 0.$$

$\therefore 2 \tan \phi + t_1 + t_2 = 0$ , that is,  $2 \tan \phi + \cot \theta_1 + \cot \theta_2 = 0$ .

**30.** From Arts. 232 and 234 we have only to shew that the lines joining the middle points of the sides of the triangle are tangents to the parabola. Let  $O$  be one vertex of the triangle and  $OP$ ,  $OQ$  the tangents from it;



then we are given that  $P$  and  $Q$  lie on the opposite sides of the triangle, so that the line joining the middle points of  $OP$ ,  $OQ$  bisects the sides of the given triangle which pass through  $O$ . If  $P$  be  $(at_1^2, 2at_1)$  and  $Q$  be  $(at_2^2, 2at_2)$ , then  $O$  is  $[at_1t_2, a(t_1 + t_2)]$ .

$\therefore$  the middle points of  $OP$ ,  $OQ$  are

$$\left[ \frac{at_1(t_1 + t_2)}{2}, \frac{a(3t_1 + t_2)}{2} \right] \text{ and } \left[ \frac{at_2(t_1 + t_2)}{2}, \frac{a(t_1 + 3t_2)}{2} \right].$$

The equation to the straight line joining them is easily seen to be  $y = \frac{2}{t_1 + t_2} x + a \cdot \frac{t_1 + t_2}{2}$ , which clearly touches the parabola.

## Chapter 11

# THE PARABOLA

## (continued)

### Some examples of Loci connected with the Parabola.

**235. Ex. 1.** Find the locus of the intersection of tangents to the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ , the angle between them being always a given angle  $\alpha$ .

The straight line  $y = mx + \frac{a}{m}$  is always a tangent to the parabola.

If it pass through the point  $T(h, k)$  we have

$$m^2h - mk + a = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

If  $m_1$  and  $m_2$  be the roots of this equation we have (by Art. 2)

$$m_1 + m_2 = \frac{k}{h} \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

and

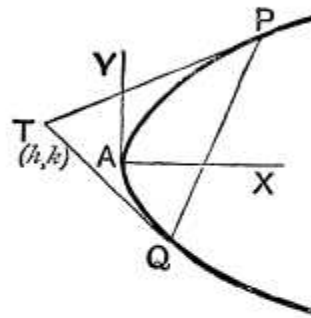
$$m_1 m_2 = \frac{a}{h} \dots\dots\dots(3),$$

and the equations to  $TP$  and  $TQ$  are then

$$y = m_1 x + \frac{a}{m_1} \text{ and } y = m_2 x + \frac{a}{m_2}.$$

Hence, by Art. 66, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \tan \alpha &= \frac{m_1 - m_2}{1 + m_1 m_2} = \frac{\sqrt{(m_1 + m_2)^2 - 4m_1 m_2}}{1 + m_1 m_2} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{\frac{k^2}{h^2} - \frac{4a}{h}}}{1 + \frac{a}{h}} = \frac{\sqrt{k^2 - 4ah}}{a + h}, \text{ by (2) and (3)}. \end{aligned}$$



$$\therefore k^2 - 4ah = (a + h)^2 \tan^2 \alpha.$$

Hence the coordinates of the point  $T$  always satisfy the equation

$$y^2 - 4ax = (a + x)^2 \tan^2 \alpha.$$

We shall find in a later chapter that this curve is a hyperbola.

As a particular case let the tangents intersect at right angles, so that  $m_1 m_2 = -1$ .

From (3) we then have  $h = -a$ , so that in this case the point  $T$  lies on the straight line  $x = -a$ , which is the directrix.

Hence the locus of the point of intersection of tangents, which cut at right angles, is the directrix.

**Ex. 2.** Prove that the locus of the poles of chords which are normal to the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  is the curve

$$y^2(x + 2a) + 4a^3 = 0.$$

Let  $PQ$  be a chord which is normal at  $P$ . Its equation is then

$$y = mx - 2am - am^3 \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

Let the tangents at  $P$  and  $Q$  intersect in  $T$ , whose coordinates are  $h$  and  $k$ , so that we require the locus of  $T$ .

Since  $PQ$  is the polar of the point  $(h, k)$  its equation is

$$yk = 2a(x + h) \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

Now the equations (1) and (2) represent the same straight line, so that they must be equivalent. Hence

$$m = \frac{2a}{k}, \text{ and } -2am - am^3 = \frac{2ah}{k}.$$

Eliminating  $m$ , *i.e.* substituting the value of  $m$  from the first of these equations in the second, we have

$$-\frac{4a^2}{k} - \frac{8a^4}{k^3} = \frac{2ah}{k},$$

*i.e.*  $k^2(h + 2a) + 4a^3 = 0,$

The locus of the point  $T$  is therefore

$$y^2(x + 2a) + 4a^3 = 0.$$

**Ex. 3.** Find the locus of the middle points of chords of a parabola which subtend a right angle at the vertex, and prove that these chords all pass through a fixed point on the axis of the curve.

**First Method.** Let  $PQ$  be any such chord, and let its equation be  $y = mx + c \dots \dots \dots (1)$ .

The lines joining the vertex with the points of intersection of this straight line with the parabola

$$y^2 = 4ax \dots \dots \dots (2),$$

are given by the equation

$$y^2c = 4ax(y - mx). \quad (\text{Art. 122})$$

These straight lines are at right angles if

$$c + 4am = 0. \quad (\text{Art. 111})$$

Substituting this value of  $c$  in (1), the equation to  $PQ$  is

$$y = m(x - 4a) \dots \dots \dots (3).$$

This straight line cuts the axis of  $x$  at a constant distance  $4a$  from the vertex, *i.e.*  $AA' = 4a$ .

If the middle point of  $PQ$  be  $(h, k)$  we have, by Art. 220,

$$k = \frac{2a}{m} \dots \dots \dots (4).$$

Also the point  $(h, k)$  lies on (3), so that we have

$$k = m(h - 4a) \dots \dots \dots (5).$$

If between (4) and (5) we eliminate  $m$ , we have

$$k = \frac{2a}{k}(h - 4a),$$

*i.e.*  $k^2 = 2a(h - 4a),$

so that  $(h, k)$  always lies on the parabola

$$y^2 = 2a(x - 4a).$$

This is a parabola one half the size of the original, and whose vertex is at the point  $A'$  through which all the chords pass.

**Second Method.** Let  $P$  be the point  $(at_1^2, 2at_1)$  and  $Q$  be the point  $(at_2^2, 2at_2)$ .

The tangents of the inclinations of  $AP$  and  $AQ$  to the axis are

$$\frac{2}{t_1} \text{ and } \frac{2}{t_2}.$$

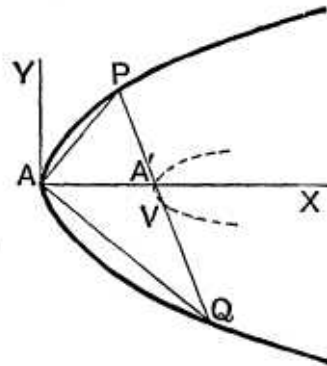
Since  $AP$  and  $AQ$  are at right angles, therefore

$$\frac{2}{t_1} \cdot \frac{2}{t_2} = -1,$$

*i.e.*  $t_1 t_2 = -4 \dots \dots \dots (6).$

As in Art. 229 the equation to  $PQ$  is

$$(t_1 + t_2)y = 2x + 2at_1 t_2 \dots \dots \dots (7).$$



This meets the axis of  $x$  at a distance  $-at_1t_2$ , *i.e.*, by (6),  $4a$ , from the origin.

Also,  $(h, k)$  being the middle point of  $PQ$ , we have

$$2h = a(t_1^2 + t_2^2),$$

and

$$2k = 2a(t_1 + t_2).$$

Hence 
$$k^2 - 2ah = a^2(t_1 + t_2)^2 - a^2(t_1^2 + t_2^2) = 2a^2t_1t_2 = -8a^2,$$

so that the locus of  $(h, k)$  is, as before, the parabola

$$y^2 = 2a(x - 4a).$$

**Third Method.** The equation to the chord which is bisected at the point  $(h, k)$  is, by Art. 221,

$$k(y - k) = 2a(x - h),$$

*i.e.*

$$ky - 2ax = k^2 - 2ah \dots \dots \dots (8).$$

As in Art. 122 the equation to the straight lines joining its points of intersection with the parabola to the vertex is

$$(k^2 - 2ah)y^2 = 4ax(ky - 2ax).$$

These lines are at right angles if

$$(k^2 - 2ah) + 8a^2 = 0.$$

Hence the locus as before.

Also the equation (8) becomes

$$ky - 2ax = -8a^2.$$

This straight line always goes through the point  $(4a, 0)$ .

**EXAMPLES XXIX**

From an external point  $P$  tangents are drawn to the parabola; find the equation to the locus of  $P$  when these tangents make angles  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$  with the axis, such that

1.  $\tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2$  is constant ( $= b$ ).
2.  $\tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2$  is constant ( $= c$ ).
3.  $\cot \theta_1 + \cot \theta_2$  is constant ( $= d$ ).
4.  $\theta_1 + \theta_2$  is constant ( $= 2\alpha$ ).
5.  $\tan^2 \theta_1 + \tan^2 \theta_2$  is constant ( $= \lambda$ ).
6.  $\cos \theta_1 \cos \theta_2$  is constant ( $= \mu$ ).

7. Two tangents to a parabola meet at an angle of  $45^\circ$ ; prove that the locus of their point of intersection is the curve

$$y^2 - 4ax = (x + a)^2.$$

If they meet at an angle of  $60^\circ$ , prove that the locus is

$$y^2 - 3x^2 - 10ax - 3a^2 = 0.$$

8. A pair of tangents are drawn which are equally inclined to a straight line whose inclination to the axis is  $\alpha$ ; prove that the locus of their point of intersection is the straight line

$$y = (x - a) \tan 2\alpha.$$

9. Prove that the locus of the point of intersection of two tangents which intercept a given distance  $4c$  on the tangent at the vertex is an equal parabola.

10. Shew that the locus of the point of intersection of two tangents, which with the tangent at the vertex form a triangle of constant area  $c^2$ , is the curve  $x^2(y^2 - 4ax) = 4c^2a^2$ .

11. If the normals at  $P$  and  $Q$  meet on the parabola, prove that the point of intersection of the tangents at  $P$  and  $Q$  lies either on a certain straight line, which is parallel to the tangent at the vertex, or on the curve whose equation is  $y^2(x + 2a) + 4a^3 = 0$ .

12. Two tangents to a parabola intercept on a fixed tangent segments whose product is constant; prove that the locus of their point of intersection is a straight line.

13. Shew that the locus of the poles of chords which subtend a constant angle  $\alpha$  at the vertex is the curve

$$(x + 4a)^2 = 4 \cot^2 \alpha (y^2 - 4ax).$$

14. In the preceding question if the constant angle be a right angle the locus is a straight line perpendicular to the axis.

15. A point  $P$  is such that the straight line drawn through it perpendicular to its polar with respect to the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  touches the parabola  $x^2 = 4by$ . Prove that its locus is the straight line

$$2ax + by + 4a^2 = 0.$$

16. Two equal parabolas,  $A$  and  $B$ , have the same vertex and axis but have their concavities turned in opposite directions; prove that the locus of poles with respect to  $B$  of tangents to  $A$  is the parabola  $A$ .

17. Prove that the locus of the poles of tangents to the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  with respect to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 2ax$  is the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = ax$ .

18. Shew the locus of the poles of tangents to the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  with respect to the parabola  $y^2 = 4bx$  is the parabola

$$y^2 = \frac{4b^2}{a} x.$$

Find the locus of the middle points of chords of the parabola which

19. pass through the focus.
20. pass through the fixed point  $(h, k)$ .
21. are normal to the curve.
22. subtend a constant angle  $\alpha$  at the vertex.
23. are of given length  $l$ .
24. are such that the normals at their extremities meet on the parabola.
25. Through each point of the straight line  $x = my + h$  is drawn the chord of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  which is bisected at the point; prove that it always touches the parabola

$$(y - 2am)^2 = 8a(x - h).$$

26. Two parabolas have the same axis and tangents are drawn to the second from points on the first; prove that the locus of the middle points of the chords of contact with the second parabola all lie on a fixed parabola.

27. Prove that the locus of the feet of the perpendiculars drawn from the vertex of the parabola upon chords, which subtend an angle of  $45^\circ$  at the vertex, is the curve

$$r^2 - 24ar \cos \theta + 16a^2 \cos 2\theta = 0.$$

## ANSWERS

- |  |   |              |
|--|---|--------------|
| 1. $y = bx.$   | 2. $cx = a.$                            | 3. $y = ad.$ |
| 4. $y = (x - a) \tan 2\alpha.$                               | 5. $y^2 - \lambda x^2 = 2ax.$           |              |
| 6. $x^2 = \mu^2 [(x - a)^2 + y^2].$                          | 19. $y^2 = 2a(x - a).$                  |              |
| 20. $y^2 - ky = 2a(x - h).$                                  | 21. $y^2(y^2 - 2ax + 4a^2) + 8a^4 = 0.$ |              |
| 22. $(8a^2 + y^2 - 2ax)^2 \tan^2 \alpha = 16a^2(4ax - y^2).$ |   |              |
| 23. $y^4 + 4ay^2(a - x) - 16a^3x + a^2l^2 = 0.$              |   |              |
| 24. The parabola $y^2 = 2a(x + 2a).$                         |   |              |

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

In Exs. 1—8, by Art. 235, Ex. 1, Equations (2) and (3), we have

$$\tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2 = \frac{y}{x}, \dots(i) \quad \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2 = \frac{a}{x}, \dots(ii)$$

where  $(x, y)$  are the coordinates of  $P$ .

1.  $y = bx$ , by (i).

2.  $cx = a$ , by (ii).

3.  $\cot \theta_1 + \cot \theta_2 = \frac{\tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2}{\tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2} = \frac{y}{a}$ ;  $\therefore y = ad$ .

4.  $\tan(\theta_1 + \theta_2) = \frac{\frac{y}{x}}{1 - \frac{a}{x}}$ ;  $\therefore y = (x - a) \tan 2\alpha$ .

5.  $\tan^2 \theta_1 + \tan^2 \theta_2 = (\tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2)^2 - 2 \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2$   
 $= \frac{y^2}{x^2} - \frac{2a}{x}$ .

Hence  $\lambda x^2 = y^2 - 2ax$ .

6.  $\mu = \cos \theta_1 \cos \theta_2$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{1}{\mu^2} &= \sec^2 \theta_1 \sec^2 \theta_2 = (1 + \tan^2 \theta_1)(1 + \tan^2 \theta_2) \\ &= 1 + \tan^2 \theta_1 + \tan^2 \theta_2 + \tan^2 \theta_1 \tan^2 \theta_2 \\ &= 1 + \frac{y^2 - 2ax}{x^2} + \frac{a^2}{x^2}, \text{ by (i) and (ii).} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x^2 = \mu^2 \{y^2 + (x - a)^2\}.$$

7.  $\frac{\tan \theta_1 - \tan \theta_2}{1 + \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2} = \tan 45^\circ = 1$ .  
 $\therefore \frac{\tan^2 \theta_1 + \tan^2 \theta_2 - 2 \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2}{(1 + \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2)^2} = 1$ .

(i)  $\therefore$  by (i) and (ii),

$$\frac{y^2}{x^2} - \frac{4a}{x} = \left(1 + \frac{a}{x}\right)^2, \text{ i.e. } y^2 - 4ax = (x + a)^2.$$

(ii) Similarly,  $\frac{\frac{y^2}{x^2} - \frac{4a}{x}}{\left(1 + \frac{a}{x}\right)^2} = \tan^2 60^\circ = 3$ ;

$$\therefore y^2 - 3x^2 - 10ax - 3a^2 = 0.$$



8. Using the same equation, it is easily seen from a figure that  $\theta_1 + \theta_2 = 2\alpha$  or  $2\alpha \pm \pi$ . Hence, in either case,

$$\tan 2\alpha = \tan (\theta_1 + \theta_2) = \frac{y}{x - a}, \text{ by (i) and (ii).}$$

9. Using the equations of Ex. 1, Art. 235, we have

$$\frac{a}{m_1} - \frac{a}{m_2} = 4c; \quad \therefore \frac{a^2(m_1 - m_2)^2}{m_1^2 m_2^2} = 16c^2,$$

or 
$$\frac{a^2 \{(m_1 + m_2)^2 - 4m_1 m_2\}}{m_1^2 m_2^2} = 16c^2; \quad \therefore y^2 - 4ax = 16c^2,$$

which is the equation of an equal parabola.

10. Using the same equations, the base of the  $\Delta$  = the intercept on the axis of  $y = \frac{a}{m_1} - \frac{a}{m_2}$ ; and the perpendicular

from opposite vertex =  $\frac{a}{m_1 m_2}$ .

Hence 
$$\frac{a^2}{m_1^2 m_2^2} \left\{ \frac{a}{m_1} - \frac{a}{m_2} \right\}^2 = 4c^4. \quad \therefore x^2 (y^2 - 4ax) = 4c^4.$$

11. Using the equations of Art. 229, the coordinates of the intersection of tangents at  $P$  and  $Q$  are

$$x = at_1 t_2 \text{ and } y = a(t_1 + t_2) \dots \dots \dots (i)$$

(1) If the normal at  $P$  passes through  $Q$ ,

$$t_1 + t_2 = -\frac{2}{t_1} \dots \dots \dots (ii) \quad (\text{Ex. XXVIII. 6.})$$

Whence  $t_1 = -\frac{2a}{y}$ , and  $t_2 = -\frac{xy}{2a^2}$ , by (i).

Substitute in (ii), and we have  $y^2(x + 2a) + 4a^3 = 0$ .

(2) If the normals at  $P$  and  $Q$  intersect at the point  $R(t_3)$  on the curve, then

$$t_1 + \frac{2}{t_1} = -t_3 = t_2 + \frac{2}{t_2}, \quad (\text{Ex. XXVIII. 6.}),$$

whence  $t_1 t_2 = 2. \quad \therefore x = 2a,$

which is a straight line parallel to  $x = 0$ .

**12.** Using the equations of Art. 229, let the points of contact of the variable tangents be  $t_1, t_2$  and  $t$  that of the fixed tangent. The projections of the segments on the axis of  $x$  are  $a(t^2 - tt_1)$  and  $a(t^2 - tt_2)$  and their product is constant.

$$\therefore t^2 - (t_1 + t_2)t + t_1t_2 = \text{cons.},$$

substituting  $x = at_1t_2, y = a(t_1 + t_2),$

we have  $at^2 - yt + x = \text{cons.},$  which is a straight line.

**13.** Take  $yy' = 2a(x + x')$ , the polar of  $(x', y')$ , for the equation of the chord.

The lines joining the origin to common points of  $y^2 = 4ax$  and  $yy' = 2a(x + x')$  are

$$y^2 \cdot 2ax' = 4ax(yy' - 2ax), \quad [\text{Art. 122}],$$

or  $8a^2x^2 - 4ay' \cdot xy + 2ax' \cdot y^2 = 0.$

If these intersect at an angle  $\alpha$ , then, by Art. 110,

$$4 \cot^2 \alpha (4a^2y'^2 - 16a^3x') = (2ax' + 8a^2)^2.$$

$\therefore$  the required locus is  $4 \cot^2 \alpha (y^2 - 4ax) = (x + 4a)^2.$

**14.** From Ex. 13, if  $\cot \alpha = 0$ , the locus becomes

$$x + 4a = 0.$$

**15.** The line through  $(x', y')$  perpendicular to its polar

$$yy' = 2a(x + x') \text{ is } y'(x - x') + 2a(y - y') = 0,$$

or  $x = -\frac{2a}{y'}y + x' + 2a.$

This touches  $x^2 = 4by$  if  $x' + 2a = \frac{b}{-2a/y'}$ . [Art. 206.]

$\therefore$  the required locus is  $2ax + by + 4a^2 = 0.$

**16.** Let  $y^2 - 4ax = 0$  and  $y^2 + 4ax = 0$  be equations to  $A$  and  $B$  respectively. The polar of  $(x', y')$  with respect to  $B$  is  $yy' + 2a(x + x') = 0.$

This touches  $A$  if  $\left(-\frac{2a}{y'}\right)\left(-\frac{2ax'}{y'}\right) = a$ . [Art. 206.]

$\therefore$  the required locus is  $y^2 - 4ax = 0$ , i.e.  $A$ .

17. The polar of  $(x', y')$  with respect to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 2ax$ , viz.  $xx' + yy' = a(x + x')$ , touches  $y^2 = 4ax$ , if

$$\frac{a - x'}{y'} \cdot \frac{ax'}{y'} = a. \quad [\text{Art. 206.}]$$

$\therefore$  the required locus is  $x^2 + y^2 = ax$ .

18. The polar of  $(x', y')$  with respect to the parabola  $y^2 = 4bx$ , viz.  $yy' = 2b(x + x')$ , touches  $y^2 = 4ax$ , if

$$\frac{2b}{y'} \cdot \frac{2bx'}{y'} = a. \quad [\text{Art. 206.}]$$

$\therefore$  the required locus is  $y^2 = \frac{4b^2}{a} \cdot x$ .

In Nos. 19—24,  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  are the extremities of the chord, so that the coordinates of the middle point are

$$x = \frac{a}{2}(t_1^2 + t_2^2), \quad \dots\dots\dots(\text{i})$$

$$y = a(t_1 + t_2). \quad \dots\dots\dots(\text{ii})$$

19. Since the chord passes through the focus,

$$\therefore t_1 t_2 = -1. \quad [\text{Art. 233.}]$$

From (i) and (ii),

$$y^2 - 2ax = 2a^2 t_1 t_2 = -2a^2; \quad \therefore y^2 = 2a(x - a).$$

20. Since the chord goes through  $(h, k)$ ,

$$\therefore k(t_1 + t_2) = 2h + 2at_1 t_2. \quad [\text{Art. 229.}]$$

Hence, from (i) and (ii),

$$\frac{ky}{a} = 2h + 2a \cdot \frac{y^2 - 2ax}{2a^2}; \quad \therefore y^2 - ky = 2a(x - h).$$

21. Since the chord is normal at  $t_1$ ,

$$\therefore t_1 + t_2 = -\frac{2}{t_1}. \quad [\text{Ex. XXVIII. 6.}]$$

$\therefore$  from (ii),  $t_1 = -\frac{2a}{y}$ , and, from (i) and (ii),

$$y^2 - 2ax = 2a^2 t_1 t_2 = -\frac{4a^3 t_2}{y};$$

$$\therefore t_2 = \frac{y(2ax - y^2)}{4a^3}, \text{ and } \frac{y}{a} = t_1 + t_2 = \frac{y(2ax - y^2)}{4a^3} - \frac{2a}{y};$$

$$\therefore y^2(y^2 - 2ax + 4a^2) + 8a^4 = 0.$$

$$22. \quad \alpha = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{2at_1}{at_1^2}\right) \sim \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{2at_2}{at_2^2}\right).$$

$$\therefore \tan \alpha = \frac{\frac{2}{t_2} - \frac{2}{t_1}}{1 + \frac{4}{t_1 t_2}} = \frac{2(t_1 - t_2)}{4 + t_1 t_2}.$$

$$\therefore 4(t_1 - t_2)^2 = \tan^2 \alpha (4 + t_1 t_2)^2.$$

Substitute from equations (i) and (ii).

$$\therefore 4(4ax - y^2) = a^2 \tan^2 \alpha \left(4 + \frac{y^2 - 2ax}{2a^2}\right)^2,$$

or  $16a^2(4ax - y^2) = \tan^2 \alpha (y^2 - 2ax + 8a^2)^2.$

23. From (i) and (ii),

$$4ax - y^2 = a^2(t_1 - t_2)^2, \text{ and } y^2 = a^2(t_1 + t_2)^2;$$

$$\therefore \frac{(4ax - y^2)y^2}{a^2} = a^2(t_1^2 - t_2^2)^2.$$

Also  $l^2 = a^2(t_1^2 - t_2^2)^2 + 4a^2(t_1 - t_2)^2.$

Substituting  $l^2 = \frac{y^2(4ax - y^2)}{a^2} + 4(4ax - y^2);$

$$\therefore (y^2 - 4ax)(y^2 + 4a^2) + a^2 l^2 = 0.$$

24. If the normals at  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  both pass through  $t_3$ ,

then  $t_1 + \frac{2}{t_1} = -t_3 = t_2 + \frac{2}{t_2},$  [Ex. XXVIII. 6.]

$\therefore t_1 t_2 = 2.$  From (i) and (ii)

$$y^2 - 2ax = 2a^2 t_1 t_2 = 4a^2; \quad \therefore y^2 = 2a(x + 2a).$$

25. The chord of the parabola which is bisected at

$$(x_1, y_1) \text{ is } y_1(y - y_1) = 2a(x - x_1) \text{ [Art. 221]}$$

$$= 2a(x - my_1 - h), \text{ since } x_1 = my_1 + h.$$

This equation may be written

$$y + 2am = \frac{2a}{y_1} (x - h) + \frac{2a}{y_1},$$

which shews that it always touches the parabola

$$(y + 2am)^2 = 8a(x - h). \quad [\text{Art. 206.}]$$

**26.** Let  $y^2 = 4ax \dots(i)$  and  $y^2 = 4b(x + c) \dots(ii)$  be the equations of the parabolas.

The pole of the chord joining  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  of (i) is

$$[a(t_1 t_2), a(t_1 + t_2)].$$

If this point lies on (ii), then

$$a^2(t_1 + t_2)^2 = 4b(at_1 t_2 + c). \quad \dots\dots\dots(iii)$$

If  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of the middle point of the chord, then  $2x = a(t_1^2 + t_2^2)$ , and  $y = a(t_1 + t_2)$ ,

$$\therefore y^2 - 2ax = 2a^2 t_1 t_2.$$

Substitute in (iii);  $\therefore ay^2 = 2b(y^2 - 2ax + 2ac)$ , which is the equation of a parabola.

**27.** The lines joining the origin to the common points of  $y^2 = 4ax$  and  $x \cos a + y \sin a = p$ , are

$$y^2 p = 4ax(x \cos a + y \sin a), \quad [\text{Art. 122}],$$

or  $4a \cos a \cdot x^2 + 4a \sin a \cdot xy - py^2 = 0.$

If the angle between these lines is  $45^\circ$ , then

$$2\sqrt{4a^2 \sin^2 a + 4ap \cos a} = 4a \cos a - p. \quad [\text{Art. 110.}]$$

But  $(p, a)$  are the polar coordinates of the foot of the perpendicular from the vertex on the chord. Hence the required locus is

$$16a(a \sin^2 \theta + r \cos \theta) = 16a^2 \cos^2 \theta + r^2 - 8ar \cos \theta,$$

or  $r^2 - 24ar \cos \theta + 16a^2 \cos 2\theta = 0.$

**236.** *To prove that, in general, three normals can be drawn from any point to the parabola and that the algebraic sum of the ordinates of the feet of these three normals is zero.*

The straight line

$$y = mx - 2am - am^3 \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

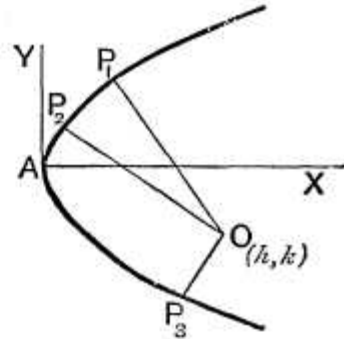
is, by Art. 208, a normal to the parabola at the points whose coordinates are

$$am^2 \text{ and } -2am \dots\dots(2).$$

If this normal passes through the fixed point  $O$ , whose coordinates are  $h$  and  $k$ , we have

$$k = mh - 2am - am^3,$$

*i. e.*  $am^3 + (2a - h)m + k = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3),$



This equation, being of the third degree, has three roots, real or imaginary. Corresponding to each of these roots, we have, on substitution in (1), the equation to a normal which passes through the point  $O$ .

Hence three normals, real or imaginary, pass through any point  $O$ .

If  $m_1, m_2,$  and  $m_3$  be the roots of the equation (3), we have

$$m_1 + m_2 + m_3 = 0.$$

If the ordinates of the feet of these normals be  $y_1, y_2,$  and  $y_3,$  we then have, by (2),

$$y_1 + y_2 + y_3 = -2a(m_1 + m_2 + m_3) = 0.$$

Hence the second part of the proposition.

We shall find, in a subsequent chapter, that, for certain positions of the point  $O$ , all three normals are real; for other positions of  $O$ , one normal only will be real, and the other two imaginary.

**237. Ex.** Find the locus of a point which is such that (a) two of the normals drawn from it to the parabola are at right angles, (β) the three normals through it cut the axis in points whose distances from the vertex are in arithmetical progression.

Any normal is  $y = mx - 2am - am^3$ , and this passes through the point  $(h, k)$ , if

$$am^3 + (2a - h)m + k = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

If then  $m_1, m_2$ , and  $m_3$  be the roots, we have, by Art. 2,

$$m_1 + m_2 + m_3 = 0, \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

$$m_2m_3 + m_3m_1 + m_1m_2 = \frac{2a - h}{a}, \dots\dots\dots(3),$$

and

$$m_1m_2m_3 = -\frac{k}{a} \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

(a) If two of the normals, say  $m_1$  and  $m_2$ , be at right angles, we have  $m_1m_2 = -1$ , and hence, from (4),  $m_3 = \frac{k}{a}$ .

The quantity  $\frac{k}{a}$  is therefore a root of (1) and hence, by substitution, we have

$$\frac{k^3}{a^2} + (2a - h)\frac{k}{a} + k = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $k^2 = a(h - 3a).$

The locus of the point  $(h, k)$  is therefore the parabola  $y^2 = a(x - 3a)$  whose vertex is the point  $(3a, 0)$  and whose latus rectum is one-quarter that of the given parabola.

The student should draw the figure of both parabolas.

(β) The normal  $y = mx - 2am - am^3$  meets the axis of  $x$  at a point whose distance from the vertex is  $2a + am^2$ . The conditions of the question then give

$$(2a + am_1^2) + (2a + am_3^2) = 2(2a + am_2^2),$$

*i.e.*  $m_1^2 + m_3^2 = 2m_2^2 \dots\dots\dots(5).$

If we eliminate  $m_1, m_2$ , and  $m_3$  from the equations (2), (3), (4), and (5) we shall have a relation between  $h$  and  $k$ .

From (2) and (3), we have

$$\frac{2a - h}{a} = m_1m_3 + m_2(m_1 + m_3) = m_1m_3 - m_2^2 \dots\dots\dots(6).$$

Also, (5) and (2) give

$$2m_2^2 = (m_1 + m_3)^2 - 2m_1m_3 = m_2^2 - 2m_1m_3,$$

*i.e.*  $m_2^2 + 2m_1m_3 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(7).$

Solving (6) and (7), we have

$$m_1 m_3 = \frac{2a - h}{3a}, \text{ and } m_2^2 = -2 \times \frac{2a - h}{3a}.$$

Substituting these values in (4), we have

$$\frac{2a - h}{3a} \sqrt{-2 \frac{2a - h}{3a}} = -\frac{k}{a},$$

*i.e.*  $27ak^2 = 2(h - 2a)^2,$

so that the required locus is

$$27ay^2 = 2(x - 2a)^2.$$

**238. Ex.** *If the normals at three points P, Q, and R meet in a point O and S be the focus, prove that  $SP \cdot SQ \cdot SR = a \cdot SO^2$ .*

As in the previous question we know that the normals at the points  $(am_1^2, -2am_1)$ ,  $(am_2^2, -2am_2)$  and  $(am_3^2, -2am_3)$  meet in the point  $(h, k)$  if

$$m_1 + m_2 + m_3 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

$$m_2 m_3 + m_3 m_1 + m_1 m_2 = \frac{2a - h}{a} \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

and  $m_1 m_2 m_3 = -\frac{k}{a} \dots\dots\dots(3).$

By Art. 202 we have

$$SP = a(1 + m_1^2), \quad SQ = a(1 + m_2^2), \quad \text{and} \quad SR = a(1 + m_3^2).$$

Hence  $\frac{SP \cdot SQ \cdot SR}{a^3} = (1 + m_1^2)(1 + m_2^2)(1 + m_3^2)$

$$= 1 + (m_1^2 + m_2^2 + m_3^2) + (m_2^2 m_3^2 + m_3^2 m_1^2 + m_1^2 m_2^2) + m_1^2 m_2^2 m_3^2.$$

Also, from (1) and (2), we have

$$\begin{aligned} m_1^2 + m_2^2 + m_3^2 &= (m_1 + m_2 + m_3)^2 - 2(m_2 m_3 + m_3 m_1 + m_1 m_2) \\ &= 2 \frac{h - 2a}{a}, \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} m_2^2 m_3^2 + m_3^2 m_1^2 + m_1^2 m_2^2 &= (m_2 m_3 + m_3 m_1 + m_1 m_2)^2 - 2m_1 m_2 m_3 (m_1 + m_2 + m_3) \\ &= \left(\frac{h - 2a}{a}\right)^2, \text{ by (1) and (2).} \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence } \frac{SP \cdot SQ \cdot SR}{a^3} &= 1 + 2 \frac{h-2a}{a} + \left( \frac{h-2a}{a} \right)^2 + \frac{k^2}{a^2} \\ &= \frac{(h-a)^2 + k^2}{a^2} = \frac{SO^2}{a^2}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e. } SP \cdot SQ \cdot SR = SO^2 \cdot a.$$

### EXAMPLES XXX

Find the locus of a point  $O$  when the three normals drawn from it are such that

1. two of them make complementary angles with the axis.
2. two of them make angles with the axis the product of whose tangents is 2.
3. one bisects the angle between the other two.
4. two of them make equal angles with the given line  $y = mx + c$ .
5. the sum of the three angles made by them with the axis is constant.
6. the area of the triangle formed by their feet is constant.
7. the line joining the feet of two of them is always in a given direction.

The normals at three points  $P$ ,  $Q$ , and  $R$  of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  meet in a point  $O$  whose coordinates are  $h$  and  $k$ ; prove that

8. the centroid of the triangle  $PQR$  lies on the axis.
9. the point  $O$  and the orthocentre of the triangle formed by the tangents at  $P$ ,  $Q$ , and  $R$  are equidistant from the axis.
10. if  $OP$  and  $OQ$  make complementary angles with the axis, then the tangent at  $R$  is parallel to  $SO$ .
11. the sum of the intercepts which the normals cut off from the axis is  $2(h+a)$ .
12. the sum of the squares of the sides of the triangle  $PQR$  is equal to  $2(h-2a)(h+10a)$ .
13. the circle circumscribing the triangle  $PQR$  goes through the vertex and its equation is  $2x^2 + 2y^2 - 2x(h+2a) - ky = 0$ .
14. if  $P$  be fixed, then  $QR$  is fixed in direction and the locus of the centre of the circle circumscribing  $PQR$  is a straight line.

15. Three normals are drawn to the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax \cos a$  from any point lying on the straight line  $y = b \sin a$ . Prove that the locus of the orthocentre of the triangles formed by the corresponding tangents is the curve  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ , the angle  $a$  being variable.

16. Prove that the sum of the angles which the three normals, drawn from any point  $O$ , make with the axis exceeds the angle which the focal distance of  $O$  makes with the axis by a multiple of  $\pi$ .

17. Two of the normals drawn from a point  $O$  to the curve make complementary angles with the axis; prove that the locus of  $O$  and the curve which is touched by its polar are parabolas such that their latera recta and that of the original parabola form a geometrical progression. Sketch the three curves.

18. Prove that the normals at the points, where the straight line  $lx + my = 1$  meets the parabola, meet on the normal at the point  $\left(\frac{4am^2}{l^2}, \frac{4am}{l}\right)$  of the parabola.

19. If the normals at the three points  $P$ ,  $Q$ , and  $R$  meet in a point and if  $PP'$ ,  $QQ'$ , and  $RR'$  be chords parallel to  $QR$ ,  $RP$ , and  $PQ$  respectively, prove that the normals at  $P'$ ,  $Q'$ , and  $R'$  also meet in a point.

20. If the normals drawn from any point to the parabola cut the line  $x = 2a$  in points whose ordinates are in arithmetical progression, prove that the tangents of the angles which the normals make with the axis are in geometrical progression.

21.  $PG$ , the normal at  $P$  to a parabola, cuts the axis in  $G$  and is produced to  $Q$  so that  $GQ = \frac{1}{2}PG$ ; prove that the other normals which pass through  $Q$  intersect at right angles.

22. Prove that the equation to the circle, which passes through the focus and touches the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  at the point  $(at^2, 2at)$ , is

$$x^2 + y^2 - ax(3t^2 + 1) - ay(3t - t^3) + 3a^2t^2 = 0.$$

Prove also that the locus of its centre is the curve

$$27ay^2 = (2x - a)(x - 5a)^2.$$

23. Shew that three circles can be drawn to touch a parabola and also to touch at the focus a given straight line passing through the focus, and prove that the tangents at the point of contact with the parabola form an equilateral triangle.

24. Through a point  $P$  are drawn tangents  $PQ$  and  $PR$  to a parabola and circles are drawn through the focus to touch the parabola in  $Q$  and  $R$  respectively; prove that the common chord of these circles passes through the centroid of the triangle  $PQR$ .

25. Prove that the locus of the centre of the circle, which passes through the vertex of a parabola and through its intersections with a normal chord, is the parabola  $2y^2 = ax - a^2$ .

26. A circle is described whose centre is the vertex and whose diameter is three-quarters of the latus rectum of a parabola; prove that the common chord of the circle and parabola bisects the distance between the vertex and the focus.

27. Prove that the sum of the angles which the four common tangents to a parabola and a circle make with the axis is equal to  $n\pi + 2a$ , where  $a$  is the angle which the radius from the focus to the centre of the circle makes with the axis and  $n$  is an integer.

28.  $PR$  and  $QR$  are chords of a parabola which are normals at  $P$  and  $Q$ . Prove that two of the common chords of the parabola and the circle circumscribing the triangle  $PRQ$  meet on the directrix.

29. The two parabolas  $y^2 = 4a(x - l)$  and  $x^2 = 4a(y - l')$  always touch one another, the quantities  $l$  and  $l'$  being both variable; prove that the locus of their point of contact is the curve  $xy = 4a^2$ .

30. A parabola, of latus rectum  $l$ , touches a fixed equal parabola, the axes of the two curves being parallel; prove that the locus of the vertex of the moving curve is a parabola of latus rectum  $2l$ .

31. The sides of a triangle touch a parabola, and two of its angular points lie on another parabola with its axis in the same direction; prove that the locus of the third angular point is another parabola.

## ANSWERS

1.  $y^2 = a(x - a)$ ,      2.  $y^2 = 4ax$ .      3.  $27ay^2 = (2x - a)(x - 5a)^2$ .
4. A parabola.      5. A straight line.
6.  $27ay^2 - 4(x - 2a)^3 = \text{constant}$ .
7. A straight line, itself a normal.

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. Using the equations of Art. 237, we have  $m_1 m_2 = 1$ .  
 $\therefore m_3 = -\frac{k}{a}$ , from (4).

Substitute in (i);  $\therefore \frac{k^3}{a^2} + (2a - h)\frac{k}{a} - k = 0$ , whence the locus is  $y^2 = a(x - a)$ .

2. Using the same equations,

$$m_1 m_2 = 2. \quad \therefore m_3 = -\frac{k}{2a}, \text{ from (4).}$$

Substitute in (i);  $\therefore \frac{k^3}{8a^2} + (2a - h) \frac{k}{2a} - k = 0$ , whence the locus is  $y^2 = 4ax$ .

3. Using the same equations, since  $2\theta_2 = \theta_1 + \theta_3$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{2m_2}{1 - m_2^2} = \frac{m_1 + m_3}{1 - m_1 m_3} = \frac{-m_2}{1 - m_1 m_3};$$

$$\therefore m_2^2 + 2m_1 m_3 = 3, \text{ and from (3) } m_2^2 - m_1 m_3 = \frac{h}{a} - 2.$$

$$\therefore 3m_1 m_3 = \frac{5a - h}{a}, \text{ and } 3m_2^2 = \frac{2h - a}{a}.$$

$$\therefore (h - 5a)^2 (2h - a) = 27a^3 m_1^2 m_2^2 m_3^2 = 27ak^2.$$

$$\therefore \text{the required locus is } (x - 5a)^2 (2x - a) = 27ay^2.$$

4. The condition gives  $\theta_1 + \theta_2 = 2 \tan^{-1} m$ ;

$$\therefore \frac{m_1 + m_2}{1 - m_1 m_2} = \text{cons.} = \frac{1}{\lambda} \text{ say.}$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{\lambda} = \frac{m_1 + m_2}{1 - m_1 m_2} = \frac{-m_3}{1 + \frac{k}{am_3}} = -\frac{am_3^2}{k + am_3}.$$

$$\therefore \lambda am_3^2 + am_3 + k = 0; \dots\dots\dots \text{(i)}$$

Also  $am_3^3 + (2a - h)m_3 + k = 0.$

Subtracting,  $am_3^2 - \lambda am_3 + a - h = 0. \dots\dots\dots \text{(ii)}$

From (i) and (ii),

$$\frac{m_3^2}{\lambda k - (h - a)} = \frac{m_3}{k + \lambda(h - a)} = -\frac{1}{a(\lambda^2 + 1)}.$$

Hence the locus is

$$\{y + \lambda(x - a)\}^2 + a(\lambda^2 + 1)\{\lambda y - (x - a)\} = 0.$$

5. Using the same equations,

$$\frac{\Sigma m_1 - m_1 m_2 m_3}{1 - \Sigma m_1 m_2} = \text{cons.} = \lambda.$$

$$\therefore \lambda = \frac{k/a}{1 + \frac{h-2a}{a}}. \quad \therefore \text{locus is } \lambda(x-a) = y.$$

6. By Ex. II. 7 we have  $\Pi(m_1 - m_2)^2 = \text{cons.} = \lambda$ .

$$\therefore \lambda = \Pi(m_1 - m_2)^2 = \Pi(m_1^2 + m_2^2 + 2m_1 m_2 - 4m_1 m_2)$$

$$= \Pi\left(m_3^2 + \frac{4y}{a}\right) = \Pi\left(\frac{m_3^3 + 4\frac{y}{a}}{m_3}\right). \quad [\text{Art. 237.}]$$

$$\therefore \lambda a^3 m_1 m_2 m_3 = 64y^3 + 16ay^2 \Sigma m_1^3 + 4a^2 y \Sigma m_1^3 m_2^3 + a^3 m_1^3 m_2^3 m_3^3.$$

$$\text{Now } \Sigma m_1^3 = 3m_1 m_2 m_3, \text{ (since } m_1 + m_2 + m_3 = 0, \text{)} = -\frac{3y}{a}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Sigma m_1^3 m_2^3 &= \{\Sigma m_1 m_2\}^3 - 3\Pi(m_2 m_3 + m_3 m_1) \\ &= \left(\frac{2a-x}{a}\right)^3 + 3m_1^2 m_2^2 m_3^2 = \frac{(2a-x)^3 + 3ay^2}{a^3}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, substituting, we have

$$\therefore -\lambda a^2 y = 64y^3 - 48y^3 + \frac{4y}{a} \{(2a-x)^3 + 3ay^2\} - y^3.$$

$$\therefore 27ay^2 + 4(2a-x)^3 = \text{a constant.}$$

7. From the equation of the chord joining the points  $(am_1^2, -2am_1)$  and  $(am_2^2, -2am_2)$ , we have  $m_1 + m_2 = \text{cons.}$

$$\therefore m_3 = \text{cons.} = \lambda.$$

$\therefore$  the required locus is, by (i) of Art. 237,

$$a\lambda^3 + (2a-x)\lambda + y = 0,$$

a straight line which is the normal at the point  $(a\lambda^2, -2a\lambda)$ .

8. The ordinate of the centroid

$$= \frac{1}{3} \Sigma y_1 = -\frac{2a}{3} \Sigma m_1 = 0.$$

9. By Art. 234, the ordinate of the orthocentre  
 $= -a \{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + m_1 m_2 m_3\} = k.$

10. We have  $m_1 m_2 = 1$ , and from equations (2), (3), (4),  
of Art. 237,  $m_3^2 = \frac{h-a}{a}$ , and  $-m_3 = \frac{k}{a}.$

$\therefore \frac{k}{h-a} = -\frac{1}{m_3}$ , i.e. the “ $m$ ” of the line  $SO$  = the “ $m$ ”  
of the tangent at  $R$ .

11. We have  $\Sigma (2a + am_1^2) = 6a + 2h - 4a$  [Art. 238]  
 $= 2(h + a).$

12.  $a^2 \Sigma [(m_1^2 - m_2^2)^2 + 4(m_1 - m_2)^2] = a^2 \Sigma [(m_1 - m_2)^2 (m_3^2 + 4)]$   
 $= a^2 \Sigma [m_1^2 m_3^2 + m_2^2 m_3^2 - 2m_1 m_2 m_3^2 + 4m_1^2 + 4m_2^2 - 8m_1 m_2]$   
 $= a^2 \Sigma (2m_1^2 m_2^2 + 8m_1^2 - 8m_1 m_2)$   
 $= 2(h - 2a)^2 + 16a(h - 2a) + 8a(h - 2a)$  [Art. 238]  
 $= 2(h - 2a)(h + 10a).$

13. Let  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$  be the equation of  
the circle passing through  $P, Q, R$ .

Then  $a^2 m_1^4 + 4a^2 m_1^2 + 2agm_1^2 - 4afm_1 + c = 0.$

$\therefore am_1 [am_1^3 + 4am_1 + 2gm_1 - 4f] + c = 0.$

$\therefore am_1 [(h - 2a)m_1 - k + 4am_1 + 2gm_1 - 4f] + c = 0$ , by Art. 237.

$\therefore a [(h + 2a + 2g)m_1^2 - (k + 4f)m_1] + c = 0. \dots (i)$

Subtract from the similar equation in  $m_2$ ;

$\therefore (h + 2a + 2g)(m_1 + m_2) - (k + 4f) = 0.$

Add to two similar equations;  $\therefore k + 4f = 0$ , and hence  
 $h + 2a + 2g = 0$ , and from (i)  $c = 0$ .

Substituting, we have the required equation.

14. If  $m_3 = \text{cons.} = \lambda$ , then  $m_1 + m_2 = \text{cons.}$ ; also

$a\lambda^3 + (2a - h)\lambda + k = 0.$  [Art. 237.]

Substitute for  $h, k$  from equations (2) of the last Ex.

$\therefore a\lambda^3 + (4a + 2g)\lambda - 4f = 0.$

Also the centre of the circle is  $(-g, -f)$  so that its locus is a straight line.

15. By Art. 234, if  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of the orthocentre,

$$x = -a \cos \alpha, \text{ and } y = -a \cos \alpha m_1 m_2 m_3 = k = b \sin \alpha.$$

$$\therefore \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

16. If  $SO$  is inclined at  $\alpha$  to the axis,  $\tan \alpha = \frac{k}{h-a}$ ,

$$\text{and } \tan(\theta_1 + \theta_2 + \theta_3) = \frac{\Sigma m_1 - m_1 m_2 m_3}{1 - \Sigma m_1 m_2} = \frac{k}{a - 2a + h}$$

$$= \frac{k}{h-a} = \tan \alpha.$$

$$\therefore \theta_1 + \theta_2 + \theta_3 = n\pi + \alpha.$$

17. If  $m_1 m_2 = 1$ , then  $m_3 = -\frac{k}{a}$ .

$$\therefore \frac{k^3}{a^2} + (2a-h)\frac{k}{a} - k = 0, \text{ from (i) of Art. 237.}$$

Hence the required locus of  $O$  is  $y^2 = a(x-a)$ .

The equation of the polar of  $(h, k)$  is

$$yk = 2a(x+h) = 2a\left(x + \frac{k^2 + a^2}{a}\right),$$

$$\text{or } y = \frac{2a}{k}(x+a) + \frac{4a}{2a/k},$$

which always touches  $y^2 = 16a(x+a)$ . Also  $a \cdot 16a = (4a)^2$ .

18. If  $lx + my = 1$  is identical with

$$2x + (t_1 + t_2)y = -2at_1 t_2,$$

which, by Art. 236, is the straight line joining the feet of

the normals  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ , then  $\frac{l}{2} = \frac{m}{t_1 + t_2} = -\frac{m}{t_3}$ , by Art. 237.

$$\therefore -t_3 = \frac{2m}{l}, \text{ and } at_3^2 = \frac{4am^2}{l^2}, \quad -2at_3 = \frac{4am}{l}.$$

19. Let  $P, Q, R$  be the points  $m_1, m_2, m_3$  and  $P', Q', R'$  be the points  $t_1, t_2, t_3$ .

Then, since  $PP'$  is parallel to  $QR$ ,

$$\therefore t_1 + m_1 = m_2 + m_3 = -m_1. \quad [\text{Arts. 229 and 237.}]$$

$$\therefore t_1 = -2m_1. \quad \therefore \Sigma t_1 = -2\Sigma m_1 = 0.$$

$\therefore$  the normals at the points  $P', Q', R'$  meet in a point also.

20. From the equation of the normals, the condition gives  $2m_3^3 = m_1^3 + m_2^3$ ; also  $-m_3 = m_1 + m_2$ .

$$\therefore -2m_3^2 = m_1^2 + m_2^2 - m_1m_2, \text{ and } m_3^2 = m_1^2 + m_2^2 + 2m_1m_2.$$

$$\therefore m_3^2 = m_1m_2.$$

21. If  $(h, k)$  be the coordinates of  $Q$ ,

$$k = -\frac{1}{2}(-2am_3) = am_3, \text{ and } m_1m_2m_3 = -\frac{k}{a}.$$

$$\therefore m_1m_2 = -1.$$

22. Let  $(h, k)$  be the coordinates of the centre and  $r$  the radius; then, if  $\widehat{NPG} = \theta$ , from a figure we have, since the centre must lie on the normal  $PG$ ,

$$h = a \cot^2 \theta + r \sin \theta = at^2 + \frac{r}{\sqrt{1+t^2}},$$

and  $k = 2a \cot \theta - r \cos \theta = 2at - \frac{rt}{\sqrt{1+t^2}}.$

Also  $r^2 = (h - a)^2 + k^2.$

Substituting for  $h$  and  $k$ , we obtain  $r = \frac{1}{2}a(t^2 + 1)^{\frac{3}{2}}$ , and  $2h = a(3t^2 + 1), 2k = a(3t - t^3).$

$\therefore$  the equation of the circle is

$$x^2 + y^2 - ax(3t^2 + 1) - ay(3t - t^3) + c = 0;$$

since it passes through  $(a, 0), \therefore c = 3a^2t^2.$

If  $(x, y)$  are the coordinates of the centre,

$$2x = a(3t^2 + 1), \dots\dots\dots(\text{i})$$

and  $2y = a(3t - t^3). \dots\dots\dots(\text{ii})$



Multiplying (i) by  $t$  and (ii) by 3, and adding, we have

$$2tx + 6y = 10at; \quad \therefore t = \frac{3y}{5a - x}.$$

Substitute in (i);  $\therefore (2x - a)(x - 5a)^2 = 27ay^2$ .

**23.** Let  $x \cos a - y \sin a = a \cos a$  be the equation of the given line through the focus.

The perpendicular to it through the focus is

$$x \sin a + y \cos a = a \sin a.$$

Since this passes through the centre of the circle we have, from Ex. 22,  $(3t^2 + 1) \sin a + (3t - t^3) \cos a = 2 \sin a$ .

$$\therefore \tan a = \frac{3t - t^3}{1 - 3t^2} = \tan 3\theta, \text{ if } t = \tan \theta.$$

Hence there are three values of  $\theta$ , viz.  $\theta_1, \theta_2, \theta_3$  and

$$3\theta_1 = 3\theta_2 + \pi = 3\theta_3 + 2\pi. \quad \therefore \theta_1 - \theta_2 = \frac{\pi}{3} = \theta_2 - \theta_3.$$

Hence the three normals, and therefore also the three tangents, are inclined at  $60^\circ$ .

**24.** If  $(h, k)$  be the coordinates of the centroid of points,  $(at_1^2, 2at_1), (at_2^2, 2at_2), \{a(t_1t_2), a(t_1 + t_2)\}$ , i.e. of  $Q, R$  and  $P$  respectively, then  $3h = a(t_1^2 + t_2^2 + t_1t_2)$ , and  $k = a(t_1 + t_2)$ . Using the equation of Ex. 22, the common chord of the circles is

$$3ax(t_1 + t_2) + ay(3 - t_1^2 - t_2^2 - t_1t_2) = 3a^2(t_1 + t_2),$$

i.e.  $kx + y(a - h) = ak$ , which passes through the point  $(h, k)$ .

**25.** The chord joining the points  $t_1, t_2$  is a normal if

$$t_1 + t_2 = -\frac{2}{t_1}. \dots\dots\dots(i) \quad [\text{Ex. XXVIII. 6.}]$$

Let  $x^2 + y^2 - 2gx - 2fy = 0$  be the equation of the circle.

Then  $at_1^3 + 4at_1 - 2gt_1 - 4f = 0, \dots\dots\dots(ii)$

and  $at_2^3 + 4at_2 - 2gt_2 - 4f = 0. \dots\dots\dots(iii)$

Subtracting,  $a(t_1^2 + t_2^2 + t_1 t_2) + 4a - 2g = 0$ ,  
or from (i)  $2g = at_2^2 + 2a$ .

Multiplying (ii) by  $t_1$ , and (i) by  $t_2$  and subtracting, we have,  $at_1 t_2 (t_1 + t_2) + 4f = 0$ , or from (i)  $2f = at_2$ .

Eliminating  $t_2$ , we have, for the required locus of the centre,  
 $2y^2 = a(x - a)$ .

26. The common points of  $y^2 = 4ax$  and the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 = \frac{9a^2}{4},$$

are given by  $x^2 + 4ax - \frac{9a^2}{4} = 0$ , i.e.  $\left(x - \frac{a}{2}\right)\left(x + \frac{9a}{2}\right) = 0$ .

Hence the common chord is  $x = \frac{a}{2}$ .

27. The intersections of  $y = mx + \frac{a}{m}$  and

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2gx - 2fy + c = 0$$
 are given by

$$x^2(1 + m^2) + 2x(a - g - fm) + \frac{a^2}{m^2} - 2f\frac{a}{m} + c = 0,$$

which has equal roots if

$$(a - g - fm)^2 = (1 + m^2) \left( \frac{a^2}{m^2} - 2f\frac{a}{m} + c \right),$$

or  $m^4(f^2 - c) + 2gfm^3 + (g^2 - 2ag - c)m^2 + 2fam - a^2 = 0$ .

If  $\tan \theta_1, \tan \theta_2$ , etc. be the roots, then

$$\tan(\theta_1 + \theta_2 + \theta_3 + \theta_4) = \frac{s_1 - s_3}{1 - s_2 + s_4} = \frac{2f(g - a)}{(g - a)^2 - f^2} = \tan 2\alpha,$$

if  $\tan \alpha = \frac{f}{g - a}$ .  $\therefore \theta_1 + \theta_2 + \theta_3 + \theta_4 = n\pi + 2\alpha$ .

28. If  $R$  be the point  $m_3$ , we have

$$am_3^2 = h, \text{ and } -2am_3 = k.$$

But, from the equations of Art. 237,

$$-am_1 m_2 m_3 = k. \quad \therefore m_1 m_2 = 2.$$

Also  $\frac{k}{2a} = -m_3 = m_1 + m_2$ .

The common chords are  $PQ$  and the line through  $R$  equally inclined to the axis [Ex. XXVIII. 25],

*i.e.*  $-y(m_1 + m_2) = 2x + 2am_1m_2,$

and  $-(m_1 + m_2)(y - k) + 2(x - h) = 0;$

or  $yk + 4a(x + 2a) = 0,$  and  $k(y - k) - 4a(x - h) = 0;$

which intersect where  $x + a = 0,$  since  $k^2 = 4ah.$

**29.**  $(l + at_1^2, 2at_1)$  is any point on 1st parabola.

$(2at_2, l + at_2^2)$  ,, ,, 2nd ,,

Hence if  $(x, y)$  be a common point, then  $xy = 4a^2t_1t_2.$

Again  $x - l - t_1y + at_1^2 = 0,$  and  $y - l - t_2x + at_2^2 = 0,$

*i.e.* the tangents at  $t_1$  and  $t_2,$  will be coincident if

$$-\frac{1}{t_2} = -\frac{t_1}{1}, \text{ i.e. if } t_1t_2 = 1.$$

Hence the required locus is  $xy = 4a^2.$

**30.** Let  $(h, k)$  be the vertex of the moving curve, and its equation  $(y - k)^2 + l(x - h) = 0,$  and  $y^2 = lx,$  the equation of the fixed curve.

The tangents at the point  $(lt^2, lt)$  to the two curves are

$$2yt = x + lt^2, \text{ and}$$

$$y(lt - k) + \frac{l}{2}x + \frac{l^2t^2}{2} + k^2 - lh - klt = 0. \quad [\text{See Art. 152.}]$$

These are coincident if

$$\frac{k - lt}{2t} = \frac{l}{2} = \frac{l^2t^2 + 2k^2 - 2lh - 2klt}{2lt^2},$$

whence  $t = \frac{k}{2l},$  and  $k^2 - lh = klt.$

Eliminating  $t,$  we have  $k^2 - 2lh = 0.$

Hence the locus of the vertex is the parabola  $y^2 = 2lx.$

**31.** Let  $t_1, t_2, t_3$  be the points of contact of the sides of the triangle whose sides touch the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax.$  If two of the angular points lie on the curve

$$(y - k)^2 = 4b(x - h),$$

then  $\{a(t_2 + t_3) - k\}^2 = 4b(at_2t_3 - h), \dots\dots\dots(i)$

and  $\{a(t_3 + t_1) - k\}^2 = 4b(at_3t_1 - h), \dots\dots\dots(ii)$   
 also  $x = at_1t_2, y = a(t_1 + t_2).$

Subtracting (ii) from (i) we have,

$$a(t_1 + t_2 + 2t_3) - 2k = 4bt_3. \quad \therefore t_3 = \frac{y - 2k}{4b - 2a}.$$

Multiplying (i) by  $t_1$  and (ii) by  $t_2$  and subtracting,

$$-a^2t_1t_2 + a^2t_3^2 + k^2 - 2akt_3 = -4bh.$$

$$\therefore -ax + a^2\left(\frac{y - 2k}{4b - 2a}\right)^2 + k^2 - ak \cdot \frac{y - 2k}{2b - a} = -4bh,$$

which is the equation of a parabola.

**239.** In Art. 197 we obtained the simplest possible form of the equation to a parabola.

We shall now transform the origin and axes in the most general manner.

Let the new origin have as coordinates  $(h, k)$ , and let the new axis of  $x$  be inclined at  $\theta$  to the original axis, and let the new angle between the axes be  $\omega'$ .

By Art. 133 we have for  $x$  and  $y$  to substitute

$$x \cos \theta + y \cos (\omega' + \theta) + h,$$

and  $x \sin \theta + y \sin (\omega' + \theta) + k$   
 respectively.

The equation of Art. 197 then becomes

$$\{x \sin \theta + y \sin (\omega' + \theta) + k\}^2 = 4a \{x \cos \theta + y \cos (\omega' + \theta) + h\},$$

*i. e.*

$$\begin{aligned} &\{x \sin \theta + y \sin (\omega' + \theta)\}^2 + 2x \{k \sin \theta - 2a \cos \theta\} \\ &\quad + 2y \{k \sin (\omega' + \theta) - 2a \cos (\omega' + \theta)\} + k^2 - 4ah = 0 \\ &\dots\dots\dots(1). \end{aligned}$$

This equation is therefore the most general form of the equation to a parabola.

We notice that in it the terms of the second degree always form a perfect square.

**240.** *To find the equation to a parabola, any two tangents to it being the axes of coordinates and the points of contact being distant  $a$  and  $b$  from the origin.*

By the last article the most general form of the equation to any parabola is

$$(Ax + By)^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

This meets the axis of  $x$  in points whose abscissae are given by

$$A^2x^2 + 2gx + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

If the parabola touch the axis of  $x$  at a distance  $a$  from the origin, this equation must be equivalent to

$$A^2(x - a)^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

Comparing equations (2) and (3), we have

$$g = -A^2a, \text{ and } c = A^2a^2 \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

Similarly, since the parabola is to touch the axis of  $y$  at a distance  $b$  from the origin, we have

$$f = -B^2b, \text{ and } c = B^2b^2 \dots\dots\dots(5).$$

From (4) and (5), equating the values of  $c$ , we have

$$B^2b^2 = A^2a^2,$$

so that 
$$B = \pm A \frac{a}{b} \dots\dots\dots(6).$$

Taking the negative sign, we have

$$B = -A \frac{a}{b}, \quad g = -A^2a, \quad f = -A^2 \frac{a^2}{b}, \text{ and } c = A^2a^2.$$

Substituting these values in (1) we have, as the required equation,

$$\left(x - \frac{a}{b}y\right)^2 - 2ax - 2\frac{a^2}{b}y + a^2 = 0,$$

$$i.e. \quad \left(\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b}\right)^2 - \frac{2x}{a} - \frac{2y}{b} + 1 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (7).$$

This equation can be written in the form

$$\left(\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b}\right)^2 - 2\left(\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b}\right) + 1 = \frac{4xy}{ab},$$

$$i.e. \quad \frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} - 1 = \pm 2 \sqrt{\frac{xy}{ab}},$$

$$i.e. \quad \left(\sqrt{\frac{x}{a}} \mp \sqrt{\frac{y}{b}}\right)^2 = 1,$$

$$i.e. \quad \sqrt{\frac{x}{a}} + \sqrt{\frac{y}{b}} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (8).$$

[The radical signs in (8) can clearly have both the positive and negative signs prefixed. The different equations thus obtained correspond to different portions of the curve. In the figure of Art. 243, the abscissa of any point on the portion  $PAQ$  is  $<a$ , and the ordinate  $<b$ , so that for this portion of the curve we must take both signs positive. For the part beyond  $P$  the abscissa is  $>a$ , and  $\frac{x}{a} > \frac{y}{b}$ , so that the signs must be  $+$  and  $-$ . For the part beyond  $Q$  the ordinate is  $>b$ , and  $\frac{y}{b} > \frac{x}{a}$ , so that the signs must be  $-$  and  $+$ . There is clearly no part of the curve corresponding to two negative signs.]

**241.** If in the previous article we took the positive sign in (6), the equation would reduce to

$$\left(\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b}\right)^2 - 2\frac{x}{a} - \frac{2y}{b} + 1 = 0,$$

$$i.e. \quad \left(\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} - 1\right)^2 = 0.$$

This gives us (Fig., Art. 243) the pair of coincident straight lines  $PQ$ . This pair of coincident straight lines is also a conic meeting the axes in two coincident points at  $P$  and  $Q$ , but is not the parabola required.

**242.** To find the equation to the tangent at any point  $(x', y')$  of the parabola

$$\sqrt{\frac{x}{a}} + \sqrt{\frac{y}{b}} = 1.$$

Let  $(x'', y'')$  be any point on the curve close to  $(x', y')$ . The equation to the line joining these two points is

$$y - y' = \frac{y'' - y'}{x'' - x'} (x - x') \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

But, since these points lie on the curve, we have

$$\sqrt{\frac{x'}{a}} + \sqrt{\frac{y'}{b}} = 1 = \sqrt{\frac{x''}{a}} + \sqrt{\frac{y''}{b}} \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

so that 
$$\frac{\sqrt{y''} - \sqrt{y'}}{\sqrt{x''} - \sqrt{x'}} = -\frac{\sqrt{b}}{\sqrt{a}} \dots\dots\dots (3).$$

The equation (1) is therefore

$$y - y' = \frac{\sqrt{y''} - \sqrt{y'}}{\sqrt{x''} - \sqrt{x'}} \frac{\sqrt{y''} + \sqrt{y'}}{\sqrt{x''} + \sqrt{x'}} (x - x'),$$

or, by (3),

$$y - y' = -\frac{\sqrt{b}}{\sqrt{a}} \frac{\sqrt{y''} + \sqrt{y'}}{\sqrt{x''} + \sqrt{x'}} (x - x') \dots\dots\dots (4).$$

The equation to the tangent at  $(x', y')$  is then obtained by putting  $x'' = x'$  and  $y'' = y'$ , and is

$$y - y' = -\frac{\sqrt{b}}{\sqrt{a}} \frac{\sqrt{y'}}{\sqrt{x'}} (x - x'),$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{x}{\sqrt{ax'}} + \frac{y}{\sqrt{by'}} = \sqrt{\frac{x'}{a}} + \sqrt{\frac{y'}{b}} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (5).$$

This is the required equation.

[In the foregoing we have assumed that  $(x', y')$  lies on the portion  $PAQ$  (Fig., Art. 243). If it lie on either of the other portions the proper signs must be affixed to the radicals, as in Art. 240.]

**Ex.** To find the condition that the straight line  $\frac{x}{f} + \frac{y}{g} = 1$  may be a tangent.

This line will be the same as (5), if

$$f = \sqrt{ax'} \quad \text{and} \quad g = \sqrt{by'},$$

so that

$$\sqrt{\frac{x'}{a}} = \frac{f}{a}, \quad \text{and} \quad \sqrt{\frac{y'}{b}} = \frac{g}{b}.$$

Hence

$$\frac{f}{a} + \frac{g}{b} = 1.$$

This is the required condition; also, since  $x' = \frac{f^2}{a}$  and  $y' = \frac{g^2}{b}$ , the point of contact of the given line is  $\left(\frac{f^2}{a}, \frac{g^2}{b}\right)$ .

Similarly, the straight line  $lx + my = n$  will touch the parabola if  $\frac{n}{al} + \frac{n}{bm} = 1$ .

**243.** To find the **focus** of the parabola

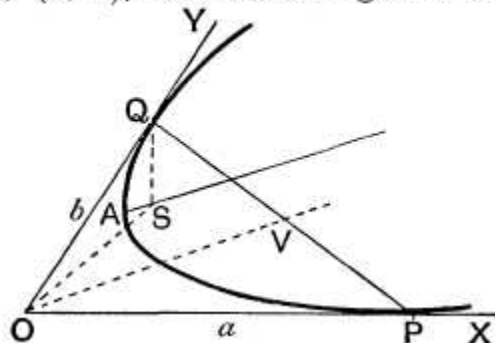
$$\sqrt{\frac{x}{a}} + \sqrt{\frac{y}{b}} = 1.$$

Let  $S$  be the focus,  $O$  the origin, and  $P$  and  $Q$  the points of contact of the parabola with the axes.

Since, by Art. 230, the triangles  $OSP$  and  $QSO$  are similar, the angle  $SOP =$  angle  $SQO$ .

Hence if we describe a circle through  $O$ ,  $Q$ , and  $S$ , then, by Euc. III. 32,  $OP$  is the tangent to it at  $O$ .

Hence  $S$  lies on the circle passing through the origin  $O$ , the point  $Q$ ,  $(0, b)$ , and touching the axis of  $x$  at the origin.





The equation to this circle is

$$x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2 = by \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

Similarly, since  $\angle SOQ = \angle SPO$ ,  $S$  will lie on the circle through  $O$  and  $P$  and touching the axis of  $y$  at the origin, *i.e.* on the circle

$$x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2 = ax \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

The intersections of (1) and (2) give the point required.

On solving (1) and (2), we have as the focus the point

$$\left( \frac{ab^2}{a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2}, \frac{a^2b}{a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2} \right).$$

**244.** *To find the equation to the axis.*

If  $V$  be the middle point of  $PQ$ , we know, by Art. 223, that  $OV$  is parallel to the axis.

Now  $V$  is the point  $\left( \frac{a}{2}, \frac{b}{2} \right)$ .

Hence the equation to  $OV$  is  $y = \frac{b}{a} x$ .

The equation to the axis (a line through  $S$  parallel to  $OV$ ) is therefore

$$y - \frac{a^2b}{a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2} = \frac{b}{a} \left( x - \frac{ab^2}{a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2} \right).$$

*i.e.* 
$$ay - bx = \frac{ab(a^2 - b^2)}{a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2}.$$

**245.** *To find the equation to the directrix.*

If we find the point of intersection of  $OP$  and a tangent perpendicular to  $OP$ , this point will (Art. 211,  $\gamma$ ) be on the directrix.

Similarly we can obtain the point on  $OQ$  which is on the directrix.

A straight line through the point  $(f, 0)$  perpendicular to  $OX$  is

$$y = m(x - f), \text{ where (Art. 93) } 1 + m \cos \omega = 0.$$

The equation to this perpendicular straight line is then

$$x + y \cos \omega = f \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

This straight line touches the parabola if (Art. 242)

$$\frac{f}{a} + \frac{f}{b \cos \omega} = 1, \quad \text{i.e. if } f = \frac{ab \cos \omega}{a + b \cos \omega}.$$

The point  $\left(\frac{ab \cos \omega}{a + b \cos \omega}, 0\right)$  therefore lies on the directrix.

Similarly the point  $\left(0, \frac{ab \cos \omega}{b + a \cos \omega}\right)$  is on it.

The equation to the directrix is therefore

$$x(a + b \cos \omega) + y(b + a \cos \omega) = ab \cos \omega \dots\dots(2).$$

The latus rectum being twice the perpendicular distance of the focus from the directrix = twice the distance of the point

$$\left(\frac{ab^2}{a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2}, \frac{a^2b}{a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2}\right)$$

from the straight line (2)

$$= \frac{4a^2b^2 \sin^2 \omega}{(a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}},$$

by Art. 96, after some reduction.

**246.** To find the coordinates of the **vertex** and the equation to the tangent at the vertex.

The vertex is the intersection of the axis and the curve, i.e. its coordinates are given by

$$\frac{y}{b} - \frac{x}{a} = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2} \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

and by  $\left(\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b}\right)^2 - \frac{2x}{a} - \frac{2y}{b} + 1 = 0 \dots\dots(\text{Art. 240}),$

i.e. by  $\left(\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} + 1\right)^2 = \frac{4x}{a} \dots\dots\dots(2).$

From (1) and (2), we have

$$x = \frac{a}{4} \left[ 1 - \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2} \right]^2 = \frac{ab^2 (b + a \cos \omega)^2}{(a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2)^2}.$$

Similarly 
$$y = \frac{a^2 b (a + b \cos \omega)^2}{(a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2)^2}.$$

These are the coordinates of the vertex.

The tangent at the vertex being parallel to the directrix, its equation is

$$(a + b \cos \omega) \left[ x - \frac{ab^2 (b + a \cos \omega)^2}{a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2} \right] + (b + a \cos \omega) \left[ y - \frac{a^2 b (a + b \cos \omega)^2}{a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2} \right] = 0,$$

i. e. 
$$\frac{x}{b + a \cos \omega} + \frac{y}{a + b \cos \omega} = \frac{ab}{a^2 + 2ab \cos \omega + b^2}.$$

[The equation of the tangent at the vertex may also be written down by means of the example of Art. 242.]

### EXAMPLES XXXI

1. If a parabola, whose latus rectum is  $4c$ , slide between two rectangular axes, prove that the locus of its focus is  $x^2 y^2 = c^2 (x^2 + y^2)$ , and that the curve traced out by its vertex is

$$x^{\frac{2}{3}} y^{\frac{2}{3}} (x^{\frac{2}{3}} + y^{\frac{2}{3}}) = c^2.$$

2. Parabolas are drawn to touch two given rectangular axes and their foci are all at a constant distance  $c$  from the origin. Prove that the locus of the vertices of these parabolas is the curve

$$x^{\frac{2}{3}} + y^{\frac{2}{3}} = c^{\frac{2}{3}}.$$

3. The axes being rectangular, prove that the locus of the focus of the parabola  $\left( \frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} - 1 \right)^2 = \frac{4xy}{ab}$ ,  $a$  and  $b$  being variables such that  $ab = c^2$ , is the curve  $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = c^2 xy$ .

4. Parabolas are drawn to touch two given straight lines which are inclined at an angle  $\omega$ ; if the chords of contact all pass through a fixed point, prove that

(1) their directrices all pass through another fixed point, and  
 (2) their foci all lie on a circle which goes through the intersection of the two given straight lines.

5. A parabola touches two given straight lines at given points; prove that the locus of the middle point of the portion of any tangent which is intercepted between the given straight lines is a straight line.

6.  $TP$  and  $TQ$  are any two tangents to a parabola and the tangent at a third point  $R$  cuts them in  $P'$  and  $Q'$ ; prove that

$$\frac{TP'}{TP} + \frac{TQ'}{TQ} = 1, \text{ and } \frac{QQ'}{Q'T} = \frac{TP'}{P'P} = \frac{Q'R}{RP'}.$$

7. If a parabola touch three given straight lines, prove that each of the lines joining the points of contact passes through a fixed point.

8. A parabola touches two given straight lines; if its axis pass through the point  $(h, k)$ , the given lines being the axes of coordinates, prove that the locus of the focus is the curve

$$x^2 - y^2 - hx + ky = 0.$$

9. A parabola touches two given straight lines, which meet at  $O$ , in given points and a variable tangent meets the given lines in  $P$  and  $Q$  respectively; prove that the locus of the centre of the circumcircle of the triangle  $OPQ$  is a fixed straight line.

10. The sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  of a triangle  $ABC$  are given in position and the harmonic mean between the lengths  $AB$  and  $AC$  is also given; prove that the locus of the focus of the parabola touching the sides at  $B$  and  $C$  is a circle whose centre lies on the line bisecting the angle  $BAC$ .

11. Parabolas are drawn to touch the axes, which are inclined at an angle  $\omega$ , and their directrices all pass through a fixed point  $(h, k)$ . Prove that all the parabolas touch the straight line

$$\frac{x}{h + k \sec \omega} + \frac{y}{k + h \sec \omega} = 1.$$

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. (i) The focus is given by

$$x^2 + y^2 = ax = by \quad [\text{Art. 243}].$$

Also

$$c^2 (a^2 + b^2)^3 = a^4 b^4 \quad [\text{Art. 245}].$$

Eliminating  $a$  and  $b$ , we have

$$c^2(x^2 + y^2)^6 \left(\frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{1}{y^2}\right)^3 = \frac{(x^2 + y^2)^8}{x^4 y^4}. \quad \therefore c^2(x^2 + y^2) = x^2 y^2.$$

(ii) The coordinates of the vertex are, by Art. 246,

$$x = \frac{ab^4}{(a^2 + b^2)^2}, \quad y = \frac{a^4 b}{(a^2 + b^2)^2} \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

$$\therefore \frac{b}{x^{\frac{1}{3}}} = \frac{a}{y^{\frac{1}{3}}} = \lambda \text{ (say).}$$

Substitute for  $a$  and  $b$  in  $c^2(a^2 + b^2)^3 = a^4 b^4$ ;

$$\therefore c^2 = \frac{\lambda^2 \cdot x^{\frac{4}{3}} y^{\frac{4}{3}}}{(x^{\frac{2}{3}} + y^{\frac{2}{3}})^3}, \text{ and, from (i), } 1 = \frac{\lambda x^{\frac{1}{3}} y^{\frac{1}{3}}}{(x^{\frac{2}{3}} + y^{\frac{2}{3}})^2}.$$

Eliminating  $\lambda$ , we have  $c^2 = x^{\frac{2}{3}} y^{\frac{2}{3}} (x^{\frac{2}{3}} + y^{\frac{2}{3}})$ .

2. As in the previous example,  $b = \lambda x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ ,  $a = \lambda y^{\frac{1}{3}}$ ,

and 
$$\lambda^2 = \frac{(x^{\frac{2}{3}} + y^{\frac{2}{3}})^4}{x^{\frac{2}{3}} y^{\frac{2}{3}}} \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

Also, from Art. 243, 
$$c^2 = \frac{a^2 b^4}{(a^2 + b^2)^2} + \frac{a^4 b^2}{(a^2 + b^2)^2} = \frac{a^2 b^2}{a^2 + b^2} = \frac{\lambda^2 x^{\frac{2}{3}} y^{\frac{2}{3}}}{x^{\frac{2}{3}} + y^{\frac{2}{3}}} \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

Eliminating  $\lambda$  from (1) and (2),  $c^{\frac{2}{3}} = x^{\frac{2}{3}} + y^{\frac{2}{3}}$ .

3. Eliminating  $a$  and  $b$  from  $ax = by = x^2 + y^2$ , and  $ab = c^2$ , we obtain  $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = c^2 xy$ .

4. The equation of the directrix may be written

$$\frac{x + y \sec \omega}{a} + \frac{y + x \sec \omega}{b} = 1, \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

and, since the chord of contact passes through a fixed point  $(h, k)$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{h}{a} + \frac{k}{b} = 1. \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

Hence the directrix passes through the fixed point given by  $x + y \sec \omega = h$ , and  $y + x \sec \omega = k$ .

The focus is given by  $ax = by = x^2 + y^2 + 2xy \cos \omega$ .

Substitute for  $a$  and  $b$  in (ii), and we have

$$xh + yk = x^2 + y^2 + 2xy \cos \omega,$$

which is a circle passing through the origin.

5. By Art. 242,  $\frac{x}{f} + \frac{y}{g} = 1$  will touch the parabola if  $\frac{f}{a} + \frac{g}{b} = 1$ . But the middle point is  $(\frac{f}{2}, \frac{g}{2})$ .

$\therefore$  the required locus is  $\frac{2x}{a} + \frac{2y}{b} = 1$ .

6. The straight line  $\frac{x}{f} + \frac{y}{g} = 1$  .....(i)

touches the parabola if  $\frac{f}{a} + \frac{g}{b} = 1$ . .....(ii)

Let  $TP, TQ$  be the axes and (i) the equation of the third tangent.

By (ii) 
$$\frac{TP'}{TP} + \frac{TQ'}{TQ} = 1.$$

Again from (ii)  $fg = ab - bf - ag + fg = (b - g)(a - f)$ .

$$\therefore \frac{b - g}{g} = \frac{f}{a - f}$$

Now 
$$\frac{QQ'}{Q'T'} = \frac{b - g}{g} = \frac{f}{a - f} = \frac{TP'}{P'P}$$

Draw  $RH$  parallel to  $TQ$ , then  $TH = \frac{f^2}{a}$  (see Ex. of Art. 242).

$$\frac{Q'R}{RP'} = \frac{TH}{HP'} = \frac{f^2/a}{f - f^2/a} = \frac{f}{a - f} = \frac{TP'}{P'P}$$

7. Take any two of the lines as axes, so that the equation of the parabola is  $\sqrt{\frac{x}{a}} + \sqrt{\frac{y}{b}} = 1$ , and let

$\frac{x}{f} + \frac{y}{g} = 1$  be the equation of the third tangent, so that

$$\frac{f}{a} + \frac{g}{b} = 1. \quad [\text{Art. 242.}]$$

$\therefore \frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$  passes through the point  $(f, g)$ .

8. The equations for the focus are

$$ax = by = x^2 + y^2 + 2xy \cos \omega.$$

Also  $x = \frac{ab^2}{a^2 + b^2 + 2ab \cos \omega}$ . [Art. 243.]

Since the axis goes through  $(h, k)$ , we have, by Art. 244,

$$ak - bh = \frac{ab(a^2 - b^2)}{a^2 + b^2 + 2ab \cos \omega} = \frac{x(a^2 - b^2)}{b}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{k}{x} - \frac{h}{y} = yx \left( \frac{1}{x^2} - \frac{1}{y^2} \right). \quad \therefore x^2 - y^2 + ky - hx = 0.$$

9. Take the given lines as axes, and  $\frac{x}{f} + \frac{y}{g} = 1$  as the equation of the variable tangent, so that  $\frac{f}{a} + \frac{g}{b} = 1$ .

The required locus is the intersection of the lines bisecting  $OP$  and  $OQ$  at right angles, *i.e.* of

$$x + y \cos \omega = \frac{f}{2}, \quad \text{and} \quad y + x \cos \omega = \frac{g}{2}.$$

Eliminating  $f, g$  we obtain  $\frac{x + y \cos \omega}{a} + \frac{y + x \cos \omega}{b} = \frac{1}{2}$ .

10. Take  $AB, AC$  as axes, putting  $AB = a, AC = b$ , and let  $k$  be the given harmonic mean, so that

$$\frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{b} = \frac{2}{k}. \quad \dots\dots\dots (i)$$

By Art. 243, the foci are given by

$$ax = by = x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2.$$

Eliminating  $a$  and  $b$ , we have

$$\frac{2}{k} = \frac{x + y}{x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2},$$

so that the locus is the circle

$$x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2 - \frac{k}{2}(x + y) = 0.$$

Clearly, by Art. 175, the coordinates of the centre are equal, so that it lies on the bisector of the angle.

11. The equation of the directrix may be written

$$\frac{x + y \sec \omega}{a} + \frac{y + x \sec \omega}{b} = 1.$$

$$\therefore \frac{h + k \sec \omega}{a} + \frac{k + h \sec \omega}{b} = 1.$$

But this is the condition that the parabola may touch the given line [Art. 242].



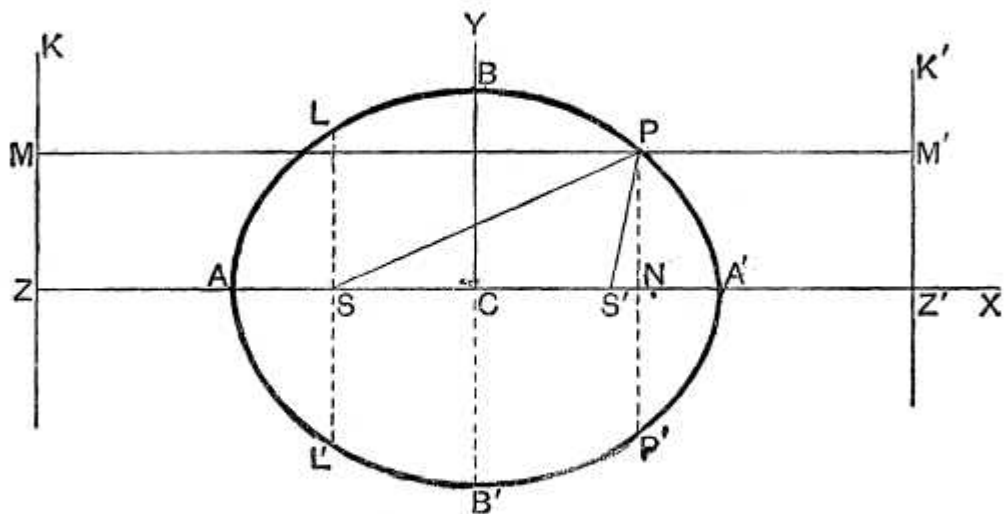
## Chapter 12

# THE ELLIPSE

**247.** THE ellipse is a conic section in which the eccentricity  $e$  is less than unity.

*To find the equation to an ellipse.*

Let  $ZK$  be the directrix,  $S$  the focus, and let  $SZ$  be perpendicular to the directrix.



There will be a point  $A$  on  $SZ$ , such that

$$SA = e \cdot AZ \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

Since  $e < 1$ , there will be another point  $A'$ , on  $ZS$  produced, such that

$$SA' = e \cdot A'Z \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

Let the length  $AA'$  be called  $2a$ , and let  $C$  be the middle point of  $AA'$ . Adding (1) and (2), we have

$$2a = AA' = e(AZ + A'Z) = 2 \cdot e \cdot CZ,$$

*i.e.*  $CZ = \frac{a}{e} \dots\dots\dots (3).$

Subtracting (1) from (2), we have

$$e(A'Z - AZ) = SA' - SA = (SC + CA') - (CA - CS),$$

*i.e.*  $e \cdot AA' = 2CS,$

and hence  $CS = a \cdot e \dots\dots\dots (4).$

Let  $C$  be the origin,  $CA'$  the axis of  $x$ , and a line through  $C$  perpendicular to  $AA'$  the axis of  $y$ .

Let  $P$  be any point on the curve, whose coordinates are  $x$  and  $y$ , and let  $PM$  be the perpendicular upon the directrix, and  $PN$  the perpendicular upon  $AA'$ .

The focus  $S$  is the point  $(-ae, 0)$ .

The relation  $SP^2 = e^2 \cdot PM^2 = e^2 \cdot ZN^2$  then gives

$$(x + ae)^2 + y^2 = e^2 \left(x + \frac{a}{e}\right)^2, \text{ (Art. 20),}$$

*i.e.*  $x^2(1 - e^2) + y^2 = a^2(1 - e^2),$

*i.e.*  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{a^2(1 - e^2)} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (5).$

If in this equation we put  $x = 0$ , we have

$$y = \pm a \sqrt{1 - e^2},$$

showing that the curve meets the axis of  $y$  in two points,  $B$  and  $B'$ , lying on opposite sides of  $C$ , such that

$$B'C = CB = a \sqrt{1 - e^2}, \text{ i.e. } CB^2 = CA^2 - CS^2.$$

Let the length  $CB$  be called  $b$ , so that

$$b = a \sqrt{1 - e^2}.$$

The equation (5) then becomes

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (6).$$

**248.** The equation (6) of the previous article may be written

$$\frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = \frac{a^2 - x^2}{a^2} = \frac{(a+x)(a-x)}{a^2},$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{PN^2}{b^2} = \frac{AN \cdot NA'}{a^2},$$

*i.e.* 
$$PN^2 : AN \cdot NA' :: BC^2 : AC^2.$$

**Def.** The points  $A$  and  $A'$  are called the vertices of the curve,  $AA'$  is called the major axis, and  $BB'$  the minor axis. Also  $C$  is called the centre.

**249.** Since  $S$  is the point  $(-ae, 0)$ , the equation to the ellipse referred to  $S$  as origin is (Art. 128),

$$\frac{(x - ae)^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

The equation referred to  $A$  as origin, and  $AX$  and a perpendicular line as axes, is

$$\frac{(x - a)^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1,$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{2x}{a} = 0.$$

Similarly, the equation referred to  $ZX$  and  $ZK$  as axes is, since  $CZ = -\frac{a}{e}$ ,

$$\frac{\left(x - \frac{a}{e}\right)^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

The equation to the ellipse, whose focus and directrix are any given point and line, and whose eccentricity is known, is easily written down.

For example, if the focus be the point  $(-2, 3)$ , the directrix be the line  $2x + 3y + 4 = 0$ , and the eccentricity be  $\frac{4}{5}$ , the required equation is

$$(x + 2)^2 + (y - 3)^2 = \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^2 \frac{(2x + 3y + 4)^2}{2^2 + 3^2},$$

*i.e.* 
$$261x^2 + 181y^2 - 192xy + 1044x - 2334y + 3969 = 0.$$

Generally, the equation to the ellipse, whose focus is the point  $(f, g)$ , whose directrix is  $Ax + By + C = 0$ , and whose eccentricity is  $e$ , is

$$(x - f)^2 + (y - g)^2 = e^2 \frac{(Ax + By + C)^2}{A^2 + B^2}.$$

**250.** *There exist a second focus and a second directrix for the curve.*

On the positive side of the origin take a point  $S'$ , which is such that  $SC = CS' = ae$ , and another point  $Z'$ , such that

$$ZC = CZ' = \frac{a}{e}.$$

Draw  $Z'K'$  perpendicular to  $ZZ'$ , and  $PM'$  perpendicular to  $Z'K'$ .

The equation (5) of Art. 247 may be written in the form

$$x^2 - 2aex + a^2e^2 + y^2 = e^2x^2 - 2aex + a^2,$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad (x - ae)^2 + y^2 = e^2 \left( \frac{a}{e} - x \right)^2,$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad S'P^2 = e^2 \cdot PM'^2.$$

Hence any point  $P$  of the curve is such that its distance from  $S'$  is  $e$  times its distance from  $Z'K'$ , so that we should have obtained the same curve, if we had started with  $S'$  as focus,  $Z'K'$  as directrix, and the same eccentricity.

**251.** *The sum of the focal distances of any point on the curve is equal to the major axis.*

For (Fig. Art. 247) we have

$$SP = e \cdot PM, \text{ and } S'P = e \cdot PM'.$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} SP + S'P &= e (PM + PM') = e \cdot MM' \\ &= e \cdot ZZ' = 2e \cdot CZ = 2a \text{ (Art. 247.)} \\ &= \text{the major axis.} \end{aligned}$$

Also  $\mathbf{SP} = e \cdot PM = e \cdot NZ = e \cdot CZ + e \cdot CN = \mathbf{a + ex'}$ ,

and  $\mathbf{S'P} = e \cdot PM' = e \cdot NZ' = e \cdot CZ' - e \cdot CN = \mathbf{a - ex'}$ ,

where  $x'$  is the abscissa of  $P$  referred to the centre.

**252. Mechanical construction for an ellipse.**

By the preceding article we can get a simple mechanical method of constructing an ellipse.

Take a piece of thread, whose length is the major axis of the required ellipse, and fasten its ends at the points  $S$  and  $S'$  which are to be the foci.

Let the point of a pencil move on the paper, the point being always in contact with the string and keeping the two portions of the string between it and the fixed ends always tight. If the end of the pencil be moved about on the paper, so as to satisfy these conditions, it will trace out the curve on the paper. For the end of the pencil will be always in such a position that the sum of its distances from  $S$  and  $S'$  will be constant.

In practice, it is easier to fasten two drawing pins at  $S$  and  $S'$ , and to have an endless piece of string whose total length is equal to the sum of  $SS'$  and  $AA'$ . This string must be passed round the two pins at  $S$  and  $S'$  and then be kept stretched by the pencil as before. By this second arrangement it will be found that the portions of the curve near  $A$  and  $A'$  can be more easily described than in the first method.

**253. Latus-rectum of the ellipse.**

Let  $LSL'$  be the double ordinate of the curve which passes through the focus  $S$ . By the definition of the curve, the semi-latus-rectum  $SL$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= e \text{ times the distance of } L \text{ from the directrix} \\
 &= e \cdot SZ = e(CZ - CS) = e \cdot CZ - e \cdot CS \\
 &= a - ae^2 \text{ (by equations (3) and (4) of Art. 247)} \\
 &= \frac{b^2}{a}. \text{ (Art. 247.)}
 \end{aligned}$$

**254. To trace the curve**

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

The equation may be written in either of the forms

$$y = \pm b \sqrt{1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2}} \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

or

$$x = \pm a \sqrt{1 - \frac{y^2}{b^2}} \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

From (2), it follows that if  $x^2 > a^2$ , *i.e.* if  $x > a$  or  $< -a$ , then  $y$  is impossible. There is therefore no part of the curve to the right of  $A'$  or to the left of  $A$ .

From (3), it follows, similarly, that, if  $y > b$  or  $< -b$ ,  $x$  is impossible, and hence that there is no part of the curve above  $B$  or below  $B'$ .

If  $x$  lie between  $-a$  and  $+a$ , the equation (2) gives two equal and opposite values for  $y$ , so that the curve is symmetrical with respect to the axis of  $x$ .

If  $y$  lie between  $-b$  and  $+b$ , the equation (3) gives two equal and opposite values for  $x$ , so that the curve is symmetrical with respect to the axis of  $y$ .

If a number of values in succession be given to  $x$ , and the corresponding values of  $y$  be determined, we shall obtain a series of points which will all be found to lie on a curve of the shape given in the figure of Art. 247.

**255.** *The quantity  $\frac{x'^2}{a^2} + \frac{y'^2}{b^2} - 1$  is negative, zero, or positive, according as the point  $(x', y')$  lies within, upon, or without the ellipse.*

Let  $Q$  be the point  $(x', y')$ , and let the ordinate  $QN$  through  $Q$  meet the curve in  $P$ , so that, by equation (6) of Art. 247,

$$\frac{PN^2}{b^2} = 1 - \frac{x'^2}{a^2}.$$

If  $Q$  be within the curve, then  $y'$ , *i.e.*  $QN$ , is  $< PN$ , so that

$$\frac{y'^2}{b^2} < \frac{PN^2}{b^2}, \text{ i.e. } < 1 - \frac{x'^2}{a^2}.$$

Hence, in this case,

$$\frac{x'^2}{a^2} + \frac{y'^2}{b^2} < 1,$$

*i.e.*  $\frac{x'^2}{a^2} + \frac{y'^2}{b^2} - 1$  is negative.

Similarly, if  $Q'$  be without the curve,  $y' > PN$ , and then  $\frac{x'^2}{a^2} + \frac{y'^2}{b^2} - 1$  is positive.

**256.** *To find the length of a radius vector from the centre drawn in a given direction.*

The equation (6) of Art. 247 when transferred to polar coordinates becomes

$$\frac{r^2 \cos^2 \theta}{a^2} + \frac{r^2 \sin^2 \theta}{b^2} = 1,$$

giving 
$$r^2 = \frac{a^2 b^2}{b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta}.$$

We thus have the value of the radius vector drawn at any inclination  $\theta$  to the axis.

Since  $r^2 = \frac{a^2 b^2}{b^2 + (a^2 - b^2) \sin^2 \theta}$ , we see that the greatest value of  $r$  is when  $\theta = 0$ , and then it is equal to  $a$ .

Similarly,  $\theta = 90^\circ$  gives the least value of  $r$ , viz.  $b$ .

Also, for each value of  $\theta$ , we have two equal and opposite values of  $r$ , so that any line through the centre meets the curve in two points equidistant from it.

**257. Auxiliary circle. Def.** The circle which is described on the major axis,  $AA'$ , of an ellipse as diameter, is called the auxiliary circle of the ellipse.

Let  $NP$  be any ordinate of the ellipse, and let it be produced to meet the auxiliary circle in  $Q$ .

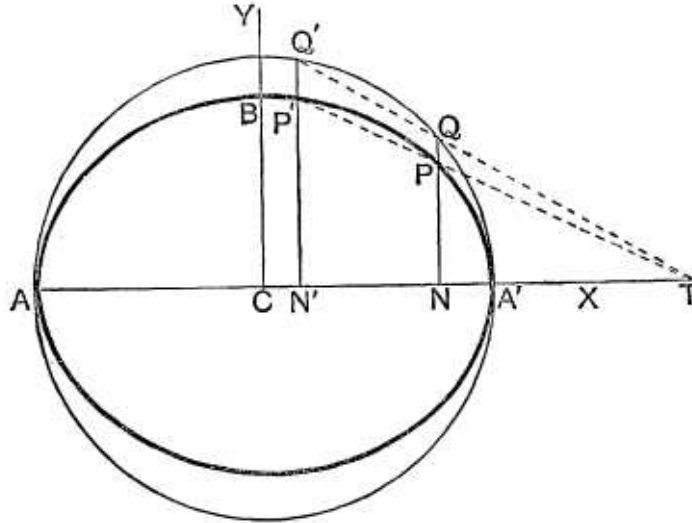
Since the angle  $AQA'$  is a right angle, being the angle in a semicircle, we have, by Euc. VI. 8,  $QN^2 = AN \cdot NA'$ .

Hence Art. 248 gives

$$PN^2 : QN^2 :: BC^2 : AC^2,$$

so that

$$\frac{PN}{QN} = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{b}{a}.$$



The point  $Q$  in which the ordinate  $NP$  meets the auxiliary circle is called the corresponding point to  $P$ .

The ordinates of any point on the ellipse and the corresponding point on the auxiliary circle are therefore to one another in the ratio  $b : a$ , *i.e.* in the ratio of the semi-minor to the semi-major axis of the ellipse.

The ellipse might therefore have been defined as follows :

Take a circle and from each point of it draw perpendiculars upon a diameter ; the locus of the points dividing these perpendiculars in a given ratio is an ellipse, of which the given circle is the auxiliary circle.

**258. Eccentric Angle. Def.** The eccentric angle of any point  $P$  on the ellipse is the angle  $NCQ$  made with the major axis by the straight line  $CQ$  joining the centre  $C$  to the point  $Q$  on the auxiliary circle which corresponds to the point  $P$ .

This angle is generally called  $\phi$ .



We have  $CN = CQ \cdot \cos \phi = a \cos \phi$ ,  
 and  $NQ = CQ \sin \phi = a \sin \phi$ .

Hence, by the last article,

$$NP = \frac{b}{a} \cdot NQ = b \sin \phi.$$

The coordinates of any point  $P$  on the ellipse are therefore  $a \cos \phi$  and  $b \sin \phi$ .

Since  $P$  is known when  $\phi$  is given, it is often called "the point  $\phi$ ."

**259.** *To obtain the equation of the straight line joining two points on the ellipse whose eccentric angles are given.*

Let the eccentric angles of the two points,  $P$  and  $P'$ , be  $\phi$  and  $\phi'$ , so that the points have as coordinates

$$(a \cos \phi, b \sin \phi) \text{ and } (a \cos \phi', b \sin \phi').$$

The equation of the straight line joining them is

$$\begin{aligned} y - b \sin \phi &= \frac{b \sin \phi' - b \sin \phi}{a \cos \phi' - a \cos \phi} (x - a \cos \phi) \\ &= \frac{b}{a} \cdot \frac{2 \cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi + \phi') \sin \frac{1}{2}(\phi' - \phi)}{2 \sin \frac{1}{2}(\phi + \phi') \sin \frac{1}{2}(\phi - \phi')} (x - a \cos \phi) \\ &= -\frac{b}{a} \cdot \frac{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi + \phi')}{\sin \frac{1}{2}(\phi' + \phi)} (x - a \cos \phi), \end{aligned}$$

*i.e.*

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{x}{a} \cos \frac{\phi + \phi'}{2} + \frac{y}{b} \sin \frac{\phi + \phi'}{2} &= \cos \phi \cos \frac{\phi + \phi'}{2} + \sin \phi \sin \frac{\phi + \phi'}{2} \\ &= \cos \left[ \phi - \frac{\phi + \phi'}{2} \right] = \cos \frac{\phi - \phi'}{2} \dots\dots\dots(1). \end{aligned}$$

This is the required equation.

**Cor.** The points on the auxiliary circle, corresponding to  $P$  and  $P'$ , have as coordinates  $(a \cos \phi, a \sin \phi)$  and  $(a \cos \phi', a \sin \phi')$ .

The equation to the line joining them is therefore (Art. 178)

$$\frac{x}{a} \cos \frac{\phi + \phi'}{2} + \frac{y}{a} \sin \frac{\phi + \phi'}{2} = \cos \frac{\phi - \phi'}{2}.$$

This straight line and (1) clearly make the same intercept on the major axis.

Hence the straight line joining any two points on an ellipse, and the straight line joining the corresponding points on the auxiliary circle, meet the major axis in the same point.

## EXERCISES XXXII

1. Find the equation to the ellipses, whose centres are the origin, whose axes are the axes of coordinates, and which pass through (a) the points (2, 2), and (3, 1), and (β) the points (1, 4) and (-6, 1).

Find the equation of the ellipse referred to its centre

2. whose latus rectum is 5 and whose eccentricity is  $\frac{2}{3}$ ,

3. whose minor axis is equal to the distance between the foci and whose latus rectum is 10,

4. whose foci are the points (4, 0) and (-4, 0) and whose eccentricity is  $\frac{1}{3}$ .

5. Find the latus rectum, the eccentricity, and the coordinates of the foci, of the ellipses

$$(1) x^2 + 3y^2 = a^2, \quad (2) 5x^2 + 4y^2 = 1, \quad \text{and} \quad (3) 9x^2 + 5y^2 - 30y = 0.$$

6. Find the eccentricity of an ellipse, if its latus rectum be equal to one half its minor axis.

7. Find the equation to the ellipse, whose focus is the point (-1, 1), whose directrix is the straight line  $x - y + 3 = 0$ , and whose eccentricity is  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

8. Is the point (4, -3) within or without the ellipse

$$5x^2 + 7y^2 = 11^2?$$

9. Find the lengths of, and the equations to, the focal radii drawn to the point  $(4\sqrt{3}, 5)$  of the ellipse

$$25x^2 + 16y^2 = 1600.$$

10. Prove that the sum of the squares of the reciprocals of two perpendicular diameters of an ellipse is constant.

11. Find the inclination to the major axis of the diameter of the ellipse the square of whose length is (1) the arithmetical mean, (2) the geometrical mean, and (3) the harmonical mean, between the squares on the major and minor axes.

12. Find the locus of the middle points of chords of an ellipse which are drawn through the positive end of the minor axis.

13. Prove that the locus of the intersection of  $AP$  with the straight line through  $A'$  perpendicular to  $A'P$  is a straight line which

is perpendicular to the major axis.

14.  $Q$  is the point on the auxiliary circle corresponding to  $P$  on the ellipse;  $PLM$  is drawn parallel to  $CQ$  to meet the axes in  $L$  and  $M$ ; prove that  $PL = b$  and  $PM = a$ .

15. Prove that the area of the triangle formed by three points on an ellipse, whose eccentric angles are  $\theta$ ,  $\phi$ , and  $\psi$ , is

$$\frac{1}{2} ab \sin \frac{\phi - \psi}{2} \sin \frac{\psi - \theta}{2} \sin \frac{\theta - \phi}{2}.$$

Prove also that its area is to the area of the triangle formed by the corresponding points on the auxiliary circle as  $b : a$ , and hence that its area is a maximum when the latter triangle is equilateral, *i.e.* when

$$\phi - \theta = \psi - \phi = \frac{2\pi}{3}.$$

16. Any point  $P$  of an ellipse is joined to the extremities of the major axis; prove that the portion of a directrix intercepted by them subtends a right angle at the corresponding focus.

17. Shew that the perpendiculars from the centre upon all chords, which join the ends of perpendicular diameters, are of constant length.

18. If  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\gamma$ , and  $\delta$  be the eccentric angles of the four points of intersection of the ellipse and any circle, prove that

$$\alpha + \beta + \gamma + \delta \text{ is an even multiple of } \pi \text{ radians.}$$

[See *Trigonometry*, Part II, Art. 31.]

19. The tangent at any point  $P$  of a circle meets the tangent at a fixed point  $A$  in  $T$ , and  $T$  is joined to  $B$ , the other end of the diameter through  $A$ ; prove that the locus of the intersection of  $AP$  and  $BT$  is an ellipse whose eccentricity is  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ .

20. From any point  $P$  on the ellipse,  $PN$  is drawn perpendicular to the axis and produced to  $Q$ , so that  $NQ$  equals  $PS$ , where  $S$  is a focus; prove that the locus of  $Q$  is the two straight lines  $y \pm ex + a = 0$ .

21. Given the base of a triangle and the sum of its sides, prove that the locus of the centre of its incircle is an ellipse.

22. With a given point and line as focus and directrix, a series of ellipses are described; prove that the locus of the extremities of their minor axes is a parabola.

23. A line of fixed length  $a + b$  moves so that its ends are always on two fixed perpendicular straight lines; prove that the locus of a point, which divides this line into portions of length  $a$  and  $b$ , is an ellipse.

24. Prove that the extremities of the latera recta of all ellipses, having a given major axis  $2a$ , lie on the parabola  $x^2 = -a(y - a)$ .

## ANSWERS

1. (a)  $3x^2 + 5y^2 = 32$ ; (b)  $3x^2 + 7y^2 = 115$ .  
 2.  $20x^2 + 36y^2 = 405$ .    3.  $x^2 + 2y^2 = 100$ .    4.  $8x^2 + 9y^2 = 1152$ .  
 5. (1)  $\frac{2a}{3}$ ;  $\frac{1}{3}\sqrt{6}$ ;  $\left(\pm\frac{a}{3}\sqrt{6}, 0\right)$ ;    (2)  $\frac{4}{5}$ ;  $\frac{1}{5}\sqrt{5}$ ;  $(0, \pm\frac{1}{5}\sqrt{5})$ ;  
       (3)  $\frac{1}{3}a$ ;  $\frac{2}{3}$ ;  $(0, 5)$  and  $(0, 1)$ .  
 6.  $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ .    7.  $7x^2 + 2xy + 7y^2 + 10x - 10y + 7 = 0$ .    8. Without.  
 9.  $x + 4\sqrt{3}y = 24\sqrt{3}$ ;  $11x - 4\sqrt{3}y = 24\sqrt{3}$ ; 7 and 13.  
 11. (1)  $\tan^{-1}\frac{b}{a}$ ; (2)  $\tan^{-1}\sqrt{\frac{b}{a}}$ ; (3)  $45^\circ$ .  
 12.  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{y}{b}$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. Let the equation be  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ .

(a) Then  $\frac{4}{a^2} + \frac{4}{b^2} = 1$ , and  $\frac{9}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2} = 1$ ,

whence  $a^2 = \frac{32}{3}$ , and  $b^2 = \frac{32}{5}$ .

(b)  $\frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{16}{b^2} = 1$ , and  $\frac{36}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2} = 1$ ,

whence  $a^2 = \frac{115}{3}$ , and  $b^2 = \frac{115}{7}$ .

2. We have  $\frac{b^2}{a} = \frac{5}{2}$ , and  $e = \frac{2}{3}$ ,

whence  $a^2 = \frac{81}{4}$ , and  $b^2 = \frac{45}{4}$ .

3. We have  $b = ae$ , and  $\frac{b^2}{a} = 5$ .

$$\therefore a^2 e^2 = b^2 = a^2(1 - e^2); \quad \therefore e = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

$$\therefore a(1 - e^2) = 5; \quad \therefore a^2 = 100, \quad b^2 = 50.$$

Hence the required equation is  $x^2 + 2y^2 = 100$ .

4.  $ae = 4$ , and  $e = \frac{1}{3}$ ;  $\therefore a = 12$ ,

and  $b^2 = a^2(1 - e^2) = \frac{144 \cdot 8}{9} = 128$ .

Hence the required equation is  $8x^2 + 9y^2 = 1152$ .

5. Let  $A$  and  $B$  be the lengths of the semi-major and semi-minor axes in each case.

$$(1) \quad A^2 = a^2, \quad B^2 = \frac{a^2}{3}; \quad \therefore \text{the latus rectum} = \frac{2B^2}{A} = \frac{2}{3}a.$$

$$e^2 = \frac{A^2 - B^2}{A^2} = \frac{2}{3}; \quad \therefore e = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\sqrt{6}.$$

$\therefore$  the coordinates of the foci are  $(\pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\sqrt{6}a, 0)$ .

$$(2) \quad A^2 = \frac{1}{4}, \quad B^2 = \frac{1}{5}; \quad \therefore \text{the latus rectum} = \frac{2B^2}{A} = \frac{4}{5};$$

$$e^2 = \frac{A^2 - B^2}{A^2} = \frac{1}{5}; \quad \therefore e = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}\sqrt{5}.$$

$\therefore$  the coordinates of the foci are  $(0, \pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}\sqrt{5})$ .

$$(3) \quad \text{The equation may be written } \frac{x^2}{5} + \frac{(y-3)^2}{9} = 1.$$

$$\therefore A^2 = 9, \quad B^2 = 5; \quad \therefore \text{the latus rectum} = \frac{2B^2}{A} = \frac{10}{3}.$$

$$e^2 = 1 - \frac{B^2}{A^2} = 1 - \frac{5}{9} = \frac{4}{9}; \quad \therefore e = \frac{2}{3}.$$

The coordinates of the foci are  $(0, 3 \pm 2)$ , i.e.  $(0, 5)$  and  $(0, 1)$ .

$$6. \quad \text{We have } \frac{2b^2}{a} = b. \quad \therefore \frac{b}{a} = \frac{1}{2}; \quad \therefore e^2 = 1 - \frac{b^2}{a^2} = 1 - \frac{1}{4};$$

$$\therefore e = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}.$$

$$7. \quad (x+1)^2 + (y-1)^2 = \frac{1}{4} \left\{ \frac{x-y+3}{\sqrt{2}} \right\}^2, \text{ etc.}$$

8.  $\frac{5 \cdot 4^2 + 7 \cdot 3^2}{11} - 1$  is positive;  $\therefore$  the point lies without the ellipse. [Art. 255.]

9. Semi-major axis = 10; semi-minor axis = 8;  
eccentricity =  $\frac{3}{5}$ .

$\therefore$  the required lengths are  $10 \pm \frac{3}{5} \times 5$ , i.e. 7 and 13. [Art. 251.]

The coordinates of the foci are  $(0, \pm 6)$ ; hence the required equations are  $\frac{x}{4\sqrt{3}} = \frac{y \mp 6}{5 \mp 6}$ , etc.

10. Let  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  be the lengths of the semi-diameters whose vectorial angles are  $\theta$  and  $\theta + \frac{\pi}{2}$ ; then

$$\frac{1}{r_1^2} + \frac{1}{r_2^2} = \frac{b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta}{a^2 b^2} + \frac{b^2 \sin^2 \theta + a^2 \cos^2 \theta}{a^2 b^2} \quad [\text{Art. 256}]$$

$$= \frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2}.$$

11. By Art. 256,

$$(1) \quad \frac{a^2 + b^2}{2} = \frac{a^2 b^2}{b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta};$$

$\therefore (a^2 + b^2)(b^2 + a^2 t^2) = 2a^2 b^2(1 + t^2)$ , where  $t = \tan \theta$ ,

whence 
$$t = \frac{b}{a}.$$

$$(2) \quad ab = \frac{a^2 b^2}{b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta}, \text{ whence } t = \sqrt{\frac{b}{a}}.$$

$$(3) \quad \frac{2a^2 b^2}{a^2 + b^2} = \frac{a^2 b^2}{b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta},$$

whence  $t = 1$ .  $\therefore \theta = 45^\circ$ .

12. Let  $(a \cos \phi, b \sin \phi)$  be the other extremity of one of the chords. Then if  $(x, y)$  be a point on the locus,

$$2x = a \cos \phi, \text{ and } 2y = b + b \sin \phi.$$

Eliminating  $\phi$ , we have

$$\left(\frac{2x}{a}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{2y-b}{b}\right)^2 = 1, \text{ i.e. } \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{y}{b}.$$

13. If  $P$  be the point  $(a \cos \phi, b \sin \phi)$  the equation of  $AP$  is

$$\frac{y}{b \sin \phi} = \frac{x-a}{a \cos \phi - a}, \text{ or } y = -\frac{b}{a} \cot \frac{\phi}{2} (x-a).$$

The "m" of  $A'P = \frac{b \sin \phi}{a \cos \phi + a} = \frac{b}{a} \tan \frac{\phi}{2}$ .

The equation of the line through  $A'$  perpendicular to  $A'P$  is  $y = -\frac{a}{b} \cot \frac{\phi}{2} (x + a)$ .

Eliminating  $\phi$ ,  $\frac{x+a}{x-a} = \frac{b^2}{a^2}$ . Hence, etc.

14.  $PM = CN \sec \phi = a$ ;  $PL = PN \cdot \operatorname{cosec} \phi = b$ .

15. (i) See Ex. II. 6. (ii) Put  $b = a$ .

16. The equations of  $AP$  and  $A'P$  are

$$y = -\frac{b}{a} \cot \frac{\phi}{2} (x - a), \text{ and}$$

$$y = \frac{b}{a} \tan \frac{\phi}{2} (x + a). \quad (\text{See No. 13.})$$

If these cut a directrix  $(x = \frac{a}{e})$  in  $Y$  and  $Y'$ ,

$$XY = -b \cot \frac{\phi}{2} \left( \frac{1}{e} - 1 \right), \text{ and } XY' = b \tan \frac{\phi}{2} \left( \frac{1}{e} + 1 \right).$$

$$\therefore XY \cdot XY' = -b^2 \left( 1 - \frac{1}{e^2} \right) = \frac{a^2(1 - e^2)^2}{e^2} = SX^2.$$

$\therefore \widehat{YSY'}$  is a right angle.

17. The equation of the lines joining the origin to the common points of the ellipse and the line

$$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = p \text{ is } [\text{Art. 122}]$$

$$p^2 (b^2 x^2 + a^2 y^2) = a^2 b^2 (x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha)^2.$$

If these are at right angles, then

$$p^2 (b^2 + a^2) = a^2 b^2. \quad [\text{Art. 111.}]$$

18. Let the equation to the circle be

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0.$$

If this meets the ellipse in the point whose eccentric angle is  $\theta$ , then it is satisfied by  $x = a \cos \theta$ ,  $y = b \sin \theta$ , so that

$$a^2 \cos^2 \theta + b^2 \sin^2 \theta + 2ga \cos \theta + 2fb \sin \theta + c = 0. \dots (1)$$

Let  $t \equiv \tan \frac{\theta}{2}$ , so that  $\sin \theta = \frac{2t}{1+t^2}$  and  $\cos \theta = \frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}$ .

Then (1) becomes, on substitution,

$$a^2(1-t^2)^2 + 4b^2t^2 + 2ga(1-t^4) + 4fbt(1+t^2) + c(1+t^2)^2 = 0,$$

i.e.  $t^4(a^2 - 2ga + c) + 4fbt^3 + t^2(4b^2 - 2a^2 + 2c) + 4fbt + a^2 + 2ga + c = 0. \dots (2)$

This is an equation with four roots.

Also  $s_1 =$  sum of the roots  $= -\frac{4fb}{a^2 - 2ga + c}$ ,

$$s_2 = \text{sum taken two at a time} = \frac{4b^2 - 2a^2 + 2c}{a^2 - 2ga + c},$$

$$s_3 = \text{sum taken three at a time} = -\frac{4fb}{a^2 - 2ga + c},$$

and  $s_4 =$  sum taken four at a time  $= \frac{a^2 + 2ga + c}{a^2 - 2ga + c}$ .

$$\therefore \tan \frac{\theta_1 + \theta_2 + \theta_3 + \theta_4}{2} = \frac{s_1 - s_3}{1 - s_2 + s_4} = \frac{0}{4(a^2 - b^2)} = 0 = \tan n\pi.$$

$\therefore \theta_1 + \theta_2 + \theta_3 + \theta_4 = 2n\pi =$  an even multiple of two right angles.

19. Let  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  be the equation of the circle and let the coordinates of  $A$  and  $B$  be  $(\pm a, 0)$ . Let  $P$  be the point  $(a \cos \alpha, a \sin \alpha)$ .

$T$  is the intersection of the lines

$$x = a, \text{ and } x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = a.$$

$$\therefore \text{its coordinates are } \left( a, a \tan \frac{\alpha}{2} \right).$$

Hence the equation of  $TB$  is  $x + a = 2y \cot \frac{\alpha}{2}$ , and the equation of  $PA$  is  $x - a = -y \tan \frac{\alpha}{2}$ .



Eliminating  $a$ ,  $x^2 - a^2 = -2y^2$ , or  $x^2 + 2y^2 = a^2$ , which is an ellipse whose eccentricity is  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ .

20. If  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of  $P$ ,

$$y = NQ = -(PS) = -(a \pm ex). \quad [\text{Art. 251.}]$$

$$\therefore y + a \pm ex = 0.$$

21. Take the base  $BC$  for axis of  $x$ , and the perpendicular through  $O$ , its middle point for axis of  $y$ . Let  $P$  be the incentre and  $PN$  perpendicular to  $BC$ . Let the coordinates of  $P$  be  $(x, y)$ .

$$\text{Then } x = ON = (s - b) - \frac{a}{2}, \text{ (if } c > b), = \frac{c - b}{2}.$$

$$y^2 = \frac{\Delta^2}{s^2} = \lambda \{a^2 - (b - c)^2\}, \text{ where } \lambda \text{ is a constant,}$$

$$= \lambda (a^2 - 4x^2).$$

$\therefore y^2 + 4\lambda x^2 = \lambda a^2$ , which is the equation of an ellipse.

22. Taking the figure of Art. 247, let  $S$  be the given point and  $ZK$  the given line, then

$$\frac{a}{e} - ae = SZ = \text{constant}. \quad \therefore \frac{b^2}{ae} = \text{constant} = \lambda.$$

Hence  $y^2 = \lambda x$  is the equation to the locus of  $B$  referred to  $ZS$  and  $LSL'$  as axes. Hence etc.

23. If the line is inclined at  $\theta$  to the axis of  $x$ , and  $(x, y)$  are the coordinates of the point whose locus is required, we have  $x = a \cos \theta$ , and  $y = b \sin \theta$ .

$$\therefore \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1, \text{ which is an ellipse.}$$

24. In the figure of Art. 247, the coordinates of  $L$  are

$$x = -ae, \text{ and } y = \frac{b^2}{a} = a - ae^2.$$

$$\therefore a(y - a) = -a^2e^2 = -x^2.$$

So  $L'$  lies on the parabola  $x^2 = a(y + a)$ .

**260.** *To find the intersections of any straight line with the ellipse*

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Let the equation of the straight line be

$$y = mx + c \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

The coordinates of the points of intersection of (1) and (2) satisfy both equations and are therefore obtained by solving them as simultaneous equations.

Substituting for  $y$  in (1) from (2), the abscissae of the points of intersection are given by the equation

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{(mx + c)^2}{b^2} = 1,$$

*i.e.*  $x^2 (a^2m^2 + b^2) + 2a^2mcx + a^2 (c^2 - b^2) = 0 \dots\dots(3).$

This is a quadratic equation and hence has two roots, real, coincident, or imaginary.

Also corresponding to each value of  $x$  we have from (2) one value of  $y$ .

The straight line therefore meets the curve in two points real, coincident, or imaginary.

The roots of the equation (3) are real, coincident, or imaginary according as

$(2a^2mc)^2 - 4 (b^2 + a^2m^2) \times a^2 (c^2 - b^2)$  is positive, zero, or negative, *i.e.* according as  $b^2(b^2 + a^2m^2) - b^2c^2$  is positive, zero, or negative, *i.e.* according as  $c^2$  is  $\leq$  or  $> a^2m^2 + b^2$ .

**261.** *To find the length of the chord intercepted by the ellipse on the straight line  $y = mx + c$ .*

As in Art. 204, we have

$$x_1 + x_2 = -\frac{2a^2mc}{a^2m^2 + b^2}, \text{ and } x_1x_2 = \frac{a^2(c^2 - b^2)}{a^2m^2 + b^2},$$

so that

$$x_1 - x_2 = \frac{2ab \sqrt{a^2m^2 + b^2 - c^2}}{a^2m^2 + b^2}.$$

The equation (4) then becomes

$$y - y' = -\frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'} (x - x'),$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{xx'}{a^2} + \frac{yy'}{b^2} = \frac{x'^2}{a^2} + \frac{y'^2}{b^2} = 1, \text{ by equation (2).}$$

The required equation is therefore

$$\frac{xx'}{a^2} + \frac{yy'}{b^2} = 1.$$

**Cor.** The equation to the tangent is therefore obtained from the equation to the curve by the rule of Art. 152.

**263.** *To find the equation to a tangent in terms of the tangent of its inclination to the major axis.*

As in Art. 260, the straight line

$$y = mx + c \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

meets the ellipse in points whose abscissae are given by

$$x^2 (b^2 + a^2 m^2) + 2mca^2 x + a^2 (c^2 - b^2) = 0,$$

and, by the same article, the roots of this equation are coincident if

$$c = \sqrt{a^2 m^2 + b^2}.$$

In this case the straight line (1) is a tangent, and it becomes

$$y = mx + \sqrt{a^2 m^2 + b^2} \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

This is the required equation.

Since the radical sign on the right-hand of (2) may have either + or - prefixed to it, we see that there are two tangents to the ellipse having the same *m*, *i.e.* there are two tangents parallel to any given direction.

The above form of the equation to the tangent may be deduced from the equation of Art. 262, as in the case of the parabola (Art. 206). It will be found that the point of contact is the point

$$\left( \frac{-a^2 m}{\sqrt{a^2 m^2 + b^2}}, \frac{b^2}{\sqrt{a^2 m^2 + b^2}} \right).$$

**264.** By a proof similar to that of the last article, it may be shewn that the straight line

$$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = p$$

touches the ellipse, if

$$p^2 = a^2 \cos^2 \alpha + b^2 \sin^2 \alpha.$$

Similarly, it may be shewn that the straight line

$$lx + my = n$$

touches the ellipse, if  $a^2l^2 + b^2m^2 = n^2$ .

**265.** Equation to the tangent at the point whose eccentric angle is  $\phi$ .

The coordinates of the point are  $(a \cos \phi, b \sin \phi)$ .

Substituting  $x' = a \cos \phi$  and  $y' = b \sin \phi$  in the equation of Art. 262, we have, as the required equation,

$$\frac{x}{a} \cos \phi + \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi = 1 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

This equation may also be deduced from Art. 259.

For the equation of the tangent at the point " $\phi$ " is obtained by making  $\phi' = \phi$  in the result of that article.

**Ex.** Find the intersection of the tangents at the points  $\phi$  and  $\phi'$ .

The equations to the tangents are

$$\frac{x}{a} \cos \phi + \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi - 1 = 0,$$

and 
$$\frac{x}{a} \cos \phi' + \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi' - 1 = 0.$$

The required point is found by solving these equations.

We obtain

$$\frac{\frac{x}{a}}{\sin \phi - \sin \phi'} = \frac{\frac{y}{b}}{\cos \phi' - \cos \phi} = \frac{-1}{\sin \phi' \cos \phi - \cos \phi' \sin \phi} = \frac{1}{\sin (\phi - \phi')},$$

*i.e.*

$$\frac{x}{2a \cos \frac{\phi + \phi'}{2} \sin \frac{\phi - \phi'}{2}} = \frac{y}{2b \sin \frac{\phi + \phi'}{2} \sin \frac{\phi - \phi'}{2}} = \frac{1}{2 \sin \frac{\phi - \phi'}{2} \cos \frac{\phi - \phi'}{2}}.$$

Hence  $x = a \frac{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi + \phi')}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi - \phi')}$ , and  $y = b \frac{\sin \frac{1}{2}(\phi + \phi')}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi - \phi')}$ .

**266.** Equation to the normal at the point  $(x', y')$ .

The required normal is the straight line which passes through the point  $(x', y')$  and is perpendicular to the tangent, *i.e.* to the straight line

$$y = -\frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'} x + \frac{b^2}{y'}$$

Its equation is therefore

$$y - y' = m(x - x'),$$

where  $m\left(-\frac{b^2 x'}{a^2 y'}\right) = -1$ , *i.e.*  $m = \frac{a^2 y'}{b^2 x'}$ , (Art. 69).

The equation to the normal is therefore  $y - y' = \frac{a^2 y'}{b^2 x'}(x - x')$ ,

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{x - x'}{\frac{x'}{a^2}} = \frac{y - y'}{\frac{y'}{b^2}}.$$

**267.** Equation to the normal at the point whose eccentric angle is  $\phi$ .

The coordinates of the point are  $a \cos \phi$  and  $b \sin \phi$ .

Hence, in the result of the last article putting

$$x' = a \cos \phi \text{ and } y' = b \sin \phi,$$

it becomes 
$$\frac{x - a \cos \phi}{\frac{\cos \phi}{a}} = \frac{y - b \sin \phi}{\frac{\sin \phi}{b}},$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{ax}{\cos \phi} - a^2 = \frac{by}{\sin \phi} - b^2.$$

The required normal is therefore

$$ax \sec \phi - by \operatorname{cosec} \phi = a^2 - b^2.$$

\***268.** Equation to the normal in the form  $y = mx + c$ .

The equation to the normal at  $(x', y')$  is, as in Art. 266,

$$y = \frac{a^2 y'}{b^2 x'} x - y' \left( \frac{a^2}{b^2} - 1 \right).$$

Let  $\frac{a^2 y'}{b^2 x'} = m$ , so that  $\frac{x'}{a} = \frac{ay'}{b^2 m}$ .

Hence, since  $(x', y')$  satisfies the relation  $\frac{x'^2}{a^2} + \frac{y'^2}{b^2} = 1$ , we obtain

$$y' = \frac{b^2 m}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 m^2}}.$$

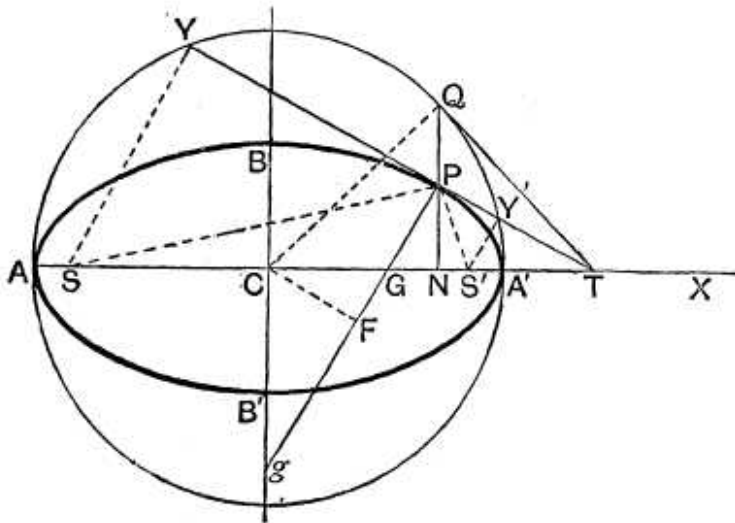
The equation to the normal is therefore

$$y = mx - \frac{(a^2 - b^2) m}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 m^2}}.$$

This is not as important an equation as the corresponding equation in the case of the parabola. (Art. 208.)

When it is desired to have the equation to the normal expressed in terms of one independent parameter it is generally better to use the equation of the previous article.

**269.** To find the length of the subtangent and subnormal.



Let the tangent and normal at  $P$ , the point  $(x', y')$ , meet the axis in  $T$  and  $G$  respectively, and let  $PN$  be the ordinate of  $P$ .



Hence  $SG = SC + CG = ae + e^2x' = e \cdot SP$ , by Art. 251.

Also  $S'G = CS' - CG = e(a - ex') = e \cdot S'P$ .

Hence  $SG : S'G :: SP : S'P$ .

Therefore, by Euc. VI, 3,  $PG$  bisects the angle  $SPS'$ .

It follows that the tangent bisects the exterior angle between  $SP$  and  $S'P$ .

( $\beta$ ) If  $SY$  and  $S'Y'$  be the perpendiculars from the foci upon the tangent at any point  $P$  of the ellipse, then  $Y$  and  $Y'$  lie on the auxiliary circle, and  $SY \cdot S'Y' = b^2$ . Also  $CY$  and  $S'P$  are parallel.

The equation to any tangent is

$$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = p \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

where  $p = \sqrt{a^2 \cos^2 \alpha + b^2 \sin^2 \alpha}$  (Art. 264).

The perpendicular  $SY$  to (1) passes through the point  $(-ae, 0)$  and its equation, by Art. 70, is therefore

$$(x + ae) \sin \alpha - y \cos \alpha = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

If  $Y$  be the point  $(h, k)$  then, since  $Y$  lies on both (1) and (2), we have

$$h \cos \alpha + k \sin \alpha = \sqrt{a^2 \cos^2 \alpha + b^2 \sin^2 \alpha},$$

and  $h \sin \alpha - k \cos \alpha = -ae \sin \alpha = -\sqrt{a^2 - b^2} \sin^2 \alpha$ .

Squaring and adding these equations, we have  $h^2 + k^2 = a^2$ , so that  $Y$  lies on the auxiliary circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ .

Similarly it may be proved that  $Y'$  lies on this circle.

Again  $S$  is the point  $(-ae, 0)$  and  $S'$  is  $(ae, 0)$ .

Hence, from (1),

$$SY = p + ae \cos \alpha, \text{ and } S'Y' = p - ae \cos \alpha. \text{ (Art. 75.)}$$

Thus  $SY \cdot S'Y' = p^2 - a^2 e^2 \cos^2 \alpha$   
 $= a^2 \cos^2 \alpha + b^2 \sin^2 \alpha - (a^2 - b^2) \cos^2 \alpha$   
 $= b^2$ .

Also  $CT = \frac{a^2}{CN}$ ,

and therefore  $S'T = \frac{a^2}{CN} - ae = \frac{a(a - eCN)}{CN}$ .

$$\therefore \frac{CT}{S'T} = \frac{a}{a - e \cdot CN} = \frac{CY}{S'P}.$$

Hence  $CY$  and  $S'P$  are parallel. Similarly  $CY'$  and  $SP$  are parallel.



( $\gamma$ ) If the normal at any point  $P$  meet the major and minor axes in  $G$  and  $g$ , and if  $CF$  be the perpendicular upon this normal, then  $PF \cdot PG = b^2$  and  $PF \cdot Pg = a^2$ .

The tangent at any point  $P$  (the point " $\phi$ ") is

$$\frac{x}{a} \cos \phi + \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi = 1.$$

Hence  $PF$  = perpendicular from  $C$  upon this tangent

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\frac{\cos^2 \phi}{a^2} + \frac{\sin^2 \phi}{b^2}}} = \frac{ab}{\sqrt{b^2 \cos^2 \phi + a^2 \sin^2 \phi}} \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

The normal at  $P$  is

$$\frac{ax}{\cos \phi} - \frac{by}{\sin \phi} = a^2 - b^2 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

If we put  $y=0$ , we have  $CG = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a} \cos \phi$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore PG^2 &= \left( a \cos \phi - \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a} \cos \phi \right)^2 + b^2 \sin^2 \phi \\ &= \frac{b^4}{a^2} \cos^2 \phi + b^2 \sin^2 \phi, \end{aligned}$$

*i.e.*  $PG = \frac{b}{a} \sqrt{b^2 \cos^2 \phi + a^2 \sin^2 \phi}.$

From this and (1), we have  $PF \cdot PG = b^2$ .

If we put  $x=0$  in (2), we see that  $g$  is the point

$$\left( 0, -\frac{a^2 - b^2}{b} \sin \phi \right).$$

Hence  $Pg^2 = a^2 \cos^2 \phi + \left( b \sin \phi + \frac{a^2 - b^2}{b} \sin \phi \right)^2,$

so that  $Pg = \frac{a}{b} \sqrt{b^2 \cos^2 \phi + a^2 \sin^2 \phi}.$

From this result and (1) we therefore have

$$PF \cdot Pg = a^2.$$

**271.** To find the locus of the point of intersection of tangents which meet at right angles.

Any tangent to the ellipse is

$$y = mx + \sqrt{a^2 m^2 + b^2},$$

and a perpendicular tangent is

$$y = -\frac{1}{m}x + \sqrt{a^2 \left(-\frac{1}{m}\right)^2 + b^2}.$$

Hence, if  $(h, k)$  be their point of intersection, we have

$$k - mh = \sqrt{a^2m^2 + b^2} \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

and

$$mk + h = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2m^2} \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

If between (1) and (2) we eliminate  $m$ , we shall have a relation between  $h$  and  $k$ . Squaring and adding these equations, we have

$$(k^2 + h^2) (1 + m^2) = (a^2 + b^2) (1 + m^2),$$

*i.e.* 
$$h^2 + k^2 = a^2 + b^2.$$

Hence the locus of the point  $(h, k)$  is the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 = a^2 + b^2,$$

*i.e.* a circle, whose centre is the centre of the ellipse, and whose radius is the length of the line joining the ends of the major and minor axis. This circle is called the **Director Circle**.

**EXAMPLES XXXIII**

Find the equation to the tangent and normal

1. at the point  $(1, \frac{4}{3})$  of the ellipse  $4x^2 + 9y^2 = 20$ ,
2. at the point of the ellipse  $5x^2 + 3y^2 = 137$  whose ordinate is 2,
3. at the ends of the latera recta of the ellipse  $9x^2 + 16y^2 = 144$ .
4. Prove that the straight line  $y = x + \sqrt{\frac{7}{13}}$  touches the ellipse  $3x^2 + 4y^2 = 1$ .

5. Find the equations to the tangents to the ellipse  $4x^2 + 3y^2 = 5$  which are parallel to the straight line  $y = 3x + 7$ .

Find also the coordinates of the points of contact of the tangents which are inclined at  $60^\circ$  to the axis of  $x$ .

6. Find the equations to the tangents at the ends of the latera recta of the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ , and shew that they pass through the intersections of the axis and the directrices.

7. Find the points on the ellipse such that the tangents there are equally inclined to the axes. Prove also that the length of the perpendicular from the centre on either of these tangents is

$$\sqrt{\frac{a^2 + b^2}{2}}.$$

8. In an ellipse, referred to its centre, the length of the subtangent corresponding to the point  $(3, \frac{16}{3})$  is  $\frac{16}{3}$ ; prove that the eccentricity is  $\frac{4}{5}$ .

9. Prove that the sum of the squares of the perpendiculars on any tangent from two points on the minor axis, each distant  $\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$  from the centre, is  $2a^2$ .

10. Find the equations to the normals at the ends of the latera recta, and prove that each passes through an end of the minor axis if  $e^4 + e^2 = 1$ .

11. If any ordinate  $MP$  meet the tangent at  $L$  in  $Q$ , prove that  $MQ$  and  $SP$  are equal.

12. Two tangents to the ellipse intersect at right angles; prove that the sum of the squares of the chords which the auxiliary circle intercepts on them is constant, and equal to the square on the line joining the foci.

13. If  $P$  be a point on the ellipse, whose ordinate is  $y'$ , prove that the angle between the tangent at  $P$  and the focal distance of  $P$  is  $\tan^{-1} \frac{b^2}{aey'}$ .

14. Shew that the angle between the tangents to the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  and the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = ab$  at their points of intersection is  $\tan^{-1} \frac{a-b}{\sqrt{ab}}$ .

15. A circle, of radius  $r$ , is concentric with the ellipse; prove that the common tangent is inclined to the major axis at an angle  $\tan^{-1} \sqrt{\frac{r^2 - b^2}{a^2 - r^2}}$  and find its length.

16. Prove that the common tangent of the ellipses

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{2x}{c} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{x^2}{b^2} + \frac{y^2}{a^2} + \frac{2x}{c} = 0$$

subtends a right angle at the origin.

17. Prove that  $PG \cdot Pg = SP \cdot S'P$ , and  $CG \cdot CT = CS^2$ .

18. The tangent at  $P$  meets the axes in  $T$  and  $t$ , and  $CY$  is the perpendicular on it from the centre; prove that (1)  $Tt \cdot PY = a^2 - b^2$ , and (2) the least value of  $Tt$  is  $a + b$ .

19. Prove that the perpendicular from the focus upon any tangent and the line joining the centre to the point of contact meet on the corresponding directrix.

20. Prove that the straight lines, joining each focus to the foot of the perpendicular from the other focus upon the tangent at any point  $P$ , meet on the normal at  $P$  and bisect it.

21. Prove that the circle on any focal distance as diameter touches the auxiliary circle.

22. Find the tangent of the angle between  $CP$  and the normal at  $P$ , and prove that its greatest value is  $\frac{a^2 - b^2}{2ab}$ .

23. Prove that the straight line  $lx + my = n$  is a normal to the ellipse, if  $\frac{a^2}{l^2} + \frac{b^2}{m^2} = \frac{(a^2 - b^2)^2}{n^2}$ .

24. Find the locus of the point of intersection of the two straight lines  $\frac{tx}{a} - \frac{y}{b} + t = 0$  and  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{ty}{b} - 1 = 0$ .

Prove also that they meet at the point whose eccentric angle is  $2 \tan^{-1} t$ .

25. Prove that the locus of the middle points of the portions of tangents included between the axes is the curve

$$\frac{a^2}{x^2} + \frac{b^2}{y^2} = 4.$$

26. Any ordinate  $NP$  of an ellipse meets the auxiliary circle in  $Q$ ; prove that the locus of the intersection of the normals at  $P$  and  $Q$  is the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = (a + b)^2$ .

27. The normal at  $P$  meets the axes in  $G$  and  $g$ ; shew that the loci of the middle points of  $PG$  and  $Gg$  are respectively the ellipses

$$\frac{4x^2}{a^2(1+e^2)^2} + \frac{4y^2}{b^2} = 1, \text{ and } a^2x^2 + b^2y^2 = \frac{1}{4}(a^2 - b^2)^2.$$

28. Prove that the locus of the feet of the perpendicular drawn from the centre upon any tangent to the ellipse is

$$r^2 = a^2 \cos^2 \theta + b^2 \sin^2 \theta. \quad [\text{Use Art. 264.}]$$

29. If a number of ellipses be described, having the same major axis, but a variable minor axis, prove that the tangents at the ends of their latera recta pass through one or other of two fixed points.

30. The normal  $GP$  is produced to  $Q$ , so that  $GQ = n \cdot GP$ .

Prove that the locus of  $Q$  is the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2(n+e^2-ne^2)^2} + \frac{y^2}{n^2b^2} = 1$ .

31. If the straight line  $y = mx + c$  meet the ellipse, prove that the equation to the circle, described on the line joining the points of intersection as diameter, is

$$(a^2m^2 + b^2)(x^2 + y^2) + 2ma^2cx - 2b^2cy + c^2(a^2 + b^2) - a^2b^2(1 + m^2) = 0.$$

32.  $PM$  and  $PN$  are perpendiculars upon the axes from any point  $P$  on the ellipse. Prove that  $MN$  is always normal to a fixed concentric ellipse.

33. Prove that the sum of the eccentric angles of the extremities of a chord, which is drawn in a given direction, is constant, and equal to twice the eccentric angle of the point at which the tangent is parallel to the given direction.

34. A tangent to the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  meets the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = a + b$$

in the points  $P$  and  $Q$ ; prove that the tangents at  $P$  and  $Q$  are at right angles.

## ANSWERS

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. $16x^2 - 9y^2 = 36.$   | 2. $25x^2 - 144y^2 = 900.$      |
| 3. $65x^2 - 36y^2 = 441.$   | 4. $x^2 - y^2 = 32.$            |
| 5. $6, 4, (\pm\sqrt{13}, 0), 2\frac{2}{3}.$   | 6. $3x^2 - y^2 = 3a^2.$         |
| 7. $7y^2 + 24xy - 24ax - 6ay + 15a^2 = 0; \left(-\frac{a}{3}, a\right); 12x - 9y + 29a = 0.$  |                                 |
| 8. $(5, -\frac{20}{3}).$  | 9. $24y - 30x = \pm\sqrt{161}.$ |
| 14. $y = \pm x \pm \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}; (a^2 + b^2) \sqrt{\frac{2}{a^2 - b^2}}.$                 |                                 |
| 15. $9y = 32x.$   | 16. $125x - 48y = 481.$         |
| 29. (1) $b^4x^2 + a^4y^2 = a^2b^2(b^2 - a^2);$ (2) $x = a \cdot \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2 + b^2};$ |                                 |
| (3) $x^3(a^2 + 2b^2) - a^2y^2 - 2a^3ex + a^2(a^2 - b^2) = 0.$                                 |                                 |

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. (1) Substitute  $x$  for  $x^2$  and  $\frac{4}{3}y$  for  $y^2$ , [Art. 262].  
 (2) Put  $x' = 1$ ,  $y' = \frac{4}{3}$ ,  $a^2 = 5$ , and  $b^2 = \frac{20}{9}$  in the equation of Art. 266.
2. If  $y = 2$ ,  $5x^2 = 125$  and  $\therefore x = \pm 5$ .  
 (1) Substitute  $\pm 5x$  for  $x^2$  and  $2y$  for  $y^2$ .  
 (2) Put  $x' = \pm 5$ ,  $y' = 2$ ,  $a^2 = \frac{137}{5}$ , and  $b^2 = \frac{137}{3}$  in the equation of Art. 266.
3. We have  $a = 4$  and  $b = 3$ .  $\therefore e^2 = 1 - \frac{9}{16} = \frac{7}{16}$ , so that  $e = \frac{1}{4}\sqrt{7}$ .  
 Hence the coordinates of the extremities of the latera recta are  $(\pm\sqrt{7}, \pm\frac{9}{4})$ .

Substitute in the equations of Arts. 262, 266.

4. The common points are given by

$3x^2 + 4(x + \sqrt{\frac{7}{12}})^2 = 1$ , or  $21x^2 + 4\sqrt{21} \cdot x + 4 = 0$ ,  
which has equal roots.

5. (1) The intersections of the ellipse with the line  $y = 3x + c$  are given by

$4x^2 + 3(3x + c)^2 = 5$ , or  $31x^2 + 18cx + 3c^2 - 5 = 0$ ,  
which has equal roots if

$$81c^2 = 31(3c^2 - 5), \text{ whence } c = \pm \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\frac{155}{3}}.$$

(2) By Art. 265 the "m" of the tangent at the point  $\phi$

$$= -\frac{b}{a} \cot \phi = -\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} \cot \phi,$$

and this is given to be  $+\sqrt{3}$ .

$$\therefore \cot \phi = -\frac{3}{2}. \quad \therefore \cos \phi = \pm \frac{3}{\sqrt{13}}, \quad \sin \phi = \mp \frac{2}{\sqrt{13}}.$$

$$\therefore \text{the required points are } \left( \pm \frac{3\sqrt{65}}{26}, \mp \frac{2}{39} \sqrt{195} \right).$$

6. Put  $x = \pm ae$ ,  $y = \pm \frac{b^2}{a}$  in the equation of Art. 262.

Hence the tangents at the end of the latera recta are

$$\pm ex \pm y = a.$$

These cut the axis of  $x$  where  $x = \pm \frac{a}{e}$ , *i.e.* at the points  $Z$  or  $Z'$  [Art. 247].

7. By Art. 265, we have  $-\frac{b}{a} \cot \phi = \pm \tan 45^\circ = \pm 1$ .

$$\therefore \sin \phi = \pm \frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}, \quad \cos \phi = \pm \frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}.$$

$$\therefore \text{the required points are } \left( \pm \frac{a^2}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}, \pm \frac{b^2}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \right).$$

$$p^2 = a^2 \cos^2 \alpha + b^2 \sin^2 \alpha \text{ [Art. 264]} = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{2}, \text{ if } \alpha = 45^\circ.$$

$$8. \quad \frac{a^2 - x'^2}{x'} = NT = \frac{16}{3}, \quad [\text{Art. 269}].$$

$$\therefore a^2 - 9 = 16. \quad \therefore a = 5.$$

$$\text{Also } \frac{9}{a^2} + \frac{144}{25b^2} = 1, \text{ whence } b^2 = 9 \text{ and } b = 3.$$

$$e^2 = 1 - \frac{b^2}{a^2} = 1 - \frac{9}{25} = \frac{16}{25}. \quad \therefore e = \frac{4}{5}.$$

9. Let  $x \cos a + y \sin a = p$  be the equation of any tangent, so that  $p^2 = a^2 \cos^2 a + b^2 \sin^2 a$ .

The required sum

$$\begin{aligned} &= (p + \sqrt{a^2 - b^2} \sin a)^2 + (p - \sqrt{a^2 - b^2} \sin a)^2 \\ &= 2 \{p^2 + (a^2 - b^2) \sin^2 a\} \\ &= 2 \{a^2 \cos^2 a + b^2 \sin^2 a + a^2 \sin^2 a - b^2 \sin^2 a\} = 2a^2. \end{aligned}$$

10. Putting  $x' = ae$ , and  $y' = \frac{b^2}{a}$  in the equation of Art 266, we obtain  $(x - ae) = ey - ae(1 - e^2)$ .

This passes through  $(0, -b)$  if

$$ae = be + ae(1 - e^2), \text{ or } b = ae^2.$$

Hence  $a^2 e^4 = b^2 = a^2(1 - e^2)$ , whence  $e^4 + e^2 = 1$ . Similarly for the other normals.

11. See No. 6. The equation of the tangent at  $L$  is  $y = a - ex$ , i.e.  $QM = a - e$ .  $CM = SP$ . [Art. 251.]

12. Let  $YY'$  and  $ZZ'$  be the intercepts.

The equation to a tangent  $YY'$  to the ellipse is

$$y = mx + \sqrt{a^2 m^2 + b^2}.$$

Put  $c^2 = a^2 m^2 + b^2$  in the result of Art. 154.

$$\therefore YY' = \frac{2ae}{\sqrt{1 + m^2}}.$$

$$\text{Similarly } ZZ' = \frac{2ae}{\sqrt{1 + \frac{1}{m^2}}} = \frac{2aem}{\sqrt{1 + m^2}}.$$

$$\therefore YY'^2 + ZZ'^2 = 4a^2 e^2.$$

13. Let  $\theta$  be the required angle, since the tangent is equally inclined to  $SP$  and  $S'P$  [Art. 270 ( $\alpha$ )],

$$\sin \alpha = \frac{SY}{SP} = \frac{S'Y'}{S'P}.$$

$$\therefore \sin^2 \alpha = \frac{SY \cdot S'Y'}{SP \cdot S'P} = \frac{b^2}{a^2 - e^2 x'^2}. \quad [\text{Art. 270 } (\beta).]$$

$$\therefore \tan^2 \alpha = \frac{b^2}{e^2 (a^2 - x'^2)} = \frac{b^4}{e^2 (a^2 b^2 - b^2 x'^2)} = \frac{b^4}{a^2 e^2 y'^2}.$$

14. Solving, a common point is

$$x = \sqrt{\frac{a^2 b}{a+b}}, \quad y = \sqrt{\frac{ab^2}{a+b}}.$$

Then “ $m$ ” of the tangent to the ellipse at this point

$$= -\frac{b^2}{a^2} \sqrt{\frac{a^2 b}{ab^2}} = -\frac{b^{\frac{3}{2}}}{a^{\frac{3}{2}}}. \quad [\text{Art. 262.}]$$

And the “ $m$ ” of the tangent to the circle

$$= -\frac{a^{\frac{1}{2}}}{b^{\frac{1}{2}}}. \quad [\text{Art. 158.}]$$

The required angle

$$= \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{a^{\frac{1}{2}}}{b^{\frac{1}{2}}} - \frac{b^{\frac{3}{2}}}{a^{\frac{3}{2}}}}{1 + \frac{b}{a}} = \tan^{-1} \frac{a-b}{\sqrt{ab}}.$$

15. The line  $x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = r$  (which is any tangent to the circle) will also touch the ellipse if

$$r^2 = a^2 \cos^2 \alpha + b^2 \sin^2 \alpha, \quad \text{whence } \tan^2 \alpha = \frac{a^2 - r^2}{r^2 - b^2}.$$

$$\text{The “} m \text{” of the tangent} = -\cot \alpha = -\sqrt{\frac{r^2 - b^2}{a^2 - r^2}}.$$

If the normal to the ellipse at the point of contact of this tangent meet the axis in  $G$ , the length of the common tangent



$$\begin{aligned}
 &= CG \sin \alpha = e^2 CN \cdot \sin \alpha = e^2 \cdot \frac{a^2}{CT} \sin \alpha = e^2 \cdot \frac{a^2 \cos \alpha}{CY} \cdot \sin \alpha \\
 & \hspace{15em} [\text{Art. 269}] \\
 &= e^2 \cdot \frac{a^2 \cos \alpha}{r} \cdot \sin \alpha = \frac{a^2 e^2 \cdot \sqrt{a^2 - r^2} \cdot \sqrt{r^2 - b^2}}{r \cdot (a^2 - b^2)} \\
 & \hspace{10em} = \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - r^2} \cdot \sqrt{r^2 - b^2}}{r}.
 \end{aligned}$$

16. The equations may be written

$$\left(\frac{x}{a} - \frac{a}{c}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{a^2}{c^2}\right) = 0,$$

and 
$$\left(\frac{x}{b} + \frac{b}{c}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{y^2}{a^2} - \frac{b^2}{c^2}\right) = 0.$$

Hence the line  $y = \frac{ab}{c}$  is a common tangent, since it cuts each in coincident points; also the points of contact are

$$\left. \begin{aligned} x' &= \frac{a^2}{c} \\ y' &= \frac{ab}{c} \end{aligned} \right\}, \text{ and } \left. \begin{aligned} x'' &= -\frac{b^2}{c} \\ y'' &= \frac{ab}{c} \end{aligned} \right\}. \quad \therefore x'x'' + y'y' = 0,$$

i.e. the points of contact subtend a right angle at the origin.

17.  $PG \cdot Pg = b^2 \cos^2 \phi + a^2 \sin^2 \phi$ . [Art. 270 ( $\gamma$ ).]

$$\begin{aligned}
 SP \cdot S'P &= (a + e \cos \phi)(a - e \cos \phi) \quad [\text{Art. 251}] \\
 &= a^2 - a^2 e^2 \cos^2 \phi = a^2 - (a^2 - b^2) \cos^2 \phi = b^2 \cos^2 \phi + a^2 \sin^2 \phi.
 \end{aligned}$$

$$CG = e^2 \cdot CN, \text{ and } CT = \frac{a^2}{CN}. \quad [\text{Art. 269.}]$$

$$\therefore CG \cdot CT = a^2 e^2 = CS^2.$$

18. In the equation  $\frac{x}{a} \cdot \cos \phi + \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi = 1$ , put  $x = 0$  and  $y = 0$ , successively;  $\therefore CT = a \sec \phi$ ,  $Ct = b \operatorname{cosec} \phi$ ,

and 
$$Tt = \sqrt{a^2 \sec^2 \phi + b^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2 \phi}.$$

$PY$  = the perpendicular from  $C$  upon the normal

$$ax \sec \phi - by \operatorname{cosec} \phi = a^2 - b^2;$$

$$\therefore PY = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{\sqrt{a^2 \sec^2 \phi + b^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2 \phi}}. \quad \therefore Tt \cdot PY = a^2 - b^2.$$

$$\begin{aligned} Tt^2 &= a^2 \sec^2 \phi + b^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2 \phi \\ &= (a^2 \tan^2 \phi + b^2 \cot^2 \phi - 2ab) + a^2 + b^2 + 2ab \\ &= (a + b)^2 + (a \tan \phi - b \cot \phi)^2. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the minimum value of  $Tt$  is  $a + b$ , when

$$a \tan \phi - b \cot \phi = 0, \text{ i.e. when } \tan \phi = \sqrt{\frac{b}{a}}.$$

19. If  $P$  be the point  $(a \cos \phi, b \sin \phi)$ , the equations of  $CP$  and  $SY$  are

$$xb \sin \phi - ya \cos \phi = 0, \text{ and } a \sin \phi (x - ae) - yb \cos \phi = 0.$$

Solving, we have  $x = \frac{a}{e}$ , i.e. their point of intersection lies on the corresponding directrix.

20. In the figure of Art. 269, if  $SP$  and  $S'Y'$  meet in  $W$ ,  $SY'$  is a median of the triangle  $SS'W$ , and therefore it bisects  $PG$  which is parallel to  $S'W$ . Similarly  $S'Y$  bisects  $PG$ .

21. In the figure of Art. 269, the circle on  $S'P$  as diameter clearly passes through  $Y'$ , and since  $CY'$  is parallel to  $SP$  it bisects  $S'P$ . Hence the line joining the centres of the two circles passes through their point of intersection, i.e. the two circles touch.

22. The "m" of  $CP = \frac{b}{a} \tan \phi$ . The "m" of the normal  $= \frac{a}{b} \tan \phi$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{the required tangent} &= \frac{-\frac{b}{a} \tan \phi + \frac{a}{b} \tan \phi}{1 + \tan^2 \phi} \\ &= \frac{a^2 - b^2}{ab} \cdot \sin \phi \cdot \cos \phi = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{2ab} \cdot \sin 2\phi, \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{so that its greatest value} = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{2ab}.$$

23. The lines

$$lx + my = n \text{ and } ax \sec \phi - by \operatorname{cosec} \phi = a^2 - b^2$$

are coincident if 
$$\frac{l \cos \phi}{a} = -\frac{m \sin \phi}{b} = \frac{n}{a^2 - b^2}.$$

Eliminating  $\phi$ , we have 
$$\frac{a^2}{l^2} + \frac{b^2}{m^2} = \frac{(a^2 - b^2)^2}{n^2}.$$

24. We have  $1 + \frac{x}{a} = \frac{y}{b} \cdot \frac{1}{t}$ , and  $1 - \frac{x}{a} = \frac{y}{b} \cdot t$ .

$\therefore 1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = \frac{y^2}{b^2}$ .  $\therefore \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ , which is an ellipse.

Let  $t \equiv \tan \frac{\theta}{2}$ . Solving the two given equations, we

have  $\frac{x}{a} = \frac{1 - t^2}{1 + t^2} = \cos \theta$ , and  $\frac{y}{b} = \frac{2t}{1 + t^2} = \sin \theta$ .

Hence the required eccentric angle is  $\theta$ , i.e.  $2 \tan^{-1} t$ .

25. The intercepts on the axes of the tangent at  $\phi$  are  $a \sec \phi$ ,  $b \operatorname{cosec} \phi$ . Hence if  $(x, y)$  be the point whose locus is required,  $2x = a \sec \phi$ ,  $2y = a \operatorname{cosec} \phi$ .

Eliminating  $\phi$ , 
$$\frac{a^2}{x^2} + \frac{b^2}{y^2} = 4.$$

26. The equations of the two normals are

$$ax \sec \phi - by \operatorname{cosec} \phi = a^2 - b^2, \text{ and } y = x \tan \phi.$$

The latter gives  $\sec \phi = \frac{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}{x}$ ,  $\operatorname{cosec} \phi = \frac{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}{y}$ .

Substituting in the former, we have

$$(a - b) \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = a^2 - b^2. \therefore x^2 + y^2 = (a + b)^2.$$

27. Let  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of the middle point of  $PG$ .  $\therefore 2x = CG + CN = (1 + e^2) a \cos \phi$ , and  $2y = b \sin \phi$ .

Eliminating  $\phi$ , 
$$\frac{4x^2}{a^2(1 + e^2)^2} + \frac{4y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Putting  $x = 0$ , and  $y = 0$  successively in the equation

$$ax \sec \phi - by \operatorname{cosec} \phi = a^2 - b^2, \text{ we have}$$

$$CG = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a} \cdot \cos \phi, \text{ and } Cg = -\frac{a^2 - b^2}{b} \cdot \sin \phi.$$

Hence, if  $(x, y)$  are the coordinates of the middle point of  $Gg$ ,  $2x = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a} \cdot \cos \phi$ ,  $2y = -\frac{a^2 - b^2}{b} \cdot \sin \phi$ .

Eliminating  $\phi$ , we have  $a^2x^2 + b^2y^2 = \frac{1}{4}(a^2 - b^2)^2$ .

28. See Art. 264.  $(p, a)$  are the polar coordinates of the point whose locus is required.

29. See No. 6. The tangents are the four lines  $\pm ex \pm y = a$ , which pass through one or other of the points  $(0, \pm a)$ .

30. If  $(x, y)$  are the coordinates of  $Q$ , and  $QM$  be perpendicular to the major axis,

$$\begin{aligned} x &= CM = CG + GM = e^2 \cdot CN + nGN \\ &= e^2 \cdot CN + n(CN - CG) = a \cos \phi (n + e^2 - ne^2); \end{aligned}$$

and  $y = QM = n \cdot PN = n \cdot b \sin \phi$ .

Eliminating  $\phi$ ,  $\frac{x^2}{a^2(n + e^2 - ne^2)^2} + \frac{y^2}{n^2b^2} = 1$ .

31. If  $x_1, x_2$  be the roots of equation (3) in Art. 260,

$$x_1 + x_2 = -\frac{2a^2mc}{a^2m^2 + b^2}, \text{ and } x_1x_2 = \frac{a^2(c^2 - b^2)}{a^2m^2 + b^2}.$$

Also  $y_1 + y_2 = m(x_1 + x_2) + 2c$ ,

and  $y_1y_2 = m^2x_1x_2 + cm(x_1 + x_2) + c^2$ .

The equation of the required circle is

$$(x - x_1)(x - x_2) + (y - y_1)(y - y_2) = 0,$$

or

$$x^2 + y^2 - (x_1 + x_2)(x + my - cm) - 2cy + x_1x_2(1 + m^2) + c^2 = 0.$$

Substituting for  $x_1 + x_2$  and  $x_1x_2$  we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} (a^2m^2 + b^2)(x^2 + y^2) + 2ma^2cx - 2b^2cy \\ + c^2(a^2 + b^2) - a^2b^2(1 + m^2) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

32. If  $P$  be the point " $\phi$ ," the equation of  $MN$  is

$$\frac{x}{a \cos \phi} + \frac{y}{b \sin \phi} = 1, \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

and  $A$  and  $B$  can be found so that this will be identical with

$$Ax \sec \phi - By \operatorname{cosec} \phi = A^2 - B^2, \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

which is a normal to the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{A^2} + \frac{y^2}{B^2} = 1$ .

On comparing (1) and (2) we easily have

$$\frac{A}{-b} = \frac{B}{a} = \frac{ab}{a^2 - b^2}.$$

33. From the equation of Art. 259, we have

$$-\frac{b}{a} \cdot \cot \frac{(\phi + \phi')}{2} = \text{cons.} \quad \therefore \phi + \phi' = \text{cons.}$$

If the chord be parallel to the tangent at  $a$ , then

$$-\frac{b}{a} \cdot \cot \frac{\phi + \phi'}{2} = -\frac{b}{a} \cdot \cot a. \quad \therefore \phi + \phi' = 2a.$$

34. Any chord of the second ellipse, viz,

$$\frac{x}{\sqrt{a(a+b)}} \cos \frac{1}{2}(a + \beta) + \frac{y}{\sqrt{b(a+b)}} \sin \frac{1}{2}(a + \beta) = \cos \frac{1}{2}(a - \beta),$$

will touch the first ellipse if

$$\frac{a}{a+b} \cos^2 \frac{1}{2}(a + \beta) + \frac{b}{a+b} \sin^2 \frac{1}{2}(a + \beta) = \cos^2 \frac{1}{2}(a - \beta)$$

[Art. 264]

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore a \{1 + \cos(a + \beta)\} + b \{1 - \cos(a + \beta)\} \\ = (a + b) \{1 + \cos(a - \beta)\}; \end{aligned}$$

whence  $\frac{\cos(a + \beta)}{\cos(a - \beta)} = \frac{a + b}{a - b}; \quad \therefore \frac{\cos a \cos \beta}{\sin a \sin \beta} = -\frac{a}{b};$

and this is the condition that the tangents at  $P$  and  $Q$  are at right angles, since their "m's" are

$$-\sqrt{\frac{b}{a}} \cot a; \quad -\sqrt{\frac{b}{a}} \cot \beta.$$

**272.** *To prove that through any given point  $(x_1, y_1)$  there pass, in general, two tangents to an ellipse.*

The equation to any tangent is (by Art. 263)

$$y = mx + \sqrt{a^2m^2 + b^2} \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

If this pass through the fixed point  $(x_1, y_1)$ , we have

$$y_1 - mx_1 = \sqrt{a^2m^2 + b^2},$$

*i.e.*  $y_1^2 - 2mx_1y_1 + m^2x_1^2 = a^2m^2 + b^2,$

*i.e.*  $m^2(x_1^2 - a^2) - 2mx_1y_1 + (y_1^2 - b^2) = 0 \dots \dots \dots (2).$

For any given values of  $x_1$  and  $y_1$  this equation is in general a quadratic equation and gives two values of  $m$  (real or imaginary).

Corresponding to each value of  $m$  we have, by substituting in (1), a different tangent.

The roots of (2) are real and different, if

$$(-2x_1y_1)^2 - 4(x_1^2 - a^2)(y_1^2 - b^2) \text{ be positive,}$$

*i.e.* if  $b^2x_1^2 + a^2y_1^2 - a^2b^2$  be positive,

*i.e.* if  $\frac{x_1^2}{a^2} + \frac{y_1^2}{b^2} - 1$  be positive,

*i.e.* if the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  be outside the curve.

The roots are equal, if

$$b^2x_1^2 + a^2y_1^2 - a^2b^2$$

be zero, *i.e.* if the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  lie on the curve.

The roots are imaginary, if

$$\frac{x_1^2}{a^2} + \frac{y_1^2}{b^2} - 1$$

be negative, *i.e.* if the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  lie within the curve (Art. 255).

**273.** Equation to the chord of contact of tangents drawn from a point  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

The equation to the tangent at any point  $Q$ , whose coordinates are  $x'$  and  $y'$ , is

$$\frac{xx'}{a^2} + \frac{yy'}{b^2} = 1.$$

Also the tangent at the point  $R$ , whose coordinates are  $x''$  and  $y''$ , is

$$\frac{xx''}{a^2} + \frac{yy''}{b^2} = 1.$$

If these tangents meet at the point  $T$ , whose coordinates are  $x_1$  and  $y_1$ , we have

$$\frac{x_1x'}{a^2} + \frac{y_1y'}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

and

$$\frac{x_1x''}{a^2} + \frac{y_1y''}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

The equation to  $QR$  is then

$$\frac{xx_1}{a^2} + \frac{yy_1}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

For, since (1) is true, the point  $(x', y')$  lies on (3).

Also, since (2) is true, the point  $(x'', y'')$  lies on (3).

Hence (3) must be the equation to the straight line joining  $(x', y')$  and  $(x'', y'')$ , *i.e.* it must be the equation to  $QR$  the required chord of contact of tangents from  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

**274.** To find the equation of the polar of the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  with respect to the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1. \qquad \text{[Art. 162.]}$$

Let  $Q$  and  $R$  be the points in which any chord drawn through the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  meets the ellipse [Fig. Art. 214].

Let the tangents at  $Q$  and  $R$  meet in the point whose coordinates are  $(h, k)$ .

We require the locus of  $(h, k)$ .

Since  $QR$  is the chord of contact of tangents from  $(h, k)$ , its equation (Art. 273) is

$$\frac{xh}{a^2} + \frac{yk}{b^2} = 1.$$

Since this straight line passes through the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ , we have

$$\frac{hx_1}{a^2} + \frac{ky_1}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

Since the relation (1) is true, it follows that the point  $(h, k)$  lies on the straight line

$$\frac{xx_1}{a^2} + \frac{yy_1}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

Hence (2) is the equation to the polar of the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

**Cor.** The polar of the focus  $(ae, 0)$  is

$$\frac{x \cdot ae}{a^2} = 1, \text{ i.e. } x = \frac{a}{e},$$

*i. e.* the corresponding directrix.

**275.** When the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  lies outside the ellipse, the equation to its polar is the same as the equation of the chord of contact of tangents from it.

When  $(x_1, y_1)$  is on the ellipse, its polar is the same as the tangent at it.

As in Art. 215 the polar of  $(x_1, y_1)$  might have been defined as the chord of contact of the tangents, real or imaginary, drawn from it.

**276.** By a proof similar to that of Art. 217 it can be shewn that *If the polar of  $P$  pass through  $T$ , then the polar of  $T$  passes through  $P$ .*



**277.** To find the coordinates of the pole of any given line

$$Ax + By + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

Let  $(x_1, y_1)$  be its pole. Then (1) must be the same as the polar of  $(x_1, y_1)$ , *i.e.*

$$\frac{xx_1}{a^2} + \frac{yy_1}{b^2} - 1 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

Comparing (1) and (2), as in Art. 218, the required pole is easily seen to be

$$\left(-\frac{Aa^2}{C}, -\frac{Bb^2}{C}\right).$$

**278.** To find the equation to the pair of tangents that can be drawn to the ellipse from the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

Let  $(h, k)$  be any point on either of the tangents that can be drawn to the ellipse.

The equation of the straight line joining  $(h, k)$  to  $(x_1, y_1)$  is

$$y - y_1 = \frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1} (x - x_1),$$

*i.e.* 
$$y = \frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1} x + \frac{hy_1 - kx_1}{h - x_1}.$$

If this straight line touch the ellipse, it must be of the form

$$y = mx + \sqrt{a^2m^2 + b^2}. \quad (\text{Art. 263.})$$

Hence

$$m = \frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1}, \quad \text{and} \quad \left(\frac{hy_1 - kx_1}{h - x_1}\right)^2 = a^2m^2 + b^2.$$

Hence 
$$\left(\frac{hy_1 - kx_1}{h - x_1}\right)^2 = a^2\left(\frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1}\right)^2 + b^2.$$

But this is the condition that the point  $(h, k)$  may lie on the locus

$$(xy_1 - x_1y)^2 = a^2 (y - y_1)^2 + b^2 (x - x_1)^2 \dots\dots (1).$$

This equation is therefore the equation to the required tangents.

It would be found that (1) is equivalent to

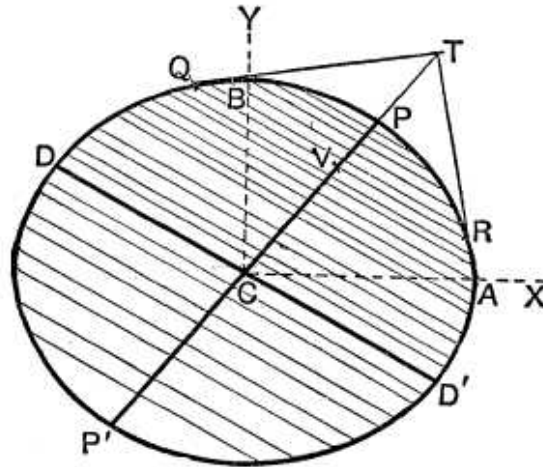
$$\left(\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1\right) \left(\frac{x_1^2}{a^2} + \frac{y_1^2}{b^2} - 1\right) = \left(\frac{xx_1}{a^2} + \frac{yy_1}{b^2} - 1\right)^2.$$

**279.** *To find the locus of the middle points of parallel chords of the ellipse.*

Let the chords make with the axis an angle whose tangent is  $m$ , so that the equation to any one of them,  $QR$ , is

$$y = mx + c \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

where  $c$  is different for the different chords.



This straight line meets the ellipse in points whose abscissae are given by the equation

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{(mx + c)^2}{b^2} = 1,$$

*i.e.*  $x^2(a^2m^2 + b^2) + 2a^2mcx + a^2(c^2 - b^2) = 0 \dots\dots(2).$

Let the roots of this equation, *i.e.* the abscissae of  $Q$  and  $R$ , be  $x_1$  and  $x_2$ , and let  $V$ , the middle point of  $QR$ , be the point  $(h, k)$ .

Then, by Arts. 22 and 1, we have

$$h = \frac{x_1 + x_2}{2} = -\frac{a^2mc}{a^2m^2 + b^2} \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

Also  $V$  lies on the straight line (1), so that

$$k = mh + c \dots\dots\dots (4).$$

If between (3) and (4) we eliminate  $c$ , we have

$$h = -\frac{a^2m(k - mh)}{a^2m^2 + b^2},$$

*i. e.*  $b^2h = -\alpha^2mk \dots\dots\dots (5).$

Hence the point  $(h, k)$  always lies on the straight line

$$y = -\frac{b^2}{a^2m}x \dots\dots\dots (6).$$

The required locus is therefore the straight line

$$y = m_1x, \text{ where } m_1 = -\frac{b^2}{a^2m},$$

*i. e.*  $mm_1 = -\frac{b^2}{a^2} \dots\dots\dots (7).$

**280.** Equation to the chord whose middle point is  $(h, k)$ .

The required equation is (1) of the foregoing article, where  $m$  and  $c$  are given by equations (4) and (5), so that

$$m = -\frac{b^2h}{a^2k}, \text{ and } c = \frac{a^2k^2 + b^2h^2}{a^2k}.$$

The required equation is therefore

$$y = -\frac{b^2h}{a^2k}x + \frac{a^2k^2 + b^2h^2}{a^2k},$$

*i. e.*  $\frac{k}{b^2}(y - k) + \frac{h}{a^2}(x - h) = 0.$

It is therefore parallel to the polar of  $(h, k)$ .

**281. Diameter. Def.** The locus of the middle points of parallel chords of an ellipse is called a diameter, and the chords are called its double ordinates.

By equation (6) of Art. 279 we see that any diameter passes through the centre  $C$ .

Also, by equation (7), we see that the diameter  $y = m_1x$  bisects all chords parallel to the diameter  $y = mx$ , if

$$mm_1 = -\frac{b^2}{a^2} \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

But the symmetry of the result (1) shows that, in this case, the diameter  $y = mx$  bisects all chords parallel to the diameter  $y = m_1x$ .

Such a pair of diameters are called Conjugate Diameters. Hence

**Conjugate Diameters. Def.** Two diameters are said to be conjugate when each bisects all chords parallel to the other.

Two diameters  $y = mx$  and  $y = m_1x$  are therefore conjugate, if

$$mm_1 = -\frac{b^2}{a^2}.$$

**282.** *The tangent at the extremity of any diameter is parallel to the chords which it bisects.*

In the Figure of Art. 279 let  $(x', y')$  be the point  $P$  on the ellipse, the tangent at which is parallel to the chord  $QR$ , whose equation is

$$y = mx + c \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

The tangent at the point  $(x', y')$  is

$$\frac{xx'}{a^2} + \frac{yy'}{b^2} = 1 \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

Since (1) and (2) are parallel, we have

$$m = -\frac{b^2x'}{a^2y'},$$

*i.e.* the point  $(x', y')$  lies on the straight line

$$y = -\frac{b^2}{a^2m}x.$$

But, by Art. 279, this is the diameter which bisects  $QR$  and all chords which are parallel to it.

**Cor.** It follows that two conjugate diameters  $CP$  and  $CD$  are such that each is parallel to the tangent at the extremity of the other. Hence, given either of these, we have a geometrical construction for the other.

**283.** *The tangents at the ends of any chord meet on the diameter which bisects the chord.*

Let the equation to the chord  $QR$  (Art. 279) be

$$y = mx + c \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Let  $T$  be the point of intersection of the tangents at  $Q$  and  $R$ , and let its coordinates be  $x_1$  and  $y_1$ .

Since  $QR$  is the chord of contact of tangents from  $T$ , its equation is, by Art. 273,

$$\frac{xh}{a^2} + \frac{yk}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

The equations (1) and (2) therefore represent the same straight line, so that

$$m = -\frac{b^2h}{a^2k},$$

*i.e.*  $(h, k)$  lies on the straight line

$$y = -\frac{b^2}{a^2m} x,$$

which, by Art. 279, is the equation to the diameter bisecting the chord  $QR$ . Hence  $T$  lies on the straight line  $CP$ .

**284.** *If the eccentric angles of the ends,  $P$  and  $D$ , of a pair of conjugate diameters be  $\phi$  and  $\phi'$ , then  $\phi$  and  $\phi'$  differ by a right angle.*

Since  $P$  is the point  $(a \cos \phi, b \sin \phi)$ , the equation to  $CP$  is

$$y = x \cdot \frac{b}{a} \tan \phi \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

So the equation to  $CD$  is

$$y = x \cdot \frac{b}{a} \tan \phi' \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

These diameters are (Art. 281) conjugate if

$$\frac{b^2}{a^2} \tan \phi \tan \phi' = -\frac{b^2}{a^2},$$

*i.e.* if  $\tan \phi = -\cot \phi' = \tan (\phi' \pm 90^\circ)$ ,

*i.e.* if  $\phi - \phi' = \pm 90^\circ$ .

**Cor. 1.** The points on the auxiliary circle corresponding to  $P$  and  $D$  subtend a right angle at the centre.

For if  $p$  and  $d$  be these points then, by Art. 258, we have

$$\angle pCA' = \phi \text{ and } \angle dCA' = \phi'.$$

Hence

$$\angle pCd = \angle dCA' - \angle pCA' = \phi - \phi' = 90^\circ.$$

**Cor. 2.** In the figure of Art. 286 if  $P$  be the point  $\phi$ , then  $D$  is the point  $\phi + 90^\circ$  and  $D'$  is the point  $\phi - 90^\circ$ .

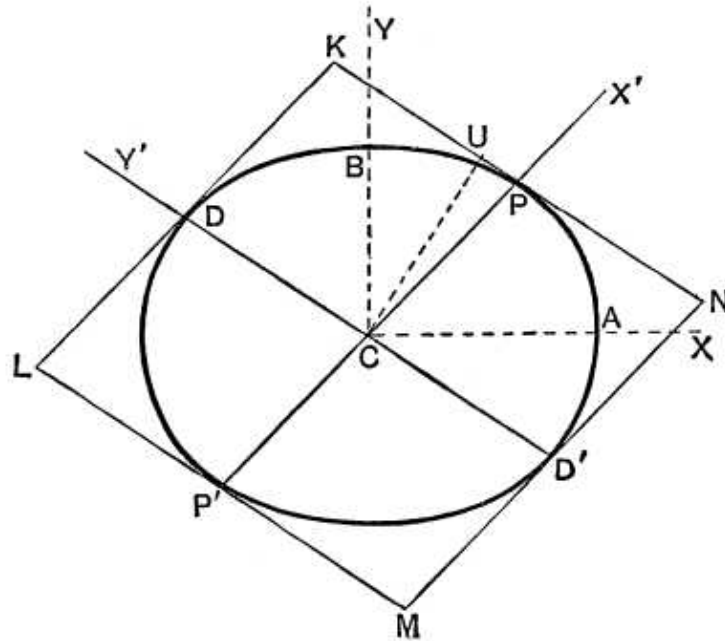
**285.** From the previous article it follows that if  $P$  be the point  $(a \cos \phi, b \sin \phi)$ , then  $D$  is the point

$$\{a \cos (90^\circ + \phi), b \sin (90^\circ + \phi)\} \text{ i.e. } (-a \sin \phi, b \cos \phi).$$

Hence, if  $PN$  and  $DM$  be the ordinates of  $P$  and  $D$ , we have

$$\frac{NP}{b} = -\frac{CM}{a}, \text{ and } \frac{CN}{a} = \frac{MD}{b}.$$

**286.** If  $PCP'$  and  $DCD'$  be a pair of conjugate diameters, then (1)  $CP^2 + CD^2$  is constant, and (2) the area of the parallelogram formed by the tangents at the ends of these diameters is constant.



Let  $P$  be the point  $\phi$ , so that its coordinates are  $a \cos \phi$  and  $b \sin \phi$ . Then  $D$  is the point  $90^\circ + \phi$ , so that its coordinates are

$$a \cos (90^\circ + \phi) \text{ and } b \sin (90^\circ + \phi),$$

*i.e.*  $-a \sin \phi$  and  $b \cos \phi$ .

(1) We therefore have

$$CP^2 = a^2 \cos^2 \phi + b^2 \sin^2 \phi,$$

and  $CD^2 = a^2 \sin^2 \phi + b^2 \cos^2 \phi$ .

Hence  $CP^2 + CD^2 = a^2 + b^2$

= the sum of the squares of the semi-axes of the ellipse.

(2) Let  $KLMN$  be the parallelogram formed by the tangents at  $P, D, P'$ , and  $D'$ .

By Euc. I. 36, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{area } KLMN &= 4 \cdot \text{area } CPKD \\ &= 4 \cdot CU \cdot PK = 4 CU \cdot CD, \end{aligned}$$

where  $CU$  is the perpendicular from  $C$  upon the tangent at  $P$ .

Now the equation to the tangent at  $P$  is

$$\frac{x}{a} \cos \phi + \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi - 1 = 0,$$

so that (Art. 75) we have

$$CU = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\frac{\cos^2 \phi}{a^2} + \frac{\sin^2 \phi}{b^2}}} = \frac{ab}{\sqrt{a^2 \sin^2 \phi + b^2 \cos^2 \phi}} = \frac{ab}{CD}.$$

Hence  $CU \cdot CD = ab$ .

Thus the area of the parallelogram  $KLMN = 4ab$ ,

which is equal to the rectangle formed by the tangents at the ends of the major and minor axes.

**287.** *The product of the focal distances of a point  $P$  is equal to the square on the semidiameter parallel to the tangent at  $P$ .*

If  $P$  be the point  $\phi$ , then, by Art. 251, we have

$$SP = a + ae \cos \phi, \text{ and } S'P = a - ae \cos \phi.$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Hence} \quad SP \cdot S'P &= a^2 - a^2 e^2 \cos^2 \phi \\
 &= a^2 - (a^2 - b^2) \cos^2 \phi \\
 &= a^2 \sin^2 \phi + b^2 \cos^2 \phi \\
 &= CD^2.
 \end{aligned}$$

**288. Ex.** If  $P$  and  $D$  be the ends of conjugate diameters, find the locus of

- (1) the middle point of  $PD$ ,
  - (2) the intersection of the tangents at  $P$  and  $D$ ,
- and (3) the foot of the perpendicular from the centre upon  $PD$ .

$P$  is the point  $(a \cos \phi, b \sin \phi)$  and  $D$  is  $(-a \sin \phi, b \cos \phi)$ .

- (1) If  $(x, y)$  be the middle point of  $PD$ , we have

$$x = \frac{a \cos \phi - a \sin \phi}{2}, \quad \text{and} \quad y = \frac{b \sin \phi + b \cos \phi}{2}.$$

If we eliminate  $\phi$  we shall get the required locus. We obtain

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{1}{4} [(\cos \phi - \sin \phi)^2 + (\sin \phi + \cos \phi)^2] = \frac{1}{2}.$$

The locus is therefore a concentric and similar ellipse.

[N.B. Two ellipses are similar if the ratios of their axes are the same, so that they have the same eccentricity.]

- (2) The tangents are

$$\frac{x}{a} \cos \phi + \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi = 1,$$

and 
$$-\frac{x}{a} \sin \phi + \frac{y}{b} \cos \phi = 1.$$

Both of these equations hold at the intersection of the tangents. If we eliminate  $\phi$  we shall have the equation of the locus of their intersections.

By squaring and adding, we have

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 2,$$

so that the locus is another similar and concentric ellipse.

- (3) By Art. 259, on putting  $\phi' = 90^\circ + \phi$ , the equation to  $PD$  is

$$\frac{x}{a} \cos (45^\circ + \phi) + \frac{y}{b} \sin (45^\circ + \phi) = \cos 45^\circ.$$

Let the length of the perpendicular from the centre be  $p$  and let it make an angle  $\omega$  with the axis. Then this line must be equivalent to

$$x \cos \omega + y \sin \omega = p.$$



Comparing the equations, we have

$$\cos(45^\circ + \phi) = \frac{a \cos \omega \cos 45^\circ}{p}, \text{ and } \sin(45^\circ + \phi) = \frac{b \sin \omega \cos 45^\circ}{p}.$$

Hence, by squaring and adding,  $2p^2 = a^2 \cos^2 \omega + b^2 \sin^2 \omega$ , i.e. the locus required is the curve

$$2r^2 = a^2 \cos^2 \theta + b^2 \sin^2 \theta, \text{ i.e. } 2(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2 x^2 + b^2 y^2.$$

**289. Equiconjugate diameters.** Let  $P$  and  $D$  be extremities of equiconjugate diameters, so that  $CP^2 = CD^2$ .

If the eccentric angle of  $P$  be  $\phi$ , we then have

$$a^2 \cos^2 \phi + b^2 \sin^2 \phi = a^2 \sin^2 \phi + b^2 \cos^2 \phi,$$

giving  $\tan^2 \phi = 1,$

i.e.  $\phi = 45^\circ, \text{ or } 135^\circ.$

The equation to  $CP$  is then

$$y = x \cdot \frac{b}{a} \tan \phi,$$

i.e.  $y = \pm \frac{b}{a} x \dots\dots\dots(1),$

and that to  $CD$  is  $y = -x \frac{b}{a} \cot \phi,$

i.e.  $y = \mp \frac{b}{a} x \dots\dots\dots(2).$

If a rectangle be formed whose sides are the tangents at  $A, A', B,$  and  $B'$  the lines (1) and (2) are easily seen to be its diagonals.

The directions of the equiconjugates are therefore along the diagonals of the circumscribing rectangle.

The length of each equiconjugate is, by Art. 286,

$$\sqrt{\frac{a^2 + b^2}{2}}.$$

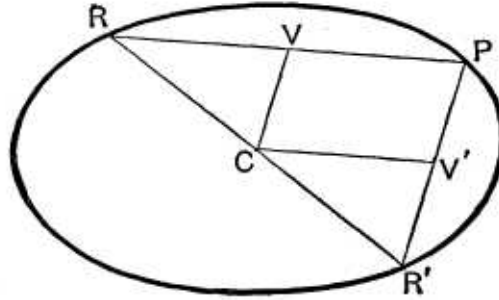
**290. Supplemental chords. Def.** The chords joining any point  $P$  on an ellipse to the extremities,  $R$  and  $R'$ , of any diameter of the ellipse are called supplemental chords.

*Supplemental chords are parallel to conjugate diameters.*

Let  $P$  be the point whose eccentric angle is  $\phi$ , and  $R$  and  $R'$  the points whose eccentric angles are  $\phi_1$  and  $180^\circ + \phi_1$ .

The equations to  $PR$  and  $PR'$  are then (Art. 259)

$$\frac{x}{a} \cos \frac{\phi + \phi_1}{2} + \frac{y}{b} \sin \frac{\phi + \phi_1}{2} = \cos \frac{\phi - \phi_1}{2} \dots (1),$$



and

$$\frac{x}{a} \cos \frac{\phi + 180^\circ + \phi_1}{2} + \frac{y}{b} \sin \frac{\phi + 180^\circ + \phi_1}{2} = \cos \frac{\phi - 180^\circ - \phi_1}{2},$$

*i.e.* 
$$-\frac{x}{a} \sin \frac{\phi + \phi_1}{2} + \frac{y}{b} \cos \frac{\phi + \phi_1}{2} = \sin \frac{\phi - \phi_1}{2} \dots (2).$$

The “ $m$ ” of the straight line (1)  $= -\frac{b}{a} \cot \frac{\phi + \phi_1}{2}$ .

The “ $m$ ” of the line (2)  $= \frac{b}{a} \tan \frac{\phi + \phi_1}{2}$ .

The product of these “ $m$ ’s”  $= -\frac{b^2}{a^2}$ , so that, by Art. 281, the lines  $PR$  and  $PR'$  are parallel to conjugate diameters.

This proposition may also be easily proved geometrically.

For let  $V$  and  $V'$  be the middle points of  $PR$  and  $PR'$ .

Since  $V$  and  $C$  are respectively the middle points of  $RP$  and  $RR'$ , the line  $CV$  is parallel to  $PR'$ . Similarly  $CV'$  is parallel to  $PR$ .

Since  $CV$  bisects  $PR$  it bisects all chords parallel to  $PR$ , *i.e.* all chords parallel to  $CV'$ . So  $CV'$  bisects all chords parallel to  $CV$ .

Hence  $CV$  and  $CV'$  are in the direction of conjugate diameters and therefore  $PR'$  and  $PR$ , being parallel to  $CV$  and  $CV'$  respectively, are parallel to conjugate diameters.

**291.** *To find the equation to an ellipse referred to a pair of conjugate diameters.*

Let the conjugate semi-diameters be  $CP$  and  $CD$  (Fig. Art. 286), whose lengths are  $a'$  and  $b'$  respectively.

If we transform the equation to the ellipse, referred to its principal axes, to  $CP$  and  $CD$  as axes of coordinates, then, since the origin is unaltered, it becomes, by Art. 134, of the form

$$Ax^2 + 2Hxy + By^2 = 1 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

Now the point  $P$ ,  $(a', 0)$ , lies on (1), so that

$$Aa'^2 = 1 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

So since  $Q$ , the point  $(0, b')$ , lies on (1), we have

$$Bb'^2 = 1.$$

Hence 
$$A = \frac{1}{a'^2}, \text{ and } B = \frac{1}{b'^2}.$$

Also, since  $CP$  bisects all chords parallel to  $CD$ , therefore for each value of  $x$  we have two equal and opposite values of  $y$ . This cannot be unless  $H = 0$ .

The equation then becomes

$$\frac{x^2}{a'^2} + \frac{y^2}{b'^2} = 1.$$

**Cor.** If the axes be the equiconjugate diameters, the equation is  $x^2 + y^2 = a'^2$ . The equation is thus the same in form as the equation to a circle. In the case of the ellipse however the axes are oblique.

**292.** It will be noted that the equation to the ellipse, when referred to a pair of conjugate diameters, is of the same form as it is when referred to its principal axes. The latter are merely a particular case of a pair of conjugate diameters.

Just as in Art. 262, it may be shewn that the equation to the tangent at the point  $(x', y')$  is

$$\frac{xx'}{a'^2} + \frac{yy'}{b'^2} = 1.$$

Similarly for the equation to the polar.

**Ex.** If  $QVQ'$  be a double ordinate of the diameter  $CP$ , and if the tangent at  $Q$  meet  $CP$  in  $T$ , then  $CV \cdot CT = CP^2$ .

If  $Q$  be the point  $(x', y')$ , the tangent at it is

$$\frac{xx'}{a'^2} + \frac{yy'}{b'^2} = 1.$$

Putting  $y = 0$ , we have  $x = \frac{a'^2}{x'}$ ,

*i.e.*  $CT = \frac{a'^2}{x'} = \frac{CP^2}{CV}$ ,

*i.e.*  $CV \cdot CT = CP^2$ .

### EXAMPLES XXXIV

1. In the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{36} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$ , find the equation to the chord which passes through the point  $(2, 1)$  and is bisected at that point.

2. Find, with respect to the ellipse  $4x^2 + 7y^2 = 8$ ,

(1) the polar of the point  $(-\frac{1}{2}, 1)$ , and

(2) the pole of the straight line  $12x + 7y + 16 = 0$ .

3. Tangents are drawn from the point  $(3, 2)$  to the ellipse  $x^2 + 4y^2 = 9$ . Find the equation to their chord of contact and the equation of the straight line joining  $(3, 2)$  to the middle point of this chord of contact.

4. Write down the equation of the pair of tangents drawn to the ellipse  $3x^2 + 2y^2 = 5$  from the point  $(1, 2)$ , and prove that the angle between them is  $\tan^{-1} \frac{12\sqrt{5}}{5}$ .

5. In the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ , write down the equations to the diameters which are conjugate to the diameters whose equations are

$$x - y = 0, \quad x + y = 0, \quad y = \frac{a}{b}x, \quad \text{and} \quad y = \frac{b}{a}x.$$

6. Shew that the diameters whose equations are  $y + 3x = 0$  and  $4y - x = 0$ , are conjugate diameters of the ellipse  $3x^2 + 4y^2 = 5$ .

7. If the product of the perpendiculars from the foci upon the polar of  $P$  be constant and equal to  $c^2$ , prove that the locus of  $P$  is the ellipse  $b^4x^2(c^2 + a^2e^2) + c^2a^4y^2 = a^4b^4$ .

8. Shew that the four lines which join the foci to two points  $P$  and  $Q$  on an ellipse all touch a circle whose centre is the pole of  $PQ$ .

9. If the pole of the normal at  $P$  lie on the normal at  $Q$ , then shew that the pole of the normal at  $Q$  lies on the normal at  $P$ .

10.  $CK$  is the perpendicular from the centre on the polar of any point  $P$ , and  $PM$  is the perpendicular from  $P$  on the same polar and is produced to meet the major axis in  $L$ . Shew that (1)  $CK \cdot PL = b^2$ , and (2) the product of the perpendiculars from the foci on the polar  $= CK \cdot LM$ .

What do these theorems become when  $P$  is on the ellipse?

11. In the previous question, if  $PN$  be the ordinate of  $P$  and the polar meet the axis in  $T$ , shew that  $CL = e^2 \cdot CN$  and  $CT \cdot CN = a^2$ .

12. If tangents  $TP$  and  $TQ$  be drawn from a point  $T$ , whose coordinates are  $h$  and  $k$ , prove that the area of the triangle  $TPQ$  is

$$ab \left( \frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2} - 1 \right)^{\frac{3}{2}} \div \left( \frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2} \right),$$

and that the area of the quadrilateral  $CPTQ$  is

$$ab \left( \frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2} - 1 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

13. Tangents are drawn to the ellipse from the point

$$\left( \frac{a^2}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}, \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \right);$$

prove that they intercept on the ordinate through the nearer focus a distance equal to the major axis.

14. Prove that the angle between the tangents that can be drawn from any point  $(x_1, y_1)$  to the ellipse is

$$\tan^{-1} \frac{2ab \sqrt{\frac{x_1^2}{a^2} + \frac{y_1^2}{b^2} - 1}}{x_1^2 + y_1^2 - a^2 - b^2}.$$

15. If  $T$  be the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ , shew that the equation to the straight lines joining it to the foci,  $S$  and  $S'$ , is

$$(x_1 y - x y_1)^2 - a^2 e^2 (y - y_1)^2 = 0.$$

Prove that the bisector of the angle between these lines also bisects the angle between the tangents  $TP$  and  $TQ$  that can be drawn from  $T$ , and hence that

$$\angle STP = \angle S'TQ.$$

16. If two tangents to an ellipse and one of its foci be given, prove that the locus of its centre is a straight line.

17. Prove that the straight lines joining the centre to the intersections of the straight line  $y = mx + \sqrt{\frac{a^2 m^2 + b^2}{2}}$  with the ellipse are conjugate diameters.

18. Any tangent to an ellipse meets the director circle in  $p$  and  $d$ ; prove that  $Cp$  and  $Cd$  are in the directions of conjugate diameters of the ellipse.

19. If  $CP$  be conjugate to the normal at  $Q$ , prove that  $CQ$  is conjugate to the normal at  $P$ .

20. If a fixed straight line parallel to either axis meet a pair of conjugate diameters in the points  $K$  and  $L$ , shew that the circle described on  $KL$  as diameter passes through two fixed points on the other axis.

21. Prove that a chord which joins the ends of a pair of conjugate diameters of an ellipse always touches a similar ellipse.

22. The eccentric angles of two points  $P$  and  $Q$  on the ellipse are  $\phi_1$  and  $\phi_2$ ; prove that the area of the parallelogram formed by the tangents at the ends of the diameters through  $P$  and  $Q$  is

$$4ab \operatorname{cosec}(\phi_1 - \phi_2),$$

and hence that it is least when  $P$  and  $Q$  are at the end of conjugate diameters.

23. A pair of conjugate diameters is produced to meet the directrix; shew that the orthocentre of the triangle so formed is at the focus.

24. If the tangent at any point  $P$  meet in the points  $L$  and  $L'$

(1) two parallel tangents, or (2) two conjugate diameters, prove that in each case the rectangle  $LP \cdot PL'$  is equal to the square on the semidiameter which is parallel to the tangent at  $P$ .

25. A point is such that the perpendicular from the centre on its polar with respect to the ellipse is constant and equal to  $c$ ; shew that its locus is the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^4} + \frac{y^2}{b^4} = \frac{1}{c^2}.$$

26. Tangents are drawn from any point on the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ ; prove that the chords of contact are tangents to the ellipse  $a^2x^2 + b^2y^2 = r^4$ .

If  $\frac{1}{r^2} = \frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2}$ , prove that the lines joining the centre to the points of contact with the circle are conjugate diameters of the second ellipse.

27.  $CP$  and  $CD$  are conjugate diameters of the ellipse; prove that the locus of the orthocentre of the triangle  $CPD$  is the curve

$$2(b^2y^2 + a^2x^2)^3 = (a^2 - b^2)^2(b^2y^2 - a^2x^2)^2.$$

28. If circles be described on two semi-conjugate diameters of the ellipse as diameters, prove that the locus of their second points of intersection is the curve  $2(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2x^2 + b^2y^2$ .

## ANSWERS

1.  $x + 2y = 4$ .                                      2.  $2x - 7y + 8 = 0$ ;  $(-\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{1}{2})$ .  
 3.  $3x + 8y = 9$ ;  $2x = 3y$ .  
 4.  $9x^2 - 24xy - 4y^2 + 30x + 40y - 55 = 0$ .  
 5.  $a^2y + b^2x = 0$ ;  $a^2y - b^2x = 0$ ;  $a^3y + b^3x = 0$ ;  $ay + bx = 0$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. By Art. 280, the required equation is  

$$\frac{1}{9}(y-1) + \frac{2}{3^2 \cdot 8}(x-2) = 0, \text{ or } x + 2y = 4.$$
2. The required equation is [Art. 274]  

$$4x(-\frac{1}{2}) + 7y(1) = 8, \text{ or } 7y - 2x = 8.$$
  
 The required point is [Art. 277]  

$$(-\frac{1}{18} \cdot 2, -\frac{7}{18} \cdot \frac{8}{7}), \text{ or } (-\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}).$$
3.  $3x + 8y = 9$ . [Art. 274.]     $2x = 3y$ . [Art. 283.]
4. Substitute, in equation (1) of Art. 278,  

$$x_1 = 1, y_1 = 2, a^2 = \frac{5}{3}, b^2 = \frac{5}{2}.$$
  
 The lines are parallel to  $9x^2 - 24xy - 4y^2 = 0$ , and the angle between them is [Art. 110]  

$$\tan^{-1} \frac{2\sqrt{144 + 36}}{5} = \tan^{-1} \frac{12\sqrt{5}}{5}.$$
- 5 and 6. See Art. 281.
7. The polar of  $(x_1, y_1)$  is  $b^2xx_1 + a^2yy_1 = a^2b^2$ .  
 $\therefore$  the product of the perpendiculars from  $(\pm ae, 0)$  upon it  

$$= \frac{(a^2b^2 - b^2aex_1)(a^2b^2 + b^2aex_1)}{x_1^2b^4 + y_1^2a^4}.$$
  
 Equating this to  $c^2$ , the required locus is  

$$b^4x^2(c^2 + a^2e^2) + c^2a^4y^2 = a^4b^4.$$
8. Let  $T$  be the pole of the chord  $PQ$ , and let  $SQ, S'P$  intersect in  $O$ . Then since  $TP$  bisects the angle  $SPS'$  externally and  $TS$  bisects the angle  $PSQ$ ,  $\therefore T$  is an excentre of the triangle  $SPO$ . Similarly it is an excentre

of the triangle  $S'QO$ . The perpendiculars from  $T$  upon the four straight lines  $SP$ ,  $SQ$ ,  $S'P$ ,  $S'Q$  are therefore equal.

9. Let the eccentric angles of  $P$  and  $Q$  be  $\theta$  and  $\phi$ . If  $(x_1, y_1)$  be the pole of the normal at  $P$ , viz.

$$\frac{ax}{\cos \theta} - \frac{by}{\sin \theta} = a^2 - b^2,$$

then as in Art. 277 we have

$$x_1 = \frac{a^3}{a^2 - b^2} \frac{1}{\cos \theta} \quad \text{and} \quad y_1 = -\frac{b^3}{a^2 - b^2} \frac{1}{\sin \theta}.$$

This point lies on the normal at  $Q$  if

$$\frac{a}{\cos \phi} \left( \frac{a^3}{a^2 - b^2} \frac{1}{\cos \theta} \right) - \frac{b}{\sin \phi} \left( \frac{-b^3}{a^2 - b^2} \frac{1}{\sin \theta} \right) = a^2 - b^2,$$

i.e. if  $a^4 \sec \theta \sec \phi + b^4 \operatorname{cosec} \theta \operatorname{cosec} \phi = (a^2 - b^2)^2$ .

This, being symmetrical in  $\theta$  and  $\phi$ , is also the condition that the pole of the normal at  $Q$  lies on the normal at  $P$ .

10. Let  $(h, k)$  be the coordinates of  $P$ . Then  $CK$  is the perpendicular from  $(0, 0)$  upon the line  $b^2hx + a^2ky = a^2b^2$

and  $\therefore CK = \frac{a^2b^2}{\sqrt{b^4h^2 + a^4k^2}}$ .

The equation of the line  $PL$  is  $b^2h(y - k) = a^2k(x - h)$ .

Putting  $y = 0$ , the coordinates of  $L$  are  $\left( h - \frac{b^2}{a^2}h, 0 \right)$ ;

$$\therefore PL = \sqrt{\frac{b^4}{a^4}h^2 + k^2} = \frac{\sqrt{b^4h^2 + a^4k^2}}{a^2}; \quad \therefore PL \cdot CK = b^2.$$

Again,  $PM = \frac{b^2h^2 + a^2k^2 - a^2b^2}{\sqrt{b^4h^2 + a^4k^2}}$ ;

$$\therefore LM = PL - PM = \frac{b^2(a^2 - e^2h^2)}{\sqrt{b^4h^2 + a^4k^2}};$$

$$\therefore CK \cdot LM = \frac{a^2b^4(a^2 - e^2h^2)}{b^4h^2 + a^4k^2}.$$



Also the product of the perpendiculars from  $(\pm ae, 0)$  upon the polar of  $P = \frac{\alpha^4 b^4 - a^3 b^4 e^2 h^2}{b^4 h^2 + a^4 k^2} = CK \cdot LM$ .

When  $P$  is on the ellipse each of these theorems becomes  $PF \cdot PG = b^2$  [Art. 270 ( $\gamma$ )].

11. By the previous example,

$$CL = h - \frac{b^2}{a^2} h = e^2 h = e^2 CN. \text{ Also } CT = \frac{a^2}{h}; \therefore CT \cdot CN = a^2.$$

12. By Art. 261, the chord intercepted by the ellipse on the line  $b^2 hx + a^2 ky = a^2 b^2$  is

$$\frac{2\sqrt{a^4 k^2 + b^4 h^2} \cdot \sqrt{b^2 h^2 + a^2 k^2 - a^2 b^2}}{b^2 h^2 + a^2 k^2};$$

also the perpendicular  $TM$  on it from  $T$

$$= \frac{b^2 h^2 + a^2 k^2 - a^2 b^2}{\sqrt{a^4 k^2 + b^4 h^2}}.$$

$$\therefore \Delta TPQ = \frac{(b^2 h^2 + a^2 k^2 - a^2 b^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{b^2 h^2 + a^2 k^2}.$$

Also  $CK + TM = \frac{b^2 h^2 + a^2 k^2}{\sqrt{b^4 h^2 + a^4 k^2}}.$

$\therefore$  Area of the quadrilateral  $CPTQ$   
 $= \frac{1}{2} (CK + TM) \cdot PQ = \sqrt{b^2 h^2 + a^2 k^2 - a^2 b^2}.$

13. Put  $\frac{a}{e} = x_1, y_1 = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} = c,$  and  $x = ae$  in the equation of Art. 278, and we have

$$\left( aec - y \frac{a}{e} \right)^2 = a^2 (y - c)^2 + b^2 \left( ae - \frac{a}{e} \right)^2.$$

$$\therefore y^2 \frac{a^2}{e^2} + a^2 e^2 c^2 - 2a^2 cy = a^2 y^2 - 2a^2 cy + a^2 c^2 + \frac{a^2 b^2}{e^2} (1 - e^2)^2.$$

$$\therefore a^2 y^2 (1 - e^2) = a^2 c^2 e^2 (1 - e^2) + a^2 b^2 (1 - e^2)^2.$$

$$\therefore y^2 = e^2 c^2 + b^2 (1 - e^2) = e^2 a^2 + e^2 b^2 + b^2 - e^2 b^2 = a^2.$$

$$\therefore \text{Difference of roots} = 2a.$$

14. The terms of the second degree in the equation of Art. 278 are  $x^2(y_1^2 - b^2) - 2x_1y_1xy + y^2(x_1^2 - a^2)$ .

∴ By Art. 110, the required angle

$$\begin{aligned} &= \tan^{-1} \frac{2\sqrt{x_1^2y_1^2 - (y_1^2 - b^2)(x_1^2 - a^2)}}{x_1^2 + y_1^2 - a^2 - b^2} \\ &= \tan^{-1} \frac{2\sqrt{b^2x_1^2 + a^2y_1^2 - a^2b^2}}{x_1^2 + y_1^2 - a^2 - b^2}. \end{aligned}$$

15. The equations of the required lines are  $\frac{x \pm ae}{x_1 \pm ae} = \frac{y}{y_1}$ ,

i.e.  $x_1y - xy_1 = \pm ae(y - y_1)$ ; or, expressed in one equation,  
 $(x_1y - xy_1)^2 - a^2e^2(y - y_1)^2 = 0$ .

The lines through the origin parallel to the bisectors of the angles between these are [Art. 112]

$$\frac{x^2 - y^2}{y_1^2 - x_1^2 + a^2 - b^2} = -\frac{xy}{x_1y_1},$$

which are also the bisectors of the angles between the lines

$$x^2(y_1^2 - b^2) - 2x_1y_1xy + y^2(x_1^2 - a^2) = 0,$$

which by Art. 278 are the lines through the centre parallel to the tangents drawn from  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

16. If  $TP$  and  $TQ$  be the tangents the other focus lies on a line  $TS'$  through  $T$  (lying between  $TP$  and  $TQ$ ) such that  $Q\hat{T}S' = P\hat{T}S$ . Hence the centre will lie on a line which bisects the distance between  $S$  and  $TS'$  and is parallel to it.

17. The equation of the required lines is [Art. 122]

$$\frac{(b^2x^2 + a^2y^2)(a^2m^2 + b^2)}{2} = a^2b^2(y - mx)^2,$$

or  $x^2(a^2b^2m^2 - b^4) - 4a^2b^2mxy + y^2(a^2b^2 - a^4m^2) = 0$ ;

$$\therefore m_1m_2 = \frac{a^2b^2m^2 - b^4}{a^2b^2 - a^4m^2} = -\frac{b^2}{a^2}.$$

Hence, by Art. 281, these lines are conjugate diameters.

18. The lines joining the origin to the common points of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2 + b^2$  and the line

$$x \cos a + y \sin a = \sqrt{a^2 \cos^2 a + b^2 \sin^2 a}$$

are [Art. 122]

$$(x^2 + y^2)(a^2 \cos^2 a + b^2 \sin^2 a) = (a^2 + b^2)(x \cos a + y \sin a)^2,$$

or  $b^2 \cos 2ax^2 + 2xy \cos a \sin a (a^2 + b^2) - a^2 \cos 2ay^2 = 0,$

whence 
$$m_1 m_2 = -\frac{b^2}{a^2}.$$

19. Let  $P$  and  $Q$  be the points  $\phi$  and  $\theta$ . Since  $CP$  is conjugate to the normal at  $Q$ ,

$$\frac{b}{a} \tan \phi \cdot \frac{a}{b} \cdot \tan \theta = -\frac{b^2}{a^2}. \quad \therefore \tan \phi \cdot \tan \theta = -\frac{b^2}{a^2},$$

which is, by symmetry, also the condition that  $CQ$  should be conjugate to the normal at  $P$ .

20. Let  $lb^2x^2 + 2mxy - la^2y^2 = 0$  be the equation of the conjugate diameters. The points in which they meet the fixed line  $y = c$  are given by  $lb^2x^2 + 2cmx - la^2c^2 = 0$ .

$$\therefore x_1 + x_2 = -\frac{2cm}{lb^2}, \text{ and } x_1 x_2 = -\frac{a^2 c^2}{b^2}.$$

The equation of the circle on  $KL$  as diameter is, by Art. 145,

$$(x - x_1)(x - x_2) + (y - c)^2 = 0,$$

or 
$$lb^2x^2 + 2cmx - la^2c^2 + lb^2(y - c)^2 = 0.$$

This cuts  $x = 0$  in the fixed points given by  $(y - c)^2 = \frac{a^2 c^2}{b^2}$ .

21. The equation of the chord joining the points " $\alpha$ " and " $\beta$ ," if  $\alpha - \beta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ , is, [Art. 259],

$$\frac{x}{a} \cdot \cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta) + \frac{y}{b} \sin \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}},$$

which is a tangent to the similar ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{1}{2}$ .

22. Let  $PCP'$ ,  $QCQ'$  be the diameters, and  $TRT'R'$  the parallelogram formed by the tangents.

The coordinates of  $T$  are 
$$\left[ a \frac{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 + \phi_2)}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2)}, b \frac{\sin \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 + \phi_2)}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2)} \right].$$

Hence, by Ex. 12, the area of  $CPTQ$

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\{a^2b^2 \cos^2 \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 + \phi_2) + a^2b^2 \sin^2 \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 + \phi_2) - a^2b^2 \cos^2 \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2)\}^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2)} \\ & = ab \tan \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2); \end{aligned}$$

and (changing  $\phi_1$  into  $\pi + \phi_1$ ) the area of

$$CPRQ' = ab \cot \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2).$$

Hence the area of  $TRT'R'$

$$= 2ab \left\{ \tan \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2) + \cot \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2) \right\} = 4ab \operatorname{cosec}(\phi_1 - \phi_2).$$

This is least when  $\operatorname{cosec}(\phi_1 - \phi_2) = 1$ , i.e. when  $\phi_1 - \phi_2 = \frac{\pi}{2}$ .

23. Let  $y = \frac{b}{a} \tan \phi \cdot x, \dots$ (i) and  $y = -\frac{b}{a} \cot \phi \cdot x \dots$ (ii)

be the equations of the conjugate diameters.

The point where (i) cuts the directrix

$$x = \frac{a}{e} \text{ is } \left( \frac{a}{e}, \frac{b}{e} \cdot \tan \phi \right).$$

The equation of the line through this point perpendicular to (ii) is

$$a \sin \phi \left( x - \frac{a}{e} \right) - b \cos \phi \left( y - \frac{b}{e} \tan \phi \right) = 0.$$

This line cuts the axis of  $x$  where  $x = \frac{a}{e} - \frac{b^2}{ae} = ae$ .

24. Let  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  be the equation to the ellipse referred to  $CP$  and its conjugate diameter as axes.

The equations to two parallel tangents are

$$\frac{xx'}{a^2} + \frac{yy'}{b^2} = \pm 1.$$

Putting  $x = a$ ,  $LP = \frac{b^2}{y'} \left\{ 1 - \frac{x'}{a} \right\}$ , and  $L'P = \frac{b^2}{y'} \left\{ 1 + \frac{x'}{a} \right\}$ .

$$\therefore LP \cdot PL' = \frac{b^4}{y'^2} \left\{ 1 - \frac{x'^2}{a^2} \right\} = b^2.$$

Putting  $x = a$  in the equations of any two conjugate diameters, viz.  $y = \frac{b}{a} \tan \phi \cdot x$  and  $y = -\frac{b}{a} \cot \phi \cdot x$ , we have

$$LP = b \tan \phi \text{ and } L'P = b \cot \phi. \quad \therefore LP \cdot PL' = b^2.$$

25. See Ex. 10.  $CK = \frac{a^2 b^2}{\sqrt{a^4 k^2 + b^4 h^2}} = c.$  Hence etc.

26. The polar of  $(a \cos \phi, b \sin \phi)$  with respect to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$  is  $ax \cos \phi + by \sin \phi = r^2$ , or

$$\frac{x}{r^2/a} \cos \phi + \frac{y}{r^2/b} \sin \phi = 1,$$

which is a tangent to the ellipse  $a^2 x^2 + b^2 y^2 = r^4$ .

The equation of these lines is [Art. 122]

$$(x^2 + y^2) r^2 = (ax \cos \phi + by \sin \phi)^2$$

or  $x^2 (a^2 \cos^2 \phi - r^2) + \dots + y^2 (b^2 \sin^2 \phi - r^2) = 0$

which are conjugate diameters of the second ellipse if

$$\frac{a^2 \cos^2 \phi - r^2}{b^2 \sin^2 \phi - r^2} = -\frac{r^4}{b^2} \div \frac{r^4}{a^2} = -\frac{a^2}{b^2}, \text{ i.e. if } \frac{1}{r^2} = \frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2}.$$

27. See Art. 288. The  $m$ 's of  $CP$  and  $CD$  are

$$\frac{b}{a} \tan \phi \text{ and } -\frac{b}{a} \cot \phi.$$

Hence the equations of the lines through  $P$  and  $D$  perpendicular respectively to  $CD$  and  $CP$  are

$$a \sin \phi (x - a \cos \phi) - b \cos \phi (y - b \sin \phi) = 0,$$

and  $a \cos \phi (x + a \sin \phi) + b \sin \phi (y - b \cos \phi) = 0,$

or  $ax \sin \phi - by \cos \phi = (a^2 - b^2) \sin \phi \cos \phi,$

and  $ax \cos \phi + by \sin \phi = -(a^2 - b^2) \sin \phi \cos \phi.$

By adding,  $\frac{\sin \phi}{by - ax} = \frac{\cos \phi}{ax + by} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2} (a^2 x^2 + b^2 y^2)};$

whence, substituting for  $\cos \phi$  and  $\sin \phi$ ,

$$2 (b^2 y^2 + a^2 x^2)^3 = (a^2 - b^2)^2 (b^2 y^2 - a^2 x^2)^2.$$

28. This is the same as Art. 288 (3).

**293.** *To prove that, in general, four normals can be drawn from any point to an ellipse, and that the sum of the eccentric angles of their feet is equal to an odd multiple of two right angles.*

The normal at any point, whose eccentric angle is  $\phi$ , is

$$\frac{ax}{\cos \phi} - \frac{by}{\sin \phi} = a^2 - b^2 = a^2e^2.$$

If this normal pass through the point  $(h, k)$ , we have

$$\frac{ah}{\cos \phi} - \frac{bk}{\sin \phi} = a^2e^2 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

For a given point  $(h, k)$  this equation gives the eccentric angles of the feet of the normals which pass through  $(h, k)$ .

Let  $\tan \frac{\phi}{2} = t$ , so that

$$\cos \phi = \frac{1 - \tan^2 \frac{\phi}{2}}{1 + \tan^2 \frac{\phi}{2}} = \frac{1 - t^2}{1 + t^2}, \text{ and } \sin \phi = \frac{2 \tan \frac{\phi}{2}}{1 + \tan^2 \frac{\phi}{2}} = \frac{2t}{1 + t^2}.$$

Substituting these values in (1), we have

$$ah \frac{1 + t^2}{1 - t^2} - bk \frac{1 + t^2}{2t} = a^2e^2,$$

*i.e.*  $bkt^4 + 2t^3 (ah + a^2e^2) + 2t (ah - a^2e^2) - bk = 0 \dots (2).$

Let  $t_1, t_2, t_3,$  and  $t_4$  be the roots of this equation, so that, by Art. 2,

$$t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = -2 \frac{ah + a^2e^2}{bk} \dots\dots\dots (3),$$

$$t_1t_2 + t_1t_3 + t_1t_4 + t_2t_3 + t_2t_4 + t_3t_4 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (4),$$

$$t_2t_3t_4 + t_3t_4t_1 + t_4t_1t_2 + t_1t_2t_3 = -2 \frac{ah - a^2e^2}{bk} \dots\dots (5),$$

and  $t_1t_2t_3t_4 = -1 \dots\dots\dots (6).$

Hence (*Trigonometry*, Art. 125), we have

$$\tan \left( \frac{\phi_1}{2} + \frac{\phi_2}{2} + \frac{\phi_3}{2} + \frac{\phi_4}{2} \right) = \frac{s_1 - s_3}{1 - s_2 + s_4} = \frac{s_1 - s_3}{0} = \infty .$$

$$\therefore \frac{\phi_1 + \phi_2 + \phi_3 + \phi_4}{2} = n\pi + \frac{\pi}{2},$$

and hence  $\phi_1 + \phi_2 + \phi_3 + \phi_4 = (2n + 1)\pi$   
 = an odd multiple of two right angles.

**294.** We shall conclude the chapter with some examples of loci connected with the ellipse.

**Ex. 1.** Find the locus of the intersection of tangents at the ends of chords of an ellipse, which are of constant length  $2c$ .

Let  $QR$  be any such chord, and let the tangents at  $Q$  and  $R$  meet in a point  $P$ , whose coordinates are  $(h, k)$ .

Since  $QR$  is the polar of  $P$ , its equation is

$$\frac{xh}{a^2} + \frac{yk}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

The abscissæ of the points in which this straight line meets the ellipse are given by

$$\left( 1 - \frac{xh}{a^2} \right)^2 = \frac{k^2}{b^2} \left( 1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2} \right),$$

*i.e.*  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} \left( \frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2} \right) - \frac{2xh}{a^2} + 1 - \frac{k^2}{b^2} = 0.$

If  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  be the roots of this equation, *i.e.* the abscissæ of  $Q$  and  $R$ , we have

$$x_1 + x_2 = \frac{2a^2b^2h}{b^2h^2 + a^2k^2}, \text{ and } x_1x_2 = \frac{a^4(b^2 - k^2)}{b^2h^2 + a^2k^2}.$$

$$\therefore (x_1 - x_2)^2 = (x_1 + x_2)^2 - 4x_1x_2 = \frac{4a^4[b^2h^2 + a^2k^2 - a^2b^2]k^2}{(b^2h^2 + a^2k^2)^2} \dots(2).$$

If  $y_1$  and  $y_2$  be the ordinates of  $Q$  and  $R$ , we have from (1)

$$\frac{x_1h}{a^2} + \frac{y_1k}{b^2} = 1,$$

and  $\frac{x_2h}{a^2} + \frac{y_2k}{b^2} = 1,$

so that, by subtraction,

$$y_2 - y_1 = -\frac{b^2h}{a^2k} (x_2 - x_1).$$

The condition of the question therefore gives

$$4c^2 = (x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 = \left(1 + \frac{b^4 h^2}{a^4 k^2}\right) (x_2 - x_1)^2$$

$$= \frac{4(a^4 k^2 + b^4 h^2)(b^2 h^2 + a^2 k^2 - a^2 b^2)}{(b^2 h^2 + a^2 k^2)^2}, \text{ by (2).}$$

Hence the point  $(h, k)$  always lies on the curve

$$c^2 \left(\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2}\right) = \left(\frac{a^2 y^2}{b^2} + \frac{b^2 x^2}{a^2}\right) \left(\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1\right),$$

which is therefore the locus of  $P$ .

**Ex. 2.** Find the locus (1) of the middle points, and (2) of the poles, of normal chords of the ellipse.

The chord, whose middle point is  $(h, k)$ , is parallel to the polar of  $(h, k)$ , and is therefore

$$(x - h) \frac{h}{a^2} + (y - k) \frac{k}{b^2} = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

If this be a normal, it must be the same as

$$ax \sec \theta - by \operatorname{cosec} \theta = a^2 - b^2 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

We therefore have

$$\frac{a \sec \theta}{\frac{h}{a^2}} = \frac{-b \operatorname{cosec} \theta}{\frac{k}{b^2}} = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{\frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2}},$$

so that

$$\cos \theta = \frac{a^3}{h(a^2 - b^2)} \left(\frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2}\right),$$

and

$$\sin \theta = -\frac{b^3}{k(a^2 - b^2)} \left(\frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2}\right).$$

Hence, by the elimination of  $\theta$ ,

$$\left(\frac{a^6}{h^2} + \frac{b^6}{k^2}\right) \left(\frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2}\right)^2 = (a^2 - b^2)^2.$$

The equation to the required locus is therefore

$$\left(\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2}\right)^2 \left(\frac{a^6}{x^2} + \frac{b^6}{y^2}\right) = (a^2 - b^2)^2.$$

Again, if  $(x_1, y_1)$  be the pole of the normal chord (2), the latter equation must be equivalent to the equation

$$\frac{xx_1}{a^2} + \frac{yy_1}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

Comparing (2) and (3), we have

$$\frac{a^3 \sec \theta}{x_1} = -\frac{b^3 \operatorname{cosec} \theta}{y_1} = a^2 - b^2,$$

so that

$$1 = \cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta = \left(\frac{a^6}{x_1^2} + \frac{b^6}{y_1^2}\right) \frac{1}{(a^2 - b^2)^2},$$



and hence the required locus is

$$\frac{a^6}{x^2} + \frac{b^6}{y^2} = (a^2 - b^2)^2.$$

**Ex. 3.** Chords of the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  always touch the concentric and coaxial ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{\alpha^2} + \frac{y^2}{\beta^2} = 1$ ; find the locus of their poles.

Any tangent to the second ellipse is

$$y = mx + \sqrt{\alpha^2 m^2 + \beta^2} \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Let the tangents at the points where it meets the first ellipse meet in  $(h, k)$ . Then (1) must be the same as the polar of  $(h, k)$  with respect to the first ellipse, *i.e.* it is the same as

$$\frac{xh}{a^2} + \frac{yk}{b^2} - 1 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

Since (1) and (2) coincide, we have

$$\frac{m}{\frac{h}{a^2}} = \frac{-1}{\frac{k}{b^2}} = \frac{\sqrt{\alpha^2 m^2 + \beta^2}}{-1}.$$

Hence  $m = -\frac{b^2}{a^2} \frac{h}{k}$ , and  $\sqrt{\alpha^2 m^2 + \beta^2} = \frac{b^2}{k}$ .

Eliminating  $m$ , we have

$$\alpha^2 \frac{b^4}{a^4} \frac{h^2}{k^2} + \beta^2 = \frac{b^4}{k^2},$$

*i.e.* the point  $(h, k)$  lies on the ellipse

$$\frac{\alpha^2}{a^4} x^2 + \frac{\beta^2}{b^4} y^2 = 1,$$

*i.e.* on a concentric and coaxial ellipse whose semi-axes are  $\frac{\alpha^2}{a}$  and  $\frac{\beta^2}{b}$  respectively.

**EXAMPLES XXXV**

The tangents drawn from a point  $P$  to the ellipse make angles  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$  with the major axis; find the locus of  $P$  when

1.  $\theta_1 + \theta_2$  is constant ( $= 2\alpha$ ). [Compare Ex. 1, Art. 235.]
2.  $\tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2$  is constant ( $= c$ ).
3.  $\tan \theta_1 - \tan \theta_2$  is constant ( $= d$ ).
4.  $\tan^2 \theta_1 + \tan^2 \theta_2$  is constant ( $= \lambda$ ).

Find the locus of the intersection of tangents

5. which meet at a given angle  $\alpha$ .
6. if the sum of the eccentric angles of their points of contact be equal to a constant angle  $2\alpha$ .
7. if the difference of these eccentric angles be  $120^\circ$ .
8. if the lines joining the points of contact to the centre be perpendicular.
9. if the sum of the ordinates of the points of contact be equal to  $b$ .

Find the locus of the middle points of chords of an ellipse

10. whose distance from the centre is the constant length  $c$ .
11. which subtend a right angle at the centre.
12. which pass through the given point  $(h, k)$ .
13. whose length is constant  $(=2c)$ .
14. whose poles are on the auxiliary circle.
15. the tangents at the ends of which intersect at right angles.
16. Prove that the locus of the intersection of normals at the ends of conjugate diameters is the curve

$$2(a^2x^2 + b^2y^2)^3 = (a^2 - b^2)^2(a^2x^2 - b^2y^2)^2.$$

17. Prove that the locus of the intersection of normals at the ends of chords, parallel to the tangent at the point whose eccentric angle is  $\alpha$ , is the conic

$$2(ax \sin \alpha + by \cos \alpha)(ax \cos \alpha + by \sin \alpha) = (a^2 - b^2)^2 \sin 2\alpha \cos^2 2\alpha.$$

If the chords be parallel to an equiconjugate diameter, the locus is a diameter perpendicular to the other equiconjugate.

18. A parallelogram circumscribes the ellipse and two of its opposite angular points lie on the straight lines  $x^2 = h^2$ ; prove that the locus of the other two is the conic

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} \left(1 - \frac{a^2}{h^2}\right) = 1.$$

19. Circles of constant radius  $c$  are drawn to pass through the ends of a variable diameter of the ellipse. Prove that the locus of their centres is the curve

$$(x^2 + y^2)(a^2x^2 + b^2y^2 + a^2b^2) = c^2(a^2x^2 + b^2y^2).$$

20. The polar of a point  $P$  with respect to an ellipse touches a fixed circle, whose centre is on the major axis and which passes through the centre of the ellipse. Shew that the locus of  $P$  is a parabola, whose latus rectum is a third proportional to the diameter of the circle and the latus rectum of the ellipse.

21. Prove that the locus of the pole, with respect to the ellipse, of any tangent to the auxiliary circle is the curve  $\frac{x^2}{a^4} + \frac{y^2}{b^4} = \frac{1}{a^2}$ .

22. Shew that the locus of the pole, with respect to the auxiliary circle, of a tangent to the ellipse is a similar concentric ellipse, whose major axis is at right angles to that of the original ellipse.

23. Chords of the ellipse touch the parabola  $ay^2 = -2b^2x$ ; prove that the locus of their poles is the parabola  $ay^2 = 2b^2x$ .

24. Prove that the sum of the angles that the four normals drawn from any point to an ellipse make with the axis is equal to the sum of the angles that the two tangents from the same point make with the axis.

[Use the equation of Art. 268.]

25. Triangles are formed by pairs of tangents drawn from any point on the ellipse

$$a^2x^2 + b^2y^2 = (a^2 + b^2)^2 \text{ to the ellipse } \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1,$$

and their chord of contact. Prove that the orthocentre of each such triangle lies on the ellipse.

26. An ellipse is rotated through a right angle in its own plane about its centre, which is fixed; prove that the locus of the point of intersection of a tangent to the ellipse in its original position with the tangent at the same point of the curve in its new position is

$$(x^2 + y^2)(x^2 + y^2 - a^2 - b^2) = 2(a^2 - b^2)xy.$$

27. If  $Y$  and  $Z$  be the feet of the perpendiculars from the foci upon the tangent at any point  $P$  of an ellipse, prove that the tangents at  $Y$  and  $Z$  to the auxiliary circle meet on the ordinate of  $P$  and that the locus of their point of intersection is another ellipse.

28. Prove that the directrices of the two parabolas that can be drawn to have their foci at any given point  $P$  of the ellipse and to pass through its foci meet at an angle which is equal to twice the eccentric angle of  $P$ .

29. Chords at right angles are drawn through any point  $P$  of the ellipse, and the line joining their extremities meets the normal in the point  $Q$ . Prove that  $Q$  is the same for all such chords, its coordinates being  $\frac{a^3e^2 \cos \alpha}{a^2 + b^2}$  and  $\frac{-a^2be^2 \sin \alpha}{a^2 + b^2}$ .

Prove also that the major axis is the bisector of the angle  $PCQ$ , and that the locus of  $Q$  for different positions of  $P$  is the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \left(\frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2 + b^2}\right)^2.$$

## ANSWERS

1.  $x^2 - 2xy \cot 2\alpha - y^2 = a^2 - b^2$ .
2.  $cx^2 - 2xy = ca^2$ .
3.  $d^2(x^2 - a^2)^2 = 4(b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 - a^2b^2)$ .
4.  $\lambda(x^2 - a^2)^2 = 2(x^2y^2 + b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 - a^2b^2)$ .
5.  $(x^2 + y^2 - a^2 - b^2)^2 = 4 \cot^2 \alpha (b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 - a^2b^2)$ .
6.  $ay = bx \tan \alpha$ .
7.  $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = 4a^2b^2$ .
8.  $b^4x^2 + a^4y^2 = a^2b^2(a^2 + b^2)$ .
9.  $b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 = 2a^2by$ .
10.  $(b^2x^2 + a^2y^2)^2 = c^2(b^4x^2 + a^4y^2)$ .
11.  $(a^2 + b^2)(b^2x^2 + a^2y^2)^2 = a^2b^2(b^4x^2 + a^4y^2)$ .
12.  $b^2x(x - h) + a^2y(y - k) = 0$ .
13.  $c^2a^2b^2(b^2x^2 + a^2y^2) + (b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 - 1)(b^4x^2 + a^4y^2) = 0$ .
14.  $(b^2x^2 + a^2y^2)^2 = a^2b^4(x^2 + y^2)$ .
15.  $a^4b^4(x^2 + y^2) = (a^2 + b^2)(b^2x^2 + a^2y^2)^2$ .
29. If the chords be  $PK$  and  $PK'$ , let the equation to  $KK'$  be  $y = mx + c$ ; transform the origin to  $P$  and, by means of Art. 122, find the condition that the angle  $KPK'$  is a right angle; substitute for  $c$  in the equation to  $KK'$ , and find the point of intersection of  $KK'$  and the normal at  $P$ . See also Art. 404.

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

In Exs. 1 to 5,  $\tan \theta_1$  and  $\tan \theta_2$  are the roots of the equation  $m^2(x^2 - a^2) - 2mxy + (y^2 - b^2) = 0$ . [Art. 272].

$$\begin{aligned} 1. \quad \tan 2\alpha &= \tan(\theta_1 + \theta_2) = \frac{\tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2}{1 - \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2} \\ &= \frac{2xy}{x^2 - y^2 - a^2 + b^2}. \end{aligned}$$

$$2. \quad c = \tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2 = \frac{2xy}{x^2 - a^2}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} 3. \quad d^2 &= (\tan \theta_1 - \tan \theta_2)^2 = (\tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2)^2 - 4 \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2. \\ \therefore d^2(x^2 - a^2)^2 &= 4\{x^2y^2 - (x^2 - a^2)(y^2 - b^2)\} = 4(b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 - a^2b^2). \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 4. \quad \lambda &= \tan^2 \theta_1 + \tan^2 \theta_2 = (\tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2)^2 - 2 \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2. \\ \therefore \lambda(x^2 - a^2)^2 &= 2\{2x^2y^2 - (x^2 - a^2)(y^2 - b^2)\} \\ &= 2(x^2y^2 + b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 - a^2b^2). \end{aligned}$$

$$5. \quad \tan^2 \alpha = \tan^2(\theta_1 - \theta_2) = \frac{(\tan \theta_1 - \tan \theta_2)^2}{(1 + \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2)^2} \\ = \frac{4(b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 - a^2b^2)}{(x^2 + y^2 - a^2 - b^2)^2}.$$

6. See Art. 265, Ex.

$$x = \frac{a \cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 + \phi_2)}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2)} = \frac{a \cos \alpha}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2)}, \\ y = \frac{b \sin \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 + \phi_2)}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2)} = \frac{b \sin \alpha}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2)}. \\ \therefore ay = bx \tan \alpha.$$

7. See Art. 265, Ex.  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{1}{\cos^2 \frac{1}{2}(\phi_1 - \phi_2)} = 4.$

8. The equation of the lines joining the centre to the common points of the ellipse and

$$\frac{xx'}{a^2} + \frac{yy'}{b^2} = 1 \text{ is [Art. 122]}$$

$$\left\{ \frac{xx'}{a^2} + \frac{yy'}{b^2} \right\}^2 = \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2}.$$

Since these are at right angles, the locus of  $(x', y')$  is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^4} + \frac{y^2}{b^4} = \frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2}.$$

9. We have to eliminate  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  from

$$x = \frac{a \cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta)}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta)}, \dots(i) \quad y = \frac{b \sin \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta)}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta)}, \dots(ii)$$

and  $b \sin \alpha + b \sin \beta = b,$

i.e.  $2 \sin \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta) \cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta) = 1. \dots\dots\dots(iii)$

Multiply (i) and (ii) by (iii);

$$\therefore x = 2a \sin \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta) \cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta); \quad \therefore \frac{x}{a} = \sin(\alpha + \beta);$$

and  $y = 2b \sin^2 \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta). \quad \therefore \frac{b-y}{b} = \cos(\alpha + \beta).$

$$\therefore \frac{(y-b)^2}{b^2} + \frac{x^2}{a^2} = 1, \text{ or } \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{2y}{b}.$$

10. Taking the equation of Art. 280, viz.

$$b^2hx + a^2ky = b^2h^2 + a^2k^2,$$

we have  $c^2(b^4h^2 + a^4k^2) = (b^2h^2 + a^2k^2)^2$ ,

so that the locus of  $(h, k)$  is

$$c^2(b^4x^2 + a^4y^2) = (b^2x^2 + a^2y^2)^2.$$

11. Taking the equation of Art. 280, the equation of the lines joining the centre to the common points of this line and the ellipse is [Art. 122]

$$a^2b^2(b^2hx + a^2ky)^2 = (b^2h^2 + a^2k^2)^2(b^2x^2 + a^2y^2).$$

If these are at right angles, then

$$a^2b^2(b^4h^2 + a^4k^2) = (b^2h^2 + a^2k^2)^2(a^2 + b^2). \quad [\text{Art. 111.}]$$

Hence the equation to the locus.

12. Interchanging  $x$  and  $h$ , and  $y$  and  $k$  in the equation of Art. 280, we have

$$\frac{y}{b^2}(y-k) + \frac{x}{a^2}(x-h) = 0.$$

13. From Arts. 261 and 280, we have

$$c = \frac{ab \sqrt{b^4h^2 + a^4k^2} \cdot \sqrt{a^2b^4h^2 + b^2a^4k^2} - (b^2h^2 + a^2k^2)^2}{a^2b^2(b^2h^2 + a^2k^2)}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore c^2a^2b^2(b^2h^2 + a^2k^2)^2 &= (b^4h^2 + a^4k^2)(b^2h^2 + a^2k^2)(a^2b^2 - b^2h^2 - a^2k^2), \\ \text{or } c^2a^2b^2(b^2h^2 + a^2k^2) + (b^4h^2 + a^4k^2)(b^2h^2 + a^2k^2 - a^2b^2) &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

**Aliter.** If  $\theta$  be the inclination to the axis of  $x$  of the chord whose middle point is  $(h, k)$  then the point

$$(h + c \cos \theta, k + c \sin \theta),$$

and also the point  $(h - c \cos \theta, k - c \sin \theta)$ , lies on the ellipse.

$$\therefore b^2(h + c \cos \theta)^2 + a^2(k + c \sin \theta)^2 = a^2b^2,$$

and  $b^2(h - c \cos \theta)^2 + a^2(k - c \sin \theta)^2 = a^2b^2.$

Hence, by adding and subtracting, we have

$$b^3h^2 + a^2k^2 - a^2b^2 + c^2(b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta) = 0, \dots(1)$$

and 
$$b^2h \cos \theta + a^2k \sin \theta = 0. \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

(2) gives 
$$\frac{\cos \theta}{-a^2k} = \frac{\sin \theta}{b^2h} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^4k^2 + b^4h^2}}.$$

Substitute these values in (1).

14. The pole of the line  $\frac{xh}{a^2} + \frac{yk}{b^2} = \frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2}$  is

$$\left[ h / \left( \frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2} \right), k / \left( \frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2} \right) \right].$$

$$\therefore h^2 + k^2 = a^2 \left( \frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2} \right)^2.$$

15. The same point must lie on the director circle.

$$\therefore h^2 + k^2 = (a^2 + b^2) \left( \frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2} \right)^2.$$

16. We have to eliminate  $\phi$  between

$$ax \sec \phi - by \operatorname{cosec} \phi = a^2 - b^2, \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

and 
$$-ax \operatorname{cosec} \phi - by \sec \phi = a^2 - b^2. \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

Multiply (1) by  $by$  and (2) by  $ax$ , and we have, on addition,

$$-(b^2y^2 + a^2x^2) \operatorname{cosec} \phi = (a^2 - b^2)(ax + by).$$

Multiply (1) by  $ax$  and (2) by  $by$  and we have, on subtraction,

$$(b^2y^2 + a^2x^2) \sec \phi = (a^2 - b^2)(ax - by).$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{(ax + by)^2} + \frac{1}{(ax - by)^2} = \frac{(a^2 - b^2)^2}{(b^2y^2 + a^2x^2)^2}.$$

$$\therefore 2(b^2y^2 + a^2x^2)^3 = (a^2 - b^2)^2(a^2x^2 - b^2y^2)^2.$$

17. Since the sum of the eccentric angles of the ends of a chord =  $2a$  (Ex. XXXIII. 33), we have to eliminate  $\theta$  between

$$ax \sec(a + \theta) - by \operatorname{cosec}(a + \theta) = (a^2 - b^2),$$

and 
$$ax \sec(a - \theta) - by \operatorname{cosec}(a - \theta) = (a^2 - b^2).$$

These equations become

$$\begin{aligned} \cos \theta (ax \sin a - by \cos a) + \sin \theta (ax \cos a + by \sin a) \\ = \frac{1}{2} (a^2 - b^2) \sin (2a + 2\theta), \end{aligned}$$

and  $\cos \theta (ax \sin a - by \cos a) - \sin \theta (ax \cos a + by \sin a)$   
 $= \frac{1}{2} (a^2 - b^2) \sin (2a - 2\theta).$

Adding,

$$2 \cos \theta (ax \sin a - by \cos a) = (a^2 - b^2) \sin 2a \cos 2\theta. \dots(1)$$

Subtracting,

$$2 \sin \theta (ax \cos a + by \sin a) = (a^2 - b^2) \cos 2a \sin 2\theta,$$

whence  $\cos \theta \cdot \cos 2a (a^2 - b^2) = ax \cos a + by \sin a.$

Substitute in (1) for  $\cos \theta$ ;

$$\therefore 2 (ax \cos a + by \sin a) (ax \sin a - by \cos a) \cos 2a$$

$$= \sin 2a \{2 (ax \cos a + by \sin a)^2 - (a^2 - b^2)^2 \cos^2 2a\};$$

$$\therefore 2 (ax \cos a + by \sin a) \{(ax \cos a + by \sin a) \sin 2a$$

$$- (ax \sin a - by \cos a) \cos 2a\} = (a^2 - b^2)^2 \sin 2a \cos^2 2a;$$

$$\therefore 2 (ax \cos a + by \sin a) (ax \sin a + by \cos a)$$

$$= (a^2 - b^2)^2 \sin 2a \cos^2 2a.$$

If  $a = 45^\circ$ , this becomes  $ax + by = 0$  and this is a diameter perpendicular to the other equiconjugate

$$ay - bx = 0.$$

**18.** Let  $\alpha, \beta, \pi + \alpha, \pi + \beta$  be the eccentric angles of the points of contact. Then if  $(x, y)$  be a point on the locus

$$h \cos \frac{1}{2} (\alpha - \beta) = a \cos \frac{1}{2} (\alpha + \beta), \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

$$x \sin \frac{1}{2} (\alpha - \beta) = a \sin \frac{1}{2} (\alpha + \beta), \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

and  $y \sin \frac{1}{2} (\alpha - \beta) = -b \cos \frac{1}{2} (\alpha + \beta). \dots\dots\dots(iii)$

From (i) and (iii),  $\cot \frac{1}{2} (\alpha - \beta) = -\frac{ay}{bh},$

and from (ii) and (iii),

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \operatorname{cosec}^2 \frac{1}{2} (\alpha - \beta) = 1 + \cot^2 \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2} = 1 + \frac{a^2 y^2}{b^2 h^2}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} \left(1 - \frac{a^2}{h^2}\right) = 1.$$

**19.** Let  $(a \cos \phi, b \sin \phi)$  be one extremity of the diameter. Then the centres lie on the perpendicular

diameter, viz.  $\tan \phi = -\frac{ax}{by} \dots\dots\dots(1)$



Also if  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of a centre,

$$(x - a \cos \phi)^2 + (y - b \sin \phi)^2 = c^2.$$

Substituting for  $\sin \phi$  and  $\cos \phi$ , from (1), we have

$$(x^2 + y^2 - c^2)(a^2x^2 + b^2y^2) + a^2b^2y^2 + a^2b^2x^2 = 0;$$

$$\therefore (x^2 + y^2)(a^2x^2 + b^2y^2 + a^2b^2) = c^2(a^2x^2 + b^2y^2).$$

20. Let  $(x - c)^2 + y^2 = c^2$  be the equation of the circle. The equation of a tangent is  $(x - c) \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = c$ .

If this is identical with  $b^2hx + a^2yk = a^2b^2$ , we must have

$$\frac{\cos \theta}{b^2h} = \frac{\sin \theta}{a^2k} = \frac{c(1 + \cos \theta)}{a^2b^2}.$$

Whence  $\cos \theta = \frac{b^2ch}{b^2(a^2 - ch)}$ , and  $\sin \theta = \frac{a^2ck}{b^2(a^2 - ch)}$ .

$$\therefore c^2(b^4h^2 + a^4k^2) = b^4(a^2 - ch)^2.$$

Hence the equation to the locus of  $(h, k)$  is

$$y^2 = \frac{b^4}{c^2} - \frac{2b^4}{a^2c} \cdot x,$$

which is a parabola; and, if  $l$  be its latus rectum,

$$2cl = 4 \frac{b^4}{a^2} = \left(2 \frac{b^2}{a}\right)^2.$$

21. The lines

$$x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = a, \text{ and } b^2hx + a^2yk = a^2b^2,$$

are identical if  $\frac{\cos \theta}{b^2h} = \frac{\sin \theta}{a^2k} = \frac{1}{ab^2}$ .

Hence the locus of  $(h, k)$  is given by  $b^4x^2 + a^4y^2 = a^2b^4$ .

22. The lines

$$bx \cos \phi + ay \sin \phi = ab, \text{ and } xh + yk = a^2,$$

are identical if  $\frac{b \cos \phi}{h} = \frac{a \sin \phi}{k} = \frac{b}{a}$ .

$\therefore a^2h^2 + b^2k^2 = a^4$ ; which is a concentric ellipse, with its major axis along the axis of  $y$  and ratio of axes =  $\frac{a}{b}$ .

23. The lines

$$b^2hx + a^2ky = a^2b^2, \text{ and } my - m^2x = -\frac{b^2}{2a},$$

are identical if  $\frac{m^2}{b^2h} = -\frac{m}{a^2k} = \frac{1}{2a^2}$ ;

eliminating  $m$ , we have, for the locus of  $(h, k)$ ,  $ay^2 = 2b^2x$ .

24. From equation (2) of Art. 272 if  $\tan \theta_1$  and  $\tan \theta_2$  be the roots,

$$\tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2 = \frac{2x_1y_1}{x_1^2 - a^2}, \text{ and } \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2 = \frac{y_1^2 - b^2}{x_1^2 - a^2}.$$

$$\therefore \tan (\theta_1 + \theta_2) = \frac{2x_1y_1}{x_1^2 - y_1^2 - a^2 + b^2}.$$

The equation of Art. 268 when rationalized is  $m^4b^2x^2 - 2m^3b^2xy + m^2\{a^2x^2 + b^2y^2 - (a^2 - b^2)^2\} - 2a^2xym + a^2y^2 = 0$ .

If  $m_1, m_2, m_3, m_4$  be the roots,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{the sum of the angles} &= \tan^{-1} \frac{\Sigma m_1 - \Sigma m_1m_2m_3}{1 - \Sigma m_1m_2 + m_1m_2m_3m_4} \\ &= \tan^{-1} \frac{2b^2xy - 2a^2xy}{b^2x^2 - \{a^2x^2 + b^2y^2 - (a^2 - b^2)^2\} + a^2y^2} \\ &= \tan^{-1} \frac{2xy}{x^2 - y^2 - a^2 + b^2} = \theta_1 + \theta_2, \end{aligned}$$

if the point  $(x, y)$  coincide with the point  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

25. Let  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  be the eccentric angles of the points of contact. Then since the pole of the chord of contact, viz.

$$\left\{ a \frac{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta)}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta)}, b \frac{\sin \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta)}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta)} \right\}$$

lies on the first ellipse,

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore a^4 \cos^2 \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta) + b^4 \sin^2 \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta) \\ = (a^2 + b^2)^2 \cos^2 \frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta), \dots(i) \\ \therefore a^4 \{1 + \cos(\alpha + \beta)\} + b^4 \{1 - \cos(\alpha + \beta)\} \\ = (a^2 + b^2)^2 \{1 + \cos(\alpha - \beta)\}, \end{aligned}$$

or  $a^2 \sin \alpha \sin \beta + b^2 \cos \alpha \cos \beta + \frac{a^2b^2}{a^2 + b^2} = 0. \dots(ii)$

The orthocentre is the intersection of the lines

$$a \sin \alpha (x - a \cos \beta) - b \cos \alpha (y - b \sin \beta) = 0,$$

and  $a \sin \beta (x - a \cos \alpha) - b \cos \beta (y - b \sin \alpha) = 0.$

Solving,  $ax \sin(a - \beta)$   
 $= a^2 (\sin a \cos^2 \beta - \sin \beta \cos^2 a) - b^2 \cos a \cos \beta (\sin \beta - \sin a)$   
 $= a^2 (\sin a \cos^2 \beta - \sin \beta \cos^2 a) +$   
 $\left( a^2 \sin a \sin \beta + \frac{a^2 b^2}{a^2 + b^2} \right) (\sin \beta - \sin a)$  by (ii),  
 $= a^2 \sin a - a^2 \sin \beta + \frac{a^2 b^2}{a^2 + b^2} (\sin \beta - \sin a),$   
 $= \frac{a^4}{a^2 + b^2} (\sin a - \sin \beta).$   
 $\therefore x = \frac{a^3}{a^2 + b^2} \cdot \frac{\cos \frac{a + \beta}{2}}{\cos \frac{a - \beta}{2}}; \text{ similarly } y = \frac{b^3}{a^2 + b^2} \cdot \frac{\sin \frac{a + \beta}{2}}{\cos \frac{a - \beta}{2}}.$

Now (i) is the condition that this point should lie on the second ellipse.

**26.** Let  $x \cos a + y \sin a = \sqrt{a^2 \cos^2 a + b^2 \sin^2 a} \dots(1)$   
 be the equation to any tangent.

Its second position is at right angles to its former position, and is at the same distance from the origin.

Hence its equation is

$x \cos(90^\circ + a) + y \sin(90^\circ + a) = \sqrt{a^2 \cos^2 a + b^2 \sin^2 a},$   
*i.e.*  $y \cos a - x \sin a = \sqrt{a^2 \cos^2 a + b^2 \sin^2 a} \dots\dots\dots(2)$

Subtracting (2) from (1),  $\sin a (x + y) = \cos a (y - x).$

Substituting for  $\sin a$  and  $\cos a$  in (1), we have

$x(y + x) + y(y - x) = \sqrt{a^2 (x + y)^2 + b^2 (y - x)^2},$   
*i.e.*  $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = (x^2 + y^2)(a^2 + b^2) + 2xy(a^2 - b^2),$   
 or  $(x^2 + y^2)(x^2 + y^2 - a^2 - b^2) = 2xy(a^2 - b^2).$

**27.** The second part is the same as No. 22.

Since, in the solution of that question,

$\frac{b \cos \phi}{h} = \frac{b}{a}, \therefore h = a \cos \phi.$

28. Let  $x \cos a + y \sin a = p$  be the equation to a directrix, and  $\phi$  the eccentric angle of  $P$ . Now the perpendicular from  $S$  on the directrix =  $SP$ .

$$\therefore p - ae \cos a = a - ae \cos \phi.$$

Similarly,  $p + ae \cos a = a + ae \cos \phi.$

Subtracting,  $\cos a = \cos \phi,$

so that the two values of  $a$  are  $\phi$  and  $-\phi$ ; hence the angle between the directrices =  $2\phi$ .

29. Removing the origin to the point  $(a \cos a, b \sin a)$ , the equation to the ellipse becomes

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = - \left\{ \frac{2x \cos a}{a} + \frac{2y \sin a}{b} \right\} \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

and the equation to the normal at " $a$ " becomes

$$ax \sec a = by \operatorname{cosec} a. \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

The equation to the lines joining the origin to the common points of  $lx + my = 1$  and the ellipse (i) is [Art. 122]

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = -2(lx + my) \left( \frac{x \cos a}{a} + \frac{y \sin a}{b} \right).$$

These are at right angles if

$$\frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2} = - \left\{ \frac{2l \cos a}{a} + \frac{2m \sin a}{b} \right\} \dots\dots\dots(iii)$$

Solving (ii) with  $lx + my = 1$ , we obtain

$$x = \frac{b \cos a}{lb \cos a + ma \sin a} = - \frac{2ab^2 \cos a}{a^2 + b^2},$$

and  $y = \frac{a \sin a}{lb \cos a + ma \sin a} = - \frac{2a^2b \sin a}{a^2 + b^2}$ , by (iii).

The coordinates of this point referred to the original

axes are  $x = a \cos a - \frac{2ab^2 \cos a}{a^2 + b^2} = \frac{a^3 e^2 \cos a}{a^2 + b^2},$

and  $y = b \sin a - \frac{2a^2b \sin a}{a^2 + b^2} = - \frac{a^2 b e^2 \sin a}{a^2 + b^2}.$

Eliminating  $a$  we obtain the required locus.

Also the " $m$ " of  $CP = \frac{b}{a} \tan a$ , and of  $CQ = - \frac{b}{a} \tan a.$

## Chapter 13

# THE HYPERBOLA

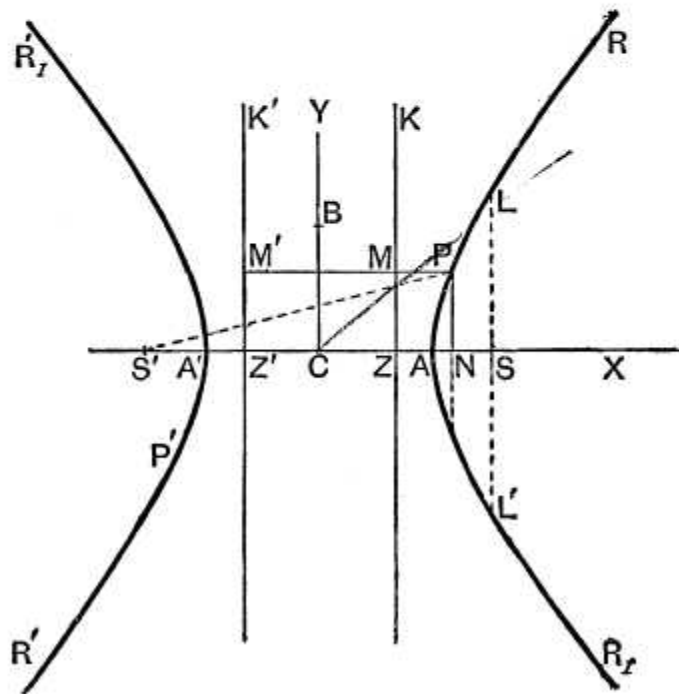
**295.** THE hyperbola is a Conic Section in which the eccentricity  $e$  is greater than unity.

*To find the equation to a hyperbola.*

Let  $ZK$  be the directrix,  $S$  the focus, and let  $SZ$  be perpendicular to the directrix.

There will be a point  $A$  on  $AZ$ , such that

$$SA = e \cdot AZ \dots\dots\dots (1).$$



Since  $e > 1$ , there will be another point  $A'$ , on  $SZ$  produced, such that

$$SA' = e \cdot A'Z \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

Let the length  $AA'$  be called  $2a$ , and let  $C$  be the middle point of  $AA'$ .

Subtracting (1) from (2), we have

$$\begin{aligned} 2a &= AA' = e \cdot A'Z - e \cdot AZ \\ &= e[CA' + CZ] - e[CA - CZ] = e \cdot 2CZ, \end{aligned}$$

*i.e.*  $CZ = \frac{a}{e} \dots \dots \dots (3).$

Adding (1) and (2), we have

$$e(AZ + A'Z) = SA' + SA = 2CS,$$

*i.e.*  $e \cdot AA' = 2 \cdot CS,$

and hence  $CS = ae \dots \dots \dots (4).$

Let  $C$  be the origin,  $CSX$  the axis of  $x$ , and a straight line  $CY$ , through  $C$  perpendicular to  $CX$ , the axis of  $y$ .

Let  $P$  be any point on the curve, whose coordinates are  $x$  and  $y$ , and let  $PM$  be the perpendicular upon the directrix, and  $PN$  the perpendicular on  $AA'$ .

The focus  $S$  is the point  $(ae, 0)$ .

The relation  $SP^2 = e^2 \cdot PM^2 = e^2 \cdot ZN^2$  then gives

$$(x - ae)^2 + y^2 = e^2 \left[ x - \frac{a}{e} \right]^2,$$

*i.e.*  $x^2 - 2aex + a^2e^2 + y^2 = e^2x^2 - 2aex + a^2.$

Hence  $x^2(e^2 - 1) - y^2 = a^2(e^2 - 1),$

*i.e.*  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{a^2(e^2 - 1)} = 1 \dots \dots \dots (5).$

Since, in the case of the hyperbola,  $e > 1$ , the quantity  $a^2(e^2 - 1)$  is positive. Let it be called  $b^2$ , so that the equation (5) becomes

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \dots \dots \dots (6),$$

where  $b^2 = a^2e^2 - a^2 = CS^2 - CA^2 \dots \dots \dots (7),$

and therefore  $CS^2 = a^2 + b^2 \dots \dots \dots (8).$

**296.** The equation (6) may be written

$$\frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{x^2}{a^2} - 1 = \frac{x^2 - a^2}{a^2} = \frac{(x - a)(x + a)}{a^2},$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{PN^2}{b^2} = \frac{AN \cdot NA'}{a^2},$$

so that  $PN^2 : AN \cdot NA' :: b^2 : a^2$ .

If we put  $x=0$  in equation (6), we have  $y^2 = -b^2$ , shewing that the curve meets the axis  $CY$  in imaginary points.

**Def.** The points  $A$  and  $A'$  are called the vertices of the hyperbola,  $C$  is the centre,  $AA'$  is the transverse axis of the curve, whilst the line  $BB'$  is called the conjugate axis, where  $B$  and  $B'$  are two points on the axis of  $y$  equidistant from  $C$ , as in the figure of Art. 315, and such that

$$B'C = CB = b.$$

**297.** Since  $S$  is the point  $(ae, 0)$ , the equation referred to the focus as origin is, by Art. 128,

$$\frac{(x + ae)^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1,$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + 2\frac{ex}{a} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} + e^2 - 1 = 0.$$

Similarly, the equations, referred to the vertex  $A$  and foot of the directrix  $Z$  respectively as origins, will be found to be

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{2x}{a} = 0,$$

and 
$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{2x}{ae} = 1 - \frac{1}{e^2}.$$

The equation to the hyperbola, whose focus, directrix, and eccentricity are any given quantities, may be written down as in the case of the ellipse (Art. 249).

**298.** *There exist a second focus and a second directrix to the curve.*

On  $SC$  produced take a point  $S'$ , such that

$$SC = CS' = ae,$$

and another point  $Z'$ , such that

$$ZC = CZ' = \frac{a}{e}.$$

Draw  $Z'M'$  perpendicular to  $AA'$ , and let  $PM$  be produced to meet it in  $M'$ .

The equation (5) of Art. 295 may be written in the form

$$x^2 + 2aex + a^2e^2 + y^2 = e^2x^2 + 2aex + a^2,$$

*i.e.* 
$$(x + ae)^2 + y^2 = e^2 \left( \frac{a}{e} + x \right)^2,$$

*i.e.* 
$$S'P^2 = e^2 (Z'C + CN)^2 = e^2 \cdot PM'^2.$$

Hence any point  $P$  of the curve is such that its distance from  $S'$  is  $e$  times its distance from  $Z'K'$ , so that we should have obtained the same curve if we had started with  $S'$  as focus,  $Z'K'$  as directrix, and the same eccentricity  $e$ .

**299.** *The difference of the focal distances of any point on the hyperbola is equal to the transverse axis.*

For (Fig., Art 295) we have

$$SP = e \cdot PM, \text{ and } S'P = e \cdot PM'.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence } S'P - SP &= e (PM' - PM) = e \cdot MM' \\ &= e \cdot ZZ' = 2e \cdot CZ = 2a \\ &= \text{the transverse axis } AA'. \end{aligned}$$

Also  $SP = e \cdot PM = e \cdot ZN = e \cdot CN - e \cdot CZ = \mathbf{ex' - a}$ ,  
and  $S'P = e \cdot PM' = e \cdot Z'N = e \cdot CN + e \cdot Z'C = \mathbf{ex' + a}$ ,  
where  $x'$  is the abscissa of the point  $P$  referred to the centre as origin.

**300.** *Latus-rectum of the Hyperbola.*

Let  $LSL'$  be the latus-rectum, *i.e.* the double ordinate of the curve drawn through  $S$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{By the definition of the curve, the semi-latus-rectum } SL &= e \text{ times the distance of } L \text{ from the directrix} \\ &= e \cdot SZ = e (CS - CZ) \\ &= e \cdot CS - eCZ = ae^2 - a = \frac{b^2}{a}, \end{aligned}$$

by equations (3), (4), and (7) of Art. 295.



**301.** *To trace the curve*

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

The equation may be written in either of the forms

$$y = \pm b \sqrt{\frac{x^2}{a^2} - 1} \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

or 
$$x = \pm a \sqrt{\frac{y^2}{b^2} + 1} \dots\dots\dots (3).$$

From (2), it follows that, if  $x^2 < a^2$ , *i.e.* if  $x$  lie between  $a$  and  $-a$ , then  $y$  is impossible. There is therefore no part of the curve between  $A$  and  $A'$ .

For all values of  $x^2 > a^2$  the equation (2) shews that there are two equal and opposite values of  $y$ , so that the curve is symmetrical with respect to the axis of  $x$ . Also, as the value of  $x$  increases, the corresponding values of  $y$  increase, until, corresponding to an infinite value of  $x$ , we have an infinite value of  $y$ .

For all values of  $y$ , the equation (3) gives two equal and opposite values to  $x$ , so that the curve is symmetrical with respect to the axis of  $y$ .

If a number of values in succession be given to  $x$ , and the corresponding values of  $y$  be determined, we shall obtain a series of points, which will all be found to lie on a curve of the shape given in the figure of Art. 295.

The curve consists of two portions, one of which extends in an infinite direction towards the positive direction of the axis of  $x$ , and the other in an infinite direction towards the negative end of this axis.

**302.** *The quantity  $\frac{x'^2}{a^2} - \frac{y'^2}{b^2} - 1$  is positive, zero, or negative, according as the point  $(x', y')$  lies within, upon, or without, the curve.*

Let  $Q$  be the point  $(x', y')$ , and let the ordinate  $QN$

through  $Q$  meet the curve in  $P$ , so that, by equation (6) of Art. 295,

$$\frac{x'^2}{a^2} - \frac{PN^2}{b^2} = 1,$$

and hence 
$$\frac{PN^2}{b^2} = \frac{x'^2}{a^2} - 1.$$

If  $Q$  be within the curve then  $y'$ , *i.e.*  $QN$ , is less than  $PN$ , so that 
$$\frac{y'^2}{b^2} < \frac{PN^2}{b^2}, \text{ i.e. } < \frac{x'^2}{a^2} - 1.$$

Hence, in this case,  $\frac{x'^2}{a^2} - \frac{y'^2}{b^2} > 0$ , *i.e.* is positive.

Similarly, if  $Q$  be without the curve, then  $y' > PN$ , and we have 
$$\frac{x'^2}{a^2} - \frac{y'^2}{b^2} - 1 \text{ negative.}$$

**303.** *To find the length of any central radius drawn in a given direction.*

The equation (6) of Art. 295, when transferred to polar coordinates, becomes

$$r^2 \left( \frac{\cos^2 \theta}{a^2} - \frac{\sin^2 \theta}{b^2} \right) = 1,$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{1}{r^2} = \frac{\cos^2 \theta}{a^2} - \frac{\sin^2 \theta}{b^2} = \frac{\cos^2 \theta}{b^2} \left( \frac{b^2}{a^2} - \tan^2 \theta \right) \dots \dots (1).$$

This is the equation giving the value of any central radius of the curve drawn at an inclination  $\theta$  to the transverse axis.

So long as  $\tan^2 \theta < \frac{b^2}{a^2}$ , the equation (1) gives two equal and opposite values of  $r$  corresponding to any value of  $\theta$ .

For values of  $\tan^2 \theta > \frac{b^2}{a^2}$ , the corresponding values of  $\frac{1}{r^2}$  are negative, and the corresponding values of  $r$  imaginary.

Any radius drawn at a greater inclination than  $\tan^{-1} \frac{b}{a}$

does not therefore meet the curve in any real points, so that all the curve is included within two straight lines drawn through  $C$  and inclined at an angle  $\pm \tan^{-1} \frac{b}{a}$  to  $CX$ .

Writing (1) in the form

$$r^2 = \frac{b^2}{\cos^2 \theta \left( \frac{b^2}{a^2} - \tan^2 \theta \right)},$$

we see that  $r$  is least when the denominator is greatest, *i.e.* when  $\theta = 0$ . The radius vector  $CA$  is therefore the least.

Also, when  $\tan \theta = \pm \frac{b}{a}$ , the value of  $r$  is infinite.

For values of  $\theta$  between 0 and  $\tan^{-1} \frac{b}{a}$  the corresponding positive values of  $r$  give the portion  $AR$  of the curve (Fig., Art. 295) and the corresponding negative values give the portion  $A'R'$ .

For values of  $\theta$  between 0 and  $-\tan^{-1} \frac{b}{a}$ , the positive values of  $R$  give the portion  $AR_1$ , and the negative values give the portion  $A'R'_1$ .

The ellipse and the hyperbola since they both have a centre  $C$ , such that all chords of the conic passing through it are bisected at it, are together called **Central Conics**.

**304.** In the hyperbola any ordinate of the curve does not meet the circle on  $AA'$  as diameter in real points. There is therefore no real eccentric angle as in the case of the ellipse.

When it is desirable to express the coordinates of any point of the curve in terms of one variable, the substitutions

$$\mathbf{x = a \sec \phi \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{y = b \tan \phi}$$

may be used; for these substitutions clearly satisfy the equation (6) of Art. 295.

The angle  $\phi$  can be easily defined geometrically.

On  $AA'$  describe the auxiliary circle, (Fig., Art. 306)

and from the foot  $N$  of any ordinate  $NP$  of the curve draw a tangent  $NU$  to this circle, and join  $CU$ . Then

$$CU = CN \cos NCU,$$

*i.e.*  $x = CN = a \sec NCU.$

The angle  $NCU$  is therefore the angle  $\phi$ .

Also  $NU = CU \tan \phi = a \tan \phi,$

so that  $NP : NU :: b : a.$

The ordinate of the hyperbola is therefore in a constant ratio to the length of the tangent drawn from its foot to the auxiliary circle.

This angle  $\phi$  is not so important an angle for the hyperbola as the eccentric angle is for the ellipse.

**305.** Since the fundamental equation to the hyperbola only differs from that to the ellipse in having  $-b^2$  instead of  $b^2$ , it will be found that many propositions for the hyperbola are derived from those for the ellipse by changing the sign of  $b^2$ .

Thus, as in Art. 260, the straight line  $y = mx + c$  meets the hyperbola in points which are real, coincident, or imaginary, according as

$$c^2 > = < a^2 m^2 - b^2.$$

As in Art. 262, the equation to the tangent at  $(x', y')$  is

$$\frac{xx'}{a^2} - \frac{yy'}{b^2} = 1.$$

As in Art. 263, the straight line

$$y = mx + \sqrt{a^2 m^2 - b^2}$$

is always a tangent.

The straight line

$$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = p$$

is a tangent, if  $p^2 = a^2 \cos^2 \alpha - b^2 \sin^2 \alpha.$

The straight line  $lx + my = n$

is a tangent, if  $n^2 = a^2 l^2 - b^2 m^2.$

[Art. 264.]



Hence, by putting  $\phi' = \phi$ , it follows that the tangent at the point  $(a \sec \phi, b \tan \phi)$  is

$$\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi = \cos \phi.$$

It could easily be shewn that the equation to the normal is

$$ax \sin \phi + by = (a^2 + b^2) \tan \phi.$$

**308.** The proposition of Art. 272 is true also for the hyperbola.

As in Art. 273, the chord of contact of tangents from  $(x_1, y_1)$  is

$$\frac{xx_1}{a^2} - \frac{yy_1}{b^2} = 1.$$

As in Art. 274, the polar of any point  $(x_1, y_1)$  is

$$\frac{xx_1}{a^2} - \frac{yy_1}{b^2} = 1.$$

As in Arts. 279 and 281, the locus of the middle points of chords, which are parallel to the diameter  $y = mx$ , is the diameter  $y = m_1x$ , where

$$mm_1 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}.$$

The proposition of Art. 278 is true for the hyperbola also, if we replace  $b^2$  by  $-b^2$ .

**309. Director circle.** The locus of the intersection of tangents which are at right angles is, as in Art. 271, found to be the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2 - b^2$ , *i.e.* a circle whose centre is the origin and whose radius is  $\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$ .

If  $b^2 < a^2$ , this circle is real.

If  $b^2 = a^2$ , the radius of the circle is zero, and it reduces to a point circle at the origin. In this case the centre is the only point from which tangents at right angles can be drawn to the curve.

If  $b^2 > a^2$ , the radius of the circle is imaginary, so that there is no such circle, and so no tangents at right angles can be drawn to the curve.

**310. Equilateral, or Rectangular, Hyperbola.**

The particular kind of hyperbola in which the lengths of the transverse and conjugate axes are equal is called an equilateral, or rectangular, hyperbola. The reason for the name "rectangular" will be seen in Art. 318.

Since, in this case,  $b = a$ , the equation to the equilateral hyperbola, referred to its centre and axes, is  $x^2 - y^2 = a^2$ .

*The eccentricity of the rectangular hyperbola is  $\sqrt{2}$ .*

For, by Art. 295, we have, in this case,

$$e^2 = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a^2} = \frac{2a^2}{a^2} = 2,$$

so that

$$e = \sqrt{2}.$$

**311. Ex.** *The perpendiculars from the centre upon the tangent and normal at any point of the hyperbola  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  meet them in Q and R. Find the loci of Q and R.*

As in Art. 308, the straight line

$$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = p$$

is a tangent, if  $p^2 = a^2 \cos^2 \alpha - b^2 \sin^2 \alpha$ .

But  $p$  and  $\alpha$  are the polar coordinates of  $Q$ , the foot of the perpendicular on this straight line from  $C$ .

The polar equation to the locus of  $Q$  is therefore

$$r^2 = a^2 \cos^2 \theta - b^2 \sin^2 \theta,$$

*i.e.*, in Cartesian coordinates,

$$(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2 x^2 - b^2 y^2.$$

If the hyperbola be rectangular, we have  $a = b$ , and the polar equation is

$$r^2 = a^2 (\cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta) = a^2 \cos 2\theta.$$

Again, by Art. 307, any normal is

$$ax \sin \phi + by = (a^2 + b^2) \tan \phi \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

The equation to the perpendicular on it from the origin is

$$bx - ay \sin \phi = 0 \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

If we eliminate  $\phi$ , we shall have the locus of  $R$ .

From (2), we have  $\sin \phi = \frac{bx}{ay}$ ,

and then  $\tan \phi = \frac{\sin \phi}{\sqrt{1 - \sin^2 \phi}} = \frac{bx}{\sqrt{a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2}}$ .

Substituting in (1) the locus is

$$(x^2 + y^2)^2 (a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2) = (a^2 + b^2)^2 x^2 y^2.$$

### EXAMPLES XXXVI

Find the equation to the hyperbola, referred to its axes as axes of coordinates,

1. whose transverse and conjugate axes are respectively 3 and 4,
2. whose conjugate axis is 5 and the distance between whose foci is 13,
3. whose conjugate axis is 7 and which passes through the point  $(3, -2)$ ,
4. the distance between whose foci is 16 and whose eccentricity is  $\sqrt{2}$ .
5. In the hyperbola  $4x^2 - 9y^2 = 36$ , find the axes, the coordinates of the foci, the eccentricity, and the latus rectum.
6. Find the equation to the hyperbola of given transverse axis whose vertex bisects the distance between the centre and the focus.
7. Find the equation to the hyperbola, whose eccentricity is  $\frac{5}{4}$ , whose focus is  $(a, 0)$ , and whose directrix is  $4x - 3y = a$ .  
Find also the coordinates of the centre and the equation to the other directrix.
8. Find the points common to the hyperbola  $25x^2 - 9y^2 = 225$  and the straight line  $25x + 12y - 45 = 0$ .
9. Find the equation of the tangent to the hyperbola  $4x^2 - 9y^2 = 1$  which is parallel to the line  $4y = 5x + 7$ .
10. Prove that a circle can be drawn through the foci of a hyperbola and the points in which any tangent meets the tangents at the vertices.
11. An ellipse and a hyperbola have the same principal axes. Shew that the polar of any point on either curve with respect to the other touches the first curve.
12. In both an ellipse and a hyperbola, prove that the focal distance of any point and the perpendicular from the centre upon the tangent at it meet on a circle whose centre is the focus and whose radius is the semi-transverse axis.
13. Prove that the straight lines  $\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} = m$  and  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = \frac{1}{m}$  always meet on the hyperbola.
14. Find the equation to, and the length of, the common tangent to the two hyperbolas  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  and  $\frac{y^2}{a^2} - \frac{x^2}{b^2} = 1$ .
15. In the hyperbola  $16x^2 - 9y^2 = 144$ , find the equation to the diameter which is conjugate to the diameter whose equation is  $x = 2y$ .



16. Find the equation to the chord of the hyperbola

$$25x^2 - 16y^2 = 400$$

which is bisected at the point (5, 3).

17. In a rectangular hyperbola, prove that

$$SP \cdot S'P = CP^2.$$

18. the distance of any point from the centre varies inversely as the perpendicular from the centre upon its polar.

19. if the normal at  $P$  meet the axes in  $G$  and  $g$ , then  $PG = Pg = PC$ .

20. the angle subtended by any chord at the centre is the supplement of the angle between the tangents at the ends of the chord.

21. the angles subtended at its vertices by any chord which is parallel to its conjugate axis are supplementary.

22. The normal to the hyperbola  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  meets the axes in  $M$  and  $N$ , and lines  $MP$  and  $NP$  are drawn at right angles to the axes; prove that the locus of  $P$  is the hyperbola

$$a^2x^2 - b^2y^2 = (a^2 + b^2)^2.$$

23. If one axis of a varying central conic be fixed in magnitude and position, prove that the locus of the point of contact of a tangent drawn to it from a fixed point on the other axis is a parabola.

24. If the ordinate  $MP$  of a hyperbola be produced to  $Q$ , so that  $MQ$  is equal to either of the focal distances of  $P$ , prove that the locus of  $Q$  is one or other of a pair of parallel straight lines.

25. Shew that the locus of the centre of a circle which touches externally two given circles is a hyperbola.

26. On a level plain the crack of the rifle and the thud of the ball striking the target are heard at the same instant; prove that the locus of the hearer is a hyperbola.

27. Given the base of a triangle and the ratio of the tangents of half the base angles, prove that the vertex moves on a hyperbola whose foci are the extremities of the base.

28. Prove that the locus of the poles of normal chords with respect to the hyperbola  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  is the curve

$$y^2a^6 - x^2b^6 = (a^2 + b^2)^2 x^2y^2.$$

29. Find the locus of the pole of a chord of the hyperbola which subtends a right angle at (1) the centre, (2) the vertex, and (3) the focus of the curve.

30. Shew that the locus of poles with respect to the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  of tangents to the hyperbola  $x^2 - y^2 = a^2$  is the ellipse  $4x^2 + y^2 = 4a^2$ .

31. Prove that the locus of the pole with respect to the hyperbola  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  of any tangent to the circle, whose diameter is the line joining the foci, is the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^4} + \frac{y^2}{b^4} = \frac{1}{a^2 + b^2}$ .

32. Prove that the locus of the intersection of tangents to a hyperbola, which meet at a constant angle  $\beta$ , is the curve

$$(x^2 + y^2 + b^2 - a^2)^2 = 4 \cot^2 \beta (a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2 + a^2 b^2).$$

33. From points on the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  tangents are drawn to the hyperbola  $x^2 - y^2 = a^2$ ; prove that the locus of the middle points of the chords of contact is the curve

$$(x^2 - y^2)^2 = a^2 (x^2 + y^2).$$

34. Chords of a hyperbola are drawn, all passing through the fixed point  $(h, k)$ ; prove that the locus of their middle points is a hyperbola whose centre is the point  $\left(\frac{h}{2}, \frac{k}{2}\right)$ , and which is similar to either the hyperbola or its conjugate.

## ANSWERS

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. $16x^2 - 9y^2 = 36$ .  | 2. $25x^2 - 144y^2 = 900$ .                     |
| 3. $65x^2 - 36y^2 = 441$ .  | 4. $x^2 - y^2 = 32$ .                           |
| 5. 6, 4, $(\pm\sqrt{13}, 0)$ , $2\frac{2}{3}$ .   | 6. $3x^2 - y^2 = 3a^2$ .                        |
| 7. $7y^2 + 24xy - 24ax - 6ay + 15a^2 = 0$ ; $\left(-\frac{a}{3}, a\right)$ ; $12x - 9y + 29a = 0$ . |   |
| 8. $(5, -\frac{20}{3})$ .   | 9. $24y - 30x = \pm\sqrt{161}$ .                |
| 14. $y = \pm x \pm \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$ ; $(a^2 + b^2) \sqrt{\frac{2}{a^2 - b^2}}$ .                   |   |
| 15. $9y = 32x$ .  | 16. $125x - 48y = 481$ .                        |
| 29. (1) $b^4 x^2 + a^4 y^2 = a^2 b^2 (b^2 - a^2)$ ;   | (2) $x = a \cdot \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2 + b^2}$ ; |
| (3) $x^2 (a^2 + 2b^2) - a^2 y^2 - 2a^3 ex + a^2 (a^2 - b^2) = 0$ .                                  |   |

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1.  $\frac{x^2}{(1\frac{1}{2})^2} - \frac{y^2}{2^2} = 1$  or  $16x^2 - 9y^2 = 36$ .
2.  $b = \frac{5}{2}$ , and  $a^2 + b^2 = \frac{149}{4}$ ;  $\therefore a^2 = 36$  and  $a = 6$ .

Hence the equation is  $\frac{x^2}{36} - \frac{y^2}{\left(\frac{5}{2}\right)^2} = 1$ , etc.

3. If  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{\left(3\frac{1}{2}\right)^2} = 1$  passes through  $(3, -2)$ ,

$$\text{then } \frac{9}{a^2} - \frac{4}{\left(3\frac{1}{2}\right)^2} = 1, \text{ whence } a^2 = \frac{9 \times 49}{65},$$

and the equation becomes  $65x^2 - 36y^2 = 441$ .

4.  $a^2e^2 = a^2 + b^2 = 8^2$ ;  $\therefore a^2 = \frac{64}{2} = 32$ .

$\therefore b^2 = 32$ , and the equation is  $x^2 - y^2 = 32$ .

5.  $\frac{x^2}{9} - \frac{y^2}{4} = 1$ . Hence the transverse axis = 6, and the

conjugate axis = 4.

$$\therefore e^2 = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a^2} = \frac{9 + 4}{9} = \frac{13}{9}; \quad \therefore e = \frac{1}{3} \sqrt{13};$$

$\therefore$  the foci are  $(\pm \sqrt{13}, 0)$ , and the latus rectum =  $2 \frac{b^2}{a} = \frac{8}{3}$ .

6. If  $2a = ae$ ,  $e = 2$ , and  $b^2 = a^2e^2 - a^2 = 3a^2$ .

Hence the required equation is  $3x^2 - y^2 = 3a^2$ .

7.  $(x-a)^2 + y^2 = \frac{25}{16} \left( \frac{4x-3y-a}{\sqrt{4^2+3^2}} \right)^2$ , etc.

Let  $S$  be the focus  $(a, 0)$ . Then the equation of the axis  $SX$  (viz. the line through  $(a, 0)$  perpendicular to the directrix) is  $3x + 4y = 3a$ .

Solving, the coordinates of  $X$  are  $\left(\frac{13a}{25}, \frac{9a}{25}\right)$ . The coordinates of the centre  $C$  (which divides  $SX$  externally so that  $CX : CS = 1 : e^2 = 16 : 25$ ) are [Art. 22]

$$\frac{16a - 13a}{16 - 25}, \text{ and } \frac{0 - 9a}{16 - 25}, \text{ or } \left(-\frac{a}{3}, a\right).$$

Also, if  $(h, k)$  be the coordinates of  $X'$ ,

$$h + \frac{13a}{25} = -\frac{2a}{3}, \text{ and } k + \frac{9a}{25} = 2a,$$

whence  $h = -\frac{89a}{75}$  and  $k = \frac{41a}{25}$ ;

also the equation of the line through this point parallel to the directrix is

$$4\left(x + \frac{89a}{75}\right) - 3\left(y - \frac{41a}{25}\right) = 0, \text{ or } 12x - 9y + 29a = 0.$$

8. The abscissae are given by

$$25x^2 - \left(\frac{45 - 25x}{4}\right)^2 = 225, \text{ or } x^2 - \left(\frac{9 - 5x}{4}\right)^2 = 9,$$

*i.e.*  $x^2 - 10x + 25 = 0$ , which has equal roots, each 5, and

$$y = \frac{45 - 25x}{12} = -\frac{20}{3}.$$

9. The intersections of the line  $4y = 5x + c$  with the hyperbola, are given by

$$4x^2 - 9\left(\frac{5x + c}{4}\right)^2 = 1, \text{ or } 161x^2 + 90cx + 9c^2 + 16 = 0,$$

which has equal roots if  $(45c)^2 = 161(9c^2 + 16)$ ;

whence  $c = \pm \frac{\sqrt{161}}{6}$ , etc.

10. Putting  $x = a$  and  $x = -a$  in the equation of a tangent in Art. 307, the points in which it cuts the tangents at the vertices are

$$\left(a, b \tan \frac{\phi}{2}\right) \text{ and } \left(-a, -b \cot \frac{\phi}{2}\right).$$

The locus of points equidistant from  $(ae, 0)$  and

$$\left(a, b \tan \frac{\phi}{2}\right)$$

is  $(x - a)^2 + \left(y - b \tan \frac{\phi}{2}\right)^2 = (x - ae)^2 + y^2$ ,

or  $(ae - a)(2x - a - ae) = b \tan \frac{\phi}{2} \left(2y - b \tan \frac{\phi}{2}\right)$ ,

and similarly the points equidistant from  $(-ae, 0)$  and  $(-a, -b \cot \frac{\phi}{2})$  lie on the line

$$(ae - a)(2x + a + ae) = b \cot \frac{\phi}{2} \left( 2y + b \cot \frac{\phi}{2} \right).$$

Each of these lines cuts the axis of  $y$  in the same point, viz. where  $y = \frac{b}{2} \left( \tan \frac{\phi}{2} - \cot \frac{\phi}{2} \right)$ .

Also this point is equidistant from the two foci and thus from all four points. Hence, etc.

11. The polar of  $(a \sec \phi, b \tan \phi)$  with respect to the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  is  $\frac{x}{a} \sec \phi + \frac{y}{b} \tan \phi = 1$ , which touches the hyperbola  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  at the point  $-\phi$ . [Art. 307.]

Similarly  $\frac{x}{a} \cos \phi - \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi = 1$ , which is the polar of a point  $(a \cos \phi, b \sin \phi)$  on the ellipse with respect to the hyperbola, touches the ellipse at the point whose eccentric angle is  $-\phi$ .

12. The equation of the line joining the points

$$(a \sec \phi, b \tan \phi) \text{ and } (ae, 0),$$

is

$$\frac{x - ae}{a \sec \phi - ae} = \frac{y}{b \tan \phi},$$

or

$$y = \frac{b}{a} \cdot \frac{\sin \phi}{1 - e \cos \phi} (x - ae), \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

and the equation of the perpendicular from the centre upon

$$\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi = \cos \phi, \text{ is}$$

$$\sin \phi = -\frac{by}{ax}. \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

Substituting for  $\sin \phi$  in (1), we have  $\cos \phi = \frac{aex - b^2}{ax}$ .

∴ the required locus is

$$(aex - b^2)^2 + b^2 y^2 = a^2 x^2, \text{ or } (x - ae)^2 + y^2 = a^2.$$

Similarly for the ellipse.

13. Multiplying, we have  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ .

14. The line  $bx - ay \sin \phi = ab \cos \phi$ , which, by Art. 307, is any tangent to the first hyperbola, will touch the second if [Art. 305]

$$a^2 b^2 \cos^2 \phi = a^4 \sin^2 \phi - b^4, \text{ whence } \tan^2 \phi = \frac{b^2}{a^2 - b^2}.$$

$$\therefore \sin \phi = \pm \frac{b}{a}, \text{ and } \cos \phi = \pm \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}{a}.$$

Substituting, the equation becomes  $y = \pm x \mp \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$ .

If  $\phi < \frac{\pi}{2}$ , we take the upper sign for  $\sin \phi$  and  $\cos \phi$ , and the equation to the common tangent is  $y = x - \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$ .

Solving with the second hyperbola, the point of contact is

$$\left( -\frac{b^2}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}, -\frac{a^2}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \right);$$

and the point of contact with the first hyperbola is

$$\left( \frac{a^2}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}, \frac{b^2}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \right).$$

Hence the length of the common tangent

$$= (a^2 + b^2) \sqrt{\frac{2}{a^2 - b^2}}.$$

15. The line is  $y = mx$ , where  $m \cdot \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{9}$ , [Art. 308].

$$\therefore m = \frac{2}{9}.$$

16. The required equation is [Art. 280]

$$\frac{5}{25}(x - 5) - \frac{3}{16}(y - 3) = 0, \text{ or } 125x - 48y = 481.$$

17. If  $P$  be the point  $\phi$ ; then, since  $e = \sqrt{2}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} SP \cdot S'P &= \{ea \sec \phi - a\} \{ea \sec \phi + a\} = 2a^2 \sec^2 \phi - a^2 \\ &= a^2 (2 \sec^2 \phi - 1) = a^2 \sec^2 \phi + a^2 \tan^2 \phi = CP^2. \end{aligned}$$

**18.** The perpendicular from  $(0, 0)$  upon the polar of  $(h, k)$  with respect to the hyperbola  $x^2 - y^2 = a^2$ ,

*i.e.* the line  $xh - yk = a^2$ , is  $\frac{a^2}{\sqrt{h^2 + k^2}}$ . Hence, etc.

**19.** The equation of the normal (Art. 307) becomes (when  $a = b$ )  $x \sin \phi + y = 2a \tan \phi$ .

Hence  $CG = 2a \sec \phi$ , and  $Cg = 2a \tan \phi$ .

$$\therefore PG^2 = a^2 \sec^2 \phi + b^2 \tan^2 \phi = Pg^2 = PC^2.$$

**20.** Let the two points  $P$  and  $Q$  be  $(a \sec \phi, a \tan \phi)$  and  $(a \sec \theta, a \tan \theta)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{The angle } P\hat{C}Q &= \tan^{-1}(\sin \phi) - \tan^{-1}(\sin \theta) \\ &= \tan^{-1} \frac{\sin \phi - \sin \theta}{1 + \sin \phi \sin \theta}. \end{aligned}$$

The angle between the tangents at  $P$  and  $Q$

$$= \tan^{-1}(\operatorname{cosec} \phi) - \tan^{-1}(\operatorname{cosec} \theta) \quad [\text{Art. 307}]$$

$$= \tan^{-1} \frac{\sin \theta - \sin \phi}{1 + \sin \theta \sin \phi} = \pi - P\hat{C}Q.$$

$$\mathbf{21.} \quad \tan PAN = \frac{a \tan \phi}{a \sec \phi - a} = \frac{\sin \phi}{1 - \cos \phi},$$

and  $\tan PA'N = \frac{a \tan \phi}{a \sec \phi + a} = \frac{\sin \phi}{1 + \cos \phi}.$

$$\therefore \tan PAN \cdot \tan PA'N = \frac{\sin^2 \phi}{1 - \cos^2 \phi} = 1.$$

$\therefore \angle PAN$  and  $\angle PA'N$  are complementary.

So  $\angle P'AN$  and  $\angle PA'N$  are complementary. Hence, etc.

**22.** The coordinates  $(x', y')$  of  $P$  are found by putting  $x$  and  $y = 0$  in the equation of the normal in Art. 307.

$$\therefore x' = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a} \sec \phi, \text{ and } y' = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{b} \tan \phi.$$

Eliminating  $\phi$ , we have

$$\therefore a^2 x'^2 - b^2 y'^2 = (a^2 + b^2)^2. \quad \therefore \text{etc.}$$

**23.** Let the transverse axis be fixed. Putting  $x = 0$  in the equation of the tangent in Art. 307,

$$b \cot \phi = \text{cons.} = c,$$

and  $x = a \sec \phi, y = b \tan \phi.$

Eliminating  $\phi$  and  $b,$

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y}{c} = \sec^2 \phi - \tan^2 \phi = 1,$$

which is a parabola. Similarly for the ellipse.

**24.** The coordinates of  $Q,$  if  $P$  is the point

$$(a \sec \phi, b \tan \phi)$$

are  $x = a \sec \phi, y = +ea \sec \phi \pm a,$  whence  $y = ex \pm a.$

**25.** Let  $a$  and  $b$  be the radii of the given circles whose centres are  $S$  and  $S'$ ;  $P$  the centre of the variable circle, and  $r$  its radius.

$$\text{Then } PS \sim PS' = (a + r) \sim (b + r) = a \sim b.$$

$\therefore$  the locus of  $P$  is a hyperbola whose foci are  $S$  and  $S'$  [Art. 299].

**26.** Let  $S$  be the target,  $S'$  the firing-point, and  $P$  the hearer. Let  $v$  and  $v'$  be the velocities of the bullet and sound respectively. Then since the time of sound from  $S'$  to  $P$

= time of bullet from  $S'$  to  $S$  + time of sound from  $S$  to  $P,$

$$\therefore \frac{S'P}{v'} = \frac{SS'}{v} + \frac{SP}{v'}.$$

$$\therefore S'P - SP = \frac{v'}{v} \cdot SS' = \text{constant.}$$

$\therefore$  the locus of  $P$  is a hyperbola [Art. 299].

**27.** Let  $ABC$  be the  $\triangle$ ; since

$$\tan \frac{B}{2} = \frac{r}{s-b}, \text{ and } \tan \frac{C}{2} = \frac{r}{s-c},$$

$$\therefore \frac{s-b}{s-c} = \text{constant.} \quad \therefore \frac{a+c-b}{a+b-c} = \text{constant.}$$

$$\therefore \frac{a}{b-c} = \text{constant.} \quad \therefore b-c = \text{constant.}$$

$\therefore$  the locus of  $A$  is a hyperbola whose foci are  $B$  and  $C.$



28. The lines  $ax \sin \phi + by = (a^2 + b^2) \tan \phi$ , and  $b^2xh - a^2yk = a^2b^2$ ,

which is the polar of  $(h, k)$ , are identical if

$$\frac{a \sin \phi}{b^2h} = -\frac{b}{a^2k} = \frac{(a^2 + b^2) \tan \phi}{a^2b^2};$$

$$\therefore \operatorname{cosec} \phi = -\frac{a^3k}{b^3h}, \text{ and } \cot \phi = -\frac{(a^2 + b^2)kh}{b^3h}.$$

$$\therefore a^6k^2 - b^6h^2 = (a^2 + b^2)^2 h^2k^2, \text{ etc.}$$

29. (1) The lines joining the origin to the common points of the line  $b^2xh - a^2yk = a^2b^2$  and the hyperbola are

$$(b^2xh - a^2yk)^2 = a^2b^2 (b^2x^2 - a^2y^2).$$

If they are at right angles, then

$$b^4h^2 + a^4k^2 = a^2b^2 (b^2 - a^2).$$

(2) Removing the origin to the point  $(a, 0)$  the equation to the hyperbola becomes  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = -\frac{2x}{a}$ , and the polar of  $(h, k)$  becomes  $b^2xh - a^2yk = a^2b^2 - ab^2h$ .

The equation of the lines joining the origin to their common points is

$$(a^2b^2 - ab^2h) (b^2x^2 - a^2y^2) = -2ab^2x (b^2xh - a^2yk),$$

or  $(a - h) (b^2x^2 - a^2y^2) = -2x (b^2xh - a^2yk).$

They are at right angles if

$$(a - h) (b^2 - a^2) = -2b^2h, \text{ or } h (b^2 + a^2) = a (a^2 - b^2).$$

(3) On moving the origin to the point  $(ae, 0)$ , the equations to the ellipse and the polar of  $(h, k)$  become

$$b^2x^2 - a^2y^2 + 2aeb^2x + b^4 = 0, \dots\dots\dots (i)$$

and  $b^2xh - a^2yk = b^2a (a - eh), \dots\dots\dots (ii)$

and the equation of the lines joining the origin to their common points is

$$a^2 (b^2x^2 - a^2y^2) (a - eh)^2 + 2a^2ex (a - eh) (b^2xh - a^2yk) + (b^2xh - a^2yk)^2 = 0.$$

These are at right angles if

$$a^2 (b^2 - a^2) (a - eh)^2 + 2a^2b^2eh (a - eh) + b^4h^2 + a^4k^2 = 0,$$

which reduces to  $h^2 (a^2 + 2b^2) - a^2k^2 - 2a^3eh + a^2 (a^2 - b^2) = 0.$

30. The lines  $2ax - yk + 2ah = 0$ , and

$$x - y \sin \phi - a \cos \phi = 0,$$

are coincident if  $2a = \frac{k}{\sin \phi} = -\frac{2h}{\cos \phi}$ .

Eliminating  $\phi$ , we have  $k^2 + 4h^2 = 4a^2$ .

31. The lines  $x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = ae$ , and

$$b^2xh - a^2yk = a^2b^2$$

are coincident if  $\frac{\cos \theta}{b^2h} = -\frac{\sin \theta}{a^2k} = \frac{ae}{a^2b^2}$ .

Eliminating  $\theta$ , we have  $\frac{h^2}{a^4} + \frac{k^2}{b^4} = \frac{1}{a^2e^2} = \frac{1}{a^2 + b^2}$ .

32. Take equation (2) of Art. 272 and change  $b^2$  into  $-b^2$ . Then if  $\tan \theta_1$  and  $\tan \theta_2$  are the roots,

$$\tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2 = \frac{2x_1y_1}{x_1^2 - a^2}, \text{ and } \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2 = \frac{y_1^2 + b^2}{x_1^2 - a^2};$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore (\tan \theta_1 - \tan \theta_2)^2 &= \frac{4x_1^2y_1^2 - 4(y_1^2 + b^2)(x_1^2 - a^2)}{(x_1^2 - a^2)^2} \\ &= \frac{4(a^2y_1^2 - b^2x_1^2 + a^2b^2)}{(x_1^2 - a^2)^2}. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \cot^2 \beta = \frac{(1 + \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2)^2}{(\tan \theta_1 - \tan \theta_2)^2} = \frac{(x_1^2 + y_1^2 + b^2 - a^2)^2}{4(a^2y_1^2 - b^2x_1^2 + a^2b^2)}, \text{ etc.}$$

33. The equation of Art. 280, on putting  $b^2 = -a^2$ , becomes  $hx - ky = h^2 - k^2$ .

If this is coincident with  $x \cos \theta - y \sin \theta = a$ , *i.e.* the polar of any point  $(a \cos \theta, a \sin \theta)$  on the circle with respect to the hyperbola, then

$$\frac{\cos \theta}{h} = \frac{\sin \theta}{k} = \frac{a}{h^2 - k^2}.$$

Eliminating  $\theta$ , we have  $(h^2 - k^2)^2 = a^2(h^2 + k^2)$ .

34. The chord whose middle point is  $(x_1, y_1)$  passes through the point  $(h, k)$  if

$$\frac{y_1}{b^2}(k - y_1) = \frac{x_1}{a^2}(h - x_1) \dots [\text{cf. Art. 280}]$$

which is equivalent to

$$\frac{\left(x_1 - \frac{h}{2}\right)^2}{a^2} - \frac{\left(y_1 - \frac{k}{2}\right)^2}{b^2} = \frac{1}{4} \left\{ \frac{h^2}{a^2} - \frac{k^2}{b^2} \right\}.$$

This is a hyperbola, whose centre is  $\left(\frac{h}{2}, \frac{k}{2}\right)$ , and which is similar to the given hyperbola or its conjugate according as the right-hand member,  $\frac{h^2}{a^2} - \frac{k^2}{b^2}$ , is positive or negative.

**312. Asymptote. Def.** An asymptote is a straight line, which meets the conic in two points both of which are situated at an infinite distance, but which is itself not altogether at infinity.

**313.** *To find the asymptotes of the hyperbola*

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

As in Art. 260, the straight line

$$y = mx + c \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

meets the hyperbola in points, whose abscissae are given by the equation

$$x^2 (b^2 - a^2 m^2) - 2a^2 m c x - a^2 (c^2 + b^2) = 0 \dots\dots (2).$$

If the straight line (1) be an asymptote, both roots of (2) must be infinite.

Hence (C. Smith's Algebra, Art. 123), the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $x$  in it must both be zero.

We therefore have

$$b^2 - a^2 m^2 = 0, \text{ and } a^2 m c = 0.$$

Hence  $m = \pm \frac{b}{a}$ , and  $c = 0$ .

Substituting these values in (1), we have, as the required equation,

$$y = \pm \frac{b}{a} x.$$

There are therefore two asymptotes both passing through the centre and equally inclined to the axis of  $x$ , the inclination being

$$\tan^{-1} \frac{b}{a}.$$

The equation to the asymptotes, written as one equation, is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 0.$$

**Cor.** For all values of  $c$  one root of equation (2) is infinite if  $m = \pm \frac{b}{a}$ . Hence any straight line, which is parallel to an asymptote, meets the curve in one point at infinity and in one finite point.

**314.** That the asymptote passes through two coincident points at infinity, *i.e.* touches the curve at infinity, may be seen by finding the equations to the tangents to the curve which pass through any point  $(x_1, \frac{b}{a}x_1)$  on the asymptote  $y = \frac{b}{a}x$ .

As in Art. 305 the equation to either tangent through this point is

$$y = mx + \sqrt{a^2m^2 - b^2},$$

where  $\frac{b}{a}x_1 = mx_1 + \sqrt{a^2m^2 - b^2}$ ,

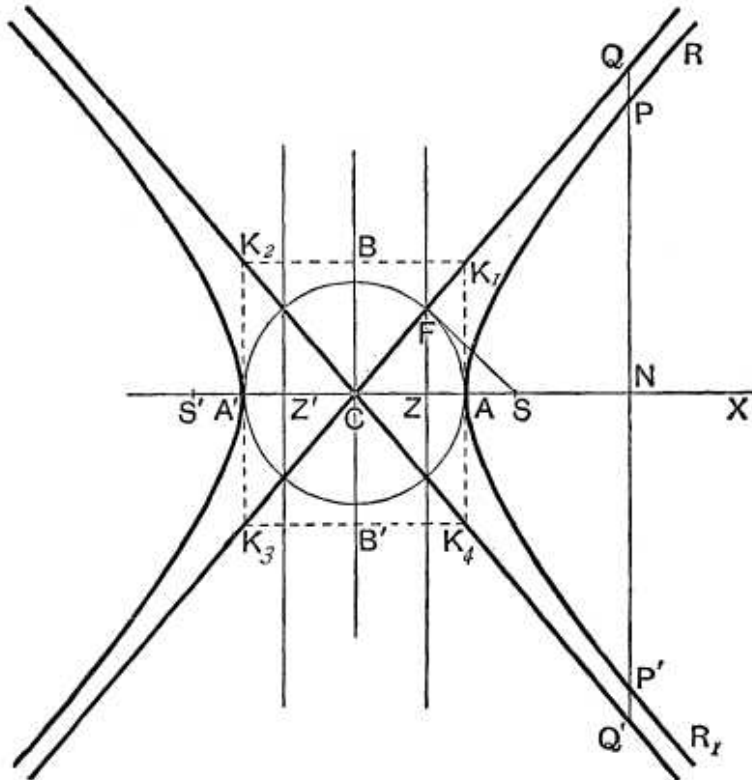
*i.e.* on clearing of surds,

$$m^2(x_1^2 - a^2) - 2m\frac{b}{a}x_1^2 + (x_1^2 + a^2)\frac{b^2}{a^2} = 0.$$

One root of this equation is  $m = \frac{b}{a}$ , so that one tangent through the given point is  $y = \frac{b}{a}x$ , *i.e.* the asymptote itself.

**315.** *Geometrical construction for the asymptotes.*

Let  $A'A$  be the transverse axis, and along the conjugate axis measure off  $CB$  and  $CB'$ , each equal to  $b$ . Through  $B$  and  $B'$  draw parallels to the transverse axis and through  $A$  and  $A'$  parallels to the conjugate axis, and let these meet respectively in  $K_1, K_2, K_3,$  and  $K_4$ , as in the figure.



Clearly the equations of  $K_1CK_3$  and  $K_2CK_4$  are

$$y = \frac{b}{a} x, \text{ and } y = -\frac{b}{a} x,$$

and these are therefore the equations of the asymptotes.

**316.** Let any double ordinate  $PNP'$  of the hyperbola be produced both ways to meet the asymptotes in  $Q$  and  $Q'$ , and let the abscissa  $CN$  be  $x'$ .

Since  $P$  lies on the curve, we have, by Art. 302,

$$NP = \frac{b}{a} \sqrt{x'^2 - a^2}.$$

Since  $Q$  is on the asymptote whose equation is  $y = \frac{b}{a}x$ ,  
we have 
$$NQ = \frac{b}{a}x$$

Hence 
$$PQ = NQ - NP = \frac{b}{a}(x' - \sqrt{x'^2 - a^2}),$$

and 
$$P'Q = \frac{b}{a}(x' + \sqrt{x'^2 - a^2}).$$

Therefore 
$$PQ \cdot P'Q = \frac{b^2}{a^2}\{x'^2 - (x'^2 - a^2)\} = b^2.$$

Hence, if from any point on an asymptote a straight line be drawn perpendicular to the transverse axis, the product of the segments of this line, intercepted between the point and the curve, is always equal to the square on the semi-conjugate axis.

Again,

$$\begin{aligned} PQ &= \frac{b}{a}(x' - \sqrt{x'^2 - a^2}) = \frac{b}{a} \frac{a^2}{x' + \sqrt{x'^2 - a^2}} \\ &= \frac{ab}{x' + \sqrt{x'^2 - a^2}}. \end{aligned}$$

$PQ$  is therefore always positive, and therefore the part of the curve, for which the coordinates are positive, is altogether between the asymptote and the transverse axis.

Also as  $x'$  increases, *i.e.* as the point  $P$  is taken further and further from the centre  $C$ , it is clear that  $PQ$  continually decreases; finally, when  $x'$  is infinitely great,  $PQ$  is infinitely small.

The curve therefore continually approaches the asymptote but never actually reaches it, although, at a very great distance, the curve would not be distinguishable from the asymptote.

This property is sometimes taken as the definition of an asymptote.

**317.** If  $SF$  be the perpendicular from  $S$  upon an asymptote, the point  $F$  lies on the auxiliary circle. This

follows from the fact that the asymptote is a tangent, whose point of contact happens to lie at infinity, or it may be proved directly.

For

$$CF = CS \cos FCS = CS \cdot \frac{CA}{CK} = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \cdot \frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} = a.$$

Also  $Z$  being the foot of the directrix, we have

$$CA^2 = CS \cdot CZ, \quad (\text{Art. 295})$$

and hence  $CF^2 = CS \cdot CZ$ , i.e.  $CS : CF :: CF : CZ$ .

By Euc. VI. 6, it follows that  $\angle CZF = \angle CFS =$  a right angle, and hence that  $F$  lies on the directrix.

Hence *the perpendiculars from the foci on either asymptote meet it in the same points as the corresponding directrix, and the common points of intersection lie on the auxiliary circle.*

**318. Equilateral or Rectangular Hyperbola.**

In this curve (Art. 310) the quantities  $a$  and  $b$  are equal. The equations to the asymptotes are therefore  $y = \pm x$ , i.e. they are inclined at angles  $\pm 45^\circ$  to the axis of  $x$ , and hence they are at right angles. Hence the hyperbola is generally called a **rectangular** hyperbola.

**319. Conjugate Hyperbola.**

The hyperbola which has  $BB'$  as its transverse axis, and  $AA'$  as its conjugate axis, is said to be the conjugate hyperbola of the hyperbola whose transverse and conjugate axes are respectively  $AA'$  and  $BB'$ .

Thus the hyperbola

$$\frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

is conjugate to the hyperbola

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

Just as in Art. 313, the equation to the asymptotes of

(1) is  $\frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = 0,$

which, by the same article, is the equation to the asymptotes of (2).

Thus a hyperbola and its conjugate have the same asymptotes.

The conjugate hyperbola is the dotted curve in the figure of Art. 323.

**320.** *Intersections of a hyperbola with a pair of conjugate diameters.*

The straight line  $y = m_1x$  intersects the hyperbola

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$$

in points whose abscissæ are given by

$$x^2 \left[ \frac{1}{a^2} - \frac{m_1^2}{b^2} \right] = 1,$$

*i.e.* by the equation  $x^2 = \frac{a^2b^2}{b^2 - a^2m_1^2}$ .

The points are therefore real or imaginary, according as

$$a^2m_1^2 \text{ is } < \text{ or } > b^2,$$

*i.e.* according as

$$m_1 \text{ is numerically } < \text{ or } > \frac{b}{a} \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

*i.e.* according as the inclination of the straight line to the axis of  $x$  is less or greater than the inclination of the asymptotes.

Now, by Art. 308, the straight lines  $y = m_1x$  and  $y = m_2x$  are conjugate diameters if

$$m_1m_2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2} \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

Hence one of the quantities  $m_1$  and  $m_2$  must be less than  $\frac{b}{a}$  and the other greater than  $\frac{b}{a}$ .

Let  $m_1$  be  $< \frac{b}{a}$ , so that, by (1), the straight line  $y = m_1x$  meets the hyperbola in real points.



Then, by (2),  $m_2$  must be  $> \frac{b}{a}$ , so that, by (1), the straight line  $y = m_2x$  will meet the hyperbola in imaginary points.

It follows therefore that only one of a pair of conjugate diameters meets a hyperbola in real points.

**321.** *If a pair of diameters be conjugate with respect to a hyperbola, they will be conjugate with respect to its conjugate hyperbola.*

For the straight lines  $y = m_1x$  and  $y = m_2x$  are conjugate with respect to the hyperbola

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

if  $m_1m_2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2} \dots\dots\dots(2).$

Now the equation to the conjugate hyperbola only differs from (1) in having  $-a^2$  instead of  $a^2$  and  $-b^2$  instead of  $b^2$ , so that the above pair of straight lines will be conjugate with respect to it, if

$$m_1m_2 = \frac{-b^2}{-a^2} = \frac{b^2}{a^2} \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

But the relation (3) is the same as (2).  
Hence the proposition.

**322.** *If a pair of diameters be conjugate with respect to a hyperbola, one of them meets the hyperbola in real points and the other meets the conjugate hyperbola in real points.*

Let the diameters be  $y = m_1x$  and  $y = m_2x$ , so that

$$m_1m_2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2}.$$

As in Art. 320 let  $m_1 < \frac{b}{a}$ , and hence  $m_2 > \frac{b}{a}$ , so that the straight line  $y = m_1x$  meets the hyperbola in real points.

Also the straight line  $y = m_2x$  meets the conjugate hyperbola  $\frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = 1$  in points whose abscissæ are given by the equation  $x^2 \left( \frac{m_2^2}{b^2} - \frac{1}{a^2} \right) = 1$ , i.e. by  $x^2 = \frac{a^2b^2}{m_2^2a^2 - b^2}$ .

Since  $m_2 > \frac{b}{a}$ , these abscissæ are real.

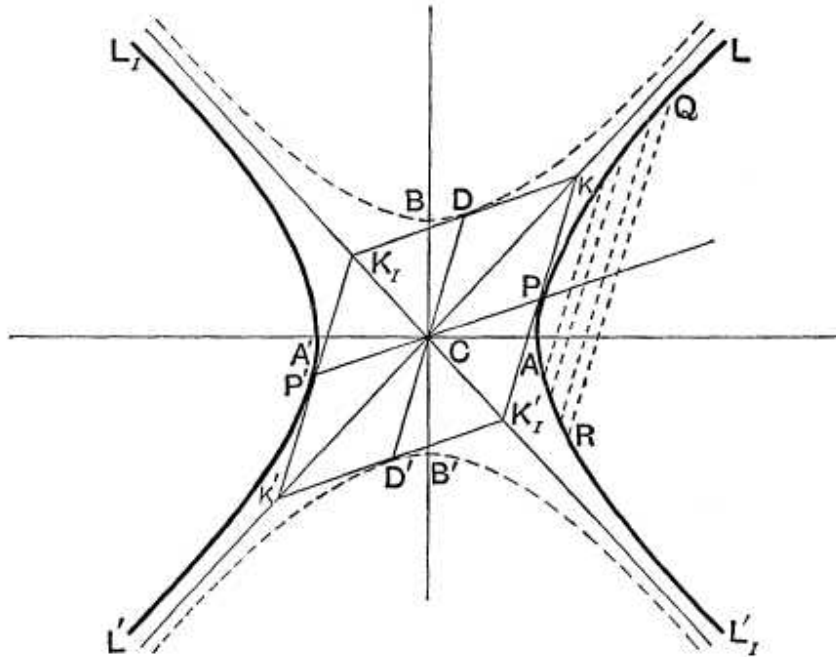
Hence the proposition.

**323.** *If a pair of conjugate diameters meet the hyperbola and its conjugate in  $P$  and  $D$ , then (1)  $CP^2 - CD^2 = a^2 - b^2$ , and (2) the tangents at  $P$ ,  $D$  and the other ends of the diameters passing through them form a parallelogram whose vertices lie on the asymptotes and whose area is constant.*

Let  $P$  be any point on the hyperbola  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  whose coordinates are  $(a \sec \phi, b \tan \phi)$ .

The equation to the diameter  $CP$  is therefore

$$y = \frac{b \tan \phi}{a \sec \phi} x = x \cdot \frac{b}{a} \sin \phi.$$



By Art. 308, the equation to the straight line, which is conjugate to  $CP$ , is

$$y = x \frac{b}{a \sin \phi}.$$

This straight line meets the conjugate hyperbola

$$\frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} = 1,$$

in the points  $(a \tan \phi, b \sec \phi)$ , and  $(-a \tan \phi, -b \sec \phi)$  so that  $D$  is the point  $(a \tan \phi, b \sec \phi)$ .

We therefore have

$$CP^2 = a^2 \sec^2 \phi + b^2 \tan^2 \phi,$$

and  $CD^2 = a^2 \tan^2 \phi + b^2 \sec^2 \phi.$

Hence

$$CP^2 - CD^2 = (a^2 - b^2) (\sec^2 \phi - \tan^2 \phi) = a^2 - b^2.$$

Again, the tangents at  $P$  and  $D$  to the hyperbola and the conjugate hyperbola are easily seen to be

$$\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi = \cos \phi, \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

and  $\frac{y}{b} - \frac{x}{a} \sin \phi = \cos \phi. \dots\dots\dots (2).$

These meet at the point

$$\frac{x}{a} = \frac{y}{b} = \frac{\cos \phi}{1 - \sin \phi}.$$

This point lies on the asymptote  $CL$ .

Similarly, the intersection of the tangents at  $P$  and  $D'$  lies on  $CL'_1$ , that of tangents at  $D'$  and  $P'$  on  $CL'$ , and those at  $D$  and  $P'$  on  $CL_1$ .

If tangents be therefore drawn at the points where a pair of conjugate diameters meet a hyperbola and its conjugate, they form a parallelogram whose angular points are on the asymptotes.

Again, the perpendicular from  $C$  on the straight line (1)

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{\cos \phi}{\sqrt{\frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2} \sin^2 \phi}} = \frac{ab \cos \phi}{\sqrt{b^2 + a^2 \sin^2 \phi}} \\ &= \frac{ab}{\sqrt{b^2 \sec^2 \phi + a^2 \tan^2 \phi}} = \frac{ab}{CD} = \frac{ab}{PK}, \end{aligned}$$

so that  $PK \times$  perpendicular from  $C$  on  $PK = ab$ ,  
*i.e.* area of the parallelogram  $CPKD = ab$ .

Also the areas of the parallelograms  $CPKD$ ,  $CDK_1P'$ ,  
 $CP'K'D'$ , and  $CD'K_1'P$  are all equal.

The area  $KK_1K'K_1'$  therefore  $= 4ab$ .

**Cor.**  $PK = CD = D'C = K_1'P$ , so that the portion of a  
tangent to a hyperbola intercepted between the asymptotes  
is bisected at the point of contact.

**324.** *Relation between the equation to the hyperbola,  
the equation to its asymptotes, and the equation to the conju-  
gate hyperbola.*

The equations to the hyperbola, the asymptotes, and the  
conjugate hyperbola are respectively

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

$$\text{and } \frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = -1 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

We notice that the equation (2) differs from equation (1)  
by a constant, and that the equation (3) differs from (2) by  
exactly the same quantity that (2) differs from (1).

If now we transform the equations in any way we  
please—by changing the origin and directions of the axes—  
by the most general substitutions of Art. 132 and by  
multiplying the equations by any—the same—constant,  
we shall alter the left-hand members of (1), (2), and (3) in  
exactly the same way, and the right-hand constants in the  
equations will still be constants, and differ in the same way  
as before.

Hence, whatever be the form of the equation to a  
hyperbola, the equation to the asymptotes only differs from  
it by a constant, and the equation to the conjugate  
hyperbola differs from that to the asymptotes by the same  
constant.

**325.** As an example of the foregoing article, let it be required to find the asymptotes of the hyperbola

$$3x^2 - 5xy - 2y^2 + 5x + 11y - 8 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Since the equation to the asymptotes only differs from it by a constant, it must be of the form

$$3x^2 - 5xy - 2y^2 + 5x + 11y + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

Since (2) represents the asymptotes it must represent two straight lines. The condition for this is (Art. 116)

$$3(-2)c + 2 \cdot \frac{5}{2} \cdot \frac{11}{2} (-\frac{5}{2}) - 3(\frac{11}{2})^2 - (-2)(\frac{5}{2})^2 - c(-\frac{5}{2})^2 = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $c = -12.$

The equation to the asymptotes is therefore

$$3x^2 - 5xy - 2y^2 + 5x + 11y - 12 = 0,$$

and the equation to the conjugate hyperbola is

$$3x^2 - 5xy - 2y^2 + 5x + 11y - 16 = 0.$$

**326.** As another example we see that the equation to any hyperbola whose asymptotes are the straight lines

$$Ax + By + C = 0 \text{ and } A_1x + B_1y + C_1 = 0,$$

is  $(Ax + By + C)(A_1x + B_1y + C_1) = \lambda^2 \dots\dots\dots(1),$

where  $\lambda$  is any constant.

For (1) only differs by a constant from the equation to the asymptotes, which is

$$(Ax + By + C)(A_1x + B_1y + C_1) = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

If in (1) we substitute  $-\lambda^2$  for  $\lambda^2$  we shall have the equation to its conjugate hyperbola.

It follows that any equation of the form

$$(Ax + By + C)(A_1x + B_1y + C_1) = \lambda^2$$

represents a hyperbola whose asymptotes are

$$Ax + By + C = 0, \text{ and } A_1x + B_1y + C_1 = 0.$$

Thus the equation  $x(x+y) = a^2$  represents a hyperbola whose asymptotes are  $x=0$  and  $x+y=0$ .

Again, the equation  $x^2 + 2xy \cot 2\alpha - y^2 = a^2,$

*i.e.*  $(x \cot \alpha - y)(x \tan \alpha + y) = a^2,$

represents a hyperbola whose asymptotes are

$$x \cot \alpha - y = 0, \text{ and } x \tan \alpha + y = 0.$$

**327.** It would follow from the preceding articles that the equation to any hyperbola whose asymptotes are  $x=0$  and  $y=0$  is  $xy = \text{const.}$

The constant could be easily determined in terms of the semi-transverse and semi-conjugate axes.

In Art. 328 we shall obtain this equation by direct transformation from the equation referred to the principal axes.

### EXAMPLES XXXVII

1. Through the positive vertex of the hyperbola a tangent is drawn; where does it meet the conjugate hyperbola?

2. If  $e$  and  $e'$  be the eccentricities of a hyperbola and its conjugate, prove that

$$\frac{1}{e^2} + \frac{1}{e'^2} = 1.$$

3. Prove that chords of a hyperbola, which touch the conjugate hyperbola, are bisected at the point of contact.

4. Shew that the chord, which joins the points in which a pair of conjugate diameters meets the hyperbola and its conjugate, is parallel to one asymptote and is bisected by the other.

5. Tangents are drawn to a hyperbola from any point on one of the branches of the conjugate hyperbola; shew that their chord of contact will touch the other branch of the conjugate hyperbola.

6. A straight line is drawn parallel to the conjugate axis of a hyperbola to meet it and the conjugate hyperbola in the points  $P$  and  $Q$ ; shew that the tangents at  $P$  and  $Q$  meet on the curve

$$\frac{y^4}{b^4} \left( \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} \right) = \frac{4x^2}{a^2}, \quad \text{and that the normals meet on the axis of } x.$$

7. From a point  $G$  on the transverse axis  $GL$  is drawn perpendicular to the asymptote, and  $GP$  a normal to the curve at  $P$ . Prove that  $LP$  is parallel to the conjugate axis.

8. Find the asymptotes of the curve  $2x^2 + 5xy + 2y^2 + 4x + 5y = 0$ , and find the general equation of all hyperbolas having the same asymptotes.

9. Find the equation to the hyperbola, whose asymptotes are the straight lines  $x + 2y + 3 = 0$ , and  $3x + 4y + 5 = 0$ , and which passes through the point  $(1, -1)$ .

Write down also the equation to the conjugate hyperbola.

10. In a rectangular hyperbola, prove that  $CP$  and  $CD$  are equal, and are inclined to the axis at angles which are complementary.

11.  $C$  is the centre of the hyperbola  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  and the tangent at any point  $P$  meets the asymptotes in the points  $Q$  and  $R$ . Prove that the equation to the locus of the centre of the circle circumscribing the triangle  $CQR$  is  $4(a^2x^2 - b^2y^2) = (a^2 + b^2)^2$ .

12. A series of hyperbolas is drawn having a common transverse axis of length  $2a$ . Prove that the locus of a point  $P$  on each hyperbola, such that its distance from the transverse axis is equal to its distance from an asymptote, is the curve  $(x^2 - y^2)^2 = 4x^2(x^2 - a^2)$ .

## ANSWERS

1. At the points  $(a, \pm b\sqrt{2})$ .
8.  $(2x + y + 2)(x + 2y + 1) = 0$ ,  $(2x + y + 2)(x + 2y + 1) = \text{const.}$
9.  $3x^2 + 10xy + 8y^2 + 14x + 22y + 7 = 0$ ;  
 $3x^2 + 10xy + 8y^2 + 14x + 22y + 23 = 0$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. The line  $x = a$  cuts the hyperbola

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = -1, \text{ where } y = \pm b\sqrt{2}.$$

2.  $e^2 = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a^2}$ , and  $e'^2 = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{b^2}$ .

3. The tangent at the point  $(a \tan \phi, b \sec \phi)$  to the conjugate hyperbola is

$$\frac{y}{b} \cdot \sec \phi - \frac{x}{a} \tan \phi = 1 = \sec^2 \phi - \tan^2 \phi,$$

or 
$$\frac{\sec \phi}{b} (y - b \sec \phi) = \frac{\tan \phi}{a} (x - a \tan \phi),$$

which is the chord of the hyperbola  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ , which is bisected at the point  $(a \tan \phi, b \sec \phi)$ . [Cf. Art. 280.]

4. By Art. 323, the coordinates of  $P$  and  $D$  are  $(a \sec \phi, b \tan \phi)$ , and  $(a \tan \phi, b \sec \phi)$ ,

$\therefore$  the "m" of  $PD = -\frac{b}{a}$ . Also the middle point of  $PQ$

viz.  $\{\frac{1}{2}a(\sec \phi + \tan \phi), \frac{1}{2}b(\sec \phi + \tan \phi)\}$

lies on the asymptote  $bx = ay$ .

5. The polar of the point  $(a \tan \phi, b \sec \phi)$  with respect to the original hyperbola is  $\frac{x}{a} \tan \phi - \frac{y}{b} \sec \phi = 1$ ,

which is a tangent to the conjugate hyperbola at the point  $(-a \tan \phi, -b \sec \phi)$ .

6. The line  $x = a \sec \phi$  meets the conjugate hyperbola

where  $y = b \sqrt{1 + \sec^2 \phi}$ .

Hence the equations of the two tangents are

$$\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi = \cos \phi, \text{ and } \frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} \sqrt{1 + \cos^2 \phi} = -\cos \phi.$$

Where these meet we therefore have

$$\frac{x}{a} - \cos \phi = \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi \dots\dots\dots (i)$$

and  $\frac{x}{a} + \cos \phi = \frac{y}{b} \sqrt{1 + \cos^2 \phi} \dots\dots\dots (ii)$

Square and add.  $\therefore \cos^2 \phi = \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2}$ .

Substitute in (ii)  $\therefore \frac{x}{a} + \sqrt{\frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2}} = \frac{y}{b} \sqrt{1 + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2}}$ .

On rationalizing, this equation becomes

$$\frac{y^4}{b^4} \left\{ \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{x^2}{a^2} \right\} = \frac{4x^2}{a^2}.$$

The equations to the normals are

$$ax \sin \phi + by = (a^2 + b^2) \tan \phi,$$

and  $ax \sqrt{1 + \cos^2 \phi} + by = (a^2 + b^2) (\sqrt{1 + \sec^2 \phi}),$

which meet on the axis of  $x$  where  $x = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a} \sec \phi.$

7. If  $P$  be the point  $(a \sec \phi, b \tan \phi)$ , then, by the last example,  $CG = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a} \sec \phi.$

$\therefore$  the equation of the line through  $G$  perpendicular to  $bx - ay = 0$  is  $ax + by = (a^2 + b^2) \sec \phi.$

Solving,  $x = a \sec \phi$ , giving the abscissa of  $L$ .

$\therefore PL$  is perpendicular to the transverse axis.

8. The equation  $2x^2 + 5xy + 2y^2 + 4x + 5y + c = 0$  represents two straight lines if

$$4c + 25 - \frac{2 \cdot 5}{2} - 8 - c \frac{2 \cdot 5}{4} = 0, \quad [\text{Art. 116}]$$

whence  $c = 2$ , etc. See Art. 326.



9. The hyperbola  $(x + 2y + 3)(3x + 4y + 5) = \lambda^2$  passes through the point  $(1, -1)$  if  $\lambda^2 = 2 \cdot 4 = 8$ . Hence etc.

The equation of the conjugate hyperbola is

$$(x + 2y + 3)(3x + 4y + 5) = -8. \quad [\text{See Art. 324.}]$$

10.  $CP^2 = CD^2 = a^2(\sec^2 \phi + \tan^2 \phi)$ . [Art. 323.]

The “ $m$ ” of  $CP$  is  $\sin \phi$ , and the “ $m$ ” of  $CD = \frac{1}{\sin \phi}$ .

Hence the inclinations of  $CP$  and  $CD$  to the transverse axis are complementary.

11. Solving  $\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi = \cos \phi$ , [Art. 307] with  $\frac{x}{a} = \frac{y}{b}$ ,

we obtain  $\left(\frac{a \cos \phi}{1 - \sin \phi}, \frac{b \cos \phi}{1 - \sin \phi}\right)$  for the coordinates of  $Q$ ,

and, similarly,  $\left(\frac{a \cos \phi}{1 + \sin \phi}, -\frac{b \cos \phi}{1 + \sin \phi}\right)$  for the coordinates of  $R$ .

The required point is the intersection of the lines

$$x^2 + y^2 = \left(x - \frac{a \cos \phi}{1 - \sin \phi}\right)^2 + \left(y - \frac{b \cos \phi}{1 - \sin \phi}\right)^2,$$

and  $x^2 + y^2 = \left(x - \frac{a \cos \phi}{1 + \sin \phi}\right)^2 + \left(y + \frac{b \cos \phi}{1 + \sin \phi}\right)^2;$

or  $2(ax + by)(1 - \sin \phi) = (a^2 + b^2) \cos \phi,$

and  $2(ax - by)(1 + \sin \phi) = (a^2 + b^2) \cos \phi.$

Multiplying, we have  $4(a^2x^2 - b^2y^2) = (a^2 + b^2)^2.$

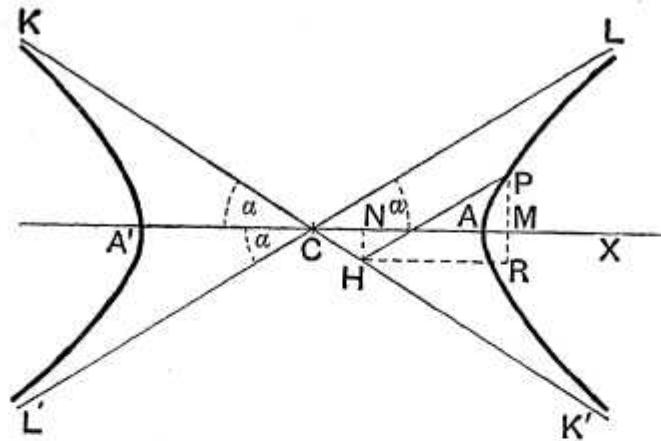
12. Let  $b^2x^2 - a^2y^2 = a^2b^2$  be the equation of one of the hyperbolas. Then, if  $(h, k)$  be the coordinates of  $P$ ,

we have  $\frac{bh - ak}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} = k$ , whence  $b = \frac{2ahk}{h^2 - k^2}.$

Also  $b^2h^2 - a^2k^2 = a^2b^2.$

$\therefore \frac{4a^2h^2k^2}{(h^2 - k^2)^2}(h^2 - a^2) = a^2k^2,$  or  $4h^2(h^2 - a^2) = (h^2 - k^2)^2.$

**328.** *To find the equation to a hyperbola referred to its asymptotes.*



Let  $P$  be any point on the hyperbola, whose equation referred to its axes is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Draw  $PH$  parallel to one asymptote  $CL$  to meet the other  $CK'$  in  $H$ , and let  $CH$  and  $HP$  be  $h$  and  $k$  respectively. Then  $h$  and  $k$  are the coordinates of  $P$  referred to the asymptotes.

Let  $a$  be the semi-angle between the asymptotes, so that, by Art. 313,  $\tan a = \frac{b}{a}$ ,

and hence 
$$\frac{\sin a}{b} = \frac{\cos a}{a} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}.$$

Draw  $HN$  perpendicular to the transverse axis, and  $HR$  parallel to the transverse axis, to meet the ordinate  $PM$  of the point  $P$  in  $R$ .

Then, since  $PH$  and  $HR$  are parallel respectively to  $CL$  and  $CM$ , we have  $\angle PHR = \angle LCM = \alpha$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence } CM &= CN + HR = CH \cos \alpha + HP \cos \alpha \\ &= (h + k) \frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and } MP &= RP - HN = HP \sin \alpha - CH \sin \alpha \\ &= (k - h) \frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, since  $CM$  and  $MP$  satisfy the equation (1), we have

$$\frac{(h + k)^2}{a^2 + b^2} - \frac{(k - h)^2}{a^2 + b^2} = 1, \text{ i.e. } hk = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{4}.$$

Hence, since  $(h, k)$  is any point on the hyperbola, the required equation is

$$xy = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{4}.$$

This is often written in the form  $xy = c^2$ , where  $4c^2$  equals the sum of the squares of the semi-axes of the hyperbola.

Similarly, the equation to the conjugate hyperbola is, when referred to the asymptotes,

$$xy = -\frac{a^2 + b^2}{4}.$$

**329.** To find the equation to the tangent at any point of the hyperbola  $xy = c^2$ .

Let  $(x', y')$  be any point  $P$  on the hyperbola, and  $(x'', y'')$  a point  $Q$  on it, so that we have

$$x'y' = c^2 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

and  $x''y'' = c^2 \dots\dots\dots (2).$

The equation to the line  $PQ$  is then

$$y - y' = \frac{y'' - y'}{x'' - x'} (x - x') \dots\dots\dots (3).$$

But, by (1) and (2), we have

$$\frac{y'' - y'}{x'' - x'} = \frac{\frac{c^2}{x''} - \frac{c^2}{x'}}{x'' - x'} = \frac{c^2}{x'x''} \frac{x' - x''}{x'' - x'} = -\frac{c^2}{x'x''}.$$

Hence the equation (3) becomes

$$y - y' = -\frac{c^2}{x'x''} (x - x') \dots\dots\dots (4).$$

Let now the point  $Q$  be taken indefinitely near to  $P$ , so that  $x'' = x'$  ultimately, and therefore, by Art. 149,  $PQ$  becomes the tangent at  $P$ .

Then (4) becomes

$$y - y' = -\frac{c^2}{x'^2} (x - x') = -\frac{y'}{x'} (x - x'), \text{ by (1).}$$

The required equation is therefore

$$xy' + x'y = 2x'y' = 2c^2 \dots\dots\dots (5).$$

The equation (5) may also be written in the form

$$\frac{x}{x'} + \frac{y}{y'} = 2 \dots\dots\dots (6).$$

**330.** *The tangent at any point of a hyperbola cuts off a triangle of constant area from the asymptotes, and the portion of it intercepted between the asymptotes is bisected at the point of contact.*

Take the asymptotes as axes and let the equation to the hyperbola be  $xy = c^2$ .

The tangent at any point  $P$  is  $\frac{x}{x'} + \frac{y}{y'} = 2$ .

This meets the axes in the points  $(2x', 0)$  and  $(0, 2y')$ .

If these points be  $L$  and  $L'$ , and the centre be  $C$ , we have

$$CL = 2x', \text{ and } CL' = 2y'.$$

If  $2\alpha$  be the angle between the asymptotes, the area of the triangle

$$LCL' = \frac{1}{2}CL \cdot CL' \sin 2\alpha = 2x'y' \sin 2\alpha = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{2} \cdot 2 \sin \alpha \cos \alpha = ab.$$

(Art. 328.)

Also, since  $L$  is the point  $(2x', 0)$  and  $L'$  is  $(0, 2y')$ , the middle point of  $LL'$  is  $(x', y')$ , *i.e.* the point of contact  $P$ .

**331.** As in Art. 274, the polar of any point  $(x_1, y_1)$  with respect to the curve can be shewn to be

$$xy_1 + x_1y = 2c^2.$$

Since, in general, the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  does not lie on the curve the equation to the polar cannot be put into the form (6) of Art. 329.

**332.** The equation to the normal at the point  $(x', y')$  is  $y - y' = m(x - x')$ , where  $m$  is chosen so that this line is perpendicular to the tangent

$$y = -\frac{y'}{x'}x + \frac{2c^2}{x'}.$$

If  $\omega$  be the angle between the asymptotes we then obtain, by Art. 93,

$$m = \frac{x' - y' \cos \omega}{y' - x' \cos \omega},$$

so that the required equation to the normal is

$$y(y' - x' \cos \omega) - x(x' - y' \cos \omega) = y'^2 - x'^2.$$

$$\left[ \text{Also } \cos \omega = \cos 2\alpha = \cos^2 \alpha - \sin^2 \alpha = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2 + b^2} \right].$$

If the hyperbola be rectangular, then  $\omega = 90^\circ$ , and the equation to the normal becomes  $xx' - yy' = x'^2 - y'^2$ .

**333. Equation referred to the asymptotes. One Variable.**

The equation  $xy = c^2$  is clearly satisfied by the substitution  $x = ct$  and  $y = \frac{c}{t}$ .

Hence, for all values of  $t$ , the point whose coordinates are  $\left(ct, \frac{c}{t}\right)$  lies on the curve, and it may be called the point “ $t$ .”

The tangent at the point “ $t$ ” is by Art. 329,

$$\frac{x}{t} + yt = 2c.$$

Also the normal is, by the last article,

$$y(1 - t^2 \cos \omega) - x(t^2 - \cos \omega) = \frac{c}{t}(1 - t^4),$$

or, when the hyperbola is rectangular,

$$y - xt^2 = \frac{c}{t}(1 - t^4).$$

The equations to the tangents at the points “ $t_1$ ” and “ $t_2$ ” are

$$\frac{x}{t_1} + yt_1 = 2c, \text{ and } \frac{x}{t_2} + yt_2 = 2c,$$

and hence the tangents meet at the point

$$\left( \frac{2ct_1t_2}{t_1 + t_2}, \frac{2c}{t_1 + t_2} \right).$$

The line joining “ $t_1$ ” and “ $t_2$ ,” which is the polar of this point, is therefore, by Art. 331,

$$x + yt_1t_2 = c(t_1 + t_2).$$

This form also follows by writing down the equation to the straight line joining the points

$$\left( ct_1, \frac{c}{t_1} \right) \text{ and } \left( ct_2, \frac{c}{t_2} \right).$$

**334. Ex. 1.** *If a rectangular hyperbola circumscribe a triangle, it also passes through the orthocentre of the triangle.*

Let the equation to the curve referred to its asymptotes be

$$xy = c^2 \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

Let the angular points of the triangle be  $P$ ,  $Q$ , and  $R$ , and let their coordinates be

$$\left( ct_1, \frac{c}{t_1} \right), \left( ct_2, \frac{c}{t_2} \right), \text{ and } \left( ct_3, \frac{c}{t_3} \right)$$

respectively.

As in the last article, the equation to  $QR$  is

$$x + yt_2t_3 = c(t_2 + t_3).$$

The equation to the straight line, through  $P$  perpendicular to  $QR$ , is therefore

$$y - \frac{c}{t_1} = t_2t_3[x - ct_1],$$

*i.e.*

$$y + ct_1t_2t_3 = t_2t_3 \left[ x + \frac{c}{t_1t_2t_3} \right] \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

Similarly, the equation to the straight line through  $Q$  perpendicular to  $RP$  is

$$y + ct_1t_2t_3 = t_3t_1 \left[ x + \frac{c}{t_1t_2t_3} \right] \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

The common point of (2) and (3) is clearly

$$\left( -\frac{c}{t_1t_2t_3}, -ct_1t_2t_3 \right) \dots\dots\dots(4),$$

and this is therefore the orthocentre.

But the coordinates (4) satisfy (1). Hence the proposition.

Also if  $\left( ct_4, \frac{c}{t_4} \right)$  be the orthocentre of the points " $t_1$ ," " $t_2$ ," and " $t_3$ ," we have  $t_1t_2t_3t_4 = -1$ .

**Ex. 2.** *If a circle and the rectangular hyperbola  $xy = c^2$  meet in the four points " $t_1$ ," " $t_2$ ," " $t_3$ ," and " $t_4$ ," prove that*

(1)  $t_1t_2t_3t_4 = 1$ ,

(2) *the centre of mean position of the four points bisects the distance between the centres of the two curves,*

and (3) *the centre of the circle through the points " $t_1$ ," " $t_2$ ," " $t_3$ " is*

$$\left\{ \frac{c}{2} \left( t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + \frac{1}{t_1t_2t_3} \right), \frac{c}{2} \left( \frac{1}{t_1} + \frac{1}{t_2} + \frac{1}{t_3} + t_1t_2t_3 \right) \right\}.$$

Let the equation to the circle be

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2gx - 2fy + k = 0,$$

so that its centre is the point  $(g, f)$ .

Any point on the hyperbola is  $\left( ct, \frac{c}{t} \right)$ . If this lie on the circle,

we have 
$$c^2t^2 + \frac{c^2}{t^2} - 2gct - 2f\frac{c}{t} + k = 0,$$

so that 
$$t^4 - 2\frac{g}{c}t^3 + \frac{k}{c^2}t^2 - \frac{2f}{c}t + 1 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

If  $t_1, t_2, t_3,$  and  $t_4$  be the roots of this equation, we have, by Art. 2,

$$t_1t_2t_3t_4 = 1 \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

$$t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = \frac{2g}{c} \dots\dots\dots(3),$$

and 
$$t_2t_3t_4 + t_3t_4t_1 + t_4t_1t_2 + t_1t_2t_3 = \frac{2f}{c} \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

Dividing (4) by (2), we have

$$\frac{1}{t_1} + \frac{1}{t_2} + \frac{1}{t_3} + \frac{1}{t_4} = \frac{2f}{c} \dots\dots\dots(5).$$

The centre of the mean position of the four points,

$$i.e. \text{ the point } \left\{ \frac{c}{4}(t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_4), \frac{c}{4} \left( \frac{1}{t_1} + \frac{1}{t_2} + \frac{1}{t_3} + \frac{1}{t_4} \right) \right\},$$

is therefore the point  $\left( \frac{g}{2}, \frac{f}{2} \right)$ , and this is the middle point of the line joining  $(0, 0)$  and  $(g, f)$ .

Also, since  $t_4 = \frac{1}{t_1 t_2 t_3}$ , we have

$$g = \frac{c}{2} \left( t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + \frac{1}{t_1 t_2 t_3} \right), \text{ and } f = \frac{c}{2} \left( \frac{1}{t_1} + \frac{1}{t_2} + \frac{1}{t_3} + t_1 t_2 t_3 \right).$$

Again, since  $t_1 t_2 t_3 t_4 = 1$ , we have product of the abscissae of the four points = product of their ordinates =  $c^4$ .

### EXAMPLES XXXVIII

1. Prove that the foci of the hyperbola  $xy = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{4}$  are given by 
$$x = y = \pm \frac{a^2 + b^2}{2a}.$$
2. Shew that two concentric rectangular hyperbolas, whose axes meet at an angle of  $45^\circ$ , cut orthogonally.
3. A straight line always passes through a fixed point; prove that the locus of the middle point of the portion of it, which is intercepted between two given straight lines, is a hyperbola whose asymptotes are parallel to the given lines.
4. If the ordinate  $NP$  at any point  $P$  of an ellipse be produced to  $Q$ , so that  $NQ$  is equal to the subtangent at  $P$ , prove that the locus of  $Q$  is a hyperbola.
5. From a point  $P$  perpendiculars  $PM$  and  $PN$  are drawn to two straight lines  $OM$  and  $ON$ . If the area  $OMP$  be constant, prove that the locus of  $P$  is a hyperbola.
6. A variable line has its ends on two lines given in position and passes through a given point; prove that the locus of a point which divides it in any given ratio is a hyperbola.
7. The coordinates of a point are  $a \tan(\theta + \alpha)$  and  $b \tan(\theta + \beta)$ , where  $\theta$  is variable; prove that the locus of the point is a hyperbola.
8. A series of circles touch a given straight line at a given point. Prove that the locus of the pole of a given straight line with regard to these circles is a hyperbola whose asymptotes are respectively a parallel to the first given straight line and a perpendicular to the second.



9. If a right-angled triangle be inscribed in a rectangular hyperbola, prove that the tangent at the right angle is the perpendicular upon the hypotenuse.

10. In a rectangular hyperbola, prove that all straight lines, which subtend a right angle at a point  $P$  on the curve, are parallel to the normal at  $P$ .

11. Chords of a rectangular hyperbola are at right angles, and they subtend a right angle at a fixed point  $O$ ; prove that they intersect on the polar of  $O$ .

12. Prove that any chord of a rectangular hyperbola subtends angles which are equal or supplementary (1) at the ends of a perpendicular chord, and (2) at the ends of any diameter.

13. In a rectangular hyperbola, shew that the angle between a chord  $PQ$  and the tangent at  $P$  is equal to the angle which  $PQ$  subtends at the other end of the diameter through  $P$ .

14. Show that the normal to the rectangular hyperbola  $xy = c^2$  at the point " $t$ " meets the curve again at a point " $t'$ " such that

$$t^3 t' = -1.$$

15. If  $P_1, P_2,$  and  $P_3$  be three points on the rectangular hyperbola  $xy = c^2$ , whose abscissæ are  $x_1, x_2,$  and  $x_3$ , prove that the area of the triangle  $P_1 P_2 P_3$  is

$$\frac{c^2 (x_2 - x_3) (x_3 - x_1) (x_1 - x_2)}{2 x_1 x_2 x_3},$$

and that the tangents at these points form a triangle whose area is

$$2c^2 \frac{(x_2 - x_3) (x_3 - x_1) (x_1 - x_2)}{(x_2 + x_3) (x_3 + x_1) (x_1 + x_2)}.$$

16. Find the coordinates of the points of contact of common tangents to the two hyperbolas

$$x^2 - y^2 = 3a^2 \text{ and } xy = 2a^2.$$

17. The transverse axis of a rectangular hyperbola is  $2c$  and the asymptotes are the axes of coordinates; shew that the equation of the chord which is bisected at the point  $(2c, 3c)$  is  $3x + 2y = 12c$ .

18. Prove that the portions of any line which are intercepted between the asymptotes and the curve are equal.

19. Shew that the straight lines drawn from a variable point on the curve to any two fixed points on it intercept a constant distance on either asymptote.

20. Shew that the equation to the director circle of the conic  $xy = c^2$  is

$$x^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + y^2 = 4c^2 \cos \omega.$$

21. Prove that the asymptotes of the hyperbola  $xy = hx + ky$  are  $x = k$  and  $y = h$ .

22. Shew that the straight line  $y = mx + 2c\sqrt{-m}$  always touches the hyperbola  $xy = c^2$ , and that its point of contact is  $\left(\frac{c}{\sqrt{-m}}, c\sqrt{-m}\right)$ .

23. Prove that the locus of the foot of the perpendicular let fall from the centre upon chords of the rectangular hyperbola  $xy = c^2$  which subtend half a right angle at the origin is the curve

$$r^4 - 2c^2r^2 \sin 2\theta = c^4.$$

24. A tangent to the parabola  $x^2 = 4ay$  meets the hyperbola  $xy = k^2$  in two points  $P$  and  $Q$ . Prove that the middle point of  $PQ$  lies on a parabola.

25. If a hyperbola be rectangular, and its equation be  $xy = c^2$ , prove that the locus of the middle points of chords of constant length  $2d$  is

$$(x^2 + y^2)(xy - c^2) = d^2xy.$$

26. Shew that the pole of any tangent to the rectangular hyperbola  $xy = c^2$ , with respect to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ , lies on a concentric and similarly placed rectangular hyperbola.

27. Prove that the locus of the poles of all normal chords of the rectangular hyperbola  $xy = c^2$  is the curve

$$(x^2 - y^2)^2 + 4c^2xy = 0.$$

28. Any tangent to the rectangular hyperbola  $4xy = ab$  meets the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  in the points  $P$  and  $Q$ ; prove that the normals at  $P$  and  $Q$  to the ellipse meet on a fixed diameter of the ellipse.

29. Prove that triangles can be inscribed in the hyperbola  $xy = c^2$ , whose sides touch the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ .

30. A point moves on the given straight line  $y = mx$ ; prove that the locus of the foot of the perpendicular let fall from the centre upon its polar with respect to the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  is a rectangular hyperbola, one of whose asymptotes is the diameter of the ellipse which is conjugate to the given straight line.

31. A quadrilateral circumscribes a hyperbola; prove that the straight line joining the middle points of its diagonals passes through the centre of the curve.

32.  $A, B, C$ , and  $D$  are the points of intersection of a circle and a rectangular hyperbola. If  $AB$  pass through the centre of the hyperbola, prove that  $CD$  passes through the centre of the circle.

33. If a circle and a rectangular hyperbola meet in four points  $P, Q, R$ , and  $S$ , shew that the orthocentres of the triangles  $QRS, RSP, SPQ$ , and  $PQR$  also lie on a circle.

Prove also that the tangents to the hyperbola at  $R$  and  $S$  meet in a point which lies on the diameter of the hyperbola which is at right angles to  $PQ$ .

34. A series of hyperbolas is drawn, having for asymptotes the principal axes of an ellipse; shew that the common chords of the hyperbolas and the ellipse are all parallel to one of the conjugate diameters of the ellipse.

35. A circle, passing through the centre of a rectangular hyperbola, cuts the curve in the points  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ , and  $D$ ; prove that the circum-circle of the triangle formed by the tangents at  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  goes through the centre of the hyperbola, and has its centre at the point of the hyperbola which is diametrically opposite to  $D$ .

36. Given five points on a circle of radius  $a$ ; prove that the centres of the rectangular hyperbolas, each passing through four of these points, all lie on a circle of radius  $\frac{a}{2}$ .

37. If a rectangular hyperbola circumscribe a triangle, shew that it meets the circle circumscribing the triangle in a fourth point, which is at the other end of the diameter of the hyperbola which passes through the orthocentre of the triangle.

Hence prove that the locus of the centre of a rectangular hyperbola which circumscribes a triangle is the nine-point circle of the triangle.

38. Two rectangular hyperbolas are such that the asymptotes of one are parallel to the axes of the other and the centre of each lies on the other. If any circle through the centre of one cut the other again in the points  $P$ ,  $Q$ , and  $R$ , prove that  $PQR$  is a triangle such that each side is the polar of the opposite vertex with respect to the first hyperbola.

## ANSWERS

16.  $(\pm \frac{3}{4}\sqrt{6a}, \mp \frac{1}{4}\sqrt{6a}); (\pm \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{6a}, \pm \sqrt{6a})$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. If  $SH'$ , parallel to  $CL$  (Fig., Art. 328), meets  $CK'$  in  $H'$ , and  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of  $S$ , we have by symmetry  $CH' = H'S$ , and

$$\therefore CH' \cos \alpha = H'S \cos \alpha = \frac{1}{2}CS.$$

$$\therefore 2x \cos \alpha = 2y \cos \alpha = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}.$$

$$\therefore x = y = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{2a}, \text{ since, by Art. 328, } \cos \alpha = \frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}.$$

2. Since the asymptotes of each are the axes of the other, let  $x^2 - y^2 = a^2 \dots$ (i) and  $xy = b^2 \dots$ (ii) be the equations of the two rectangular hyperbolas.

The tangents at the point  $(a \sec \phi, a \tan \phi)$  are

$$x - y \sin \phi = a \cos \phi, \text{ and } y + x \sin \phi = \frac{2b^2}{a} \cos \phi,$$

which are clearly at right angles. [Art. 69.]

3. See Ex. XI, No. 15.

4. Let  $P$  be the point " $\phi$ " of the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Then if  $(x, y)$  are the coordinates of  $Q$ ,

$$x = a \cos \phi, \text{ and } y = \frac{a^2 - a^2 \cos^2 \phi}{a \cos \phi} \quad [\text{Art. 269}]$$

$$= \frac{a^2 \sin^2 \phi}{a \cos \phi}.$$

$$\therefore xy = a^2 \sin^2 \phi.$$

Eliminating  $\phi$ ,  $x^2 + xy = a^2$ , which is a hyperbola. See Art. 326.

5. See Art. 103.

We have  $PM \cdot OM + PN \cdot ON = \text{constant}$ .

$$\therefore (h + k \cos \omega) k \sin \omega + (k + h \cos \omega) h \sin \omega = \text{constant}.$$

$$\therefore 2hk + (h^2 + k^2) \cos \omega = \text{constant} = c^2 \text{ say.}$$

$\therefore$  the required equation to the locus of  $P$  is

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2xy \sec \omega = c^2 \sec \omega,$$

which is a hyperbola. [Art. 326.]

6. Taking the two given lines as axes, let  $\frac{x}{p} + \frac{y}{q} = 1$  be the equation of the variable line. Since it passes through the fixed point  $(h, k)$ ,  $\therefore \frac{h}{p} + \frac{k}{q} = 1$ .

If  $(x, y)$  be a point dividing it in the ratio  $m : n$ ,

$$x = \frac{m}{m+n} \cdot p \quad \text{and} \quad y = \frac{n}{m+n} \cdot q.$$

Eliminating  $p$  and  $q$ , we have  $\frac{mh}{x} + \frac{nk}{y} = m+n$ ,  
or  $(m+n)xy = mhy + nkx$ , which is a hyperbola.

7. If  $x = a \tan(\theta + \alpha)$  and  $y = b \tan(\theta + \beta)$ ,

$$\therefore \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a} = \theta + \alpha \quad \text{and} \quad \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{b} = \theta + \beta.$$

$$\therefore \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a} - \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{b} = \alpha - \beta.$$

$$\therefore \tan(\alpha - \beta) = \frac{\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b}}{1 + \frac{xy}{ab}}.$$

$$\therefore xy + ab = (bx - ay) \cot(\alpha - \beta),$$

which is a hyperbola.

8. Let  $x^2 + y^2 = 2\lambda x$  for different values of  $\lambda$  be the equation to the circles.

The equation to the polar of  $(h, k)$  is

$$xh + yk = \lambda(x + h).$$

This is identical with a given straight line  $ax + by = c$  if

$$\frac{h - \lambda}{a} = \frac{k}{b} = \frac{\lambda h}{c}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{k}{b} = \frac{h(h - \lambda) + \lambda h}{ah + c} = \frac{h^2}{ah + c}.$$

$\therefore$  the equation to the locus of  $(h, k)$  is  $bx^2 - axy = cy$ ,  
which is a hyperbola, whose asymptotes are parallel to

$$x = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad bx - ay = 0.$$

9. Let “ $t_1$ ,” “ $t_2$ ,” and “ $t_3$ ” be the angular points of the triangle, the angle at “ $t_3$ ” being a right angle.

The “ $m$ ’s” of the chords joining “ $t_3$ ” and “ $t_1$ ,” and “ $t_3$ ” and “ $t_2$ ” are

$$-\frac{1}{t_1 t_3} \text{ and } -\frac{1}{t_2 t_3}, \quad [\text{Art. 333}].$$

$$\therefore t_1 t_2 t_3^2 + 1 = 0. \quad [\text{Art. 69}].$$

The “ $m$ ’s” of the tangent at “ $t_3$ ” and the chord joining “ $t_1$ ” and “ $t_2$ ” are  $-\frac{1}{t_3^2}$  and  $-\frac{1}{t_1 t_2}$ .

Hence these lines are perpendicular by the above condition.

10. See the previous example.

11. By Art. 331, the equation to the polar of  $(h, k)$  with respect to the curve  $xy = c^2$  is  $kx + hy = 2c^2$ .

If we remove the origin to the point  $(h, k)$  we see that the polar of the origin with respect to the curve

$$(x + h)(y + k) = c^2 \dots\dots\dots (i)$$

is  $k(x + h) + h(y + k) = 2c^2,$

or  $kx + hy = 2(c^2 - hk) = 2C$  say.  $\dots\dots\dots (ii)$

Let  $lx + my = p$  and  $mx - ly = q$  be two perpendicular chords of (i). The equations of the two pairs of lines joining the origin to the extremities of these chords are [Art. 122]

$$xyp^2 + (kx + hy)(lx + my)p = C(lx + my)^2,$$

and  $xyq^2 + (kx + hy)(mx - ly)q = C(mx - ly)^2.$

Since each pair are at right angles,

$$\therefore p(lk + mh) = C(l^2 + m^2), \text{ and } q(mk - lh) = C(l^2 + m^2).$$

Adding, we have

$$k(pl + qm) + h(pm - ql) = 2C(l^2 + m^2),$$

which is the condition that the point of intersection of the chords, viz.  $\left(\frac{pl + qm}{l^2 + m^2}, \frac{pm - ql}{l^2 + m^2}\right)$ , should lie on the line (ii).

12. (1) Let  $P, Q, R, S$ , the extremities of the chords be the points  $t_1, t_2, t_3, t_4$  respectively.

The  $m$ 's of  $PQ$  and  $SQ$  are  $-\frac{1}{t_1 t_2}$  and  $-\frac{1}{t_2 t_4}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore P\hat{Q}S &= \tan^{-1} \frac{-\frac{1}{t_1 t_2} + \frac{1}{t_2 t_4}}{1 + \frac{1}{t_1 t_2 t_4}} = \tan^{-1} \frac{t_2(t_1 - t_4)}{1 + t_1 t_2 t_4} \\ &= \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{1}{t_1} + t_1 t_2 t_3}{t_3 - t_2}, \end{aligned}$$

since

$$t_1 t_2 t_3 t_4 = -1. \quad [\text{Art. 334.}]$$

Similarly  $P\hat{R}S = \tan^{-1} \left( \pm \frac{\frac{1}{t_1} + t_1 t_2 t_3}{t_2 - t_3} \right).$

$\therefore P\hat{Q}S$  and  $P\hat{R}S$  are either equal or supplementary.

(2) Let  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  be the extremities of the chord  $PQ$ , and  $t$  and  $-t$  the extremities of the diameter  $RR'$ .

Then  $P\hat{R}Q = \tan^{-1} \frac{t(t_2 \sim t_1)}{1 + t^2 t_1 t_2}$ , as in (1) and

$$P\hat{R}'Q = \tan^{-1} \frac{-t(t_2 \sim t_1)}{1 + t^2 t_1 t_2}. \quad \text{Hence etc.}$$

13. Let  $PQ$  be the points  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ . Then the angle between  $PQ$  and the tangent at  $P$  [Art. 333]

$$= \tan^{-1} \frac{\frac{1}{t_1^2} \sim \frac{1}{t_1 t_2}}{1 + \frac{1}{t_1^3 t_2}} = \tan^{-1} \frac{t_1(t_1 \sim t_2)}{1 + t_1^3 t_2},$$

and the angle which  $PQ$  subtends at the point  $-t_1$  is found by putting  $t = t_1$  in the expression for  $P\hat{R}'Q$  in the previous Ex. Hence etc.

14. The normal at  $t_1$  and the chord  $t_1t_2$ , viz.

$$y - xt_1^2 = \frac{c}{t_1} (1 - t_1^4),$$

and  $yt_1t_2 + x = c(t_1 + t_2)$ , [Art. 333], are identical if

$$\frac{1}{t_1t_2} = -\frac{t_1^2}{1} \quad \therefore t_1^3t_2 = -1.$$

15. (1) See Ex. II, No. 9.

(2) The equations to the tangents are

$$y = -\frac{c^2}{x_1^2}x + \frac{2c^2}{x_1}, \text{ etc.}$$

Substitute in the result of Ex. x, No. 18.

16. The tangent at the point "a" to the hyperbola  $x^2 - y^2 = 3a^2$  viz.  $x - y \sin a = \sqrt{3} \cdot a \cos a$ , [Art. 307], will be a tangent to  $xy = 2a^2$ , if the equation

$$y(y \sin a + \sqrt{3} \cdot a \cos a) = 2a^2 \dots\dots\dots (i)$$

has equal roots; the condition for which is

$$3 \cos^2 a + 8 \sin a = 0, \text{ or } 3 \sin^2 a - 8 \sin a - 3 = 0,$$

whence  $\sin a = -\frac{1}{3}$ , and  $\therefore \cos a = \pm \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}$ .

The equation (1) becomes  $y^2 \pm 2\sqrt{6} \cdot ay + 6a^2 = 0$ .

$$\therefore y = \pm \sqrt{6} \cdot a, \text{ and } \therefore x = \pm \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{6}a.$$

Also  $\sqrt{3}a \sec a = \pm \frac{3\sqrt{6}}{4} a$ , and  $\sqrt{3}a \tan a = \mp \frac{\sqrt{6}}{4} a$ .

17. The equation of the polar of the point  $(2c, 3c)$  is, [Art. 331],  $3x + 2y = 2c$ , and the line parallel to this and passing through  $(2c, 3c)$  is

$$3(x - 2c) + 2(y - 3c) = 0, \text{ or } 3x + 2y = 12c.$$

18. The chord which is bisected at  $(h, k)$  is the line through this point parallel to the polar of  $(h, k)$ , and is therefore  $k(x - h) + h(y - k) = 0$ , or  $kx + hy = 2hk$ .

This cuts the asymptotes in the points  $(2h, 0)$  and  $(0, 2k)$ . Hence  $(h, k)$  is also the middle point of the portion of the line intercepted between the asymptotes. Hence etc.



19. Let “ $t_1$ ” and “ $t_2$ ” be the fixed points, and “ $t$ ” the variable point. The equations of the chords joining “ $t$ ” to “ $t_1$ ” and “ $t_2$ ” are

$$x + ytt_1 = c(t + t_1), \text{ and } x + ytt_2 = c(t + t_2). \quad [\text{Art. 333.}]$$

Therefore the intercept on the axis of  $x = c(t_1 - t_2)$ , and that on the axis of  $y = c\left(\frac{1}{t_1} - \frac{1}{t_2}\right)$ .

20. The tangents at the points “ $t_1$ ” and “ $t_2$ ” are

$$t_1^2 y + x = 2ct_1 \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

and

$$t_2^2 y + x = 2ct_2. \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

These are at right angles, by Art. 93, Cor. 2, if

$$t_1^2 t_2^2 - (t_1^2 + t_2^2) \cos \omega + 1 = 0. \dots\dots\dots(3)$$

Between (1), (2) and (3) we must eliminate  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ . On solving (1) and (2), we easily have

$$t_1 + t_2 = \frac{2c}{y} \text{ and } t_1 t_2 = \frac{x}{y}.$$

Substituting in (3), we have

$$\frac{x^2}{y^2} - \left[ \frac{4c^2}{y^2} - 2 \frac{x}{y} \right] \cos \omega + 1 = 0. \text{ Hence etc.}$$

21. The equation may be written  $(x - k)(y - h) = hk$ . Hence the asymptotes are

$$x - k = 0, \text{ and } y - h = 0 \quad [\text{Art. 326}].$$

22. The common points of  $xy = c^2$  and the line  $y = mx + a$  are given by  $(mx + a)x = c^2$ , or

$$mx^2 + ax - c^2 = 0, \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

which has equal roots if  $a^2 + 4c^2m = 0$ , so that  $a = 2c\sqrt{-m}$ , and the equation (1) becomes

$$-mx^2 - 2c\sqrt{-m}x + c^2 = 0, \text{ or } \{\sqrt{-m} \cdot x - c\}^2 = 0.$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{c}{\sqrt{-m}} \text{ and } \therefore y = \sqrt{-mc}.$$

23. The lines joining the origin to the common points of  $xy = c^2$  and the line  $x \cos a + y \sin a = p$  are (Art. 122),

$$p^2xy = c^2 (x \cos a + y \sin a)^2.$$

If these are inclined at  $45^\circ$ ,

$$2 \frac{\sqrt{\left(c^2 \cos a \sin a - \frac{p^2}{2}\right)^2 - c^4 \cos^2 a \sin^2 a}}{c^2} = 1 \quad [\text{Art. 110}].$$

$$\therefore p^4 - 2c^2p^2 \sin 2a = c^4. \quad \text{Hence etc.}$$

24. The chord of the hyperbola which is bisected at the point  $(p, q)$  is by Ex. 18  $qx + py = 2pq$ .

The points in which this cuts the parabola  $x^2 = 4ay$  are given by

$$px^2 = 4a(2pq - qx), \text{ or } px^2 + 4aqx - 8apq = 0,$$

which has equal roots if  $4a^2q^2 + 8ap^2q = 0$ ,

i.e. if  $aq + 2p^2 = 0$ .

Hence  $(p, q)$  lies on the parabola  $2x^2 + ay = 0$ .

25. Let  $\frac{x-h}{\cos \theta} = \frac{y-k}{\sin \theta} = r$  be the equation of any line through the point  $(h, k)$ . The points in which this line cuts the hyperbola  $xy = c^2$  are given by

$$(h + r \cos \theta)(k + r \sin \theta) = c^2,$$

or  $r^2 \cos \theta \cdot \sin \theta + r(k \cos \theta + h \sin \theta) + hk - c^2 = 0$ .

If  $(h, k)$  is the middle point of this chord,

$$k \cos \theta + h \sin \theta = 0, \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

and

$$d^2 = \frac{c^2 - hk}{\cos \theta \cdot \sin \theta} \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

$$= \frac{(c^2 - hk)(h^2 + k^2)}{-hk} \dots\dots\dots \text{by (i)}$$

$\therefore$  the equation to the required locus is

$$d^2xy = (xy - c^2)(x^2 + y^2).$$

26. The common points of the line

$$xh + yk = a^2 \dots\dots\dots (1)$$

and the hyperbola  $xy = c^2$  are given by  $ky^2 - a^2y + hc^2 = 0$ .

Hence (1) is a tangent if this equation has equal roots, the condition for which is

$$hk = \frac{a^4}{c^2}.$$

Also  $(h, k)$  is the pole of (1) with respect to the given circle. Hence etc.

27. The lines  $xy_1 + x_1y = 2c^2$ , and  $y - xt^2 = \frac{c}{t}(1 - t^4)$

are identical if  $-\frac{y_1}{t^2} = \frac{x_1}{1} = \frac{2ct}{1 - t^4}$ .

Eliminating  $t$ ,

$$x_1 \left(1 - \frac{y_1^2}{x_1^2}\right) = 2c \sqrt{-\frac{y_1}{x_1}},$$

or  $(x_1^2 - y_1^2)^2 + 4c^2 x_1 y_1 = 0$ . Hence etc.

28. Let  $y = m_1x + \frac{a}{m_1}$ , etc., be the equations of any three tangents to the parabola. If two of their points of intersection lie on the hyperbola  $xy = c^2$ , then

$$a^2 \left\{ \frac{1}{m_1} + \frac{1}{m_2} \right\} = c^2 m_1 m_2, \dots\dots\dots (1)$$

and  $a^2 \left\{ \frac{1}{m_2} + \frac{1}{m_3} \right\} = c^2 m_2 m_3$ . [Art. 234.] (2)

Whence, subtracting,

$$a^2 = -c^2 m_1 m_2 m_3.$$

Substituting for  $m_2$  in (1), we have

$$a^2 \left\{ \frac{1}{m_3} + \frac{1}{m_1} \right\} = c^2 m_3 m_1,$$

which is the condition that the third point of intersection of the tangents should also lie on the hyperbola.

29. The equation of the line through the point  $(h, mh)$ , and perpendicular to

$$\frac{xh}{a^2} + \frac{ymh}{b^2} = 1,$$

is 
$$y - mh = \frac{a^2 m}{b^2} (x - h).$$

Eliminating  $h$ , we have

$$(b^2 y - a^2 m x)(b^2 x + a^2 m y) + m a^2 b^2 (a^2 - b^2) = 0.$$

Hence etc.

30. Two diameters of the rectangular hyperbola  $x^2 - y^2 = a^2$  are conjugate, by Art. 321, if the product of their "m's" is unity.

The conjugate diameters are therefore

$$y = mx \dots\dots\dots(1) \text{ and } y = \frac{1}{m} x \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

Let the fixed point on the hyperbola be

$$(a \sec \phi, a \tan \phi).$$

The perpendicular from it on (1) is

$$y - a \tan \phi = -\frac{1}{m} (x - a \sec \phi).$$

This meets (1) at the point

$$\left[ a \frac{m \tan \phi + \sec \phi}{1 + m^2}, \frac{am (m \tan \phi + \sec \phi)}{1 + m^2} \right] \dots (4)$$

Similarly the foot of the perpendicular upon (2) is

$$\left[ \frac{am (\tan \phi + m \sec \phi)}{1 + m^2}, \frac{a (\tan \phi + m \sec \phi)}{1 + m^2} \right] \dots (5)$$

The "m" of the line joining (4) and (5)

$$= \frac{a (\tan \phi + m \sec \phi) - am (m \tan \phi + \sec \phi)}{am (\tan \phi + m \sec \phi) - a (m \tan \phi + \sec \phi)} = -\frac{\tan \phi}{\sec \phi} = -\sin \phi,$$

and is independent of the two conjugate diameters selected. Hence, etc.

31. Let  $\frac{x}{t_1} + yt_1 = 2c$ , etc. be the equations of the sides of the quadrilateral. Then if  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  be the coordinates of the middle points of the diagonals, we have

$$x_1 = c \left\{ \frac{t_1 t_2}{t_1 + t_2} + \frac{t_3 t_4}{t_3 + t_4} \right\} = c \frac{\Sigma t_1 t_2 t_3}{(t_1 + t_2)(t_3 + t_4)} \quad (\text{Art. 333}),$$

and 
$$y_1 = c \left\{ \frac{1}{t_1 + t_2} + \frac{1}{t_3 + t_4} \right\} = c \frac{\Sigma t_1}{(t_1 + t_2)(t_3 + t_4)},$$

$$\therefore \frac{x_1}{y_1} = \frac{\Sigma t_1 t_2 t_3}{\Sigma t_1} = \frac{x_2}{y_2}, \text{ similarly.}$$

Hence, etc.

32. See Art. 334, Ex. 2.

If the line joining “ $t_1$ ” and “ $t_2$ ” passes through the centre of the hyperbola, then  $t_1 + t_2 = 0$ ; and equations (3) and (5) become  $t_3 + t_4 = \frac{2g}{c}$  and  $\frac{1}{t_3} + \frac{1}{t_4} = \frac{2f}{c}$ , whence

$$g + ft_3 t_4 = c(t_3 + t_4),$$

which is the condition that the chord joining “ $t_3$ ” and “ $t_4$ ” should pass through the point  $(g, f)$ .

33. Let “ $t_1$ ”, “ $t_2$ ”, “ $t_3$ ”, and “ $t_4$ ” be the four points  $P, Q, R, S$  so that by Art. 334, Ex. 2, we have

$$t_1 t_2 t_3 t_4 = 1. \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

By Art. 334, Ex. 1, the orthocentre of the triangle  $PQR$  is

$$\left( -\frac{c}{t_1 t_2 t_3}, -ct_1 t_2 t_3 \right), \text{ i.e., by (1), } \left( -ct_4, -\frac{c}{t_4} \right).$$

The four orthocentres are thus

$$\left( -ct_1, -\frac{c}{t_1} \right), \left( -ct_2, -\frac{c}{t_2} \right), \left( -ct_3, -\frac{c}{t_3} \right) \text{ and } \left( -ct_4, -\frac{c}{t_4} \right).$$

The product of their “ $t$ ’s” =  $(-t_1)(-t_2)(-t_3)(-t_4) = 1$ , by (1).

Hence, by Art. 334, Ex. 2, the four orthocentres are the intersections of the hyperbola and a circle.

The point of intersection of the tangents at  $R$  and  $S$  is

$$\left( \frac{2ct_3t_4}{t_3+t_4}, \frac{2c}{t_3+t_4} \right),$$

the diameter through which is  $x = yt_3t_4$ , *i.e.*  $y = xt_1t_2$ , by (1).

This is perpendicular to the straight line joining  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ .

**34.** The equation  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1 + 2\lambda(xy - c^2) = 0$ , represents any conic through the intersection of the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  and the hyperbola  $xy = c^2$ .

It will represent two straight lines if  $\lambda^2 = \frac{1}{a^2b^2}$ . (Art. 116.)

Hence the common chords are parallel to  $\frac{x}{a} \pm \frac{y}{b} = 0$ , and these are the same for all values of  $c$ , *i.e.* whatever be the hyperbola chosen.

**35.** See Art. 334, Ex. 2.

If  $k = 0$ , then  $\sum t_1t_2 = 0$ ,

*i.e.* 
$$t_1t_2 + t_2t_4 + t_1t_4 + \frac{1}{t_1t_2t_4}(t_1 + t_2 + t_4) = 0. \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

Now if  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of a vertex of the triangle formed by the tangents,

$$x = \frac{2ct_1t_2}{t_1+t_2}, \text{ and } y = \frac{2c}{t_1+t_2}. \quad (\text{Art. 333.})$$

Substitute in (1);  $\therefore x^2 + y^2 + 2ct_4x + \frac{2c}{t_4}y = 0$ ,

which is the equation of a circle passing through the origin and whose centre is the point  $\left(-ct_4, -\frac{c}{t_4}\right)$ .

**36.** Let  $(a \cos \alpha_1, a \sin \alpha_1)$  etc., be the coordinates of the five points.

Now the centre of mean position  $(x', y')$  of any four of the points is the middle point of the line joining  $(0, 0)$  to the centre of the corresponding hyperbola. [Art. 334, Ex. 2.] Hence, if  $(x', y')$  be the centre of the hyperbola through the first four points,

$$x' = \frac{a}{2} (\sum \cos \alpha_1 - \cos \alpha_5), \text{ and } y' = \frac{a}{2} (\sum \sin \alpha_1 - \sin \alpha_5).$$

$$\therefore \left(x' - \frac{a}{2} \sum \cos \alpha_1\right)^2 + \left(y' - \frac{a}{2} \sum \sin \alpha_1\right)^2 = \frac{a^2}{4};$$

so for the other four centres.

Hence their locus is the circle

$$\left(x - \frac{a}{2} \sum \cos \alpha_1\right)^2 + \left(y - \frac{a}{2} \sum \sin \alpha_1\right)^2 = \frac{a^2}{4}.$$

**37.** If  $t_1, t_2, t_3$  be the angular points of the triangle, then by Art. 334, Ex. 1,  $-\frac{1}{t_1 t_2 t_3}$  is the orthocentre, and by

Art. 334, Ex. 2,  $\frac{1}{t_1 t_2 t_3}$  is the fourth point in which the hyperbola meets the circumcircle. The centre of the hyperbola is thus midway between these two points.

Also it is well known from Plane Geometry that the middle point of the straight line joining the orthocentre of a triangle to any point on its circumcircle lies on the nine-point circle of the triangle.

## Chapter 14

# POLAR EQUATION OF A CONIC SECTION ITS FOCUS BEING THE POLE

**335.** Let  $S$  be the focus,  $A$  the vertex, and  $ZM$  the directrix; draw  $SZ$  perpendicular to  $ZM$ .

Let  $ZS$  be chosen as the positive direction of the initial line, and produce it to  $X$ .

Take any point  $P$  on the curve, and let its polar coordinates be  $r$  and  $\theta$ , so that we have

$$SP = r, \text{ and } \angle XSP = \theta.$$

Draw  $PN$  perpendicular to the initial line, and  $PM$  perpendicular to the directrix.

Let  $SL$  be the semi-latus-rectum, and let  $SL = l$ .

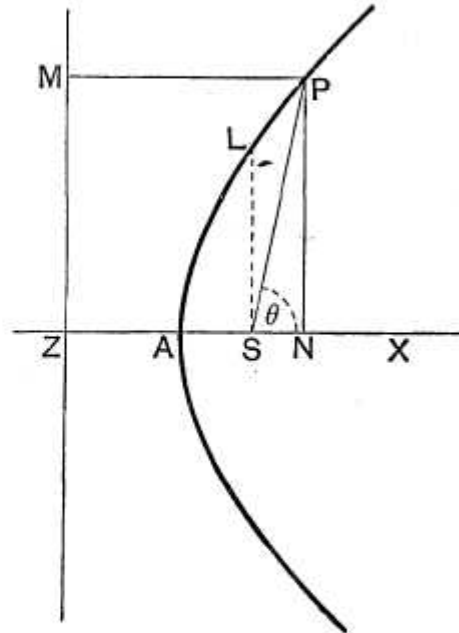
Since  $SL = e \cdot SZ$ , we have

$$SZ = \frac{l}{e}.$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} r = SP &= e \cdot PM = e \cdot ZN \\ &= e(ZS + SN) \\ &= e\left(\frac{l}{e} + SP \cdot \cos \theta\right) = l + e \cdot r \cdot \cos \theta. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore 
$$r = \frac{l}{1 - e \cos \theta} \dots\dots\dots(1).$$





This, being the relation holding between the polar coordinates of *any* point on the curve, is, by Art. 42, the required polar equation.

**Cor.** If *SZ* be taken as the positive direction of the initial line and the vectorial angle measured clockwise, the equation to the curve is

$$r = \frac{l}{1 + e \cos \theta}.$$

**336.** If the conic be a parabola, we have  $e = 1$ , and the equation is

$$r = \frac{l}{1 - \cos \theta} = \frac{l}{2 \sin^2 \frac{\theta}{2}} = \frac{l}{2} \operatorname{cosec}^2 \frac{\theta}{2}.$$

If the initial line, instead of being the axis, be such that the axis is inclined at an angle  $\gamma$  to it, then, in the previous article, instead of  $\theta$  we must substitute  $\theta - \gamma$ .

The equation in this case is then

$$\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \cos (\theta - \gamma).$$

**337.** To trace the curve  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \cos \theta$ .

**Case I.**  $e = 1$ , so that the equation is  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 - \cos \theta$ .

When  $\theta$  is zero, we have  $\frac{l}{r} = 0$ , so that  $r$  is infinite. As  $\theta$  increases from  $0^\circ$  to  $90^\circ$ ,  $\cos \theta$  decreases from 1 to 0, and hence  $\frac{l}{r}$  increases from 0 to 1, *i.e.*  $r$  decreases from infinity to  $l$ .

As  $\theta$  increases from  $90^\circ$  to  $180^\circ$ ,  $\cos \theta$  decreases from 0 to  $-1$ , and hence  $\frac{l}{r}$  increases from 1 to 2, *i.e.*  $r$  decreases from  $l$  to  $\frac{1}{2}l$ .

Similarly, as  $\theta$  changes from  $180^\circ$  to  $270^\circ$ ,  $r$  increases from  $\frac{l}{2}$  to  $l$ , and, as  $\theta$  changes from  $270^\circ$  to  $360^\circ$ ,  $r$  increases from  $l$  to  $\infty$ .

The curve is thus the parabola  $\infty FPLAL'P'F' \infty$  of Art. 197.

**Case II.  $e < 1$ .** When  $\theta$  is zero, we have  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e$ ,  
*i.e.*  $r = \frac{l}{1 - e}$ . This gives the point  $A'$  in the figure of Art.  
 247.

As  $\theta$  increases from  $0^\circ$  to  $90^\circ$ ,  $\cos \theta$  decreases from 1 to 0, and therefore  $1 - e \cos \theta$  increases from  $1 - e$  to 1, *i.e.*  $\frac{l}{r}$  increases from  $1 - e$  to 1, *i.e.*  $r$  decreases from  $\frac{l}{1 - e}$  to  $l$ . We thus obtain the portion  $A'PBL$ .

As  $\theta$  increases from  $90^\circ$  to  $180^\circ$ ,  $\cos \theta$  decreases from 0 to  $-1$ , and therefore  $1 - e \cos \theta$  increases from 1 to  $1 + e$ , *i.e.*  $\frac{l}{r}$  increases from 1 to  $1 + e$ , *i.e.*  $r$  decreases from  $l$  to  $\frac{l}{1 + e}$ .

We thus obtain the portion  $LA$  of the curve, where

$$SA = \frac{l}{1 + e}.$$

Similarly, as  $\theta$  increases from  $180^\circ$  to  $270^\circ$  and then to  $360^\circ$ , we have the portions  $AL'$  and  $L'B'P'A'$ .

Since  $\cos \theta = \cos(-\theta) = \cos(360^\circ - \theta)$ , the curve is symmetrical about the line  $SA'$ .

**Case III.  $e > 1$ .** When  $\theta$  is zero,  $1 - e \cos \theta$  is equal to  $1 - e$ , *i.e.*  $-(e - 1)$ , and is therefore a negative quantity, since  $e > 1$ . This zero value of  $\theta$  gives  $r = -l \div (e - 1)$ .

We thus have the point  $A'$  in the figure of Art. 295.

Let  $\theta$  increase from  $0^\circ$  to  $\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{e}\right)$ . Thus  $1 - e \cos \theta$  increases algebraically from  $-(e - 1)$  to  $-0$ ,  
*i.e.*  $\frac{l}{r}$  increases algebraically from  $-(e - 1)$  to  $-0$ ,  
*i.e.*  $r$  decreases algebraically from  $-\frac{l}{e - 1}$  to  $-\infty$ .

For these values of  $\theta$  the radius vector is therefore negative and increases in numerical length from  $\frac{l}{e - 1}$  to  $\infty$ .

We thus have the portion  $A'P_1R'$   $\infty$  of the curve. For this portion  $r$  is negative.

If  $\theta$  be very slightly greater than  $\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{e}$ , then  $\cos \theta$  is slightly less than  $\frac{1}{e}$ , so that  $1 - e \cos \theta$  is small and positive, and therefore  $r$  is very great and is positive. Hence, as  $\theta$  increases through the angle  $\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{e}$ , the value of  $r$  changes from  $-\infty$  to  $+\infty$ .

As  $\theta$  increases from  $\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{e}$  to  $\pi$ ,  $1 - e \cos \theta$  increases from 0 to  $1 + e$  and hence  $r$  decreases from  $\infty$  to  $\frac{l}{1 + e}$ . Now  $\frac{l}{1 + e}$  is  $< \frac{l}{e - 1}$ . Hence the point  $A$ , which corresponds to  $\theta = \pi$ , is such that  $SA < SA'$ .

For values of  $\theta$  between  $\cos^{-1}\frac{1}{e}$  and  $\pi$  we therefore have the portion,  $\infty RPA$ , of the curve. For this portion  $r$  is positive.

As  $\theta$  increases from  $\pi$  to  $2\pi - \cos^{-1}\frac{1}{e}$ ,  $e \cos \theta$  increases from  $-e$  to 1, so that  $1 - e \cos \theta$  decreases from  $1 + e$  to 0, and therefore  $r$  increases from  $\frac{l}{1 + e}$  to  $\infty$ . Corresponding to these values of  $\theta$  we have the portion  $AL'R_1 \infty$  of the curve, for which  $r$  is positive.

Finally, as  $\theta$  increases from  $2\pi - \cos^{-1}\frac{1}{e}$  to  $2\pi$ ,  $e \cos \theta$  increases from 1 to  $e$ , so that  $1 - e \cos \theta$  decreases algebraically from 0 to  $1 - e$ , i.e.  $\frac{l}{r}$  is negative and increases numerically from 0 to  $e - 1$ , and therefore  $r$  is negative and decreases from  $\infty$  to  $\frac{l}{e - 1}$ . Corresponding to these values of  $\theta$  we have the portion,  $\infty R_1'A'$ , of the curve. For this portion  $r$  is negative.

$r$  is therefore always positive for the right-hand branch of the curve and negative for the left-hand branch.

It will be noted that the curve is described in the order

$$A'P_1'R' \infty \infty RPA L'R_1 \infty \infty R_1'A'.$$

**338.** In Case III. of the last article, let any straight line be drawn through  $S$  to meet the nearer branch in  $p$ , and the further branch in  $q$ .

The vectorial angle of  $p$  is  $XSp$ , and we have

$$Sp = \frac{l}{1 - e \cos XSp}.$$

The vectorial angle of  $q$  is not  $XSq$  but the angle that  $qS$  produced makes with  $SX$ , *i.e.* it is  $XSq \mp \pi$ . Also for the point  $q$  the radius vector is negative so that the relation (1) of Art. 335 gives, for the point  $q$ ,

$$-Sq = \frac{l}{1 - e \cos (XSq \mp \pi)} = \frac{l}{1 + e \cos XSq},$$

*i.e.*

$$Sq = -\frac{l}{1 + e \cos XSq}.$$

This is the relation connecting the distance,  $Sq$ , of any point on the further branch of the hyperbola with the angle  $XSq$  that it makes with the initial line.

**339.** *Equation to the directrices.*

Considering the figure of Art. 295, the numerical values of the distances  $SZ$  and  $SZ'$  are  $\frac{l}{e}$  and  $\frac{l}{e} + 2CZ$ ,

*i.e.*

$$\frac{l}{e} \text{ and } \frac{l}{e} + 2 \frac{l}{e(e^2 - 1)},$$

since

$$CZ = \frac{a}{e} = \frac{l}{e(e^2 - 1)}. \quad [\text{Art. 300.}]$$

The equations to the two directrices are therefore

$$r \cos \theta = -\frac{l}{e},$$

and

$$r \cos \theta = -\left[ \frac{l}{e} + \frac{2l}{e(e^2 - 1)} \right] = -\frac{l}{e} \frac{e^2 + 1}{e^2 - 1}.$$

The same equations would be found to hold in the case of the ellipse.

**340.** *Equation to the asymptotes.*

The perpendicular distance from  $S$  upon an asymptote (Fig., Art. 315)

$$= CS \sin ACK_1 = ae \cdot \frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} = b.$$

Also the asymptote  $CQ$  makes an angle  $\cos^{-1} \frac{1}{e}$  with the axis. The perpendicular on it from  $S$  therefore makes an angle  $\frac{\pi}{2} + \cos^{-1} \frac{1}{e}$ .

Hence, by Art. 88, the polar equation to the asymptote  $CQ$  is

$$b = r \cos \left[ \theta - \frac{\pi}{2} - \cos^{-1} \frac{1}{e} \right] = r \sin \left[ \theta - \cos^{-1} \frac{1}{e} \right].$$

The polar equation to the other asymptote is similarly

$$b = r \cos \left[ \theta - \left( \frac{3\pi}{2} - \cos^{-1} \frac{1}{e} \right) \right] = -r \sin \left( \theta + \cos^{-1} \frac{1}{e} \right).$$

**341. Ex. 1.** *In any conic, prove that*

(1) *the sum of the reciprocals of the segments of any focal chord is constant, and*

(2) *the sum of the reciprocals of two perpendicular focal chords is constant.*

Let  $PSP'$  be any focal chord, and let the vectorial angle of  $P$  be  $\alpha$ , so that the vectorial angle of  $P'$  is  $\pi + \alpha$ .

(1) By equation (1) of Art. 335, we have

$$\frac{l}{SP} = 1 - e \cos \alpha,$$

and

$$\frac{l}{SP'} = 1 - e \cos (\pi + \alpha) = 1 + e \cos \alpha.$$

Hence

$$\frac{l}{SP} + \frac{l}{SP'} = 2,$$

so that

$$\frac{1}{SP} + \frac{1}{SP'} = \frac{2}{l}.$$

The semi-latus-rectum is therefore the harmonic mean between the segments of any focal chord.

(2) Let  $QSQ'$  be the focal chord perpendicular to  $PSP'$ , so that the vectorial angles of  $Q$  and  $Q'$  are  $\frac{\pi}{2} + \alpha$  and  $\frac{3\pi}{2} + \alpha$ . We then have

$$\frac{l}{SQ} = 1 - e \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \alpha\right) = 1 + e \sin \alpha,$$

and  $\frac{l}{SQ'} = 1 - e \cos\left(\frac{3\pi}{2} + \alpha\right) = 1 + e \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \alpha\right) = 1 - e \sin \alpha.$

Hence

$$PP' = SP + SP' = \frac{l}{1 - e \cos \alpha} + \frac{l}{1 + e \cos \alpha} = \frac{2l}{1 - e^2 \cos^2 \alpha},$$

and  $QQ' = SQ + SQ' = \frac{l}{1 + e \sin \alpha} + \frac{l}{1 - e \sin \alpha} = \frac{2l}{1 - e^2 \sin^2 \alpha}.$

Therefore

$$\frac{1}{PP'} + \frac{1}{QQ'} = \frac{1 - e^2 \cos^2 \alpha}{2l} + \frac{1 - e^2 \sin^2 \alpha}{2l} = \frac{2 - e^2}{2l},$$

and is therefore the same for all such pairs of chords.

**Ex. 2.** Prove that the locus of the middle points of focal chords of a conic section is a conic section.

Let  $PSQ$  be any chord, the angle  $PSX$  being  $\theta$ , so that

$$SP = \frac{l}{1 - e \cos \theta},$$

and  $SQ = \frac{l}{1 - e \cos(\pi + \theta)} = \frac{l}{1 + e \cos \theta}.$

Let  $R$  be the middle point of  $PQ$ , and let its polar coordinates be  $r$  and  $\theta$ .

Then  $r = SP - RP = SP - \frac{SP + SQ}{2} = \frac{SP - SQ}{2}$   
 $= \frac{1}{2}l \left[ \frac{1}{1 - e \cos \theta} - \frac{1}{1 + e \cos \theta} \right] = l \frac{e \cos \theta}{1 - e^2 \cos^2 \theta},$

i.e.  $r^2 - e^2 r^2 \cos^2 \theta = le \cdot r \cos \theta.$

Transforming to Cartesian coordinates this equation becomes

$$x^2 + y^2 - e^2 x^2 = lex \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

If the original conic be a parabola, we have  $e = 1$ , and equation (1) becomes  $y^2 = lx$ , so that the locus is a parabola whose vertex is  $S$  and latus-rectum  $l$ .

If  $e$  be not equal to unity, equation (1) may be written in the form

$$(1 - e^2) \left[ x - \frac{1}{2} \frac{le}{1 - e^2} \right]^2 + y^2 = \frac{l^2 e^2}{4(1 - e^2)}$$

and therefore represents an ellipse or a hyperbola according as the original conic is an ellipse or a hyperbola.

**342.** To find the polar equation of the tangent at any point  $P$  of the conic section  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \cos \theta$ .

Let  $P$  be the point  $(r_1, \alpha)$ , and let  $Q$  be another point on the curve, whose coordinates are  $(r_2, \beta)$ , so that we have

$$\frac{l}{r_1} = 1 - e \cos \alpha \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

and  $\frac{l}{r_2} = 1 - e \cos \beta \dots\dots\dots(2).$

By Art. 89, the polar equation of the line  $PQ$  is

$$\frac{\sin(\beta - \alpha)}{r} = \frac{\sin(\theta - \alpha)}{r_2} + \frac{\sin(\beta - \theta)}{r_1}.$$

By means of equations (1) and (2) this equation becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{l}{r} \sin(\beta - \alpha) &= \sin(\theta - \alpha) \{1 - e \cos \beta\} + \sin(\beta - \theta) \{1 - e \cos \alpha\} \\ &= \{\sin(\theta - \alpha) + \sin(\beta - \theta)\} - e \{\sin(\theta - \alpha) \cos \beta + \sin(\beta - \theta) \cos \alpha\} \\ &= 2 \sin \frac{\beta - \alpha}{2} \cos \frac{2\theta - \alpha - \beta}{2} \\ &\quad - e \{(\sin \theta \cos \alpha - \cos \theta \sin \alpha) \cos \beta + (\sin \beta \cos \theta - \cos \beta \sin \theta) \cos \alpha\} \\ &= 2 \sin \frac{\beta - \alpha}{2} \cos \left( \theta - \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \right) - e \cos \theta \sin(\beta - \alpha), \end{aligned}$$

*i.e.*  $\frac{l}{r} = \sec \frac{\beta - \alpha}{2} \cos \left( \theta - \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \right) - e \cos \theta \dots\dots\dots(3).$

This is the equation to the straight line joining two points,  $P$  and  $Q$ , on the curve whose vectorial angles,  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , are given.

To obtain the equation of the tangent at  $P$  we take  $Q$  indefinitely close to  $P$ , *i.e.* we put  $\beta = \alpha$ , and the equation (3) then becomes

$$\frac{l}{r} = \cos(\theta - \alpha) - e \cos \theta \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

This is the required equation to the tangent at the point  $\alpha$ .

**343.** If we assume a suitable form for the equation to the joining chord we can more easily obtain the required equation.

Let the required equation be

$$\frac{l}{r} = L \cos (\theta - \gamma) - e \cos \theta \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

[On transformation to Cartesian coordinates this equation is easily seen to represent a straight line; also since it contains two arbitrary constants,  $L$  and  $\gamma$ , it can be made to pass through any two points.]

If it pass through the point  $(r_1, \alpha)$ , we have

$$1 - e \cos \alpha = \frac{l}{r_1} = L \cos (\alpha - \gamma) - e \cos \alpha,$$

*i.e.*  $L \cos (\alpha - \gamma) = 1 \dots\dots\dots (2).$

Similarly, if it pass through the point  $(r_2, \beta)$  on the curve, we have

$$L \cos (\beta - \gamma) = 1 \dots\dots\dots (3).$$

Solving these, we have, [since  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are not equal]

$$\alpha - \gamma = -(\beta - \gamma), \text{ i.e. } \gamma = \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}.$$

Substituting this value in (3), we obtain  $L = \sec \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}$ .

The equation (1) is then

$$\frac{l}{r} = \sec \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2} \cos \left( \theta - \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \right) - e \cos \theta.$$

As in the last article, the equation to the tangent at the point  $\alpha$  is then

$$\frac{l}{r} = \cos (\theta - \alpha) - e \cos \theta.$$

**\*344.** To find the polar equation of the **polar** of any point  $(r_1, \theta_1)$  with respect to the conic section  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \cos \theta$ .

Let the tangents at the points whose vectorial angles are  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  meet in the point  $(r_1, \theta_1)$ .

The coordinates  $r_1$  and  $\theta_1$  must therefore satisfy equation (4) of Art. 342, so that

$$\frac{l}{r_1} = \cos (\theta_1 - \alpha) - e \cos \theta_1 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

Similarly,

$$\frac{l}{r_1} = \cos (\theta_1 - \beta) - e \cos \theta_1 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$



Subtracting (2) from (1), we have

$$\cos (\theta_1 - \alpha) = \cos (\theta_1 - \beta),$$

and therefore

$$\theta_1 - \alpha = -(\theta_1 - \beta), \text{ [since } \alpha \text{ and } \beta \text{ are not equal],}$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = \theta_1 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

Substituting this value in (1), we have

$$\frac{l}{r_1} = \cos \left\{ \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} - \alpha \right\} - e \cos \theta_1,$$

*i.e.* 
$$\cos \frac{\beta - \alpha}{2} = \frac{l}{r_1} + e \cos \theta_1 \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

Also, by equation (3) of Art. 342, the equation of the line joining the points  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  is

$$\frac{l}{r} + e \cos \theta = \sec \frac{\beta - \alpha}{2} \cos \left( \theta - \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \right),$$

*i.e.* 
$$\left( \frac{l}{r} + e \cos \theta \right) \cos \frac{\beta - \alpha}{2} = \cos \left( \theta - \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \right),$$

*i.e.* 
$$\left( \frac{l}{r} + e \cos \theta \right) \left( \frac{l}{r_1} + e \cos \theta_1 \right) = \cos (\theta - \theta_1) \dots\dots(5).$$

This therefore is the required polar equation to the polar of the point  $(r_1, \theta_1)$ .

**\*345.** *To find the equation to the normal at the point whose vectorial angle is  $\alpha$ .*

The equation to the tangent at the point  $\alpha$  is

$$\frac{l}{r} = \cos (\theta - \alpha) - e \cos \theta,$$

*i.e.*, in Cartesian coordinates,

$$x (\cos \alpha - e) + y \sin \alpha = l \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Let the equation to the normal be

$$A \cos \theta + B \sin \theta = \frac{l}{r} \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

*i.e.* 
$$Ax + By = l \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

Since (1) and (3) are perpendicular, we have

$$A (\cos \alpha - e) + B \sin \alpha = 0 \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

Since (2) goes through the point  $\left(\frac{l}{1 - e \cos \alpha}, \alpha\right)$  we have

$$A \cos \alpha + B \sin \alpha = 1 - e \cos \alpha \dots\dots\dots(5).$$

Solving (4) and (5), we have

$$A = \frac{1 - e \cos \alpha}{e}, \text{ and } B = \frac{(1 - e \cos \alpha)(e - \cos \alpha)}{e \sin \alpha}.$$

The equation (2) then becomes

$$\sin \alpha \cos \theta + (e - \cos \alpha) \sin \theta = \frac{le \sin \alpha}{r(1 - e \cos \alpha)},$$

*i.e.* 
$$\sin(\theta - \alpha) - e \sin \theta = -\frac{e \sin \alpha}{1 - e \cos \alpha} \cdot \frac{l}{r}.$$

**346.** If the axis of the conic be inclined at an angle  $\gamma$  to the initial line, so that the equation to the conic is

$$\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \cos(\theta - \gamma),$$

the equation to the tangent at the point  $\alpha$  is obtained by substituting  $\alpha - \gamma$  and  $\theta - \gamma$  for  $\alpha$  and  $\theta$  in the equation of Art. 342.

The tangent is therefore

$$\frac{l}{r} = \cos(\theta - \alpha) - e \cos(\theta - \gamma).$$

The equation of the line joining the two points  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  is, by the same article,

$$\frac{l}{r} = \sec \frac{\beta - \alpha}{2} \cos \left( \theta - \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \right) - e \cos(\theta - \gamma).$$

The equation to the polar of the point  $(r_1, \theta_1)$  is, by Art. 344,

$$\left\{ \frac{l}{r} + e \cos(\theta - \gamma) \right\} \left\{ \frac{l}{r_1} + e \cos(\theta_1 - \gamma) \right\} = \cos(\theta - \theta_1).$$

Also the equation to the normal at the point  $\alpha$

$$r \{ e \sin(\theta - \gamma) + \sin(\alpha - \theta) \} = \frac{el \sin(\alpha - \gamma)}{1 - e \cos(\alpha - \gamma)}.$$

**347. Ex. 1.** *If the tangents at any two points P and Q of a conic meet in a point T, and if the straight line PQ meet the directrix corresponding to S in a point K, then the angle KST is a right angle.*

If the vectorial angles of  $P$  and  $Q$  be  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  respectively, the equation to  $PQ$  is, by equation (3) of Art. 342,

$$\frac{l}{r} = \sec \frac{\beta - \alpha}{2} \cos \left( \theta - \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \right) - e \cos \theta \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Also the equation to the directrix is, by Art. 339,

$$\frac{l}{r} = - e \cos \theta \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

If we solve the equations (1) and (2), we shall obtain the polar coordinates of  $K$ .

But, by subtracting (2) from (1), we have

$$0 = \sec \frac{\beta - \alpha}{2} \cos \left( \theta - \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \right), \quad \text{i.e. } \theta - \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = \frac{\pi}{2},$$

i.e. 
$$\angle K SX = \frac{\pi}{2} + \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2},$$

so that  $SK$  bisects the exterior angle between  $SP$  and  $SQ$ .

Also, by equation (3) of Art. 344, we have the vectorial angle of  $T$  equal to  $\frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}$ , i.e.  $\angle T SX = \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}$ .

Hence 
$$\angle K ST = \angle K SX - \angle T SX = \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

**Ex. 2.**  $S$  is the focus and  $P$  and  $Q$  two points on a conic such that the angle  $PSQ$  is constant and equal to  $2\delta$ ; prove that

(1) the locus of the intersection of tangents at  $P$  and  $Q$  is a conic section whose focus is  $S$ ,

and (2) the line  $PQ$  always touches a conic whose focus is  $S$ .

(1) Let the vectorial angles of  $P$  and  $Q$  be respectively  $\gamma + \delta$  and  $\gamma - \delta$ , where  $\gamma$  is variable.

By equation (4) of Art. 342, the tangents at  $P$  and  $Q$  are therefore

$$\frac{l}{r} = \cos (\theta - \gamma - \delta) - e \cos \theta \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

and 
$$\frac{l}{r} = \cos (\theta - \gamma + \delta) - e \cos \theta \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

If, between these two equations, we eliminate the variable quantity  $\gamma$ , we shall have the locus of the point of intersection of the two tangents.

Subtracting (2) from (1), we have

$$\cos (\theta - \gamma - \delta) = \cos (\theta - \gamma + \delta).$$

Hence, (since  $\delta$  is not zero) we have  $\gamma = \theta$ .

Substituting for  $\gamma$  in (1), we have

$$\frac{l}{r} = \cos \delta - e \cos \theta,$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{l \sec \delta}{r} = 1 - e \sec \delta \cos \theta.$$

Hence the required locus is a conic whose focus is  $S$ , whose latus rectum is  $2l \sec \delta$ , and whose eccentricity is  $e \sec \delta$ .

It is therefore an ellipse, parabola, or hyperbola, according as  $e \sec \delta$  is  $< = > 1$ , *i.e.* according as  $\cos \delta > = < e$ .

(2) The equation to  $PQ$  is, by equation (3) of Art. 342,

$$\frac{l}{r} = \sec \delta \cos (\theta - \gamma) - e \cos \theta,$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{l \cos \delta}{r} = \cos (\theta - \gamma) - e \cos \delta \cos \theta \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

Comparing this with equation (4) of Art. 342, we see that it always touches a conic whose latus rectum is  $2l \cos \delta$  and whose eccentricity is  $e \cos \delta$ .

Also the directrix is in each case the same as that of the original conic. For both  $\frac{l \sec \delta}{e \sec \delta}$  and  $\frac{l \cos \delta}{e \cos \delta}$  are equal to  $\frac{l}{e}$ .

**Ex. 3.** A circle passes through the focus  $S$  of a conic and meets it in four points whose distances from  $S$  are  $r_1, r_2, r_3$ , and  $r_4$ . Prove that

(1)  $r_1 r_2 r_3 r_4 = \frac{d^2 l^2}{e^2}$ , where  $2l$  and  $e$  are the latus rectum and eccentricity of the conic, and  $d$  is the diameter of the circle,

and (2)  $\frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} + \frac{1}{r_3} + \frac{1}{r_4} = \frac{2}{l}$ .

Take the focus as pole, and the axis of the conic as initial line, so that its equation is

$$\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \cos \theta \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

If the diameter of the circle, which passes through  $S$ , be inclined at an angle  $\gamma$  to the axis, its equation is, by Art. 172,

$$r = d \cos (\theta - \gamma) \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

If, between (1) and (2), we eliminate  $\theta$ , we shall have an equation in  $r$ , whose roots are  $r_1, r_2, r_3$ , and  $r_4$ .

From (1) we have  $\cos \theta = \frac{r-l}{er}$ , and hence  $\sin \theta = \sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{r-l}{er}\right)^2}$ ,

and then (2) gives

$$r = d \cos \gamma \cos \theta + d \sin \gamma \sin \theta,$$

*i.e.*  $\{er^2 - d \cos \gamma (r-l)\}^2 = d^2 \sin^2 \gamma [e^2 r^2 - (r-l)^2],$

*i.e.*  $e^2 r^4 - 2ed \cos \gamma \cdot r^3 + r^2 (d^2 + 2eld \cos \gamma - e^2 d^2 \sin^2 \gamma) - 2ld^2 r + d^2 l^2 = 0.$

Hence, by Art. 2, we have  $r_1 r_2 r_3 r_4 = \frac{d^2 l^2}{e^2}$  .....(3),

and  $r_2 r_3 r_4 + r_3 r_4 r_1 + r_4 r_1 r_2 + r_1 r_2 r_3 = \frac{2ld^2}{e^2}$  .....(4).

Dividing (4) by (3), we have  $\frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} + \frac{1}{r_3} + \frac{1}{r_4} = \frac{2}{l}$ .

**EXAMPLES XXXIX**

1. In a parabola, prove that the length of a focal chord which is inclined at  $30^\circ$  to the axis is four times the length of the latus-rectum.

The tangents at two points,  $P$  and  $Q$ , of a conic meet in  $T$ , and  $S$  is the focus; prove that

2. if the conic be a parabola, then  $ST^2 = SP \cdot SQ$ .

3. if the conic be central, then  $\frac{1}{SP \cdot SQ} - \frac{1}{ST^2} = \frac{1}{b^2} \sin^2 \frac{PSQ}{2}$ ,

where  $b$  is the semi-minor axis.

4. The vectorial angle of  $T$  is the semi-sum of the vectorial angles of  $P$  and  $Q$ .

Hence, by reference to Art. 338, prove that, if  $P$  and  $Q$  be on different branches of a hyperbola, then  $ST$  bisects the supplement of the angle  $PSQ$ , and that in other cases, whatever be the conic,  $ST$  bisects the angle  $PSQ$ .

5. A straight line drawn through the common focus  $S$  of a number of conics meets them in the points  $P_1, P_2, \dots$ ; on it is taken a point  $Q$  such that the reciprocal of  $SQ$  is equal to the sum of the reciprocals of  $SP_1, SP_2, \dots$ . Prove that the locus of  $Q$  is a conic section whose focus is  $S$ , and shew that the reciprocal of its latus-rectum is equal to the sum of the reciprocals of the latera recta of the given conics.

6. Prove that perpendicular focal chords of a rectangular hyperbola are equal.

7.  $PSP'$  and  $QSQ'$  are two perpendicular focal chords of a conic; prove that  $\frac{1}{PS \cdot SP'} + \frac{1}{QS \cdot SQ'}$  is constant.

8. Shew that the length of any focal chord of a conic is a third proportional to the transverse axis and the diameter parallel to the chord.

9. If a straight line drawn through the focus  $S$  of a hyperbola, parallel to an asymptote, meet the curve in  $P$ , prove that  $SP$  is one quarter of the latus rectum.

10. Prove that the equations  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \cos \theta$  and  $\frac{l}{r} = -e \cos \theta - 1$  represent the same conic.

11. Two conics have a common focus; prove that two of their common chords pass through the intersection of their directrices.

12.  $P$  is any point on a conic, whose focus is  $S$ , and a straight line is drawn through  $S$  at a given angle with  $SP$  to meet the tangent at  $P$  in  $T$ ; prove that the locus of  $T$  is a conic whose focus and directrix are the same as those of the original conic.

13. If a chord of a conic section subtend a constant angle  $2\alpha$  at the focus, prove that the locus of the point where it meets the internal bisector of the angle  $2\alpha$  is the conic section

$$\frac{l \cos \alpha}{r} = 1 - e \cos \alpha \cos \theta.$$

14. Two conic sections have a common focus about which one of them is turned; prove that the common chord is always a tangent to another conic, having the same focus, and whose eccentricity is the ratio of the eccentricities of the given conics.

15. Two ellipses have a common focus; two radii vectores, one to each ellipse, are drawn from the focus at right angles to one another and tangents are drawn at their extremities; prove that these tangents meet on a fixed conic, and find when it is a parabola.

16. Prove that the sum of the distances from the focus of the points in which a conic is intersected by any circle, whose centre is at a fixed point on the transverse axis, is constant.

17. Shew that the equation to the circle circumscribing the triangle formed by the three tangents to the parabola  $r = \frac{2a}{1 - \cos \theta}$  drawn at the points whose vectorial angles are  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$ , is

$$r = a \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\alpha}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\beta}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\gamma}{2} \sin \left( \frac{\alpha + \beta + \gamma}{2} - \theta \right),$$

and hence that it always passes through the focus.

18. If tangents be drawn to the same parabola at points whose vectorial angles are  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\gamma$ , and  $\delta$ , shew that the centres of the circles circumscribing the four triangles formed by these four lines all lie on the circle whose equation is

$$r = -a \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\alpha}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\beta}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\gamma}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\delta}{2} \cos \left[ \theta - \frac{\alpha + \beta + \gamma + \delta}{2} \right].$$

19. The circle circumscribing the triangle formed by three tangents to a parabola is drawn; prove that the tangent to it at the focus makes with the axis an angle equal to the sum of the angles made with the axis by the three tangents.

20. Shew that the equation to the circle, which passes through the focus and touches the curve  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \cos \theta$  at the point  $\theta = \alpha$ , is

$$r(1 - e \cos \alpha)^2 = l \cos(\theta - \alpha) - el \cos(\theta - 2\alpha).$$

21. A given circle, whose centre is on the axis of a parabola, passes through the focus  $S$  and is cut in four points  $A, B, C$ , and  $D$  by any conic, of given latus-rectum, having  $S$  as focus and a tangent to the parabola for directrix; prove that the sum of the distances of the points  $A, B, C$ , and  $D$  from  $S$  is constant.

22. Prove that the locus of the vertices of all parabolas that can be drawn touching a given circle of radius  $a$  and having a fixed point on the circumference as focus is  $r = 2a \cos^3 \frac{\theta}{3}$ , the fixed point being the pole and the diameter through it the initial line.

23. Two conic sections have the same focus and directrix. Shew that any tangent from the outer curve to the inner one subtends a constant angle at the focus.

24. Two equal ellipses, of eccentricity  $e$ , are placed with their axes at right angles and they have one focus  $S$  in common; if  $PQ$  be a common tangent, shew that the angle  $PSQ$  is equal to  $2 \sin^{-1} \frac{e}{\sqrt{2}}$ .

25. Prove that the two conics  $\frac{l_1}{r} = 1 - e_1 \cos \theta$  and  $\frac{l_2}{r} = 1 - e_2 \cos(\theta - \alpha)$  will touch one another, if  $l_1^2(1 - e_2^2) + l_2^2(1 - e_1^2) + 2l_1l_2e_1e_2 \cos \alpha = 0$ .

26. An ellipse and a hyperbola have the same focus  $S$  and intersect in four real points, two on each branch of the hyperbola; if  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  be the distances from  $S$  of the two points of intersection on the nearer branch, and  $r_3$  and  $r_4$  be those of the two points on the further branch, and if  $l$  and  $l'$  be the semi-latus-recta of the two conics, prove that

$$(l + l') \left( \frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} \right) + (l - l') \left( \frac{1}{r_3} + \frac{1}{r_4} \right) = 4. \quad [\text{Make use of Art. 338.}]$$

27. If the normals at three points of the parabola  $r = a \operatorname{cosec}^2 \frac{\theta}{2}$ , whose vectorial angles are  $\alpha, \beta$ , and  $\gamma$ , meet in a point whose vectorial angle is  $\delta$ , prove that  $2\delta = \alpha + \beta + \gamma - \pi$ .

## ANSWERS

19. Transform the equation of the previous example to Cartesian Coordinates.

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. See Art. 336.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Length of chord} &= \frac{l}{2} \left( \operatorname{cosec}^2 \frac{\theta}{2} + \sec^2 \frac{\theta}{2} \right) = 2l \operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta \\ &= 8l, \text{ if } \theta = 30^\circ. \end{aligned}$$

2.  $SP = a \operatorname{cosec}^2 \frac{\alpha}{2}$ ,  $SQ = a \operatorname{cosec}^2 \frac{\beta}{2}$ .

The tangents at  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  intersect where

$$\theta = \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}. \quad [\text{Art. 344, equation (3).}]$$

$$ST = \frac{2a}{\cos \frac{\beta - \alpha}{2} - \cos \frac{\beta + \alpha}{2}}, \quad [\text{Art. 342, equation (4)}],$$

$$= a \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\alpha}{2} \cdot \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\beta}{2}. \quad \therefore ST^2 = SP \cdot SQ.$$

3. Let  $\alpha + \beta$ ,  $\alpha - \beta$ , be the vectorial angles of  $P$  and  $Q$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then, as in Art. 344, } & \frac{1}{SP \cdot SQ} - \frac{1}{ST^2} \\ &= \frac{\{1 - e \cos(\alpha + \beta)\} \{1 - e \cos(\alpha - \beta)\} - \{\cos \beta - e \cos \alpha\}^2}{l^2} \\ &= \frac{\sin^2 \beta (1 - e^2)}{l^2} = \frac{\sin^2 \beta}{b^2} = \frac{1}{b^2} \sin^2 \frac{PSQ}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

4. The tangents intersect where  $\theta = \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}$ . [Art. 344.]

If  $P$  and  $Q$  are on opposite branches, then, as in Art. 344, we have  $\cos(\theta - \alpha) = \cos(\theta - \beta + \pi)$ .

$$\therefore \theta - \alpha = -\theta + \beta - \pi; \quad \therefore \theta = \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} - \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

5. 
$$\frac{1}{r} = \frac{1 - e_1 \cos(\theta - \alpha_1)}{l_1} + \frac{1 - e_2 \cos(\theta - \alpha_2)}{l_2} + \dots$$

$$= \sum \frac{1}{l_1} - \sum \frac{e_1}{l_1} \cos(\theta - \alpha_1) = \frac{1}{L} - \frac{E}{L} \cos(\theta - \gamma),$$

where 
$$\frac{1}{L} = \sum \frac{1}{l_1}, \quad \frac{E \cos \gamma}{L} = \sum \frac{e_1 \cos \alpha_1}{l_1}$$



and

$$\frac{E \sin \gamma}{L} = \sum \frac{e_1 \sin \alpha_1}{l_1}.$$

This is a conic, of latus rectum  $L$ , whose focus is  $S$ .

6. The length of the focal chord, inclined at  $\theta_1$  of the

$$\text{conic } \frac{l}{r} = 1 - \sqrt{2} \cdot \cos \theta,$$

$$= l \left\{ \frac{1}{1 - \sqrt{2} \cdot \cos \theta} + \frac{1}{1 + \sqrt{2} \cdot \cos \theta} \right\} = \frac{2l}{1 - 2 \cos^2 \theta} = -\frac{2l}{\cos 2\theta}.$$

The length of the perpendicular chord

$$= -\frac{2l}{\cos \left[ 2 \left( \theta + \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \right]} = \frac{2l}{\cos 2\theta}.$$

$$7. \quad \frac{l}{SP} = 1 - e \cos \alpha, \quad \frac{l}{SP'} = 1 + e \cos \alpha,$$

$$\frac{l}{SQ} = 1 - e \cos \left( \alpha + \frac{\pi}{2} \right)$$

$$= 1 + e \sin \alpha, \quad \text{and } \frac{l}{SQ'} = 1 - e \sin \alpha.$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{SP \cdot SP'} + \frac{1}{SQ \cdot SQ'} = \frac{1 - e^2 \cos^2 \alpha + 1 - e^2 \sin^2 \alpha}{l^2} = \frac{2 - e^2}{l^2}.$$

8. Let the diameter =  $d$ , and chord =  $c$ .

$$\text{Then } d^2 = \frac{4a^2 b^2}{b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta}, \quad [\text{Art. 256}],$$

$$\text{and } c = \frac{l}{1 - e \cos \theta} + \frac{l}{1 + e \cos \theta} = \frac{2l}{1 - e^2 \cos^2 \theta}$$

$$= \frac{2b^2 a}{b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta}; \quad \therefore d^2 = 2ac.$$

$$9. \quad \text{If } \theta = \pi + \cos^{-1} \frac{1}{e}, \quad r = \frac{l}{1 + e \cdot \frac{1}{e}} = \frac{l}{2}.$$

10. Change  $r$  into  $-r$ , and  $\theta$  into  $\theta + \pi$  (Art. 32), and the first equation then becomes the second.

11. Let the equation to one conic be, as in the last example,

$$\frac{l_1}{r} = 1 - e_1 \cos \theta, \dots \text{(i)} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{l_1}{r} = -1 - e_1 \cos \theta \dots \text{(ii)}$$

and that of the second  $\frac{l_2}{r} = 1 - e_2 \cos (\theta - \alpha)$ . ... (iii)

Adding (ii) and (iii), and subtracting (i) and (iii), we obtain  $\frac{l_1}{r} + e_1 \cos \theta \pm \left( \frac{l_2}{r} + e_2 \cos (\theta - \alpha) \right) = 0$ .

Since this equation represents straight lines, they are the common chords, and they clearly pass through the intersection of the directrices, which, by Art. 339, have as

equations  $r \cos \theta = -\frac{l_1}{e_1}$  and  $r \cos (\theta - \alpha) = -\frac{l_2}{e_2}$ .

12. The intersection of the tangent

$$\frac{l}{r} = \cos (\theta - \alpha) - e \cos \theta$$

with the line  $\theta = \alpha - \beta$  (where  $\beta$  is a constant) lies on

$$\frac{l}{r} = \cos \beta - e \cos \theta, \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \frac{l \sec \beta}{r} = 1 - e \sec \beta \cdot \cos \theta,$$

which is a conic having the same focus and directrix as the given one.

13. The equation of the chord joining the points whose vectorial angles are  $\beta - \alpha$ ,  $\beta + \alpha$  is [Art. 342]

$$\frac{l}{r} = \sec \alpha \cdot \cos (\theta - \beta) - e \cos \theta.$$

This cuts  $\theta = \beta$  where

$$\frac{l}{r} = \sec \alpha - e \cos \theta, \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{l \cos \alpha}{r} = 1 - e \cos \alpha \cdot \cos \theta.$$

14. The equation to the common chord of the conics

$$\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \cos \theta, \text{ and } \frac{l'}{r} = 1 - e' \cos (\theta - \alpha) \text{ is}$$

$$\frac{l' - l}{r} = e \cos \theta - e' \cos (\theta - \alpha),$$

or 
$$\frac{\frac{1}{e'}(l' - l)}{r} = \cos (\theta - \alpha) - \frac{e}{e'} \cos \theta,$$

which, by Art. 342, touches

$$\frac{\frac{1}{e'}(l' - l)}{r} = 1 - \frac{e}{e'} \cos \theta.$$

15. Let 
$$\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \cos \theta \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

and 
$$\frac{l'}{r} = 1 - e' \cos (\theta - \gamma) \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

be the equations to the two conics.

The tangent to (1) at the point  $\beta$  is [Art. 342]

$$\frac{l}{r} = \cos (\theta - \beta) - e \cos \theta. \dots\dots\dots(3)$$

The tangent to (2) at the point  $(90^\circ + \beta)$  is [Art. 346]

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{l'}{r} &= \cos (\theta - 90^\circ - \beta) - e' \cos (\theta - \gamma) \\ &= \sin (\theta - \beta) - e' \cos (\theta - \gamma). \dots\dots\dots(4) \end{aligned}$$

For the required locus we eliminate  $\beta$  between (3) and (4), and have

$$\left(\frac{l}{r} + e \cos \theta\right)^2 + \left(\frac{l'}{r} + e' \cos (\theta - \gamma)\right)^2 = 1,$$

or, in Cartesians,  $(l + ex)^2 + (l' + e'x \cos \gamma + e'y \sin \gamma)^2 = x^2 + y^2$ .

This is always a conic section; and it is easily seen to be a parabola if the terms of the second degree form a perfect square, *i.e.* if

$$0 = 1 - e^2 - e'^2 + e^2 e'^2 \sin^2 \gamma.$$

16. The intersections of  $r^2 - 2r\rho \cos \theta + \rho^2 - a^2 = 0$ ,  
[Art. 172],

with  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \cos \theta$ ,

are given by  $e(r^2 + \rho^2 - a^2) = 2\rho(r - l)$ ;

$$\therefore r_1 + r_2 = \frac{2\rho}{e}.$$

17 and 18. The intersections of the tangents at the points  $\beta, \gamma$  to the parabola  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 - \cos \theta$  are easily seen to be

$$\theta = \frac{1}{2}(\beta + \gamma), \quad r = a \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\beta}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\gamma}{2},$$

and two similar points.

These clearly all lie on the circle

$$r = -a \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\alpha}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\beta}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\gamma}{2} \sin \left[ \theta - \frac{\alpha + \beta + \gamma}{2} \right],$$

$$\text{i.e. } r = a \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\alpha}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\beta}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\gamma}{2} \cos \left[ \theta - \left( \frac{\alpha + \beta + \gamma}{2} - \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \right].$$

The centre of this circle is, by Art. 171, the point whose vectorial coordinates are

$$\frac{a}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\alpha}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\beta}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\gamma}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\alpha + \beta + \gamma}{2} - \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

This point lies on the circle whose equation is

$$r = -\frac{a}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\alpha}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\beta}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\gamma}{2} \operatorname{cosec} \frac{\delta}{2} \cos \left[ \theta - \frac{\alpha + \beta + \gamma + \delta}{2} \right].$$

Similarly for the centres of the other three circles.

19. The centre of the circle lies on the line

$$\theta = \frac{\alpha + \beta + \gamma - \pi}{2};$$

$\therefore$  the equation to the tangent at  $S$  is  $\theta = \frac{\alpha + \beta + \gamma}{2} =$  sum of the angles made with the axis by the three tangents.

20. Let  $(\rho, \phi)$  be the coordinates of its centre, and its equation  $r = 2\rho \cos(\theta - \phi)$ . .....(i)

Since it passes through the point  $\theta = \alpha$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{l}{1 - e \cos \alpha} = 2\rho \cos(\alpha - \phi). \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

Since  $(\rho, \phi)$  lies on the normal at this point,

$$\therefore \sin(\alpha - \phi) + e \sin \phi = \frac{e \sin \alpha}{1 - e \cos \alpha} \cdot \frac{l}{\rho}, \dots(iii) \text{ [Art. 345],}$$

$$= 2e \sin \alpha \cos(\alpha - \phi), \text{ from (ii), } = e [\sin \phi - \sin(\phi - 2\alpha)],$$

whence 
$$\frac{\sin \phi}{\sin \alpha - e \sin 2\alpha} = \frac{\cos \phi}{\cos \alpha - e \cos 2\alpha}.$$

From (i) and (ii),  $l \cos(\theta - \phi) = r(1 - e \cos \alpha) \cdot \cos(\alpha - \phi)$ ; eliminating  $\phi$ , we have

$$l \{ \cos \theta (\cos \alpha - e \cos 2\alpha) + \sin \theta (\sin \alpha - e \sin 2\alpha) \} = r(1 - e \cos \alpha)^2,$$

or  $l \cos(\theta - \alpha) - e l \cos(\theta - 2\alpha) = r(1 - e \cos \alpha)^2.$

21. Let  $\frac{a}{r} = 1 + \cos \theta$  and  $r = c \cos \theta$  be the equations of the parabola and the circle and  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 + e \cos(\theta - \beta)$  that of the variable conic. Since its directrix  $\frac{l}{r} = e \cos(\theta - \beta)$  touches the parabola, then on comparing with

$$\frac{a}{r} = \cos(\theta - \gamma) + \cos \theta = 2 \cos \frac{\gamma}{2} \cos \left( \theta - \frac{\gamma}{2} \right),$$

we have  $\beta = \frac{\gamma}{2}$ , and  $ae = 2l \cos \beta$ . .....(1)

Also, eliminating  $\theta$  between the circle and the conic,

$$\{c(l - r) - er^2 \cos \beta\}^2 = c^2 e^2 r^2 \sin^2 \beta - e^2 r^4 \sin^2 \beta,$$

$$\therefore r_1 + r_2 + r_3 + r_4 = -\frac{2ec \cos \beta}{e^2} = -\frac{ac}{l}, \text{ by (1).}$$

22. Taking the fixed point for origin, let the equation to the circle be  $r = 2a \cos \theta$ . Let  $P$  be the point where  $\theta = \alpha$ , and  $\theta = \beta$  the equation to the axis of one of the parabolas.

The equation of the tangent at  $P$  is, [Art. 174],

$$r \cos (\theta - 2\alpha) = 2a \cos^2 \alpha.$$

Putting  $\theta = \beta$ ,  $\frac{2a \cos^2 \alpha}{\cos (\beta - 2\alpha)} = ST = SP = 2a \cos \alpha.$

(See Fig. of Art. 211.)

$$\therefore \cos (\beta - 2\alpha) = \cos \alpha ; \therefore \beta = 3\alpha.$$

$$\therefore SN = SP \cos (\beta - \alpha) = 2a \cos \alpha \cdot \cos 2\alpha.$$

$$\therefore 2SA = SN + ST = 2a \cos \alpha + 2a \cos \alpha \cos 2\alpha$$

$$= 4a \cos^3 \alpha = 4a \cos^3 \frac{\beta}{3}.$$

Hence the equation to the locus of  $A$  is  $r = 2a \cos^3 \frac{\theta}{3}.$

23. Let  $\frac{ae_1}{r} = 1 - e_1 \cos \theta, \dots\dots\dots(i)$

and  $\frac{ae_2}{r} = 1 - e_2 \cos \theta, \dots\dots\dots(ii)$

be the equations of the conics.

Any tangent to (1) is  $\frac{ae_1}{r} = \cos (\theta - \alpha) - e_1 \cos \theta.$

If this meets (ii) at the point  $\theta_1$ , we have

$$\frac{e_1}{e_2} = \frac{\cos (\theta_1 - \alpha) - e_1 \cos \theta_1}{1 - e_2 \cos \theta_1};$$

$$\therefore \cos (\theta_1 - \alpha) = \frac{e_1}{e_2}, \text{ which is constant.}$$

$$\therefore \theta_1 - \alpha \text{ is constant.}$$

24. Let  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \cos \theta$ , and  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \sin \theta$  be the equa-

tions of the ellipses.

The equations of tangents to them are

$$\frac{l}{r} = \cos (\theta - \alpha) - e \cos \theta, \text{ and } \frac{l}{r} = \cos (\theta - \beta) - e \sin \theta.$$

If they are coincident, then

$$\cos \alpha - e = \cos \beta, \text{ and } \sin \beta - e = \sin \alpha;$$

$$\therefore \cos \alpha - \cos \beta = \sin \beta - \sin \alpha,$$

whence 
$$\tan \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = 1; \therefore \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = \frac{\pi}{4}.$$

Also 
$$\cos \alpha - \sin \alpha + \sin \beta - \cos \beta = 2e.$$

$$\therefore \sin \left( \frac{\pi}{4} - \alpha \right) + \sin \left( \beta - \frac{\pi}{4} \right) = \sqrt{2} \cdot e.$$

$$\therefore \sin \frac{\beta - \alpha}{2} \cdot \cos \left( \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} - \frac{\pi}{4} \right) = \frac{e}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

$$\therefore \beta - \alpha = 2 \sin^{-1} \frac{e}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

25. The tangents at the point  $\beta$  to the two conics are

$$\frac{l_1}{r} = \cos (\theta - \beta) - e_1 \cos \theta,$$

and 
$$\frac{l_2}{r} = \cos (\theta - \beta) - e_2 \cos (\theta - \alpha).$$

These are coincident if

$$\frac{l_1}{l_2} = \frac{\cos \beta - e_1}{\cos \beta - e_2 \cos \alpha} = \frac{\sin \beta}{\sin \beta - e_2 \sin \alpha}.$$

$$\therefore \cos \beta = \frac{l_1 e_2 \cos \alpha - l_2 e_1}{l_1 - l_2} \text{ and } \sin \beta = \frac{l_1 e_2 \sin \alpha}{l_1 - l_2}.$$

$$\therefore (l_1 - l_2)^2 = (l_1 e_2 \cos \alpha - l_2 e_1)^2 + l_1^2 e_2^2 \sin^2 \alpha.$$

$$\therefore l_1^2 (1 - e_2^2) + l_2^2 (1 - e_1^2) = 2l_1 l_2 (1 - e_1 e_2 \cos \alpha).$$

26. Let  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e_1 \cos \theta$  and  $\frac{l'}{r} = 1 - e_2 \cos (\theta - \alpha)$

be the equations of the conics.

Eliminating  $\theta$ , we have

$$r^2 [\dots] - 2r [l e_2^2 + l' e_1^2 - e_1 e_2 \cos \alpha (l + l')] + l'^2 e_1^2 + l^2 e_2^2 - 2e_1 e_2 l l' \cos \alpha = 0.$$

Also eliminating  $\theta$  between

$$\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e_1 \cos \theta \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{l'}{r} = -1 - e_2 \cos (\theta - \alpha), \quad [\text{Art. 338}],$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} r^2 [\dots] - 2r [le_2^2 - l'e_1^2 + e_1e_2 \cos \alpha (l - l')] \\ + l^2e_1^2 + l'^2e_2^2 - 2e_1e_2ll' \cos \alpha = 0. \\ \therefore (l + l') \left( \frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} \right) + (l - l') \left( \frac{1}{r_3} + \frac{1}{r_4} \right) \\ 2(l + l') \{le_2^2 + l'e_1^2 - e_1e_2 \cos \alpha (l + l')\} \\ + 2(l - l') \{le_2^2 - l'e_1^2 + e_1e_2 \cos \alpha (l - l')\} \\ = \frac{\quad}{l^2e_2^2 + l'^2e_1^2 - 2e_1e_2ll' \cos \alpha} = 4. \end{aligned}$$

27. If the normal at  $\phi$  [Art. 345], passes through the point whose polar coordinates are  $r_1$  and  $\delta$ , then

$$r_1 \cos \left( \delta - \frac{\phi}{2} \right) \sin^2 \frac{\phi}{2} = \frac{l}{2} \cos \frac{\phi}{2}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore r_1 \cos \delta \cos \frac{\phi}{2} \sin^2 \frac{\phi}{2} + r_1 \sin \delta \sin^3 \frac{\phi}{2} \\ - \frac{l}{2} \cos^3 \frac{\phi}{2} - \frac{l}{2} \cos \frac{\phi}{2} \sin^2 \frac{\phi}{2} = 0, \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{or } r_1 \sin \delta t^3 + t^2 \left( r_1 \cos \delta - \frac{l}{2} \right) - \frac{l}{2} = 0, \quad \text{where } t \equiv \tan \frac{\phi}{2}.$$

$$\therefore \tan \frac{\alpha + \beta + \gamma}{2} = \frac{s_1 - s_3}{1 - s_2} = -\cot \delta = \tan \left( \frac{\pi}{2} + \delta \right).$$

$$\therefore \frac{\alpha + \beta + \gamma}{2} - \delta = \frac{\pi}{2}. \quad \therefore 2\delta = \alpha + \beta + \gamma - \pi.$$



## Chapter 15

# GENERAL EQUATION OF THE SECOND DEGREE : TRACING OF CURVES

**348. Particular cases of Conic Sections.** The general definition of a Conic Section in Art. 196 was that it is the locus of a point  $P$  which moves so that its distance from a given point  $S$  is in a constant ratio to its perpendicular distance  $PM$  from a given straight line  $ZK$ .

When  $S$  does not lie on the straight line  $ZK$ , we have found that the locus is an ellipse, a parabola, or a hyperbola according as the eccentricity  $e$  is  $<=$  or  $> 1$ .

The Circle is a sub-case of the Ellipse. For the equation of Art. 139 is the same as the equation (6) of Art. 247 when  $b^2 = a^2$ , *i.e.* when  $e = 0$ . In this case  $CS = 0$ , and  $SZ = \frac{a}{e} - ae = \infty$ . The Circle is therefore a Conic Section, whose eccentricity is zero, and whose directrix is at an infinite distance.

Next, let  $S$  lie on the straight line  $ZK$ , so that  $S$  and  $Z$  coincide.

In this case, since

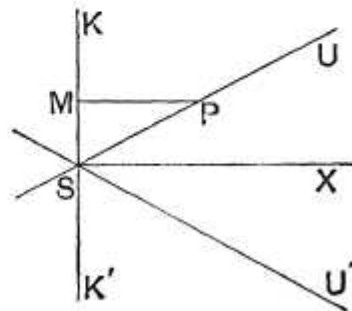
$$SP = e \cdot PM,$$

we have

$$\sin PSM = \frac{PM}{SP} = \frac{1}{e}.$$

If  $e > 1$ , then  $P$  lies on one or other of the two straight lines  $SU$  and  $SU'$  inclined to  $KK'$  at an angle

$$\sin^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{e} \right).$$



If  $e = 1$ , then  $PSM$  is a right angle, and the locus becomes two coincident straight lines coinciding with  $SX$ .

If  $e < 1$ , the  $\angle PSM$  is imaginary, and the locus consists of two imaginary straight lines.

If, again, both  $KK'$  and  $S$  be at infinity and  $S$  be on  $KK'$ , the lines  $SU$  and  $SU'$  of the previous figure will be two straight lines meeting at infinity, *i.e.* will be two parallel straight lines.

Finally, it may happen that the axes of an ellipse may both be zero, so that it reduces to a point.

Under the head of a conic section we must therefore include :

- (1) An Ellipse (including a circle and a point).
- (2) A Parabola.
- (3) A Hyperbola.
- (4) Two straight lines, real or imaginary, intersecting, coincident, or parallel.

**349.** *To shew that the general equation of the second degree*

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

*always represents a conic section.*

Let the axes of coordinates be turned through an angle  $\theta$ , so that, as in Art. 129, we substitute for  $x$  and  $y$  the quantities  $x \cos \theta - y \sin \theta$  and  $x \sin \theta + y \cos \theta$  respectively.

The equation (1) then becomes

$$a(x \cos \theta - y \sin \theta)^2 + 2h(x \cos \theta - y \sin \theta)(x \sin \theta + y \cos \theta) + b(x \sin \theta + y \cos \theta)^2 + 2g(x \cos \theta - y \sin \theta) + 2f(x \sin \theta + y \cos \theta) + c = 0,$$

*i.e.*

$$x^2(a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta) + 2xy \{h(\cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta) - (a - b) \cos \theta \sin \theta\} + y^2(a \sin^2 \theta - 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \cos^2 \theta) + 2x(g \cos \theta + f \sin \theta) + 2y(f \cos \theta - g \sin \theta) + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

Now choose the angle  $\theta$  so that the coefficient of  $xy$  in this equation may vanish,

*i.e.* so that  $h(\cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta) = (a - b) \sin \theta \cos \theta,$

*i.e.*  $2h \cos 2\theta = (a - b) \sin 2\theta,$

*i.e.* so that  $\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a - b}.$

Whatever be the values of  $a, b,$  and  $h,$  there is always a value of  $\theta$  satisfying this equation and such that it lies between  $-45^\circ$  and  $+45^\circ.$  The values of  $\sin \theta$  and  $\cos \theta$  are therefore known.

On substituting their values in (2), let it become

$$Ax^2 + By^2 + 2Gx + 2Fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

**First,** let neither  $A$  nor  $B$  be zero.

The equation (3) may then be written in the form

$$A\left(x + \frac{G}{A}\right)^2 + B\left(y + \frac{F}{B}\right)^2 = \frac{G^2}{A} + \frac{F^2}{B} - c.$$

Transform the origin to the point  $\left(-\frac{G}{A}, -\frac{F}{B}\right).$

The equation becomes

$$Ax^2 + By^2 = \frac{G^2}{A} + \frac{F^2}{B} - c = K \text{ (say) } \dots\dots\dots(4),$$

*i.e.*  $\frac{x^2}{\frac{K}{A}} + \frac{y^2}{\frac{K}{B}} = 1 \dots\dots\dots(5).$

If  $\frac{K}{A}$  and  $\frac{K}{B}$  be both positive, the equation represents an ellipse. (Art. 247.)

If  $\frac{K}{A}$  and  $\frac{K}{B}$  be one positive and the other negative, it represents a hyperbola (Art. 295). If they be both negative, the locus is an imaginary ellipse.

If  $K$  be zero, then (4) represents two straight lines, which are real or imaginary according as  $A$  and  $B$  have opposite or the same signs.

**Secondly**, let either  $A$  or  $B$  be zero, and let it be  $A$ .

Then (3) can be written in the form

$$B \left( y + \frac{F'}{B} \right)^2 + 2G \left[ x + \frac{c}{2G} - \frac{F'^2}{2BG} \right] = 0.$$

Transform the origin to the point whose coordinates are

$$\left( -\frac{c}{2G} + \frac{F'^2}{2BG}, -\frac{F'}{B} \right).$$

This equation then becomes

$$By^2 + 2Gx = 0,$$

*i.e.* 
$$y^2 = -\frac{2G}{B}x,$$

which represents a parabola. (Art. 197.)

If, in addition to  $A$  being zero, we also have  $G$  zero, the equation (3) becomes

$$By^2 + 2F'y + c = 0,$$

*i.e.* 
$$y + \frac{F'}{B} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{F'^2}{B^2} - \frac{c}{B}},$$

and this represents two parallel straight lines, real or imaginary.

Thus in every case the general equation represents one of the conic sections enumerated in Art. 348.

**350. Centre of a Conic Section. Def.** The centre of a conic section is a point such that all chords of the conic which pass through it are bisected there.

When the equation to the conic is in the form

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

the origin is the centre.

For let  $(x', y')$  be *any* point on (1), so that we have

$$ax'^2 + 2hx'y' + by'^2 + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

This equation may be written in the form

$$a(-x')^2 + 2h(-x')(-y') + b(-y')^2 + c = 0,$$

and hence shews that the point  $(-x', -y')$  also lies on (1).

But the points  $(x', y')$  and  $(-x', -y')$  lie on the same straight line through the origin, and are at equal distances from the origin.

The chord of the conic which passes through the origin and any point  $(x', y')$  of the curve is therefore bisected at the origin.

The origin is therefore the centre.

**351.** When the equation to the conic is given in the form

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

the origin is the centre only when both  $f$  and  $g$  are zero.

For, if the origin be the centre, then corresponding to *each* point  $(x', y')$  on (1), there must be also a point  $(-x', -y')$  lying on the curve.

Hence we must have

$$ax'^2 + 2hx'y' + by'^2 + 2gx' + 2fy' + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

and  $ax'^2 + 2hx'y' + by'^2 - 2gx' - 2fy' + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$

Subtracting (3) from (2), we have

$$gx' + fy' = 0.$$

This relation is to be true for *all* the points  $(x', y')$  which lie on the curve (1). But this can only be the case when  $g = 0$  and  $f = 0$ .

**352.** *To obtain the coordinates of the centre of the conic given by the general equation, and to obtain the equation to the curve referred to axes through the centre parallel to the original axes.*

Transform the origin to the point  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ , so that for  $x$  and  $y$  we have to substitute  $x + \bar{x}$  and  $y + \bar{y}$ . The equation then becomes

$$a(x + \bar{x})^2 + 2h(x + \bar{x})(y + \bar{y}) + b(y + \bar{y})^2 + 2g(x + \bar{x}) + 2f(y + \bar{y}) + c = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2x(a\bar{x} + h\bar{y} + g) + 2y(h\bar{x} + b\bar{y} + f) + a\bar{x}^2 + 2h\bar{x}\bar{y} + b\bar{y}^2 + 2g\bar{x} + 2f\bar{y} + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$

If the point  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  be the centre of the conic section, the coefficients of  $x$  and  $y$  in the equation (2) must vanish, so that we have

$$a\bar{x} + h\bar{y} + g = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3),$$

and

$$h\bar{x} + b\bar{y} + f = 0 \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

Solving (3) and (4), we have, in general,

$$\bar{x} = \frac{fh - bg}{ab - h^2}, \text{ and } \bar{y} = \frac{gh - af}{ab - h^2} \dots\dots\dots (5).$$

With these values the constant term in (2)

$$\begin{aligned} &= a\bar{x}^2 + 2h\bar{x}\bar{y} + b\bar{y}^2 + 2g\bar{x} + 2f\bar{y} + c \\ &= \bar{x}(a\bar{x} + h\bar{y} + g) + \bar{y}(h\bar{x} + b\bar{y} + f) + g\bar{x} + f\bar{y} + c \\ &= \mathbf{g\bar{x} + f\bar{y} + c} \dots\dots\dots (6), \end{aligned}$$

by equations (3) and (4),

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{abc + 2fgh - af^2 - bg^2 - ch^2}{ab - h^2}, \text{ by equations (5),} \\ &= \frac{\Delta}{ab - h^2}, \end{aligned}$$

where  $\Delta$  is the discriminant of the given general equation (Art. 118).

The equation (2) can therefore be written in the form

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + \frac{\Delta}{ab - h^2} = 0.$$

This is the required equation referred to the new axes through the centre.

**Ex.** Find the centre of the conic section

$$2x^2 - 5xy - 3y^2 - x - 4y + 6 = 0,$$

and its equation when transformed to the centre.

The centre is given by the equations  $2\bar{x} - \frac{5}{2}\bar{y} - \frac{1}{2} = 0$ , and

$$-\frac{5}{2}\bar{x} - 3\bar{y} - 2 = 0, \text{ so that } \bar{x} = -\frac{2}{7}, \text{ and } \bar{y} = -\frac{3}{7}.$$

The equation referred to the centre is then

$$2x^2 - 5xy - 3y^2 + c' = 0,$$

where  $c' = -\frac{1}{2} \cdot \bar{x} - 2 \cdot \bar{y} + 6 = \frac{1}{7} + \frac{6}{7} + 6 = 7.$  (Art. 352.)

The required equation is thus

$$2x^2 - 5xy - 3y^2 + 7 = 0.$$

**353.** Sometimes the equations (3) and (4) of the last article do not give suitable values for  $\bar{x}$  and  $\bar{y}$ .

For, if  $ab - h^2$  be zero, the values of  $\bar{x}$  and  $\bar{y}$  in (5) are both infinite. When  $ab - h^2$  is zero, the conic section is a parabola.

The centre of a parabola is therefore at infinity.

Again, if  $\frac{a}{h} = \frac{h}{b} = \frac{g}{f}$ , the result (5) of the last article is of the form  $\frac{0}{0}$  and the equations (3) and (4) reduce to the same equation, viz.,

$$a\bar{x} + h\bar{y} + g = 0.$$

We then have only one equation to determine the centre, and there is therefore an infinite number of centres all lying on the straight line

$$ax + hy + g = 0.$$

In this case the conic section consists of a pair of parallel straight lines, both parallel to the line of centres.

**354.** The student who is acquainted with the Differential Calculus will observe, from equations (3) and (4) of Art. 352, that the coordinates of the centre satisfy the equations that are obtained by differentiating, with regard to  $x$  and  $y$ , the original equation of the conic section.

It will also be observed that the coefficients of  $\bar{x}$ ,  $\bar{y}$ , and unity in the equations (3), (4), and (6) of Art. 352 are the quantities (in the order in which they occur) which make up the determinant of Art. 118.

This determinant being easy to write down, the student may thence recollect the equations for the centre and the value of  $c$ .

The reason why this relation holds will appear from the next article.

**355. Ex.** Find the condition that the general equation of the second degree may represent two straight lines.

The centre  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  of the conic is given by

$$a\bar{x} + h\bar{y} + g = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

and

$$h\bar{x} + b\bar{y} + f = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

Also, if it be transformed to the centre as origin, the equation becomes

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + c' = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3),$$

where

$$c' = g\bar{x} + f\bar{y} + c.$$

Now the equation (3) represents two straight lines if  $c'$  be zero,

*i. e.* if  $g\bar{x} + f\bar{y} + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(4).$

The equation therefore represents two straight lines if the relations (1), (2), and (4) be simultaneously true.

Eliminating the quantities  $\bar{x}$  and  $\bar{y}$  from these equations, we have, by Art. 12,

$$\begin{vmatrix} a, h, g \\ h, b, f \\ g, f, c \end{vmatrix} = 0.$$

This is the condition found in Art. 118.

**356.** *To find the equation to the asymptotes of the conic section given by the general equation of the second degree.*

Let the equation be

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Since the equation to the asymptotes has been shewn to differ from the equation to the curve only in its constant term, the required equation must be

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c + \lambda = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

Also (2) is to be a pair of straight lines.

Hence

$$ab(c + \lambda) + 2fgh - af^2 - bg^2 - (c + \lambda)h^2 = 0. \quad (\text{Art. 116.})$$

Therefore  $\lambda = -\frac{abc + 2fgh - af^2 - bg^2 - ch^2}{ab - h^2} = -\frac{\Delta}{ab - h^2}.$

The required equation to the asymptotes is therefore

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c - \frac{\Delta}{ab - h^2} = 0 \dots\dots(2).$$

**Cor.** Since the equation to the hyperbola, which is conjugate to a given hyperbola, differs as much from the equation to the common asymptotes as the original equation does, it follows that the equation to the hyperbola, which is conjugate to the hyperbola (1), is

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c - 2 \frac{\Delta}{ab - h^2} = 0.$$



**357.** To determine by an examination of the general equation what kind of conic section it represents.

[On applying the method of Art. 313 to the ellipse and parabola, it would be found that the asymptotes of the ellipse are imaginary, and that a parabola only has one asymptote, which is at an infinite distance and perpendicular to its axis.]

The straight lines  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1)$

are parallel to the lines (2) of the last article, and hence represent straight lines parallel to the asymptotes.

Now the equation (1) represents real, coincident, or imaginary straight lines according as  $h^2$  is  $\geq$  or  $< ab$ , *i.e.* the asymptotes are real, coincident, or imaginary, according as  $h^2 \geq$  or  $< ab$ , *i.e.* the conic section is a hyperbola, parabola, or ellipse, according as  $h^2 \geq$  or  $< ab$ .

Again, the lines (1) are at right angles, *i.e.* the curve is a rectangular hyperbola, if  $a + b = 0$ .

Also, by Art. 143, the general equation represents a circle if  $a = b$ , and  $h = 0$ .

Finally, by Art. 116, the equation represents a pair of straight lines if  $\Delta = 0$ ; also these straight lines are parallel if the terms of the second degree form a perfect square, *i.e.* if  $h^2 = ab$ .

**358.** The results for the general equation

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$$

are collected in the following table, the axes of coordinates being rectangular.

Curve.	Condition.
Ellipse.	$h^2 < ab$ .
Parabola.	$h^2 = ab$ .
Hyperbola.	$h^2 > ab$ .
Circle.	$a = b$ , and $h = 0$ .
Rectangular hyperbola.	$a + b = 0$ .
Two straight lines, real or imaginary.	$\Delta = 0$ , <i>i.e.</i> $abc + 2fgh - af^2 - bg^2 - ch^2 = 0$ .
Two parallel straight lines.	$\Delta = 0$ , and $h^2 = ab$ .

If the axes of coordinates be oblique, the lines (1) of Art. 356 are at right angles if  $a + b - 2h \cos \omega = 0$  (Art. 93); so that the conic section is a rectangular hyperbola if  $a + b - 2h \cos \omega = 0$ .

Also, by Art. 175, the conic section is a circle if  $b = a$  and

$$h = a \cos \omega.$$

The conditions for the other cases in the previous article are the same for both oblique and rectangular axes.

### EXAMPLES XL

What conics do the following equations represent? When possible, find their centres, and also their equations referred to the centre.

1.  $12x^2 - 23xy + 10y^2 - 25x + 26y = 14.$

2.  $13x^2 - 18xy + 37y^2 + 2x + 14y - 2 = 0.$

3.  $y^2 - 2\sqrt{3}xy + 3x^2 + 6x - 4y + 5 = 0.$

4.  $2x^2 - 72xy + 23y^2 - 4x - 28y - 48 = 0.$

5.  $6x^2 - 5xy - 6y^2 + 14x + 5y + 4 = 0.$

6.  $3x^2 - 8xy - 3y^2 + 10x - 13y + 8 = 0.$

Find the asymptotes of the following hyperbolas and also the equations to their conjugate hyperbolas.

7.  $8x^2 + 10xy - 3y^2 - 2x + 4y = 2.$     8.  $y^2 - xy - 2x^2 - 5y + x - 6 = 0.$

9.  $55x^2 - 120xy + 20y^2 + 64x - 48y = 0.$

10.  $19x^2 + 24xy + y^2 - 22x - 6y = 0.$

11. If  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  be the centre of the conic section

$$f(x, y) \equiv ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0,$$

prove that the equation to the asymptotes is  $f(x, y) = f(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ .

If  $t$  be a variable quantity, find the locus of the point  $(x, y)$  when

12.  $x = a \left( t + \frac{1}{t} \right)$  and  $y = a \left( t - \frac{1}{t} \right).$

13.  $x = at + bt^2$  and  $y = bt + at^2.$

14.  $x = 1 + t + t^2$  and  $y = 1 - t + t^2.$

If  $\theta$  be a variable angle, find the locus of the point  $(x, y)$  when

15.  $x = a \tan(\theta + \alpha)$  and  $y = b \tan(\theta + \beta).$

16.  $x = a \cos(\theta + \alpha)$  and  $y = b \cos(\theta + \beta).$

What are represented by the equations

17.  $(x - y)^2 + (x - a)^2 = 0.$

18.  $xy + a^2 = a(x + y).$

19.  $x^3 - y^3 = (y - a)(x^2 - y^2)$ .  
 20.  $x^3 + y^3 - xy(x + y) + a^2(y - x) = 0$ .  
 21.  $(x^2 - a^2)^2 - y^4 = 0$ .  
 22.  $x^3 + y^3 + (x + y)(xy - ax - ay) = 0$ .  
 23.  $x^2 + xy + y^2 = 0$ .  
 24.  $(r \cos \theta - a)(r - a \cos \theta) = 0$ .  
 25.  $r \sin^2 \theta = 2a \cos \theta$ .  
 26.  $r + \frac{1}{r} = 3 \cos \theta + \sin \theta$ .  
 27.  $\frac{1}{r} = 1 + \cos \theta + \sqrt{3} \sin \theta$ .  
 28.  $r(4 - 3 \sin^2 \theta) = 8a \cos \theta$ .

## ANSWERS

1. A hyperbola; (2, 1);  $c' = -26$ .  
 2. An ellipse;  $(-\frac{1}{4}, -\frac{1}{4})$ ;  $c' = -4$ .  
 3. A parabola.  
 4. A hyperbola;  $(-\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{2}{5})$ ;  $c' = -46$ .  
 5. Two straight lines;  $(-\frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{3})$ ;  $c' = 0$ .  
 6. A hyperbola;  $(-\frac{4}{5}, \frac{1}{5})$ ;  $c' = -\frac{3}{5}$ .  
 7.  $(2x + 3y - 1)(4x - y + 1) = 0$ ;  $8x^2 + 10xy - 3y^2 - 2x + 4y = 0$ .  
 8.  $(y + x - 2)(y - 2x - 3) = 0$ ;  $y^2 - xy - 2x^2 - 5y + x + 18 = 0$ .  
 9.  $(11x - 2y + 4)(5x - 10y + 4) = 0$ ;  
 $55x^2 - 120xy + 20y^2 + 64x - 48y + 32 = 0$ .  
 10.  $19x^2 + 24xy + y^2 - 22x - 6y + 4 = 0$ ;  
 $19x^2 + 24xy + y^2 - 22x - 6y + 8 = 0$ .  
 12.  $x^2 - y^2 = 4a^2$ .  
 13.  $(ax - by)^2 = (a^2 - b^2)(ay - bx)$ .  
 14.  $(x - y)^2 - 2(x + y) + 4 = 0$ .  
 15.  $(xy + ab) \tan(\alpha - \beta) = bx - ay$ .  
 16.  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 2 \frac{xy}{ab} \cos(\alpha - \beta) = \sin^2(\alpha - \beta)$ .  
 17. A point.  
 18. Two straight lines.  
 19. A straight line and a parabola.  
 20. A straight line and a rectangular hyperbola.  
 21. A circle and a rectangular hyperbola.  
 22. A straight line and a circle.  
 23. Two imaginary straight lines.  
 24. A circle and a straight line.  
 25. A parabola.  
 26. A circle.  
 27. A hyperbola.  
 28. An ellipse.

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. The centre is given by  
 $12x - \frac{2^3}{2}y - \frac{2^5}{2} = 0$ , and  $-\frac{2^3}{2}x + 10y + 13 = 0$ ,

- whence  $x = 2, y = 1.$   
 $\therefore c' = 2 \left(-\frac{2 \cdot 5}{2}\right) + 13 - 14 = -26.$  [Art. 352.]  
 Since  $\left(\frac{2 \cdot 3}{2}\right)^2 - 10 \times 12 > 0$ , the conic is a hyperbola.
2. The centre is given by  
 $13x - 9y + 1 = 0$ , and  $-9x + 37y + 7 = 0$ ,  
 whence  $x = -\frac{1}{4}, y = -\frac{1}{4}.$   
 $\therefore c' = -\frac{1}{4} + 7 \left(-\frac{1}{4}\right) - 2 = -4.$   
 Since  $9^2 - 13 \times 37 < 0$ , the conic is an ellipse.
3. Since  $y^2 - 2\sqrt{3}xy + 3x^2$  is a perfect square, and  $\Delta \neq 0$ , the equation represents a parabola.
4. The centre is given by  
 $2x - 36y - 2 = 0$ , and  $-36x + 23y - 14 = 0.$   
 $\therefore x = -\frac{11}{25}, y = -\frac{2}{25}.$   
 $\therefore c' = -2 \left(-\frac{11}{25}\right) - 14 \left(-\frac{2}{25}\right) - 48 = -46.$   
 Since  $36^2 - 2 \times 23 > 0$ , the conic is a hyperbola.
5. The centre is given by  
 $6x - \frac{5}{2}y + 7 = 0$ , and  $-\frac{5}{2}x - 6y + \frac{5}{2} = 0,$   
 whence  $x = -\frac{11}{13}, y = \frac{10}{13}.$   
 $\therefore c' = -\frac{11}{13} \cdot 7 + \frac{5}{13} \cdot 5 + 4 = 0.$   
 $\therefore$  the equation represents two straight lines [Art. 120].
6. The centre is given by  
 $3x - 4y + 5 = 0$ , and  $4x + 3y + \frac{13}{2} = 0,$   
 whence  $x = -\frac{41}{25}, y = \frac{1}{50}.$   
 $\therefore c' = -\frac{41}{25} \cdot 5 + \frac{1}{50} \left(-\frac{13}{2}\right) + 8 = -\frac{33}{100}.$   
 Since  $a + b = 0$ , the conic is a rectangular hyperbola.
7. Here  
 $\frac{\Delta}{ab - h^2} = \frac{8 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 - 10 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 - 8 \cdot 4 + 3 \cdot 1 + 2 \cdot 25}{-24 - 25} = -1.$   
 Hence the equation to the asymptotes is  
 $8x^2 + 10xy - 3y^2 - 2x + 4y - 1 = 0,$

and that to the conjugate hyperbola is

$$8x^2 + 10xy - 3y^2 - 2x + 4y = 0.$$

$$8. \quad \text{Here } \frac{\Delta}{ab - h^2} = \frac{2 \cdot 6 + \frac{5}{4} + 2 \cdot \frac{2 \cdot 5}{4} - \frac{1}{4} + 6 \cdot \frac{1}{4}}{-2 - \frac{1}{4}} = -12.$$

Hence the equation to the asymptotes is

$$y^2 - xy - 2x^2 - 5y + x + 6 = 0,$$

and that to the conjugate hyperbola is

$$y^2 - xy - 2x^2 - 5y + x + 18 = 0.$$

9. Here

$$\frac{\Delta}{ab - h^2} = \frac{2 \cdot 60 \cdot 32 \cdot 24 - 55 \cdot 24^2 - 20 \cdot 32^2}{55 \cdot 20 - 60^2} = -16.$$

Hence the equation to the asymptotes is

$$55x^2 - 120xy + 20y^2 + 64x - 48y + 16 = 0,$$

and that to the conjugate hyperbola is

$$55x^2 - 120xy + 20y^2 + 64x - 48y + 32 = 0.$$

$$10. \quad \text{Here } \frac{\Delta}{ab - h^2} = \frac{2 \cdot 12 \cdot 11 \cdot 3 - 19 \cdot 3^2 - 11^2}{19 - 12^2} = -4.$$

Hence, etc.

11. Let  $f(x, y) + \lambda = 0$  be the equation to the asymptotes. Since they pass through  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ ,

$$\therefore f(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) + \lambda = 0. \quad \therefore \lambda = -f(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$$

and the required equation is  $f(x, y) = f(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ .

12. Square and subtract;  $\therefore x^2 - y^2 = 4a^2$ .

13. We have  $ax - by = (a^2 - b^2)t$ , and

$$ay - bx = (a^2 - b^2)t^2.$$

$$\therefore (ax - by)^2 = (a^2 - b^2)(ay - bx).$$

14. We have  $x - y = 2t$ ,

and  $2x + 2y = 4 + 4t^2 = 4 + (x - y)^2.$

$$15. \quad \theta + \alpha = \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a}, \text{ and } \theta + \beta = \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{b}.$$

$$\therefore \alpha - \beta = \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a} - \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{b}.$$

$$\therefore \tan(\alpha - \beta) = \frac{\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b}}{1 + \frac{xy}{ab}}, \text{ etc.}$$

$$16. \quad \theta + \alpha = \cos^{-1} \frac{x}{a}, \text{ and } \theta + \beta = \cos^{-1} \frac{y}{b}.$$

$$\therefore \alpha - \beta = \cos^{-1} \frac{x}{a} - \cos^{-1} \frac{y}{b}.$$

$$\therefore \cos(\alpha - \beta) = \frac{x}{a} \frac{y}{b} + \sqrt{\left(1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{y^2}{b^2}\right)}.$$

$$\therefore 1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} + \frac{x^2 y^2}{a^2 b^2} = \frac{x^2 y^2}{a^2 b^2} + \cos^2(\alpha - \beta) - \frac{2xy}{ab} \cos(\alpha - \beta).$$

$$\therefore \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - \frac{2xy}{ab} \cos(\alpha - \beta) = \sin^2(\alpha - \beta).$$

17. We must have both  $x = y$  and  $x = a$ , simultaneously; therefore the equation represents the point  $(a, a)$ .

18. The equation is equivalent to  $(x - a)(y - a) = 0$ , and therefore represents the two lines  $x = a$ , and  $y = a$ .

19. The equation is equivalent to

$$(x - y)(x^2 + ax + ay) = 0,$$

and therefore represents the line  $x - y = 0$  and the parabola

$$x^2 + ax + ay = 0.$$

20. The equation is

$$x^3 + y^3 - xy(x + y) + a^2(y - x) = 0,$$

*i.e.*

$$(x + y)(x - y)^2 + a^2(y - x) = 0,$$

*i.e.*

$$(x - y)(x^2 - y^2 - a^2) = 0.$$

Hence the equation represents the line  $x - y = 0$  and the rectangular hyperbola  $x^2 - y^2 = a^2$ .

21. The equation is equivalent to

$$(x^2 - a^2 + y^2)(x^2 - a^2 - y^2) = 0,$$

and thus represents a circle and a rectangular hyperbola.

22. The equation is equivalent to

$$(x + y)(x^2 + y^2 - ax - ay) = 0,$$

and thus represents a straight line and a circle.

23. Two imaginary straight lines through the origin.  
[Art. 120.]

24. A circle and a straight line. [Arts. 88 and 172.]

25. In Cartesians, the equation is  $y^2 = 2ax$ , *i.e.* a parabola.

26. In Cartesians, the equation is  $x^2 + y^2 + 1 = 3x + y$ ,  
*i.e.* a circle.

27. In Cartesians, the equation is

$$x^2 + y^2 = (x + \sqrt{3}y - 1)^2, \text{ i.e. a hyperbola. [Art. 358.]}$$

28. In Cartesians, the equation is

$$4(x^2 + y^2) - 3y^2 = 8ax, \text{ or } 4x^2 + y^2 = 8ax.$$

This represents an ellipse. [Art. 358.]

**359.** To trace the parabola given by the general equation of the second degree

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

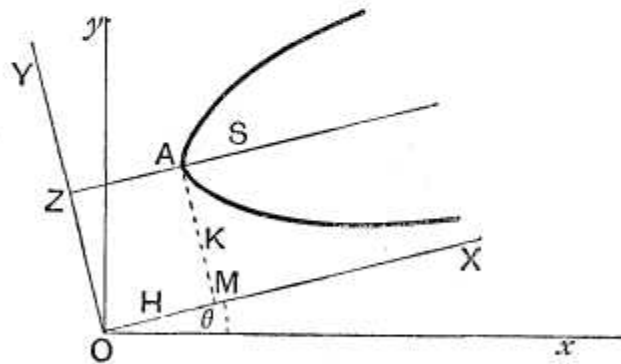
and to find its latus rectum.

**First Method.** Since the curve is a parabola we have  $h^2 = ab$ , so that the terms of the second degree form a perfect square.

Put then  $a = \alpha^2$  and  $b = \beta^2$ , so that  $h = \alpha\beta$ , and the equation (1) becomes

$$(\alpha x + \beta y)^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

Let the direction of the axes be changed so that the straight line  $\alpha x + \beta y = 0$ , i.e.  $y = -\frac{\alpha}{\beta}x$ , may be the new axis of  $X$ .



We have therefore to turn the axes through an angle  $\theta$  such that  $\tan \theta = -\frac{\alpha}{\beta}$ , and therefore

$$\sin \theta = -\frac{\alpha}{\sqrt{\alpha^2 + \beta^2}} \text{ and } \cos \theta = \frac{\beta}{\sqrt{\alpha^2 + \beta^2}}.$$



For  $x$  we have to substitute

$$X \cos \theta - Y \sin \theta, \text{ i.e. } \frac{\beta X + \alpha Y}{\sqrt{\alpha^2 + \beta^2}},$$

and for  $y$  the quantity

$$X \sin \theta + Y \cos \theta, \text{ i.e. } \frac{-\alpha X + \beta Y}{\sqrt{\alpha^2 + \beta^2}}. \quad (\text{Art. 129.})$$

For  $\alpha x + \beta y$  we therefore substitute  $Y \sqrt{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)}$ .

The equation (2) then becomes

$$Y^2 (\alpha^2 + \beta^2) + \frac{2}{\sqrt{\alpha^2 + \beta^2}} [g (\beta X + \alpha Y) + f (\beta Y - \alpha X)] + c = 0,$$

$$\text{i.e. } Y^2 + 2Y \frac{\alpha g + \beta f}{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} = 2X \frac{\alpha f - \beta g}{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} - \frac{c}{\alpha^2 + \beta^2},$$

$$\text{i.e. } (Y - K)^2 = 2 \frac{\alpha f - \beta g}{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} [X - H] \dots\dots\dots (3),$$

where 
$$K = - \frac{\alpha g + \beta f}{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \dots\dots\dots (4),$$

and 
$$- 2 \frac{\alpha f - \beta g}{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \times H = K^2 - \frac{c}{\alpha^2 + \beta^2},$$

$$\text{i.e. } H = \frac{\sqrt{\alpha^2 + \beta^2}}{2 (\alpha f - \beta g)} \left[ c - \frac{(\alpha g + \beta f)^2}{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)^2} \right] \dots\dots\dots (5).$$

The equation (3) represents a parabola whose latus rectum is  $2 \frac{\alpha f - \beta g}{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$ , whose axis is parallel to the new axis of  $X$ , and whose vertex referred to the new axes is the point  $(H, K)$ .

**360.** *Equation of the axis, and coordinates of the vertex, referred to the original axes.*

Since the axis of the curve is parallel to the new axis of  $X$ , it makes an angle  $\theta$  with the old axis of  $x$ , and hence the perpendicular on it from the origin makes an angle  $90^\circ + \theta$ .

Also the length of this perpendicular is  $K$ .

The equation to the axis of the parabola is therefore

$$x \cos (90^\circ + \theta) + y \sin (90^\circ + \theta) = K,$$

*i.e.* 
$$-x \sin \theta + y \cos \theta = K,$$

*i.e.* 
$$\alpha x + \beta y = K \sqrt{\alpha^2 + \beta^2} = -\frac{\alpha g + \beta f}{\alpha^2 + \beta^2} \dots\dots\dots (6).$$

Again, the vertex is the point in which the axis (6) meets the curve (2).

We have therefore to solve (6) and (2), *i.e.* (6) and

$$\frac{(\alpha g + \beta f)^2}{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)^2} + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (7).$$

The solution of (6) and (7) therefore gives the required coordinates of the vertex.

**361.** It was proved in Art. 224 that if  $PV$  be a diameter of the parabola and  $QV$  the ordinate to it drawn through any point  $Q$  of the curve, so that  $QV$  is parallel to the tangent at  $P$ , and if  $\theta$  be the angle between the diameter  $PV$  and the tangent at  $P$ , then

$$QV^2 = 4a \operatorname{cosec}^2 \theta \cdot PV \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

If  $QL$  be perpendicular to  $PV$  and  $QL'$  be perpendicular to the tangent at  $P$ , we have

$$QL = QV \sin \theta, \text{ and } QL' = PV \sin \theta,$$

so that (1) is  $QL^2 = 4a \operatorname{cosec} \theta \cdot QL'$ .

Hence the square of the perpendicular distance of any point  $Q$  on the parabola from any diameter varies as the perpendicular distance of  $Q$  from the tangent at the end of the diameter.

Hence, if  $Ax + By + C = 0$  be the equation of any diameter and  $A'x + B'y + C' = 0$  be the equation of the tangent at its end, the equation to the parabola is

$$(Ax + By + C)^2 = \lambda (A'x + B'y + C') \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

where  $\lambda$  is some constant.

Conversely, if the equation to a parabola can be reduced to the form (2), then

$$Ax + By + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots (3)$$

is a diameter of the parabola and the axis of the parabola is parallel to (3).

We shall apply this property in the following article.

**362.** *To trace the parabola given by the general equation of the second degree*

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

**Second Method.** Since the curve is a parabola, the terms of the second degree must form a perfect square and  $h^2 = ab$ .

Put then  $a = \alpha^2$  and  $b = \beta^2$ , so that  $h = \alpha\beta$ , and the equation (1) becomes

$$(\alpha x + \beta y)^2 = -(2gx + 2fy + c) \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

As in the last article the straight line  $\alpha x + \beta y = 0$  is a diameter, and the axis of the parabola is therefore parallel to it, and so its equation is of the form

$$\alpha x + \beta y + \lambda = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

The equation (2) may therefore be written

$$\begin{aligned} (\alpha x + \beta y + \lambda)^2 &= -(2gx + 2fy + c) + \lambda^2 + 2\lambda(\alpha x + \beta y) \\ &= 2x(\lambda\alpha - g) + 2y(\beta\lambda - f) + \lambda^2 - c \dots\dots\dots(4). \end{aligned}$$

Choose  $\lambda$  so that the straight lines

$$\alpha x + \beta y + \lambda = 0 \dots\dots\dots(5)$$

and  $2x(\lambda\alpha - g) + 2y(\beta\lambda - f) + \lambda^2 - c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(6)$

are at right angles, *i. e.* so that

$$\alpha(\lambda\alpha - g) + \beta(\beta\lambda - f) = 0,$$

*i. e.* so that 
$$\lambda = \frac{\beta f + \alpha g}{\alpha^2 + \beta^2} \dots\dots\dots(7).$$

The lines (5) and (6) are now, by the last article, a diameter and a tangent at its extremity; also, since they are at right angles, they must be the axis and the tangent at the vertex.

The equation (4) may now, by (7), be written

$$\{ax + \beta y + \lambda\}^2 = \frac{2(af - \beta g)}{a^2 + \beta^2} [\beta x - ay + \mu],$$

where 
$$\mu = \frac{a^2 + \beta^2}{2(af - \beta g)} (\lambda^2 - c),$$

*i.e.* 
$$\left\{ \frac{ax + \beta y + \lambda}{\sqrt{a^2 + \beta^2}} \right\}^2 = \frac{2(af - \beta g)}{(a^2 + \beta^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \cdot \frac{\beta x - ay + \mu}{\sqrt{a^2 + \beta^2}},$$

*i.e.* 
$$PN^2 = \frac{2(af - \beta g)}{(a^2 + \beta^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \cdot AN,$$

where  $PN$  is the perpendicular from any point  $P$  of the curve on the axis, and  $A$  is the vertex.

Hence the axis and tangent at the vertex are the lines (5) and (6), where  $\lambda$  has the value (7), and the latus rectum

$$= 2 \frac{af - \beta g}{(a^2 + \beta^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}.$$

**363. Ex.** Trace the parabola

$$9x^2 - 24xy + 16y^2 - 18x - 101y + 19 = 0.$$

The equation is

$$(3x - 4y)^2 - 18x - 101y + 19 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

**First Method.** Take  $3x - 4y = 0$  as the new axis of  $x$ , *i.e.* turn the axes through an angle  $\theta$ , where  $\tan \theta = \frac{3}{4}$ , and therefore  $\sin \theta = \frac{3}{5}$  and  $\cos \theta = \frac{4}{5}$ .

For  $x$  we therefore substitute  $X \cos \theta - Y \sin \theta$ , *i.e.*  $\frac{4X - 3Y}{5}$ ; for  $y$  we put  $X \sin \theta + Y \cos \theta$ , *i.e.*  $\frac{3X + 4Y}{5}$ , and hence for  $3x - 4y$  the quantity  $-5Y$ .

The equation (1) therefore becomes

$$25Y^2 - \frac{1}{5} [72X - 54Y] - \frac{1}{5} [303X + 404Y] + 19 = 0,$$

*i.e.* 
$$25Y^2 - 75X - 70Y + 19 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

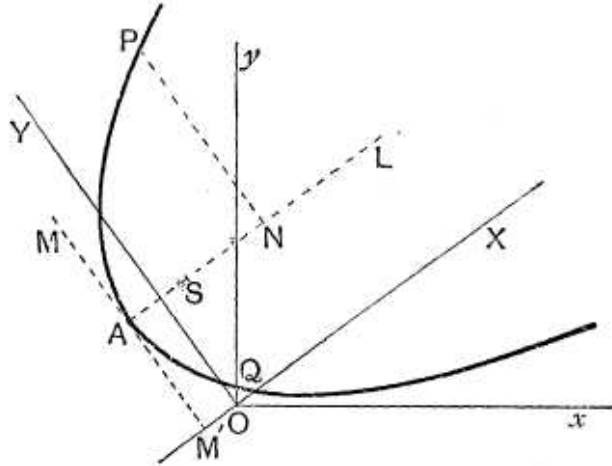
This is the equation to the curve referred to the axes  $OX$  and  $OY$ .

But (2) can be written in the form

$$Y^2 - \frac{14Y}{5} = 3X - \frac{19}{25},$$

*i.e.* 
$$(Y - \frac{7}{5})^2 = 3X - \frac{19}{25} + \frac{49}{25} = 3(X + \frac{2}{5}).$$

Take a point  $A$  whose coordinates referred to  $OX$  and  $OY$  are  $-\frac{2}{5}$  and  $\frac{7}{5}$ , and draw  $AL$  and  $AM$  parallel to  $OX$  and  $OY$  respectively.



Referred to  $AL$  and  $AM$  the equation to the parabola is  $Y^2=3X$ . It is therefore a parabola, whose vertex is  $A$ , whose latus rectum is  $3$ , and whose axis is  $AL$ .

**Second Method.** The equation (1) can be written

$$(3x - 4y + \lambda)^2 = (6\lambda + 18)x + y(101 - 8\lambda) + \lambda^2 - 19 \dots\dots (3).$$

Choose  $\lambda$  so that the straight lines

$$3x - 4y + \lambda = 0$$

and  $(6\lambda + 18)x + y(101 - 8\lambda) + \lambda^2 - 19 = 0$  may be at right angles.

Hence  $\lambda$  is given by

$$3(6\lambda + 18) - 4(101 - 8\lambda) = 0 \text{ (Art. 69),}$$

and therefore  $\lambda = 7$ .

The equation (3) then becomes

$$(3x - 4y + 7)^2 = 15(4x + 3y + 2),$$

i.e. 
$$\left(\frac{3x - 4y + 7}{\sqrt{25}}\right)^2 = 3 \cdot \frac{4x + 3y + 2}{\sqrt{25}} \dots\dots(4).$$

Let  $AL$  be the straight line

$$3x - 4y + 7 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(5),$$

and  $AM$  the straight line  $4x + 3y + 2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(6).$

These are at right angles.

If  $P$  be any point on the parabola and  $PN$  be perpendicular to  $AL$ , the equation (4) gives  $PN^2 = 3 \cdot AN$ .

Hence, as in the first method, we have the parabola.

The vertex is found by solving (5) and (6) and is therefore the point  $(-\frac{2}{5}, \frac{7}{5})$ .

In drawing curves it is often advisable, as a verification, to find whether they cut the original axes of coordinates.

Thus the points in which the given parabola cuts the axis of  $x$  are found by putting  $y=0$  in the original equation. The resulting equation is  $9x^2 - 18x + 19 = 0$ , which has imaginary roots.

The parabola does not therefore meet  $Ox$ .

Similarly it meets  $Oy$  in points given by  $16y^2 - 101y + 19 = 0$ , the roots of which are nearly  $6\frac{1}{8}$  and  $\frac{3}{16}$ .

The values of  $OQ$  and  $OQ'$  should therefore be nearly  $\frac{3}{8}$  and  $6\frac{1}{8}$ .

**364.** *To find the direction and magnitude of the axes of the central conic section*

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 1 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

**First Method.** We know that, when the equation to a central conic section has no term containing  $xy$  and the axes are rectangular, the axes of coordinates are the axes of the curve.

Now in Art. 349 we shewed that, to get rid of the term involving  $xy$ , we must turn the axes through an angle  $\theta$  given by

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

The axes of the curve are therefore inclined to the axes of coordinates at an angle  $\theta$  given by (2).

Now (2) can be written

$$\frac{2 \tan \theta}{1 - \tan^2 \theta} = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \frac{1}{\lambda} \text{ (say),}$$

$$\therefore \tan^2 \theta + 2\lambda \tan \theta - 1 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

This, being a quadratic equation, gives two values for  $\theta$ , which differ by a right angle, since the product of the two values of  $\tan \theta$  is  $-1$ . Let these values be  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$ , which are therefore the inclinations of the required axes of the curve to the axis of  $x$ .

Again, in polar coordinates, equation (1) may be written

$$r^2 (a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta) = 1 = \cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta,$$

*i. e.*

$$r^2 = \frac{\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta}{a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta} = \frac{1 + \tan^2 \theta}{a + 2h \tan \theta + b \tan^2 \theta} \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

If in (4) we substitute either value of  $\tan \theta$  derived from (3) we obtain the length of the corresponding semi-axis.

The directions and magnitudes of the axes are therefore both found.

**Second Method.** The directions of the axes of the conic are, as in the first method, given by

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a - b}.$$

When referred to the axes of the conic section as the axes of coordinates, let the equation become

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{\beta^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (5).$$

Since the equation (1) has become equation (5) by a change of axes without a change of origin, we have, by Art. 135,

$$\frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{\beta^2} = a + b \dots\dots\dots (6),$$

and 
$$\frac{1}{a^2\beta^2} = ab - h^2 \dots\dots\dots (7).$$

These two equations easily determine the semi-axes  $a$  and  $\beta$ . [For if from the square of (6) we subtract four times equation (7) we have  $\left(\frac{1}{a^2} - \frac{1}{\beta^2}\right)^2$ , and hence  $\frac{1}{a^2} - \frac{1}{\beta^2}$ ; hence by (6) we get  $\frac{1}{a^2}$  and  $\frac{1}{\beta^2}$ .]

The difficulty of this method lies in the fact that we cannot always easily determine to which direction for an axis the value  $a$  belongs and to which the value  $\beta$ .

If the original axes be inclined at an angle  $\omega$ , the equations (6) and (7) are, by Art. 137,

$$\frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{\beta^2} = \frac{a + b - 2h \cos \omega}{\sin^2 \omega},$$

and 
$$\frac{1}{a^2\beta^2} = \frac{ab - h^2}{\sin^2 \omega}.$$

**Cor. 1.** The reciprocals of the squares of the semi-axes are, by (6) and (7), the roots of the equation

$$Z^2 - (a + b)Z + ab - h^2 = 0.$$

**Cor. 2.** From equation (4) we have

$$\text{Area of an ellipse} = \pi a\beta = \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{ab - h^2}}.$$

**365. Ex. 1.** Trace the curve

$$14x^2 - 4xy + 11y^2 - 44x - 58y + 71 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Since  $(-2)^2 - 14 \cdot 11$  is negative, the curve is an ellipse. [Art. 358.]

By Art. 352 the centre  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  of the curve is given by the equations

$$14\bar{x} - 2\bar{y} - 22 = 0, \text{ and } -2\bar{x} + 11\bar{y} - 29 = 0.$$

Hence  $\bar{x} = 2$ , and  $\bar{y} = 3$ .

The equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is

therefore  $14x^2 - 4xy + 11y^2 + c' = 0,$

where  $c' = -22\bar{x} - 29\bar{y} + 71 = -60,$

so that the equation is

$$14x^2 - 4xy + 11y^2 = 60 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

The directions of the axes are given by

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a - b} = \frac{-4}{14 - 11} = -\frac{4}{3},$$

so that  $\frac{2 \tan \theta}{1 - \tan^2 \theta} = -\frac{4}{3},$

and hence  $2 \tan^2 \theta - 3 \tan \theta - 2 = 0.$

Therefore  $\tan \theta_1 = 2$ , and  $\tan \theta_2 = -\frac{1}{2}$ .

Referred to polar coordinates the equation (2) is

$$r^2(14 \cos^2 \theta - 4 \cos \theta \sin \theta + 11 \sin^2 \theta) = 60 (\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta),$$

i.e.  $r^2 = 60 \frac{1 + \tan^2 \theta}{14 - 4 \tan \theta + 11 \tan^2 \theta}.$

When  $\tan \theta_1 = 2$ ,  $r_1^2 = 60 \times \frac{1 + 4}{14 - 8 + 44} = 6.$

When  $\tan \theta_2 = -\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $r_2^2 = 60 \times \frac{1 + \frac{1}{4}}{14 + 2 + \frac{1}{4}} = 4.$



The lengths of the semi-axes are therefore  $\sqrt{6}$  and 2.

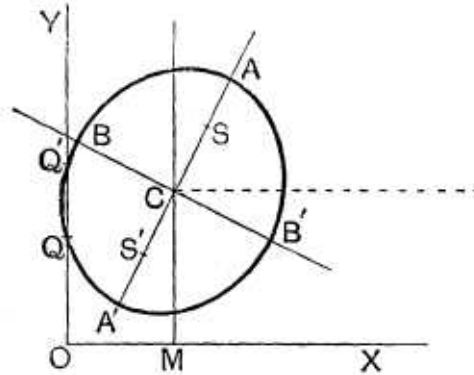
Hence, to draw the curve, take the point  $C$ , whose coordinates are (2, 3).

Through it draw  $A'CA$  inclined at an angle  $\tan^{-1} 2$  to the axis of  $x$  and mark off

$$A'C = CA = \sqrt{6}.$$

Draw  $BCB'$  at right angles to  $ACA'$  and take  $B'C = CB = 2$ .

The required ellipse has  $AA'$  and  $BB'$  as its axes.



It would be found, as a verification, that the curve does not meet the original axis of  $x$ , and that it meets the axis of  $y$  at distances from the origin equal to about 2 and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  respectively.

**Ex. 2.** Trace the curve

$$x^2 - 3xy + y^2 + 10x - 10y + 21 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Since  $\left(\frac{-3}{2}\right)^2 - 1.1$  is positive, the curve is a hyperbola.

[Art. 358.]

The centre  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  is given by

$$\bar{x} - \frac{3}{2}\bar{y} + 5 = 0,$$

and

$$\frac{-3}{2}\bar{x} + \bar{y} - 5 = 0,$$

so that

$$\bar{x} = -2, \text{ and } \bar{y} = 2.$$

The equation to the curve, referred to parallel axes through the centre, is then

$$x^2 - 3xy + y^2 + 5(-2) - 5 \times 2 + 21 = 0,$$

i.e.

$$x^2 - 3xy + y^2 = -1 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

The direction of the axes is given by

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \frac{-3}{1-1} = \infty,$$

so that

$$2\theta = 90^\circ \text{ or } 270^\circ,$$

and hence

$$\theta_1 = 45^\circ \text{ and } \theta_2 = 135^\circ.$$

The equation (2) in polar coordinates is

$$r^2 (\cos^2 \theta - 3 \cos \theta \sin \theta + \sin^2 \theta) = -(\sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta),$$

i.e.

$$r^2 = -\frac{1 + \tan^2 \theta}{1 - 3 \tan \theta + \tan^2 \theta}.$$

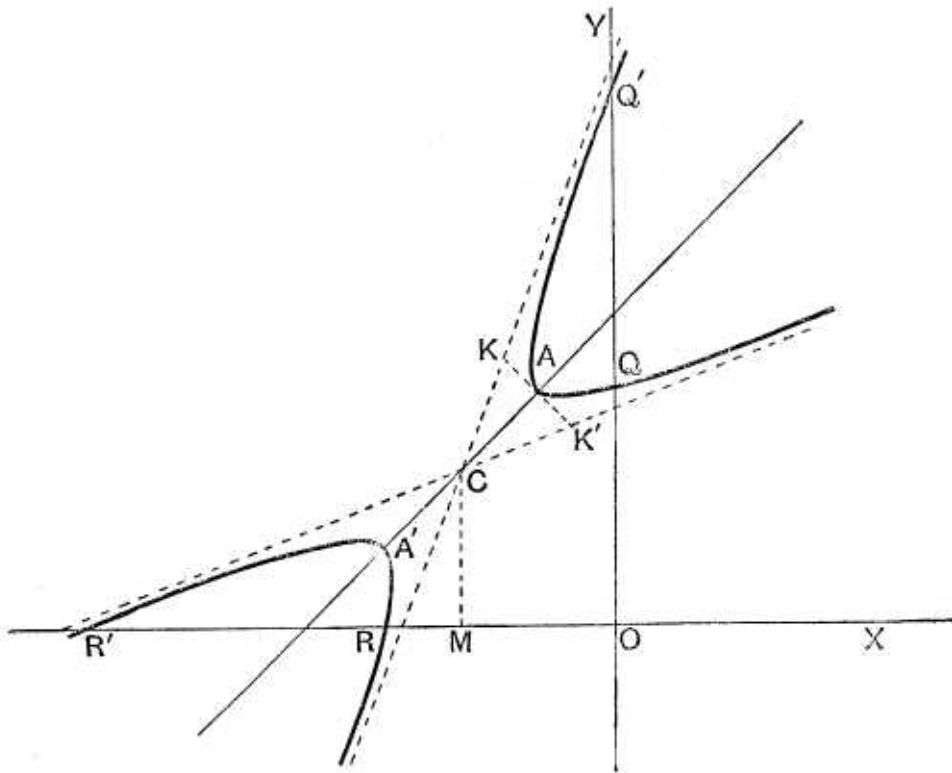
When  $\theta_1 = 45^\circ$ ,  $r_1^2 = -\frac{2}{1-3+1} = 2$ , so that  $r_1 = \sqrt{2}$ .

When  $\theta_2 = 135^\circ$ ,  $r_2^2 = -\frac{2}{1+3+1} = -\frac{2}{5}$ , so that  $r_2 = \sqrt{-\frac{2}{5}}$ .

To construct the curve take the point  $C$  whose coordinates are  $-2$  and  $2$ . Through  $C$  draw a straight line  $ACA'$  inclined at  $45^\circ$  to the axis of  $x$  and mark off  $A'C = CA = \sqrt{2}$ .

Also through  $A$  draw a straight line  $KAK'$  perpendicular to  $CA$  and take  $AK = K'A = \sqrt{\frac{2}{5}}$ . By Art. 315,  $CK$  and  $CK'$  are then the asymptotes.

The curve is therefore a hyperbola whose centre is  $C$ , whose transverse axis is  $A'A$ , and whose asymptotes are  $CK$  and  $CK'$ .



On putting  $x=0$  it will be found that the curve meets the axis of  $y$  where  $y=3$  or  $7$ , and, on putting  $y=0$ , that it meets the axis of  $x$  where  $x=-3$  or  $-7$ .

Hence  $OQ=3$ ,  $OQ'=7$ ,  $OR=3$ , and  $OR'=7$ .

**366.** To find the eccentricity of the central conic section

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 1 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

**First,** let  $h^2 - ab$  be negative, so that the curve is

an ellipse, and let the equation to the ellipse, referred to its axes, be

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{\beta^2} = 1.$$

By the theory of Invariants (Art. 135) we have

$$\frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{\beta^2} = a + b \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

and

$$\frac{1}{a^2\beta^2} = ab - h^2 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

Also, if  $e$  be the eccentricity, we have, if  $a > \beta$ ,

$$e^2 = \frac{a^2 - \beta^2}{a^2}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{e^2}{2 - e^2} = \frac{a^2 - \beta^2}{a^2 + \beta^2}.$$

But, from (2) and (3), we have

$$a^2 + \beta^2 = \frac{a + b}{ab - h^2} \text{ and } a^2\beta^2 = \frac{1}{ab - h^2}.$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} a^2 - \beta^2 &= + \sqrt{(a^2 + \beta^2)^2 - 4a^2\beta^2} = + \frac{\sqrt{(a - b)^2 + 4h^2}}{ab - h^2}. \\ \therefore \frac{e^2}{2 - e^2} &= + \frac{\sqrt{(a - b)^2 + 4h^2}}{a + b} \dots\dots\dots(4). \end{aligned}$$

This equation at once gives  $e^2$ .

**Secondly**, let  $h^2 - ab$  be positive, so that the curve is a hyperbola, and let the equation referred to its principal axes be

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{\beta^2} = 1,$$

so that in this case

$$\frac{1}{a^2} - \frac{1}{\beta^2} = a + b, \text{ and } -\frac{1}{a^2\beta^2} = ab - h^2 = -(h^2 - ab).$$

Hence  $a^2 - \beta^2 = -\frac{a + b}{h^2 - ab}$  and  $a^2\beta^2 = \frac{1}{h^2 - ab}$ ,

so that  $a^2 + \beta^2 = + \sqrt{(a^2 - \beta^2)^2 + 4a^2\beta^2} = + \frac{\sqrt{(a - b)^2 + 4h^2}}{h^2 - ab}$ .

In this case, if  $e$  be the eccentricity, we have

$$e^2 = \frac{\alpha^2 + \beta^2}{a^2},$$

*i. e.* 
$$\frac{e^2}{2 - e^2} = \frac{\alpha^2 + \beta^2}{a^2 - \beta^2} = \frac{\sqrt{(a-b)^2 + 4h^2}}{a+b} \dots\dots\dots (5).$$

This equation gives  $e^2$ .

In each case we see that  $e$  is a root of the equation

$$\left(\frac{e^2}{2 - e^2}\right)^2 = \frac{(a-b)^2 + 4h^2}{(a+b)^2},$$

*i. e.* of the equation

$$e^4(ab - h^2) + \{(a-b)^2 + 4h^2\}(e^2 - 1) = 0.$$

**367.** *To obtain the foci of the central conic*

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 1.$$

Let the direction of the axes of the conic be obtained as in Art. 364, and let  $\theta_1$  be the inclination of the major axis in the case of the ellipse, and the transverse axis in the case of the hyperbola, to the axis of  $x$ .

Let  $r_1^2$  be the square of the radius corresponding to  $\theta_1$ , and let  $r_2^2$  be the square of the radius corresponding to the perpendicular direction. [In the case of the hyperbola  $r_2^2$  will be a negative quantity.]

The distance of the focus from the centre is  $\sqrt{r_1^2 - r_2^2}$  (Arts. 247 and 295). One focus will therefore be the point

$$(\sqrt{r_1^2 - r_2^2} \cos \theta_1, \sqrt{r_1^2 - r_2^2} \sin \theta_1),$$

and the other will be

$$(-\sqrt{r_1^2 - r_2^2} \cos \theta_1, -\sqrt{r_1^2 - r_2^2} \sin \theta_1).$$

**Ex.** *Find the foci of the ellipse traced in Art. 365.*

Here  $\tan \theta_1 = 2$ , so that  $\sin \theta_1 = \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}$  and  $\cos \theta_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ .

Also  $r_1^2 = 6$ , and  $r_2^2 = 4$ , so that  $\sqrt{r_1^2 - r_2^2} = \sqrt{2}$ .

The coordinates of the foci referred to axes through  $C$  are therefore

$$\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{5}}, \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{5}}\right) \text{ and } \left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{5}}, -\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{5}}\right).$$

Their coordinates referred to the original axes  $OX$  and  $OY$  are

$$\left(\bar{x} \pm \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{5}}, \bar{y} \pm \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{5}}\right), \text{ i.e. } \left(2 \pm \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{5}}, 3 \pm \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{5}}\right).$$

**368.** The method of obtaining the coordinates of the focus of a parabola given by the general equation may be exemplified by taking the example of Art. 363.

Here it was shewn that the latus rectum is equal to 3, so that, if  $S$  be the focus,  $AS$  is  $\frac{3}{4}$ .

It was also shewn that the coordinates of  $A$  referred to  $OX$  and  $OY$  are  $-\frac{2}{5}$  and  $\frac{7}{5}$ .

The coordinates of  $S$  referred to the same axes are

$$-\frac{2}{5} + \frac{3}{4} \text{ and } \frac{7}{5}, \text{ i.e. } \frac{7}{20} \text{ and } \frac{7}{5}.$$

Its coordinates referred to the original axes are therefore

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{7}{20} \cos \theta - \frac{7}{5} \sin \theta \text{ and } \frac{7}{20} \sin \theta + \frac{7}{5} \cos \theta, \\ \text{i.e.} & \quad \frac{7}{20} \cdot \frac{4}{5} - \frac{7}{5} \cdot \frac{3}{5} \text{ and } \frac{7}{20} \cdot \frac{3}{5} + \frac{7}{5} \cdot \frac{4}{5}, \\ \text{i.e.} & \quad -\frac{14}{25} \text{ and } \frac{133}{100}. \end{aligned}$$

In Art. 393 equations will be found to give the foci of any conic section directly, so that the conic need not first be traced.

**369. Ex. 1.** Trace the curve

$$3(3x - 2y + 4)^2 + 2(2x + 3y - 5)^2 = 39 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

The equation may be written

$$3\left(\frac{3x - 2y + 4}{\sqrt{13}}\right)^2 + 2\left(\frac{2x + 3y - 5}{\sqrt{13}}\right)^2 = 3 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

Now the straight lines  $3x - 2y + 4 = 0$  and  $2x + 3y - 5 = 0$  are at right angles. Let them be  $CM$  and  $CN$ , intersecting in  $C$  which is the point  $(-\frac{2}{13}, \frac{22}{13})$ .

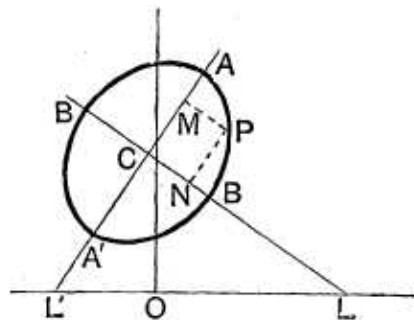
If  $P$  be any point on the curve and  $PM$  and  $PN$  the perpendiculars upon these lines, the lengths of  $PM$  and  $PN$  are

$$\frac{3x - 2y + 4}{\sqrt{13}} \text{ and } \frac{2x + 3y - 5}{\sqrt{13}}.$$

Hence equation (2) states that

$$3PM^2 + 2PN^2 = 3,$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \frac{PM^2}{1} + \frac{PN^2}{\frac{3}{2}} = 1.$$



The locus of  $P$  is therefore an ellipse whose semi-axes measured along  $CM$  and  $CN$  are  $\sqrt{\frac{3}{2}}$  and 1 respectively.

**Ex. 2.** What is represented by the equation

$$(x^2 - a^2)^2 + (y^2 - a^2)^2 = a^4?$$

The equation may be written in the form

$$x^4 + y^4 - 2a^2(x^2 + y^2) + a^4 = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $(x^2 + y^2)^2 - 2a^2(x^2 + y^2) + a^4 = 2x^2y^2,$

*i.e.*  $(x^2 + y^2 - a^2)^2 - (\sqrt{2}xy)^2 = 0,$

*i.e.*  $(x^2 + \sqrt{2}xy + y^2 - a^2)(x^2 - \sqrt{2}xy + y^2 - a^2) = 0.$

The locus therefore consists of the two ellipses

$$x^2 + \sqrt{2}xy + y^2 - a^2 = 0, \text{ and } x^2 - \sqrt{2}xy + y^2 - a^2 = 0.$$

These ellipses are equal and their semi-axes would be found to be

$$a\sqrt{2+\sqrt{2}} \text{ and } a\sqrt{2-\sqrt{2}}.$$

The major axis of the first is inclined at an angle of  $135^\circ$  to the axis of  $x$ , and that of the second at an angle of  $45^\circ$ .

## EXAMPLES XLI

Trace the parabolas

1.  $(x - 4y)^2 = 51y.$

2.  $(x - y)^2 = x + y + 1.$

3.  $(5x - 12y)^2 = 2ax + 29ay + a^2.$

4.  $(4x + 3y + 15)^2 = 5(3x - 4y).$

5.  $16x^2 + 24xy + 9y^2 - 5x - 10y + 1 = 0.$

6.  $9x^2 + 24xy + 16y^2 - 4y - x + 7 = 0.$

7.  $144x^2 - 120xy + 25y^2 + 619x - 272y + 663 = 0,$  and find its focus.

8.  $16x^2 - 24xy + 9y^2 + 32x + 86y - 39 = 0.$

9.  $4x^2 - 4xy + y^2 - 12x + 6y + 9 = 0.$

Find the position and magnitude of the axes of the conics

10.  $12x^2 - 12xy + 7y^2 = 48.$

11.  $3x^2 + 2xy + 3y^2 = 8.$

12.  $x^2 - xy - 6y^2 = 6.$

Trace the following central conics.

13.  $x^2 - 2xy \cos 2a + y^2 = 2a^2.$

14.  $x^2 - 2xy \operatorname{cosec} 2a + y^2 = a^2.$

15.  $xy = a(x + y).$

16.  $xy - y^2 = a^2.$

17.  $y^2 - 2xy + 2x^2 + 2x - 2y = 0.$

18.  $x^2 + xy + y^2 + x + y = 1.$

19.  $2x^2 + 3xy - 2y^2 - 7x + y - 2 = 0$ .  
 20.  $40x^2 + 36xy + 25y^2 - 196x - 122y + 205 = 0$ .  
 21.  $9x^2 - 32xy + 9y^2 + 60x + 10y = 64\frac{1}{2}$ .  
 22.  $x^2 - xy + 2y^2 - 2ax - 6ay + 7a^2 = 0$ .  
 23.  $10x^2 - 48xy - 10y^2 + 38x + 44y - 5\frac{1}{2} = 0$ .  
 24.  $4x^2 + 27xy + 35y^2 - 14x - 31y - 6 = 0$ .  
 25.  $(3x - 4y + a)(4x + 3y + a) = a^2$ .  
 26.  $3(2x - 3y + 4)^2 + 2(3x + 2y - 5)^2 = 78$ .  
 27.  $2(3x - 4y + 5)^2 - 3(4x + 3y - 10)^2 = 150$ .

Find the products of the semi-axes of the conics

28.  $y^2 - 4xy + 5x^2 = 2$ .      29.  $4(3x + 4y - 7)^2 + 3(4x - 3y + 9)^2 = 3$ .  
 30.  $11x^2 + 16xy - y^2 - 70x - 40y + 82 = 0$ .

Find the foci and the eccentricity of the conics

31.  $x^2 - 3xy + 4ax = 2a^2$ .      32.  $4xy - 3x^2 - 2ay = 0$ .  
 33.  $5x^2 + 6xy + 5y^2 + 12x + 4y + 6 = 0$ .  
 34.  $x^2 + 4xy + y^2 - 2x + 2y - 6 = 0$ .  
 35. Shew that the latus rectum of the parabola

$$(a^2 + b^2)(x^2 + y^2) = (bx + ay - ab)^2$$

is

$$2ab \div \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}.$$

36. Prove that the lengths of the semi-axes of the conic

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + ay^2 = d$$

are

$$\sqrt{\frac{d}{a+h}} \text{ and } \sqrt{\frac{d}{a-h}}$$

respectively, and that their equation is  $x^2 - y^2 = 0$ .

37. Prove that the squares of the semi-axes of the conic

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$$

are

$$2\Delta \div \{(ab - h^2)(a + b \pm \sqrt{(a-b)^2 + 4h^2})\},$$

where  $\Delta$  is the discriminant.

38. If  $\lambda$  be a variable parameter, prove that the locus of the vertices of the hyperbolas given by the equation  $x^2 - y^2 + \lambda xy = a^2$  is the curve  $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2(x^2 - y^2)$ .

39. If the point  $(at_1^2, 2at_1)$  on the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  be called the point  $t_1$ , prove that the axis of the second parabola through the four points  $t_1, t_2, t_3$ , and  $t_4$  makes with the axis of the first an angle

$$\cot^{-1} \left( \frac{t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_4}{4} \right).$$

Prove also that if two parabolas meet in four points the distances of the centroid of the four points from the axes are proportional to the latera recta.

40. If the product of the semi-axes of the conic  $x^2 + 2xy + 17y^2 = 8$  be unity, shew that the axes of coordinates are inclined at an angle  $\sin^{-1} \frac{1}{2}$ .

41. Sketch the curve  $6x^2 - 7xy - 5y^2 - 4x + 11y = 2$ , the axes being inclined at an angle of  $30^\circ$ .

42. Prove that the eccentricity of the conic given by the general equation satisfies the relation

$$\frac{e^4}{1 - e^2} + 4 = \frac{(a + b - 2h \cos \omega)^2}{(ab - h^2) \sin^2 \omega},$$

where  $\omega$  is the angle between the axes.

43. The axes being changed in any way, without any change of origin, prove that in the general equation of the second degree the quantities  $c$ ,  $\frac{f^2 + g^2 - 2fg \cos \omega}{\sin^2 \omega}$ ,  $\frac{af^2 + bg^2 - 2fgh}{\sin^2 \omega}$ , and  $\frac{\Delta}{\sin^2 \omega}$  are invariants, in addition to the quantities in Art. 137.

[On making the most general substitutions of Art. 132 it is clear that  $c$  is unaltered; proceed as in Art. 137, but introduce the condition that the resulting expressions are equal to the product of two linear quantities (Art. 116); the results will then follow.]

## ANSWERS

7.  $\left(\frac{-1503}{676}, \frac{-23}{169}\right)$ .      9. Two coincident straight lines.
10.  $\tan \theta_1 = -\frac{2}{3}$ ,  $\tan \theta_2 = \frac{2}{3}$ ,  $r_1 = \sqrt{3}$ , and  $r_2 = 4$ .
11.  $\theta_1 = 45^\circ$ ,  $\theta_2 = 135^\circ$ ,  $r_1 = \sqrt{2}$ , and  $r_2 = 2$ .
12.  $\tan \theta_1 = 7 + 5\sqrt{2}$ ;  $\tan \theta_2 = 7 - 5\sqrt{2}$ ,  
 $r_1 = \sqrt{\frac{-6}{5}(2\sqrt{2} - 2)}$ ,  $r_2 = \sqrt{\frac{6}{5}(2\sqrt{2} + 2)}$ .
28. 2.      29.  $\frac{1}{5}\sqrt{3}$ .      30.  $\frac{5}{3}\sqrt{-3}$ .
31.  $\left(\mp \frac{2a}{3} \sqrt{\sqrt{10} + 1}, \frac{4a}{3} \pm \frac{2a}{3} \sqrt{\sqrt{10} - 1}\right)$ ;  $\frac{1}{3} \sqrt{20 + 2\sqrt{10}}$ .
32.  $\left(\frac{a}{2} \pm \frac{a}{4}\sqrt{3}, \frac{3a}{4} \pm \frac{a}{2}\sqrt{3}\right)$ ;  $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{5}$ .
33.  $\left(-\frac{2}{3} \mp \frac{1}{4}\sqrt{6}, \frac{1}{2} \pm \frac{1}{4}\sqrt{6}\right)$ ;  $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}$ .
34.  $\left(-1 \pm \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{6}, 1 \pm \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{6}\right)$ ; 2.

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. Take  $x - 4y = 0$  as a new axis of  $x$ , i.e. turn the axes through an angle  $\theta$ , where  $\tan \theta = \frac{1}{4}$ , so that





4. The equation may be written

$$\left\{ \frac{4x + 3y + 15}{5} \right\}^2 = \frac{3x - 4y}{5}.$$

Since the lines  $4x + 3y + 15 = 0$  and  $3x - 4y = 0$  are at right angles, the equation represents a parabola having these lines for axis and tangent at the vertex respectively, and whose latus rectum is 1.

5. Take  $4x + 3y = 0$  as a new axis of  $x$ , *i.e.* turn the axes through an angle  $\theta$ , where  $\tan \theta = -\frac{4}{3}$ , so that  $\sin \theta = \frac{4}{5}$ , and  $\cos \theta = -\frac{3}{5}$ .

For  $x$  we must substitute  $\frac{-3X - 4Y}{5}$ ,

and for  $y$         "        "        "         $\frac{4X - 3Y}{5}$ .

$$\therefore 4x + 3y = -5Y.$$

The equation then becomes  $(Y + \frac{1}{5})^2 = \frac{X}{5}$ .

Hence etc., as in Art. 363.

6. Take  $3x + 4y = 0$  as a new axis of  $x$ , *i.e.* turn the axes through an angle  $\theta$ , where  $\tan \theta = -\frac{3}{4}$ , so that  $\sin \theta = \frac{3}{5}$ , and  $\cos \theta = -\frac{4}{5}$ .

For  $x$  we must substitute  $\frac{-4X - 3Y}{5}$ ,

and for  $y$         "        "        "         $\frac{3X - 4Y}{5}$ .

$$\therefore 3x + 4y = -5Y.$$

The equation then becomes  $Y^2 + \frac{19Y}{125} = \frac{8X}{125} - \frac{7}{25}$ .

Hence etc., as in Art. 363.

7. The equation may be written

$$(12x - 5y + \lambda)^2 = x(24\lambda - 619) + y(272 - 10\lambda) + \lambda^2 - 663,$$

and the lines  $12x - 5y + \lambda = 0,$

and  $x(24\lambda - 619) + y(272 - 10\lambda) + \lambda^2 - 663 = 0$ ,  
 will be at right angles if

$$12(24\lambda - 619) - 5(272 - 10\lambda) = 0,$$

whence  $\lambda = 26$ ,

and the equation becomes

$$\left(\frac{12x - 5y + 26}{13}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{13} \left(\frac{5x + 12y + 13}{13}\right).$$

Hence etc., as in Art. 363.

If  $(h, k)$  be the coordinates of the focus the perpendicular from  $(h, k)$  on the tangent at the vertex  $= \frac{1}{5^2}$ .

$$\therefore \frac{5h + 12k + 13}{13} = \frac{1}{5^2} \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

(It will be clear from a figure that the focus and the origin are on the same side of the line  $5x + 12y + 13 = 0$ .)

Also, since  $(h, k)$  lies on the axis,

$$\therefore 12h - 5k + 26 = 0. \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

Solving (i) and (ii), we obtain

$$h = -\frac{1503}{676}, k = -\frac{23}{189}.$$

8. Take  $4x - 3y = 0$  as a new axis of  $x$ , i.e. turn the axes through an angle  $\theta$ , where  $\tan \theta = \frac{4}{3}$ , so that  $\sin \theta = \frac{4}{5}$ , and  $\cos \theta = \frac{3}{5}$ .

For  $x$  we must substitute  $\frac{3X - 4Y}{5}$ ,

and for  $y$  " "  $\frac{4X + 3Y}{5}$ .

$$\therefore 4x - 3y = -5Y,$$

and the equation then becomes  $(Y + \frac{13}{25})^2 = -\frac{88}{25}(X - \frac{13}{25})$ .

Hence etc., as in Art. 363.

9. The equation is  $(2x - y - 3)^2 = 0$ .

10. As in Art. 365,  $\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \frac{-12}{12-7} = -\frac{12}{5}$ .

$$\therefore \frac{2 \tan \theta}{1 - \tan^2 \theta} = -\frac{12}{5}, \text{ or } 6 \tan^2 \theta - 5 \tan \theta - 6 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \tan \theta_1 = -\frac{2}{3}, \text{ and } \tan \theta_2 = \frac{3}{2}.$$

$$\text{Also } r^2 = \frac{48(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{12 - 12 \tan \theta + 7 \tan^2 \theta} = 3 \text{ or } 16.$$

$$11. \text{ As in Art. 365, } \tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \frac{2}{3-3} = \infty,$$

$$\therefore \theta_1 = 45^\circ, \text{ and } \theta_2 = 135^\circ.$$

$$\text{Also } r^2 = \frac{8(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{3 + 2 \tan \theta + 3 \tan^2 \theta} = 2 \text{ or } 4.$$

$$12. \text{ As in Art. 365, } \tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \frac{-1}{7}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{2 \tan \theta}{1 - \tan^2 \theta} = \frac{-1}{7}; \therefore \tan^2 \theta - 14 \tan \theta - 1 = 0;$$

$$\therefore \tan \theta = 7 \pm 5\sqrt{2} \text{ and } r^2 = \frac{6(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{1 - \tan \theta - 6 \tan^2 \theta} = \text{etc.}$$

13. Since  $\cos^2 2a - 1$  is negative, the curve is an ellipse. The direction of the axes is given by

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \frac{-2 \cos 2a}{1-1} = \infty.$$

$$\therefore \theta_1 = 45^\circ, \theta_2 = 135^\circ,$$

$$\text{and } r^2 = \frac{2a^2(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{1 - 2 \cos 2a \cdot \tan \theta + \tan^2 \theta} = a^2 \operatorname{cosec}^2 a \text{ or } a^2 \sec^2 a.$$

14. Since  $\operatorname{cosec}^2 2a - 1$  is positive, the curve is a hyperbola. The direction of the axes is given by

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \frac{-2 \operatorname{cosec} 2a}{1-1} = \infty.$$

$$\therefore \theta_1 = 45^\circ, \theta_2 = 135^\circ,$$

$$\text{and } r^2 = \frac{a^2(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{1 - 2 \operatorname{cosec} 2a \tan \theta + \tan^2 \theta} = \frac{a^2}{1 \mp \operatorname{cosec} 2a}.$$

15. The equation is equivalent to  $(x-a)(y-a) = a^2$ , which is a rectangular hyperbola, whose asymptotes are parallel to the axes, and whose centre is the point  $(a, a)$ .

16. The curve is a hyperbola, the direction of whose axes is given by  $\tan 2\theta = 1$ .

$$\therefore \theta_1 = 22\frac{1}{2}^\circ \text{ and } \theta_2 = 112\frac{1}{2}^\circ.$$

$$\therefore \tan \theta_1 = \sqrt{2} - 1, \tan \theta_2 = -\sqrt{2} - 1 \text{ and}$$

$$r^2 = \frac{a^2(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{\tan \theta - \tan^2 \theta} = \text{etc.}$$

17. Since  $1^2 - 2$  is negative the curve is an ellipse.

The centre is given by

$$2\bar{x} - \bar{y} + 1 = 0, \text{ and } -\bar{x} + \bar{y} - 1 = 0,$$

whence  $\bar{x} = 0, \bar{y} = 1$  and  $\therefore c' = -1$ .

Therefore the equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is  $y^2 - 2xy + 2x^2 = 1$ .

The direction of the axes is given by

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{-2}{2-1} = -2.$$

$$\therefore \tan^2 \theta - \tan \theta - 1 = 0,$$

$$\therefore \tan \theta_1 = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}, \text{ and } \tan \theta_2 = \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2}.$$

$$\therefore r^2 = \frac{1 + \tan^2 \theta}{2 - 2 \tan \theta + \tan^2 \theta} = \frac{6 \pm 2\sqrt{5}}{4}, \text{ etc.}$$

18. Since  $(\frac{1}{2})^2 - 1$  is negative, the curve is an ellipse. The centre is given by

$$2\bar{x} + \bar{y} + 1 = 0, \text{ and } \bar{x} + 2\bar{y} + 1 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \bar{x} = -\frac{1}{3}, \text{ and } \bar{y} = -\frac{1}{3} \text{ and } c' = -\frac{1}{6} - \frac{1}{6} - 1 = -\frac{4}{3}.$$

Therefore the equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is  $x^2 + xy + y^2 = \frac{4}{3}$ .

Hence  $\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \infty$ ;  $\therefore \theta_1 = 45^\circ$ , and  $\theta_2 = 135^\circ$ .

$$r^2 = \frac{\frac{4}{3}(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{1 + \tan \theta + \tan^2 \theta}; \therefore r_1 = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}, r_2 = \frac{2\sqrt{6}}{3}.$$

19. Since  $a + b = 0$ , the curve is a rectangular hyperbola. The centre is given by

$$4\bar{x} + 3\bar{y} - 7 = 0, \text{ and } 3\bar{x} - 4\bar{y} + 1 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \bar{x} = 1, \text{ and } \bar{y} = 1 \text{ and } c' = -\frac{7}{2} + \frac{1}{2} - 2 = -5.$$

Therefore the equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is  $2x^2 + 3xy - 2y^2 = 5$ .

$$\therefore \tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \frac{3}{4}, \text{ whence } \tan \theta = \frac{1}{3} \text{ or } -3.$$

$$r^2 = \frac{5(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{2 + 3 \tan \theta - 2 \tan^2 \theta} = 2 \text{ or } -2; \therefore r = \sqrt{2} \text{ or } \sqrt{-2}.$$

20. Since  $18^2 - 40 \cdot 25$  is negative, the curve is an ellipse. The centre is given by

$$20\bar{x} + 9\bar{y} - 49 = 0, \text{ and } 18\bar{x} + 25\bar{y} - 61 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \bar{x} = 2, \text{ and } \bar{y} = 1 \text{ and } c' = -98 \cdot 2 - 61 \cdot 1 + 205 = -52.$$

Therefore the equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is  $40x^2 + 36xy + 25y^2 = 52$ .

$$\therefore \tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \frac{36}{15} = \frac{12}{5}.$$

$$\therefore 6 \tan^2 \theta + 5 \tan \theta - 6 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \tan \theta_1 = \frac{2}{3}, \tan \theta_2 = -\frac{3}{2},$$

$$\text{and } r^2 = \frac{52(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{40 + 36 \tan \theta + 25 \tan^2 \theta} = 1 \text{ or } 4.$$

21. Since  $16^2 - 9 \cdot 9$  is positive, the curve is a hyperbola. The centre is given by

$$9\bar{x} - 16\bar{y} + 30 = 0, \text{ and } -16\bar{x} + 9\bar{y} + 5 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \bar{x} = 2, \text{ and } \bar{y} = 3 \text{ and } c' = 2 \cdot 30 + 3 \cdot 5 - 64\frac{1}{2} = 10\frac{1}{2}.$$

Therefore the equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is  $9x^2 - 32xy + 9y^2 = -10\frac{1}{2}$ .

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \infty; \therefore \theta_1 = 45^\circ, \theta_2 = 135^\circ,$$

$$\text{and } r^2 = \frac{-10\frac{1}{2}(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{9 - 32 \tan \theta + 9 \tan^2 \theta} = \frac{3}{2} \text{ or } -\frac{21}{50}.$$

22. Since  $1^2 - 8$  is negative, the curve is an ellipse. The centre is given by

$$2\bar{x} - \bar{y} - 2a = 0, \text{ and } -\bar{x} + 4\bar{y} - 6a = 0.$$

$$\therefore \bar{x} = 2a, \bar{y} = 2a \text{ and } c' = -a. 2a - 3a. 2a + 7a^2 = -a^2.$$

Therefore the equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is  $x^2 - xy + 2y^2 = a^2$ .

$$\therefore \tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \frac{-1}{1-2} = 1; \therefore \theta_1 = 22\frac{1}{2}^\circ, \theta_2 = 112\frac{1}{2}^\circ,$$

and 
$$r^2 = \frac{a^2(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{1 - \tan \theta + 2 \tan^2 \theta}, \text{ etc.}$$

23. Since  $a + b = 0$ , the curve is a rectangular hyperbola. The centre is given by

$$10\bar{x} - 24\bar{y} + 19 = 0, \text{ and } -24\bar{x} - 10\bar{y} + 22 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \bar{x} = \frac{1}{2}, \bar{y} = 1, \text{ and } c' = \frac{1}{2} \cdot 19 + 22 - 5\frac{1}{2} = 26.$$

Therefore the equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is  $5x^2 - 24xy - 5y^2 = -13$ .

$$\therefore \tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = -\frac{12}{5},$$

whence  $\tan \theta_1 = \frac{3}{2}, \text{ and } \tan \theta_2 = -\frac{2}{3}.$

$$\therefore r^2 = \frac{-13(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{5 - 24 \tan \theta - 5 \tan^2 \theta} = 1 \text{ or } -1.$$

24. Since  $(\frac{27}{2})^2 - 4 \cdot 35$  is positive, the curve is a hyperbola. The centre is given by

$$8\bar{x} + 27\bar{y} - 14 = 0, \text{ and } 27\bar{x} + 70\bar{y} - 31 = 0.$$

Whence  $\bar{x} = -\frac{11}{13}, \bar{y} = \frac{10}{13},$

and  $c' = 7 \cdot \frac{11}{13} - \frac{31}{2} \cdot \frac{10}{13} - 6 = -12.$

Therefore the equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is  $4x^2 + 27xy + 35y^2 = 12$ .

$$\therefore \tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \frac{27}{4-35} = -\frac{27}{31}.$$

$$\therefore 27 \tan^2 \theta - 62 \tan \theta - 27 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \tan \theta = \frac{31 \pm 13\sqrt{10}}{27}, \text{ etc.}$$

25. The equation may be written

$$\left(\frac{3x - 4y + a}{5}\right)\left(\frac{4x + 3y + a}{5}\right) = \frac{a^2}{25},$$

or referred to  $3x - 4y + a = 0$ , and  $4x + 3y + a = 0$ , as axes (which are at right angles)

$$X \cdot Y = \frac{a^2}{25}.$$

The equation therefore represents a rectangular hyperbola, having these lines for asymptotes and semi-axis

$$= \frac{\sqrt{2} \cdot a}{5}.$$

26. The equation may be written

$$\frac{1}{2} \cdot \left(\frac{2x - 3y + 4}{\sqrt{13}}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{3} \cdot \left(\frac{3x + 2y - 5}{\sqrt{13}}\right)^2 = 1.$$

Hence etc., as in Art. 369.

The curve is an ellipse whose centre is  $(\frac{7}{13}, \frac{22}{13})$ , and semi-axes  $\sqrt{3}$  and  $\sqrt{2}$ .

27. The equation may be written

$$\frac{1}{3} \left(\frac{3x - 4y + 5}{5}\right)^2 - \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{4x + 3y - 10}{5}\right)^2 = 1.$$

Hence etc., as in Art. 369.

The curve is a hyperbola whose centre is  $(1, 2)$ , and semi-axes  $\sqrt{3}$  and  $\sqrt{2}$ .

28. See Art. 366.  $a\beta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{ab - h^2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{5}{2} - 1^2}} = 2.$

29. The equation may be written

$$\frac{100}{3} \cdot \left(\frac{3x + 4y - 7}{5}\right)^2 + 25 \cdot \left(\frac{4x - 3y + 9}{5}\right)^2 = 1.$$

This is an ellipse whose axes are the straight lines

$$3x + 4y - 7 = 0 \text{ and } 4x - 3y + 9 = 0,$$



and the lengths of whose corresponding semi-axes are  $\sqrt{\frac{3}{100}}$  and  $\sqrt{\frac{1}{25}}$  (cf. Art. 369, Ex. 1).

$$\therefore a\beta = \sqrt{\frac{3}{100} \cdot \frac{1}{25}} = \frac{1}{50} \cdot \sqrt{3}.$$

30. The centre is given by

$$11\bar{x} + 8\bar{y} - 35 = 0, \text{ and } 8\bar{x} - \bar{y} - 20 = 0.$$

Whence  $\bar{x} = \frac{13}{5}, \bar{y} = \frac{4}{5},$

and  $c' = -35 \cdot \frac{13}{5} - 20 \cdot \frac{4}{5} + 82 = -25.$

Therefore the equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is  $11x^2 + 16xy - y^2 = 25.$

$$a\beta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{ab - h^2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{-\frac{11}{25^2} - \frac{8^2}{25^2}}} = \frac{25}{\sqrt{-75}} = -\frac{5}{3} \sqrt{-3}.$$

31. The equations for the centre are

$$2\bar{x} - 3\bar{y} + 4a = 0, \text{ and } \bar{x} = 0.$$

$$\therefore \bar{y} = \frac{4a}{3}, \bar{x} = 0, \text{ and } c' = -2a^2.$$

Therefore the equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is  $x^2 - 3xy = 2a^2.$

$$\therefore \tan 2\theta = -3; \therefore \tan \theta_1 = \frac{1 - \sqrt{10}}{3}, \text{ and } \tan \theta_2 = \frac{1 + \sqrt{10}}{3}.$$

$$\therefore \sin \theta_1 = -\sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{10} - 1}{2\sqrt{10}}}, \text{ and } \cos \theta_1 = -\sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{10} + 1}{2\sqrt{10}}}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } r^2 &= \frac{2(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{1 - 3 \tan \theta} = \frac{2 \left( 1 + \frac{11 \pm 2\sqrt{10}}{9} \right)}{\mp \sqrt{10}} \\ &= \frac{2}{9} \cdot \frac{20 \pm 2\sqrt{10}}{\mp \sqrt{10}} = \frac{2}{9} (\mp 2\sqrt{10} - 2). \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore r_1^2 - r_2^2 = \frac{8}{9} \sqrt{10}, \therefore \sqrt{r_1^2 - r_2^2} = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3} \sqrt{\sqrt{10}}, \text{ etc.}$$

See Art. 367.

The equation for the eccentricity is [Art. 366, equation 5]

$$\frac{e^2}{2 - e^2} = -\sqrt{1^2 + 3^2} = -\sqrt{10},$$

so that

$$e = \frac{1}{3} \sqrt{20 + 2\sqrt{10}}.$$

32. The equations for the centre are

$$3\bar{x} - 2\bar{y} = 0, \quad -2\bar{x} + a = 0.$$

$$\therefore \bar{x} = \frac{a}{2}, \quad \bar{y} = \frac{3a}{4}, \quad \text{and } c' = -\frac{3a^2}{4}.$$

Therefore the equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is

$$4xy - 3x^2 = \frac{3a^2}{4}, \quad \text{i.e. } 3x^2 - 4xy = -\frac{3a^2}{4}.$$

$$\therefore \tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = -\frac{4}{3}.$$

$$2 \tan^2 \theta - 3 \tan \theta - 2 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \tan \theta_1 = 2, \quad \tan \theta_2 = -\frac{1}{2}.$$

$$r^2 = \frac{-\frac{3}{4}a^2(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{3 - 4 \tan \theta} = \frac{3}{4}a^2 \quad \text{or} \quad -\frac{3}{16}a^2.$$

$$\therefore r_1^2 - r_2^2 = \frac{15}{16}a^2, \quad \text{and } \cos \theta_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}, \quad \sin \theta_1 = \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}.$$

Therefore the coordinates of the foci are

$$\left( \frac{a}{2} \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}a}{4}, \quad \frac{3a}{4} \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}a}{2} \right). \quad [\text{Art. 367.}]$$

Also 
$$e^2 = \frac{a^2 + \beta^2}{a^2} \quad [\text{Art. 366}]$$

$$= \frac{\frac{3}{4} + \frac{3}{16}}{\frac{3}{4}} = \frac{5}{4}; \quad \therefore e = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{5}.$$

33. The equations for the centre are

$$5\bar{x} + 3\bar{y} + 6 = 0, \text{ and } 3\bar{x} + 5\bar{y} + 2 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \bar{x} = -\frac{3}{2}, \bar{y} = \frac{1}{2},$$

and

$$c' = -\frac{3}{2} \cdot 6 + \frac{1}{2} \cdot 2 + 6 = -2.$$

Therefore the equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is  $5x^2 + 6xy + 5y^2 = 2$ ,

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \frac{6}{5-5} = \infty; \therefore \theta_1 = 45^\circ, \theta_2 = 135^\circ,$$

and

$$r^2 = \frac{2(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{5 + 6 \tan \theta + 5 \tan^2 \theta} = \frac{1}{4} \text{ or } 1.$$

$$\therefore \sqrt{r_1^2 - r_2^2} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \cos \theta_2 = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \sin \theta_2 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

Hence the coordinates of the foci are

$$\left(-\frac{3}{2} \mp \frac{1}{4} \sqrt{6}, \frac{1}{2} \pm \frac{1}{4} \sqrt{6}\right).$$

$$e^2 = \frac{a^2 - \beta^2}{a^2} = \frac{1 - \frac{1}{4}}{1} = \frac{3}{4}; \therefore e = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{3}.$$

34. The equations for the centre are

$$\bar{x} + 2\bar{y} - 1 = 0, \text{ and } 2\bar{x} + \bar{y} + 1 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \bar{x} = -1, \bar{y} = 1, \text{ and } c' = 1 + 1 - 6 = -4.$$

Therefore the equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is  $x^2 + 4xy + y^2 = 4$ .

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b} = \frac{4}{1-1} = \infty; \therefore \theta_1 = 45^\circ, \theta_2 = 135^\circ.$$

$$\therefore r^2 = \frac{4(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{1 + 4 \tan \theta + \tan^2 \theta} = \frac{4}{3} \text{ or } -4.$$

$$\therefore \sqrt{r_1^2 - r_2^2} = \frac{4}{3} \sqrt{3}, \sin \theta_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \cos \theta_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

Therefore the coordinates of the foci are

$$\left(-1 \pm \frac{2}{3} \sqrt{6}, 1 \pm \frac{2}{3} \sqrt{6}\right).$$

Also 
$$e^2 = \frac{\alpha^2 + \beta^2}{\alpha^2} = \frac{4 + \frac{4}{3}}{\frac{4}{3}} = 4; \therefore e = 2.$$

35. The latus rectum = twice the perpendicular from the focus (0, 0) upon the directrix ( $bx + ay - ab = 0$ )

$$= \frac{2ab}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}.$$

36. Here  $\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-a} = \infty; \therefore \theta_1 = 45^\circ, \theta_2 = 135^\circ.$

Hence the equations of the axes are

$$x - y = 0 \text{ and } x + y = 0.$$

Also 
$$r^2 = \frac{d(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{a + 2h \tan \theta + a \tan^2 \theta} = \frac{d}{a \pm h}.$$

37. The equation referred to parallel axes through the centre is [Art. 352]

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = \frac{-\Delta}{ab - h^2} = C.$$

Hence as in Art. 364,

$$\frac{1}{\alpha^2} + \frac{1}{\beta^2} = \frac{a+b}{C}, \text{ and } \frac{1}{\alpha^2\beta^2} = \frac{ab-h^2}{C^2}.$$

$$\therefore \alpha^2 + \beta^2 = \frac{(a+b)C}{ab-h^2} \text{ and } \alpha^2\beta^2 = \frac{C^2}{ab-h^2}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \alpha^2 - \beta^2 &= \pm \sqrt{\frac{C^2(a+b)^2 - 4C^2(ab-h^2)}{(ab-h^2)^2}} \\ &= \pm \frac{C}{ab-h^2} \sqrt{(a-b)^2 + 4h^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore the values of  $\alpha^2$  and  $\beta^2$  are

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{C}{ab-h^2} [a+b \pm \sqrt{(a-b)^2 + 4h^2}],$$

i.e. 
$$-\frac{1}{2} \frac{\Delta}{(ab-h^2)^2} \frac{4(ab-h^2)}{a+b \mp \sqrt{(a-b)^2 + 4h^2}},$$

i.e. 
$$-2\Delta \div [(ab-h^2) \{a+b \mp \sqrt{(a-b)^2 + 4h^2}\}].$$

38. If  $\theta$  be the angle made with the axis by the axis of the curve,

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{\lambda}{2}.$$

Hence the polar equation of the required locus is

$$\begin{aligned} r^2 &= \frac{a^2(1 + \tan^2 \theta)}{1 - \tan^2 \theta + \lambda \tan \theta} = \frac{a^2}{\frac{1 - \tan^2 \theta}{1 + \tan^2 \theta} + \frac{\lambda}{2} \cdot \frac{2 \tan \theta}{1 + \tan^2 \theta}} \\ &= \frac{a^2}{\cos 2\theta + \tan 2\theta \cdot \sin 2\theta} = a^2 \cos 2\theta, \end{aligned}$$

or, in Cartesians,  $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2(x^2 - y^2)$ .

39. Let the axis of the second parabola be parallel to  $y - mx = 0$ , so that its equation is of the form

$$(y - mx)^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0.$$

If this meets the first parabola in the point  $(at^2, 2at)$ , then, on substitution,

$$t^4 m^2 a^2 - 4ma^2 t^3 + \dots = 0.$$

$$\therefore t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = \frac{4ma^2}{m^2 a^2} = \frac{4}{m} = 4 \cot \theta,$$

if  $\theta$  be the inclination of the axes of the parabolas.

If  $y_1$  and  $y_2$  be the distances of the centroid from the axes,

$$y_1 = \frac{2a(t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + t_4)}{4} = 2a \cot \theta.$$

Similarly, if  $4b$  be the latus rectum of the second parabola,  $y_2 = 2b \cot \theta$ .

$$\therefore \frac{y_1}{y_2} = \frac{a}{b}.$$

40. Since  $\frac{ab - h^2}{\sin^2 \omega} = 1$ , [Art. 364]

$$\therefore \frac{17 - 1}{8^2} = \sin^2 \omega. \quad \therefore \sin^2 \omega = \frac{1}{4}; \quad \therefore \omega = \sin^{-1} \frac{1}{2}.$$

41. The equation breaks up into

$$(3x - 5y + 1)(2x + y - 2) = 0,$$

and therefore gives two straight lines which are easily drawn.

42. See Art. 364.

$$\alpha^2 + \beta^2 = \frac{a + b - 2h \cos \omega}{ab - h^2}, \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

and 
$$\alpha^2 \beta^2 = \frac{\sin^2 \omega}{ab - h^2}. \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

Also 
$$\frac{e^2}{2 - e^2} = \frac{\alpha^2 - \beta^2}{\alpha^2 + \beta^2}; \therefore \frac{e^4}{(2 - e^2)^2} = \frac{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)^2 - 4\alpha^2\beta^2}{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)^2};$$

$$\therefore \frac{4\alpha^2\beta^2}{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)^2} = 1 - \frac{e^4}{(2 - e^2)^2} = \frac{4 + e^4 - 4e^2 - e^4}{(2 - e^2)^2};$$

$$\therefore \frac{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)^2}{\alpha^2\beta^2} = \frac{4 - 4e^2 + e^4}{1 - e^2}.$$

Substituting, from (i) and (ii) we have

$$\frac{(a + b - 2h \cos \omega)^2}{(ab - h^2) \sin^2 \omega} = 4 + \frac{e^4}{1 - e^2}.$$

43. As in Art. 137, we have

$$x^2(a + \lambda) + 2xy(h + \lambda \cos \omega) + y^2(b + \lambda) + 2gx + 2fy + c = x'^2(a' + \lambda) + \text{etc.} \dots$$

The left-hand side will be the product of linear factors if

$$c(a + \lambda)(b + \lambda) + 2fg(h + \lambda \cos \omega) - c(h + \lambda \cos \omega)^2 - (a + \lambda)f^2 - (b + \lambda)g^2 = 0,$$

or

$$\lambda^2 c \sin^2 \omega + \lambda \{c(a + b - 2h \cos \omega) + 2fg \cos \omega - f^2 - g^2\} + \Delta = 0.$$

Hence, as in Art. 137,

$$\frac{c(a + b - 2h \cos \omega) + 2fg \cos \omega - f^2 - g^2}{c \sin^2 \omega} = \frac{c'(a' + b' - 2h' \cos \omega') + 2f'g' \cos \omega' - f'^2 - g'^2}{c' \sin^2 \omega'} \dots(1)$$

and

$$\frac{\Delta}{c \sin^2 \omega} = \frac{\Delta'}{c' \sin^2 \omega'} \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

But, clearly, since the origin is unaltered, such substitutions as those of Art. 132 do not alter the constant terms, and thus  $c = c'$ .

Therefore from (2)  $\frac{\Delta}{\sin^2 \omega} = \frac{\Delta'}{\sin^2 \omega'}$ . .....(3)

Also, from Art. 137,

$$\frac{a + b - 2h \cos \omega}{\sin^2 \omega} = \frac{a' + b' - 2h' \cos \omega'}{\sin^2 \omega'}$$

and therefore (1) gives, on subtraction,

$$\frac{f^2 + g^2 - 2fg \cos \omega}{\sin^2 \omega} = \frac{f'^2 + g'^2 - 2f'g' \cos \omega'}{\sin^2 \omega'}. \dots(4)$$

Also Art. 137 gives  $\frac{ab - h^2}{\sin^2 \omega} = \frac{a'b' - h'^2}{\sin^2 \omega'}$ .

Multiplying the two sides of this by  $c$  and  $c'$  and subtracting from (3), we get

$$\frac{af^2 + bg^2 - 2fgh}{\sin^2 \omega} = \frac{a'f'^2 + b'g'^2 - 2f'g'h'}{\sin^2 \omega'}.$$

## Chapter 16

# THE GENERAL CONIC

**370.** IN the present chapter we shall consider properties of conic sections which are given by the general equation of the second degree, viz.

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

For brevity, the left-hand side of this equation is often called  $\phi(x, y)$ , so that the general equation to a conic is

$$\phi(x, y) = 0.$$

Similarly,  $\phi(x', y')$  denotes the value of the left-hand side of (1) when  $x'$  and  $y'$  are substituted for  $x$  and  $y$ .

The equation (1) is often also written in the form  $S = 0$ .

**371.** On dividing by  $c$ , the equation (1) contains five independent constants  $\frac{a}{c}$ ,  $\frac{h}{c}$ ,  $\frac{b}{c}$ ,  $\frac{g}{c}$ , and  $\frac{f}{c}$ .

To determine these five constants, we shall therefore require five conditions. Conversely, if five independent conditions be given, the constants can be determined. Only one conic, or, at any rate, only a finite number of conics, can be drawn to satisfy five independent conditions.

**372.** *To find the equation to the tangent at any point  $(x', y')$  of the conic section*

$$\phi(x, y) \equiv ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots(1).$$

Let  $(x'', y'')$  be any other point on the conic.



The equation to the straight line joining this point to  $(x', y')$  is

$$y - y' = \frac{y'' - y'}{x'' - x'}(x - x') \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

Since both  $(x', y')$  and  $(x'', y'')$  lie on (1), we have

$$ax'^2 + 2hx'y' + by'^2 + 2gx' + 2fy' + c = 0 \dots\dots (3),$$

and  $ax''^2 + 2hx'y'' + by''^2 + 2gx'' + 2fy'' + c = 0 \dots\dots (4).$

Hence, by subtraction, we have

$$a(x'^2 - x''^2) + 2h(x'y' - x''y'') + b(y'^2 - y''^2) + 2g(x' - x'') + 2f(y' - y'') = 0 \dots\dots\dots (5).$$

But

$$2(x'y' - x''y'') = (x' + x'')(y' - y'') + (x' - x'')(y' + y''),$$

so that (5) can be written in the form

$$(x' - x'') [a(x' + x'') + h(y' + y'') + 2g] + (y' - y'') [h(x' + x'') + b(y' + y'') + 2f] = 0,$$

i.e.  $\frac{y'' - y'}{x'' - x'} = -\frac{a(x' + x'') + h(y' + y'') + 2g}{h(x' + x'') + b(y' + y'') + 2f}$

The equation to any secant is therefore

$$y - y' = -\frac{a(x' + x'') + h(y' + y'') + 2g}{h(x' + x'') + b(y' + y'') + 2f}(x - x') \dots (6).$$

To obtain the equation to the tangent at  $(x', y')$ , we put  $x'' = x'$  and  $y'' = y'$  in this equation, and it becomes

$$y - y' = -\frac{ax' + hy' + g}{hx' + by' + f}(x - x'),$$

i.e.  $(ax' + hy' + g)x + (hx' + by' + f)y = ax'^2 + 2hx'y' + by'^2 + gx' + fy' = -gx' - fy' - c$ , by equation (3).

The required equation is therefore

$$axx' + h(xy' + x'y) + byy' + g(x + x') + f(y + y') + c = 0 \dots\dots(7).$$

**Cor. 1.** The equation (7) may be written down, from the general equation of the second degree, by substituting  $xx'$  for  $x^2$ ,  $yy'$  for  $y^2$ ,  $xy' + x'y$  for  $2xy$ ,  $x + x'$  for  $2x$ , and  $y + y'$  for  $2y$ . (Cf. Art. 152.)

**Cor. 2.** If the conic pass through the origin we have  $c = 0$ , and then the tangent at the origin (where  $x' = 0$  and  $y' = 0$ ) is  $gx + fy = 0$ ,

*i.e.* the equation to the tangent at the origin is obtained by equating to zero the terms of the lowest degree in the equation to the conic.

**373.** The equation of the previous article may also be obtained as follows; If  $(x', y')$  and  $(x'', y'')$  be two points on the conic section, the equation to the line joining them is

$$a(x - x')(x - x'') + h[(x - x')(y - y'') + (x - x'')(y - y')] + b(y - y')(y - y'') = ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

For the terms of the second degree on the two sides of (1) cancel, and the equation reduces to one of the first degree, thus representing a straight line.

Also, since  $(x', y')$  lies on the curve, the equation is satisfied by putting  $x = x'$  and  $y = y'$ .

Hence  $(x', y')$  is a point lying on (1).

So  $(x'', y'')$  lies on (1).

It therefore is the straight line joining them.

Putting  $x'' = x'$  and  $y'' = y'$  we have, as the equation to the tangent at  $(x', y')$ ,

$$a(x - x')^2 + 2h(x - x')(y - y') + b(y - y')^2 = ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c,$$

*i.e.*  $2axx' + 2h(x'y + xy') + 2byy' + 2gx + 2fy + c$

$$= ax'^2 + 2hx'y' + by'^2$$

$$= -2gx' - 2fy' - c, \text{ since } (x', y') \text{ lies on the conic.}$$

Hence the equation (7) of the last article.

**374.** To find the condition that any straight line

$$lx + my + n = 0 \dots \dots \dots (1),$$

may touch the conic

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

Substituting for  $y$  in (2) from (1), we have for the equation giving the abscissæ of the points of intersection of (1) and (2),

$$x^2(am^2 - 2hlm + bl^2) - 2x(hmn - bln - gm^2 + flm) + bn^2 - 2fnn + cn^2 = 0 \dots \dots \dots (3).$$

If (1) be a tangent, the values of  $x$  given by (3) must be equal.

The condition for this is, (Art. 1,)

$$(hmn - bln - gm^2 + flm)^2 = (am^2 - 2hlm + bl^2)(bn^2 - 2fnn + cn^2).$$

On simplifying, we have, after division by  $m^2$ ,

$$l^2 (bc - f^2) + m^2 (ca - g^2) + n^2 (ab - h^2) + 2mn (gh - af) + 2nl (hf - bg) + 2lm (fg - ch) = 0.$$

**Ex.** Find the equations to the tangents to the conic

$$x^2 + 4xy + 3y^2 - 5x - 6y + 3 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

which are parallel to the straight line  $x + 4y = 0$ .

The equation to any such tangent is

$$x + 4y + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

where  $c$  is to be determined.

This straight line meets (1) in points given by

$$3x^2 - 2x(5c + 28) + 3c^2 + 24c + 48 = 0.$$

The roots of this equation are equal, *i.e.* the line (2) is a tangent, if  $\{2(5c + 28)\}^2 = 4 \cdot 3 \cdot (3c^2 + 24c + 48)$ , *i.e.* if  $c = -5$  or  $-8$ .

The required tangents are therefore

$$x + 4y - 5 = 0, \text{ and } x + 4y - 8 = 0.$$

**375.** As in Arts. 214 and 274 it may be proved that the polar of  $(x', y')$  with respect to  $\phi(x, y) = 0$  is

$$(ax' + hy' + g)x + (hx' + by' + f)y + gx' + fy' + c = 0.$$

The form of the equation to a polar is therefore the same as that of a tangent.

Just as in Art. 217 it may now be shewn that, if the polar of  $P$  passes through  $T$ , the polar of  $T$  passes through  $P$ .

The chord of the conic which is bisected at  $(x', y')$ , being parallel to the polar of  $(x', y')$  [Arts. 221 and 280], has as equation

$$(ax' + hy' + g)(x - x') + (hx' + by' + f)(y - y') = 0.$$

**376.** To find the equation to the diameter bisecting all chords parallel to the straight line  $y = mx$ . (See fig. Art. 279.)

Any such chord is  $y = mx + K \dots\dots\dots (1)$ .

This meets the conic section

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$$

in points whose abscissæ are given by

$$ax^2 + 2hx(mx + K) + b(mx + K)^2 + 2gx + 2f(mx + K) + c = 0, \\ \text{i.e. by } x^2(a + 2hm + bm^2) + 2x(hK + bmK + g + fm) + bK^2 + 2fK + c = 0.$$

If  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  be the roots of this equation, we therefore have

$$x_1 + x_2 = -2 \frac{(h + bm)K + g + fm}{a + 2hm + bm^2}.$$

Let  $(X, Y)$  be the middle point of the required chord, so that

$$X = \frac{x_1 + x_2}{2} = -\frac{(h + bm)K + g + fm}{a + 2hm + bm^2} \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

Also, since  $(X, Y)$  lies on (1) we have

$$Y = mX + K \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

If between (2) and (3) we eliminate  $K$  we have a relation between  $X$  and  $Y$ .

This relation is

$$-(a + 2hm + bm^2)X = (h + bm)(Y - mX) + g + fm,$$

*i. e.*  $X(a + hm) + Y(h + bm) + g + fm = 0.$

The locus of the required middle point is therefore the straight line whose equation is

$$x(a + hm) + y(h + bm) + g + fm = 0.$$

If this be parallel to the straight line  $y = m'x$ , we have

$$m' = -\frac{a + hm}{h + bm} \dots\dots\dots(4),$$

*i. e.*  $a + h(m + m') + bmm' = 0 \dots\dots\dots(5).$

This is therefore the condition that the two straight lines  $y = mx$  and  $y = m'x$  may be parallel to conjugate diameters of the conic given by the general equation.

**377.** To find the condition that the pair of straight lines, whose equation is

$$Ax^2 + 2Hxy + By^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

may be parallel to conjugate diameters of the general conic

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

Let the equations of the straight lines represented by (1) be  $y = mx$  and  $y = m'x$ , so that (1) is equivalent to

$$B(y - mx)(y - m'x) = 0,$$

and hence

$$m + m' = -\frac{2H}{B}, \text{ and } mm' = \frac{A}{B}.$$

By the condition of the last article it therefore follows that the lines (1) are parallel to conjugate diameters if

$$a + h \left( -\frac{2H}{B} \right) + b \frac{A}{B} = 0,$$

*i.e.* if  $Ab - 2Hh + Ba = 0.$

**378.** *To prove that two concentric conic sections always have a pair, and only one pair, of common conjugate diameters and to find their equation.*

Let the two concentric conic sections be

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 1 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

and  $a'x^2 + 2h'xy + b'y^2 = 1 \dots\dots\dots (2).$

The straight lines

$$Ax^2 + 2Hxy + By^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (3),$$

are conjugate diameters of both (1) and (2) if

$$Ab - 2Hh + Ba = 0,$$

and  $Ab' - 2Hh' + Ba' = 0.$

Solving these two equations we have

$$\frac{A}{ha' - h'a} = \frac{-2H}{ab' - a'b} = \frac{B}{bh' - b'h}.$$

Substituting these values in (3), we see that the straight lines

$$x^2 (ha' - h'a) - xy (ab' - a'b) + y^2 (bh' - b'h) = 0 \dots\dots\dots (4)$$

are always conjugate diameters of both (1) and (2).

Hence there is always a pair of conjugate diameters, real, coincident, or imaginary, which are common to any two concentric conic sections.

**EXERCISES XLII**

**1.** How many other conditions can a conic section satisfy when we are given (1) its centre, (2) its focus, (3) its eccentricity, (4) its axes, (5) a tangent, (6) a tangent and its point of contact, (7) the position of one of its asymptotes?

**2.** Find the condition that the straight line  $lx + my = 1$  may touch the parabola  $(ax - by)^2 - 2(a^2 + b^2)(ax + by) + (a^2 + b^2)^2 = 0$ , and shew that if this straight line meet the axes in  $P$  and  $Q$ , then  $PQ$  will, when it is a tangent, subtend a right angle at the point  $(a, b)$ .

**3.** Two parabolas have a common focus; prove that the perpendicular from it upon the common tangent passes through the intersection of the directrices.

4. Shew that the conic  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{2xy}{ab} \cos \alpha + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \sin^2 \alpha$  is inscribed in the rectangle, the equations to whose sides are  $x^2 = a^2$  and  $y^2 = b^2$ , and that the quadrilateral formed by joining the points of contact is of constant perimeter  $4\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ , whatever be the value of  $\alpha$ .

5. A variable tangent to a conic meets two fixed tangents in two points,  $P$  and  $Q$ ; prove that the locus of the middle point of  $PQ$  is a conic which becomes a straight line when the given conic is a parabola.

6. Prove that the chord of contact of tangents, drawn from an external point to the conic  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 1$ , subtends a right angle at the centre if the point lie on the conic

$$x^2(a^2 + h^2) + 2h(a + b)xy + y^2(h^2 + b^2) = a + b.$$

7. Given the focus and directrix of a conic, prove that the polar of a given point with respect to it passes through another fixed point.

8. Prove that the locus of the centres of conics which touch the axes at distances  $a$  and  $b$  from the origin is the straight line  $ay = bx$ .

9. Prove that the locus of the poles of tangents to the conic  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 1$  with respect to the conic  $a'x^2 + 2h'xy + b'y^2 = 1$  is the conic

$$a(h'x + b'y)^2 - 2h(a'x + h'y)(h'x + b'y) + b(a'x + h'y)^2 = ab - h^2.$$

10. Find the equations to the straight lines which are conjugate to the coordinate axes with respect to the conic  $Ax^2 + 2Hxy + By^2 = 1$ .

Find the condition that they may coincide, and interpret the result.

11. Find the equation to the common conjugate diameters of the conics  
 (1)  $x^2 + 4xy + 6y^2 = 1$  and  $2x^2 + 6xy + 9y^2 = 1$ ,  
 and (2)  $2x^2 - 5xy + 3y^2 = 1$  and  $2x^2 + 3xy - 9y^2 = 1$ .

12. Prove that the points of intersection of the conics

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 1 \text{ and } a'x^2 + 2h'xy + b'y^2 = 1$$

are at the ends of conjugate diameters of the first conic, if

$$ab' + a'b - 2hh' = 2(ab - h^2).$$

13. Prove that the equation to the equi-conjugate diameters of the conic  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 1$  is  $\frac{ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2}{ab - h^2} = \frac{2(x^2 + y^2)}{a + b}$ .

## ANSWERS

1. (1) 3; (2) 3; (3) 4; (4) 2; (5) 4; (6) 3; (7) 3.  
 10.  $Ax + Hy = 0$  and  $Hx + By = 0$ ;  $H^2 = AB$ , so that the conic is a pair of parallel straight lines.  
 11.  $x(x + 3y) = 0$ ;  $(2x - 3y)^2 = 0$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. (1) The equation of any conic, whose centre is the origin, is  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 1$ .

Therefore three other conditions are required to determine  $a, h, b$ .

(2) The equation of any conic, one of whose foci is the origin, is  $x^2 + y^2 = e^2 (x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p)^2$ .

Therefore three other conditions are required to determine  $e, \alpha, p$ .

(3) The equation of any conic, one of whose foci is  $(h, k)$ , is

$$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = e^2 (x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p)^2.$$

Four other conditions are required to determine  $h, k, \alpha, p$ .

(4) The equation of any conic whose axes are the axes of coordinates is  $ax^2 + by^2 = 1$ .

Therefore two other conditions are required to determine  $a, b$ .

(5) By Art. 374, a conic can be determined to touch five given lines; therefore four other conditions are required.

(6) A tangent and its point of contact are equivalent to *two* consecutive points of the curve; therefore three other conditions are required.

(7) By Art. 326 (1), if  $Ax + By + C = 0$  is given, three other conditions are required to determine  $A_1x + B_1y + C_1 = 0$  and  $\lambda^2$ .

**Aliter.** To give the position of one asymptote is the same as to give *two* points on the curve at infinity. Hence three other conditions are necessary, since a conic can be drawn through any five points.

2. The lines joining the origin to the common points of the parabola and the line are

$$(ax - by)^2 - 2(a^2 + b^2)(ax + by)(lx + my) + (a^2 + b^2)^2(lx + my)^2 = 0. \quad [\text{Art. 122.}]$$

If  $lx + my = 1$  is a tangent, these must be coincident ;

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \{a - l(a^2 + b^2)\}^2 \{b - m(a^2 + b^2)\}^2 \\ &= [\{a - l(a^2 + b^2)\} \{b - m(a^2 + b^2)\} - 2ab]^2. \\ \therefore \{a - l(a^2 + b^2)\} \{b - m(a^2 + b^2)\} &= ab. \\ \therefore lm(a^2 + b^2) &= am + lb. \end{aligned}$$

This is the same as the condition that  $PQ$  will subtend a right angle at  $(a, b)$ , viz.

$$\frac{b}{a - \frac{1}{l}} \cdot \frac{b - \frac{1}{m}}{a} + 1 = 0.$$

3. Taking the common focus for origin, let

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + y^2 &= (x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p_1)^2, \\ x^2 + y^2 &= (x \cos \beta + y \sin \beta - p_2)^2, \end{aligned}$$

be the equations of the parabolas.

$lx + my + 1 = 0$  is a common tangent if

$$(l^2 + m^2) p_1 + 2m \sin \alpha + 2l \cos \alpha = 0, \dots (i)$$

$$(l^2 + m^2) p_2 + 2m \sin \beta + 2l \cos \beta = 0. \dots (ii) \quad [\text{Art. 374.}]$$

Multiply (ii) by  $p_1$ , (i) by  $p_2$ , and subtract. Therefore

$$p_2(m \sin \alpha + l \cos \alpha) - p_1(m \sin \beta + l \cos \beta) = 0. \dots (iii)$$

The equation of the line through the origin, perpendicular to  $lx + my + 1 = 0$ ,

is 
$$\frac{x}{l} = \frac{y}{m}.$$

Hence from (iii) it is

$$p_2(x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p_1) - p_1(x \cos \beta + y \sin \beta - p_2) = 0$$

which is the equation of a line going through the intersection of the directrices.

4. The four lines  $x = \pm a$ ,  $y = \pm b$  each cut the curve in coincident points, whose coordinates are

$$(a, -b \cos \alpha), (-a \cos \alpha, b), (-a, b \cos \alpha), (a \cos \alpha, -b).$$



The perimeter

$$= 2 \{a^2(1 + \cos \alpha)^2 + b^2(1 + \cos \alpha)^2\}^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ + 2 \{a^2(1 - \cos \alpha)^2 + b^2(1 - \cos \alpha)^2\}^{\frac{1}{2}} = 4\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}.$$

5. Taking the general equation of Art. 372, if  $x=0$ ,  $y=0$  are tangents, we have  $g^2=ac$ ,  $f^2=bc$ , and the condition of Art. 374 becomes, if  $n=1$ ,

$(ab - h^2) + 2m(gh - af) + 2l(hf - bg) + 2lm(fg - ch) = 0$ ;  
but if  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of the middle point of  $PQ$ ,

$$2l = \frac{1}{x}, \quad 2m = \frac{1}{y}.$$

Hence the equation of the required locus is the conic  $(ab - h^2)xy + (gh - af)x + (hf - bg)y + \frac{1}{2}(fg - ch) = 0$ , which becomes a straight line if  $ab - h^2 = 0$ .

6. The lines joining the origin to the common points of  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 1$  and  $x(ax' + hy') + y(hx' + by') = 1$  are  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = \{x(ax' + hy') + y(hx' + by')\}^2$ .

[Art. 122.]

They are at right angles if

$$a + b = x'^2(a^2 + h^2) + 2h(a + b)x'y' + y'^2(h^2 + b^2).$$

Suppressing the accents, we have the required locus.

7. Take the focus for origin and let  $x=a$  be the equation of the corresponding directrix. Then the equation of the conic will be  $x^2 + y^2 = e^2(x - a)^2$ .

The polar of the point  $(x', y')$  is

$$xx' + yy' - e^2\{xx' - a(x + x') + a^2\} = 0, \quad [\text{Art. 375}]$$

which passes through the intersection of the lines

$$xx' + yy' = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad xx' - a(x + x') + a^2 = 0.$$

8. The equation of the conic is

$$b^2x^2 + 2\lambda^2xy + a^2y^2 - 2b^2ax - 2a^2by + a^2b^2 = 0.$$

For when  $y=0$ , we have  $(x-a)^2=0$ , and when  $x=0$ , we have  $(y-b)^2=0$ .

The centre is given by

$$b^2x + \lambda^2y = b^2a, \quad \lambda^2x + a^2y = a^2b. \quad [\text{Art. 352.}]$$

Eliminating  $\lambda$ ,  $b^2x^2 - a^2y^2 = ab(bx - ay)$ .

Therefore  $ay = bx$ , since  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$  is clearly not part of the locus, or rather it is the locus for the particular case when  $\lambda^2 = ab$ , *i.e.* when the conic is two coincident straight lines coinciding with  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$ .

9. The polar of  $(x', y')$  with regard to the second conic, *viz.*  $x(a'x' + h'y') + y(h'x' + b'y') = 1$ , will touch the first conic if

$$a(h'x' + b'y')^2 - 2h(h'x' + b'y')(a'x' + h'y') + b(a'x' + h'y')^2 = ab - h^2. \quad [\text{Art. 374.}]$$

Suppressing the accents, we have the required equation of the locus.

10. (1) Let  $y - mx = 0$  be conjugate to  $y = 0$ . Then since  $y^2 - mxy = 0$ , are conjugate diameters of

$$Ax^2 + 2Hxy + By^2 = 1, \quad \therefore A + mH = 0. \quad [\text{Art. 377.}]$$

Therefore  $Hy + Ax = 0$  is conjugate to  $y = 0$ .

Similarly  $Hx + By = 0$  is conjugate to  $x = 0$ .

(2) If they coincide,  $\frac{A}{H} = \frac{H}{B}$ , or  $H^2 = AB$ , so that the conic becomes a pair of parallel straight lines.

11. By Equation (4) of Art. 378, the required equations are

$$(1) \quad x(x + 3y) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad (2) \quad (2x - 3y)^2 = 0.$$

12. The lines joining the origin to the common points of the conics are clearly

$$(a - a')x^2 + 2(h - h')xy + (b - b')y^2 = 0.$$

These are conjugate diameters of the first conic if

$$a(b - b') - 2h(h - h') + (a - a')b = 0,$$

*i.e.* if  $ab' + a'b - 2hh' = 2(ab - h^2)$ . [Art. 377.]

13. The straight lines joining the intersections of the given conic with the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$  are clearly

$$r^2(ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2) = x^2 + y^2,$$

i.e.  $x^2(ar^2 - 1) + 2hr^2xy + (br^2 - 1)y^2 = 0$ . [Art. 122.]

These are conjugate diameters of the given conic if

$$a(br^2 - 1) - 2hr^2 \cdot h + b(ar^2 - 1) = 0,$$

i.e. if 
$$r^2 = \frac{a + b}{2(ab - h^2)}.$$

Therefore the equation to the joining lines is

$$\frac{ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2}{ab - h^2} = \frac{2(x^2 + y^2)}{a + b}.$$

These lines, since they are conjugate diameters and also are of equal length  $r$ , are the equi-conjugates.

**379.** *Two conics, in general, intersect in four points, real or imaginary.*

For the general equation to two conics can be written in the form

$$ax^2 + 2x(hy + g) + by^2 + 2fy + c = 0,$$

and  $a'x^2 + 2x(h'y + g') + b'y^2 + 2f'y + c' = 0.$

Eliminating  $x$  from these equations, we find that the result is an equation of the fourth degree in  $y$ , giving therefore four values, real or imaginary, for  $y$ . Also, by eliminating  $x^2$  from these two equations, we see that there is only one value of  $x$  for each value of  $y$ . There are therefore only four points of intersection.

**380.** *Equation to any conic passing through the intersection of two given conics.*

Let  $S \equiv ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots\dots(1)$ ,

and  $S' \equiv a'x^2 + 2h'xy + b'y^2 + 2g'x + 2f'y + c' = 0 \dots(2)$

be the equations to the two given conics.

Then  $S - \lambda S' = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3)$

is the equation to any conic passing through the intersections of (1) and (2).

For, since  $S$  and  $S'$  are both of the second degree in  $x$  and  $y$ , the equation (3) is of the second degree, and hence represents a conic section.

Also, since (3) is satisfied when both  $S$  and  $S'$  are zero, it is satisfied by the points (real or imaginary) which are common to (1) and (2).

Hence (3) is a conic which passes through the intersections of (1) and (2).

**381.** *To find the equations to the straight lines passing through the intersections of two conics given by the general equations.*

As in the last article, the equation

$$(a - \lambda a') x^2 + 2(h - \lambda h') xy + (b - \lambda b') x^2 + 2(g - \lambda g') x + 2(f - \lambda f') y + (c - \lambda c') = 0 \dots\dots(1),$$

represents some conic through the intersections of the given conics.

Now, by Art. 116, (1) represents straight lines if

$$(a - \lambda a')(b - \lambda b')(c - \lambda c') + 2(f - \lambda f')(g - \lambda g')(h - \lambda h') - (a - \lambda a')(f - \lambda f')^2 - (b - \lambda b')(g - \lambda g')^2 - (c - \lambda c')(h - \lambda h')^2 = 0 \dots\dots(2).$$

Now (2) is a cubic equation. The three values of  $\lambda$  found from it will, when substituted successively in (1), give the three pairs of straight lines which can be drawn through the (real or imaginary) intersections of the two conics.

Also, since a cubic equation always has one real root, one value of  $\lambda$  is real, and it could be shown that there can always be drawn one pair of real straight lines through the intersections of two conics.

**382.** *All conics which pass through the intersections of two rectangular hyperbolas are themselves rectangular hyperbolas.*

In this case, if  $S=0$  and  $S'=0$  be the two rectangular hyperbolas, we have

$$a + b = 0, \text{ and } a' + b' = 0. \quad (\text{Art. 358.})$$

Hence, in the conic  $S - \lambda S' = 0$ , the sum of the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$

$$= (a - \lambda a') + (b - \lambda b') = (a + b) - \lambda (a' + b') = 0.$$

Hence, the conic  $S - \lambda S' = 0$ , *i.e.* any conic through the intersections of the two rectangular hyperbolas, is itself a rectangular hyperbola.

**Cor.** If two rectangular hyperbolas intersect in four points  $A, B, C$ , and  $D$ , the two straight lines  $AD$  and  $BC$ , which are a conic through the intersection of the two hyperbolas, must be a rectangular hyperbola. Hence  $AD$  and  $BC$  must be at right angles. Similarly,  $BD$  and  $CA$ , and  $CD$  and  $AB$ , must be at right angles. Hence  $D$  is the orthocentre of the triangle  $ABC$ .

Therefore, if two rectangular hyperbolas intersect in four points, each point is the orthocentre of the triangle formed by the other three.

**383.** *If  $L=0, M=0, N=0$ , and  $R=0$  be the equations to the four sides of a quadrilateral taken in order, the equation to any conic passing through its angular points is*

$$LN = \lambda \cdot MR \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

For  $L=0$  passes through one pair of its angular points and  $N=0$  passes through the other pair. Hence  $LN=0$  is the equation to a conic (*viz.* a pair of straight lines) passing through the four angular points.

Similarly  $MR=0$  is the equation to another conic passing through the four points.

Hence  $LN = \lambda . MR$  is the equation to any conic through the four points.

**Geometrical meaning.** Since  $L$  is proportional to the perpendicular from any point  $(x, y)$  upon the straight line  $L=0$ , the relation (1) states that the product of the perpendiculars from any point of the curve upon the straight lines  $L=0$  and  $N=0$  is proportional to the product of the perpendiculars from the same point upon  $M=0$  and  $R=0$ .

Hence *If a conic circumscribe a quadrilateral, the ratio of the product of the perpendiculars from any point  $P$  of the conic upon two opposite sides of the quadrilateral to the product of the perpendiculars from  $P$  upon the other two sides is the same for all positions of  $P$ .*

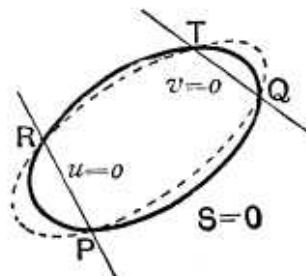
**384.** *Equations to the conic sections passing through the intersections of a conic and two given straight lines.*

Let  $S=0$  be the equation to the given conic.

Let  $u=0$  and  $v=0$  be the equations to the two given straight lines where

$$u \equiv ax + by + c,$$

and 
$$v \equiv a'x + b'y + c'.$$



Let the straight line  $u=0$  meet the conic  $S=0$  in the points  $P$  and  $R$ , and let  $v=0$  meet it in the points  $Q$  and  $T$ .

The equation to any conic which passes through the points  $P, Q, R,$  and  $T$  will be of the form

$$S = \lambda . u . v \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

For (1) is satisfied by the coordinates of any point which lies both on  $S=0$  and on  $u=0$ ; for its coordinates on being substituted in (1) make both its members zero.

But the points  $P$  and  $R$  are the only points which lie both on  $S=0$  and on  $u=0$ .

The equation (1) therefore denotes a conic passing through  $P$  and  $R$ .

Similarly it goes through the intersections of  $S=0$  and  $v=0$ , *i.e.* through the points  $Q$  and  $T$ .

Thus (1) represents some conic going through the four points  $P$ ,  $Q$ ,  $R$ , and  $T$ .

Also (1) represents any conic going through these four points. For the quantity  $\lambda$  may be so chosen that it shall go through any fifth point, or to make it satisfy any fifth condition; also five conditions completely determine a conic section.

**Ex.** Find the equation to the conic which passes through the point  $(1, 1)$  and also through the intersections of the conic

$$x^2 + 2xy + 5y^2 - 7x - 8y + 6 = 0$$

with the straight lines  $2x - y - 5 = 0$  and  $3x + y - 11 = 0$ . Find also the parabolas passing through the same points.

The equation to the required conic must by the last article be of the form

$$x^2 + 2xy + 5y^2 - 7x - 8y + 6 = \lambda (2x - y - 5) (3x + y - 11) \dots (1).$$

This passes through the point  $(1, 1)$  if

$$1 + 2 + 5 - 7 - 8 + 6 = \lambda (2 - 1 - 5) (3 + 1 - 11), \text{ i.e. if } \lambda = -\frac{1}{8}.$$

The required equation then becomes

$$28(x^2 + 2xy + 5y^2 - 7x - 8y + 6) + (2x - y - 5)(3x + y - 11) = 0,$$

$$\text{i.e. } 34x^2 + 55xy + 139y^2 - 233x - 218y + 223 = 0.$$

The equation to the required parabola will also be of the form (1),  
i.e.

$$x^2(1 - 6\lambda) + xy(2 + \lambda) + y^2(5 + \lambda) - x(7 - 37\lambda) - y(8 + 6\lambda) + 6 - 55\lambda = 0.$$

This is a parabola (Art. 357) if  $(2 + \lambda)^2 = 4(1 - 6\lambda)(5 + \lambda)$ ,

$$\text{i.e. if } \lambda = \frac{1}{6}[-12 \pm 4\sqrt{10}].$$

Substituting these values in (1), we have the required equations.

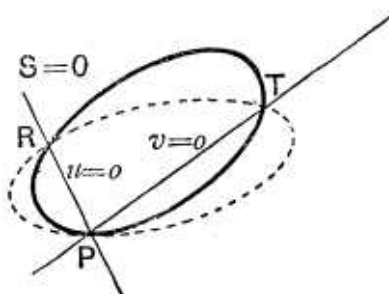
### 385. Particular cases of the equation

$$S = \lambda uv.$$

**I.** Let  $u = 0$  and  $v = 0$  intersect on the curve, i.e. in the figure of Art. 384 let the points  $P$  and  $Q$  coincide.

The conic  $S = \lambda uv$  then goes through two coincident points at  $P$  and therefore touches the original conic at  $P$  as in the figure.

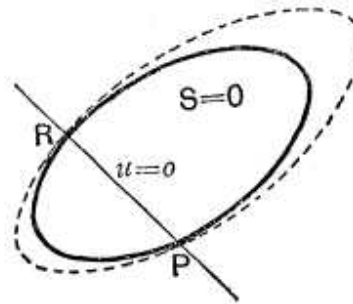
**II.** Let  $u = 0$  and  $v = 0$  coincide, so that  $v = u$ .



In this case the point  $T$  also moves up to coincidence with  $R$  and the second conic touches the original conic at both the points  $P$  and  $R$ .

The equation to the second conic now becomes  $S = \lambda u^2$ .

When a conic touches a second conic at each of two points, the two conics are said to have **double contact** with one another.

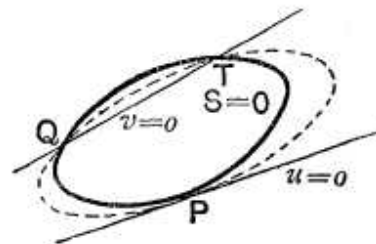


The two conics  $S = \lambda u^2$  and  $S = 0$  therefore have double contact with one another, the straight line  $u = 0$  passing through the two points of contact.

As a particular case we see that if  $u = 0$ ,  $v = 0$ , and  $w = 0$  be the equations to three straight lines then the equation  $vw = \lambda u^2$  represents a conic touching the conic  $vw = 0$  where  $u = 0$  meets it, *i.e.* it is a conic to which  $v = 0$  and  $w = 0$  are tangents and  $u = 0$  is the chord of contact.

**III.** Let  $u = 0$  be a tangent to the original conic.

In this case the two points  $P$  and  $R$  coincide, and the conic  $S = \lambda uv$  touches  $S = 0$  where  $u = 0$  touches it, and  $v = 0$  is the equation to the straight line joining the other points of intersection of the two conics.



If, in addition,  $v = 0$  goes through the point of contact of  $u = 0$ , we have the equation to a conic which goes through three coincident points at  $P$ , the point of contact of  $u = 0$ ; also the straight line joining  $P$  to the other point of intersection of the two conics is  $v = 0$ .

**IV.** Finally, let  $v = 0$  and  $u = 0$  coincide and be tangents at  $P$ . The equation  $S = \lambda u^2$  now represents a conic section passing through four coincident points at the point where  $u = 0$  touches  $S = 0$ .



**386. Line at infinity.** We have shewn, in Art. 60, that the straight line, whose equation is

$$0 \cdot x + 0 \cdot y + C = 0,$$

is altogether at an infinite distance. This straight line is called The Line at Infinity. Its equation may for brevity be written in the form  $C = 0$ .

We can shew that parallel lines meet on the line at infinity.

For the equations to any two parallel straight lines are

$$Ax + By + C = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

and

$$Ax + By + C' = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

Now (2) may be written in the form

$$Ax + By + C + \frac{C' - C}{C} (0 \cdot x + 0 \cdot y + C) = 0,$$

and hence, by Art. 97, we see that it passes through the intersection of (1) and the straight line

$$0 \cdot x + 0 \cdot y + C = 0.$$

Hence (1), (2), and the line at infinity meet in a point.

**387. Geometrical meaning of the equation**

$$S = \lambda u \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

where  $\lambda$  is a constant, and  $u = 0$  is the equation of a straight line.

The equation (1) can be written in the form

$$S = \lambda u \times (0 \cdot x + 0 \cdot y + 1),$$

and hence, by Art. 384, represents a conic passing through the intersection of the conic  $S = 0$  with the straight lines

$$u = 0 \text{ and } 0 \cdot x + 0 \cdot y + 1 = 0.$$

Hence (1) passes through the intersection of  $S = 0$  with the line at infinity.

Since  $S = 0$  and  $S = \lambda u$  have the same intersections with

the line at infinity, it follows that these two conics have their asymptotes in the same direction.

**Particular Case.** Let

$$S \equiv x^2 + y^2 - a^2,$$

so that  $S = 0$  represents a circle.

Any other circle is

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2gx - 2fy + c = 0,$$

*i.e.* 
$$x^2 + y^2 - a^2 = 2gx + 2fy - a^2 - c,$$

so that its equation is of the form  $S = \lambda u$ .

It therefore follows that any two circles must be looked upon as intersecting the line at infinity in the same two (imaginary) points. These imaginary points are called the Circular Points at Infinity.

**388.** *Geometrical meaning of the equation  $S = \lambda$ , where  $\lambda$  is a constant.*

This equation can be written in the form

$$S = \lambda (0 \cdot x + 0 \cdot y + 1)^2,$$

and therefore, by Art. 385, has double contact with  $S = 0$  where the straight line  $0 \cdot x + 0 \cdot y + 1 = 0$  meets it, *i.e.* the tangents to the two conics at the points where they meet the line at infinity are the same.

The conics  $S = 0$  and  $S = \lambda$  therefore have the same (real or imaginary) asymptotes.

**Particular Case.** Let  $S = 0$  denote a circle. Then  $S = \lambda$  (being an equation which differs from  $S = 0$  only in its constant term) represents a concentric circle.

Two concentric circles must therefore be looked upon as touching one another at the imaginary points where they meet the Line at Infinity.

Two concentric circles thus have double contact at the Circular Points at Infinity.

### EXAMPLES XLIII

1. What is the geometrical meaning of the equations  $S=\lambda.T$ , and  $S=u^2+ku$ , where  $S=0$  is the equation of a conic,  $T=0$  is the equation of a tangent to it, and  $u=0$  is the equation of any straight line?

2. If the major axes of two conics be parallel, prove that the four points in which they meet are concyclic.

3. Prove that in general two parabolas can be drawn to pass through the intersections of the conics

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$$

and 
$$a'x^2 + 2h'xy + b'y^2 + 2g'x + 2f'y + c' = 0,$$

and that their axes are at right angles if  $h(a' - b') = h'(a - b)$ .

4. Through the extremities of two focal chords of an ellipse a conic is described; if this conic pass through the centre of the ellipse, prove that it will cut the major axis in another fixed point.

5. Through the extremities of a normal chord of an ellipse a circle is drawn such that its other common chord passes through the centre of the ellipse. Prove that the locus of the intersection of these common chords is an ellipse similar to the given ellipse. If the eccentricity of the given ellipse be  $\sqrt{2}(\sqrt{2}-1)$ , prove that the two ellipses are equal.

6. If two rectangular hyperbolas intersect in four points  $A, B, C$ , and  $D$ , prove that the circles described on  $AB$  and  $CD$  as diameters cut one another orthogonally.

7. A circle is drawn through the centre of the rectangular hyperbola  $xy=c^2$  to touch the curve and meet it again in two points; prove that the locus of the feet of the perpendicular let fall from the centre upon the common chord is the hyperbola  $4xy=c^2$ .

8. If a circle touch an ellipse and pass through its centre, prove that the rectangle contained by the perpendiculars from the centre of the ellipse upon the common tangent and the common chord is constant for all points of contact.

9. From a point  $T$  whose coordinates are  $(x', y')$  a pair of tangents  $TP$  and  $TQ$  are drawn to the parabola  $y^2=4ax$ ; prove that the line joining the other pair of points in which the circumcircle of the triangle  $TPQ$  meets the parabola is the polar of the point  $(2a-x', y')$ , and hence that, if the circle touch the parabola, the line  $PQ$  touches an equal parabola.

10. Prove that the equation to the circle, having double contact with the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  at the ends of a latus rectum, is

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2ae^3 x = a^2(1 - e^2 - e^4).$$

11. Two circles have double contact with a conic, their chords of contact being parallel. Prove that the radical axis of the two circles is midway between the two chords of contact.

12. If a circle and an ellipse have double contact with one another, prove that the length of the tangent drawn from any point of the ellipse to the circle varies as the distance of that point from the chord of contact.

13. Two conics,  $A$  and  $B$ , have double contact with a third conic  $C$ . Prove that two of the common chords of  $A$  and  $B$ , and their chords of contact with  $C$ , meet in a point.

14. Prove that the general equation to the ellipse, having double contact with the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  and touching the axis of  $x$  at the origin, is

$$c^2x^2 + (a^2 + c^2)y^2 - 2a^2cy = 0.$$

15. A rectangular hyperbola has double contact with a fixed central conic. If the chord of contact always passes through a fixed point, prove that the locus of the centre of the hyperbola is a circle passing through the centre of the fixed conic.

16. A rectangular hyperbola has double contact with a parabola; prove that the centre of the hyperbola and the pole of the chord of contact are equidistant from the directrix of the parabola.

## ANSWERS

1. A conic touching  $S=0$  where  $T=0$  touches it and having its asymptotes parallel to those of  $S=0$ .

A conic such that the two parallel straight lines  $u=0$  and  $u+k=0$  pass through its intersections with  $S=0$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. The conic (1) passes through the intersections of  $S=0$  and  $T=0$ , and these intersections are coincident since  $T=0$  is a tangent. Hence it touches  $S=0$  at the point where  $T=0$  touches it, and since the terms of the second degree are the same, the two conics have parallel asymptotes.

The conic (2) passes through the intersection of the conic  $S=0$  with the parallel straight lines  $u=0$  and

$$u+k=0.$$

2. Let  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ , and  $\frac{(x-c)^2}{\alpha^2} + \frac{(y-d)^2}{\beta^2} = 1$ ,

be the equations of the two conics.

Any conic through their intersections is

$$\frac{(x-c)^2}{\alpha^2} + \frac{(y-d)^2}{\beta^2} - 1 + \lambda \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1 \right) = 0.$$

Since there is no term in  $xy$ , this conic will be a circle if the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  are equal, that is if

$$\frac{1}{\alpha^2} + \frac{\lambda}{\alpha^2} = \frac{1}{\beta^2} + \frac{\lambda}{b^2},$$

and this gives a real value for  $\lambda$ , so that a circle can be drawn through their intersections.

3. The conic  $S - \lambda S' = 0$  of Art. 380 is a parabola if

$$(a - \lambda a')(b - \lambda b') = (h - \lambda h')^2,$$

that is, if  $\lambda^2(a'b' - h'^2) + \lambda(2hh' - ab' - a'b) + ab - h^2 = 0$ .

Since this is a quadratic, there will be two values of  $\lambda$  that will make the above conic a parabola.

[If two parabolas have their axes at right angles, their equations can clearly be expressed in the form

$$x^2 = Ax + By + C \text{ and } y^2 = A'x + B'y + C',$$

so that their four points of intersection lie on the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 = (A + A')x + (B + B')y + (C + C').]$$

The conic  $S - \lambda S' = 0$  must therefore, for some value of  $\lambda$ , be a circle. The conditions for this are

$$a - \lambda a' = b - \lambda b', \text{ and } h - \lambda h' = 0.$$

On eliminating  $\lambda$ , we have  $h(a' - b') = h'(a - b)$ .

4. Let  $y = m_1(x - ae)$  and  $y = m_2(x - ae)$

be the equations of any two focal chords of the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

Any conic going through the intersections of these chords and the ellipse is

$$\{y - m_1(x - ae)\} \{y - m_2(x - ae)\} - \lambda \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1 \right) = 0.$$

If it passes through  $(0, 0)$ , then  $m_1 m_2 a^2 e^2 + \lambda = 0$ .

Putting  $y = 0$ , the points in which the curve cuts the major axis are given by

$$m_1 m_2 (x - ae)^2 - \lambda \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2} - 1 \right) = 0,$$

*i.e.* by  $(x - ae)^2 + e^2(x^2 - a^2) = 0$ , *i.e.* by  $x^2 - 2aex + e^2x^2 = 0$ .

Therefore the other fixed point is  $\left( \frac{2ae}{1 + e^2}, 0 \right)$ .

5. Let  $y = mx$  be the other common chord.

A conic through their intersections is

$$(ax \sec \phi - by \operatorname{cosec} \phi - a^2 + b^2)(y - mx) - \lambda \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1 \right) = 0,$$

which will be a circle if  $mb \operatorname{cosec} \phi + a \sec \phi = 0$ .

Hence we have to eliminate  $\phi$  between

$$ax \sin \phi - by \cos \phi = (a^2 - b^2) \sin \phi \cos \phi,$$

and 
$$\frac{\cos \phi}{ax} = -\frac{\sin \phi}{by} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2x^2 + b^2y^2}}.$$

$$\therefore \sqrt{a^2x^2 + b^2y^2} (-2abxy) = (a^2 - b^2) (-axy).$$

$$\therefore a^2x^2 + b^2y^2 = \frac{(a^2 - b^2)^2}{4},$$

which is the equation of a similar ellipse. The ellipses are

equal if  $\frac{(a^2 - b^2)^2}{4b^2} = a^2$ ,

*i.e.* if  $e^4 = 4(1 - e^2)$ , *i.e.* if  $e^2 = 2(\sqrt{2} - 1)$ .

6. By Art. 382, Cor.,  $D$  is the orthocentre of the triangle  $ABC$ . Let  $AD, BD, CD$  meet the opposite sides, to which they are perpendicular, in  $X, Y, Z$ . Then the two circles spoken of go through  $X$  and  $Y$ . The angle the tangent to the first at  $Y$  makes with  $YA$  = the alternate

angle  $ABY$ , and the angle the tangent to the second at  $Y$  makes with  $YB =$  the alternate angle  $YDC$ .

Hence the angle between the two tangents at  $Y$   
 $= \angle ABY + 90^\circ - \angle YDC =$  a right angle. Hence, etc.

7. Let  $x \cos a + y \sin a - p = 0$  be the equation of the common chord; and  $(x', y')$  the point where the circle touches the hyperbola, so that the tangent to the latter at it is  $\frac{x}{x'} + \frac{y}{y'} = 2$ .

The conic

$$\left(\frac{x}{x'} + \frac{y}{y'} - 2\right)(x \cos a + y \sin a - p) + \lambda(xy - c^2) = 0$$

will pass through the centre if  $2p - \lambda c^2 = 0$ , and is a circle if

$$\frac{\cos a}{y'} + \frac{\sin a}{x'} + \frac{2p}{c^2} = 0, \text{ and } \frac{\cos a}{x'} = \frac{\sin a}{y'} = \frac{\sqrt{\cos a \sin a}}{c}.$$

Substituting for  $x', y'$  and putting  $x = p \cos a, y = p \sin a$  we obtain  $4xy = c^2$  as the required locus.

8. Let  $x \cos a + y \sin a = p$  be the equation of the common chord.

The conic

$$\left(\frac{x}{a} \cos \phi + \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi - 1\right)(x \cos a + y \sin a - p) + p\left(\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1\right) = 0,$$

passes through the centre and is a circle if

$$\frac{\cos a \cos \phi}{a} + \frac{p}{a^2} = \frac{\sin a \sin \phi}{b} + \frac{p}{b^2},$$

and 
$$\frac{\cos a \sin \phi}{b} + \frac{\sin a \cos \phi}{a} = 0,$$

whence eliminating  $a, b$ ,  $a^2 \sin^2 \phi + b^2 \cos^2 \phi = \frac{p^2(a^2 - b^2)^2}{a^2 b^2}$ .

$$\text{The required rectangle} = \frac{pab}{\sqrt{a^2 \sin^2 \phi + b^2 \cos^2 \phi}} = \frac{a^2 b^2}{a^2 - b^2}.$$

9. Let  $cx + dy = 1$  be the equation of the other common chord.

The conic

$$\{yy' - 2a(x + x')\} \{cx + dy - 1\} - \lambda(y^2 - 4ax) = 0$$

passes through  $(x', y')$  if  $\lambda = cx' + dy' - 1$ , and is a circle if

$$cy' - 2ad = 0,$$

and  $-2ac = dy' - \lambda = dy' - (cx' + dy' - 1) = 1 - cx'$ .

$$\therefore c = \frac{1}{x' - 2a} \quad \text{and} \quad d = \frac{y'}{2a(x' - 2a)}.$$

The equation of the common chord becomes

$$x + \frac{yy'}{2a} = x' - 2a, \quad \text{i.e.} \quad yy' + 2a(x + 2a - x') = 0,$$

which is the polar of  $(2a - x', -y')$ .

If the circle touch the parabola, this common chord must touch the parabola and hence its pole must lie on the curve;  $\therefore y'^2 = 4a(2a - x')$ .

Substitute for  $x'$  in the equation of  $PQ$  and it becomes

$$y = \frac{2a}{y'}(x + 2a) - \frac{a}{2a/y'},$$

which shows that it always touches the parabola

$$y^2 = -4a(x + 2a).$$

10. The conic  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1 - \lambda(x - ae)^2 = 0$

is a circle if  $\lambda = \frac{1}{a^2} - \frac{1}{b^2}$ .

Substitute for  $\lambda$ , and it becomes

$$b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 - a^2b^2 = -a^2e^2(x^2 - 2aex + a^2e^2),$$

i.e.  $x^2 + y^2 - 2ae^2x = a^2(1 - e^2 - e^4)$ .

11. Let  $x \cos a + y \sin a - p = 0$  be one of the chords of contact. The equation to the circle is



$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1 + \lambda (x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p)^2 = 0.$$

Since this is a circle, the coefficient of  $xy$  is zero.

$$\therefore \lambda \cos \alpha \sin \alpha = 0.$$

Therefore  $\alpha = 0$  or  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ , showing that the chord of contact must be either parallel to the major or the minor axis.

Taking the first case, the circle is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1 + \lambda (x - c)^2 = 0,$$

(where  $x = c$  is the common chord) and  $\frac{1}{a^2} + \lambda = \frac{1}{b^2}$ . Hence the circle is

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2cx \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2} + b^2 + \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2} c^2 = 0;$$

so the other is  $x^2 + y^2 - 2c'x \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2} + b^2 + \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2} c'^2 = 0$ .

By subtraction, the equation to the radical axis is

$$x = \frac{c + c'}{2}.$$

12. As in the last example, the circle

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1 + \left(\frac{1}{b^2} - \frac{1}{a^2}\right) (x - c)^2 = 0$$

has double contact with the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ , and the square of the tangent from  $(a \cos \phi, b \sin \phi)$  to the circle is

$$\left(\frac{1}{b^2} - \frac{1}{a^2}\right) (a \cos \phi - c)^2,$$

which

$$\propto (a \cos \phi - c)^2.$$

13. Let  $ax^2 + by^2 = 1$  be the equation of  $C$ , and let

$$p_1x + q_1y + r_1 = 0, \quad p_2x + q_2y + r_2 = 0$$

be the equations of the chords of contact.

The equations of  $A$  and  $B$  are

$$ax^2 + by^2 - 1 + \lambda_1^2 (p_1x + q_1y + r_1)^2 = 0,$$

and  $ax^2 + by^2 - 1 + \lambda_2^2 (p_2x + q_2y + r_2)^2 = 0.$

By subtraction, two of the common chords are

$$\lambda_1 (p_1x + q_1y + r_1) = \pm \lambda_2 (p_2x + q_2y + r_2).$$

14. Assuming that the chord of contact is parallel to the axis of  $x$ , let its equation be  $y = c$ .

The required equation of the conic is

$$x^2 + y^2 - a^2 + \lambda (y - c)^2 = 0.$$

Since it touches the axis of  $x$  at the origin,  $\therefore \lambda c^2 = a^2$ .

Hence the equation becomes

$$c^2 (x^2 + y^2 - a^2) + a^2 (y^2 - 2cy + c^2) = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $c^2x^2 + y^2 (a^2 + c^2) - 2a^2cy = 0.$

15. Let  $ax^2 + by^2 - 1 = 0$  be the equation of the fixed central conic.

The conic  $ax^2 + by^2 - 1 + \lambda (px + qy - 1)^2 = 0$ , is a rectangular hyperbola if

$$a + b + \lambda (p^2 + q^2) = 0. \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

The centre is given by

$$-ax = \lambda p (px + qy - 1), \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

and  $-by = \lambda q (px + qy - 1) \dots\dots\dots(iii)$

If  $(h, k)$  be the fixed point,  $ph + qk = 1. \dots\dots\dots(iv)$

From (ii) and (iii)

$$-\lambda (px + qy - 1) = \frac{ax}{p} = \frac{by}{q} = axh + byk, \text{ from (iv).}$$

Substitute for  $p$  and  $q$  in (i) and (ii) ;

$$\therefore (axh + byk)^2 (a + b) + \lambda (a^2x^2 + b^2y^2) = 0,$$

and  $(axh + byk)^2 + \lambda (ax^2 + by^2 - axh - byk) = 0.$

Eliminating  $\lambda$ ,

$$\therefore (a + b) \{ax(x - h) + by(y - k)\} = a^2x^2 + b^2y^2,$$

which is a circle passing through  $(0, 0)$ .

**16.** The conic  $(lx + my - 1)^2 + \lambda (y^2 - 4ax) = 0$  is a rectangular hyperbola if  $l^2 + m^2 + \lambda = 0$ .

Substituting for  $\lambda$ , the equation becomes

$$l^2x^2 + 2lmxy - l^2y^2 + 2x \{2a(l^2 + m^2) - l\} - 2my + 1 = 0.$$

The centre is given by

$$l^2x + lmy + 2a(l^2 + m^2) - l = 0, \text{ and } lmx - l^2y - m = 0.$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{1}{l} - 2a.$$

If  $(x', y')$  be the pole of the chord, then

$$x' = -\frac{1}{l}. \quad [\text{Art. 218.}]$$

Therefore the sum of the abscissae of the centre and pole  $= -2a =$  twice the abscissa of the foot of the directrix. Hence they are equidistant from the directrix.

**389.** To find the equation of the pair of tangents that can be drawn from any point  $(x', y')$  to the general conic

$$\phi(x, y) \equiv ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0.$$

Let  $T$  be the given point  $(x', y')$ , and let  $P$  and  $R$  be the points where the tangents from  $T$  touch the conic.

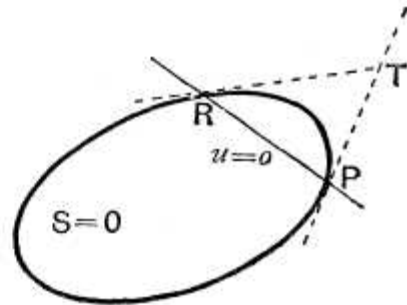
The equation to  $PR$  is therefore  $u = 0$ ,

where  $u \equiv (ax' + hy' + g)x + (hx' + by' + f)y + gx' + fy' + c.$

The equation to any conic which touches  $S = 0$  at both of the points  $P$  and  $R$  is

$$S = \lambda u^2, \quad (\text{Art. 385}),$$

*i.e.*  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = \lambda [(ax' + hy' + g)x + (hx' + by' + f)y + gx' + fy' + c]^2$   
.....(I).



Now the pair of straight lines  $TP$  and  $TR$  is a conic

section which touches the given conic at  $P$  and  $R$  and which also goes through the point  $T$ .

Also we can only draw one conic to go through five points, viz.  $T$ , two points at  $P$ , and two points at  $R$ .

If then we find  $\lambda$  so that (1) goes through the point  $T$ , it must represent the two tangents  $TP$  and  $TR$ .

The equation (1) is satisfied by  $x'$  and  $y'$  if

$$\begin{aligned} ax'^2 + 2hx'y' + by'^2 + 2gx' + 2fy' + c \\ = \lambda [ax'^2 + 2hx'y' + by'^2 + 2gx' + 2fy' + c]^2, \end{aligned}$$

*i.e.* if 
$$\lambda = \frac{1}{\phi(x', y')}.$$

The required equation (1) then becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(x', y') [ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c] \\ = [(ax' + hy' + g)x + (hx' + by' + f)y + gx' + fy' + c]^2, \end{aligned}$$

*i.e.* 
$$\phi(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) \times \phi(\mathbf{x}', \mathbf{y}') = u^2,$$

where  $u = 0$  is the equation to the chord of contact.

**390.** *Director circle of a conic given by the general equation of the second degree.*

The equation to the two tangents from  $(x', y')$  to the conic are, by the last article,

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 [a\phi(x', y') - (ax' + hy' + g)^2] \\ + 2xy [h\phi(x', y') - (ax' + hy' + g)(hx' + by' + f)] \\ + y^2 [b\phi(x', y') - (hx' + by' + f)^2] + \text{other terms} = 0 \dots (1). \end{aligned}$$

If  $(x', y')$  be a point on the director circle of the conic, the two tangents from it to the conic are at right angles.

Now (1) represents two straight lines at right angles if the sum of the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  in it be zero,

*i.e.* if  $(a + b)\phi(x', y') - (ax' + hy' + g)^2 - (hx' + by' + f)^2 = 0.$

Hence the locus of the point  $(x', y')$  is

$$\begin{aligned} (a + b)(ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c) \\ - (ax + hy + g)^2 - (hx + by + f)^2 = 0, \end{aligned}$$

*i.e.* the circle whose equation is

$$\begin{aligned} (x^2 + y^2)(ab - h^2) + 2x(bg - fh) + 2y(af - gh) \\ + c(a + b) - g^2 - f^2 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

**Cor.** If the given conic be a parabola, then  $ab = h^2$ , and the locus becomes a straight line, viz. the directrix of the parabola. (Art. 211.)

**391.** The equation to the director circle may also be obtained in another manner. For it is a circle, whose centre is at the centre of the conic, and the square of whose radius is equal to the sum of the squares of the semi-axes of the conic.

The centre is, Art. 352, the point  $\left(\frac{hf - bg}{ab - h^2}, \frac{gh - af}{ab - h^2}\right)$ .

Also, if the equation to the conic be reduced to the form

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + c' = 0,$$

and if  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  be its semi-axes, we have, (Art. 364,)

$$\frac{1}{\alpha^2} + \frac{1}{\beta^2} = \frac{a+b}{-c'}, \text{ and } \frac{1}{\alpha^2\beta^2} = \frac{ab - h^2}{c'^2},$$

so that, by division,  $\alpha^2 + \beta^2 = \frac{-(a+b)c'}{ab - h^2}$ .

The equation to the required circle is therefore

$$\begin{aligned} &\left(x - \frac{hf - bg}{ab - h^2}\right)^2 + \left(y - \frac{gh - af}{ab - h^2}\right)^2 = -\frac{(a+b)c'}{ab - h^2} \\ &= -\frac{(a+b)(abc + 2fgh - af^2 - bg^2 - ch^2)}{(ab - h^2)^2} \quad (\text{Art. 352}). \end{aligned}$$

**392.** *The equation to the (imaginary) tangents drawn from the focus of a conic to touch the conic satisfies the analytical condition for being a circle.*

Take the focus of the conic as origin, and let the axis of  $x$  be perpendicular to its directrix, so that the equation to the latter may be written in the form  $x + k = 0$ .

The equation to the conic,  $e$  being its eccentricity, is therefore

$$\begin{aligned} &x^2 + y^2 = e^2(x+k)^2, \\ \text{i.e.} \quad &x^2(1 - e^2) + y^2 - 2e^2kx - e^2k^2 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

The equation to the pair of tangents drawn from the origin is therefore, by Art. 389,

$$\begin{aligned} &[x^2(1 - e^2) + y^2 - 2e^2kx - e^2k^2][ -e^2k^2] = [-e^2kx - e^2k^2]^2, \\ \text{i.e.} \quad &x^2(1 - e^2) + y^2 - 2e^2kx - e^2k^2 = -e^2[x+k]^2, \\ \text{i.e.} \quad &x^2 + y^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1). \end{aligned}$$

Here the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  are equal and the coefficient of  $xy$  is zero.

However the axes and origin of coordinates be changed, it follows, on making the substitutions of Art. 129, that in (1) the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  will still be equal and the coefficient of  $xy$  zero.

Hence, whatever be the conic and however its equation may be written, the equation to the tangents from the focus always satisfies the analytical conditions for being a circle.

**393.** *To find the foci of the conic given by the general equation of the second degree*

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0.$$

Let  $(x', y')$  be a focus. By the last article the equation to the pair of tangents drawn from it satisfies the conditions for being a circle.

The equation to the pair of tangents is

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(x', y') [ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c] \\ = [x(ax' + hy' + g) + y(hx' + by' + f) + (gx' + fy' + c)]^2. \end{aligned}$$

In this equation the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  must be equal and the coefficient of  $xy$  must be zero.

We therefore have

$$\begin{aligned} a\phi(x', y') - (ax' + hy' + g)^2 &= b\phi(x', y') - (hx' + by' + f)^2, \\ \text{and} \quad h\phi(x', y') &= (ax' + hy' + g)(hx' + by' + f), \end{aligned}$$

*i. e.*

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{(ax' + hy' + g)^2 - (hx' + by' + f)^2}{a - b} &= \frac{(ax' + hy' + g)(hx' + by' + f)}{h} \\ &= \phi(x', y') \dots\dots\dots (4). \end{aligned}$$

These equations, on being solved, give the foci.

**Cor.** Since the directrices are the polars of the foci, we easily obtain their equations.

**394.** The equations (4) of the previous article give, in general, four values for  $x'$  and four corresponding values for  $y'$ . Two of these would be found to be real and two imaginary.

In the case of the ellipse the two imaginary foci lie on the minor axis. That these imaginary foci exist follows from Art. 247, by writing the standard equation in the form

$$x^2 + \left\{ y - \sqrt{b^2 - a^2} \right\}^2 = \frac{b^2 - a^2}{b^2} \left\{ y - \frac{b^2}{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}} \right\}^2.$$

This shews that the imaginary point  $\{0, \sqrt{b^2 - a^2}\}$  is a focus, the imaginary line  $y - \frac{b^2}{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}} = 0$  is a directrix, and that the corresponding eccentricity is the imaginary quantity  $\sqrt{\frac{b^2 - a^2}{b^2}}$ .

Similarly for the hyperbola, except that, in this case, the eccentricity is real.

In the case of the parabola, two of the foci are at infinity and are imaginary, whilst a third is at infinity and is real.

**395. Ex. 1.** Find the focus of the parabola

$$16x^2 - 24xy + 9y^2 - 80x - 140y + 100 = 0.$$

The focus is given by the equations

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{(16x' - 12y' - 40)^2 - (-12x' + 9y' - 70)^2}{7} \\ = \frac{(16x' - 12y' - 40)(-12x' + 9y' - 70)}{-12} \\ = 16x'^2 - 24x'y' + 9y'^2 - 80x' - 140y' + 100 \dots \dots \dots (1). \end{aligned}$$

The first pair of equation (1) give

$$\begin{aligned} 12(16x' - 12y' - 40)^2 + 7(16x' - 12y' - 40)(-12x' + 9y' - 70) \\ - 12(-12x' + 9y' - 70)^2 = 0, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{i.e. } \{4(16x' - 12y' - 40) - 3(-12x' + 9y' - 70)\} \\ \times \{3(16x' - 12y' - 40) + 4(-12x' + 9y' - 70)\} = 0, \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e. } (100x' - 75y' + 50) \times (-400) = 0,$$

so that 
$$y' = \frac{4x' + 2}{3}.$$

We then have 
$$16x' - 12y' - 40 = -48,$$
  
and 
$$-12x' + 9y' - 70 = -64.$$

The second pair of equation (1) then gives

$$\begin{aligned} -\frac{48 \times 64}{12} = x'(16x' - 12y' - 40) + y'(-12x' + 9y' - 70) - 40x' - 70y' + 100 \\ = -48x' - 64y' - 40x' - 70y' + 100 \\ = -88x' - 134y' + 100, \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e. } -256 = -88x' - \frac{536x' + 268}{3} + 100,$$

so that  $x' = 1$ , and then  $y' = 2$ .

The focus is therefore the point (1, 2).

In the case of a parabola, we may also find the equation to the directrix, by Art. 390, and then find the coordinates of the focus, which is the pole of the directrix.

**Ex. 2.** Find the foci of the conic

$$55x^2 - 30xy + 39y^2 - 40x - 24y - 464 = 0.$$

The foci are given by the equation

$$\frac{(55x' - 15y' - 20)^2 - (-15x' + 39y' - 12)^2}{16} = \frac{(55x' - 15y' - 20)(-15x' + 39y' - 12)}{-15}$$

$$= 55x'^2 - 30x'y' + 39y'^2 - 40x' - 24y' - 464 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

The first pair of equations (1) gives

$$15(55x' - 15y' - 20)^2 + 16(55x' - 15y' - 20)(-15x' + 39y' - 12) - 15(-15x' + 39y' - 12)^2 = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $\{5(55x' - 15y' - 20) - 3(-15x' + 39y' - 12)\}$

$$\{3(55x' - 15y' - 20) + 5(-15x' + 39y' - 12)\} = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $(5x' - 3y' - 1)(3x' + 5y' - 4) = 0.$

$$\therefore y' = \frac{5x' - 1}{3} \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

or  $y' = -\frac{3x' - 4}{5} \dots\dots\dots(3).$

Substituting this first value of  $y$  in the second pair of equation (1), we obtain

$$-25(2x' - 1)^2 = \frac{340x'^2 - 340x' - 1355}{3},$$

giving  $x' = 2$  or  $-1$ . Hence from (2)  $y' = 3$  or  $-2$ .

On substituting the second value of  $y'$  in the same pair of equation (1), we finally have

$$2x'^2 - 2x' + 13 = 0,$$

the roots of which are imaginary.

We should thus obtain two imaginary foci which would be found to lie on the minor axis of the conic section. The real foci are therefore the points (2, 3) and (-1, -2).

**396. Equation to the axes of the general conic.**

By Art. 393, the equation

$$\frac{(ax + hy + g)^2 - (hx + by + f)^2}{a - b} = \frac{(ax + hy + g)(hx + by + f)}{h} \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

represents some conic passing through the foci.



But, since it could be solved as a quadratic equation to give  $\frac{ax + hy + g}{hx + by + f}$ , it represents two straight lines.

The equation (1) therefore represents the axes of the general conic.

**397.** To find the length of the straight lines drawn through a given point in a given direction to meet a given conic.

Let the equation to the conic be

$$\phi(x, y) = ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots(1).$$

Let  $P$  be any point  $(x', y')$ , and through it let there be drawn a straight line at an angle  $\theta$  with the axis of  $x$  to meet the curve in  $Q$  and  $Q'$ .

The coordinates of any point on this line distant  $r$  from  $P$  are

$$x' + r \cos \theta \text{ and } y' + r \sin \theta. \quad (\text{Art. 86.})$$

If this point be on (1), we have

$$a(x' + r \cos \theta)^2 + 2h(x' + r \cos \theta)(y' + r \sin \theta) + b(y' + r \sin \theta)^2 + 2g(x' + r \cos \theta) + 2f(y' + r \sin \theta) + c = 0,$$

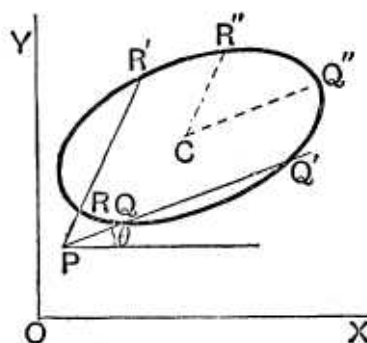
i.e.

$$r^2 [a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta] + 2r [(ax' + hy' + g) \cos \theta + (hx' + by' + f) \sin \theta] + \phi(x', y') = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

For any given value of  $\theta$  this is a quadratic equation in  $r$ , and therefore for any straight line drawn at an inclination  $\theta$  it gives the values of  $PQ$  and  $PQ'$ .

If the two values of  $r$  given by equation (2) be of opposite sign, the points  $Q$  and  $Q'$  lie on opposite sides of  $P$ .

If  $P$  be on the curve, then  $\phi(x', y')$  is zero and one value of  $r$  obtained from (2) is zero.



**398.** *If two chords  $PQQ'$  and  $PRR'$  be drawn in given directions through any point  $P$  to meet the curve in  $Q, Q'$  and  $R, R'$  respectively, the ratio of the rectangle  $PQ \cdot PQ'$  to the rectangle  $PR \cdot PR'$  is the same for all points, and is therefore equal to the ratio of the squares of the diameters of the conic which are drawn in the given directions.*

The values of  $PQ$  and  $PQ'$  are given by the equation of the last article, and therefore

$$\begin{aligned} PQ \cdot PQ' &= \text{product of the roots} \\ &= \frac{\phi(x', y')}{a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta} \dots (1). \end{aligned}$$

So, if  $PRR'$  be drawn at an angle  $\theta'$  to the axis, we have

$$PR \cdot PR' = \frac{\phi(x', y')}{a \cos^2 \theta' + 2h \cos \theta' \sin \theta' + b \sin^2 \theta'} \dots (2).$$

On dividing (1) by (2), we have

$$\frac{PQ \cdot PQ'}{PR \cdot PR'} = \frac{a \cos^2 \theta' + 2h \cos \theta' \sin \theta' + b \sin^2 \theta'}{a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta}.$$

The right-hand member of this equation does not contain  $x'$  or  $y'$ , *i.e.* it does not depend on the position of  $P$  but only on the directions  $\theta$  and  $\theta'$ .

The quantity  $\frac{PQ \cdot PQ'}{PR \cdot PR'}$  is therefore the same for all positions of  $P$ .

In the particular case when  $P$  is at the centre of the conic this ratio becomes  $\frac{CQ''^2}{CR''^2}$ , where  $C$  is the centre and  $CQ''$  and  $CR''$  are parallel to the two given directions.

**Cor.** If  $Q$  and  $Q'$  coincide, and also  $R$  and  $R'$ , the two lines  $PQQ'$  and  $PRR'$  become the tangents from  $P$ , and the above relation then gives

$$\frac{PQ^2}{PR^2} = \frac{CQ''^2}{CR''^2}, \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \frac{PQ}{PR} = \frac{CQ''}{CR''}.$$

Hence, *If two tangents be drawn from a point to a conic, their lengths are to one another in the ratio of the parallel semi-diameters of the conic.*

**399.** *If  $PQQ'$  and  $P_1Q_1Q_1'$  be two chords drawn in parallel directions from two points  $P$  and  $P_1$  to meet a conic in  $Q$  and  $Q'$ , and  $Q_1$  and  $Q_1'$ , respectively, then the ratio of the rectangles  $PQ \cdot PQ'$  and  $P_1Q_1 \cdot P_1Q_1'$  is independent of the direction of the chords.*

For, if  $P$  and  $P_1$  be respectively the points  $(x', y')$  and  $(x'', y'')$ , and  $\theta$  be the angle that each chord makes with the axis, we have, as in the last article,

$$PQ \cdot PQ' = \frac{\phi(x', y')}{a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta},$$

and 
$$P_1Q_1 \cdot P_1Q_1' = \frac{\phi(x'', y'')}{a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta},$$

so that 
$$\frac{PQ \cdot PQ'}{P_1Q_1 \cdot P_1Q_1'} = \frac{\phi(x', y')}{\phi(x'', y'')}.$$

**400.** *If a circle and a conic section cut one another in four points, the straight line joining one pair of points of intersection and the straight line joining the other pair are equally inclined to the axis of the conic.*

For (Fig. Art. 397) let the circle and conic intersect in the four points  $Q, Q'$  and  $R, R'$  and let  $QQ'$  and  $RR'$  meet in  $P$ .

Then 
$$\frac{PQ \cdot PQ'}{PR \cdot PR'} = \frac{CQ'^2}{CR'^2} \quad (\text{Art. 398}).$$

But, since  $Q, Q', R,$  and  $R'$  are four points on a circle, we have

$$PQ \cdot PQ' = PR \cdot PR'. \quad [\text{Euc. III. 36, Cor.}]$$

$$\therefore CQ'' = CR''.$$

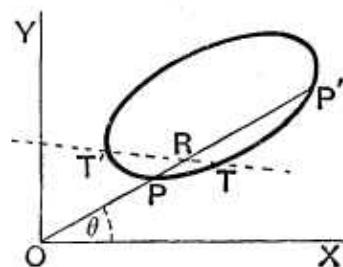
Also in any conic equal radii from the centre are equally inclined to the axis of the conic.

Hence  $CQ''$  and  $CR''$ , and therefore  $PQQ'$  and  $PRR'$ , are equally inclined to the axis of the conic.

**401.** *To shew that any chord of a conic is cut harmonically by the curve, any point on the chord, and the polar of this point with respect to the conic.*

Take the point as origin, and let the equation to the conic be

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \quad \dots\dots(1),$$



or, in polar coordinates,

$$r^2(a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta) + 2r(g \cos \theta + f \sin \theta) + c = 0,$$

i.e.

$$c \cdot \frac{1}{r^2} + 2 \cdot \frac{1}{r} \cdot (g \cos \theta + f \sin \theta) + a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta = 0.$$

Hence, if the chord  $OPP'$  be drawn at an angle  $\theta$  to  $OX$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{OP} + \frac{1}{OP'} &= \text{sum of the roots of this equation in } \frac{1}{r} \\ &= -2 \cdot \frac{g \cos \theta + f \sin \theta}{c}. \end{aligned}$$

Let  $R$  be a point on this chord such that

$$\frac{2}{OR} = \frac{1}{OP} + \frac{1}{OP'}.$$

Then, if  $OR = \rho$ , we have

$$\frac{2}{\rho} = -2 \frac{g \cos \theta + f \sin \theta}{c},$$

so that the locus of  $R$  is

$$g \cdot \rho \cos \theta + f \cdot \rho \sin \theta + c = 0,$$

or, in Cartesian coordinates,

$$gx + fy + c = 0 \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

But (2) is the polar of the origin with respect to the conic (1), so that the locus of  $R$  is the polar of  $O$ .

The straight line  $PP'$  is therefore cut harmonically by  $O$  and the point in which it cuts the polar of  $O$ .

**Ex.** *Through any point  $O$  is drawn a straight line to cut a conic in  $P$  and  $P'$  and on it is taken a point  $R$  such that  $OR$  is (1) the arithmetic mean, and (2) the geometric mean, between  $OP$  and  $OP'$ . Find in each case the locus of  $R$ .*

Using the same notation as in the last article, we have

$$OP + OP' = -2 \frac{g \cos \theta + f \sin \theta}{a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta},$$

and 
$$OP \cdot OP' = \frac{c}{a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta}.$$

(1) If  $R$  be the point  $(\rho, \theta)$  we have

$$\rho = \frac{1}{2}(OP + OP') = -\frac{g \cos \theta + f \sin \theta}{a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta},$$

*i.e.*  $a\rho \cos^2 \theta + 2h\rho \cos \theta \sin \theta + b\rho \sin^2 \theta + g \cos \theta + f \sin \theta = 0,$

*i.e.*, in Cartesian coordinates,

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + gx + fy = 0.$$

The locus is therefore a conic passing through  $O$  and the intersection of the conic and the polar of  $O$ , *i.e.* through the points  $T$  and  $T'$ , and having its asymptotes parallel to those of the given conic.

(2) If  $R$  be the point  $(\rho, \theta)$ , we have in this case

$$\rho^2 = OP \cdot OP' = \frac{c}{a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta},$$

*i.e.*  $a\rho^2 \cos^2 \theta + 2h\rho^2 \cos \theta \sin \theta + b\rho^2 \sin^2 \theta = c,$

*i.e.*  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = c.$

The locus is therefore a conic, having its centre at  $O$  and passing through  $T$  and  $T'$ , and having its asymptotes parallel to those of the given conic.

**402.** To find the locus of the middle points of parallel chords of a conic. [Cf. Art. 376.]

The lengths of the segments of the chord drawn through the point  $(x', y')$  at an angle  $\theta$  to the axis of  $x$  is given by equation (2) of Art. 397.

If  $(x', y')$  be the middle point of the chord the roots of this equation are equal in magnitude but opposite in sign, so that their algebraic sum is zero.

The coefficient of  $r$  in this equation is therefore zero, so that

$$(ax' + hy' + g) \cos \theta + (hx' + by' + f) \sin \theta = 0.$$

The locus of the middle point of chords inclined at an angle  $\theta$  to the axis of  $x$  is therefore the straight line

$$(ax + hy + g) + (hx + by + f) \tan \theta = 0.$$

Hence the locus of the middle points of chords parallel to the line  $y = mx$  is

$$(ax + hy + g) + (hx + by + f) m = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $x(a + hm) + (h + bm)y + g + fm = 0.$

This is parallel to the line  $y = m'x$  if

$$m' = -\frac{a + hm}{h + bm},$$

*i.e.* if  $a + h(m + m') + bmm' = 0.$

This is therefore the condition that  $y = mx$  and  $y = m'x$  should be parallel to conjugate diameters.

**403.** Equation to the pair of tangents drawn from a given point  $(x', y')$  to a given conic. [Cf. Art. 389.]

If a straight line be drawn through  $(x', y')$ , the point  $P$ , to meet the conic in  $Q$  and  $Q'$ , the lengths of  $PQ$  and  $PQ'$  are given by the equation

$$r^2 (a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta) + 2r [(ax' + hy' + g) \cos \theta + (hx' + by' + f) \sin \theta] + \phi(x', y') = 0.$$

The roots of this equation are equal, *i.e.* the corresponding lines touch the conic, if

$$(a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta) \times \phi(x', y') = [(ax' + hy' + g) \cos \theta + (hx' + by' + f) \sin \theta]^2,$$

*i.e.* if  $(a + 2h \tan \theta + b \tan^2 \theta) \times \phi(x', y') = [(ax' + hy' + g) + (hx' + by' + f) \tan \theta]^2 \dots(1).$

The roots of this equation give the corresponding directions of the tangents through  $P$ .

Also the equation to the line through  $P$  inclined at an angle  $\theta$  to the axis of  $x$  is

$$\frac{y - y'}{x - x'} = \tan \theta \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

If we substitute for  $\tan \theta$  in (1) from (2) we shall get the equation to the pair of tangents from  $P$ .

On substitution we have

$$\{a(x - x')^2 + 2h(x - x')(y - y') + b(y - y')^2\} \phi(x', y') = [(ax' + hy' + g)(x - x') + (hx' + by' + f)(y - y')]^2.$$

This equation reduces to the form of Art. 389.

**EXAMPLES XLIV**

1. Two tangents are drawn to an ellipse from a point  $P$ ; if the points in which these tangents meet the axes of the ellipse be concyclic, prove that the locus of  $P$  is a rectangular hyperbola.

2. A pair of tangents to the conic  $Ax^2 + By^2 = 1$  intercept a constant distance  $2k$  on the axis of  $x$ ; prove that the locus of their point of intersection is the curve

$$By^2 (Ax^2 + By^2 - 1) = Ak^2 (By^2 - 1)^2.$$

3. Pairs of tangents are drawn to the conic  $ax^2 + \beta y^2 = 1$  so as to be always parallel to conjugate diameters of the conic

$$ax^2 + hxy + by^2 = 1;$$

shew that the locus of their point of intersection is the conic

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = \frac{a}{\alpha} + \frac{b}{\beta}.$$

4. Prove that the director circles of all conics which touch two given straight lines at given points have a common radical axis.

5. A parabola circumscribes a right-angled triangle. Taking its sides as the axes of coordinates, prove that the locus of the foot of the perpendicular from the right angle upon the directrix is the curve whose equation is

$$2xy(x^2 + y^2)(hy + kx) + h^2y^4 + k^2x^4 = 0,$$

and that the axis is one of the family of straight lines

$$y = mx - \frac{m^3h - k}{1 + m^2},$$

where  $m$  is an arbitrary parameter and  $2h$  and  $2k$  are the sides of the triangle.

Find the foci of the curves

6.  $300x^2 + 320xy + 144y^2 - 1220x - 768y + 199 = 0.$

7.  $16x^2 - 24xy + 9y^2 + 28x + 14y + 21 = 0.$

8.  $144x^2 - 120xy + 25y^2 + 67x - 42y + 13 = 0.$

9.  $x^2 - 6xy + y^2 - 10x - 10y - 19 = 0$  and also its directrices.

10. Prove that the foci of the conic

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 1$$

are given by the equations

$$\frac{x^2 - y^2}{a - b} = \frac{xy}{h} = \frac{1}{a^2 - b^2}.$$

11. Prove that the locus of the foci of all conics which touch the four lines  $x = \pm a$  and  $y = \pm b$  is the hyperbola  $x^2 - y^2 = a^2 - b^2$ .

12. Given the centre of a conic and two tangents; prove that the locus of the foci is a hyperbola.

[Take the two tangents as axes, their inclination being  $\omega$ ; let  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  be the foci, and  $(h, k)$  the given centre. Then  $x_1 + x_2 = 2h$  and  $y_1 + y_2 = 2k$ ; also, by Art. 270 ( $\beta$ ), we have

$$y_1y_2 \sin^2 \omega = x_1x_2 \sin^2 \omega = (\text{semi-minor axis})^2.$$

From these equations, eliminating  $x_2$  and  $y_2$ , we have

$$x_1^2 - y_1^2 = 2hx_1 - 2ky_1.]$$

13. A given ellipse, of semi-axes  $a$  and  $b$ , slides between two perpendicular lines; prove that the locus of its focus is the curve

$$(x^2 + y^2)(x^2y^2 + b^4) = 4a^2x^2y^2.$$

14. Conics are drawn touching both the axes, supposed oblique, at the same given distance  $a$  from the origin. Prove that the foci lie either on the straight line  $x = y$ , or on the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2xy \cos \omega = a(x + y).$$

15. Find the locus of the foci of conics which have a common point and a common director circle.

16. Find the locus of the focus of a rectangular hyperbola a diameter of which is given in magnitude and position.

17. Through a fixed point  $O$  chords  $POP'$  and  $QOQ'$  are drawn at right angles to one another to meet a given conic in  $P, P', Q,$  and  $Q'$ .

Prove that  $\frac{1}{PO \cdot OP'} + \frac{1}{QO \cdot OQ'}$  is constant.

18. A point is taken on the major axis of an ellipse whose abscissa is  $ae \div \sqrt{2-e^2}$ ; prove that the sum of the squares of the reciprocals of the segments of any chord through it is constant.

19. Through a fixed point  $O$  is drawn a line  $OPP'$  to meet a conic in  $P$  and  $P'$ ; prove that the locus of a point  $Q$  on  $OPP'$ , such that

$\frac{1}{OQ^2} = \frac{1}{OP^2} + \frac{1}{OP'^2}$  is another conic whose centre is  $O$ .

20. Prove Carnot's theorem, viz. : If a conic section cut the side  $BC$  of a triangle  $ABC$  in the points  $A'$  and  $A''$ , and, similarly, the side  $CA$  in  $B'$  and  $B''$ , and  $AB$  in  $C'$  and  $C''$ , then

$BA' \cdot BA'' \cdot CB' \cdot CB'' \cdot AC' \cdot AC'' = CA' \cdot CA'' \cdot AB' \cdot AB'' \cdot BC' \cdot BC''$ .

[Use Art. 398.]

21. Obtain the equations giving the foci of the general conic by making use of the fact that, if  $S$  be a focus and  $PSP'$  any chord of

the conic passing through it, then  $\frac{1}{SP} + \frac{1}{SP'}$  is the same for all directions of the chord.

22. Obtain the equations for the foci also from the fact that the product of the perpendiculars drawn from them upon any tangent is the same for all tangents.

## ANSWERS

6.  $(-1, 5)$  and  $(4, -3)$ .    7.  $(-\frac{4}{5}, -\frac{3}{5})$ .    8.  $(\frac{-59}{676}, \frac{66}{169})$ .
9.  $(-4, -4)$  and  $(-1, -1)$ ;  $x+y+7=0$  and  $x+y+3=0$ .
15. If  $P$  be the given point,  $C$  the centre of the given director circle, and  $PCP'$  a diameter, the focus  $S$  is such that  $PS \cdot P'S$  is constant.
16. If  $PP'$  be the given diameter and  $S$  a focus then  $PS \cdot P'S$  is constant.

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. Let  $\phi(x, y) \equiv ax^2 + by^2 - 1 = 0$  be the equation of the ellipse. Let  $A_1, A_2; B_1, B_2$  be the points in which the tangents from  $(x', y')$  cut the axes. The points in which  $y=0$  cuts  $\phi(x, y) \times \phi(x', y') = u^2$  are given by



$$ax^2 (by'^2 - 1) + 2ax'x - 1 - \phi(x', y') = 0.$$

$$\therefore OA_1 \cdot OA_2 = \frac{1 + \phi(x', y')}{a(1 - by'^2)}.$$

$$\text{Similarly } OB_1 \cdot OB_2 = \frac{1 + \phi(x', y')}{b(1 - ax'^2)}.$$

Also  $OA_1 \cdot OA_2 = OB_1 \cdot OB_2$ , since  $A_1, B_1, A_2, B_2$  are concyclic.

Hence the required locus is  $ab(x^2 - y^2) + a - b = 0$ .

2. As in the last example the intercepts on the axis of  $x$  are given by

$$Ax^2 (By'^2 - 1) + 2Ax'x - 1 - \phi(x', y') = 0;$$

$$\therefore k^2 = \frac{(x_1 - x_2)^2}{4} = \frac{Ax'^2 + \{1 + \phi(x', y')\} \{By'^2 - 1\}}{A(By'^2 - 1)^2}.$$

Therefore the required locus is

$$By^2 (Ax^2 + By^2 - 1) = Ak^2 (By^2 - 1)^2.$$

3. The terms of the second degree in

$$\phi(x, y) \times \phi(x', y') = u^2,$$

$$\text{are } ax^2 (\beta y'^2 - 1) - 2a\beta x' y' xy + \beta y^2 (ax'^2 - 1) + \dots = 0.$$

If the tangents are parallel to conjugate diameters of the second conic we have, by Art. 377,

$$ba (\beta y'^2 - 1) + 2ha\beta x' y' + a\beta (ax'^2 - 1) = 0.$$

Therefore the required locus is

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = \frac{a}{\alpha} + \frac{b}{\beta}.$$

4. The equation of all conics which touch the axes at the points where  $ax + by = 1$  cuts them is, by Art. 385 II,

$$(ax + by - 1)^2 - 2\lambda xy = 0.$$

The director circle of the conic given by the general equation of the second degree, when the axes are oblique, is  $(x^2 + y^2)(ab - h^2) + 2x(bg - fh) + 2y(af - gh) + c(a + b) - g^2 - f^2 + 2 \cos \omega [(ab - h^2)xy + (af - gh)x + (bg - fh)y + gf - ch] = 0$ .

[Arts. 390 and 93.]

Hence, for the above equation, it is

$$(x^2 + y^2)(2ab - \lambda) - 2bx - 2ay + 2 \cos \omega \{xy(2ab - \lambda) - ax - by + 1\} = 0,$$

$$\text{i.e. } (x^2 + y^2 + 2xy \cos \omega)(2ab - \lambda) = 2(b + a \cos \omega)x + 2y(a + b \cos \omega) - 2 \cos \omega,$$

which, for all values of  $\lambda$ , represents a system of circles having a common radical axis, viz.

$$x(b + a \cos \omega) + y(a + b \cos \omega) - \cos \omega = 0.$$

5. Let  $(a, b)$  be the focus and  $x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = p$  the directrix. Then the equation of the parabola is

$$(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = (x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha - p)^2.$$

Since it passes through  $(0, 0)$ ,  $(2h, 0)$ ,  $(0, 2k)$ ,

$$\therefore a^2 + b^2 = p^2, \quad (2h - a)^2 + b^2 = (2h \cos \alpha - p)^2,$$

$$\text{and} \quad (2k - b)^2 + a^2 = (2k \cos \alpha - p)^2,$$

$$\text{whence} \quad h \sin^2 \alpha + p \cos \alpha = a, \quad \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

$$\text{and} \quad k \cos^2 \alpha + p \sin \alpha = b. \quad \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

Square and add ;

$$\therefore h^2 \sin^4 \alpha + k^2 \cos^4 \alpha + 2p(h \sin^2 \alpha \cos \alpha + k \cos^2 \alpha \sin \alpha) = 0.$$

But  $(p \cos \alpha, p \sin \alpha)$  is the point whose locus is required. Hence the required equation is

$$h^2 y^4 + k^2 x^4 + 2xy(x^2 + y^2)(hy + kx) = 0.$$

The equation of the axis is  $\cos \alpha (y - b) = \sin \alpha (x - a)$ , since it goes through the focus  $(a, b)$  and is perpendicular to the directrix,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{i.e.} \quad y &= x \tan \alpha - \frac{a \sin \alpha - b \cos \alpha}{\cos \alpha} \\ &= x \tan \alpha - \frac{h \sin^3 \alpha - k \cos^3 \alpha}{\cos \alpha} \quad (\text{from equations (i) and (ii)}), \\ &= x \tan \alpha - \frac{h \tan^3 \alpha - k}{1 + \tan^2 \alpha}. \end{aligned}$$

6. The equations for the foci are

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{(300x + 160y - 610)^2 - (160x + 144y - 384)^2}{156} &= \frac{(X)(Y)}{160} \\ &= 300x^2 + 320xy + 144y^2 - 1220x - 768y + 199 \\ &= xX + yY - 610x - 384y + 199. \end{aligned}$$

The first pair give

$$40X^2 - 39XY - 40Y^2 = 0, \text{ i.e. } (8X + 5Y)(5X - 8Y) = 0.$$

$$\therefore 8X + 5Y = 0, \text{ whence } 8x + 5y = 17. \dots\dots(i)$$

The second pair give, on reduction,

$$2xy - 2x - 3y + 23 = 0. \quad \therefore 2x = \frac{3y - 23}{y - 1}.$$

Substitute in (i);  $\therefore y^2 - 2y - 15 = 0.$

$$\therefore y = 5 \text{ or } -3, \text{ and } x = -1 \text{ or } 4.$$

The foci are therefore  $(-1, 5), (4, -3).$

7. The equation for the focus is

$$\frac{(16x - 12y + 14)^2 - (-12x + 9y + 7)^2}{7} = \frac{(X)(Y)}{-12}$$

$$= 16x^2 - 24xy + 9y^2 + 28x + 14y + 21.$$

The first pair gives  $12Y^2 - 7XY - 12X^2 = 0,$

$$\text{i.e. } (4Y + 3X)(3Y - 4X) = 0; \text{ i.e. } 70(3Y - 4X) = 0.$$

$$\text{Hence } 3y - 4x = \frac{7}{5} \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

$$\therefore 16x - 12y + 14 = \frac{42}{5}, \text{ and } -12x + 9y + 7 = \frac{56}{5}.$$

Substitute in the second pair;

$$\therefore -\frac{42 \cdot 56}{25 \cdot 12} = xX + yY + 14x + 7y + 21$$

$$= \frac{42}{5}x + \frac{56}{5}y + 14x + 7y + 21,$$

$$\text{or } 80x + 65y = -103. \dots\dots\dots(ii)$$

$$\text{From (i) and (ii), } x = -\frac{4}{5}, y = -\frac{3}{5}.$$

8. The equations for the foci are

$$\frac{(144x - 60y + \frac{67}{2})^2 - (-60x + 25y - 21)^2}{119} = \frac{(X)(Y)}{-60}$$

$$= 144x^2 - 120xy + 25y^2 + 67x - 42y + 13.$$

The first pair give  $60Y^2 - 119XY - 60X^2 = 0,$

$$\text{i.e. } (12Y + 5X)(5Y - 12X) = 0, \text{ so that } 5Y - 12X = 0.$$

$$\text{Whence } 12x - 5y = -3, \text{ and } X = -\frac{5}{2}, Y = -6.$$

Substitute in the second pair ;

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore -\frac{5 \cdot 6}{2 \cdot 60} &= xX + yY + \frac{67}{2}x - 21y + 13 \\ &= -\frac{5}{2}x - 6y + \frac{67}{2}x - 21y + 13. \\ \therefore 124x - 108y &= -53. \end{aligned}$$

Solving this with  $12x - 5y = -3$ , we obtain

$$x = -\frac{59}{678}, \quad y = \frac{66}{189}.$$

9. The equations for the foci are

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{(x - 3y - 5)^2 - (-3x + y - 5)^2}{0} &= \frac{(X)(Y)}{-3} \\ &= xX + yY - 5x - 5y - 19. \end{aligned}$$

From the first pair, either  $X = Y$  .....(i)

or  $X = -Y$  .....(ii)

If  $X = Y$ , then  $x = y$ , and

$$X = Y = -2x - 5.$$

Substitute in the second pair ;

$$\therefore \frac{(2x + 5)^2}{-3} = -x(4x + 10) - 10x - 19 ;$$

$$\therefore x^2 + 5x + 4 = 0 ; \therefore x = -4 \text{ or } -1, \text{ and } y = -4 \text{ or } -1.$$

The foci are therefore  $(-1, -1)$  and  $(-4, -4)$ .

(ii) would give imaginary values.

The equation of the directrices which are the polars of the foci are

$$\begin{aligned} -3x - 3y + 5 + 5 - 19 = 0, \text{ and } 3x + 3y + 20 + 20 - 19 = 0, \\ \text{or } x + y + 3 = 0, \text{ and } x + y + 7 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

10. The equations for the foci are

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{(ax + hy)^2 - (hx + by)^2}{a - b} &= \frac{(ax + hy)(hx + by)}{h} \\ &= ax^2 + 2haxy + by^2 - 1, \end{aligned}$$

which reduce to  $\frac{x^2 - y^2}{a - b} = \frac{xy}{h} = \frac{1}{h^2 - ab}.$

11. The director-circle passes through the four points  $(\pm a, \pm b)$ ; therefore the centre is  $(0, 0)$ .

Therefore if  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of one focus,  $(-x, -y)$  are those of the other.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence } (x-a)(-x-a) &= \{\text{semi-minor axis}\}^2 \\ &= (y-b)(-y-b). \quad [\text{Art. 270 } (\beta).] \\ \therefore x^2 - y^2 &= a^2 - b^2. \end{aligned}$$

13. Let  $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2)$  be the coordinates of the foci. Then

$$\begin{aligned} (x_1 - x_2)^2 + (y_1 - y_2)^2 &= (\text{distance between the foci})^2 \\ &= 4a^2e^2 = 4(a^2 - b^2). \quad \dots\dots\dots(i) \end{aligned}$$

Also  $x_1x_2 = b^2 = y_1y_2$ . [Art. 270  $(\beta)$ .] ... (ii)

Eliminating  $x_2$  and  $y_2$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left(x_1 - \frac{b^2}{x_1}\right)^2 + \left(y_1 - \frac{b^2}{y_1}\right)^2 &= 4(a^2 - b^2). \\ \therefore (x_1^2 + y_1^2) + b^4 \left(\frac{1}{x_1^2} + \frac{1}{y_1^2}\right) &= 4a^2. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore the required locus is  $(x^2 + y^2)(x^2y^2 + b^4) = 4a^2x^2y^2$ .

14. Let  $x^2 + y^2 + 2\lambda xy - 2ax - 2ay + a^2 = 0$  be any one of the conics. The foci are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(x, y) - (x + \lambda y - a)^2 &= \phi(x, y) - (\lambda x + y - a)^2 \\ &= \frac{\lambda \phi(x, y) - (x + \lambda y - a)(\lambda x + y - a)}{\cos \omega}. \quad [\text{Arts. 393 and 175.}] \end{aligned}$$

From the first pair,  $x = y$ , or  $1 + \lambda = \frac{2a}{x + y}$ .

From the first and third equations,

$$\cos \omega \{2ay - y^2(1 + \lambda)\} = xy(\lambda + 1) - ax - ay + a^2;$$

whence, on putting

$$1 + \lambda = \frac{2a}{x + y}, \quad x^2 + y^2 + 2xy \cos \omega = a(x + y).$$

15. Let  $P$  be the common point,  $C$  the centre of the director circle whose radius is  $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ , where  $a, b$  are the semi-axes of the conic. Then  $C$  and this radius are given. If  $S, H$  be the foci, then  $SP \cdot HP = CD^2 = a^2 + b^2 - CP^2 =$  given. Produce  $PC$  to  $P'$  so that  $CP' = PC$ . Then clearly  $HP = SP'$ , so that  $SP \cdot SP'$  is given  $= a^2 + b^2 - CP^2$ .

Let  $(a, 0)$  and  $(-a, 0)$  be the coordinates of  $P$  and  $P'$ ,  $C$  being the origin. If  $(x, y)$  be the coordinates of  $S$ , then

$$\{(x+a)^2 + y^2\} \{(x-a)^2 + y^2\} = \{r^2 - a^2\}^2,$$

where  $r$  is the radius of the director circle.

16. As in the last example,  $SP \cdot SP' = SP \cdot HP = CP^2$ , in a rectangular hyperbola.

Hence the locus is  $\{(x+a)^2 + y^2\} \{(x-a)^2 + y^2\} = a^4$ .

17. See the example of Art. 401 ;

$$\frac{1}{PO \cdot OP'} = \frac{a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta}{c},$$

and, on changing  $\theta$  into  $\theta + \frac{\pi}{2}$ ,

$$\frac{1}{QO \cdot OQ'} = \frac{a \sin^2 \theta - 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \cos^2 \theta}{c};$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{PO \cdot OP'} + \frac{1}{QO \cdot OQ'} = \frac{a+b}{c}.$$

18. Remove the origin to the given point, and change to polars.

The equation then is

$$r^2 \left\{ \frac{\cos^2 \theta}{a^2} + \frac{\sin^2 \theta}{b^2} \right\} + \frac{2r \cdot e \cos \theta}{a \sqrt{2-e^2}} + \frac{2(e^2-1)}{2-e^2} = 0.$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{OP} + \frac{1}{OP'} = - \frac{e \cos \theta \sqrt{2-e^2}}{a(e^2-1)},$$

and 
$$\frac{1}{OP \cdot OP'} = \frac{(2-e^2)(b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta)}{2a^2b^2(e^2-1)}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{1}{OP^2} + \frac{1}{OP'^2} &= \frac{e^2 \cos^2 \theta (2 - e^2)}{a^2 (e^2 - 1)^2} - \frac{(2 - e^2) (b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta)}{a^2 b^2 (e^2 - 1)} \\ &= \frac{2 - e^2}{a^2 (e^2 - 1)^2} \left[ e^2 \cos^2 \theta - \frac{b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta}{b^2} (e^2 - 1) \right] \\ &= \frac{(2 - e^2)}{a^2 (e^2 - 1)^2} = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{b^4}. \end{aligned}$$

19. As in the example of Art. 401,

$$\frac{1}{OP} + \frac{1}{OP'} = \frac{-2(g \cos \theta + f \sin \theta)}{c},$$

and 
$$\frac{1}{OP \cdot OP'} = \frac{a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta}{c}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{1}{r^2} &= \frac{1}{OQ^2} = \frac{1}{OP^2} + \frac{1}{OP'^2} \\ &= \frac{4(g \cos \theta + f \sin \theta)^2}{c^2} - \frac{2(a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta)}{c}, \end{aligned}$$

which is of the form  $Ax^2 + 2Hxy + By^2 = C$ .

20. Let  $r_1, r_2, r_3$  be the semi-diameters which are parallel to  $BC, CA, AB$ . Then by Art. 398,

$$\frac{BA' \cdot BA''}{BC' \cdot BC''} = \frac{r_1^2}{r_3^2}, \text{ etc.}$$

The result follows by multiplication.

21. Taking equation (2) of Art. 397, if  $S$  be  $(x', y')$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} \left\{ \frac{1}{SP} + \frac{1}{SP'} \right\}^2 &= \left\{ \frac{1}{r_1} - \frac{1}{r_2} \right\}^2 = \left\{ \frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} \right\}^2 - \frac{4}{r_1 r_2} \\ &= 4 \left[ \left\{ \frac{(ax' + hy' + g) \cos \theta + (hx' + by' + f) \sin \theta}{\phi(x', y')} \right\}^2 \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \frac{a \cos^2 \theta + 2h \cos \theta \sin \theta + b \sin^2 \theta}{\phi(x', y')} \right]. \end{aligned}$$

If this is invariable for all values of  $\theta$ , equate the values when  $\theta = 0, \frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{2}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{(ax + hy + g)^2}{\phi(x, y)} - a &= \frac{(hx + by + f)^2}{\phi(x, y)} - b \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{\{(ax + hy + g) + (hx + by + f)\}^2}{\phi(x, y)} - (a + b + 2h) \right]. \end{aligned}$$

These equations are

$$\frac{X^2}{\phi} - a = \frac{Y^2}{\phi} - b = \frac{(X + Y)^2}{2\phi} - \frac{a + b + 2h}{2}.$$

The first pair gives  $\frac{X^2 - Y^2}{\phi} = a - b$ .

The first two added, and equated to twice the third, give  $\frac{X^2 + Y^2}{\phi} - a - b = \frac{(X + Y)^2}{\phi} - (a + b + 2h)$ .  $\therefore h = \frac{XY}{\phi}$ .

Hence the equations give  $\frac{X^2 - Y^2}{a - b} = \frac{XY}{h} = \phi$ .

These are the same as the equations of Art. 393.

**22.** The line  $x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = p$  will touch the conic given by the general equation if

$$Cp^2 - 2p(G \cos \theta + F \sin \theta) + A \cos^2 \theta + 2H \cos \theta \sin \theta + B \sin^2 \theta = 0 \dots (i)$$

where  $A, B, C$ , etc. are the minors of  $a, b, c$ , etc. in

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & h & g \\ h & b & f \\ g & f & c \end{vmatrix} \quad [\text{Art. 374}].$$

Hence the product of the perpendiculars from  $(x, y)$  upon the parallel tangents

$$x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = p_1, \text{ and } x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = p_2$$

is  $(x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta)^2 - (p_1 + p_2)(x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta) + p_1 p_2$ ,

which

$$\propto C(x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta)^2 - 2(G \cos \theta + F \sin \theta)(x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta) + A \cos^2 \theta + B \sin^2 \theta + 2H \cos \theta \sin \theta, \text{ by (i).}$$

Put  $\theta = 0, \frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{2}$  and equate;



$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Cx^2 - 2xG + A &= Cy^2 - 2yF + B \\ &= \frac{1}{2} [C(x+y)^2 - 2(x+y)(G+F) + A + B + 2H], \\ \text{or} \quad C(x^2 - y^2) - 2Gx + 2Fy + A - B &= 0, \\ \text{and} \quad Cxy - Fx - Gy + H &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

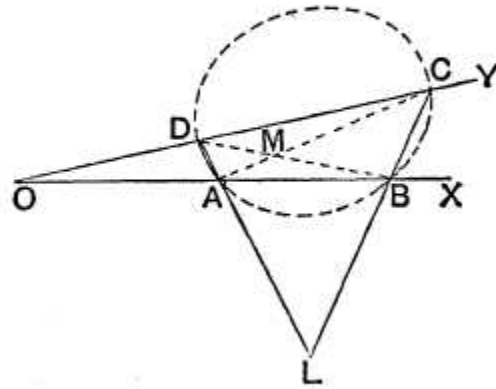
The equations of Art. 393 reduce to these, on multiplying out and collecting the terms.

**405.** *General equation to conics passing through four given points.*

Let  $A, B, C,$  and  $D$  be the four points, and let  $BA$  and  $CD$  meet in  $O$ . Take  $OAB$  and  $ODC$  as the axes, and let  $OA = \lambda, OB = \lambda', OD = \mu,$  and  $OC = \mu'$ .

Let any conic passing through the four points be  
 $ax^2 + 2h'xy + by^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0 \dots (1).$

If we put  $y = 0$  in this equation the roots of the resulting equation must be  $\lambda$  and  $\lambda'$ .



Hence  $2g = -a(\lambda + \lambda')$  and  $c = a\lambda\lambda'$ ,  
*i. e.*  $a = \frac{c}{\lambda\lambda'}$ , and  $2g = -c \frac{\lambda + \lambda'}{\lambda\lambda'}$ .

Similarly  $b = \frac{c}{\mu\mu'}$ , and  $2f = -c \frac{\mu + \mu'}{\mu\mu'}$ .

On substituting in (1) we have  
 $\mu\mu'x^2 + 2hxy + \lambda\lambda'y^2 - \mu\mu'(\lambda + \lambda')x$   
 $- \lambda\lambda'(\mu + \mu')y + \lambda\lambda'\mu\mu' = 0 \dots\dots(1),$

where  $h = h' \frac{\lambda\lambda'\mu\mu'}{c}$ .

This is the required equation,  $h$  being a constant as yet undetermined and depending on which of the conics through  $A, B, C,$  and  $D$  we are considering.

**406. Aliter.** We have proved in Art. 383 that the equation  $kLN = MR$ ,  $k$  being any constant, represents any conic circumscribing the quadrilateral formed by the four straight lines  $L = 0, M = 0, N = 0,$  and  $R = 0$  taken in this order.

With the notation of the previous article the equations to the four lines  $AB, BC, CD,$  and  $DA$  are

$$y = 0, \quad \frac{x}{\lambda'} + \frac{y}{\mu'} - 1 = 0, \quad x = 0,$$

and  $\frac{x}{\lambda} + \frac{y}{\mu} - 1 = 0.$

The equation to any conic circumscribing the quadrilateral  $ABCD$  is therefore

$$kxy = \left(\frac{x}{\lambda'} + \frac{y}{\mu'} - 1\right) \left(\frac{x}{\lambda} + \frac{y}{\mu} - 1\right) \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

*i. e.*  
 $\mu\mu'x^2 + xy(\lambda\mu' + \lambda'\mu - k\lambda\lambda'\mu\mu') + \lambda\lambda'y^2$   
 $- \mu\mu'(\lambda + \lambda')x - \lambda\lambda'(\mu + \mu')y + \lambda\lambda'\mu\mu' = 0.$

On putting  $\lambda\mu' + \lambda'\mu - k\lambda\lambda'\mu\mu'$  equal to another constant  $2h$  we have the equation (1) of the previous article.

**407.** *Only one conic can be drawn through any five points.*

For the general equation to a conic through four points is (1) of Art. 405.

If we wish it to pass through a fifth point, we substitute the coordinates of this fifth point in this equation, and thus obtain the corresponding value of  $h$ . Except when three of the five points lie on a straight line a value of  $h$  will always be found, and only one.

**Ex.** *Find the equation to the conic section which passes through the five points  $A, B, C, D,$  and  $E,$  whose coordinates are  $(1, 2), (3, -4), (-1, 3), (-2, -3),$  and  $(5, 6).$*

The equations to  $AB, BC, CD,$  and  $DA$  are easily found to be  $y + 3x - 5 = 0, 4y + 7x - 5 = 0, 6x - y + 9 = 0,$  and  $5x - 3y + 1 = 0.$

The equation to any conic through the four points  $A, B, C,$  and  $D$  is therefore

$$(y + 3x - 5)(6x - y + 9) = \lambda(4y + 7x - 5)(5x - 3y + 1) \dots (1).$$

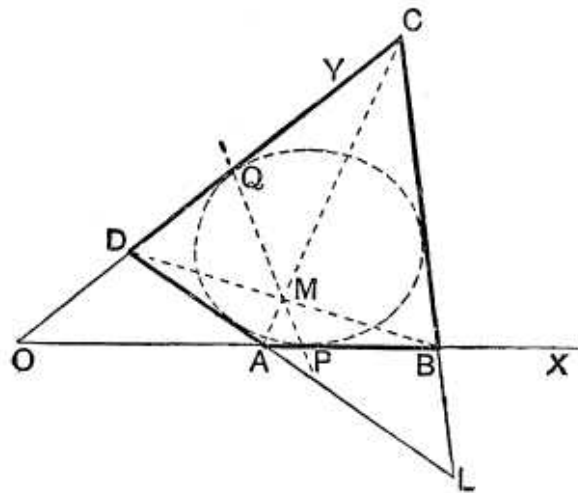
If this conic pass through the point  $E,$  the equation (1) must be satisfied by the values  $x = 5$  and  $y = 6.$

We thus have  $\lambda = \frac{1}{3}$  and, on substitution in (1), the required equation is

$$223x^2 - 38xy - 123y^2 - 171x + 83y + 350 = 0,$$

which represents a hyperbola.

**408.** *To find the general equation to a conic section which touches four given straight lines, i.e. which is inscribed in a given quadrilateral.*



Let the four straight lines form the sides of the quadrilateral  $ABCD$ . Let  $BA$  and  $CD$  meet in  $O$ , and take  $OAB$  and  $ODC$  as the axes of  $x$  and  $y$ , and let the equations to the other two sides  $BC$  and  $DA$  be

$$l_1x + m_1y - 1 = 0, \text{ and } l_2x + m_2y - 1 = 0.$$

Let the equation to the straight line joining the points of contact of any conic touching the axes at  $P$  and  $Q$  be

$$ax + by - 1 = 0.$$

By Art. 385, II, the equation to the conic is then

$$2\lambda xy = (ax + by - 1)^2 \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

The condition that the straight line  $BC$  should touch this conic is, as in Art. 374, found to be

$$\lambda = 2(a - l_1)(b - m_1) \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

Similarly, it will be touched by  $AD$  if

$$\lambda = 2(a - l_2)(b - m_2) \dots \dots \dots (3).$$

The required conic has therefore (1) as its equation, the values of  $a$  and  $b$  being given in terms of the quantity  $\lambda$  by means of (2) and (3).

Also  $\lambda$  is any quantity we may choose. Hence we have the system of conics touching the four given lines.

If we solve (2) and (3), we obtain

$$\frac{2b - (m_1 + m_2)}{m_1 - m_2} = - \frac{2a - (l_1 + l_2)}{l_1 - l_2} = \pm \sqrt{1 - \frac{2\lambda}{(l_1 - l_2)(m_1 - m_2)}}.$$

**409.** *The conic  $LM = R^2$ , where  $L = 0$ ,  $M = 0$ , and  $R = 0$  are the equations of straight lines.*

The equation  $LM = 0$  represents a conic, viz. two straight lines.

Hence, by Art. 385, II, the equation

$$LM = R^2 \dots \dots \dots (1),$$

represents a conic touching the straight lines  $L = 0$ , and  $M = 0$ , where  $R = 0$  meets them.

Thus  $L = 0$  and  $M = 0$  are a pair of tangents and  $R = 0$  the corresponding chord of contact.

Every point which satisfies the equations  $M = \mu^2 L$  and  $R = \mu L$  clearly lies on (1).

Hence the point of intersection of the straight lines  $M = \mu^2 L$  and  $R = \mu L$  lies on the conic (1) for all values of  $\mu$ . This point may be called the point " $\mu$ ."

**410.** *To find the equation to the straight line joining two points " $\mu$ " and " $\mu'$ " and the equation to the tangent at the point " $\mu$ ."*

Consider the equation

$$aL + bM + R = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

Since it is of the first degree and contains two constants  $a$  and  $b$ , at our disposal, it can be made to represent any straight line.

If it pass through the point " $\mu$ " it must be satisfied by the substitutions  $M = \mu^2 L$  and  $R = \mu L$ .

Hence 
$$a + b\mu^2 + \mu = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

Similarly, if it pass through the point " $\mu'$ " we have

$$a + b\mu'^2 + \mu' = 0 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

Solving (2) and (3), we have

$$\frac{a}{\mu\mu'} = b = \frac{-1}{\mu + \mu'}.$$

On substitution in (1), the equation to the joining line is

$$L\mu\mu' + M - (\mu + \mu') R = 0.$$

By putting  $\mu' = \mu$  we have, as the equation to the tangent at the point " $\mu$ ,"

$$L\mu^2 + M - 2\mu R = 0.$$

### EXAMPLES XLV

1. Prove that the locus of the foot of the perpendicular let fall from the origin upon tangents to the conic  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 2x$  is the curve  $(h^2 - ab)(x^2 + y^2)^2 + 2(x^2 + y^2)(bx - hy) + y^2 = 0$ .

2. In the conic  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 2y$ , prove that the rectangle contained by the focal distances of the origin is  $\frac{1}{ab - h^2}$ .

3. Tangents are drawn to the conic  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 2x$  from two points on the axis of  $x$  equidistant from the origin; prove that their four points of intersection lie on the conic  $by^2 + hxy = x$ .

If the tangents be drawn from two points on the axis of  $y$  equidistant from the origin, prove that the points of intersection are on a straight line.

4. A system of conics is drawn to pass through four fixed points; prove that

- (1) the polars of a given point all pass through a fixed point, and (2) the locus of the pole of a given line is a conic section.

5. Find the equation to the conic passing through the origin and the points  $(1, 1)$ ,  $(-1, 1)$ ,  $(2, 0)$ , and  $(3, -2)$ . Determine its species.

6. Prove that the locus of the centre of all conics circumscribing the quadrilateral formed by the straight lines  $y=0$ ,  $x=0$ ,  $x+y=1$ , and  $y-x=2$  is the conic  $2x^2 - 2y^2 + 4xy + 5y - 2 = 0$ .

7. Prove that the locus of the centres of all conics, which pass through the centres of the inscribed and escribed circles of a triangle, is the circumscribing circle of the triangle.

8. Prove that the locus of the extremities of the principal axes of all conics, which can be described through the four points  $(\pm a, 0)$  and  $(0, \pm b)$ , is the curve

$$\left(\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2}\right)(x^2 + y^2) = x^2 - y^2.$$

9.  $A, B, C$ , and  $D$  are four fixed points and  $AB$  and  $CD$  meet in  $O$ ; any straight line passing through  $O$  meets  $AD$  and  $BC$  in  $R$  and  $R'$  respectively, and any conic passing through the four given points in  $S$  and  $S'$ ; prove that

$$\frac{1}{OR} + \frac{1}{OR'} = \frac{1}{OS} + \frac{1}{OS'}.$$

10. Prove that, in general, two parabolas can be drawn through four points, and that either two, or none, can be drawn.

[For a parabola we have  $h = \pm \sqrt{\lambda\lambda'\mu\mu'}$ .]

11. Prove that the locus of the centres of the conics circumscribing a quadrilateral  $ABCD$  (Fig. Art. 405) is a conic passing through the vertices  $O$ ,  $L$ , and  $M$  of the quadrilateral and through the middle points of  $AB$ ,  $AC$ ,  $AD$ ,  $BC$ ,  $BD$ , and  $CD$ .

Prove also that its asymptotes are parallel to the axes of the parabolas through the four points.

[The required locus is obtained by eliminating  $h$  from the equations  $2\mu\mu'x + 2hy - \mu\mu'(\lambda + \lambda') = 0$ , and  $2hx + 2\lambda\lambda'y - \lambda\lambda'(\mu + \mu') = 0$ .]

12. By taking the case when  $\lambda\lambda' = -\mu\mu'$  and when  $AB$  and  $CD$  are perpendicular (in which case  $ABC$  is a triangle having  $D$  as its orthocentre and  $AL$ ,  $BM$ , and  $CO$  are the perpendiculars on its sides), prove that all conics passing through the vertices of a triangle and its orthocentre are rectangular hyperbolas.

From Ex. 11 prove also that the locus of its centre is the nine point circle of the triangle.

13. Prove that the triangle  $OML$  (Fig. Art. 405) is such that each angular point is the pole of the opposite side with respect to any conic passing through the angular points  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ , and  $D$  of the quadrilateral.

[Such a triangle is called a **Self Conjugate Triangle**.]

14. Prove that only one rectangular hyperbola can be drawn through four given points. Prove also that the nine point circles of the four triangles that can be formed by four given points meet in a point, viz., the centre of the rectangular hyperbola passing through the four points.

15. By using the result of Art. 374, prove that in general, two conics can be drawn through four points to touch a given straight line.

A system of conics is inscribed in the same quadrilateral; prove that

16. the locus of the pole of a given straight line with respect to this system is a straight line.

17. the locus of their centres is a straight line passing through the middle points of the diagonals of the quadrilateral.

18. Prove that the triangle formed by the three diagonals  $OL$ ,  $AC$ , and  $BD$  (Fig. Art. 408) is such that each of its angular points is the pole of the opposite side with respect to any conic inscribed in the quadrilateral.

19. Prove that only one parabola can be drawn to touch any four given lines.

Hence prove that, if the four triangles that can be made by four lines be drawn, the orthocentres of these four straight lines lie on a straight line, and their circumcircles meet in a point.

## ANSWERS

5.  $6x^2 + 12xy + 7y^2 - 12x - 13y = 0$ .
17. The narrow ellipse (Art. 408), which is very nearly coincident with the straight line  $BD$ , is one of the conics inscribed in the quadrilateral, and its centre is the middle point of  $BD$ . This middle point, and similarly the middle points of  $AC$  and  $OL$ , therefore lie on the centre-locus.

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. The line  $x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = r$  will touch the given conic if the equation

$$ax^2 + 2hx \cdot \frac{r - x \cos \theta}{\sin \theta} + b \left( \frac{r - x \cos \theta}{\sin \theta} \right)^2 = 2x$$

has equal roots, the condition for which is

$$\begin{aligned} \{hr \sin \theta - br \cos \theta - \sin^2 \theta\}^2 \\ = br^2 (a \sin^2 \theta - 2h \sin \theta \cdot \cos \theta + b \cos^2 \theta), \end{aligned}$$

which is the polar equation of the locus required.

Changing to Cartesians, we have

$$(hy - bx)^2 + \frac{y^4}{(x^2 + y^2)^2} + \frac{2y^2}{x^2 + y^2} (bx - hy) = b (ay^2 - 2hxy + bx^2),$$

$$\text{or } (h^2 - ab)(x^2 + y^2)^2 + y^2 + 2(x^2 + y^2)(bx - hy) = 0.$$

2. The ordinate of the centre is

$$\frac{a}{ab - h^2}. \quad [\text{Art. 352.}]$$

Therefore the diameter,  $DCD'$ , parallel to the tangent  $y = 0$ , cuts the curve in points given by

$$ax^2 + \frac{2ah}{ab - h^2} \cdot x + \frac{a^2b}{(ab - h^2)^2} - \frac{2a}{ab - h^2} = 0.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore CD^2 = \left( \frac{x_1 - x_2}{2} \right)^2 &= \frac{h^2}{(ab - h^2)^2} - \frac{ab}{(ab - h^2)^2} \\ &\quad + \frac{2}{(ab - h^2)} = \frac{1}{ab - h^2}. \end{aligned}$$

$$SO \cdot S'O = CD^2 = \frac{1}{ab - h^2} \quad [\text{Art. 287}].$$



3. As in Art. 374, the condition that the line  $y = m(x - c)$  should touch the conic is

$$m^2c^2(h^2 - ab) + 2mc(h + bm) + 1 = 0.$$

Hence the equation of the tangents through the point  $(c, 0)$  is

$$c^2y^2(h^2 - ab) + 2chxy(x - c) + 2cbxy^2 + (x - c)^2 = 0,$$

and similarly those through  $(-c, 0)$  are

$$c^2y^2(h^2 - ab) - 2chxy(x + c) - 2cbxy^2 + (x + c)^2 = 0.$$

On subtraction, the four points of intersection lie on

$$by^2 + hxy = x.$$

From the condition of Art. 374, the line  $x = m(y - c)$  will touch the conic if  $c^2m(h^2 - ab) + m - 2chm - 2cb = 0$ .

Hence the other tangent through the point  $(0, c)$  is

$$(h^2 - ab)c^2x + x - 2cb(y - c) - 2chx = 0,$$

and that through  $(-c, 0)$  is

$$(h^2 - ab)c^2x + x + 2cb(y + c) + 2chx = 0.$$

Whence, on subtraction, the point of intersection lies on

$$by + hx = 0.$$

4. (1) Let the fixed point be the origin, and  $S - \lambda S' = 0$  the equation of the system of conics. [Art. 380.]

The equation of its polar is

$$gx + fy + c - \lambda(g'x + f'y + c') = 0,$$

which passes through the intersection of the lines

$$gx + fy + c = 0 \text{ and } g'x + f'y + c' = 0.$$

(2) Let  $y = 0$  be the given line.

It will be identical with the polar of  $(x', y')$  if, (Art. 375),

$$ax' + hy' + g - \lambda(a'x' + b'y' + g') = 0, \text{ and}$$

$$gx' + fy' + c - \lambda(g'x' + f'y' + c') = 0.$$

Eliminating  $\lambda$ , the locus of  $(x', y')$  is a conic.

5. The equations of the sides of the quadrilateral are easily found to be

$$y - 1 = 0; \quad x + y - 2 = 0; \quad y + 2x - 4 = 0; \quad \text{and } 3x + 4y = 1.$$

Therefore the equation of any conic passing through the

four points is  $(y-1)(y+2x-4) = \lambda(x+y-2)(3x+4y-1)$ , which passes through  $(0, 0)$  if  $\lambda = 2$ .

Hence etc. The conic is an ellipse, since  $h^2 < ab$ .

6. The centre of the conic  $x(y-x-2) = \lambda y(x+y-1)$  is given by (Art. 352)

$$\lambda x - x + 2\lambda y - \lambda = 0, \text{ and } 2x + \lambda y - y + 2 = 0.$$

Eliminating  $\lambda$ , we obtain, for the locus of the centre,

$$2x^2 + 4xy - 2y^2 + 5y - 2 = 0.$$

7. The centre of the conic of Art. 405 is given by

$$2\mu\mu'x + 2hy - \mu\mu'(\lambda + \lambda') = 0,$$

and

$$2hx + 2\lambda\lambda'y - \lambda\lambda'(\mu + \mu') = 0.$$

Eliminating  $h$ , we have

$$2(\mu\mu'x^2 - \lambda\lambda'y^2) - \mu\mu'(\lambda + \lambda')x + \lambda\lambda'(\mu + \mu')y = 0.$$

If the axes  $AB$  and  $CD$  are at right angles and  $AD$  is perpendicular to  $BC$ , then  $\mu\mu' + \lambda\lambda' = 0$ , and the centre-locus becomes

$$2(x^2 + y^2) - (\lambda + \lambda')x - (\mu + \mu')y = 0,$$

which is the equation to the nine-point circle of the triangle  $ABC$ , since it passes through the middle points of  $AB$ ,  $BC$  and  $CA$ , whose coordinates are

$$\left(\frac{\lambda + \lambda'}{2}, 0\right), \left(\frac{\lambda'}{2}, \frac{\mu}{2}\right) \text{ and } \left(\frac{\lambda}{2}, \frac{\mu'}{2}\right).$$

This proves the theorem. For, if  $A, B, C$  are the  $e$ -centres of a triangle, the latter is the pedal triangle of  $ABC$ , and hence its circumcircle is the nine-point circle of  $ABC$ .

8. All the conics through the four points  $(\pm a, 0)$ ,  $(0, \pm b)$  are of the form

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} + 2\lambda xy = 1.$$

If an axis is inclined at  $\alpha$ , the line  $x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = p$  touches the conic at the point  $(p \cos \alpha, p \sin \alpha)$ , and is therefore identical with

$$x \left( \frac{p \cos \alpha}{a^2} + \lambda p \sin \alpha \right) + y \left( \lambda p \cos \alpha + \frac{p \sin \alpha}{b^2} \right) = 1.$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{a^2} + \lambda \tan \alpha = \frac{1}{b^2} + \lambda \cot \alpha = \frac{1}{p^2}.$$

Eliminating  $\lambda$ , the polar equation of the required locus is

$$\left(\frac{1}{r^2} - \frac{1}{a^2}\right) \cot \theta = \left(\frac{1}{r^2} - \frac{1}{b^2}\right) \tan \theta,$$

or, in Cartesians,

$$\left\{\frac{1}{x^2 + y^2} - \frac{1}{a^2}\right\} \frac{x}{y} = \left\{\frac{1}{x^2 + y^2} - \frac{1}{b^2}\right\} \frac{y}{x},$$

*i.e.* 
$$\left(\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2}\right)(x^2 + y^2) = x^2 - y^2.$$

9. Let 
$$\left(\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} - 1\right)\left(\frac{x}{a'} + \frac{y}{b'} - 1\right) + \lambda xy = 0$$

be the equation of any conic through the four points. [Art. 406.]

Changing to polar coordinates, this equation is

$$r^2 \left( \frac{1}{a} \cos \theta + \frac{1}{b} \sin \theta - \frac{1}{r} \right) - r \left\{ \cos \theta \left( \frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{a'} \right) + \sin \theta \left( \frac{1}{b} + \frac{1}{b'} \right) \right\} + 1 = 0.$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{OS} + \frac{1}{OS'} = \cos \theta \left( \frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{a'} \right) + \sin \theta \left( \frac{1}{b} + \frac{1}{b'} \right).$$

Also 
$$\frac{1}{OR} = \frac{\cos \theta}{a} + \frac{\sin \theta}{b}, \text{ and } \frac{1}{OR'} = \frac{\cos \theta}{a'} + \frac{\sin \theta}{b'}.$$

[Art. 105.]

$$\therefore \frac{1}{OR} + \frac{1}{OR'} = \frac{1}{OS} + \frac{1}{OS'}.$$

10. There will be two values of  $h$  or none according as  $\lambda\lambda'\mu\mu'$  is positive or negative.

11. As in Ex. 7, the centre locus is

$$2(\mu\mu'x^2 - \lambda\lambda'y^2) - \mu\mu'(\lambda + \lambda')x - \lambda\lambda'(\mu + \mu')y = 0.$$

The locus passes through the point  $\left(\frac{\lambda + \lambda'}{2}, 0\right)$ , *i.e.* through the middle point of the line joining two of the fixed points, and therefore through that of the line joining any other two. It also passes through the origin and hence by symmetry through  $L$  and  $M$ .

Its asymptotes and the axes of the parabolas through the four points are parallel to  $\sqrt{\mu\mu'}x \pm \sqrt{\lambda\lambda'}y = 0$ . (Cf. Ex. 10.)

12. See Ex. 7.

13. The polar of  $(0, 0)$  is

$$x\left(\frac{1}{\lambda} + \frac{1}{\lambda'}\right) + y\left(\frac{1}{\mu} + \frac{1}{\mu'}\right) = 2,$$

which passes through the intersections of

$$\frac{x}{\lambda} + \frac{y}{\mu} = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{x}{\lambda'} + \frac{y}{\mu'} = 1,$$

and of  $\frac{x}{\lambda'} + \frac{y}{\mu} = 1$  and  $\frac{x}{\lambda} + \frac{y}{\mu'} = 1$ .

Hence etc. by symmetry.

14. Let  $S=0$  and  $S'=0$  be any two of the conics. Then  $S-\lambda S'=0$  for different values of  $\lambda$  represents all the conics through their intersections. It will be a rectangular hyperbola if  $a+b-\lambda(a'+b')=0$ , and hence there is only one value of  $\lambda$ .

By Ex. 12, each of the four nine-point circles passes through the centre.

15. Apply the condition of Art. 374 to the conic of Art. 405; since it contains  $h^2$ , there will in general be two conics.

16. If  $lx+my=1$  be the polar of  $(x', y')$  with regard to the conic of Art. 408, then

$$\frac{a^2x' + (ab - \lambda)y' - a}{l} = \frac{(ab - \lambda)x' + b^2y' - b}{m} = ax' + by' - 1.$$

$$\therefore (a-l)(ax' + by' - 1) = \lambda y' \quad \text{and} \quad (b-m)(ax' + by' - 1) = \lambda x'.$$

$$\therefore \frac{x'}{b-m} = \frac{y'}{a-l} = \frac{ax' + by' - 1}{\lambda}$$

$$= \frac{ax' + by' - 1}{2(a-l_1)(b-m_1)}, \quad \text{by Art. 408 (2),} = \frac{1}{\rho} \text{ (say).} \dots (I)$$

$$\therefore b = \rho x' + m, \quad \text{and} \quad a = \rho y' + l.$$

Substitute for  $a$  and  $b$  in the last pair of equations (1), we have

$$\rho \{x'(\rho y' + l) + y'(\rho x' + m) - 1\} = 2(\rho y' + l - l_1)(\rho x' + m - m_1),$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \rho \{(2l_1 - l)x' + (2m_1 - m)y' - 1\} = 2(l - l_1)(m - m_1).$$

Similarly,

$$\rho \{(2l_2 - l)x' + (2m_2 - m)y' - 1\} = 2(l - l_2)(m - m_2).$$

Eliminating  $\rho$ , the locus of  $(x', y')$  is a straight line.

17. The centre of the conic of Art 408 is given by

$$a(ax + by - 1) = \lambda y, \text{ and } b(ax + by - 1) = \lambda x,$$

whence  $ax = by$ .

$$\therefore a(2ax - 1) = \lambda y = 2y(a - l_1)(b - m_1) = 2(a - l_1)(ax - m_1y).$$

$$\therefore a(2l_1x + 2m_1y - 1) = 2l_1m_1y.$$

$$\text{Similarly, } a(2l_2x + 2m_2y - 1) = 2l_2m_2y.$$

$$\therefore 2x\left(\frac{1}{m_1} - \frac{1}{m_2}\right) + 2y\left(\frac{1}{l_1} - \frac{1}{l_2}\right) = \frac{1}{l_1m_1} - \frac{1}{l_2m_2},$$

which passes through  $\left(\frac{1}{2l_1}, \frac{1}{2m_2}\right)$ ;  $\left(\frac{1}{2l_2}, \frac{1}{2m_1}\right)$ , *i.e.* through the middle points of  $BD$  and  $AC$ .

18. The equation to  $OL$  is  $(l_1 - l_2)x + (m_1 - m_2)y = 0$  and, if it be identical with the polar of  $(x', y')$  with regard to the conic of Art. 408, then

$$\frac{a^2x' + (ab - \lambda)y' - a}{l_1 - l_2} = \frac{(ab - \lambda)x' + b^2y' - b}{m_1 - m_2},$$

$$\text{and } ax' + by' - 1 = 0, \text{ whence } \frac{y'}{l_1 - l_2} = \frac{x'}{m_1 - m_2}.$$

Also, by subtracting equations (2) and (3) of Art. 408,

$$a(m_1 - m_2) + b(l_1 - l_2) = l_1m_1 - l_2m_2.$$

$$\therefore \frac{x'}{m_1 - m_2} = \frac{y'}{l_1 - l_2} = \frac{ax' + by'}{a(m_1 - m_2) + b(l_1 - l_2)} = \frac{1}{l_1m_1 - l_2m_2}.$$

But these are the coordinates of the point  $M$ , since the latter point is the intersection of the two straight lines

$$l_1x + m_2y = 1 \text{ and } l_2x + m_1y = 1.$$

Hence  $M$  is the pole of  $OL$ , etc.

19. The conic of Art. 408 is a parabola only if  $\lambda = 2ab$ . The orthocentres lie on its directrix and the circumcircles all pass through its focus. [Arts. 232, 234.]

## Chapter 17

# MISCELLANEOUS PROPOSITIONS

On the four normals that can be drawn from any point in the plane of a central conic to the conic.

**411.** LET the equation to the conic be

$$Ax^2 + By^2 = 1 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

[If  $A$  and  $B$  be both positive, it is an ellipse; if one be positive and the other negative, it is a hyperbola.]

The equation to the normal at any point  $(x', y')$  of the curve is

$$\frac{x - x'}{Ax'} = \frac{y - y'}{By'}.$$

If this normal pass through the given point  $(h, k)$ , we have

$$\frac{h - x'}{Ax'} = \frac{k - y'}{By'},$$

*i. e.*  $(A - B)x'y' + Bhy' - Akx' = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2).$

This is an equation to determine the point  $(x', y')$  such that the normal at it goes through the point  $(h, k)$ . It shews that the point  $(x', y')$  lies on the rectangular hyperbola

$$(A - B)xy + Bhy - Akx = 0 \dots\dots\dots (3).$$

The point  $(x', y')$  is therefore both on the curve (3) and on the curve (1). Also these two conics intersect in four points, real or imaginary. There are therefore four points,

in general, lying on (1), such that the normals at them pass through the given point  $(h, k)$ .

Also the hyperbola (3) passes through the origin and the point  $(h, k)$  and its asymptotes are parallel to the axes.

Hence *From a given point four normals can in general be drawn to a given central conic, and their feet all lie on a certain rectangular hyperbola, which passes through the given point and the centre of the conic, and has its asymptotes parallel to the axes of the given conic.*

**412.** *To find the conditions that the normals at the points where two given straight lines meet a central conic may meet in a point.*

Let the conic be

$$Ax^2 + By^2 = 1 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

and let the normals to it at the points where it is met by the straight lines

$$l_1x + m_1y = 1 \dots\dots\dots (2),$$

and

$$l_2x + m_2y = 1 \dots\dots\dots (3)$$

meet in the point  $(h, k)$ .

By Art. 384, the equation to any conic passing through the intersection of (1) with (2) and (3) is

$$Ax^2 + By^2 - 1 + \lambda (l_1x + m_1y - 1) (l_2x + m_2y - 1) = 0\dots(4).$$

Since these intersections are the feet of the four normals drawn from  $(h, k)$ , then, by the last article, the conic

$$(A - B)xy + Bhy - Akx = 0 \dots\dots\dots (5)$$

passes through the same four points.

For some value of  $\lambda$  it therefore follows that (4) and (5) are the same.

Comparing these equations, we have, since the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  and the constant term in (5) are all zero,

$$A + \lambda l_1 l_2 = 0, \quad B + \lambda m_1 m_2 = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad -1 + \lambda = 0.$$

Therefore  $\lambda = 1$ , and hence

$$l_1 l_2 = -A, \quad \text{and} \quad m_1 m_2 = -B\dots\dots\dots(6).$$

The relations (6) are the required conditions.

Also, comparing the remaining coefficients in (4) and (5), we have

$$\frac{\lambda (l_1 m_2 + l_2 m_1)}{A - B} = \frac{-\lambda (l_1 + l_2)}{-Ak} = \frac{-\lambda (m_1 + m_2)}{Bh},$$

so that 
$$h = -\frac{A - B}{B} \frac{m_1 + m_2}{l_1 m_2 + l_2 m_1} \dots\dots\dots (7),$$

and 
$$k = \frac{A - B}{A} \frac{l_1 + l_2}{l_1 m_2 + l_2 m_1} \dots\dots\dots (8).$$

**Cor. 1.** If the given conic be an ellipse, we have

$$A = \frac{1}{a^2} \text{ and } B = \frac{1}{b^2}.$$

The relations (6) then give

$$a^2 l_1 l_2 = b^2 m_1 m_2 = -1 \dots\dots\dots (9),$$

and the coordinates of the point of concurrence are

$$h = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2} \frac{m_1 + m_2}{l_1 m_2 + l_2 m_1} = l_1 (a^2 - b^2) \cdot \frac{1 - b^2 m_1^2}{a^2 l_1^2 + b^2 m_1^2},$$

and 
$$k = -\frac{a^2 - b^2}{b^2} \frac{l_1 + l_2}{l_1 m_2 + l_2 m_1} = -m_1 (a^2 - b^2) \cdot \frac{1 - a^2 l_1^2}{a^2 l_1^2 + b^2 m_1^2}.$$

**Cor. 2.** If the equations to the straight lines be given in the form  $y = mx + c$  and  $y = m'x + c'$ , we have

$$m = -\frac{l_1}{m_1}, \quad c = \frac{1}{m_1}, \quad m' = -\frac{l_2}{m_2}, \quad \text{and} \quad c' = \frac{1}{m_2}.$$

The relations (9) then give

$$mm' = \frac{b^2}{a^2} \text{ and } cc' = -b^2.$$

**413.** *If the normals at four points P, Q, R, and S of an ellipse meet in a point, the sum of their eccentric angles is equal to an odd multiple of two right angles. [Cf. Art. 293.]*



If  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma,$  and  $\delta$  be the eccentric angles of the four points, the equations to  $PQ$  and  $RS$  are

$$y = -x \cdot \frac{b}{a} \cot \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} + \frac{b \cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}}{\sin \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}},$$

and

$$y = -x \cdot \frac{b}{a} \cot \frac{\gamma + \delta}{2} + \frac{b \cos \frac{\gamma - \delta}{2}}{\sin \frac{\gamma + \delta}{2}}. \quad [\text{Art. 259.}]$$

Since the normals at these points meet in a point, we have, by Art. 412, Cor. 2,

$$\frac{b^2}{a^2} = mm' = \frac{b^2}{a^2} \cot \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \cot \frac{\gamma + \delta}{2}.$$

$$\therefore \tan \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = \cot \frac{\gamma + \delta}{2} = \tan \left( \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\gamma + \delta}{2} \right).$$

$$\therefore \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = n\pi + \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\gamma + \delta}{2},$$

*i.e.*

$$\alpha + \beta + \gamma + \delta = (2n + 1)\pi.$$

**414. Ex. 1.** *If the normals at the points  $A, B, C,$  and  $D$  of an ellipse meet in a point  $O,$  prove that  $SA \cdot SB \cdot SC \cdot SD = \lambda^2 \cdot SO^2,$  where  $S$  is one of the foci and  $\lambda$  is a constant.*

Let the equation to the ellipse be

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

and let  $O$  be the point  $(h, k).$

As in Art. 411, the feet of the normals drawn from  $O$  lie on the hyperbola

$$\left( \frac{1}{a^2} - \frac{1}{b^2} \right) xy + \frac{hy}{b^2} - \frac{kx}{a^2} = 0,$$

*i.e.*

$$a^2 e^2 xy = a^2 hy - b^2 kx \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

The coordinates of the points  $A, B, C,$  and  $D$  are therefore found by solving (1) and (2).

From (2) we have 
$$y = \frac{b^2 kx}{a^2 (h - e^2 x)}.$$

Substituting in (1) and simplifying, we obtain

$$x^4 a^2 e^4 - 2ha^2 e^2 x^3 + x^2 (a^2 h^2 + b^2 k^2 - a^4 e^4) + 2he^2 a^4 x - a^4 h^2 = 0 \dots (3).$$

If  $x_1, x_2, x_3,$  and  $x_4$  be the roots of this equation, we have (Art. 2),

$$\Sigma x_1 = \frac{2h}{e^2}, \quad \Sigma x_1 x_2 = \frac{a^2 h^2 + b^2 k^2 - a^4 e^4}{a^2 e^4},$$

$$\Sigma x_1 x_2 x_3 = -\frac{2ha^2}{e^2}, \quad \text{and} \quad x_1 x_2 x_3 x_4 = -\frac{a^2 h^2}{e^4}.$$

If  $S$  be the point  $(-ae, 0)$  we have, by Art. 251,

$$SA = a + ex_1.$$

$$\therefore SA \cdot SB \cdot SC \cdot SD = (a + ex_1)(a + ex_2)(a + ex_3)(a + ex_4)$$

$$= a^4 + a^3 e \Sigma x_1 + a^2 e^2 \Sigma x_1 x_2 + a e^3 \Sigma x_1 x_2 x_3 + e^4 x_1 x_2 x_3 x_4$$

$$= \frac{b^2}{e^2} \{ (h + ae)^2 + k^2 \}, \text{ on substitution and simplification,}$$

$$= \frac{b^2}{e^2} \cdot SO^2.$$

**Aliter.** If  $\rho$  stand for one of the quantities  $SA, SB, SC,$  or  $SD$  we have

$$\rho = a + ex,$$

*i.e.* 
$$x = \frac{1}{e}(\rho - a).$$

Substituting this value in (3) we obtain an equation in the fourth degree, and easily have

$$\rho_1 \rho_2 \rho_3 \rho_4 = \frac{b^2}{e^2} [(h + ae)^2 + k^2], \text{ as before.}$$

**Ex. 2.** If the normals at four points  $P, Q, R,$  and  $S$  of a central conic meet in a point, and if  $PQ$  pass through a fixed point, find the locus of the middle point of  $RS$ .

Let the equation to  $PQ$  be

$$y = m_1 x + c_1 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

and that to  $RS$  
$$y = m_2 x + c_2 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

If the equation to the given conic be  $Ax^2 + By^2 = 1,$  we then have (by Art. 412, Cor. 2)

$$m_1 m_2 = \frac{A}{B} \dots\dots\dots(3),$$

and 
$$c_1 c_2 = -\frac{1}{B} \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

If  $(f, g)$  be the fixed point through which  $PQ$  passes, we have

$$g = m_1 f + c_1 \dots\dots\dots(5).$$

Now the middle point of  $RS$  lies on the diameter conjugate to it, *i.e.* by Art. 376, on the diameter

$$y = -\frac{A}{Bm_2} x,$$

*i.e.,* by (3), 
$$y = -m_1 x \dots\dots\dots(6).$$

Now, from (4) and (5),

$$c_2 = -\frac{1}{B(g - fm_1)},$$

so that, by (3), the equation to  $RS$  is

$$y = \frac{A}{Bm_1}x - \frac{1}{B(g - fm_1)} \dots\dots\dots(7).$$

Eliminating  $m_1$  between (6) and (7), we easily have, as the equation to the required locus,

$$(Ax^2 + By^2)(gx + fy) + xy = 0.$$

**Cor.** From equation (6) it follows that the diameter conjugate to  $RS$  is equally inclined with  $PQ$  to the axis, and hence that the points  $P$  and  $Q$  and the ends of the diameter conjugate to  $RS$  are concyclic (Art. 400).

**EXAMPLES XLVI**

1. If the sum of the squares of the four normals drawn from a point  $O$  to an ellipse be constant, prove that the locus of  $O$  is a conic.

2. If the sum of the reciprocals of the distances from a focus of the feet of the four normals drawn from a point  $O$  to an ellipse be  $\frac{4}{\text{lat. rect.}}$ , prove that the locus of  $O$  is a parabola passing through that focus.

3. If four normals be drawn from a point  $O$  to an ellipse and if the sum of the squares of the reciprocals of perpendiculars from the centre upon the tangents drawn at their feet be constant, prove that the locus of  $O$  is a hyperbola.

4. The normals at four points of an ellipse are concurrent and they meet the major axis in  $G_1, G_2, G_3,$  and  $G_4$ ; prove that

$$\frac{1}{CG_1} + \frac{1}{CG_2} + \frac{1}{CG_3} + \frac{1}{CG_4} = \frac{4}{CG_1 + CG_2 + CG_3 + CG_4}.$$

5. If the normals to a central conic at four points  $L, M, N,$  and  $P$  be concurrent, and if the circle through  $L, M,$  and  $N$  meet the curve again in  $P'$ , prove that  $PP'$  is a diameter.

6. Shew that the locus of the foci of the rectangular hyperbolas which pass through the four points in which the normals drawn from any point on a given straight line meet an ellipse is a pair of conics.

7. If the normals at points of an ellipse, whose eccentric angles are  $\alpha, \beta,$  and  $\gamma,$  meet in a point, prove that

$$\sin(\beta + \gamma) + \sin(\gamma + \alpha) + \sin(\alpha + \beta) = 0.$$

Hence, by page 235, Ex. 15, shew that if  $PQR$  be a maximum triangle inscribed in an ellipse, the normals at  $P$ ,  $Q$ , and  $R$  are concurrent.

8. Prove that the normals at the points where the straight line  $\frac{x}{a \cos \alpha} + \frac{y}{b \sin \alpha} = 1$  meets the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  meet at the point

$$\left( -ae^2 \cos^3 \alpha, \frac{a^2 e^2}{b} \sin^3 \alpha \right).$$

9. Prove that the loci of the point of intersection of normals at the ends of focal chords of an ellipse are the two ellipses

$$a^2 y^2 (1 + e^2)^2 + b^2 (x \pm ae) (x \mp ae^3) = 0.$$

10. Tangents to the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  are drawn from any point on the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 4$ ; prove that the normals at the points of contact meet on the ellipse  $a^2 x^2 + b^2 y^2 = \frac{1}{4}(a^2 - b^2)^2$ .

11. Any tangent to the rectangular hyperbola  $4xy = ab$  meets the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  in the points  $P$  and  $Q$ ; prove that the normals at  $P$  and  $Q$  meet on a fixed diameter.

12. Chords of an ellipse meet the major axis in the point whose distance from the centre is  $a \sqrt{\frac{a-b}{a+b}}$ ; prove that the normals at its ends meet on a circle.

13. From any point on the normal to the ellipse at the point whose eccentric angle is  $\alpha$  two other normals are drawn to it; prove that the locus of the point of intersection of the corresponding tangents is the curve

$$xy + bx \sin \alpha + ay \cos \alpha = 0.$$

14. Shew that the locus of the intersection of two perpendicular normals to an ellipse is the curve

$$(a^2 + b^2)(x^2 + y^2)(a^2 y^2 + b^2 x^2)^2 = (a^2 - b^2)^2 (a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2)^2.$$

15.  $ABC$  is a triangle inscribed in the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  having each side parallel to the tangent at the opposite angular point; prove that the normals at  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  meet at a point which lies on the ellipse  $a^2 x^2 + b^2 y^2 = \frac{1}{4}(a^2 - b^2)^2$ .

16. The normals at four points of an ellipse meet in a point  $(h, k)$ . Find the equations of the axes of the two parabolas which pass through the four points. Prove that the angle between them is  $2 \tan^{-1} \frac{b}{a}$  and that they are parallel to one or other of the equi-conjugates of the ellipse.

17. Prove that the centre of mean position of the four points on the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ , the normals at which pass through the point  $(\alpha, \beta)$ , is the point

$$\left( \frac{1}{2} \frac{a^2 \alpha}{a^2 - b^2}, -\frac{1}{2} \frac{b^2 \beta}{a^2 - b^2} \right).$$

18. Prove that the product of the three normals drawn from any point to a parabola, divided by the product of the two tangents from the same point, is equal to one quarter of the latus rectum.

19. Prove that the conic  $2aky = (2a - h)y^2 + 4ax^2$  intersects the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  at the feet of the normals drawn to it from the point  $(h, k)$ .

20. From a point  $(h, k)$  four normals are drawn to the rectangular hyperbola  $xy = c^2$ ; prove that the centre of mean position of their feet is the point  $\left(\frac{h}{4}, \frac{k}{4}\right)$ , and that the four feet are such that each is the orthocentre of the triangle formed by the other three.

## ANSWERS

7. Proceed as in Art. 413, and use, in addition, the second result of Art. 412, Cor. 2. From the two results, thus obtained, eliminate  $\delta$ .
9. Take  $l_1x + m_1y - 1 = 0$  (Art. 412, Cor. 1) as a focal chord of the ellipse.
14. If the normals are perpendicular, so also are the tangents; the line  $l_1x + m_1y - 1 = 0$  is therefore the polar with respect to the ellipse of a point  $(\sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \cos \theta, \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \sin \theta)$  on the director circle.
15. The triangle  $ABC$  is a maximum triangle (Page 235, Ex. 15) inscribed in the ellipse.
20. Use the notation of Art. 333.

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. As in Art. 414, Ex. 1,

$$\Sigma x_1 = \frac{2a^2h}{a^2e^2}, \quad \Sigma x_1x_2 = \frac{a^2h^2 + b^2k^2 - a^4e^4}{a^2e^4}.$$

Similarly,  $\therefore \Sigma x_1^2 = \frac{2a^2}{a^4e^4} (a^2h^2 - b^2k^2 + a^4e^4).$

$$\Sigma y_1 = -\frac{2b^2k}{a^2e^2}, \quad \text{and} \quad \Sigma y_1^2 = \frac{2b^2}{a^4e^4} (b^2k^2 - a^2h^2 + a^4e^4).$$

If  $r_1, r_2$  etc. be the lengths of the normals, then

$$\begin{aligned} \Sigma r_1^2 &= \Sigma (h - x_1)^2 + \Sigma (k - y_1)^2 \\ &= 4(h^2 + k^2) - 2h\Sigma x_1 - 2k\Sigma y_1 + \Sigma x_1^2 + \Sigma y_1^2 \\ &= 4(h^2 + k^2) - \frac{4a^2h^2}{a^2e^2} + \frac{4b^2k^2}{a^2e^2} + \frac{2a^2}{a^4e^4} (a^2h^2 - b^2k^2 + a^4e^4) \\ &\quad + \frac{2b^2}{a^4e^4} (b^2k^2 - a^2h^2 + a^4e^4) \\ &= \frac{2h^2(a^2 - 2b^2) + 2k^2(2a^2 - b^2)}{a^2 - b^2} + 2a^2 + 2b^2. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the equation of the locus is

$$x^2(a^2 - 2b^2) + y^2(2a^2 - b^2) = \text{cons.},$$

which is the equation of a conic.

2. See Art. 414, Ex. 1. The equation whose roots are  $SA, SB, SC, SD$  is found by putting  $x = \frac{1}{e}(\rho - a)$ , i.e. is

$$a^2e^2(\rho - a)^4 - 2eha^2(\rho - a)^3 + (\rho - a)^2(a^2h^2 + b^2k^2 - a^4e^4) + 2e^3ha^4(\rho - a) - a^4e^2h^2 = 0.$$

Whence

$$\begin{aligned} \Sigma \frac{1}{SA} &= \frac{4a^5e^2 + 6ha^4e + 2a(a^2h^2 + b^2k^2 - a^4e^4) - 2ha^4e^3}{a^6e^2 + 2ha^5e + a^3(a^2h^2 + b^2k^2 - a^4e^4) - 2ha^5e^3 - a^4e^2h^2} \\ &= \frac{2a}{b^2} \text{ (given).} \end{aligned}$$

After some reduction, this gives  $ae y^2 = b^2(x + ae)$  as the equation to the locus of  $(h, k)$ , which is a parabola passing through  $S$ .

3. If  $p_1, p_2, \dots$ , be the lengths of the perpendiculars, then, from the equation of the tangent at  $(x_1, y_1)$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum \frac{1}{p_1^2} &= \sum \frac{x_1^2}{a^4} + \sum \frac{y_1^2}{b^4} = \frac{2}{a^2 \cdot a^4 e^4} (a^2 h^2 - b^2 k^2 + a^4 e^4) \\ &\quad + \frac{2}{b^2 \cdot a^4 e^4} (b^2 k^2 - a^2 h^2 + a^4 e^4) \text{ [by Ex. 1]} \\ &= \frac{2}{a^2 e^2} \left\{ \frac{k^2}{a^2} - \frac{h^2}{b^2} \right\} + \frac{2}{a^2} + \frac{2}{b^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the condition gives  $\left\{ \frac{y^2}{a^2} - \frac{x^2}{b^2} \right\} = \frac{1}{C^2}$  for the equation of the locus of  $(h, k)$ , which is the equation to a hyperbola.

4. Since  $CG_1 = e^2 CN$ , etc., from equation (3) of Art. 414, Ex. 1, we have

$$\sum \frac{1}{CG_1} = \frac{1}{e^2} \sum \frac{1}{x_1} = \frac{1}{e^2} \cdot \frac{2he^2 a^4}{a^4 h^3} = \frac{2}{h},$$

and  $\frac{4}{\sum CG_1} = \frac{4}{e^2 \sum x_1} = \frac{4a^2 e^4}{e^2 \cdot 2ha^2 e^2} = \frac{2}{h} \therefore \sum \frac{1}{CG_1} = \frac{4}{\sum CG_1}$ .

5. Let  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \delta'$  be eccentric angles of  $L, M, N, P, P'$ .

Then  $\alpha + \beta + \gamma + \delta' = 2n\pi$  (Ex. xxxii. 18),

and  $\alpha + \beta + \gamma + \delta = (2m + 1)\pi$ . [Art. 413.]

$\therefore \delta = \delta' + (2r + 1)\pi$ .  $\therefore \cos \delta = -\cos \delta'$ , and  $\sin \delta = -\sin \delta'$ .

Hence  $PP'$  is a diameter.

6. If  $(h, k)$  lies on a given straight line, then

$$lh + mk = 1. \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

By Art. 393, the equations to find the foci of conic (2) in Art. 414, Ex. 1, become

$$(a^2 e^2 y + b^2 k)^2 - (a^2 e^2 x - a^2 h)^2 = 0, \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

and  $\frac{(a^2 e^2 y + b^2 k)(a^2 e^2 x - a^2 h)}{2a^2 e^2} = a^2 e^2 xy - a^2 hy + b^2 kx$ . ... (3)

Now (2) gives

$$a^2 e^2 (x - y) = a^2 h + b^2 k, \dots\dots\dots(4)$$

or  $a^2 e^2 (x + y) = a^2 h - b^2 k, \dots\dots\dots(5)$

and (3) gives  $a^2 e^4 xy + kb^2 e^2 x - ha^2 e^2 y + b^2 hk = 0$ . ... (6)

Eliminating  $h$  and  $k$  between (1), (4) and (6) we obtain a conic; also the elimination of  $h$  and  $k$  between (1), (5) and (6) gives another conic.

$$7. \text{ Comparing } \frac{x}{a} \cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} + \frac{y}{b} \sin \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = \cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2},$$

$$\text{and } \frac{x}{a} \cos \frac{\gamma + \delta}{2} + \frac{y}{b} \sin \frac{\gamma + \delta}{2} = \cos \frac{\gamma - \delta}{2}$$

$$\text{with } l_1 x + m_1 y = 1 \text{ and } l_2 x + m_2 y = 1,$$

$$\text{and using the condition } l_1 l_2 a^2 = m_1 m_2 b^2 = -1 \text{ [Art. 412],}$$

$$\text{we obtain } \cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \cos \frac{\gamma + \delta}{2} + \cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2} \cos \frac{\gamma - \delta}{2} = 0;$$

whence

$$\begin{aligned} \cos \frac{\alpha + \beta + \gamma + \delta}{2} + \cos \frac{\alpha + \beta - \gamma - \delta}{2} \\ + \cos \frac{\alpha + \gamma - \beta - \delta}{2} + \cos \frac{\alpha + \delta - \beta - \gamma}{2} = 0; \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{but } \alpha + \beta + \gamma + \delta = (2n + 1)\pi. \text{ [Art. 413.]}$$

$$\therefore \sin(\alpha + \beta) + \sin(\beta + \gamma) + \sin(\gamma + \alpha) = 0.$$

$$\text{The eccentric angles of } P, Q, R, a \text{ are } a + \frac{2\pi}{3}, a + \frac{4\pi}{3}.$$

These satisfy the above condition; for

$$\begin{aligned} \sin 2a + \sin \left(2a + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) + \sin \left(2a + \frac{4\pi}{3}\right) \\ = \sin 2a + \cos 2a \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - \sin 2a \frac{1}{2} - \sin 2a \frac{1}{2} - \cos 2a \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

8. Let  $(h, k)$  be the point of intersection of the normals, and let  $lx + my = 1$  be the chord joining the feet of the other two normals which pass through  $(h, k)$ . Then for some value of  $\lambda$ , the conics

$$a^2 e^2 xy + b^2 kx - a^2 hy = 0, \text{ [Art. 414, Ex. 1 (2)]}$$

and

$$\lambda \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1 \right) + \left( \frac{x}{a \cos a} + \frac{y}{b \sin a} - 1 \right) (lx + my - 1) = 0$$

[Art. 380]

must be identical.



Comparing coefficients we obtain

$$\lambda = 1, \frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{l}{a \cos a} = 0, \text{ and } \frac{1}{b^2} + \frac{m}{b \sin a} = 0.$$

$$\therefore la = -\cos a, \text{ and } mb = -\sin a \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

and 
$$\frac{\frac{l}{b \sin a} + \frac{m}{a \cos a}}{a^2 e^2} = \frac{l + \frac{1}{a \cos a}}{-b^2 k} = \frac{m + \frac{1}{b \sin a}}{a^2 h}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{a^2 e^2 \cdot ab \sin a \cos a} = \frac{\sin^2 a}{ab^2 k \cos a} = -\frac{\cos^2 a}{ba^2 h \sin a}, \text{ by (1).}$$

$$\therefore h = -ae^2 \cos^3 a, \quad k = \frac{a^2 e^2}{b} \sin^3 a.$$

9. The chord  $lx + my = 1$  passes through the focus if  $lae = 1$ .

Substitute in the equations of Art. 412, Cor. 1. Then

$$\frac{h}{ae} = \frac{e^2 - e^2 b^2 m^2}{1 + e^2 b^2 m^2}, \text{ and } \frac{k}{ma^2 e^2} = \frac{1 - e^2}{1 + e^2 b^2 m^2}. \quad \therefore k = \frac{e^2 b^2 \cdot m}{1 + e^2 b^2 m^2}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{h + ae}{ae} = \frac{1 + e^2}{1 + e^2 b^2 m^2} \text{ and } \frac{h - ae^3}{ae} = -\frac{e^2 b^2 m^2 (1 + e^2)}{1 + e^2 b^2 m^2}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{(h + ae)(h - ae^3)}{a^2 e^2} = -\frac{(1 + e^2)^2 e^2 b^2 m^2}{(1 + e^2 b^2 m^2)^2} = -\frac{(1 + e^2)^2 k^2}{e^2 b^2}.$$

Therefore the locus of  $(h, k)$  is

$$a^2 y^2 (1 + e^2)^2 + b^2 (x + ae)(x - ae^3) = 0.$$

Similarly, if the chord passes through the other focus.

10. The polar of  $(2a \cos \phi, 2b \sin \phi)$ , which is any point on  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 4$ , with respect to  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ , is

$$\frac{2x \cos \phi}{a} + \frac{2y \sin \phi}{b} = 1. \quad [\text{Art. 274.}]$$

Put  $l = \frac{2 \cos \phi}{a}$ ,  $m = \frac{2 \sin \phi}{b}$  in the equations of Art. 414, Cor. 1.

$$\therefore h = \frac{2 \cos \phi}{a} (a^2 - b^2) \frac{1 - 4 \sin^2 \phi}{4};$$

$$k = -\frac{2 \sin \phi}{b} (a^2 - b^2) \frac{1 - 4 \cos^2 \phi}{4}.$$

$$\therefore 4a^2h^2 + 4b^2k^2 = (a^2 - b^2)^2 \{ \cos^2 \phi (1 - 4 \sin^2 \phi)^2 + \sin^2 \phi (1 - 4 \cos^2 \phi)^2 \} = (a^2 - b^2)^2.$$

Hence the required locus is  $a^2x^2 + b^2y^2 = \frac{1}{4} (a^2 - b^2)^2$ .

11. The intersections of  $lx + my = 1$  with  $4xy = ab$  are given by  $4lx^2 - 4x + abm = 0$ .

Therefore this line will be a tangent if  $lmab = 1$ .

By Art. 412, Ex. 1, the intersection of the normals at the extremities are

$$\frac{x}{la^2e^2} = \frac{1 - b^2m^2}{a^2l^2 + b^2m^2} \text{ and } \frac{y}{-ma^2e^2} = \frac{1 - a^2l^2}{a^2l^2 + b^2m^2}.$$

Dividing,

$$-\frac{mx}{ly} = \frac{1 - b^2m^2}{1 - a^2l^2} = \frac{lmab - b^2m^2}{lmab - a^2l^2} = \frac{bm(al - bm)}{al(bm - al)} = -\frac{bm}{al}.$$

$\therefore ax = by$ , which is a diameter.

12. If  $lx + my = 1$  be the equation to the chord,

$$\frac{1}{l} = a \sqrt{\frac{a-b}{a+b}} \quad \therefore a^2l^2 = \frac{a+b}{a-b}.$$

Also  $l = \frac{1}{a} \sqrt{\frac{a+b}{a-b}} = \frac{1}{a} \cdot \frac{c}{a-b}$ , where  $c^2 = a^2 - b^2$ .

Substitute in equations of Art. 412, Cor. 1.

$$\therefore x = \frac{c^3}{a(a-b)} \cdot \frac{1 - b^2m^2}{\frac{a+b}{a-b} + b^2m^2};$$

$$\therefore \frac{xa}{c} = \frac{c^2(1 - b^2m^2)}{(a+b) + (a-b)b^2m^2} \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

and

$$y = \frac{m \cdot c^2 \cdot 2b}{(a+b) + (a-b)b^2m^2}; \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

(1) gives

$$b^2m^2 = \frac{c^3 - xa(a+b)}{c^3 + xa(a-b)}, \dots\dots\dots(3)$$

and then (2) gives  $yac = bm [c^3 + xa(a-b)] \dots\dots\dots(4)$

Eliminating  $m$  from (3) and (4), we have

$$y^2 a^2 c^2 = \{c^3 + xa(a-b)\} \{c^3 - xa(a+b)\} = c^6 - 2abc^3x - x^2 a^2 c^2.$$

This reduces to  $\left(x + \frac{bc}{a}\right)^2 + y^2 = c^2$ , which is a circle.

**13.** Let  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  be the eccentric angles of the points of contact of the corresponding tangents.

$$\text{Then } x = a \frac{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\beta + \gamma)}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\beta - \gamma)}, \quad y = b \frac{\sin \frac{1}{2}(\beta + \gamma)}{\cos \frac{1}{2}(\beta - \gamma)}, \quad [\text{Art. 265}]$$

and  $\sin(\beta + \gamma) + \sin(\alpha + \gamma) + \sin(\beta + \alpha) = 0$ . [Ex. 7.]

$$\therefore 2 \sin \frac{\beta + \gamma}{2} \cos \frac{\beta + \gamma}{2} + 2 \sin \left\{ \alpha + \frac{\beta + \gamma}{2} \right\} \cos \frac{\beta - \gamma}{2} = 0.$$

$$\therefore \frac{\sin \frac{\beta + \gamma}{2} \cdot \cos \frac{\beta + \gamma}{2}}{\cos^2 \frac{\beta - \gamma}{2}} + \sin \alpha \cdot \frac{\cos \frac{\beta + \gamma}{2}}{\cos \frac{\beta - \gamma}{2}} + \cos \alpha \cdot \frac{\sin \frac{\beta + \gamma}{2}}{\cos \frac{\beta - \gamma}{2}} = 0.$$

$$\therefore \frac{xy}{ab} + \frac{x \sin \alpha}{a} + \frac{y \cos \alpha}{b} = 0,$$

$$\text{i.e. } xy + bx \sin \alpha + ay \cos \alpha = 0.$$

**14.** If the normals are perpendicular, so also are the corresponding tangents, which therefore intersect on the director circle.

If  $A^2 = a^2 + b^2$ , any point on the director circle is

$$(A \cos \theta, A \sin \theta),$$

the polar of which is  $\frac{Ax \cos \theta}{a^2} + \frac{Ay \sin \theta}{b^2} = 1$  with regard

to the ellipse. Hence the intersection of the perpendicular normals is given by the equations of Art. 412,

$$\text{Ex. 1, on putting } l = \frac{A \cos \theta}{a^2}, \quad m = \frac{A \sin \theta}{b^2}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore x &= (a^2 - b^2) \frac{A \cos \theta}{a^2} \frac{1 - \frac{(a^2 + b^2) \sin^2 \theta}{b^2}}{\frac{(a^2 + b^2) \cos^2 \theta}{a^2} + \frac{(a^2 + b^2) \sin^2 \theta}{b^2}} \\ &= \frac{(a^2 - b^2)}{a^2 + b^2} \cdot A \cos \theta \cdot \frac{b^2 \cos^2 \theta - a^2 \sin^2 \theta}{b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and } y &= -(a^2 - b^2) \frac{A \sin \theta}{b^2} \frac{1 - \frac{(a^2 + b^2) \cos^2 \theta}{a^2}}{\frac{(a^2 + b^2) \cos^2 \theta}{a^2} + \frac{(a^2 + b^2) \sin^2 \theta}{b^2}} \\ &= \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2 + b^2} \cdot A \sin \theta \frac{b^2 \cos^2 \theta - a^2 \sin^2 \theta}{b^2 \cos^2 \theta + a^2 \sin^2 \theta} \\ \therefore \frac{\sin \theta}{y} &= \frac{\cos \theta}{x} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}. \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Substitute; } \therefore x = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^2 + b^2} \cdot \frac{Ax}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}} \cdot \frac{b^2 x^2 - a^2 y^2}{b^2 x^2 + a^2 y^2}.$$

$$\therefore (a^2 + b^2)(x^2 + y^2)(b^2 x^2 + a^2 y^2)^2 = (a^2 - b^2)^2 (b^2 x^2 - a^2 y^2)^2.$$

15. Let  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$  be the eccentric angles of  $A, B, C$  [ $\alpha < \beta < \gamma$ ].

Then  $\tan \alpha = \tan \frac{\beta + \gamma}{2}$ , etc. Hence on comparing with a figure we have  $\frac{\beta + \gamma}{2} = \alpha + \pi$ ,  $\frac{\gamma + \alpha}{2} = 2\beta$ , and  $\frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} = \gamma - \pi$ .

$$\therefore \beta = \alpha + \frac{2\pi}{3}, \text{ and } \gamma = \alpha + \frac{4\pi}{3}.$$

Hence, as in Ex. 7 (part ii), the normals at  $A, B, C$  are concurrent.

Comparing  $lx + my = 1$  with

$$\frac{x}{a} \cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta) + \frac{y}{b} \sin \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta) = \cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta),$$

we have

$$al = 2 \cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta), \quad bm = 2 \sin \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta), \quad \text{since } \cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha - \beta) = \frac{1}{2}.$$

By Art. 412, Cor. 1,

$$x = \frac{2 \cos \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta)}{a} (a^2 - b^2) \frac{1 - 4 \sin^2 \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta)}{4},$$

$$\text{and } y = \frac{2 \sin \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta)}{b} (a^2 - b^2) \frac{1 - 4 \cos^2 \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta)}{4}.$$

$$\therefore 4a^2 x^2 + 4b^2 y^2 = (a^2 - b^2)^2, \text{ as in Ex. 10,}$$

16. The equation of any conic passing through the intersections of the ellipse and the conic through the feet of the four normals is

$$b^2x^2 + a^2y^2 - a^2b^2 + 2\lambda \{(a^2 - b^2)xy + b^2kx - a^2hy\} = 0.$$

[Art. 414, Ex. 1 and Art. 380.]

This is a parabola if  $\lambda^2(a^2 - b^2)^2 = a^2b^2$  [Art. 357], i.e. if

$$\lambda = \pm \frac{ab}{a^2 - b^2}.$$

The terms of the second degree in the equations of the two parabolas are therefore  $\{bx - ay\}^2$  and  $\{bx + ay\}^2$ .

Therefore the axes are parallel to the lines

$$bx \pm ay = 0 \text{ [Art. 360],}$$

the angle between which is  $2 \tan^{-1} \frac{b}{a}$ .

They are parallel to the equi-conjugate diameters by Art. 289.

17. By Art. 414, Ex. 1  $\frac{1}{4}(x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{ha^2}{a^2 - b^2}$ ;

similarly,  $\frac{1}{4}(y_1 + y_2 + y_3 + y_4) = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{hb^2}{a^2 - b^2}$ .

18. In the equation  $y^2 = 4ax$ , move the origin to the point  $(h, k)$  and change to polars, so that the equation becomes  $(r \sin \theta + k)^2 = 4a(r \cos \theta + h)$ , i.e.

$$r^2 \sin^2 \theta + 2r(k \sin \theta - 2a \cos \theta) + k^2 - 4ah = 0.$$

The condition for equal roots, viz.

$$h \tan^2 \theta - k \tan \theta + a = 0$$

gives the direction of the two tangents through  $(h, k)$  and, if  $\theta_1, \theta_2$  be the roots, the product of the lengths of the two tangents

$$= r_1 r_2 = \frac{k^2 - 4ah}{\sin \theta_1 \sin \theta_2}.$$

Now (as in Art. 235, Ex. 1)

$$\frac{k}{h} = \tan \theta_1 + \tan \theta_2 = \frac{\sin(\theta_1 + \theta_2)}{\cos \theta_1 \cos \theta_2},$$

and  $\frac{a}{h} = \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2. \therefore \frac{h - a}{h} = \frac{\cos(\theta_1 + \theta_2)}{\cos \theta_1 \cos \theta_2}.$

Square and add;  $\therefore \frac{(h-a)^2 + k^2}{h^2} = \frac{1}{\cos^2 \theta_1 \cos^2 \theta_2}$ , whence

$$\sin \theta_1 \sin \theta_2 = \tan \theta_1 \tan \theta_2 \times \cos \theta_1 \cos \theta_2 \frac{a}{\sqrt{(h-a)^2 + k^2}}.$$

$$\therefore al_1 l_2 = (k^2 - 4ah) \sqrt{(h-a)^2 + k^2},$$

where  $l_1, l_2$  are the lengths of the tangents.

The equation to the tangent at  $(x', y')$  to the parabola

$$(y+k)^2 = 4a(x+h)$$

is  $yy' - 2a(x+x') + k(y+y') + k^2 - 4ah = 0$  [Art. 372],

whence the equation to the normal is

$$2a(y-y') + (y'+k)(x-x') = 0.$$

If this passes through the origin,  $2ay' + x'(y'+k) = 0$ .

Since  $(x', y')$  lies on the curve,

$$\therefore (y'+k)^2 - 4a(x'+h) = 0.$$

Eliminating  $x', y'^2 + Ay' + k(k^2 - 4ah) = 0$ .

$$\therefore k(k^2 - 4ah) = y_1 y_2 y_3 = \rho_1 \rho_2 \rho_3 \sin \phi_1 \sin \phi_2 \sin \phi_3,$$

where  $\rho_1, \rho_2, \rho_3$  are the lengths of the normals and  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \phi_3$  the angles they make with the axis of  $x$ .

Also  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \phi_3$  are the roots of the equation

$$k = h \tan \phi - 2a \tan \phi - a \tan^3 \phi,$$

i.e.  $a \sin^3 \phi + (2a - h) \sin \phi \cos^2 \phi + k \cos^3 \phi = 0,$

i.e.  $\sin^2 \phi \{(2a - h) + (h - a) \sin^2 \phi\} = k^2 (1 - \sin^2 \phi)^2,$

i.e.  $\sin^6 \phi \{(h - a)^2 + k^2\} + A' \sin^4 \phi + B' \sin^2 \phi - k^2 = 0.$

$$\therefore \sin \phi_1 \sin \phi_2 \sin \phi_3 = \frac{k}{\sqrt{(h-a)^2 + k^2}}.$$

$$\therefore \rho_1 \rho_2 \rho_3 = (k^2 - 4ah) \sqrt{(h-a)^2 + k^2} = al_1 l_2.$$

19. The normal at any point  $(x', y')$  of the parabola is

$$(x-x')y' + 2a(y-y') = 0,$$

and hence goes through  $(h, k)$  if  $(h-x')y' + 2a(k-y') = 0$ .

The feet of the normals from  $(h, k)$  therefore lie on the curves

$$xy + 2ay = 2ak + hy \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

and

$$y^2 = 4ax \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

Multiplying (1) by  $y$ , and (2) by  $x$ , and subtracting, it follows that a curve through the intersections of (1) and (2) is  $2axy^2 = 2akxy + hy^2 - 4ax^2$ . Hence, etc.

20. The normal at  $(x', \frac{c^2}{x'})$  passes through  $(h, k)$  if

$$x'(h - x') = \frac{c^2}{x'} \left( k - \frac{c^2}{x'} \right). \quad [\text{Art. 332.}]$$

Hence the abscissae of the feet of the four normals are given by  $x^4 - hx^3 + c^2kx - c^4 = 0$ .

$$\therefore \frac{1}{4}(x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4) = \frac{h}{4}, \text{ and } x_1x_2x_3x_4 + c^4 = 0.$$

Similarly  $\frac{1}{4}(y_1 + y_2 + y_3 + y_4) = \frac{k}{4}$ .

Also, the chord joining  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  is perpendicular to the chord joining  $(x_3, y_3)$  and  $(x_4, y_4)$  if

$$\frac{c^2}{x_1x_2} \cdot \frac{c^2}{x_3x_4} + 1 = 0 \quad [\text{Art. 329}],$$

*i.e.* if  $x_1x_2x_3x_4 + c^4 = 0$ , which is true.

### Confocal Conics.

**415. Def.** Two conics are said to be confocal when they have both foci common.

To find the equation to conics which are confocal with the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  ..... (1).

All conics having the same foci have the same centre and axes.

The equation to any conic having the same centre and axes as the given conic is  $\frac{x^2}{A} + \frac{y^2}{B} = 1$  ..... (2).

The foci of (1) are at the points  $(\pm\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}, 0)$ .

The foci of (2) are at the points  $(\pm\sqrt{A - B}, 0)$ .

These foci are the same if  $A - B = a^2 - b^2$ ,  
*i.e.* if  $A - a^2 = B - b^2 = \lambda$  (say)  $\therefore A = a^2 + \lambda$ , and  $B = b^2 + \lambda$ .

The equation (2) then becomes

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1,$$

which is therefore the required equation, the quantity  $\lambda$  determining the particular confocal.

**416.** For different values of  $\lambda$  to trace the conic given by the equation

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

First, let  $\lambda$  be very great; then  $a^2 + \lambda$  and  $b^2 + \lambda$  are both very great and, the greater that  $\lambda$  is, the more nearly do these quantities approach to equality. A circle of infinitely great radius is therefore a confocal of the system.

Let  $\lambda$  gradually decrease from infinity to zero; the semi-major axis  $\sqrt{a^2 + \lambda}$  gradually decreases from infinity to  $a$ , and the semi-minor axis from infinity to  $b$ . When  $\lambda$  is positive, the equation (1) therefore represents an ellipse gradually decreasing in size from an infinite circle to the standard ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

This latter ellipse is marked *I* in the figure.

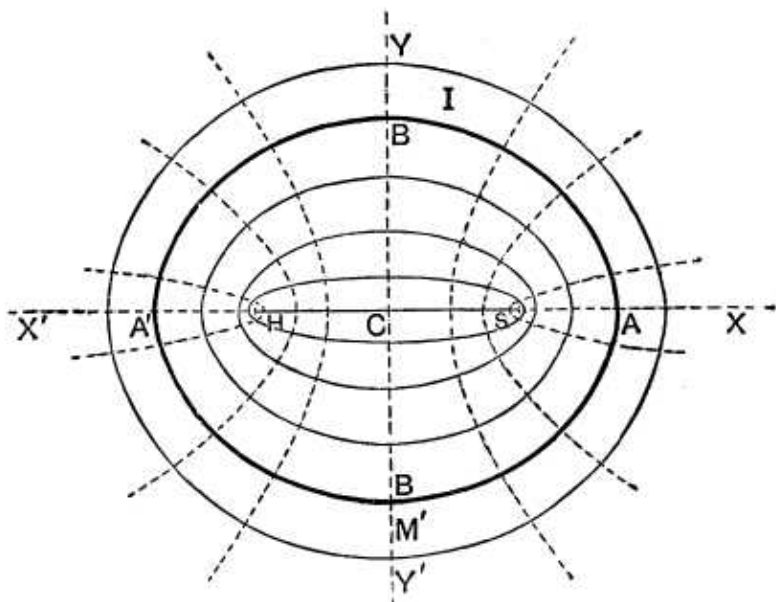
Next, let  $\lambda$  gradually decrease from 0 to  $-b^2$ . The semi-major axis decreases from  $a$  to  $\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$ , and the semi-minor axis from  $b$  to 0.

For these values of  $\lambda$  the confocal is still an ellipse, which always lies within the ellipse *I*; it gradually decreases in size until, when  $\lambda$  is a quantity very slightly greater than  $-b^2$ , it is an extremely narrow ellipse very nearly coinciding with the line *SH*, which joins the two foci of all curves of the system.

Next, let  $\lambda$  be less than  $-b^2$ ; the semi-minor axis  $\sqrt{b^2 + \lambda}$  now becomes imaginary and the curve is a hyperbola; when  $\lambda$  is very slightly less than  $-b^2$  the curve is a



hyperbola very nearly coinciding with the straight lines  $SX$  and  $HX'$ .



[As  $\lambda$  passes through the value  $-b^2$  it will be noted that the confocal instantaneously changes from the line-ellipse  $SH$  to the line-hyperbola  $SX$  and  $HX'$ .]

As  $\lambda$  gets less and less, the semi-transverse axis  $\sqrt{a^2 + \lambda}$  becomes less and less, so that the ends of the transverse axis of the hyperbola gradually approach to  $C$ , and the hyperbola widens out as in the figure.

When  $\lambda = -a^2$ , the transverse axis of the hyperbola vanishes, and the hyperbola degenerates into the infinite double line  $YOY'$ .

When  $\lambda$  is less than  $-a^2$ , both semi-axes of the conic become imaginary, and therefore the confocal becomes wholly imaginary.

**417.** *Through any point in the plane of a given conic there can be drawn two conics confocal with it; also one of these is an ellipse and the other a hyperbola.*

Let the equation to the given conic be

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1,$$

and let the given point be  $(f, g)$ .

Any conic confocal with the given conic is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

If this go through the point  $(f, g)$ , we have

$$\frac{f^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{g^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

This is a quadratic equation to determine  $\lambda$  and therefore gives two values of  $\lambda$ .

Put  $b^2 + \lambda = \mu$ , and hence

$$a^2 + \lambda = \mu + a^2 - b^2 = \mu + a^2e^2.$$

The equation (2) then becomes

$$\frac{f^2}{\mu + a^2e^2} + \frac{g^2}{\mu} = 1,$$

*i.e.*  $\mu^2 + \mu(a^2e^2 - f^2 - g^2) - g^2a^2e^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots (3).$

On applying the criterion of Art. 1 we at once see that the roots of this equation are both real.

Also, since its last term is negative, the product of these roots is negative, and therefore one value of  $\mu$  is positive and the other is negative.

The two values of  $b^2 + \lambda$  are therefore one positive and the other negative. Similarly, the two values of  $a^2 + \lambda$  can be shewn to be both positive.

On substituting in (2) we thus obtain an ellipse and a hyperbola.

**418.** *Confocal conics cut at right angles.*

Let the confocals be

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda_1} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda_1} = 1, \text{ and } \frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda_2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda_2} = 1,$$

and let them meet at the point  $(x', y')$ .

The equations to the tangents at this point are

$$\frac{xx'}{a^2 + \lambda_1} + \frac{yy'}{b^2 + \lambda_1} = 1, \text{ and } \frac{xx'}{a^2 + \lambda_2} + \frac{yy'}{b^2 + \lambda_2} = 1.$$

These cut at right angles if (Art 69)

$$\frac{x'^2}{(a^2 + \lambda_1)(a^2 + \lambda_2)} + \frac{y'^2}{(b^2 + \lambda_1)(b^2 + \lambda_2)} = 0 \dots\dots (1).$$

But, since  $(x', y')$  is a common point of the two confocals, we have

$$\frac{x'^2}{a^2 + \lambda_1} + \frac{y'^2}{b^2 + \lambda_1} = 1, \text{ and } \frac{x'^2}{a^2 + \lambda_2} + \frac{y'^2}{b^2 + \lambda_2} = 1.$$

By subtraction, we have

$$x'^2 \left( \frac{1}{a^2 + \lambda_1} - \frac{1}{a^2 + \lambda_2} \right) + y'^2 \left( \frac{1}{b^2 + \lambda_1} - \frac{1}{b^2 + \lambda_2} \right) = 0,$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{x'^2}{(a^2 + \lambda_1)(a^2 + \lambda_2)} + \frac{y'^2}{(b^2 + \lambda_1)(b^2 + \lambda_2)} = 0 \dots\dots (2).$$

The condition (1) is therefore satisfied and hence the two confocals cut at right angles.

**Cor.** From equation (2) it is clear that the quantities  $b^2 + \lambda_1$  and  $b^2 + \lambda_2$  have opposite signs; for otherwise we should have the sum of two positive quantities equal to zero. Two confocals, therefore, which intersect, are one an ellipse and the other a hyperbola.

**419.** *One conic and only one conic, confocal with the conic  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ , can be drawn to touch a given straight line.*

Let the equation to the given straight line be

$$x \cos \alpha + y \sin \alpha = p \dots\dots\dots (1).$$

Any confocal of the system is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

The straight line (1) touches (2) if

$$p^2 = (a^2 + \lambda) \cos^2 \alpha + (b^2 + \lambda) \sin^2 \alpha \text{ (Art. 264),}$$

*i.e.* if 
$$\lambda = p^2 - a^2 \cos^2 \alpha - b^2 \sin^2 \alpha.$$

This only gives one value for  $\lambda$  and therefore there is only one conic of the form (2) which touches the straight line (1).

Also  $\lambda + a^2 = p^2 + (a^2 - b^2) \sin^2 \alpha =$  a real quantity. The conic is therefore real.

### EXAMPLES XLVII

1. Prove that the difference of the squares of the perpendiculars drawn from the centre upon parallel tangents to two given confocal conics is constant.

2. Prove that the equation to the hyperbola drawn through the point of the ellipse, whose eccentric angle is  $\alpha$ , and which is confocal with the ellipse, is

$$\frac{x^2}{\cos^2 \alpha} - \frac{y^2}{\sin^2 \alpha} = a^2 - b^2.$$

3. Prove that the locus of the points lying on a system of confocal ellipses, which have the same eccentric angle  $\alpha$ , is a confocal hyperbola whose asymptotes are inclined at an angle  $2\alpha$ .

4. Shew that the locus of the point of contact of tangents drawn from a given point to a system of confocal conics is a cubic curve, which passes through the given point and the foci.

If the given point be on the major axis, prove that the cubic reduces to a circle.

5. Prove that the locus of the feet of the normals drawn from a fixed point to a series of confocals is a cubic curve which passes through the given point and the foci of the confocals.

6. A point  $P$  is taken on the conic whose equation is

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1,$$

such that the normal at it passes through a fixed point  $(h, k)$ ; prove that  $P$  lies on the curve

$$\frac{x}{y - k} + \frac{y}{x - h} = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{hy - kx}.$$

7. Two tangents at right angles to one another are drawn from a point  $P$ , one to each of two confocal ellipses; prove that  $P$  lies on a fixed circle. Shew also that the line joining the points of contact is bisected by the line joining  $P$  to the common centre.

8. From a given point a pair of tangents is drawn to each of a given system of confocals; prove that the normals at the points of contact meet on a straight line.

9. Tangents are drawn to the parabola  $y^2 = 4x\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$ , and on each is taken the point at which it touches one of the confocals

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1;$$

prove that the locus of such points is a straight line.

10. Normals are drawn from a given point to each of a system of confocal conics, and tangents at the feet of these normals; prove that the locus of the middle points of the portions of these tangents intercepted between the axes of the confocals is a straight line.

11. Prove that the locus of the pole of a given straight line with respect to a series of confocals is a straight line which is the normal to that confocal which the straight line touches.

12. A series of parallel tangents is drawn to a system of confocal conics; prove that the locus of the points of contact is a rectangular hyperbola.

Shew also that the locus of the vertices of these rectangular hyperbolas, for different directions of the tangents, is the curve  $r^2 = c^2 \cos 2\theta$ , where  $2c$  is the distance between the foci of the confocals.

13. The locus of the pole of any tangent to a confocal with respect to any circle, whose centre is one of the foci, is obtained and found to be a circle; prove that, if the circle corresponding to each confocal be taken, they are all coaxial.

14. Prove that the two conics

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad a'x^2 + 2h'xy + b'y^2 = 1$$

can be placed so as to be confocal, if

$$\frac{(a-b)^2 + 4h^2}{(ab-h^2)^2} = \frac{(a'-b')^2 + 4h'^2}{(a'b'-h'^2)^2}.$$

## ANSWERS

11. The locus can be shewn to be a straight line which is perpendicular to the given straight line; also the given straight line touches one of the confocals and its pole with respect to that confocal is its point of contact; this point of contact therefore lies on the locus, which is therefore the normal.
14. As in Art. 366, use the Invariants of Art. 135.

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. The lines

$$x \cos a + y \sin a = p, \quad \text{and} \quad x \cos a + y \sin a = p'$$

will touch  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ , and  $\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1$ , respectively,

if  $p^2 = a^2 \cos^2 a + b^2 \sin^2 a$ ,

and  $p'^2 = (a^2 + \lambda) \cos^2 a + (b^2 + \lambda) \sin^2 a$ , whence  $p'^2 - p^2 = \lambda$ .

2. The conic  $\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1$  will pass through the point  $(a \cos a, b \sin a)$  if  $\frac{a^2 \cos^2 a}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{b^2 \sin^2 a}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1$ .

Whence  $\lambda = 0$  or  $-(a^2 \sin^2 a + b^2 \cos^2 a)$ .

3. Eliminating  $\lambda$  from

$$x = \sqrt{a^2 + \lambda} \cos a, \quad y = \sqrt{b^2 + \lambda} \sin a,$$

we obtain 
$$\frac{x^2}{\cos^2 a} - \frac{y^2}{\sin^2 a} = a^2 - b^2.$$

The asymptotes are  $y \pm x \tan a = 0$ .

4. The tangent at  $(h, k)$  to the conic  $\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1$  passes through the fixed point  $(f, g)$  if

$$\frac{fh}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{gk}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1. \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

Also 
$$\frac{h^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{k^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1. \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

Therefore, on subtraction,

$$\frac{h(f-h)}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{k(g-k)}{b^2 + \lambda} = 0,$$

giving 
$$\lambda = -\frac{b^2 h(f-h) + a^2 k(g-k)}{h(f-h) + k(g-k)}.$$

Substitute for  $\lambda$  in (2), and we have

$$\frac{h}{f-h} - \frac{k}{g-k} = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{h(f-h) + k(g-k)}.$$

The locus of  $(h, k)$  is thus the cubic curve

$$\frac{x}{f-x} - \frac{y}{g-y} = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{fx + gy - x^2 - y^2}.$$

If  $g = 0$ , this locus becomes the circle

$$f(x^2 + y^2) - x(a^2 - b^2 + f^2) + (a^2 - b^2)f = 0.$$

5. By Ex. XXXIII, 23 the straight line  $lx + my = n$  is a normal to the conic

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1 \text{ if } \frac{a^2 + \lambda}{l^2} + \frac{b^2 + \lambda}{m^2} = \frac{(a^2 - b^2)^2}{n^2}.$$

This gives only one value for  $\lambda$ .

6. The normal at the point  $(x_1, y_1)$  to the conic

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1$$

passes through the fixed point  $(h, k)$  if

$$(a^2 + \lambda) \frac{h - x_1}{x_1} = (b^2 + \lambda) \frac{k - y_1}{y_1}. \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

Also 
$$\frac{x_1^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y_1^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1. \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

(1) gives 
$$\frac{a^2 + \lambda}{x_1(k - y_1)} = \frac{b^2 + \lambda}{y_1(h - x_1)} = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{x_1k - hy_1},$$

and then (2) gives  $\frac{x_1}{k - y_1} + \frac{y_1}{h - x_1} = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{kx_1 - hy_1}$ . Hence the required locus.

Now one of the confocals passes through the point  $(h, k)$  and the corresponding foot of the normal is clearly the point  $(h, k)$  itself.

Also one of the confocals is the line-ellipse joining the foci  $S$  and  $H$ , the normals to which are the lines joining  $(h, k)$  to  $S$  and  $H$ , so that two of the feet of normals are the points  $S$  and  $H$ .

7. Any tangent to  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  is

$$x \cos a + y \sin a = \sqrt{(a^2 \cos^2 a + b^2 \sin^2 a)},$$

and a perpendicular tangent to

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1$$

is  $x \sin a - y \cos a = \sqrt{\{(a^2 + \lambda) \sin^2 a + (b^2 + \lambda) \cos^2 a\}}$ .

Square and add;  $\therefore x^2 + y^2 = a^2 + b^2 + \lambda$ .

The locus of  $P$  is therefore a circle.

Let  $\frac{xx_1}{a^2} + \frac{yy_1}{b^2} = 1 \dots(i)$ , and  $\frac{xx_2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{yy_2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1 \dots(ii)$ ,

be the equations of the tangents.

Then the equation of  $CP$  will be

$$x \left( \frac{x_1}{a^2} - \frac{x_2}{a^2 + \lambda} \right) + y \left( \frac{y_1}{b^2} - \frac{y_2}{b^2 + \lambda} \right) = 0,$$

which passes through the middle point of the chord if

$$(x_1 + x_2) \left( \frac{x_1}{a^2} - \frac{x_2}{a^2 + \lambda} \right) + (y_1 + y_2) \left( \frac{y_1}{b^2} - \frac{y_2}{b^2 + \lambda} \right) = 0,$$

i.e. if 
$$\frac{x_1 x_2}{a^2 (a^2 + \lambda)} + \frac{y_1 y_2}{b^2 (b^2 + \lambda)} = 0,$$

which is true since (i) and (ii) are at right angles.

8. If  $lx + my = 1$  be the pole of  $(h, k)$  with regard to

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1, \text{ then } l = \frac{h}{a^2 + \lambda}, \text{ and } m = \frac{k}{b^2 + \lambda}.$$

Therefore from Art. 412, Cor. 1,

$$\frac{x}{a^2 - b^2} = \frac{h(b^2 + \lambda - k^2)}{h^2(b^2 + \lambda) + k^2(a^2 + \lambda)}$$

and 
$$\frac{y}{a^2 - b^2} = -\frac{k(a^2 + \lambda - h^2)}{h^2(b^2 + \lambda) + k^2(a^2 + \lambda)};$$

$$\therefore \frac{hx - ky}{a^2 - b^2} = 1 - \frac{2h^2 k^2}{h^2(b^2 + \lambda) + k^2(a^2 + \lambda)},$$

and 
$$\frac{kx + hy}{a^2 - b^2} = -\frac{hk(a^2 - b^2 - h^2 + k^2)}{h^2(b^2 + \lambda) + k^2(a^2 + \lambda)}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{hx - ky - a^2 + b^2}{kx + hy} = \frac{2hk}{a^2 - b^2 - h^2 + k^2},$$

which is a straight line.



9. The line  $\frac{x}{\sqrt{a^2 + \lambda}} \cos \alpha + \frac{y}{\sqrt{b^2 + \lambda}} \sin \alpha = 1$  will touch  $y^2 = 4cx$ , (where  $c^2 = a^2 - b^2$ ), if

$$c \sqrt{a^2 + \lambda} \sin^2 \alpha + \cos \alpha (b^2 + \lambda) = 0. \dots\dots(i)$$

Also the point whose locus is required is

$$x_1 = \sqrt{a^2 + \lambda} \cos \alpha, \dots(ii) \quad y_1 = \sqrt{b^2 + \lambda} \sin \alpha. \dots(iii)$$

From (i) and (ii),  $c(a^2 + \lambda) \left\{ 1 - \frac{x_1^2}{a^2 + \lambda} \right\} + x_1(b^2 + \lambda) = 0$ ,

or 
$$c(a^2 + \lambda) - cx_1^2 + x_1(a^2 + \lambda - c^2) = 0.$$

$$\therefore (x_1 + c)(a^2 + \lambda - cx_1) = 0.$$

The first factor gives  $x = -c$  as the locus of  $(x_1, y_1)$ .

10. The normal at the point, whose eccentric angle is  $\alpha$ , to the conic  $\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1$  passes through  $(h, k)$ , if

$$\sqrt{a^2 + \lambda} h \sec \alpha - \sqrt{b^2 + \lambda} k \operatorname{cosec} \alpha = a^2 - b^2.$$

The point  $(x_1, y_1)$  whose locus is required is given by

$$2x_1 = \sqrt{a^2 + \lambda} \sec \alpha, \quad 2y_1 = \sqrt{b^2 + \lambda} \operatorname{cosec} \alpha.$$

Hence, on eliminating  $\lambda$  and  $\alpha$ , we have

$$2hx_1 - 2ky_1 = a^2 - b^2. \quad \therefore \text{etc.}$$

11. The pole of  $lx + my = 1$  with respect to

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1$$

is the point  $x = l(a^2 + \lambda), \quad y = m(b^2 + \lambda).$

$$\therefore \frac{x}{l} - \frac{y}{m} = a^2 - b^2,$$

which is perpendicular to  $lx + my = 1$ . Also the point of contact of this line with a confocal is clearly on the locus, since it is the pole of the line with regard to that confocal. Hence, etc.

12. The tangent at  $(x', y')$  to the conic

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1,$$

will be parallel to  $y = x \tan a$  if  $\tan a = -\frac{(b^2 + \lambda)x'}{(a^2 + \lambda)y'}$ , whence

$$\lambda = -\frac{a^2 y' \sin a + b^2 x' \cos a}{x' \cos a + y' \sin a}.$$

$$\therefore a^2 + \lambda = \frac{(a^2 - b^2)x' \cos a}{x' \cos a + y' \sin a}, \text{ and } b^2 + \lambda = \frac{(b^2 - a^2)y' \sin a}{x' \cos a + y' \sin a}.$$

Also 
$$\frac{x'^2}{a^2 + \lambda} + \frac{y'^2}{b^2 + \lambda} = 1.$$

Hence, substituting for  $\lambda$ , we have

$$x'^2 - y'^2 + x'y'(\tan a - \cot a) = a^2 - b^2,$$

so that the required locus is

$$x^2 - y^2 + xy(\tan a - \cot a) = a^2 - b^2 \dots \dots \dots (1)$$

The axes are given by

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{\tan a - \cot a}{2}. \quad [\text{Art. 349.}] \dots \dots \dots (2)$$

Also, in polar coordinates, (1) is

$$r^2 \cos 2\theta + \frac{1}{2} r^2 \sin 2\theta (\tan a - \cot a) = a^2 - b^2 \dots (3)$$

For the locus of the vertices, we eliminate  $a$  between (2) and (3), and obtain

$$r^2 \cos 2\theta + \frac{1}{2} r^2 \sin 2\theta \cdot 2 \tan 2\theta = a^2 - b^2,$$

i.e. 
$$r^2 = (a^2 - b^2) \cos 2\theta.$$

13. The polar of  $(x', y')$  with regard to the circle  $x^2 - 2cx + y^2 = r^2$ , is  $x(x' - c) + yy' = r^2 + cx'$ , where

$$c = \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}.$$

If this is identical with

$$\frac{x}{\sqrt{a^2 + \lambda} \sec a} + \frac{y}{\sqrt{b^2 + \lambda} \operatorname{cosec} a} = 1,$$

then  $\sqrt{a^2 + \lambda} \sec a = \frac{r^2 + cx'}{x' - c}$ , and  $\sqrt{b^2 + \lambda} \operatorname{cosec} a = \frac{r^2 + cx'}{y'}$ .

Hence the locus of  $(x', y')$  is the circle  
 $(b^2 + \lambda)x^2 + (b^2 + \lambda)y^2 - 2cx(a^2 + \lambda + r^2) + c^2(a^2 + \lambda) - r^4 = 0$ ,  
 since  $c^2 = a^2 - b^2$ .

Whatever be the value of  $\lambda$ , this always passes through the intersection of the circle

$$b^2(x^2 + y^2) - 2cx(a^2 + r^2) + a^2c^2 - r^4 = 0,$$

and the point-circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 2cx + c^2 = 0$ .

These meet in two imaginary points lying on the straight line  $x = \frac{c^2 - r^2}{2c} = \frac{a^2 - b^2 - r^2}{2\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}$ .

Hence, etc.

14. See Art. 366.  $(\alpha^2 - \beta^2)^2$  must be the same for both conics.

$$\therefore \frac{(\alpha - \beta)^2 + 4h^2}{(ab - h^2)^2} = \frac{(\alpha' - \beta')^2 + 4h'^2}{(a'b' - h'^2)^2}.$$

## Curvature.

**420. Circle of Curvature. Def.** If  $P$ ,  $Q$ , and  $R$  be any three points on a conic section, one circle and only one circle can be drawn to pass through them. Also this circle is completely determined by the three points.

Let now the points  $Q$  and  $R$  move up to, and ultimately coincide with, the point  $P$ ; then the limiting position of the above circle is called the circle of curvature at  $P$ ; also the radius of this circle is called the radius of curvature at  $P$ , and its centre is called the centre of curvature at  $P$ .

**421.** Since the circle of curvature at  $P$  meets the conic in three coincident points at  $P$ , it will cut the curve in one other point  $P'$ . The line  $PP'$  which is the line joining  $P$  to the other point of intersection of the conic and the circle of curvature is called the common chord of curvature.

We shewed, in Art. 400, that, if a circle and a conic intersect in four points, the line joining one pair of points of intersection and the line joining the other pair are equally inclined to the axis. In our case, one pair of points is two of the coincident points at  $P$ , and the line joining them therefore the tangent at  $P$ ; the other pair of points is the third point at  $P$  and the point  $P'$ , and the line joining them the chord of curvature  $PP'$ . Hence *the tangent at  $P$  and the chord of curvature  $PP'$  are, in any conic, equally inclined to the axis.*

**422.** *To find the equation to the circle of curvature and the length of the radius of curvature at any point  $(at^2, 2at)$  of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ .*

If  $S = 0$  be the equation to a conic,  $T = 0$  the equation to the tangent at the point  $P$ , whose coordinates are  $at^2$  and  $2at$ , and  $L = 0$  the equation to any straight line passing through  $P$ , we know, by Art. 384, that  $S + \lambda \cdot L \cdot T = 0$  is the equation to the conic section passing through three coincident points at  $P$  and through the other point in which  $L = 0$  meets  $S = 0$ .

If  $\lambda$  and  $L$  be so chosen that this conic is a circle, it will be the circle of curvature at  $P$ , and, by the last article, we know that  $L = 0$  will be equally inclined to the axis with  $T = 0$ .

In the case of a parabola

$$S \equiv y^2 - 4ax, \text{ and } T \equiv ty - x - at^2. \quad (\text{Art. 229.})$$

Also the equation to a line through  $(at^2, 2at)$  equally inclined with  $T = 0$  to the axis is

$$t(y - 2at) + x - at^2 = 0,$$

so that

$$L \equiv ty + x - 3at^2.$$

The equation to the circle of curvature is therefore

$$y^2 - 4ax + \lambda (ty - x - at^2) (ty + x - 3at^2) = 0,$$

where  $1 + \lambda t^2 = -\lambda$ , *i. e.*  $\lambda = -\frac{1}{1 + t^2}$ .

On substituting this value of  $\lambda$ , we have, as the required equation,

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2ax(3t^2 + 2) + 4ayt^3 - 3a^2t^4 = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $[x - a(2 + 3t^2)]^2 + [y + 2at^3]^2 = 4a^2(1 + t^2)^3.$

The circle of curvature has therefore its centre at the point  $(2a + 3at^2, -2at^3)$  and its radius equal to

$$2a(1 + t^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}.$$

**Cor.** If  $S$  be the focus, we have  $SP$  equal to  $a + at^2$ , so that the radius of curvature is equal to  $\frac{2 \cdot SP^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\sqrt{a}}$ .

**423.** To find the equation to the circle of curvature at the point  $P(a \cos \phi, b \sin \phi)$  of the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ .

The tangent at the point  $P$  is

$$\frac{x}{a} \cos \phi + \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi = 1.$$

The straight line passing through  $P$  and equally inclined with this line to the axis is

$$\frac{\cos \phi}{a} (x - a \cos \phi) - \frac{\sin \phi}{b} (y - b \sin \phi) = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $\frac{x}{a} \cos \phi - \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi - \cos 2\phi = 0.$

The equation to the circle of curvature is therefore of the form

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1 + \lambda \left[ \frac{x}{a} \cos \phi + \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi - 1 \right] \left[ \frac{x}{a} \cos \phi - \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi - \cos 2\phi \right] = 0 \dots\dots (1).$$

Since it is a circle, the coefficients of  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  must be equal, so that

$$\frac{1}{a^2} + \lambda \frac{\cos^2 \phi}{a^2} = \frac{1}{b^2} - \lambda \frac{\sin^2 \phi}{b^2},$$

and therefore 
$$\lambda = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{b^2 \cos^2 \phi + a^2 \sin^2 \phi}.$$

On substitution in (1), the equation to the circle of curvature is

$$(b^2 \cos^2 \phi + a^2 \sin^2 \phi) \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1 \right) + (a^2 - b^2) \left[ \frac{x^2}{a^2} \cos^2 \phi - \frac{y^2}{b^2} \sin^2 \phi - \frac{x \cos \phi}{a} (1 + \cos 2\phi) + \frac{y \sin \phi}{b} (1 - \cos 2\phi) + \cos 2\phi \right] = 0,$$

$$\text{i.e. } x^2 + y^2 - (a^2 - b^2) \left[ \frac{2x \cos^3 \phi}{a} - \frac{2y \sin^3 \phi}{b} \right] + a^2 (\cos^2 \phi - 2 \sin^2 \phi) - b^2 (2 \cos^2 \phi - \sin^2 \phi) = 0.$$

The equation to the circle of curvature is then

$$\left\{ x - \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a} \cos^3 \phi \right\}^2 + \left\{ y + \frac{a^2 - b^2}{b} \sin^3 \phi \right\}^2 = (a^2 - b^2)^2 \left\{ \frac{\cos^6 \phi}{a^2} + \frac{\sin^6 \phi}{b^2} \right\} - a^2 \{ \cos^3 \phi - 2 \sin^2 \phi \} + b^2 \{ 2 \cos^2 \phi - \sin^2 \phi \} = \frac{(a^2 \sin^2 \phi + b^2 \cos^2 \phi)^3}{a^2 b^2}, \text{ after some reduction.}$$

The centre is therefore the point whose coordinates are

$$\left( \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a} \cos^3 \phi, -\frac{a^2 - b^2}{b} \sin^3 \phi \right) \text{ and whose radius is } \frac{(a^2 \sin^2 \phi + b^2 \cos^2 \phi)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{ab}.$$

**Cor. 1.** If  $CD$  be the semi-diameter which is conjugate to  $CP$ , then  $D$  is the point  $(90^\circ + \phi)$ , so that its coordinates are  $-a \sin \phi$  and  $b \cos \phi$ . (Art. 285.)

$$\text{Hence } CD^2 = a^2 \sin^2 \phi + b^2 \cos^2 \phi,$$

and therefore the radius of curvature  $\rho = \frac{CD^3}{ab}$ .

**Cor. 2.** If the point  $P$  have as coordinates  $x'$  and  $y'$  then, since  $x' = a \cos \phi$  and  $y' = b \sin \phi$ , the equation to the circle of curvature is

$$\left( x - \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a^4} x'^3 \right)^2 + \left( y + \frac{a^2 - b^2}{b^4} y'^3 \right)^2 = \frac{(a^2 + b^2 - x'^2 - y'^2)^3}{a^2 b^2}.$$

**Cor. 3.** In a similar manner it may be shewn that the equation to the circle of curvature at any point  $(x', y')$  of the hyperbola  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  is

$$\begin{aligned} \left(x - \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a^4} x'^3\right)^2 + \left(y + \frac{a^2 + b^2}{b^4} y'^3\right)^2 &= \frac{(a^2 - b^2 - x'^2 - y'^2)^3}{-a^2 b^2} \\ &= \frac{(x'^2 + y'^2 - a^2 + b^2)^3}{a^2 b^2}. \end{aligned}$$

**424.** If a circle and an ellipse intersect in four points, the sum of their eccentric angles is equal to an even multiple of  $\pi$ . [Page 235, Ex. 18.]

If then the circle of curvature at a point  $P$ , whose eccentric angle is  $\theta$ , meet the curve again in  $Q$ , whose eccentric angle is  $\phi$ , three of these four points coincide at  $P$ , so that three of these eccentric angles are equal to  $\theta$ , whilst the fourth is equal to  $\phi$ . We therefore have

$$3\theta + \phi = \text{an even multiple of } \pi = 2n\pi.$$

Hence, if  $\phi$  be supposed given, *i.e.* if  $Q$  be given, we have

$$\theta = \frac{2n\pi - \phi}{3}.$$

Giving  $n$  in succession the values 1, 2, and 3, we see that  $\theta$  equals  $\frac{2\pi - \phi}{3}$ ,  $\frac{4\pi - \phi}{3}$ , or  $\frac{6\pi - \phi}{3}$ .

Hence the circles of curvature at the points, whose eccentric angles are  $\frac{2\pi - \phi}{3}$ ,  $\frac{4\pi - \phi}{3}$ , and  $\frac{6\pi - \phi}{3}$ , all pass through the point whose eccentric angle is  $\phi$ .

Also since

$$\frac{2\pi - \phi}{3} + \frac{4\pi - \phi}{3} + \frac{6\pi - \phi}{3} + \phi = 4\pi = \text{an even multiple of } \pi,$$

we see that the points  $\frac{2\pi - \phi}{3}$ ,  $\frac{4\pi - \phi}{3}$ ,  $\frac{6\pi - \phi}{3}$ , and  $\phi$  all lie on a circle.

Hence through any point  $Q$  on an ellipse can be drawn three circles which are the circles of curvature at three points  $P_1, P_2,$  and  $P_3$ . Also the four points  $P_1, P_2, P_3,$  and  $Q$  all lie on another circle.

**425. Evolute of a Curve.** The locus of the centres of curvature at different points of a curve is called the evolute of the curve.

**426.** *Evolute of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ .*

Let  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  be the centre of curvature at the point  $(at^2, 2at)$  of this curve.

Then  $\bar{x} = a(2 + 3t^2)$  and  $\bar{y} = -2at^3$ . (Art. 422.)

$$\therefore (\bar{x} - 2a)^3 = 27a^3t^6 = \frac{27}{4}ay^2,$$

i.e. the locus of the centre of curvature is the curve

$$27ay^2 = 4(x - 2a)^3.$$

This curve meets the axis of  $x$  in the point  $(2a, 0)$ .

It also meets the parabola where

$$27a^2x = (x - 2a)^3,$$

i.e. where  $x = 8a,$

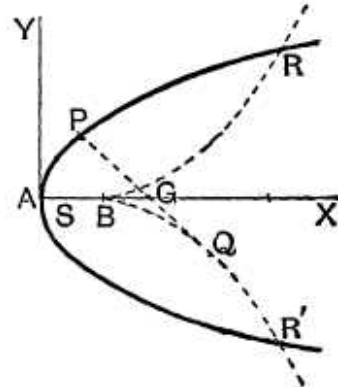
and therefore

$$y = \pm 4\sqrt{2a}.$$

Hence it meets the parabola at the points

$$(8a, \pm 4\sqrt{2a}).$$

The curve is called a semi-cubical parabola and could be shewn to be of the shape of the dotted curve in the figure.



**427.** *Evolute of the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ .*

If  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  be the centre of curvature corresponding to the point  $(a \cos \phi, b \sin \phi)$  of the ellipse, we have

$$\bar{x} = \frac{a^3 - b^3}{a} \cos^3 \phi \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{y} = -\frac{a^3 - b^3}{b} \sin^3 \phi.$$



Hence

$$(a\bar{x})^{\frac{2}{3}} + (b\bar{y})^{\frac{2}{3}} = (a^2 - b^2)^{\frac{2}{3}} \{ \cos^2 \phi + \sin^2 \phi \} = (a^2 - b^2)^{\frac{2}{3}}.$$

Hence the locus of the point  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  is the curve

$$(ax)^{\frac{2}{3}} + (by)^{\frac{2}{3}} = (a^2 - b^2)^{\frac{2}{3}}.$$

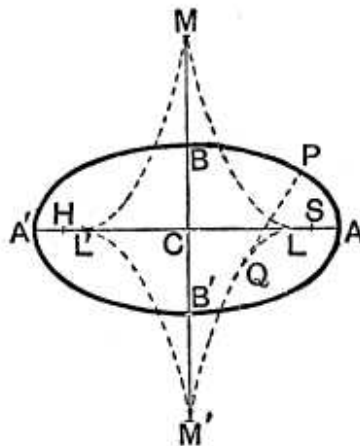
This curve could be shewn to be of the shape shewn in the figure where

$$CL = CL' = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{a},$$

and  $CM = CM' = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{b}.$

The equation to the evolute of the hyperbola would be found to be

$$(ax)^{\frac{2}{3}} - (by)^{\frac{2}{3}} = (a^2 + b^2)^{\frac{2}{3}}.$$



**428. Contact of different orders.** If two conics, or curves, touch, *i.e.* have two coincident points in common they are said to have contact of the first order. The tangent to a conic therefore has contact of the first order with it.

If two conics have three coincident points in common, they are said to have contact of the second order. The circle of curvature of a conic therefore has contact of the second order with it.

If two conics have four coincident points in common, they are said to have contact of the third order. No conics, which are not coincident, can have more than four coincident points; for a conic is completely determined if five points on it be given. Contact of the third order is therefore all that two conics can have, and then they are said to osculate one another.

Since a circle is completely determined when three points on it are given we cannot, in general, obtain a circle to have contact of a higher order than the second with a given conic. The circle of curvature is therefore often called the osculating circle.

In general, one curve osculates another when it has the highest possible order of contact with the second curve.

**429.** *Equation to a conic osculating another conic.*

If  $S=0$  be the equation to a conic and  $T=0$  the tangent at any point of it, the conic  $S=\lambda T^2$  passes through four coincident points of  $S=0$  at the point where  $T=0$  touches it. (Art. 385, IV.)

Hence  $S=\lambda T^2$  is the equation to the required osculating conic.

**Ex.** The equation of any conic osculating the conic

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 - 2fy = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

at the origin is

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 - 2fy + \lambda y^2 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

For the tangent to (1) at the origin is  $y=0$ .

If (2) be a parabola, we have  $h^2=a(b+\lambda)$ , so that its equation is

$$(ax + hy)^2 = 2afy.$$

If (2) be a rectangular hyperbola, we have  $a+b+\lambda=0$ , and the equation to the osculating rectangular hyperbola is

$$a(x^2 - y^2) + 2hxy - 2fy = 0.$$

**EXAMPLES XLVIII**

1. If the normal at a point  $P$  of a parabola meet the directrix in  $L$ , prove that the radius of curvature at  $P$  is equal to  $2PL$ .

2. If  $\rho_1$  and  $\rho_2$  be the radii of curvature at the ends of a focal chord of the parabola, prove that

$$\rho_1^{-\frac{2}{3}} + \rho_2^{-\frac{2}{3}} = (2a)^{-\frac{2}{3}}.$$

3.  $PQ$  is the common chord of the parabola and its centre of curvature at  $P$ ; prove that the ordinate of  $Q$  is three times that of  $P$ , and that the locus of the middle point of  $PQ$  is another parabola.

4. If  $\rho$  and  $\rho'$  be the radii of curvature at the ends,  $P$  and  $D$ , of conjugate diameters of the ellipse, prove that

$$\rho^{\frac{2}{3}} + \rho'^{\frac{2}{3}} = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{(ab)^{\frac{2}{3}}},$$

and that the locus of the middle point of the line joining the centres of curvature at  $P$  and  $D$  is

$$(ax + by)^{\frac{2}{3}} + (ax - by)^{\frac{2}{3}} = (a^2 - b^2)^{\frac{2}{3}}.$$

5.  $O$  is the centre of curvature at any point of an ellipse, and  $Q$  and  $R$  are the feet of the other normals drawn from  $O$ ; prove that the locus of the intersection of tangents at  $Q$  and  $R$  is  $\frac{a^2}{x^2} + \frac{b^2}{y^2} = 1$ , and that the line  $QR$  is a normal to the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = \frac{a^2 b^2}{(a^2 - b^2)^2}.$$

6. If four normals be drawn to an ellipse from any point on the evolute, prove that the locus of the centre of the rectangular hyperbola through their feet is the curve

$$\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} + \left(\frac{y}{b}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} = 1.$$

7. In general, prove that there are six points on an ellipse the circles of curvature at which pass through a given point  $O$ , not on the ellipse. If  $O$  be on the ellipse, why is the number of circles of curvature passing through it only four?

8. The circles of curvature at three points of an ellipse meet in a point  $P$  on the curve. Prove that (1) the normals at these three points meet on the normal drawn at the other end of the diameter through  $P$ , and (2) the locus of these points of intersection for different positions of  $P$  is the ellipse

$$4(a^2 x^2 + b^2 y^2) = (a^2 - b^2)^2.$$

9. Prove that the equation to the circle of curvature at any point  $(x', y')$  of the rectangular hyperbola  $x^2 - y^2 = a^2$  is

$$a^2(x^2 + y^2) - 4xx'^3 + 4yy'^3 + 3a^2(x'^2 + y'^2) = 0.$$

10. Shew that the equation to the chord of curvature of the rectangular hyperbola  $xy = c^2$  at the point " $t$ " is  $ty + t^3 x = c(1 + t^4)$ , and that the centre of curvature is the point

$$\left(c \frac{1 + 3t^4}{2t^3}, c \frac{3 + t^4}{2t}\right).$$

Prove also that the locus of the pole of the chord of curvature is the curve  $r^2 = 2c^2 \sin 2\theta$ .

11.  $PQ$  is the normal at any point of a rectangular hyperbola and meets the curve again in  $Q$ ; the diameter through  $Q$  meets the curve again in  $R$ ; shew that  $PR$  is the chord of curvature at  $P$ , and that  $PQ$  is equal to the diameter of curvature at  $P$ .

12. Prove that the equation to the circle of curvature of the conic  $ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 2y$  at the origin is

$$a(x^2 + y^2) = 2y.$$

13. If two confocal conics intersect, prove that the centre of curvature of either curve at a point of intersection is the pole of the tangent at that point with regard to the other curve.

14. Shew that the equation to the parabola, having contact of the third order with the rectangular hyperbola  $xy = c^2$  at the point

$$\left(ct, \frac{c}{t}\right),$$

is  $(x - yt^2)^2 - 4ct(x + yt^2) + 8c^2t^2 = 0$ .

Prove also that its directrix bisects, and is perpendicular to, the radius vector of the hyperbola from the centre to the point of contact.

15. Prove that the equation to the parabola, which passes through the origin and has contact of the second order with the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  at the point  $(at^2, 2at)$ , is

$$(4x - 3ty)^2 + 4at^2(3x - 2ty) = 0.$$

16. Prove that the equation to the rectangular hyperbola, having contact of the third order with the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  at the point  $(at^2, 2at)$ , is

$$x^2 - 2txy - y^2 + 2ax(2 + 3t^2) - 2at^3y + a^2t^4 = 0.$$

Prove also that the locus of the centres of these hyperbolas is an equal parabola having the same axis and directrix as the original parabola.

17. Through every point of a circle is drawn the rectangular hyperbola of closest contact; prove that the centres of all these hyperbolas lie on a concentric circle of twice its radius.

18. A rectangular hyperbola is drawn to have contact of the third order with the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ ; find its equation and prove that the locus of its centre is the curve

$$\left(\frac{x^2 + y^2}{a^2 + b^2}\right)^2 = \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2}.$$

## ANSWERS

5. Two of the normals drawn from  $O$  coincide, since it is a centre of curvature. The straight line  $l_1x + m_1y = 1$  (Art. 412) is therefore a tangent to the ellipse at some point  $\phi$  and hence, by Art. 412, the equation to  $QR$  can be found in terms of  $\phi$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. Let  $P$  be the point  $t$ , so that  $\tan \widehat{PGN} = t$ ; then  
 $2PL = 2 \cdot XN \cdot \sec \widehat{PGN} = (2a + 2at^2) \sqrt{1+t^2}$   
 $= 2a(1+t^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} = \rho$ , by Art. 422.

2.  $\rho_1 = 2a(1+t^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}$ , and  $\rho_2 = 2a\left(1 + \frac{1}{t^2}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}$ .  
 [Art. 233, Cor.]

$$\therefore \rho_1^{-\frac{2}{3}} + \rho_2^{-\frac{2}{3}} = (2a)^{-\frac{2}{3}} \left\{ \frac{1}{1+t^2} + \frac{t^2}{1+t^2} \right\} = (2a)^{-\frac{2}{3}}.$$

3. Let  $P$  and  $Q$  be the points  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ . Then since  
 $t_1y = x + at_1^2$ , and  $y(t_1 + t_2) = 2x + 2at_1t_2$ ,  
 are equally inclined to the axis (Art. 421),

$$\therefore \frac{1}{t_1} + \frac{2}{t_1 + t_2} = 0; \quad \therefore 3t_1 + t_2 = 0; \quad \therefore 3y_1 + y_2 = 0.$$

The coordinates of the middle point of  $PQ$  are

$$y = a(t_1 + t_2), \quad 2x = a(t_1^2 + t_2^2).$$

$$\therefore y^2 - 2ax = 2a^2t_1t_2 = -6a^2t_1^2.$$

Also  $y = \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2} = -y_1 = -2at_1$ ;

$$\therefore y^2 - 2ax = -\frac{6y^2}{4}, \quad \text{i.e. } 5y^2 = 4ax.$$

4. We have  $ab\rho = CD^3$ , and  $ab\rho' = CP^3$ ;

$$\therefore (ab)^{\frac{2}{3}} (\rho^{\frac{2}{3}} + \rho'^{\frac{2}{3}}) = CP^2 + CD^2 = a^2 + b^2.$$

The coordinates of the middle point of the line joining the centres of curvature of  $P$  and  $D$  (i.e. the points  $\phi$  and  $90^\circ + \phi$ ), are, by Art. 423,

$$2ax = (a^2 - b^2) (\cos^3 \phi - \sin^3 \phi),$$

and  $-2by = (a^2 - b^2) (\sin^3 \phi + \cos^3 \phi).$

$\therefore ax + by = -(a^2 - b^2) \sin^3 \phi$ , and  $ax - by = (a^2 - b^2) \cos^3 \phi$ .  
Hence, etc.

5. See Art. 412.

If  $l_1x + m_1y = 1$  is the tangent at  $\phi$ , then

$$l_1 = \frac{\cos \phi}{a}, \text{ and } m_1 = \frac{\sin \phi}{b}.$$

Therefore by equation (9),  $l_2 = -\frac{1}{a \cos \phi}$ ,  $m_2 = -\frac{1}{b \sin \phi}$ .

The pole of the line  $\frac{x}{a \cos \phi} + \frac{y}{b \sin \phi} = -1$ , is

$$x = -\frac{a}{\cos \phi}, \quad y = -\frac{b}{\sin \phi}, \text{ whence } \frac{a^2}{x^2} + \frac{b^2}{y^2} = 1.$$

The equation of any normal to the curve

$$\frac{x^2}{b^2} + \frac{y^2}{a^2} = \frac{a^2 b^2}{(a^2 - b^2)^2}$$

is

$$\frac{ab^2x}{(a^2 - b^2) \cos a} - \frac{a^2by}{(a^2 - b^2) \sin a} = -\frac{a^2b^2}{a^2 - b^2},$$

or

$$\frac{x}{a \cos a} - \frac{y}{b \sin a} = -1,$$

which becomes  $\frac{x}{a \cos \phi} + \frac{y}{b \sin \phi} = -1$ , on putting  $a = -\phi$ ,

i.e.

$$l_2x + m_2y = 1.$$

Hence, etc.

6. See Art. 414, Ex. 1, equation (2).

The centre of the curve is given by

$$(a^2 - b^2)y + b^2k = 0, \text{ and } (a^2 - b^2)x - a^2h = 0.$$

Also  $(ah)^{\frac{2}{3}} + (bk)^{\frac{2}{3}} = (a^2 - b^2)^{\frac{2}{3}}$ . [Art. 427.]

Eliminating  $h$  and  $k$ , we have  $\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} + \left(\frac{y}{b}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} = 1$ .

7. If the circle of curvature at the point " $\phi$ " passes through the given point  $(x_1, y_1)$ , the equation of Art. 423 gives, in general, six values of  $\phi$ .

If  $a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, a_5$  be five consecutive points on the curve, then the circle of curvature at  $a_2$  passes through  $a_1, a_2$  and  $a_3$ ; that at  $a_4$  goes through  $a_3, a_4, a_5$ ; hence three consecutive circles of curvature, viz. those at  $a_2, a_3$  and  $a_4$ , go through  $a_3$ ; and these three circles ultimately coincide with the circle of curvature at  $a_3$  and so only count as one.

8. See Art. 424.

The normals at the points

$\frac{1}{3}(2\pi - \phi), \frac{1}{3}(4\pi - \phi), \frac{1}{3}(6\pi - \phi)$  and  $\pi + \phi$   
meet in a point, since the sum of these angles =  $5\pi$ .

[Art. 413.]

Since the eccentric angles of these points differ by  $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ , the equation of a chord joining any pair is of the form

$$\frac{2x \cos \theta}{a} + \frac{2y \sin \theta}{b} = 1.$$

Then see Ex. XLVI, 10.

9. Putting  $a^2 = b^2$  in the equation of Art. 423, Cor. 3, we obtain

$$\left(x - \frac{2x'^3}{a^2}\right)^2 + \left(y + \frac{2y'^3}{a^2}\right)^2 = \frac{(x'^2 + y'^2)^3}{a^4},$$

which reduces to the given equation.

10. If the tangent at  $t$  and the chord of curvature are inclined at  $\phi$  and  $\phi'$  to the axis of  $x$ ; then, since they are equally inclined to the line  $x = y$ , we have

$$\phi + \phi' = \pi + 2 \frac{\pi}{4} \quad (\text{See Art. 72}) = \frac{3\pi}{2}.$$

$$\therefore \tan \phi' = \tan \left( \frac{3\pi}{2} - \phi \right) = + \cot \phi = -t^2.$$

Therefore the equation to the chord of curvature is

$$y - \frac{c}{t} = -t^2(x - ct), \text{ or } ty + t^3x = c(1 + t^4).$$

The equation of the circle of curvature is

$$\left(\frac{x}{t} + yt - 2c\right) \{ty + t^3x - c(1 + t^4)\} + \lambda(xy - c^2) = 0,$$

where  $\lambda = -(1 + t^4)$ .

Hence the circle of curvature is

$$(x^2 + y^2)t^2 - xc\left(\frac{1}{t} + 3t^3\right) - cy(3t + t^5) - 3\lambda c^2 = 0,$$

so that  $2\bar{x} = c\frac{1 + 3t^4}{t^3}$ ,  $2\bar{y} = \frac{3 + t^4}{t}$ .

The lines  $xk + yh = 2c^2$ , and  $xt^3 + yt = c(1 + t^4)$  are identical if  $\frac{k}{t^3} = \frac{h}{t} = \frac{2c}{1 + t^4}$ .

$$\therefore k = t^2h, \text{ and } \frac{hk}{t^4} = \frac{4c^2}{(1 + t^4)^2};$$

$$\therefore hk \frac{h^2}{k^3} = \frac{4c^2h^4}{(k^2 + h^2)^2}.$$

Therefore the equation of the required locus is  $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = 4c^2xy$ , or in polar coordinates,  $r^2 = 2c^2 \sin 2\theta$ .

11. Let  $P$  be the point  $t$ . Then  $Q$  is the point  $-\frac{1}{t^3}$

(Ex. xxxviii, 14), and therefore  $R$  is the point  $\frac{1}{t^3}$ .

Therefore the equation to  $PR$  is

$$\frac{x - ct}{c\frac{1}{t^3} - ct} = \frac{y - \frac{c}{t}}{ct^3 - \frac{c}{t}},$$

or  $t^3x + ty = c(1 + t^4)$ , and this, by the last example, is the chord of curvature at  $P$ .

$$\text{Again } PQ = c \left\{ \left(t + \frac{1}{t^3}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{1}{t} + t^3\right)^2 \right\}^{\frac{1}{2}} = c \left(t^2 + \frac{1}{t^2}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}},$$

and  $2\rho = 2\frac{CP^3}{a^2}$  by Art. 423, Cor. 3,

$$= 2 \frac{c^3 \left(t^2 + \frac{1}{t^2}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{2c^2} \text{ (since } a^2 = 2c^2) = PQ.$$



12. The inclination  $\theta$  of the axis of the curve to the axis of  $x$  is given by

$$\tan 2\theta = \frac{2h}{a-b}. \quad [\text{Art. 349.}]$$

Let the inclination of the chord of curvature be  $\theta_1$ ; since it and the tangent at the origin, viz. the axis of  $x$ , are equally inclined to the axis of the curve,  $\therefore \theta_1 = 2\theta$ .

Therefore the chord of curvature is  $y = x \tan \theta_1 = \frac{2hx}{a-b}$ ,  
i.e.  $2hx - (a-b)y = 0$ , and the circle of curvature is

$$y [2hx - (a-b)y] + \lambda [ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 - 2y] = 0.$$

Since this is a circle,  $\therefore \lambda = -1$ , etc.

13. For the pole of  $\frac{x}{a} \cos a + \frac{y}{b} \sin a = 1$ , with regard to  $\frac{x^2}{\cos^2 a} - \frac{y^2}{\sin^2 a} = a^2 - b^2$  [XLVII, Ex. 2], is given by

$$\frac{x'}{\cos^2 a} = (a^2 - b^2) \frac{\cos a}{a}, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{y'}{\sin^2 a} = -(a^2 - b^2) \frac{\sin a}{b};$$

and this, by Art. 423, is the centre of curvature of the first curve corresponding to the point  $a$ .

14. The conic  $\left(\frac{x}{t} + yt - 2c\right)^2 + \lambda(xy - c^2) = 0$  (Art. 429) is a parabola if  $\lambda = -4$ . Hence, etc.

The equation of the directrix is (Art. 390)

$$2xt^2 + 2yt = c(1 + t^4),$$

which is perpendicular to  $x - yt^2 = 0$  and passes through

$$\left(\frac{ct}{2}, \frac{c}{2t}\right).$$

15. The conic

$$(x - ty + at^2) \{y - 2at + m(x - at^2)\} + \lambda(y^2 - 4ax) = 0$$

passes through  $(0, 0)$  if  $m = -\frac{2}{t}$ , and is a parabola if

$$(mt - 1)^2 = 4m(\lambda - t).$$

Whence  $\lambda = -\frac{t}{8}$ .

Substitute for  $m$  and  $\lambda$ , etc.

16. The conic  $(x - ty + at^2)^2 + \lambda(y^2 - 4ax) = 0$ , is a rectangular hyperbola if  $\lambda + 1 + t^2 = 0$ .

Substitute for  $\lambda$ , etc.

The centre is given by

$$x - ty + a(2 + 3t^2) = 0, \dots\dots\dots(i)$$

and  $tx + y + at^3 = 0. \dots\dots\dots(ii)$

Multiply (i) by  $t$  and (ii) by 3, and subtract ;

$$\therefore t^2y + 2t(x - a) + 3y = 0. \dots\dots\dots(iii)$$

Eliminating  $t$  between (i) and (iii) ;

$$\therefore y^2(x - 7a)^2 + \{3y^2 + 2(x + 2a)(x - a)\}\{y^2 + 6a(x - a)\} = 0,$$

which reduces to  $\{y^2 + (x - a)^2\}\{y^2 + 4a(x + 2a)\} = 0$ .

The required locus is therefore  $y^2 + 4a(x + 2a) = 0$ .

17. The conic

$$(x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta - a)^2 + \lambda(x^2 + y^2 - a^2) = 0$$

is a rectangular hyperbola if  $2\lambda + 1 = 0$ .

Hence, substituting, we obtain

$$x^2 \cos 2\theta + 2xy \sin 2\theta - y^2 \cos 2\theta - 4ax \cos \theta - 4ay \sin \theta + 3a^2 = 0.$$

The centre is given by

$$x \cos 2\theta + y \sin 2\theta = 2a \cos \theta, \text{ and } x \sin 2\theta - y \cos 2\theta = 2a \sin \theta.$$

Square and add ;  $\therefore x^2 + y^2 = 4a^2$ .

18. The conic

$$\lambda \left( \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} - 1 \right) + \left( \frac{x}{a} \cos \phi + \frac{y}{b} \sin \phi - 1 \right)^2 = 0$$

is a rectangular hyperbola if

$$\lambda(a^2 + b^2) + b^2 \cos^2 \phi + a^2 \sin^2 \phi = 0.$$

On substituting for  $\lambda$ , the equations for the centre will be

$$\frac{x}{a^2 + b^2} \cos 2\phi + \frac{y}{2ab} \sin 2\phi = \frac{\cos \phi}{a}, \dots\dots(i)$$

and 
$$-\frac{y}{a^2 + b^2} \cos 2\phi + \frac{x}{2ab} \sin 2\phi = \frac{\sin \phi}{b}, \dots\dots(ii)$$

These give 
$$\frac{x^2 + y^2}{a^2 + b^2} \cos 2\phi = \frac{x \cos \phi}{a} - \frac{y \sin \phi}{b}, \dots\dots(iii)$$

and 
$$\frac{x^2 + y^2}{2ab} \sin 2\phi = \frac{y \cos \phi}{a} + \frac{x \sin \phi}{b}. \dots\dots(iv)$$

On division, these give

$$\frac{\cos 2\phi}{a^2 + b^2} (by \cos \phi + ax \sin \phi) = \frac{\sin 2\phi}{2ab} (bx \cos \phi - ay \sin \phi).$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore ay [a^2 \sin \phi \sin 2\phi + b^2 \cos \phi \cos 2\phi + b^2 \cos \phi] \\ = bx [a^2 \sin \phi - a^2 \sin \phi \cos 2\phi + b^2 \sin^2 2\phi \cos \phi]. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore ay \cos \phi = bx \sin \phi.$$

On substituting in (iii) and (iv), we have

$$\frac{x^2 + y^2}{a^2 + b^2} \cos \phi = \frac{x}{a}, \text{ and } \frac{x^2 + y^2}{a^2 + b^2} \sin \phi = \frac{y}{b}. \therefore \text{etc.}$$

## ENVELOPES

**430.** Consider any point  $P$  on a circle whose centre is  $O$  and whose radius is  $a$ . The straight line through  $P$  at right angles to  $OP$  is a tangent to the circle at  $P$ . Conversely, if through  $O$  we draw any straight line  $OP$  of length  $a$ , and if through the end  $P$  we draw a straight line perpendicular to  $OP$ , this latter straight line touches, or envelopes, a circle of radius  $a$  and centre  $O$ , and this circle is said to be the envelope of the straight lines drawn in this manner.

Again, if  $S$  be the focus of a parabola, and  $PY$  be the tangent at any point  $P$  of it meeting the tangent at the vertex in the point  $Y$ , then we know (Art. 211,  $\delta$ ) that  $SYP$  is a right angle. Conversely, if  $S$  be joined to any point  $Y$  on a given line, and a straight line be drawn through  $Y$  perpendicular to  $SY$ , this line, so drawn, always touches, or envelopes, a parabola whose focus is  $S$  and such that the given line is the tangent at its vertex.

**431. Envelope. Def.** The curve which is touched by each of a series of lines, which are all drawn to satisfy some given condition, is called the Envelope of these lines.

As an example, consider the series of straight lines which are drawn so that each of them cuts off from a pair of fixed straight lines a triangle of constant area.

We know (Art. 330) that any tangent to a hyperbola always cuts off a triangle of constant area from its asymptotes.

Conversely, we conclude that, if a variable straight line cut off a constant area from two given straight lines, it always touches a hyperbola whose asymptotes are the two given straight lines, *i. e.* that its envelope is a hyperbola.

**432.** *If the equation to any curve involve a variable parameter, in the first degree only, the curve always passes through a fixed point or points.*

For if  $\lambda$  be the variable parameter, the equation to the curve can be written in the form  $S + \lambda S' = 0$ , and this equation is always satisfied by the points which satisfy  $S = 0$  and  $S' = 0$ , *i.e.* the curve always passes through the point, or points, of intersection of  $S = 0$  and  $S' = 0$  [compare Art. 97].

**433.** *Curve touched by a variable straight line whose equation involves, in the second degree, a variable parameter.*

As an example, let us find the envelope of the straight lines given by the equation

$$m^2x - my + a = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

where  $m$  is a quantity which, by its variation, gives the series of straight lines.

If (1) pass through the fixed point  $(h, k)$ , we have

$$m^2h - mk + a = 0 \dots\dots\dots (2).$$

This is an equation giving the values of  $m$  corresponding to the straight lines of the series which pass through the point  $(h, k)$ . There can therefore be drawn two straight lines from  $(h, k)$  to touch the required envelope.

As  $(h, k)$  moves nearer and nearer to the required envelope these two tangents approach more and more nearly to coincidence, until, when  $(h, k)$  is taken on the envelope, the two tangents coincide.

Conversely, if the two tangents given by (2) coincide, the point  $(h, k)$  lies on the envelope.

Now the roots of (2) are equal if  $k^2 = 4ah$ , so that the locus of  $(h, k)$ , *i.e.* the required envelope, is the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ .

Hence, more simply, the envelope of the straight line (1) is the curve whose equation is obtained by writing down the condition that the equation (1), considered as a quadratic equation in  $m$ , may have equal roots.

By writing (1) in the form

$$y = mx + \frac{a}{m},$$

it is clear that it always touches the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ .

In the next article we shall apply this method to the general case.

**434.** *To find the envelope of a straight line whose equation involves, in the second degree, a variable parameter.*

The equation to the straight line is of the form

$$\lambda^2 P + \lambda Q + R = 0 \dots\dots\dots (1),$$

where  $\lambda$  is a variable parameter and  $P$ ,  $Q$ , and  $R$  are expressions of the first degree in  $x$  and  $y$ .

Equation (1) may be looked upon as an equation giving the two values of  $\lambda$  corresponding to any given point  $T$ .

Through this given point two straight lines to touch the required envelope may therefore be drawn.

If the point  $T$  be taken on the required envelope, the two tangents that can be drawn from it coalesce into the one tangent at  $T$  to the envelope.

Conversely, if the two straight lines given by (1) coincide, the resulting condition will give us the equation to the envelope.

But the condition that (1) shall have equal roots is

$$Q^2 = 4PR \dots \dots \dots (2).$$

This is therefore the equation to the required envelope.

Since  $P$ ,  $Q$ , and  $R$  are all expressions of the first degree, the equation (2) is, in general, an equation of the second degree, and hence, in general, represents a conic section.

The envelope of any straight line, whose equation contains an arbitrary parameter and square thereof, is therefore always a conic.

**435.** The method of the previous article holds even if  $P$ ,  $Q$ , and  $R$  be not necessarily linear expressions. It follows that the envelope of any family of curves, whose equation contains a variable parameter  $\lambda$ , in the second degree, is found by writing down the condition that the equation, considered as an equation in  $\lambda$ , may have equal roots.

**436. Ex. 1.** Find the envelope of the straight line which cuts off from two given straight lines a triangle of constant area.

Let the given straight lines be taken as the axes of coordinates and let them be inclined at an angle  $\omega$ .

The equation to a straight line cutting off intercepts  $f$  and  $g$  from the axes is

$$\frac{x}{f} + \frac{y}{g} = 1 \dots \dots \dots (1).$$

If the area of the triangle cut off be constant, we have

$$\frac{1}{2} f \cdot g \cdot \sin \omega = \text{const.},$$

*i.e.*  $fg = \text{const.} = K^2 \dots \dots \dots (2).$

On substitution for  $g$  in (1), the equation to the straight line becomes  $f^2y - fK^2 + K^2x = 0.$

By the last article, the envelope of this line, for different values of  $f$ , is given by the equation

$$(-K^2)^2 = 4 \cdot K^2 xy,$$

*i.e.* 
$$xy = \frac{K^2}{4}.$$

The result is therefore a hyperbola whose asymptotes coincide with the axes of coordinates.

**Ex. 2.** Find the envelope of the straight line which is such that the product of the perpendiculars drawn to it from two fixed points is constant.

Take the middle point of the line joining the two fixed points as the origin, the line joining them as the axis of  $x$ , and let the two points be  $(d, 0)$  and  $(-d, 0)$ .

Let the variable straight line have as equation

$$y = mx + c.$$

The condition then gives

$$\frac{md + c}{\sqrt{1 + m^2}} \times \frac{-md + c}{\sqrt{1 + m^2}} = \text{constant} = A,$$

so that 
$$c^2 - m^2 d^2 = A(1 + m^2).$$

The equation to the variable straight line is then

$$y - mx = c = \sqrt{(A + d^2)m^2 + A}.$$

Or, on squaring,

$$m^2(x^2 - A - d^2) - 2mxy + (y^2 - A) = 0.$$

By Art. 435, the envelope of this is

$$(2xy)^2 = 4(x^2 - A - d^2)(y^2 - A),$$

*i.e.* 
$$\frac{x^2}{A + d^2} + \frac{y^2}{A} = 1.$$

This is a conic section whose axes are the axes of coordinates and whose foci are the two given points.

**Ex. 3.** Find the envelope of chords of an ellipse the tangents at the end of which intersect at right angles.

Let the ellipse be 
$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1.$$

If the tangents intersect at right angles, their point of intersection  $P$  must lie on the director circle, and hence its coordinates must be of the form  $(c \cos \theta, c \sin \theta)$ , where  $c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ .

The chord is then the polar of  $P$  with respect to the ellipse, and hence its equation is

$$\frac{x \cdot c \cos \theta}{a^2} + \frac{y \cdot c \sin \theta}{b^2} = 1.$$



Let  $t \equiv \tan \frac{\theta}{2}$ . Then since

$$\cos \theta = \frac{1 - \tan^2 \frac{\theta}{2}}{1 + \tan^2 \frac{\theta}{2}} = \frac{1 - t^2}{1 + t^2}, \text{ and } \sin \theta = \frac{2t}{1 + t^2},$$

the equation to the line is

$$\frac{cx}{a^2} \frac{1 - t^2}{1 + t^2} + \frac{cy}{b^2} \frac{2t}{1 + t^2} = 1,$$

i.e. 
$$t^2 \left[ 1 + \frac{cx}{a^2} \right] - 2t \frac{cy}{b^2} + \left( 1 - \frac{cx}{a^2} \right) = 0.$$

The envelope of this is (Art. 434),

$$\left( -\frac{2cy}{b^2} \right)^2 = 4 \left( 1 + \frac{cx}{a^2} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{cx}{a^2} \right),$$

i.e. 
$$\frac{x^2 c^2}{a^4} + \frac{y^2 c^2}{b^4} = 1,$$

i.e. 
$$\frac{x^2}{a^2 + b^2} + \frac{y^2}{a^2 + b^2} = 1.$$

Since  $\frac{a^4}{a^2 + b^2} - \frac{b^4}{a^2 + b^2} = a^2 - b^2$ , this equation represents a conic confocal with the given one.

**Ex. 4.** *The normals at four points of an ellipse meet in a point; if the line joining one pair of these points pass through a fixed point, prove that the line joining the other pair envelopes a parabola which touches the axes.*

Let the equation to the ellipse be

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

and let the equation to the two pairs of lines through the points be

$$lx + my = 1 \dots\dots\dots(2),$$

and 
$$l_1 x + m_1 y = 1 \dots\dots\dots(3).$$

By Art. 412, Cor. (1), we then have

$$ll_1 = -\frac{1}{a^2} \text{ and } mm_1 = -\frac{1}{b^2} \dots\dots\dots(4).$$

If the straight line (3) pass through the fixed point ( $f, g$ ), we have

$$l_1 f + m_1 g = 1,$$

so that, by (4), 
$$-\frac{f}{a^2 l} - \frac{g}{b^2 m} = 1,$$

and therefore 
$$l = -\frac{f}{a^2} \frac{mb^2}{mb^2 + g}.$$

If this value of  $l$  be substituted in (2), it becomes

$$m^2a^2b^2y + m(a^2gy - b^2fx - a^2b^2) - a^2g = 0,$$

the envelope of which is

$$(a^2gy - b^2fx - a^2b^2)^2 = -4a^2g \cdot a^2b^2y,$$

*i.e.*  $(a^2gy - b^2fx)^2 + 2a^2b^2(b^2fx + a^2gy) + a^4b^4 = 0 \dots\dots\dots(5).$

This is a parabola since the terms of the second degree form a perfect square. Also, putting in succession  $x$  and  $y$  equal to zero, we get perfect squares, so that the parabola touches both axes.

**437.** *To find the envelope of the straight line*

$$lx + my + n = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1),$$

where the quantities  $l$ ,  $m$ , and  $n$  are connected by the relation

$$al^2 + bm^2 + cn^2 + 2fmn + 2gnl + 2hlm = 0 \dots\dots\dots(2).$$

[Equation (1) contains two independent parameters  $\frac{l}{n}$  and  $\frac{m}{n}$ , whilst (2) is an equation connecting them. We could therefore solve (2) to give  $\frac{l}{n}$  in terms of  $\frac{m}{n}$ ; on substituting in (1) we should then have an equation containing one independent parameter and its envelope could then be found.

It is easier, however, to proceed as follows.]

Eliminating  $n$  between (1) and (2), we see that the equation to the straight line may be written in the form

$$al^2 + bm^2 + c(lx + my)^2 - 2(fm + gl)(lx + my) + 2hlm = 0,$$

*i.e.*  $(a - 2gx + cx^2) \left(\frac{l}{m}\right)^2 + 2(cxy - gy - fx + h) \frac{l}{m} + (b - 2fy + cy^2) = 0.$

The envelope of this is, by Art. 435,

$$(cxy - gy - fx + h)^2 = (a - 2gx + cx^2)(b - 2fy + cy^2),$$

*i.e.*, on reduction,

$$x^2(bc - f^2) + y^2(ca - g^2) + 2xy(fg - ch) + 2x(fh - bg) + 2y(gh - af) + ab - h^2 = 0.$$

The envelope is therefore a conic section.

**Cor.** The envelope is a parabola if

$$(fg - ch)^2 = (bc - f^2)(ca - g^2),$$

*i.e.* if  $c = 0$ , or if  $abc + 2fgh - af^2 - bg^2 - ch^2 = 0$ .

**438. Ex.** Find the envelope of all chords of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$  which subtend a given angle  $\alpha$  at the vertex.

Any straight line is

$$lx + my + n = 0 \dots\dots\dots(1).$$

The lines joining the origin to its intersections with the parabola are, (by Art. 122),  $ny^2 = -4ax(lx + my)$ ,

*i.e.*  $ny^2 + 4amxy + 4alx^2 = 0$ .

If  $\alpha$  be the angle between these lines, we have

$$\tan \alpha = \frac{2\sqrt{4a^2m^2 - 4aln}}{n + 4al},$$

*i.e.*  $16a^2l^2 - 16a^2 \cot^2 \alpha m^2 + n^2 + 8aln(1 + 2 \cot^2 \alpha) = 0$ .

With this condition the envelope of (1) is, by the last article,

$$x^2(-16a^2 \cot^2 \alpha) + y^2[16a^2 - (4a + 8a \cot^2 \alpha)^2] + 2x \cdot 16a^2 \cot^2 \alpha (4a + 8a \cot^2 \alpha) - 256a^4 \cot^2 \alpha = 0,$$

*i.e.* the ellipse

$$[x - 4a(1 + 2 \cot^2 \alpha)]^2 + 4 \operatorname{cosec}^2 \alpha \cdot y^2 = 64 \cot^2 \alpha \cdot \operatorname{cosec}^2 \alpha.$$

**EXAMPLES XLIX**

Find the envelope of the straight line  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{\beta} = 1$  when

1.  $aa + b\beta = c$ .
2.  $a + \beta + \sqrt{a^2 + \beta^2} = c$ .
3.  $\frac{b^2}{a^2} + \frac{a^2}{\beta^2} = 1$ .

Find the envelope of a straight line which moves so that

4. the sum of the intercepts made by it on two given straight lines is constant.
5. the sum of the squares of the perpendiculars drawn to it from two given points is constant.
6. the difference of these squares is constant.
7. Find the envelope of the straight line whose equation is  $ax \cos \theta + by \sin \theta = c^2$ .

8. Circles are described touching each of two given straight lines; prove that the polars of a given point with respect to these circles all touch a parabola.

9. From any point  $P$  on a parabola perpendiculars  $PM$  and  $PN$  are drawn to the axis and tangent at the vertex; prove that the envelope of  $MN$  is another parabola.

10. Shew that the envelope of the chord which is common to the parabola  $y^2=4ax$  and its circle of curvature is the parabola

$$y^2 + 12ax = 0.$$

11. Perpendiculars are drawn to the tangents to the parabola  $y^2=4ax$  at the points where they meet the straight line  $x=b$ ; prove that they envelope another parabola having the same focus.

12. A variable tangent to a given parabola cuts a fixed tangent in the point  $A$ ; prove that the envelope of the straight line through  $A$  perpendicular to the variable tangent is another parabola.

13. Shew that the envelope of chords of a parabola the tangents at the ends of which meet at a constant angle is, in general an ellipse.

14. A given parabola slides between two axes at right angles; prove that the envelope of its latus rectum is a fixed circle.

15. Prove that the envelope of chords of an ellipse which subtend a right angle at its centre is a concentric circle.

16. If the lines joining any point  $P$  on an ellipse to the foci meet the curve again in  $Q$  and  $R$ , prove that the envelope of the line  $QR$  is the concentric and coaxial ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} \left( \frac{1+e^2}{1-e^2} \right)^2 = 1.$$

17. Prove that the envelope of chords of the rectangular hyperbola  $xy=a^2$ , which subtend a constant angle  $\alpha$  at the point  $(x', y')$  on the curve, is the hyperbola

$$x^2x'^2 + y^2y'^2 = 2a^2xy(1 + 2\cot^2\alpha) - 4a^4\operatorname{cosec}^2\alpha.$$

18. Chords of a conic are drawn subtending a right angle at a fixed point  $O$ . Prove that their envelope is a conic whose focus is  $O$  and whose directrix is the polar of  $O$  with respect to the original conic.

19. Shew that the envelope of the polars of a fixed point  $O$  with respect to a system of confocal conics, whose centre is  $C$ , is a parabola having  $CO$  as directrix.

20. A given straight line meets one of a system of confocal conics in  $P$  and  $Q$ , and  $RS$  is the line joining the feet of the other two normals drawn from the point of intersection of the normals at  $P$  and  $Q$ ; prove that the envelope of  $RS$  is a parabola touching the axes.

21.  $ABCD$  is a rectangular sheet of paper, and it is folded over so that  $C$  lies on the side  $AB$ ; prove that the envelope of the crease so formed is a parabola, whose focus is the initial position of  $C$ .

22. A circle, whose centre is  $A$ , is traced on a sheet of paper and any point  $B$  is taken on the paper. If the paper be folded so that the circumference of the circle passes through  $B$ , prove that the envelope of the crease so formed is a conic whose foci are  $A$  and  $B$ .

23. In the conic  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \cos \theta$  find the envelope of chords which subtend a constant angle  $2\alpha$  at the focus.

24. Circles are described on chords of the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ , which are parallel to the straight line  $lx + my = 0$ , as diameters; prove that they envelope the parabola

$$(ly + 2ma)^2 = 4a(l^2 + m^2)(x + a).$$

25. Prove that the envelope of the polar of any point on the circle  $(x+a)^2 + (y+b)^2 = k^2$  with respect to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = c^2$  is the conic

$$k^2(x^2 + y^2) = (ax + by + c^2)^2.$$

26. Chords of the conic  $\frac{l}{r} = 1 - e \cos \theta$  are drawn passing through the origin and on these circles as diameters circles are described. Shew that the envelope of these circles is the two circles

$$\frac{l}{r} \left( \frac{l}{r} + e \cos \theta \right) = 1 \pm e.$$

## ANSWERS

1.  $(by - ax - c)^2 = 4acx.$
2.  $x^2 + y^2 - c(x + y) + \frac{c^2}{4} = 0.$
3.  $\frac{x^2}{b^2} + \frac{y^2}{a^2} = 1.$
4. A parabola touching each of the two lines.
5. A central conic.
6. A parabola.
7.  $a^2x^2 + b^2y^2 = c^4.$

19. The line joining the foci is a particular case of the confocals and the polar of  $O$  with respect to it is the major axis; the minor axis is another particular case, so that two of the polars are lines through  $C$  at right angles; also the tangents at  $O$  to the confocals through it are two of the polars, and these are at right angles. Thus both  $C$  and  $O$  are on the directrix.
21. The crease is clearly the line bisecting at right angles the line joining the initial position of  $C$  to the position which  $C$  occupies when the paper is folded.
23.  $\frac{l \cos \alpha}{r} = 1 - e \cos \alpha \cos \theta$ .

## SOLUTIONS/HINTS

1. Eliminating  $\beta$ , the equation to the straight line is

$$aa^2 - a(ax - by + c) + cx = 0;$$

therefore the required envelope is  $(ax - by + c)^2 = 4acx$ .

2. Since  $(a + \beta - c)^2 = a^2 + \beta^2$ ,  $\therefore a(2\beta - 2c) = 2c\beta - c^2$ .

Eliminating  $a$  from the equation to the straight line it becomes  $2\beta^2(x - c) + \beta(2cy - 2cx + c^2) - c^2y = 0$ ; therefore the required envelope is

$$(2cy - 2cx + c^2)^2 + 8y(x - c)c^2 = 0,$$

or 
$$x^2 + y^2 - c(x + y) + \frac{c^2}{4} = 0.$$

3. The relation between  $a, \beta$  is satisfied if  $a = \frac{b}{\cos \theta}$

and  $\beta = \frac{a}{\sin \theta}$ . The equation to the straight line is then

$$\frac{x}{b} \cos \theta + \frac{y}{a} \sin \theta = 1,$$

which is always a tangent to the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{b^2} + \frac{y^2}{a^2} = 1$ .

4. Taking the given lines for axes, let the equation of the straight line be  $\frac{x}{a-l} + \frac{y}{a+l} = 1$ , where  $a$  is constant.

$$\therefore l^2 + l(x-y) + a(x+y-a) = 0.$$

Therefore the required envelope is

$$(x-y)^2 = 4a(x+y-a),$$

which is a parabola touching the axes.

5. Let  $x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = b$  be the equation of the line, and the coordinates of the points  $(\pm a, 0)$ . Then

$$b^2 + a^2 \cos^2 \theta = \text{constant} = c^2.$$

$$\therefore (x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta)^2 + a^2 \cos^2 \theta = c^2,$$

or  $\tan^2 \theta (y^2 - c^2) + 2xy \tan \theta + a^2 + x^2 - c^2 = 0.$

Therefore the required envelope is

$$x^2 y^2 = (y^2 - c^2)(a^2 + x^2 - c^2),$$

which is a central conic.

6. As in the last Ex., we have  $b \cos \theta = \text{constant} = \lambda$ ;

$$\therefore x \cos^2 \theta + y \sin \theta \cos \theta = \lambda (\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta),$$

or  $\lambda \tan^2 \theta - y \tan \theta + \lambda - x = 0$  is the equation of the line.

So the required envelope is  $y^2 = 4\lambda(\lambda - x)$ , which is a parabola.

7. The equation is  $\frac{x}{a} \cos \theta + \frac{y}{\beta} \sin \theta = 1$ , where

$$a = \frac{c^2}{a} \text{ and } \beta = \frac{c^2}{b}.$$

This straight line is always a tangent to the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{\beta^2} = 1.$$

8. Taking the given lines for axes, let the equation of the circle be  $x^2 + y^2 + 2xy \cos \omega + 2ax + 2ay + a^2 = 0$ .

The equation of the polar of  $(h, k)$  is

$$xh + yk + \cos \omega (xk + yh) + a(x + y + h + k) + a^2 = 0.$$

Therefore the required envelope is

$$(x + y + h + k)^2 = 4 \{xh + yk + \cos \omega (xk + yh)\},$$

which is a parabola.

9. The equation of  $MN$ , if  $P$  is the point  $t$ , will be

$$\frac{x}{at^2} + \frac{y}{2at} = 1, \text{ or } 2x + ty = 2at^2.$$

Therefore the required envelope is the parabola

$$y^2 + 8ax = 0.$$

10. The equation of the common chord is (Art. 422),

$$ty + x - 3at^2 = 0,$$

whence the required envelope is  $y^2 + 12ax = 0$ .

11. The tangent  $x - ty + at^2 = 0$  meets the line  $x = b$  in the point  $\left(b, \frac{b + at^2}{t}\right)$ .

The equation of the line through this point perpendicular to the tangent is  $t^2(x - b) + ty - b - at^2 = 0$ . Whence the envelope is  $y^2 + 4b(x - a - b) = 0$ .

12. Let  $x - ty + at^2 = 0$ , and  $x - t'y + at'^2 = 0$ , be the equations of the fixed and variable tangents.

The equation of the line through  $\{att', a(t + t')\}$  perpendicular to  $x - t'y + at'^2 = 0$ , is  $att'^2 + t'(a - x) + at - y = 0$ .

Hence the required envelope is  $(x - a)^2 = 4at(at - y)$ , which is a parabola.

13. Let  $y(t_1 + t_2) = 2x + 2at_1t_2$  be the equation of the chord.

Then 
$$\frac{t_1 - t_2}{1 + t_1t_2} = \text{cons.} = \tan \alpha \quad [\text{Art. 229.}]$$

$$\therefore (1 + t_1t_2)^2 \tan^2 \alpha = (t_1 + t_2)^2 - 4t_1t_2.$$



$$\begin{aligned} \therefore (1 + t_1 t_2)^2 y^2 \tan^2 \alpha &= 4x^2 + 4a^2 t_1^2 t_2^2 + 8ax t_1 t_2 - 4t_1 t_2 y^2. \\ \therefore (t_1 t_2)^2 \{y^2 \tan^2 \alpha - 4a^2\} + 2t_1 t_2 (y^2 \tan^2 \alpha - 4ax + 2y^2) \\ &\quad + y^2 \tan^2 \alpha - 4x^2 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Whence the required envelope is

$$(y^2 \tan^2 \alpha - 4ax + 2y^2)^2 = (y^2 \tan^2 \alpha - 4a^2)(y^2 \tan^2 \alpha - 4x^2),$$

which reduces to

$$y^2 - 4ax + (x + a)^2 \sin^2 \alpha = 0,$$

which is in general an ellipse.

14. The directrix passes through the origin.

Therefore the perpendicular from the origin upon the latus rectum = cons.

Hence, etc.

15. The equation of the lines joining the origin to the common points of

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1, \text{ and } x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = p,$$

is

$$\left(\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2}\right) p^2 = (x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta)^2.$$

They are perpendicular if  $\frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2} = \frac{1}{p^2}$ .

$$\therefore p = \text{a constant, etc.}$$

16. Let the eccentric angles of  $P, Q, R$  be  $\phi, \alpha, \beta$ . Then, since  $PQ$  goes through  $(ae, 0)$ ,

$$\therefore e \cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi + \alpha) = \cos \frac{1}{2}(\phi - \alpha);$$

$$\therefore \frac{1 - e}{1 + e} = -\tan \frac{\phi}{2} \tan \frac{\alpha}{2}.$$

Similarly

$$\frac{1 + e}{1 - e} = -\tan \frac{\phi}{2} \tan \frac{\beta}{2}.$$

$$\therefore \tan \frac{\alpha}{2} / \tan \frac{\beta}{2} = \left(\frac{1 - e}{1 + e}\right)^2 = \lambda \text{ (say).}$$

The equation to  $QR$  is

$$\frac{x}{a} \left(1 - \tan \frac{\alpha}{2} \tan \frac{\beta}{2}\right) + \frac{y}{b} \left(\tan \frac{\alpha}{2} + \tan \frac{\beta}{2}\right) = 1 + \tan \frac{\alpha}{2} \tan \frac{\beta}{2}.$$

$$\therefore \left(\frac{x}{a} + 1\right) \lambda \tan^2 \frac{\beta}{2} - \frac{y}{b} (\lambda + 1) \tan \frac{\beta}{2} + 1 - \frac{x}{a} = 0.$$

Hence the required envelope is

$$4\lambda \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2}\right) = \frac{y^2}{b^2} (\lambda + 1)^2, \text{ or } \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} \left(\frac{1 + e^2}{1 - e^2}\right)^2 = 1.$$

17. Let the equation of the chord be

$$x + yt_1t_2 = a(t_1 + t_2),$$

and let  $(x', y')$  be the point  $\left(at, \frac{a}{t}\right)$ . Then  $\tan a = \frac{t(t_1 - t_2)}{1 + t^2t_1t_2}$ .

$$\therefore \tan^2 a (1 + t^2t_1t_2)^2 = t^2 \{(t_1 + t_2)^2 - 4t_1t_2\}.$$

$$\therefore a^2 \tan^2 a (1 + t^2t_1t_2)^2 = t^2 (x + yt_1t_2)^2 - 4a^2t^2t_1t_2.$$

$$\therefore t_1^2t_2^2 \{a^2 \tan^2 at^4 - t^2y^2\} + 2t_1t_2 \{a^2 \tan^2 at^2 - xyt^2 + 2a^2t^2\} + a^2 \tan^2 a - t^2x^2 = 0.$$

Therefore the required envelope is

$$t^2 (a^2 \tan^2 a - xy + 2a^2)^2 = (a^2 \tan^2 at^2 - y^2) (a^2 \tan^2 a - t^2x^2),$$

*i.e.*  $x^2a^2t^4 + y^2a^2 - 2a^2xyt^2 (1 + 2 \cot^2 a) + 4a^4t^2 (1 + \cot^2 a),$

*i.e.*  $x^2x'^2 + y^2y'^2 = 2a^2xy (1 + 2 \cot^2 a) - 4a^4 \operatorname{cosec}^2 a.$

18. Taking the general equation for the conic, the lines joining the origin,  $O$ , to the common points of it and the line  $lx + my = 1$  are

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 + 2(gx + fy)(lx + my) + c(lx + my)^2 = 0.$$

They are at right angles if

$$a + b + 2(gl + fm) + c(l^2 + m^2) = 0.$$

$$\therefore (a + b)(lx + my)^2 + 2(gl + fm)(lx + my) + c(l^2 + m^2) = 0.$$

Hence the equation of the required envelope is

$$\{(a + b)x^2 + 2gx + c\} \{(a + b)y^2 + 2fy + c\} = \{(a + b)xy + gy + fx\}^2,$$

which reduces to

$$(gx + fy + c)^2 = (x^2 + y^2)(g^2 + f^2 - ac - bc).$$

19. The envelope of

$$xh(b^2 + \lambda) + yk(a^2 + \lambda) = (a^2 + \lambda)(b^2 + \lambda)$$

is

$$\{a^2 + b^2 - xh - yk\}^2 = 4(a^2b^2 - b^2xh - a^2yk),$$

which is a parabola. See Note in the Answers.

20. If  $lx + my = 1$  is the equation of  $PQ$ , then

$$\frac{x}{(a^2 + \lambda)l} + \frac{y}{(b^2 + \lambda)m} = -1$$

is the equation of  $RS$  [Art. 412, Equation (9)], *i.e.*

$$lm\lambda^2 + \lambda \{(a^2 + b^2)lm + ly + mx\} + lma^2b^2 + b^2mx + a^2ly = 0.$$

Therefore the required envelope is

$$\{mx + ly + (a^2 + b^2)lm\}^2 = 4lm(lma^2b^2 + b^2mx + a^2ly),$$

which is a parabola; and by putting  $x=0$ , and  $y=0$ , we see that it touches the axes.

21. Take  $CB, CD$  for axes, and let  $CB = a$ . Let the equation of the crease be  $x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta = p$ , so that  $a = 2p \cos \theta$ , and the equation becomes

$$2x \cos^2 \theta + 2y \sin \theta \cos \theta = a (\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta).$$

Whence the envelope is  $y^2 + a(2x - a) = 0$ , which is a parabola, whose focus is  $C$ .

22. Taking  $A$  as origin, let  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  be the equation of the circle, and let  $B$  be the point  $(b, 0)$ .

Let the coordinates of  $P$  (any point on the circle) be  $(a \cos \theta, a \sin \theta)$ .

Then since the crease bisects  $BP$  at right angles, its equation is  $(x - a \cos \theta)^2 + (y - a \sin \theta)^2 = (x - b)^2 + y^2$ , or

$$2a(x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta) = a^2 - b^2 + 2bx.$$

The product of the perpendiculars upon it from  $A$  and  $B$

$$= \frac{(a^2 - b^2)(a^2 - b^2 - 2ab \cos \theta + 2b^2)}{(a \cos \theta - b)^2 + a^2 \sin^2 \theta} = a^2 - b^2 = \text{constant}.$$

Therefore, etc.

23. As in equation (3) of Art. 342, let

$$\frac{l}{r} = \sec a \cos(\theta - \beta) - e \cos \theta$$

be the equation of the chord,

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \frac{l \cos a}{r} = \cos(\theta - \beta) - e \cos a \cos \theta,$$

By the same article, this is the equation to a tangent to the conic

$$\frac{l \cos \alpha}{r} = 1 - e \cos \alpha \cos \theta.$$

24. Let  $(x - at_1^2)(x - at_2^2) + (y - 2at_1)(y - 2at_2) = 0$  be the equation to one of the circles, so that

$$\frac{2}{t_1 + t_2} = -\frac{l}{m}.$$

Substituting for  $t_1 + t_2$ , the equation becomes

$$a^2 t_1^2 t_2^2 + 2t_1 t_2 (ax + 2a^2) + x^2 + y^2 - ax \frac{4m^2}{l^2} + 4ay \frac{m}{l} = 0.$$

Hence the equation of the required envelope is

$$(x + 2a)^2 = x^2 + y^2 - \frac{4am^2 x}{l^2} + \frac{4amy}{l},$$

or  $(ly + 2am)^2 = 4a(l^2 + m^2)(x + a).$

25. Let  $(k \cos \theta - a, k \sin \theta - b)$  be any point on the first circle. Its polar with regard to  $x^2 + y^2 = c^2$  is

$$x(k \cos \theta - a) + y(k \sin \theta - b) = c^2,$$

or  $xk(1 - t^2) + yk \cdot 2t = (ax + by + c^2)(1 + t^2)$ , where  $t \equiv \tan \frac{\theta}{2}$ ;

whence the required envelope is

$$(x^2 + y^2)k^2 = (ax + by + c^2)^2.$$

26. The equation of the circle described on the line joining  $\left(\frac{l}{1 - e \cos \alpha}, \alpha\right)$  and  $\left(\frac{l}{1 + e \cos \alpha}, \alpha + \pi\right)$  as diameter is (Ex. XX, 6)

$$r^2 - r \cos(\theta - \alpha) \left\{ \frac{l}{1 - e \cos \alpha} - \frac{l}{1 + e \cos \alpha} \right\} - \frac{l^2}{1 - e^2 \cos^2 \alpha} = 0,$$

or  $(1 - e^2 \cos^2 \alpha)r^2 - 2erl \cos \alpha \cos(\theta - \alpha) - l^2 = 0,$

or  $\tan^2 \alpha (r^2 - l^2) - 2elr \sin \theta \tan \alpha + r^2 (1 - e^2) - l^2 - 2elr \cos \theta = 0.$

Therefore the equation of the envelope is

$$e^2 l^2 r^2 \sin^2 \theta = (r^2 - l^2) [r^2 (1 - e^2) - l^2 - 2elr \cos \theta],$$

or 
$$\left(\frac{l^2}{r^2} - 1\right) \left(\frac{l^2}{r^2} + 2e \cos \theta \frac{l}{r} - 1 + e^2\right) = \frac{l^2 e^2}{r^2} \sin^2 \theta,$$

i.e. 
$$\left(\frac{l^2}{r^2} - 1\right)^2 + 2e \cos \theta \frac{l}{r} \left(\frac{l^2}{r^2} - 1\right) + \frac{e^2 l^2}{r^2} \cos^2 \theta = e^2,$$

or 
$$\frac{l^2}{r^2} - 1 + e \cos \theta \frac{l}{r} = \pm e,$$

i.e. 
$$\frac{l}{r} \left(\frac{l}{r} + e \cos \theta\right) = 1 \pm e.$$

# About the Author

---

**SIDNEY LUXTON LONEY** popularly known as **S. L. Loney** or simply **Loney**. He was born on 16 March 1860 and death at the age of seventy -nine years occurred on May 16 1939. He was educated at Maidstone Grammar School, in Tonbridge and at Sidney Sussex College, Cambridge, where he graduated B.A. as 3rd Wrangler in 1882 and then M.A. He was a Professor of Mathematics at the Royal Holloway College, Egham, Surrey, and a fellow of Sidney Sussex College, Cambridge. He belonged to the older generation of Cambridge mathematicians, whose training was broad as well as specialized, and his position as third Wrangler in the then undivided Tripos justified the high opinion formed of his abilities at Tonbridge School by his teacher, Mr. Hilary, one of the most remarkable mathematical teachers of his generation.

He authored a number of mathematics text books, some of which have been reprinted numerous times. He is known as an early influence on Srinivasa Ramanujan. His mathematics books are widely in use in India. His book, *The Elements of Statics and Dynamics* , published in 1897, is used across various universities in South India. His books, *Elements of Coordinate Geometry* and *Plane Trigonometry* , are also popular in India among students preparing for competitive engineering examinations. Some of his popular books are (1) *A treatise on elementary dynamics* , (1889), Cambridge: University Press, (2) *Mechanics and hydrostatics for beginners* , (1893), Cambridge: University Press, (3) *The elements of coordinate geometry* , (1895), London: Macmillan and Co., (4) *The elements of statics and dynamics* , (1897), Cambridge: University Press, (5) *An elementary treatise on the dynamics of a particle and of rigid bodies* , (1909), Cambridge: University Press, (6) *An elementary treatise on statics* , (1912), Cambridge: University Press, (7) *Plane Trigonometry* , (1893), Cambridge: University Press, etc.